

pk 36

THE  
*History of Trauayle*  
in the  
VVest and East Indies, and other  
countreys lying eyther way,  
towards the fruitfull and ryche  
*Moluccaes.*

As  
*Moscouia, Persia, Arabia, Syria, Egypte,*  
*Ethiopia, Guinea, China in Cathayo, and*  
*Giapan: VVith a discourse of*  
*the Northwest pas-* 22  
*sage.*

In the hande of our Lorde be all the corners of  
the earth. *Psal. 94.*

Gathered in parte, and done into Englyshe by  
*Richarde Eden.*

Newly set in order, augmented, and finished  
by *Richarde VVilles.*

70: *J. C. J.*

Imprinted at London  
by *Richarde Iugge.*  
1577.

*Cum Priuilegio.*

1649.

*To the ryght noble and excellent*

Lady, the Lady Brigit, Countesse of Bedforde, my singuler good Lady and Mystrisse.



L studies haue theyr speciall tymes (Ryght noble Lady) all good partes, and singuler qualities of the mynde are holden vp, and maynteyned with honour. The seely chylde learneth in his tender age how to speake, to reade, to write: young laddes bestowe theyr tyme in the study of other liberall sciences: as yeeres come on, and wyt encreaseth, so finally, the whole course of learning is runne ouer. Agayne, the arte of Grammer is wont erst to be learned, and than Logike afterwarde: naturall Philosophie goeth not before eloquence in our schooles: Geometry is first read, & than Geography. So that the studies of good letters haue their times in respect of mans age, they haue theyr tymes in the order of learning: yea they haue a tyme, that maketh vs all to bestowe therein our tyme, and to studie eche facultie in due tyme, I meane that speciall tyme they floryshe in. I may not denye but that learning hath at all tymes ben well accompted of, in most countreys the skyll of dyuers languages well thought of, & learned men to haue ben alwayes rewarded, what is than that speciall tyme wherein all studies doe floryshe? Learning may bee ryght well compared vnto the floutes & frutes





The Epistle.

of the earth, and the speciall tyme of learning, vnto theyr singuler seasons. In May, floures: in Iune, Cherries: at Haruest, corne: in September, Grapes: so fareth it in the study of good letters. There was a tyme whā the arte of grammer was so much esteemed, that Gramariens proceeded masters thereof as woorshypfully, as other professors now doe in any other facultie. Than was it honourable to be a Poet: honourable I say, for that the Poet Laureate enioyed the honour of a Palatine, that tyme is past. There was a tyme whan Logike & Astrology onely so weered the heades of young schollers, yea and busied olde age also, that true Philosophie in deede was almost forgotten, eloquence defaced, the languages exiled, that tyme is past. Not long since happy was he that had any skill in the greke tongue, he was thought a great scholler that could make a grecke verse. Nowe a dayes, who studieth not rather the Hebrue language? VWhere haue you almost any grecke aucthour printed? Geography laye hydden many hundred yeeres in darkenesse and obliuion, without regarde and price: of late who taketh not vpon him to discourse of the whole worlde, and eche prouince thereof particularly, euen by hearesay, although in the first principles of that arte, he bee altogether ignorant and vnskyllfull? This tyme is now. So long as Poetry was esteemed, the arte of grammer accompted of, Logike much made of, Astrology well thought of: Diuine Poets, good Gramariens, perfecte Logiciens, excellent Astronomers no where wanted.

A

The Epistle.

*A Virgile can you neuer want where one Mecenas is.* Honour & promotion bestowed vpon the maynteyners of controuersies in religion, hath brought gray heares from endlesse Sophistry, from Scotus formalites, from Buridan and Burley, from Holcot, from Bricot, from Vademecum, from Dormisecure, and taught yonger yeeres rather to passe through Aristotle and his interpreters, than euer to dwell therein: caused them to studie the scriptures, to reade ouer the fathers, to conferre the counseyles, to learne the greeke and Hebrue languages, to searche the Chalday Paraphraste, to peruse the olde Doctours, to translate the newe wryters, to heape vp common places, to discourse of sectes, to wryte cunningly, to preach eloquently: and made them to be, for braulyng Sophisters, graue Philosophers, for formal Dunces, plaine doctors, for rude questionaries, diuine Orators, for vnskyllful schoolemen, eloquent and graue diuines.

It is now almost one hundred & fiftie yeeres agoe, that Don Henrico, sonne of Iohn the fyrst of that name Kyng in Portugale, and Nepheu vnto our Kyng Henry the fourth, made his vyage after the conquest of Septa to the Canaries, and encouraged the Portugales to searche the coastes of Atrica, and to seeke the landes thereabout not spoken of to fore. His grande Nepheu Iohn the seconde, so furthered this enterpryse, that the Portugale shippes halled the Cape of good hope, discovered Æthiopia, and sayled where antiquitie denyed passage, beyond all Africa into the Indian seas. He sent also expert and

(.)iii.

cun-

The Epistle.

cunning traueylers into Ægypt, and the redde sea coastes to espye what way the Portugales might looke for beyond the Cape of good hope to Calecut in India: the which viage in his sonne Emanuell his tyme, was prosperously taken in hand by Vasquez Gama, the nienth day of Iuly, in the yeere of our Lorde. 1497. & happely ended in Iuly againe, two yeeres after, to his great credit and preferment, to the immortal fame & honour of his Prince and countrey. Here began the studie of Geographie, that euer since Ptolomeus raigne laye troden vnder foote, & buried in dust and ashes, to spring vp agayne, and by the relations of skilful traueylers in Europe, Affrike, & Asia: through the discouery of the far Indies, the Moluccaes, & new founde landes, of late so to be wondred at, as no other facultie more. I dare be bold to say, that generally all Christians, Iewes, Turkes, Moores, Infidels, & Barbares be this day in loue with Geographie. The wylde and rogishe Tartares myght for famine perishe in the winter, if they in the sommer skylfully followed not the sunne. The heathen Giapans diuided the worlde into three partes: Afrike was described by a Moore. The Iewes report the estates of all countreyes to the Turkes. The Turkishe Basshaes gouerne the sweetest prouinces in Europe, Afrike, and Asia, no men greater traueylers than Christians. VVho but Geographers doe teach vs what partes of the earth be cold, warme, or temperate? Of whom doe we learne howe to diuide the world into partes, the partes into prouinces, the prouinces into shyres? of Geographers. vnto whom

The Epistle.

whom haue wee to make recourse for Mappes, Globes, tables, and Cardes, wherein the dyuers countreys of the worlde are set downe? vnto Geographers. Set Geographie asyde, you shal neyther be able to get intelligences of the situation and strength of any citie, nor of the limites and boundes of any countrey, nor of the rule and gouernement of any kingdome, nor be able wel to trauayle out of your owne doores. wil you see what wise and experte traueylers, skilful in geometry and Astronomy, (for that is to bee a Geographer in deede) be able to doe? Looke you on the King of Portugales title: the two partes, of the three therein, were atchiued by Vasques Gama, and other traueylers aduentures. Consider the frutes, the drugges, the pearle, the treasure, the millions of golde and siluer, the Spanyardes haue brought out of the VVest Indies since the first viage of Columbus: The great commodities our nation reapeth by the traueyle of our countrey men into Barbary, Guiny, and Moscouia, wil be a sufficient testimony vnto all vs Englishmen, what it is to be a skilful traueyler, what to bee a paineful Geographer, and learned. Desire of rule breedeth victories, victories come by cōquestes, conquestes are furthered by traueyle, traueyle can not bee maynteyned without great wealth, wealth maketh all traueyle pleasant. The North-westerne vyage, be it neuer so full of difficulties, will become as plausible as any other iourney, if our passengers may returne with plentie of siluer, silkes, and pearle. Let Columbus, Americus, Cortesius, be wel set foorth againe, and bountefully

Kyng of  
Portugale  
& Algarbs,  
Lorde of  
Guinea, of  
the cōquest,  
nauigation,  
and trafike  
into Ethio-  
pia, Arabia,  
Persia, & In-  
dia,

## The Epistle.

ly rewarded, you shal heare of other newe found  
landes yet altogether vnknown. Let Gama be  
set in place, and Gama will tell you the situation,  
the maners, the force and wealth of forreyne na-  
tions, for Gama his endeour was, not onely by  
his friend Coelius to descrye the countrey wher-  
soever he came, but also to learne him selfe the  
riches, strength, and conditions of the people.  
Honour maynteyneth arte: and the skill in Ge-  
ography, as all other sciences, hath but a tyme of  
preferment, the whiche than chiefly myght bee  
looked for, whan it is most esteemed. This in the  
noble mynde of Cadamust bred that earnest de-  
sire, after Don Henrico his example, to traueyle,  
to pen his owne aduentures into the Southeast  
and East partes, to make the nauigation of Gama  
and his companions known vnto the worlde.  
The occasions, the good successe, the great com-  
modities wherof, Barros a counsellor of the Por-  
tugale Kyng, paynted out long agoe in manye  
bookes, Oforius of late, historically hath written  
the same in fewe. This made Marcus Paulus Ve-  
netus a courtier in Tartary, Hayton the Arme-  
nian to become a Frenchman, Lewes Vartoman-  
ne a traueyler in Ethiopia, Brocardus an inhabi-  
ter of Iury, & eche one of them to leaue his pain-  
ful iorney with posteritie in wrytyng. This enfla-  
med the Spanyardes to take vppon them the dis-  
couery of the VVest and Southwestern landes,  
done and written by Columbus, Pinzonus, Al-  
fonsus, Cortesius, and Americus, of whom that  
region America hath name. VVhose long letters  
and tedious reportes of thinges there brought to  
passe

## The Epistle.

passe in the conquest of that halfe worlde, the  
straunge beastes, the sundry sortes of fruites, the  
ioyes and riches the whiche that countrey yeel-  
deth, the manners and fashions of the people,  
their cities, and princely palaces, theyr nobilitie,  
their maner of gouernement, their warres, theyr  
seruile estate vnder the kynges of Spayne, their  
conuerfion vnto the Christian fayth, P. Martyr a  
learned and graue man, borne at Angleria in the  
duchy of Milane, then President of the Spanish  
kinges counsell for the west Indies, gathered in-  
to one volume, and leauing a side all superfluous  
narrations, made thereof, as it were, one brieft  
and continuall historie. This volume deuided he  
into eyght Decades, after the Greeke worde, so  
calling the sundry parcels thereof, for that eche  
one conteyneth in it ten particuler bookes or  
chapters. R. Eden our countreyman dyd into  
English, whan K. Philippe was in Englande, the  
three first Decades, and the fourth also, though  
vnder a wrong title, according to the Dutche  
Printers edition, wherein the fift, sixte, seuenth,  
and eight Decades were lefte out. He translated  
moreouer Gonzales Ferdinandus Ouiedus bre-  
uiary of the west Indies, & geathered together  
out of many myghty and huge workes, some  
other pretty pamphlettes concernyng the Spany-  
ardes and Portugalles voiajes into the late dis-  
couered lands, adding thereto certeine discour-  
ses of the north partes. These his aforesayde do-  
inges, as fewe mennes workes at the first come  
exactly abroad, this paynefull translatour myn-  
ded, if not to amende, at the least to augment,  
by

The Epistle.

by puttyng thereunto in English Lewes Vartomannus Nauigation into Ægypte, Arabia, Siria, Persia, and India, with our Merchantes Moscouian and Persian trauelles: but death preuented his purpose, not suffryng him to accomplish his desire.

Christian charitie therefore vnto the party departed, caused me to helpe his workes forward: Nature moued me to take some paynes in placing orderly, that whiche he had confusely gyuen out, the better to direct, and the more to profit the reader: My profession enforced me to cut of some superfluous translations, and to fill vp the rest of his doinges with P. Martyrs other writinges, and finally to furnishe his want with my owne store. Hoping and perswading with my selfe, that if God likewise call me from these worldly Nauigations, and earthly descriptions, before my other trauell in this facultye, taken long since in hande, be ended: some other professor of Cosmography wil so rewarde me after my death, as presently of this dead man I doe deserue. Other credite seeke I none therefore, I loke for no prayse, I hope not for honor, I gape for no gayne by this kind of studie. I knowe this day no place, no preferment, no publike chayre, no ordinarie lecture, no commune stipende, no special reward due vnto the studentes in Geography: no not at this time, when this faculty was neuer more set by: no not in this realme, where yt neuer more florished. The honorable name of a Christian, and the infallible fruites thereof, euer inclined me, euen from my tender yeeres,

The Epistle.

yeeres, for the smal portion of learning that god hath lent me, to do good, if I could, vnto many: and specially to make those my friendes and wel doers knowen vnto the worlde, by whose beneuolence & fauour I doe liue, and am mainteined. In the smal number whereof, for amongst many wel willers I finde but few well doers, your Honor (right noble Lady) my Lorde & you, his noble children and yours, since my first returne from beyond the seas, must I confesse to haue stoode me chiefly in steede: & humbly acknowledge, the first yeerely pension I euer was assured of in England, to haue ben by your Ladiship bestowed on me. VVherefore as I will most willingly yeelde vnto many other of your Honors gētleme to come of great houses, to haue welthier friendes, larger possessions & reuenues than I, to be more actiue, more comely, more wyse, politike, learned, & to haue seene more: so in hūble duety, loyal seruice, sincere affection & good wil to your Honor, I may, I can, I wyl contende with any of them all, euen to the vttermust force and power of my hart, head, body, life, blood, mynd, & soule. In testimony wherof, and full assurance of my seruice vnto you for euer, these last doings of R. Eden newly encreased, my first labours in our language, his history & mine of trauel in the west & East Indies, altogeather in one volume, duetifully do I present vnto your Honour, with al humility praying & most earnestly requesting your good Ladiship, that you will vouchsafe it, & by leysure, in this iourney, the whiche my

## The Epistle.

Lorde and you haue determined into the west countrey, to let your page reade them ouer to your Honours recreation, as one of the principall causes wherefore at this tyme they were set foorth. If varietie of matter, occurrents out of forraigne cuntryes, newes of newe founde landes, the sundry sortes of gouernement, the different manners & fashions of diuers nations, the wonderfull workes of nature, the sightes of straunge trees, fruites, foule, and beastes, the infinite treasure of Pearle, Golde, Siluer, & ioyes may recreate and delight a mynde trauelled in weighty matters, & weered with great affayres: credit me, good Madam, in listning vnto this worke, shall you haue recreation, you shall finde delight in reading ouer these relations, wherein so newe, so straunge, so diuers, so many recreations and delightes of the mynd are expressed. Your Honours good lykyng thereof, wyll be to me no small contentation for this worke paynefully doone, a good occasion spedyly to finish the rest of my owne labours concerning this faculty, a great encouragement and comfort to bestow my whole tyme hereafter only in that study, wherewith all my former knowledge in Philosophy and Geography may ende. The whiche, conueniently now, I am in good hope to perfourme, with my Lorde and your Ladyshyps good leaue, and continuance of my duety and effectuall desire to doe your Honours the better seruice.

*At London the 4. day. of Iuly. 1577.*

*Your Honors seruauant humbly at commaundement.*

*Richarde VVilles.*

\* R. VVilles Preface vnto the Reader, wherein is  
set downe a generall summe as it were of the  
whole worke.



This greate and large volume consisteth principally of foure partes, agreeable vnto those foure corners of the worlde, whereunto the skilfull seamen and merchauntes aduenturers of late yeeres haue chiefly traueiled, and yet specially are wont to resorte. The first part conteyneth foure Decades, The first part,  
the first Decade written by P. Martyr, a learned & graue counsellor of Charles the Emperour fiftie of that name, concerning the Spanyarde voyages Southwestwarde, & theyr famous exploites doone in these newly discovered partes of the worlde, the whiche usually wee now call the west Indies. Hereunto haue we added Gonzalus Eerdinandus Ouiedus bryefe hystorie touching the same matter, so that the first part of our volume hath fve particular bookes. In the first whereof cap. 1. 2. 3. 4. and 5. P. Martir describeth Columbus first and second nauigations and discoueries of certaine Ilandes made by hym specially and his brother. In the 6. chapter of booke thereof (for both names we finde) is set forth Columbus thirde voiage, and the discouery of Peru, in the maigne west Indish lande. In the seuenth, his troubles both in the west Indies, and retourne into Spaigne with his brother, being both prisoners. The 8. is of P. Alfonsus voyages that same way. In the 9. are declared the traualles of Vincent and Peter Pinzoni, and other Spantiards likewise thither from Palos. The 10. is a conclusion of the whole Decade, with particuler mention of some special nouelties, & Columbus fourth voiage begonne. So that in the first Decade you haue hystorically set downe the discouerye of the west Indies, taken in hande about the yeere of our Lorde. 1492. by Columbus and his companions, vntill the yeere 1510. as P. Martir wienesseth fol. 8. 43. 47. and 54. This worthy traualer and skilfull seaman died at Validolid in Spaigne. An. dom. 1506. as Lopez reporteth cap. 25. in his generall hystorie de las Indias.

The second Decade conteyneth Peru matters, entituled by P. Martir, Creditus Cortimens, that is, a continent of maigne lande, as The second  
Decade.

## The preface.

in deede it is of it selfe with the rest of *America*, in lyke manner as *Europe*, *Affryk*, & *Asia*, be one continent or maighe lande vnited togeather. In the fyrst and seconde chapters of this Decade, shall you reade the voyages of *Fogeda* and *Nicuesa*, to *Dariena*. In the thyrde, *Colmenaris* traunayles, *Nicuesa* his deaith, and the *Indishe* kyng *Comogrus* bencuolence: In the fourth, *Vasquez Nunez* doynges in *Vraba* gulfe. His conquest of rebellious Barbarian kyngs in the fyfte. In the syxt *Quicedus* & *Colmenaris* ambassage out of *Dariena* to *Hispaniola*, and the religion of king *Commendator* in *Cuba*. The seuenth booke containeth *Petrus Arias* toynep to *Paria* in *Peru*. The 8. the dissention betwixt the *Spaniards* and *Portugales* for theyr boundes, and makynge of fyue Bishops in these newly founde partes of the worlde. In the 9 are shewed the ryuers of *Dariena*, and phillosophically the causes of so great waters there. That countrey is described in the 10 and the extre me hunger, abydden by the companions of *Nicuesa*, set forth.

The third Decade.

In the fyrst, second, and thyrde chapters of the thyrde Decade, is conteyned an abridgement of *Vasquez Nunez* relations, concerning his voyage to the south sea, for it lyeth south from *Dariena*, vsually termed nowe a dayes *Mar del Zur*, and may also be called the wyde east *Indyshe* Ocean. The discouery thereof made by *Nunez*, the kyng subdued by hym, especially kyng *Comogrus* christenynge by the name of *Charles*, and the wympynge of kyng *Tumanama* or *Tubanama* and his countrey. In the fourth chapter shall you fynd *Columbus* fourth vyage, began *An. do. 1502* to the mayne west *Indyshe* lande, with the description of some part therof, lying betwixt our *Atlantike* or *western* Ocean, and the aforesayde *Mar del Zur*, as *Vraba*, and *Beragua*. In respecte of the history and course of *reces*, this booke myght haue been placed before the seconde Decade, but it shoulde seeme that these reportes came no sooner to *P. Martyr* his handes, wherefore he began this fourth booke ryght well thus. I was determined. &c. The fyfth booke conteyneth *P. Arias* toynep mentioned dec. 2 lib. 7. to the north syde of *Peru*, wherein *Carthagena* and *S. Martha*, two famous hauens, do stande, with a description of the countrey and people thereof. In the syxt you haue a disputation touching the *Leuant* streame or easterne surge of the sea, the discouery of

## To the Reader.

of *Baccalaos* done by *Cabot*. *P. Arias* arriuall in *Dariena*, the building of *S. Maria antiqua* there, with other fortresses, finally the commodities and vnwholesomnesse of *Dariena*. In the 7 8. & 9 bookes, shall you haue a description of *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, and other Ilandes thereabout, done by *Andreas Moralis*. And in the 10 shall you reade of the Ilande *Dines* in *Mar del Zur*, of the kyng therof subdued by *Andreas Moralis*, of *Pearles* & the finding thereof, of *Petrus Arias* Captaynes doynges agaynst the *Caniballes*, of the *Barbares* fowlyng, & the manner of the geathering of gold in *Dariena*.

The fourth Decade, for so was it named in the *Spaniards* edition of *P. Martyr* his woorkes set forth at *Alcala* in *Spainne* *An. do. 1530*. though the *Basile* and *Cullen* printers haue entituled it, *De insulis nuper inuentis*, that is, of Ilandes lately found out, to wyt, after *Columbus* voyages: this booke I say was by *P. Mar.* culled out of the *Indian* registers, conteynynge speciall notes that seemed vnto hym most meete to be publyshed: as the discouery of certayne Ilandes and creekes, namely *Iucatan* (done by *Fernandes* of *Corduba* & his companions) *Cozumella*, the Ilands of *Sacrifice*, the Ilandes of women, the prouince *Coluacan* and *Palmaria* &c. by *Iohn Grialua* & his felowes: the *Iucaians* captiuitie and discouery of *Florida* made by those *Spaniards* which *Diego Velasquez* sent out of *Cuba*, and *Ferd. Cortezius* fyrst navigation, wherein he conquered *Potanchana* in newe *Spainne*, the death of *Valdiuia*, & execution of *Vasquez Nunez*, king *Mutezūa* his presentes to *Charles* the Emperour, his bookes, letters, and superstitions, finally the ruine of *Hispaniola*, and utter decaye thereof, if heede shoulde not be taken in tyme.

The fourth Decade.

Last of al *Gonzalus Ferdinandus Ouedus* historye containeth in 18. seuerall chapters (eche one whereof hath his proper title) a bryefe declaration of the west *Indyshe* navigation, of the metals the which are found in those lately discouered lands, of the manners of the people, rites, customes, and ceremonies, of the beastes, foules, byrdes, wormes, fyshes, seas, riuers, springes, trees, plantes, hearbes, & diuers other thinges that are engendred there both on the land & in the water. To this haue we addeed certayne speciall reports of new *Spainne* or *Mexico*, of *Peru*, of *Rio de la Plata*, & the countrey lying therunto, of the landes *Laborador* & *Baccalaos*, with the discoueryng of *Florida*. And thus muche for the fyrst part of this volume.

The



## To the Reader.

The seconde part of this worke appeareth what it is, by the title thereof set downe. Fol. 230. to wylt, a discourse to proue that there is a passage to the *Moluccaes* by the north-west, the whiche presently *M. Cap. Furbisher* attempteth, with certayne reportes of the prouince *China* in *Cathayo*, where he hath to strike in his voyage, and thynke of *Giapan*, and other Ilandes by the way. The whiche seconde part, wherein matter concernyng the north-west is handled, is so muche the shorter, by how much the fyrst part seemed ouerlong: besydes that the particularities of this corner of the worlde are not yet so thoroughly knownen, but that other writers shal doubtlesse in moze ample maner employe theyr labour therein after the returne of our northwesterner tra- uaylers. The which I wyshe to be most happie and prosperous, as they most valiantly & painefully, to the renoune of our Eng- lysh nation, do shewe to haue taken it in hande.

In the thyrd part shal you fynd a discription of the northea- sterne frosty seas and kingdomes lying that way: as *Mosconia*, *Schondia*, or *Denmarke*, *Groenlande*, *Islande*, *Laponia*, *Norway*, *Sue- cia*, or *Swethlande*, *Botnia*, and *Gothlande*: out of *Zeiglerus*, *Pau- lus Iouius*, *Haiton*, and *Sebastian* free lord or *Baron* of *Herbestein*, with the countreys as well north and northeast beyond *Mosconia*, namely *Petzora*, *Iubra*, and other prouinces of the *Tartars*: as also the voyages made through *Mosconia* by the merchauntes of *London* into *Persia*, conteinyng many speciall thynges woorth the knowledge, both of the countrey it self, the commodities there- of, the manners of the people, and the priuiledges graunted vnto our merchauntes by the *Sophie* or *Shah* the *Persian* kyng.

Finally in the fourth part are set downe our merchauntes voyages into *Guinea*, and the other parcelles of *Affrike* lying towardes the Southeast, *Lewes Vertomannus* nauigations into *Egypte*, *Ethiopia*, *Arabia*, *Syria*, *Persia*, and east *India*, euen to the fruitefull *Moluccaes*, with the prices of drugges and other wares brought from thence. Thereto for a con- clusion, haue we added partly out of *Maximilian Translucanus* let- ter wyrtten vnto the Cardinall of *Saltzburge*, and partly out of *P. Martyrs* other woorkes, that famous nauigation made round about the whole worlde: the contention betwixte the *Portugales* and *Spanyarde* for the *Moluccaes*, & the decyding thereof by

## To the Reader.

*Pope Alexander* the syxt: and last of all the abridgement of *P. Martyrs* foure last *Decades*, wherein especially that noble and gloriouse conquest of *Mexico* is wyrtten. Generally this much of the foure partes of this large volume. The lesser parcelles and speciall matter conteyned in eche part, you haue so exactly rehearsed in the table of the *Decades*. Fol. 173. and in the res- pect of the whole woorkes before eche chapter so evidently set downe, that any particular table thereof at al the reader greatly needeth not, if so be that he be able to remember in what region of the worlde, East, West, North, or South, that be, the which he looketh for.

Nowe concernyng *R. Edens* owne doynges, spncerely to say what I thynke, and curteously to pccide hym that due prayse the whiche woorthly these his labours deserue, yet not to flatter hym neither, where any faulte hath ben committed: as hyghly he was to be commended for Englyshyng so straunge, so wonder- full, so profitable histories as these are, nothyng inferior to the bookes of auncient writers, far exceedyng the multitude of foo- lysh commentaries and frivulous translations, to to licentiousely bled in our tyme: So may the gentle reader forbear his ouer- syghte, in so great a woorkes, where some Spanysh prouerbe, harsh latine phrase, or vncleane speache may seeme hardly Eng- lyshed, or any rather note to shame the terte. I woulde excuse hym for translating the dayes by the latine names, as Fol. 12. *Non. April. thus. At the Ides of Apryll. item, 3. Idus Octobris. thus. The thyrd daye of the Ides of October. item. Fol. 17. tertio Kalend. Maij. thus. The thyrd daye before the Kalendes of Maye: mea- nyng in deede, the fyfth daye of Apryll, the .13. day of October, the 29. of Apryll: but therein it shoulde seeme that he folowed his owne humoz, for he obserueth the same phrase of transla- tyng throughout *P. Martyrs* whole woorkes. Many of his Eng- lysh woordes cannot be excused in my opinion for synclinyng to much of the Latine, as *Dominators. Fol. 5. Ponderouse. Fol. 23. Ditionaries. Fol. 25. Portentouse. Fol. 28. Antiques. Fol. 31. des- picable. Fol. 387. Solicitate. Fol. 76. obsequious. Fol. 90. homicide. Fol. 390. imbibed. Fol. 395. Destructiue. Fol. 276. Prodigious**

To the Reader.

Prodigious. fol. 279. with other such lyke: in the Steele of Loyds,  
weyghie, subiectes, wonderfull, auncient, lowe, carefull, duetti-  
full, manslaughter, drunken, noysome, monstrous. &c. the which  
faulces he confelleth in other his owne verses, wytyng thus of  
hym selfe.

I haue not for euery worde asked counsaile  
of eloquent Eliot, or Sir Thomas Moore:  
Take it therefore as I haue intended,  
the faulces with fauour may soone be amended.

*Certayne Preambles here folowe, gea-  
thered by R. Eden, for the better vn-  
derstanding of the whole worke.*



Of the fyrst discoueryng of the  
west Indies.

**A** Certayne Carauel saylyng in the West Ocean, about the coastes of Spayne, had a forcybly and continuall wynde from the East, wherby it was dyuen to a land unknowen, and not described in any map or carde of the sea, and was dyuen styl along by the coaste of the same for the space of many dayes, vntyll it came to a haven, where in a short tyme the most part of the maryners, beyng long before very weake and feble by reason of hunger and trauayll, dyed: So that onely the Pilot, with three or foure other, remayned aloue. And not only they that dyed, dyd not inioye the Indies whiche they fyrst discouered to theyr myfortune, but the resydue also that lyued had in maner as litle fruition of the same: not leauyng, or at the least not openly publyshyng any memoire thereof, neyther of the place, or what it was called, or in what peere it was founde: Albeit, the fault was not theyrs, but rather the malice of other, or the enuie of that which we call fortune. I do not therfore marueyle, that the auncient histories affyrme, that great thynges procede and increase of small and obscure begynnynge, syth we haue seene the same verfyed in this fynding of the Indies, being so notable and newe a thyng. We neede not be curious to seeke the name of the Pilot, syth death made a short ende of his doynges. Some wyl, that he came from *Andaluzia*, and traded to the Ilandes of *Cannaria*, and the Iland of *Madera*, when this large and mortal nauigation chaunced vnto hym. Other say that he was a *Byscanne*, and traded into Englande and Fraunce. Other also, that he was a *Portugale*, & that either he went or came from *Mina* or *India*: which agreeth well with the name of these newe landes, as I haue sayd before. Agayne, some there be that say that he brought the Carauel to *Portugale*, or to the Iland of *Madera*, or to some other of the Ilandes called *De los Azores*. Yet do none of them affyrme any thyng, although they all affirme that the Pilot dyed in the house of *Christopher Colon*, with whom remayned all suche wytynges and annotations as he had made of his voyage in the said Carauell, as well of such thynges as he obserued both by land and sea, as also of the eleuation of the pole in those landes whiche he had discouered.

at harde begyn-  
nyng.

The Pilot that  
fyrst founde the  
Indies.

*Mina*.

At

VWhat

VWhat maner of man Christopher Colon (otherwyse called Columbus) was, and how he came fyrst to the knowledge of the Indies.

**C**hristopher Colon was borne in *Cugureo*, or (as some say) in *Nerui*, a byllage in the territorie of *Genua* in *Italie*. He descended as some thynke, of the house of the *Pelestreles* of *Placentia* in *Lumbardie*. He begaune of a chyld to be a maryner: of whose arte they haue great exercise on the ryuer of *Genua*. He traded many peeres into *Suria*, and other partes of the East. After this, he became a maister in makynge cardes for the sea, whereby he had great bantage. He came to *Portugale* to know the reason & description of the south coastes of *Affrica*, and the nauigations of the *Portugales*, thereby to make his cardes more perfecte to be solde. He maryed in *Portugale*, as some say: or as many say, in the *Ilande* of *Madera*, where he dwelt at suche tyme as the sayd *Carauell* arryued there, whose *Pilot* sojourned in his house, and dyed also there, bequeathynge to *Colon* his carde of the description of suche newe landes as he had found, whereby *Colon* had the fyrst knowledge of the *Indies*. Some haue thought y<sup>e</sup> *Colon* was wel learned in y<sup>e</sup> *Latine* tongue and the science of *Colinographie*: and that he was thereby fyrst moued to seeke the landes of *Antipodes*, and the ryche *Ilande* of *Cipango*, wherof *Marchus Paulus* wyrteth. Also that he had redde what *Plato* in his dialoges of *Timeus* and *Cricias*, wyrteth of the great *Ilande* of *Atlantide*, and of a great land in the west Ocean vndiscovered, beyng bygger then *Asia* and *Affrica*. Furthermore that he had knowledge what *Aristotell* and *Theophrastus* saye in theyr bookes of *maruayles*, where they wyte that certayne merchauntes of *Carthage*, saylyng from the streyghes of *Gibraltar* toward the West and South, founde after many dayes a great *Ilande* not inhabited, yet replenyshed with al thynges requisite, and hauing many nauigable ryuers. In dedde *Colon* was not greatly learned: yet of good understanding. And when he had knowledge of the sayde newe landes by the information of the dead *Pilot*, made relation thereof to certeyne learned men, with whom he conferred as touching y<sup>e</sup> like thynges mentioned of olde autours. He communicated this secrete and

Colon was not much learned.

Colon conferred with learned men.

and conferred chiefly with a fryer, named *Iohn Perez* of *Maribena*, that dwelt in the monastery of *Rabida*. So that I verily beleue, that in maner all that he declared, and many thynges more that he least vnspoken, were wyrtten by the sayde *Spanyshe Pilot* that dyed in his house. For I am perswaded, that if *Colon* by science attained to the knowledg of the *Indies*, he would long before haue communicat this secrete to his owne countrey men the *Genueses*, that trauallye all the worlde for gaynes, and not haue come into *Spayne* for this purpose. But doubtelesse he neuer thought of any such thyng, before he chaunced to be acquainted with the sayde *Pilot*, who founde those landes by fortune, accordyng to the saying of *Plinie*, *Quod ars docere non potuit, casus inuenit*. That is, That arte coulde not teache, chaunce founde. Albeit, the more *Christian* opinion is, to thynke that God of his singuler prouidence and infinite goodnesse, at the length with eyes of compassion as it were lookyng downe from heauen vpon the sonnes of *Adam*, so long kept vnder *Sarchans* captiuitie, intended euen then (for causes to hym onely knowen) to rapse those wyndes of mercy whereby that *Carauell* (herein most lyke vnto the shyppe of *Noe*, whereby the remnant of the whole worlde was saued, as by this *Carauell* this newe worlde receyued the fyrst hope of theyr saluation) was dyscuen to these landes. But we wyll now declare what great thynges folowed of this small begynnynge, and howe *Colon* folowed this matter, reuealed vnto hym not without Gods prouidence.

VWhat labour and trauayle Colon tooke in attemptyng his fyrst voyage to the Indies.

**A**fter the death of the *Pilot* & maryners of the *Spanyshe Carauell* that discouered y<sup>e</sup> *Indies*, *Christopher Colon* purposed to seeke the same. But in howe muche more he despyred this, the lesse was his power to accomplysh his desire. For, besyde that of hym selfe he was not able to furnyshe one shyppe, he lacked also the fauoure of a kynge, vnder whose protection he myght so enioye the ryches he hoped to fynde, that none other myght take the same from hym, or defeate him therof.

And

And

And seying the kyng of Portugale occupied in the conquest of Africa, and the Nauigations of the East, whiche were then fyrst attempted, the kyng of Castyle ykewyle no lesse bulged in the warres of Granada, he sent to his brother Bartholomewe Colon (who was also priuie to this secreete) to praciise with the kyng of England (Henry the seuenth) beyng very ryche and without warres, promysing to byng hym great ryches in short tyme, if he woulde shewe hym fauour, and furnyshe hym with shypps to discouer the newe Indies, whereof he had certayne knowledge. But neyther here beyng able to byng his sute to passe, he caused the matter to be moued to the kyng of Portugale Don Alonso, the fyfth of that name: at whose handes he founde neither fauour nor mony, forasmuch as the Licenciat Calzadilla the bishop of Viseo, and one maister Rodrigo, men of credite in the science of Cosmographie, withstoode hym, and contended that there neither was nor cou'de any golde or other ryches be founde in the west, as Colon affirmed. By reason whereof he was very sad and pensiue: but yet was not discouraged, or despaired of the hope of his good aduenture, which he afterwarde founde. This doone, he tooke shyppyng at Lisburne, and came to Palos of Moguer, where he communed with Martin Alonso Pinzon, an expert Pilot, who offered hym selfe vnto hym. After this, disclosyng the whole secretes of his mynd to Iohn Perez of Marchena (a fryer of the order of saint Frances in Rabida, & well learned in Cosmographie) and declaryng vnto hym howe by folowynge the course of the Sunne by a temperate voyage, ryche and great landes myght be founde: the fryer greatly commended his enterpryse, and gaue hym counsaile to breake the matter to the Duke of Medina Sidonia, Don Enrique of Guzman, a great lord, and very ryche: and also to Don Luis of Cerda, the Duke of Medina Celi, who at that time had great prouision of shypps wel furnysed in his hauens of Santa Maria. But whereas both these Dukes tooke the matter for a dreame, and as a thyng deuised of an Italian decepuer, who (as they thought) had before with lyke pretence deluded the kynges of Englande and Portugale, the fryer gaue hym courage to go to the courte of the Catholyke princes Don Ferdinando, and lady Isabell princes of Castyle, affirmyng that they woulde be ioyfull of suche newes: And for his better furtherance herein, wrote

Kyng Henry the seuenth.

Barnarbe knewe not all thynges.

letters by hym to fryer Ferdinando of Talauera the queenes confessor. Christopher Colon therfore, repayred to the courte of the Catholyke princes, in the peere .1486. and deliuered vnto theyr handes the petition of his request, as concernyng the discoueryng of the newe Indies. But they beyng more careful, and applying all theyr mynde howe they myght dypue the Moores out of the kyngdome of Granada, whiche greate enterpryse they had already taken in hande, dyd lyttle or nothyng esteeme the matter. But Colon not thus discouraged, founde the meanes to declare his sute to suche as had sometymes priuate communication with the kyng. Yet because he was a straunger, and went but in simple apparell, nor otherwyle credited then by the letter of a gray frier, they beleued hym not, neyther gaue eare to his wordes, where by he was greatly tormented in his imagination. Onely Alonso of Quintanilia, the kynges chiefe auditour, gaue hym meate and dypnke at his owne charges, and hearde gladly such thynges as he declared of the landes not then founde: despying hym in the meane tyme to be content with that poore enterteynment, and not to despayre of his enterpryse: puttyng hym also in good conforte that he shoulde, at one tyme or other, come to the speache of the Catholyke princes. And thus shortly after, by the meanes of Alonso of Quintanilia, Colon was brought to the ptesence and audience of the Cardinall Don Pero Gonzales of Mendoza, archbishop of Toledo, a man of great reuenues and authoritie with the kyng and queene, who brought hym before them, after that he well perceined and examined his intent. And by this meanes was his sute hearde of the Catholyke princes, who also redde the booke of his memorials whiche he presented vnto them. And although at the fyrst they tooke it for bayne and false that he promysed, neuerthelesse they put hym in good hope that he shoulde be well dispatched when they had synysed the warres of Granada whiche they had nowe in hande. With which answer, Colon began to reuyue his spirites, with hope to be better esteemed, and more fauorably to be hearde among the gentelmen & noble men of the courte, who before tooke hym onely for a craftie felowe and decepuer: and was nothyng dismayde or discouraged when soeuer he debated the matter with them, although many iudged hym phantasticall, as is the maner of ignorant men, to cal all

The conquest of Granada.

The archbishop of Toledo.

At iii

such

suche as attempt any thyng beyonde theyr reache, and the compasse of theyr knowledge, thynkyng the worlde to be no bygger then the cages wherein they are brought by and lyue. But to returne to Colon. So hotte and vrgente was the siege of Granada, that they presently graunted hym his demaunde to seeke the newe landes, and to hyng from thence golde, syluer, pearles, precious stones, spices, and suche other ryche thynges. They gaue hym also the tenth part of all the reuenues and customes due vnto the kyng, of all such landes as he shoulde discover, not doyng preiudice in any thyng to the kyng of Portugal. The particulars of this agreement were made in the towne called *Sancta Fe*: and the priuiledge of the rewarde in Granada the .xxx. daye of Apryll, the same yeeve that the citie was woonne. And whereas the sayde Catholyke princes had not mony presently to dispatch Colon, Luis of .S. Angel, the kynges secretary of accounts, lent them syxe *Quentes* of *Maraz*, whiche in a grosse summe make .xvi. thousande ducades.

In the scutcheon of armes geuen to Columbus by Don Ferdinand do and queene Isabella, these verses were written.

Por Castella, y por Leon. Nuevo mundo hallo Colon.

For Castile and for Leon.

A newe worlde founde was by Colon.

VWhy they were called Indies.

Some thynke that the people of the newe worlde were called Indians, bycause they are of the colour of the east Indians. And although (as it seemeth to me) they dyffer much in colour and fashions, yet is it true, that of India they were called Indians. India is properly called that great prouince of Asia, in the whiche great Alexander kepte his warres, and was so named of the ryuer *Indus*: and is diuided into many kyngdomes contynnyng with the same. From this great India (called the East India) came great companyes of men, as wytteth *Herodotus*, and inhabited that part of Ethiopia that lyeth betweene the sea *Bermeia* (otherwyse called the red sea, or y<sup>e</sup> gulle of Arabia) and the ryuer of *Nilus*: all whiche regions that great Christian prester Iohn doth now possess. The said Indians preynted so much, that they utterly chaunged the customes and name

name of that lande, and called it India: by reason whereof, Ethiopia also hath of long tyme ben called India. And hereupon came it that *Aristotle*, *Seneca*, and certayne other olde authours sayd, that India was not farre from Spayne. After this also, of later dayes our west India was so called, of the sayde India of *Prester Iohn* where the Portugales had theyr trade: For the pilot of the Carauell that was fyrst dyuen by forcible wynde to an unknowen lande in the west Ocean, called the same India, because the Portugales so called such landes as they had lately discovered eastward. *Christophor Colon* also, after the sayd pilot, called the west landes by the same name: Albeit some that take *Colonus* for an expert Cosinographer, thynke that he so named them of the East India, as to be the furthest and unknowen ende thereof, reachyng into the West, vnder the other hemispherie or halfe globe of the earth beneath vs: affirming that when he fyrst attempted to discover the Indies, he went chieflly to seeke the ryche Ilande of *Cipango*, whiche falleth on the part of great China or Cathay, as wytteth *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, and other: And that he shoulde sooner come thither by folowynge the course of the Sunne Westward, then agaynst the same.

Of the colour of the Indians.

One of the marueylous thynges y<sup>e</sup> God vseth in the composition of man, is colour: whiche doubtesse can not be consydered without great admiration, in holdyng one to be whyte, and an other blacke, beyng colours utterly contrary: some lyketwys to be yelow, whiche is betweene blacke and white: and other of other colours, as it were of diuers lieries. And as these colours are to be marueyled at, euen so is it to be considered, howe they dyffer one from an other, as it were by degrees, forasmuch as some men are whyte after dyuers sortes of whitnes, yelow after diuers maners of yelow, & blacke after dyuers sortes of blacknes: & how from white they go to yelow by discolouring to browne & red, and to blacke by ashe colour, & murry, somewhat lighter then blacke, & tawny like vnto the west Indians, which are altogether in general either purple or tawny,

The colour of the west Indians.

A iii

lyke

The colour of the East Indians.

## The colour of the Indians.

lyke unto some Quines, or of the colour of Chestnutes or Lynes, which colour is to them naturall: and not by theyr goyng naked, as many haue thought: albeit theyr nakednesse haue somewhat helped thereto. Therefore in lyke manner, and with suche diuersitie as men are commonly whyte in Europe, and blacke in Affrike, euen with lyke varietie are they tawney in these Indies, with diuers degrees diuersly inclinyng more or lesse to blacke or whyte. No lesse marueyle is it to consider, that men are white in Guille, and blacke at the cape of Buena Speranza, and of Chestnut colour at the ryuer of Plata, being all in equall degrees from the Equinoctiall lyne. Lykewyse, that the men of Affrike and Asia, that lyue vnder the burnt line (called Zona Torrida) are blacke: and not they that lyue beneath, or on this syde the same lyne, as in Mexico, Iucatán, Quauhtema, Lian, Nicaragua, Panama, Santo Domingo, Paria, Cape Saint Augustine, Lima, Quito, and other landes of Peru, which touche in the same Equinoctiall. For in all the tracte of these coastes, certayne blacke men were founde only in Quarequa, when Vascus Nunnez of Balboa discovered the sea of Sur. By reason whereof it may seeme, that such varietie of colours proceedeth of man, and not of the earth: which may wel be, although we be al borne of Adam & Eve, & know not the cause why God hath so ordeyned it, otherwise then to consider that his diuine maiestie hath done this, as infinite other, to declare his omnipotencie and wiseborne, in such diuersities of colours, as appeare not only in the nature of man, but the like also in beasts, byrdes, and floures, where diuers and contrary colours are seene in one litle feather, or the leaues growyng out of one litle stalke. An other thing is also greatly to be noted, as touching these Indians: and this is, that their heare is not curld, as is the Hoopes and Ethiopians that inhabite the same clime: neyther are they balde, excepte very seldome, and that but litle. All whiche thynges may geue further occasions to Philosophers to searche the secrettes of nature, and complexions of men, with the nouelties of the newe worlde.

Gods wyse  
dome & power  
is seene in his  
workes.

## A most auncient testimonie of the

VVest Indies, by the writing of the diuine

Philosopher Plato.



Plato in his famous and diuine Dialogue, named *Timeus*, where he entreateth of the vniuersall nature and frame of the whole worlde, taketh for his principle the moste auncient hystorie of an Ilande, in tyme of great antiquitie, named *Atlantides*, making also mention of the kyng, people, and inhabitantes of the same: and that they kept warre agaynst the *Atheniens*, and were ouercome of them. Plato also there inducing the sayde hystorie to be rehearsed by one named *Critia*, who affirmed that he had often hearde it of his Uncle, who was in the tyme of *Solon*, one of the seuen sages of the Grekes. This *Critia* declared, that when *Solon* went into Egypt to a certayne citie named *Sdim*, situate vpon the riuer of *Nilus*, where the diuision and recurryng of the riuer, maketh the Ilande *Delta*, he there spake with certayne learned priestes, very skylful in knowledge of antiquities of many worlde's past. Insomuch that they made mention of manye thinges that were before the flood of *Noe*, or *Deucalion*, and also before the vniuersal conflagration or burning of the worlde in the tyme of *Pheton*, forasmuche as the warres betweene the people of the sayde Ilande of *Atlantides* and the *Atheniens*, was long before the general flood, and the conflagration aforesayde. Plato induceth the priest, speaking to *Solon* in maner as foloweth.

Thinges most marueylous and true (O *Solon*) remaine in auncient wrytynges and memorie of our predecessours, and olde ages long before our tymes. But aboute all thynges, one exceedeth al admiration for the greatnesse and singularitie thereof, whiche is this: It is in our recordes of moste antiquities, that in times past your citie of *Athens* hath oftentimes kepte warres agaynst an innumerable multitude of nations whiche came from the sea *Atlantike*, in maner into al Europe and Asia: whereas nowwe appeareth no suche nation, forasmuche as the sayde sea is nowwe al ouer nauigable: And yet at that tyme had,

in the mouth, and as it were in the entrie (where you place the Columnes of Hercules) an Ilande whiche was sayd to be much greater then al *Africa* and *Asia*, and that from thence was passage to many other Ilandes neare thereabout, and from the sayde Ilandes to the continent of sygne lande, whiche was right ouer agaynst it neare vnto the sea: Yet, that within the mouth, there was a litle gulf with a porte: the deepe sea without, was the true sea, and the lande without was the true continent. This Ilande was named *Atlantides*, and in it was a kynge of marueylous great power and myght, who had the dominion of the sayde Ilande, and many other, and also a great part of the continent lande whereof we haue spoken, and muche more towarde our partes also, forasmuche as they were dominatours of the thyrde part of the worlde, conteynyng *Africa*, *Egypt*, and *Europe*, euen vnto the sea *Tirrhenum*. The power therefore of them being then so great, they came to inuade both your countrey and ours, and all other that are within the Columnes of Hercules. Then (O *Solon*) the vertue of your citie shewed it selfe famous in magnanimitie and feates of armes, with the assemblance of the other Grecians, in resystynge theyr great power, vntyl you had dyuen them out of our lands, and restored vs to our libertie. But shortly after that this enterpryse was atchiued, besel a marueylous great earthquake, and exundation of ouerflowing of the sea, which continued for the space of one day and nyght: In the whiche the earth opened it selfe, and inglutted all those valiant and warlike men, and the sayde Ilande *Atlantides* sunke into the bottome of the sea, whiche was the occasion that neuer from that tyme forwarde, any shipp coulde sayle that way, by reason of the great mudde and sygne whiche remayned of the drowned Ilande.

This is the summe of those thynges whiche olde *Critia* sayde he had vnderstoode of *Solon*. And certaynely these wordes of *Plato* of the said Iland, haue caused great contention among many great Philosophers, which haue wrytten commentaries vpon the sayde Dialogue of *Timeus* composed by *Plato*: Insomuche that the same in those dayes being vnto us vnknown, many haue taken this narration of *Solon*, for an allegorical fable, and haue interpreted the same in diuers senses and meanynge. But it may

6  
may now well appeare the true meanynge hereof to be this: that *Plato* intendynge to wryte of the vniuersall frame of the worlde, the whiche he knewe to be made an habitation for the diuine best man, and also beholdynge therein the great ornament and beautie of the heauen and starres, whereby man myght knowe his God and creatour, it myght seeme to hym a thyng to farre from reason, that only two partes thereof shoulde be inhabited, and the other part desolate and depriued of men: and that the Sunne and starres might seeme to shewe theyr lyght only halfe theyr course without profite, shining only vpon the sea and desolate places, destitute of man and other liuing creatures. And therefore *Plato* had in great admiration the hystorie of the sayde Egyptian priest, makynge mention of an other part of the worlde besyde *Asia*, *Europa*, and *Africa*, and thought it woorthie to be rehearsed in the beginning of his diuine Dialogue aforesayde. We ought therefore certaynely to thinke our selues most bounde vnto God, that in these our tymes it hath pleased hym to reueale and discouer this secrete in the syndynge of this newe worlde, whereby we are certaynely assured, that vnder our Pole starre, and vnder the Equinoctial line, are most goodlye and ample regions, as well and commodiously inhabited, as are other partes of the worlde best knowne vnto vs.

The testimonie of the Poet *Seneca* in his Tragedie  
*De Medea*, where by the spirite of  
Poetical furie, he sayth,

*Venient annis*  
*Secula seris, quibus Oceanus*  
*Vincula rerum laxet, et ingens*  
*Pateat tellus, Typhisque nouos*  
*Detegat Orbes,*  
*Nec sit terris, vltima Thyle.*

Whiche may be thus Englished,

In late peeres newe wordes shalbe founde,  
And newe landes shal then appeare on the grounde.

B ii

When



When Typhis Navigation newe worlde shal fynde out,  
Then shal not Chyle for last be left out.

For then shal the Ocean dissolue his large bandes,  
And shewe forth newe worlde, regions, and landes.

*To the moste noble prince and ca-  
tholike kynge, Charles, Perer Martyr of An-  
gleria wisheth perpetual felicitie.*



The largenesse  
of the Ocean  
unknowen  
to this day.

The diuine prouidence, from the time that  
he fyrst created the worlde, hath reserued  
vnto this day the knowledge of the great  
and large Ocean sea: In the whiche tyme  
he hath opened the same, chiefly vnto  
you (moste mightie Prince) by the good  
fourtime and happie successe of your grand-  
father by your mother syde. The same prouidence (I knowe  
not by what destenie) hath brought me out of my native coun-  
trei of Milane, and out of the citie of Rome (where I continued  
almost .x. yeeres) into Spaine, that I myght particularlye col-  
lecte these marueilous and newe thinges, which shoulde othe-  
rwise perhappes haue lien drowned in the whirlepoole of obliui-  
on, forasmuche as the Spanyardes (men worthy great commen-  
dation) had only care to the generall inuentions of these thinges.  
Notwithstanding, I do not chalenge vnto me only, the thanks  
of the trauaile bestowed herein, whereas the chiefe rewarde ther-  
of is due to Alcanius, vicount Cardinal, who perceauyng that I  
was wylling to departe out of the citie to be present at the  
warres of Granatum, dissuaded me from my purpose: But  
seeing that I was fully resolved to departe, exhorted & required  
me to write vnto him suche newes as were famous in Spaine,  
& worthy to be noted. I toke therefore my iourney into Spaine,  
chiefly for the desyre I had to see the expedition whiche was  
prepared agaynst the enimies of the fayth, forasmuche as in  
Italye, by reason of the dissention among the Princes, I  
could fynde nothyng wherewith I myght feede my wytte,  
beyng a younge man despyous of knowledge and experience  
of

Cardinal Al-  
canius.

The warres at  
Granatum ag-  
aynst the  
Moors.

of thynges. I was therefore presente at the warres, from  
whence I writte to Cardinal Alcanius, and by sundry epistles  
certified hym of such thinges as I thought most woorthye to be  
put in memorie. But when I perceiued that his fortune was  
turned from a naturall mother to a stepdame, I ceased from  
wrytyng. Yet after I sawe, that by thourthrowe of the enimies  
of our fayth, Spayne was purged of the Moors, as of an euil  
weede plucked vp by the rootes, lesse I shoulde bestowe my  
slippery yeares in vnprofitable idlenesse, I was mynded to re-  
turne to Italye. But the singuler benignitie of both the Catho-  
lyke kyng and queene now departed, and theyr large promises  
toward me vpon my returre from my legacie of Babylon,  
deteyned me from my purpose. Yet doth it not repent me that I  
drew backe my foote, alwel for that I see in no other place of the  
worlde at this tyme the lyke woorthye thinges to be done: as also  
that in maner throughout all Italye, by reason of the discorde of  
Christian Princes, I perceiued all thynges to runne headlong  
into ruine, the countreys to be destroyed and made fatte with  
humane blood, the cities sacked, virgins and matrones with  
theyr goods and possessions caried away as captiues, and mi-  
serable innocentes without offence to be slayne vnarmed within  
theyr owne houses. Of the whiche calamities, I dyd not onely  
heare the lamentable outcryes, but dyd also feeble the same: For  
euen the blood of myne owne kinsfolkes and frendes, was not  
free from that crueltie. As I was therefore musyng with my  
selfe of these thynges, the Cardinal of Arragone, after that he  
had seene the two fyrst bookes of my Decades wrytten to Alca-  
nius, required me in the name of kyng Frederike his vncle, to  
put forth the other eyght epistle bookes. In the meane tyme  
also, whyle I was boyde of al care as touching the matters of  
the Ocean, the Apostolicall messengers of the byshop of Rome,  
Leo the tenth (by whose holosome counsaile and auctoritie we  
trust the calamities of Italye shalbe fynished) rayled me as it  
were from sleepe, & encouraged me to proceede as I had begun.  
To his holynesse I wrytte two Decades, compysed in shorte  
bookes, after the maner of epistles, and added them to the fyrst,  
whiche was printed without mine aduise, as shal further appeare  
by the preface folowynge. But nowe I returne to you (most  
B iii noble

Italye disqui-  
ted with  
warres.

The sequeles  
of warre.

King Freder-  
ike.

noble Prince) from whom I haue somewhat digressed. Therefore whereas your grandfather by your mothers side, haue subdued all Spaine vnder your dominion, except only one corner of the same, and haue also leste you the kingdome of Naples, with the fruteful Ilands of our seas, it is surely a great thing and worthy to be noted in our cronacles. But not offendyng the reuerence due to our predeceffours, whatsoeuer from the begynnynge of the worlde hath been doone or wyrtten to this day, to my iudgement seemeth but lyttle, yf we consyder what newe landes and countreys, what newe seas, what sundry nations and tounge, what golde mynes, what treasures of perles they haue leste vnto your hyghnesse, besyde other reuenues. The whiche, what they are, and howe greatese, these three Decades shall declare. Come therefore most noble Prince elected of God, and enioye that hygh estate of thynges not yet vnderstode to men. We offer vnto you the Equinoctiall lyne hitherto vnknewen, and burnte by the furious heate of the sonne, and inhabitable after the opinion of the olde wyrtters, a fewe excepted: but nowe founde to be most replenished with people, faire, fruteful, and most fortunate, with a thousande Ilandes crowned with golde and bewtiful pearles, besydes that greatese portion of earth suppoled to be parte of the firme lande, excedyng in quantitie three Europes. Come therefore and embrace this newe worlde, and suffer vs no longer to consume in desyre of your presence. From hence, from hence I say (most noble young Prince) shal instrumentes be prepared for you, wherby all the worlde shalbe vnder your obeyssance. And thus I byd your maiestie farewell: to whose taste if I shal perceaue the frutes of this my collage to be delectable, I wyll hereafter do my endeouore that you may receaue the same more abundantly. From Madrid, the day before the Calendes of October,

In the yere of Christ  
M.D.XXII.

The fyrst Booke of the Decades of the

Ocean, written by Peter Martyr of Angleria Milenoes, counsaylour to the king of Spayne, and Protonotarie Apostolicall to Ascanius Sphorcia, Vicount Cardinal. &c.



The reuerende and thankfull antiquitie was accustomed to esteeme those men as gods, by whose industrie and magnanimitie such landes and regions were discovered, as were vnknewen to theyr predeceffours. But vnto vs, haunyng only one God, whom we honour in triplicitie of person, this re- steth, that albeit we do not worship that kinde of men with diuine honour, yet do we reuerence them, and woorthyly marueyle at theyr noble actes and enterpryses. Vnto kynges and princes we geue due obeyssance, by whose gouernance and furtherance they haue ben aided to perfourme their attempts: we commend both, and for theyr iust desertes woorthyly extol them. Wherefore, as concerning the Ilandes of the west Ocean, lately discovered, and of the auctours of the same (whiche thyng you desyre by your letters to knowe) I wyll begyn at the fyrst aucthour thereof, lest I be iniurious to any man. Take it therefore as foloweth.

Christophorus Colonus (otherwyle called Columbus) a gentle- man of Italie, borne in the citie of Genua, perswaded Fernando and Elizabeth, catholike prynces, that he doubted not to fynde certayne Ilandes of India, nere vnto our Ocean sea, if they woulde turne the hym with shippes and other thynges apparte- nyng: affyrmyng that therby not onely the Christian religion myght be enlarged, but Spayne also enryched by the great plei- tie of golde, pearles, precious stones, and spices, whiche myght be founde there. At the length three shippes were appoynted hym at the kinges charges: of the whiche one was a great caracke with deckes, and the other two were light marchaunte shippes without deckes, whiche the Spaniards call Car- uelas. Thus he departed from the costes of Spayne about the calendes

The rewards  
of vertue.

The Ilandes  
of the West  
Ocean.

Christophorus  
Colonus.

India.

calendes

Spayne subdu-  
ed from the  
Moors.  
The kingdome  
of Naples.

The temperat-  
ness of the E-  
quinoctiall lin-  
known to the  
olde wyrtters.

Continent of  
spaine lande as  
bigge as three  
Europes.

Riches are the  
instrumentes of  
conquestes.



The first voyage of Colonus

The Ilandes of Canarie. Gades, or Calis mals.

A league, what it conteyneth by sea. The fortunate Ilandes.

Capo Verde.

The .vii. Ilandes of Canarie. Betanchor, a French man subdued the Ilandes of Canarie. &c.

Alphonfus Lugo.

calendes of September, in the yeere of Christe. 1492. and set forwarde on his viage, being accompanied with CC. xx. Spaniards. The fortunate Ilandes (as manye thynke them to be, whiche the Spaniards call *Canarie*, found but of late dayes) are distaunte from the Ilandes of *Gades* a thousande and two hundredeth myles, accordyng to theyr accomptes, for they say they are distant thre hundred leagues: whereas suche as are expert sea men, affirme that euery league conteineth foure miles, after theyr supputations. These Ilandes were called fortunate, for the temperate ayre whiche is in them. For neyther the coldnesse of wynter is sharpe vnto them, nor the heate of sommer intolerable. Yet some men are of opinion, that those were in olde tyme called the fortunate Ilandes, whiche the Portugales call *Capo Verde*. Colonus therfore sayled fyrst to the Ilandes of *Canarie*, to the intende there to refrethe his shippes with freshe water and fuell, before he committed hym selfe to this so laborous a viage. And because I haue heare made mention of the Ilandes of *Canarie*, it shal not be muche front my purpose, to declare howe of vnknownen they became knownen, and of sauage and wilde, better manured: for by the long course of many yeeres, they were forgotten, and remayned as vnknownen.

These seuen Ilandes (therefore) called the *Canaries*, were founde by chaunce by a frenche man, called *Betanchor*, by the permission of queene Katharine, protectrix of king Iohn her sonne, while he was yet in his nonage, about the yeere of Christe. M. CCCC. U. This *Betanchor* inuaded two of these Ilandes called *Lancelotus* and *Fortisuentura*, which he inhabited & brought to better culture. He being dead, his sonne and heire solde bothe the sayde Ilandes to certayne Spaniards.

After this, *Fernandus Peraria* and his wyfe, inuaded *Ferreia* and *Gomera*. The other thre were subdued in our time. *Grancanaria*, by *Petrus de Vera*, citizen of the noble citie of *Xericium*, and *Michael* of *Moxica*, *Palma* and *Tenerifen*, by *Alphonfus Lugo*, at the kings charges. *Gomera* and *Ferreia* were easily subdued: But the matter went harde with *Alphonfus Lugo*. For that naked and wyld nation, fygghyng only with stones and clubbes, droue his armie to flight at the first assaulte, and slue about foure hundred of his men: But at the length he overcame them. And thus all the

the Ilandes of *Canaria* were added to the dominion of Spayne. From these Ilandes *Colonus* directyng his voyage towarde the west, folowynge the falling of the sunne, but declining somewhat towarde the left hande, sayled on forwarde. xxxiii. dayes continually, hauyng only the fruition of the heauen and the water. Then the Spaniards whiche were accompanied with hym, began fyrst to murmur secretly among them selues, and shortly after with wordes of reproche spake euil of *Colonus* theyr gouernour, and consulted with them selues, eyther to rydde hym out of the way, or els to cast hym into the sea: ragyng that they were deceyued of a stranger, an outlandyshe man, a *Ligurian*, a *Genues*, and brought into suche dangerous places, that they might neuer retorne agayne. And after. xxxiii. dayes were past, they furiously cryed out against him, and threatned him that he shoulde passe no further. But he euer with gentle wordes and large promises, appeased their furie, and prolonged day after day, some tyme despyng them to beare with hym yet a whyle, and some time putting them in remembrance that yf they shoulde attempt any thing agaynst him, or otherwyle disobey hym, it would be reputed for treason. Thus after a fewe dayes, with cheareful hartes they espied the lande long looked for. In this fyrst nauigation, he discouered. vi. Ilandes, wherof two were exceedyng great: Of whiche, the one he called *Hyspaniola*, and the other *Iohanna*. But at that tyme he knewe not perfectly that *Iohanna* (otherwyle called *Cuba*) was an Ilande. As they coasted along by the shore of certayne of these Ilandes, they hearde Nightyngales syng in the thicke wooddes in the moneth of Nouember. They founde also great ryuers of freshe water, and naturall hauens, of capacite to harbour great nauies of shippes. Sayling by the coastes of *Iohanna*, from the north poynt to the west, he rode litle lesse then eight hundred miles (for they cal it a hundred and fourescore leagues) supposing that it had ben the continent or fyne lande, because he coulde neither fynde the landes ende, nor any token of the ende, as farre as he could iudge with his eye: wherfore he determined to turne backe agayne, beyng partly thereto enforced by the roughnesse of the sea, for the sea bankes of the Ilande of *Iohanna*, by sundrye wyndynges and turnynges, bende them selues so muche towarde the north, that the northnortheast winde

Colonus men rebel agaynst hym.

Faire wordes and promises.

Hyspaniola. Iohanna.

Nightyngales syng in Nouember.

The Ilande of  
Ophir.

The Ilandes  
of Antilia.

A Shypwache.

The people of  
the Ilande.

Naked people.

Expert swim-  
mers.  
Gold for earth  
and glasse.

Many kynges

Religious and  
humane people

Canoas.

roughly tossed the shypps by reason of the winter. Turning ther-  
fore the stemmes of his shyppes towarde the East, he affirmed  
that he had found the ilande of *Ophir*, whither *Solomons* shippes  
sayled for golde. But the discription of the *Cosmographers* well  
considered, it seemeth that both these, and the other ilandes ad-  
ioynnyng, are the ilands of *Antilia*. This ilande he called *Hispani-  
ola*, on whose north syde as he approached neare to the lande, the  
keeke or bottoome of the biggest vessel ranne vpon a blynde rocke  
couered with water, and cloue in sunder: but the playnnesse of  
the rocke was a helpe to them that they were not drowned. Ma-  
kyng haste therfore with the other two shypps to helpe them, they  
brought awaye al the men without hurte. Here comming fyrst a  
land, they sawe certayne men of the Ilande, who perceiuyng an  
vnknown nation comming toward them, flocked together, and  
ranne al into the thyncke woods, as it had ben hares courted with  
grehoundes. Our men pursuing them, tooke onely one woman,  
whom they brought to the ships: where sylling her with meate  
and wyne, and appareling her, they let her depart to her compa-  
nye. Shortly after a greate multitude of them came runnyng to  
the shore to behold this newe nation, whom they thought to haue  
descended from heauen. They cast them selues by heapes into the  
sea, & came swimming to the shyppes, bynging gold with them,  
whiche they chaunged with our men for earthen pottes, drynking  
glasses, poyntes, pinnes, hawkes bels, looking glasse, & such o-  
ther trifles. Thus growing to further familiaritie, our men were  
honorably entertained of the king of that part of the iland, whose  
name was *Guaccanarillus*: for it hath many kyngs, as when *Ene-  
as* arrived in *Italy*, he found *Latium* diuided into many kingdomes  
and prouinces, as *Latium*, *Mezentium*, *Turnum*, and *Tarchontem*,  
whiche were separated with narrowe boundes, as shal more largely  
appeare hereafter. At the euen tide about the falling of the sonne,  
when our men went to prayer, and kneeled on their knees after  
the maner of *Christians*, they dyd the lyke also. And after what  
maner so euer they sawe them pray to the crosse, they folowed  
them in al poyntes as wel as they coude. They shewed much  
humanitie towards our men, and helped them with theyr lygh-  
ters or smal boates (whiche they cal *Canoas*) to vnlade their broken  
shyppe.

shyppe, and that with suche celeritie and cherefulness, that no  
frende for frende, or kynseman for kynseman, in such case moued  
with pittie, coude do more. Theyr boates are made only of one  
tree, made holowe with a certayne sharpe stone (for they haue no  
yron) and are very long and narrowe. Many affirme that they  
haue seene some of them with fortye oyes. The wilde and mysche-  
nous people called *Canibales*, or *Caribes*, whiche were accustomed  
to eate mans fleshe (& called of the olde wyters, *Anthropophagi*)  
molest them exceedyngly, inuading their countrey, takyng them  
captiue, kyllyng & eatyng them. As our men sayled to the ilandes  
of these meke and humane people, they left the ilands of the *Ca-  
nibales*, in maner in the myddest of theyr viage toward the south.  
They complayned that theyr ilands were no lesse vexed with the  
incursions of these manhuntynge *Canibales* when they goe forth a-  
rmyng to seeke theyr pray, than are other tame beastes, of *Lions*  
and *Tigers*. Such chyldren as they take, they geld to make them  
fat, as we do cocke chickens and young hogges, and eate them  
when they are wel fedde: of suche as they eate, they fyrst eate the  
myrralles and extreme partes, as handes, feete, armes, necke, and  
head. The other most fleshye partes, they pouder for store, as we  
do pestels of porke, and gammondes of bakon: yet do they ab-  
steyne from eatyng of women, and counte it vyle. Therfore suche  
young women as they take, they kepe for increase, as we do hen-  
nes to leye egges: the olde women, they make theyr drudges.  
They of the ilandes (whiche we may nowe cal ours) bothe the  
men and *women*, when they perceiue the *Canibales* commyng,  
haue none other shyft but onely to flee: for although they vse ve-  
ry sharpe arrowes made of reedes, yet are they of small force  
to repress the furie of the *Canibales*: for euen they them selues con-  
fesse, that ten of the *Canibales* are able to ouercome a hundred of  
them if they encountre with them. Theyr meate is a certayne  
roote, whiche they cal *Ages*, muche lyke a nauewe roote in fourme  
and greatnesse, but of sweete tast, much lyke a greene chestnutte.  
They haue also an other kynde of rootes, whiche they call *Iucca*,  
whereof they make bread in kyke maner. They vse *Ages*  
more often roasted or sodden, then to make bread thereof. But  
they neuer eate *Iucca*, except it be first sliced and pressed (for  
it is full of lycoure) and then baked or sodden. But this is to be

Monorpla,  
They haue  
no iron.

Canibales, or  
Caribes.  
Anthropo-  
phagi.

The crueltie of  
the Canibales.

Ages.  
Rootes in the  
seebe of meate.  
Iucca.  
Bread of rootes

An hearbe of  
strange nature.

Maisium.

Golde in esti-  
mation.

Golde in the  
landes of ri-  
uers.

Serpentes  
without ve-  
nime.  
Turtle doves.  
Duckes.  
Popiniayes.  
Plini.

These Ilandes  
are part of  
India.  
The Indians  
are Antipodes  
to the Span-  
yardenes.

Aristotle.  
Seneca.

marueyled at, that the iuice of this roote is a poyson as strong as *Aconitum*, so that if it be drunke, it causeth present death, and yet the bread made of the masse thereof, is of good taste and hol- some, as they all haue prooued. They make also another kynde of bread of a certayne pulle, called *Panicum*, muche like unto wheate, whereof is great plentie in the Dukedome of Millane, Spayne, and *Cranatum*. But that of this Countrey is longer by a spanne, somewhat sharpe toward the ende, and as bygge as a mans arme in y<sup>e</sup> bawne: the graynes wherof are set in a mar- ueylous order, & are in foume somewhat lyke a pease. Whyle they be soure and unripe, they are whyte, but when they are ripe, they be very blacke, when they are broken, they be whiter then snowe: this kynde of grayne they call *Maisium*. Golde is of some estimation among them: for some of them hang certayne small peeces thereof at theyr eares and nolethylls. A litle be- yonde this place, our men went a lande for freshe water, where they chaunced vpon a riuer, whose lande was myxed with muche golde. They founde there no kindes of foure footed beastes, ex- cept thre kindes of litle conies. These ilandes also noury the serpentes, but suche as are without hurt. Likewise wilde geese, turtle doves, and duckes, muche greater then ours, and as white as swannes, with heades of purple colour. Also Popiniayes, of the whiche some are greene, some yelow, & some lyke them of India, with yelow rynges about theyr neckes, as Plinie descri- berh them. Of these they brought fourtie with them, of moste lyuely and dilectable colours, hauyng theyr feathers enterming- led with greene, yelow, and purple, whiche varietie delyghteth the fense not a litle. Thus muche thought I good to speake of Popyniayes (ryght noble prince) specially to this intent, that albeit the opinion of *Christophorus Columbus* (who affyrmeth these ilandes to be part of India) doth not in all poyntes agree with the iudgement of auncient wyters as touchyng the bygnesse of the Sphere and compasse of the Globe, as concernyng the na- uigable portion of the same being vnder vs, yet the Popiniayes and many other thynges brought from thence, doo declare that these Ilandes sauour somewhat of India, eyther beyng neare vn- to it, or els of the same nature: forasmuche as *Aristole* also, about the ende of his booke *de Calo & Mundo*, and likewyse *Seneca*,

with

with diuers other auctours not ignoraunt in Cosmographie, do affirme that India is no long tracte by sea, distant from Spaine by the west Ocean, for the soyle of these ilandes byngeth forth *Mastix*, *Aloes*, and sundry other sweete gummes and spycies, as doth India, Cotton also of the Gossampine tree, as in India in the countrey of the people called *Seres*.

The languages of all the nations of these ilandes, may well be wyrtten with our Latine letters. For they cal heauen *Turei*. A house *Boa*. Golde *Cauni*. A good man, *Taino*. Nothing, *May- ani*. Al other words of theyr language, they pronounce as plain- ly as we do the Latine tongue. In these ilandes they founde no trees knowen vnto them, but Pine apple trees, and Date trees, and those of marueylous heygth, and exceeding harde, by rea- son of the great moystnesse and fatnesse of the grounde, with continual and temperate heate of the sunne, whiche endureth so al the whole yere. They playnely affirme the ilande of *Hispa- niola* to be the moste fruitefull lande that the heauen compasseth about, as shall moze largely appeare hereafter in the particuler description of the same, which we entende to set forth when we shalbe better instructed. Thus makynge a league of frendshyp with the king, and leauing with hym xxxviii. men to searche the ilande, he departed to Spayne, takynge with hym tenne of the in- habitauntes to learne the Spanishe tongue, to the intent to vse them afterward for interpretours. *Columus* therfore at his retorne was honourably receiued of the kyng and queene, who caused hym to syt in theyr presence, whiche is a token of great loue and honour among the Spaniardes. He was also made Admi- ral of the Ocean, and his brother gouernour of the ilande.

Toward the second voyage he was furnished with xvii. ships, wherof thre were great carackes of a thousande tunne. xii. were of that sorte which the Spaniards cal *Carauelas*, without deckes, and two other of the same sorte somewhat bygger, and moze apt to beare deckes, by reason of the greatnesse of theyr mastes. He had also a thousande and two hundred armed footemen well ap- poynted: among which were many artificers, as smythes, Car- penters, myners, and suche other, certayne hoysmen also, well armed: Likewyse mares, sheepe, heyghfers, and suche other of both kindes for encrease: Likewyse al kinde of pulle, or grayne,

C iii

and

India not farre  
from Spayne.  
*Mastix*.  
*Aloes*.  
Gossampine  
cotton of some  
bale.  
*Seres*.

The language  
of these In-  
dians.

Trees & frutes  
unknowne to vs

Fat and moist  
grounde.  
Heate continu-  
al & temperate.  
The fruitefull-  
nesse of *Hispa-  
niola*.

The seconde  
voyage of *Cos-  
lombus*.

Comes & seedes  
to sowe.

Tooles and  
artillerie.

Water drops  
pyng from a  
tree contin-  
all ye.

and corne, as wheate, barley, rye, beanes, and pease, and suche other, as wel for foode as to sowe: besyde vines, plantes, and seedes, of suche trees, frutes, and hearbes, as those countreyes lacke, and (not to be forgotten) sundry kyndes of artillerie and iron tooles, as bowes, arrowes, crof bowes, bylles, hargabusses, brode swoordes, large targettes, pykes, mattocks, shouelles, hammers, nayles, sawes, axes, and suche other. Thus beyng furnished accordyngly, they set forward from the Landes of *Gades* (nowe called *Cales*) the seuenth day before the Calendes of October, in the yere of Christ. 1493. and arriued at the landes of *Canarie* at the Calendes of October: Of these landes, the last is called *Ferrea*, in whiche there is no other water that may be drunke, but only that is geathered of the deawe, which continually distylleth from one only tree, growyng on the hyghest bancke of the lande, and falleth into a rounde trenche made with mans hande: we were enfourmed of these thynges within fewe dayes after his departure. What shall succede, we wyl certifie you hereafter. Thus fare ye well, from the courte, at the Ides of Nouember. 1493.

The seconde booke of the first Decade, to  
*Ascanius Sphorcia*, Vicount  
Cardinal. &c.



Du repeate (ryght honourable prince) that you are desyrous to knowe what newes we haue in Spayne from the newe worlde, and that those things haue greatly deyled you, whiche I wrote vnto your hyghnesse of the first Nauigation: You shal nowe therefore receiue what hath succeeded.

*Methymna Campi*, is a famous towne in high Spayne, in respect from you, and is in that parte of Spayne whiche is called *Castella Vetus*, beyng distant from *Gades* about. xl. myles. Here the courte remayned, when about the. ix. of the Calendes of Apryll, in this yere of ninetie and foure, there were postes sent to the king and queene, certifying them that there were twelue shippes come from the newe landes, and arriued at *Gades*: but the gouernour

of

of the shippes sent woorde to the kyng and queene, that he had none other matter to certifie them of by the postes, but only that the Admiral with fise shippes, and fourescore and ten men, remayned styll in *Hispaniola* to searche the secretes of the lande, and that as touchyng other matters, he hym selfe would shortly make relation in theyr presence by woorde of mouth: therefore the day before the Ides of Apryl, he came to the Courte hym selfe. What I learned of hym, and other saythfull and credible men, whiche came with hym from the Admirall, I wil rehearse vnto you, in suche order as they declared the same to me, when I demaunded them: take it therefore as foloweth. The third day of the Ides of October, departyng from *Ferrea*, the laste of the landes of *Canaria*, and from the coastes of Spayne, with a Fla-  
nie of seenteene shippes, they sayled. xxi. dayes before they came to any lande, inclining of purpose more towarde the left hand then at the first voyage, folowing the north northeast winde, and arriued first at the landes of the *Canibales* or *Caribes*, of whiche only the same was knowen to our men. Among these, they chaunced first vpon one, so beset with trees, that they coulde not see so muche as an elle space of bare earth or stonie ground, this they called *Dominica*, because they found it on the Sunday. They taried here no time, because they saw it to be desart. In the space of these. xxi. dayes, they thynke that they sayled eyght hundred & xx. leagues, the north northeast wynde was so ful with them, and so freshly folowed the sterne of theyr shippes. After they had sayled a lytle further, they espyed diuers landes replenyshed with sundry kindes of trees, from the whiche came fragrant sauiours of spices and sweete Gummes: here they sawe neyther man nor beast, except certayne *Lpsartes* of huge byghnesse, as they reported which went aland to viewe the countrey. This land they called *Galana* or *Galanta*: from the cape or poynt of this lande, espying a mountayne a farre of, they sayled thither. About. xxx. myles from this mountayne, they sawe a ryuer descendyng, which seemed to be a token of some great and large flood. This is the first lande whiche they founde inhabited from the landes of *Canaria*, and is an lande of the *Canibales*, as they learned by the interpretours whiche they tooke with them from *Hispaniola* into Spayne at theyr first voyage. Searching the lande,

The Lande  
of Ferrea.

Landes of the  
*Canibales*.

The Lande of  
*Dominica*.

*Lpsartes*.

The Lande of  
*Galanta*.

The Land of  
*Guadalupca*.

Ciii

they

*Methymna  
Campi.  
Castella Vetus.*

*Gades.*

Villages of. xx.  
or. xxx houses.The building  
of the houses.Gossampine  
cotton.Bombaste.  
hangyng  
beddes.

Images.

Fine cookerie.

Arrowheades  
of bones.

they found innumerable villages of. xx. houses, or. xxx. at the most, set rounde about in order, makyng the streete in compasse lyke a market place. And forasmuche as I haue made mention of the houses, it shall not be greatly from my purpose to describe in what manner they are buylded: They are made rounde lyke belles or rounde pavilions. They frame is rayled of exceedyng high trees, set close together, and fast rampaired in the ground, so standing aslope, and bending inwarde, that the toppes of the trees ioyne together, and beare one agaynst another, hauyng also within the house certaine strong and short pottes or postes whiche susteyne the trees from falling. They couer them with the leaues of date trees, and other trees stronglye compact and hardened, wherewith they make them close from winde and weather. At the shorthe postes or pottes within the house, they tye ropes of the cotton of gossampine trees, or other ropes made of certayne long & rough rootes, much lyke vnto the shrubbe called *Spartum*, wherof in old tyme they used to make bandes for vines, and gables and ropes for shypes. These they tye ouerthwarte the house from poste to poste, on these they lay as it were certaine mattresses made of the cotton of gossampine trees, whiche growe plentifully in these ilandes. This cotton the Spanyards cal *Algodon*, and the Italians *Bombasine*: and thus they sleepe in hangyng beddes. At the entrance of one of the houses, they sawe two images of wood lyke vnto serpentes, whiche they thought had beene suche idols as they honour: but they learned afterwarde that they were set there onely for comelynesse, for they knowe none other god then the sunne and moone, although they make certaine images of gossampine cotton to y<sup>e</sup> similitude of suche phantasies as they say appeare to them in the nyght. Our men found in the houses, al kindes of earthen vessels, not muche vnylike vnto ours. They founde also in the kytchens, mans fleshe, duckes fleshe, & goose fleshe, al in one pot, and other on the spytts redy to be layde to the fyre. Entying into their inner lodgynges, they founde faggottes of the bones of mens armes and legges, whiche they reserue to make heades for theyr arrows, because they lacke iron, the other bones they cast away when they haue eaten the fleshe. They founde lykewyse the head of a young man fastened to a poste, and yet bleeding. They haue

in

in some byllages, one great hall or pallace, about the whiche they common houses are placed: to this they resort, as often as they come together to playe. When they perceiued the comyng of our men, they fledde. In the houses they founde also aboute thirtie chyldren captiues, whiche were reserued to be eaten, but our men tooke them away to vse them for interpreters. Searching more diligently the inner parts of the island, they founde seuen other ryuers, bygger then this whiche we spake of before, runnyng through the ilande, with fruitefull and pleasaunt bankes, delectable to beholde. This ilande they called *Guadalupca*, for the similitude that it hath to the mount *Guadalupus* in Spayne, where the image of the virgin Marie is religiously honoured, but the inhabitauntes call it *Carucueria*, or *Queraquiera*: It is the cheefe habitation of the *Canibales*. They brought from this iland. vii. *Popiniapes*, bigger then *Phelants*, muche dyfferyng from other in colour, hauyng theyr backs, brestes, and bellies of purple colour, and theyr wynges of other variable colours: in al these ilands is no lesse plentie of *Popyniapes*, then with vs of sparrowes or starelýnges. As we bring by capons and hennes to franke and make them fat, so doo they these bigger kindes of *Popyniapes* for the same purpose. After that they had thus searched the ilande, and driuen these *Canibales* to flight (whiche ran away at theyr fyrst approche, as soone as they had espied them) they called their company together, and as soone as they had broken y<sup>e</sup> *Canibales* boates or lighters (whiche they cal *Canoas*) they loosed theyr ankers the day before the Ides of Nouember, and departed from *Guadalupca*. Colonus the Admiral, for the desyre he had to see his companions, whiche at his fyrst voyage he left the yeere before in *Hispaniola* to search the countrey, let passe many ilandes both on his ryght hande, & left hande, and sayled directly thither. By the way there appeared from the north a great iland, which the captiues that were taken in *Hispaniola*, called *Madanino*, or *Matinino*, affirming it to be inhabited only with women, to whō the *Canibales* haue accesse at certayne tymes of the yeere, as in olde tyme the *Thracians* had to the *Amazones* in the ilande of *Lesbos*: the men chyldren they sende to theyr fathers, but the women they keepe with them selues.

The mount  
Guadalupus.

Carucueria.

Popiniapes  
bigger then  
Phelantes.The Canibales  
driue to flight.Matinino an  
Ilande of wa-  
men.



selues. They haue great and strong caues or denues in the grounde, to the whiche they flee for safegarde if any men resorte vnto them at any other tyme then is appoynted, and there defende them selues with bowes and arrowes, agaynst the violence of suche as attempte to inuade them. They coulde not at this tyme approche to this ilande, by reason of the North northeast wynde, which blew so vehemently from the same, wheras they nowe folowed the East southeaste. After they departed from *Madanino*, and sayled by the space of .xl. myles, they passed not farre from an other ilande which the captyues sayde to be verpe populus, and replenished with al thynges necessarie for the life of man. This they called *Mons Serratus*, because it was full of mountaynes. The captyues further declared, that the *Canibales* are woont at some time to goe from theyr owne coastes aboute a thousande myles to hunt for men. The day folowing, they sawe an other ilande, the whiche because it was rounde, they called *Sancta Maria Rotunda*. The next day, they founde an other, whiche they called *S. Martini*, whiche they let passe also, because they had no leasure to tarrye. Lykewyse the thirde daye they espied an other, whose *Diametral* syde, extendyng from the East to the west, they iudged to be a hundred & fyfthe myle. They affirme all these ilandes to be maruelous fayre and fruitefull: This last, they called *Sancta Maria Antiqua*. Saylyng forwarde, and leapyng many other ilandes, after they had sayled about fourtie myles, they chaunced vpon an other, much bigger then any of the rest, which inhabitants call *Ay Ay*, but they named it *Insula crucis*: Here they cast anker to fetch fresh water. The Admiral also commaunded .xxx. men to goe a lande out of his owne shipp, and to search the ilande: Here they founde foure dogges on the shore. The Inhabitants are *Canibales*, and maruelous experte in shooting, as wel women as men, and vse to infect their arrowes with popson. When they had taried there two dayes, they sawe a farre of a *Canoa*, in the whiche were eight men, and as many women, haupng with them bowes and arrowes. They fiercely assailed our men without all feare, and hurt some of them with theyr venemous arrowes. Among these there was a certayne woman, to whom the other gaue reuerence, and obeyed as though she were theyr queene. Her sonne wayted vpon her, beyng a young man, strongly made,

made, of terrible and frownyng countenance, and a Lions face. Our men, leaste they shoulde take the more hurte by beyng wounded a farre of, thought it beste to ioyne with them. Therfore with al speede, setting forward with their oyes the brigandine in whiche they were sette alande, they ouerturned their *Canoa* with a great violence, whiche being ouerwhelmed, they notwithstanding, as wel the women as the men, swimmyng, caste theyr darters at our men thicke and threefolde. At the length, gathering them selues togeather vpon a rocke couered with the water, they fought manfully vntyll they were ouercome and taken, one beyng slayne, and the queenes sonne sore wounded. When they were brought into the Admirals shippe, they dyd no more put of their fiercenes and cruel countenances, then do the Lions of *Lybia* when they perceiue them selues to be bounde in chaynes. There is no man able to beholde them, but he shall feeble his bowels grate with a certayne horrour, nature hath endued them with so terrible menacing and cruell aspect. This coniecture I make of mee selfe, & other which oftentimes went with me to see them at *Methymna Campi*: but nowe to returne to the voyage. Proceeding thus further and further, more then fyue hundred myles, fyrste towarde the west south west, then towarde the south west, and at the length towarde the west north west, they entred into a mayne large sea, haupng in it innumerable ilandes, marueplously dyfferyng one from another, for some of them were very fruitefull, and full of hearbes and trees, other some, very drye, barren, and rough, with high rockye mountaynes of stone, whereof some were of byght blewe, or asurine colour, and other glisteryng whyte: wherefore they supposed them, by good reason, to be the mines of mettalles and precious stones: but the roughnesse of the sea, and multitude of ilandes standyng so thicke togeather, hyndered them so, that they coulde cast no anker, lest the bigger vesselles shoulde runne vpon the rockes: therefore they deferred the searchyng of these ilandes vntyll another tyme: they were so manye, and stood so thicke, that they coulde not number them, yet the smaller vesselles whiche dyewe no great deapth, entred among them, and numbred fourtie and fyve ilandes, but the bigger vesselles kept aloofe in the mayne sea, for feare of the rockes. They

The Ilandes of Mons Serratus. Huntynge for men.

Sancta Maria Rotunda.

Sanctus Martini.

Sancta Maria Antiqua.

Insula crucis, an Ilande of the Canibales.

The Canibales are expert Archers.

Arrowes infected with venime.

A conflict with the Canibales.

The fiercenesse & terrible countenance of the Canibales.

Methymna Campi.

Innumerable Ilandes.

The mines of mettals & precious stones.

The sea called  
Archipelagus.

Insula. S. Jo-  
hannes or Bu-  
chena.

Death for death

The mount-  
aynes are col-  
er then the  
apnes.

From Domi-  
ca to Hispani-  
ola five hun-  
dred leagues.

The Spaniards  
are left in the  
lande are  
one.  
King Guacca-  
rillus res-  
tored.

They call the sea where this multitude of landes are situate, *Archipelagus*. From this tracte proceeding forward, in the midde way there lyeth an lande whiche the inhabitants call *Burichina*, or *Buchena*: but they named it *Insula. S. Iohannis*. Dyuers of them whom we had deliuered from the *Canibales*, sayde that they were borne in this lande, affirming it to be verie populous and frutesfull, hauing also many faire wooddes and hauens. Ther is deadly hatred and continual battayle betwene them and the *Canibales*. They haue no boates to passe from their owne coastes to the *Canibales*: but if it be their chaunce to ouercome them when they make incursion into theyr countrey to seeke their praye (as it sometyme happeneth, the fortune of warre being vn- certayne) they serue them with like faule, requiting death for death. For one of them mangleth another in pieces, and rotte them, and eate them euen before their eyes. They taried not in this lande: Yet in the west angle therof, a fewe of them went a lande for freshe water, and founde a great and high house after the maner of their buylding, hauing .xii. other of their bulgare cotages placed about the same, but were all leste desolate, whe- ther it were that they resorted to the mountaynes by reason of the heate which was that tyme of the yeere, and to returne to the playne when the ayre waxeth coulde, or els for feare of the *Ca- nibales* whiche make incursion into the lande at certayne seasons. In al this lande is only one kyng. The south syde hereof exten- deth about two hundred myles. Shortly after, they came to the lande of *Hispaniola*, being distant from the firste lande of the *Canibales*, fyue hundred leagues. Here they founde al thinges out of order, and theyr felowes slayne whiche they leste here at their fyrst voyage. In the begynnyng of *Hispaniola* (hauing in it many regions and kyngdomes as we haue sayde) is the region of *Xamana*, whose kyng is named *Guaccanarillus*. This *Guaccanarillus* ioynded frendship with our men at the fyrst voyage, and made a league with them: but in the ablsence of the Admirall, he rebelled, and was the cause of our mens destruction, although he dissimuled the same, and pretended frendship at the Admirals returne. As our men sayled on yet a litle further, they espied a long *Canoe* with many oyes, in whiche was the brother of *Guaccanarillus*, with only one man wayting on hym.

he

He brought with him two images of golde, whiche he gaue the Admirall in the name of his brother, and tolde a tale in his language as concernyng the death of our men, as they proued afterwarde, but at this tyme had no regarde to his communi- cation for lacke of interpreters, whiche were eyther all dead, or escaped and stolne away when they drewe neare the landes. But of the ten, seuen dyed by chaunge of ayre and dyet. The in- habitants of these landes haue ben euer so vled to lyue at li- bertie, in play and pastyme, that they can hardly away with the yoke of seruitude, whiche they attempte to shake of by all meanes they may. And surely yf they had receiued our religion, I woulde thynke theyr lyfe moste happie of all men, yf they myght therewith enioye theyr auncient libertie. A fewe thinges contente them, hauyng no delyte in suche superfluties, for the whiche in other places men take infinite paynes, and commit manye vnlawfull actes, and yet are neuer satisfied, whereas ma- ny haue to muche, and none yenough. But among these symple soules, a fewe clothes serue the naked: weightes and measures are not needefull to suche as can not skyl of craft and deceyte, and haue not the vse of pestiferous money, the seede of innumerable mischeueues: so that yf we shall not be ashamed to confesse the trueth, they seeme to liue in that golden worlde of the whiche olde wyters speake so muche, wherein men lyued symple and innocent without enforcement of lawes, without quarrel- lyng, iudges, and libelles, content only to satisfie nature, without further vexation for knowledge of thynges to come. Yet these naked people also are tormented with ambition, for y desire they haue to enlarge their dominions: by reason wherof, they kepe war and destroy one another, from the whiche plague I suppose the golden worlde was not free. For euen then also, *Cede, non cedam*, that is, geue place, and I will not geue place, had entred among men. But now to returne to the matter from which we haue di- gressed. The admirall desyrous to know further of y death of his men, sent for *Guaccanarillus* to come to him to his ship, dissimu- lyng that he knewe any thyng of the matter. After that he came aboard shipp, saluting the Admirall and his company, geuing also certayne golde to the captaynes and officers, turned hym to the women captiues, whiche not long before our men had deliuered from

Two images  
of golde.

Libertie and  
idleness.

A happie kinde  
of lyfe.

Superfluitie.

Many haue to  
much, and none  
yenough.

The golden  
worlde.

Naked men  
troubled with  
ambition.

Geue place.

The Admirall  
sanderly for  
the kyng.

from the *Canibales*, and earnestly beholding one of them whom our men called Katherine, he spake gently unto her. And thus when he had seene and marueyled at the horses, and such other thyngs as were in the shyppe, unknowne to them, and had with a good grace and mercy asked leaue of the Admirall, he departed. Yet some there were whiche commended the Admirall to keepe hym still, that yf they myght by any meanes prouue that he was consentyng to the death of our men, he myght be punished accordyngly. But the Admirall consyderyng that it was yet no time to incense the inhabitantes mindes to wrath, dismissed him. The next day folowynge, the kynges brother resortyng to the shippes, eyther in his owne name or in his brothers, seduced the women. For on the next nyght about mydnyght, this Katherine, aswell to recouer her owne libertie, as also her felowes, being suborned thereto either by the king or his brothers promises, attempted a muche more difficult and dangerous aduenture then dyd *Cloelia* of Rome, whiche beyng in hostage with other maydes to the king *Porcena*, deceiued her keepers, and rode ouer y<sup>e</sup> riuer *Tiber*, with the other virgins which were pledges with her. For whereas they swamme ouer the riuer on horsebacke, this Katherine with seuen other women, trustyng only to the strength of their owne armes, swam aboue thre long miles, and that also at suche time as the sea was somewhat rough: for euen so farre of from the shore lay the shippes at rode, as nygh as they coulde coniecture. But our men folowing them with the shipboates, by the same light seene on the shore, whereby the women were ledde, tooke thre of them, supposing that Katherine with the other foure, went to *Guaccanarillus*: for in the spyng of the morning, certayne messengers being sent unto him by the Admirall, had intelligence that he was fledde with al his familie and stuffe, and the women also, whiche thyng ministred further suspicion that he was consentyng to the death of our men. Wherefore the Admirall sent forth an armie of thre hundred men, ouer the which he appoynted one *Melchior* to be captaine, wyslyng him to make diligent search to fynd out *Guaccanarillus*. *Melchior* therefore with the smallest vesselles entryng into the countrey by the riuers, and scouryng the shores, chaunced into certayne crooked goulfes, defended with fye litle & steepe hilles, suppo-

No horses in  
the Landes.

No time for all  
shippes.

No desperate  
adventure of  
a woman.

*Cloelia* of  
Rome.

*Guaccanarillus*  
is sought.  
*Melchior*.

supposing that it had byn the mouth of some great ryuer. He founde heate also a very commodious and safe hauen, and therefore named it *Portus Regalis*. They say that the enterance of this is so crooked and bending, that after the shypes are once within the same, whether they turne them to the left hand, or to the right, they can not perceyue where they came in, vntyl they retorne to the mouth of the ryuer, although it be there so brode that thre of the bygggest vessels may sayle togeather on a froot. The sharpe and high hylles on the one syde and on the other, so brake the wynde, that they were vncertaine how to rule theyr sayles. In the myddle gulfe of the ryuer, there is a promontorie or point of the land with a pleasant groue, full of *Doppingiapes* and other byrdes, which breede therein & sing very sweetly: They perceyued also that two ryuers of no smal largenesse fell into the hauen. Whyle they thus searched the lande betwene both, *Melchior* espied a high house a farre of, where supposing that *Guaccanarillus* had lye byd, he made towarde it: and as he was goyng, there met hym a man with a frownyng countenance, and a grymme looke, with a hundred men folowynge hym, armed with bowes and arrows, and long and sharpe staues lyke iayelymnes, made harde at the endes with fyre, who appoaching towards our men, spake out aloud with a terrible voyce, saying that they were *Taini* (that is) noble men, and not *Canibales*: but when our men had geuen them signes of peace, they left both theyr weapons and fiercenesse. Thus geuyng ech of them certayne haukes bels, they tooke it for so great a rewarde, that they despyed to enter bondes of neare frendshyp with vs, and feared not immediatly to submit them selues vnder our power, and resorted to our shippes with their presentes. They that measured the house (beyng made in round fourme) found it to be from syde to syde. xxxii. great paces, compassed about with xxx. other vulgare houses, hauyng in them many beames crosse ouer, & couered with reedes of sundry colours, wethed & as it were weaued with marueilous art. The our men asked some of them where they might find *Guaccanarillus*: They answered, that that region was none of his, but theyr kynges, beyng there present: Yet they sayde they supposed that *Guaccanarillus* was gone from the playne to the mountaynes.

*Doppingiapes*  
and byrdes.

*Taini*.

Haukes belles.

A large house.

Reedes of sundry  
dyff colours.

Dakynge



Cacicus.

Hoiedus and  
Gorualanus.

Gold in riuers  
falling from  
mountaynes.

The manner of  
gathering gold.  
Graynes of  
golde.

A masse of rude  
gold weyghing  
ix. ounces.

Caunaboa,  
king of the  
house of golde.

Holsome wa-  
ter, and plen-  
tie of fysh.

The day and  
nyght of equal  
length in De-  
cember.

Wides breede  
in December.

Makynge therefore a brotherly league with this *Cacicus* (that is to say a kyng) they returned to the Admirall, to make relation what they had seene and hearde: whereupon he sent forth diuers other Centurians with theyr hundredes, to searche the countrey yet further: among whiche were *Hoiedus* and *Gorualanus*, noble young gentlemen, and of great courage. And as they went toward the mountaynes to seeke *Guaccanerillus*, diuiding the mountaynes betweene them, one of them founde on the one syde thereof, foure ryuers falling from the same mountaynes, and the other founde three on the other syde. In the sandes of all these riuers is founde great plentie of golde, whiche the inhabitants of the same ilande whiche were with vs, geathered in this manner: makynge holes in the sande with theyr handes a Cubite deepe, and takynge by sande with theyr left handes from the bottome of the same, they pycked out graynes of golde with theyr ryght handes without any more art or cunnyng, and so deliuered it to our men, who affirme that many of them thus geathered, were as bygge as tares or fytches. And I mee selfe sawe a masse of rude golde (that is to say, suche as was neuer moulted) lyke vnto suche stones as are founde in the bottomes of ryuers, weighynge niene ounces, whiche *Hoiedus* hym selfe founde. Beyng contented with these signes, they returned to the Admirall to certifie hym hereof. For the Admirall had commaunded vnder payne of punishment, that they shoulde meddle no further then theyr commission: whiche was only, to searche the places with theyr signes. For the same went that there was a certayne kyng of the mountaynes from whence those ryuers had theyr fall, whom they cal *Cacicus Caunaboa*, that is, the lord of the house of golde, for they cal a house *Boa*, golde, *Cauni*, and a kyng or lord *Cacicus*, as we haue sayde before. They affirme that there can no where be founde better fysh, nor of more pleasant taste, or more holsome then in these riuers: also the waters of the same to be moste holsome to dyspke. *Melchior* hym selfe tolde me, that in the moneth of December, the dayes & nyghtes be of equal length among the *Canibales*: but the sphere or circles of the heauen agreeth not thereunto, albeit that in the same moneth, some byrdes make theyr nestes, and some haue alredey hatched theyr egges by reason of the heate, beyng rather conti-

nuall

nuall then extreme. He tolde me also when I questioned with him as concerning the eleuation of the pole fro the horizontal line, that all the starres called *Plastrum* or *Charles wayne*, are hyd vnder the North pole to the *Canibales*. And surely there returned none from thence at this bioage, to whom there is more credit to be geuen, then to this man. But if he had byn skilfull in *Astronomie*, he shoulde haue sayde that the day was almoste equall with the night: For in no place toward the stay of the sonne (called *Solsticium*) can the night be equall with the day. And as for them, they neuer came vnder the *Equinoctial*, forasmuch as they had euer the North pole theyr gyde, and euer eleuate in sight aboue the *Horizontal*. Thus haue I brievely written vnto your honour, as muche as I thought sufficient at this tyme, and shall shortly hereafter (by Gods fauoure) wyte vnto you more largely of such matters as shalbe dayly better knowen. For the Admirall hym selfe (whom I vse famperly as my very frende) hath promised me by his letters, that he wyl geue me knowledge of all such thinges as shall chaunce. He hath nowe chosen a strong place where he may build a citie, neare vnto a comodious haue, and hath alredey buylded many houses, and a chapel, in the which (as in a newe worlde heretofore voyde of all religion) God is dayly serued with .xiii. priestes, accordyng to the maner of our churches. When the tyme nowe appoched that he promysed to sende to the king and queene, and hauyng prosperous winde for that purpose, sent backe the .xii. *Carauelles*, wherof we made mention before: which was no final hynderance and greefe vnto hym, especially consyderynge the death of his men whom he lefte in the ilande at the fyrst voyage, wherby we are yet ignorant of many places and other secretes, wherof we myght otherwyle haue had further knowledge: but as tyme shall reueale them agayne, so wyl I aduertise you of the same. And that you may the better knowe by conference had with the *Apothecaries* and marchant strangers *Sirophenicians*, what this Regions beare, & how hot theyr ground is, I haue sent you all kyndes of graines, with the barke and inner partes of that tree whiche they suppose to be the *Cinamome* tree. And yf it be your pleasure to taste ether of the graynes, or of the smal seedes, the whiche you shoulde perceaue to haue fallen from these graynes, or of the wood it

Di selfe,

The eleuation  
of the pole.  
The starres are  
called guardens  
of the pole.

The Equinoctial  
line.

A chappell and  
priestes.

Marchantes  
Siropheni-  
cians.

The Cin-  
amome tree.

selfe, touch them fyrst softly, moouyng them to your lyppes, for although they be not hurtfull, yet for theyr excelle of heate, they are sharpe, and byte the tongue yf they remayne any while thereon: but yf the tongue be blystered by tastyng of them, the same is taken away by drynkynge of water. Of the corne also whereof they make theyr bread, this bynnger shall deliuer some graynes to your lordshipp, both whyte and blacke, and therewith also a trunke of the tree of *Aloes*, the whiche yf you cut in peeces, you shall feele a sweete sauour to procede from the same. Thus fare you hartly well, from the Court of *Methymna Campi*, the thyrde day before the Calendes of May. Anno Dom. 1494.

*Alloes, or  
Egium Aloes.*

The thyrde booke of the first Decade, to  
*Lodowike* Cardinall of *Aragonie*, and  
Neuiewe to the kyng.



Du desyre that foolyshe *Phaton* shoulde agayne rule the chariots of the Sunne, and contende to drawe sweete licours out of the harde stynt, wheras you require me to describe vnto you the newe worlde, found in the west by the good fortune and gouernaunce of the Catholique princes *Ferdinandus* and *Elizabeth*, your Uncle and Aunte, shewyng me also the letters of kyng *Frederike* your Uncle, wrytten to me in that behalfe: But syth you haue layde this burden on my backe, in whose power it is to commaunde me to take vpon me more then I am well able, ye both shall receiue this precious stone rudely closed in lead after my manner of workemanshype. Wherefore, when you shal perceiue the learned sort frendly, the malicious enuiously, and the backbiters furiously, to bende theyr clamorous darteres agaynst our fayre *Nymphes* of the *Ocean*, you shall freely protest in howe short tyme, and in the myddest of what troubles and calamities you haue enforced me to wyte of the same. Thus fare you wel, from *Granata* the ninth day before the Calendes of May.

*Hispaniola.*

We haue declared in the booke herebefore, how the Admiral passed by the coastes of the *Canibales*, to the ilande of *Hispaniola* with

with his whole nauie: But now we entende further to shewe what he founde as concernyng the nature of this ilande, after that he had better searched the secretes of the same: *Lykwyle* of the ilande of *Cuba* neare vnto it, whiche he supposed to be the fyne lande. *Hispaniola* therefore (whiche he affirmeth to be *Ophir*, whereof we reade in the thyrde booke of the kynges) is of latitude fyue south degrees, hauyng the north pole eleuate on the north syde .xxvii. degrees, and on the south syde (as they say) .xxii. degrees, it reacheth in length from East to West, seuen hundred and fourscore myles, it is distant from the ilandes of *Gades* (called *Cales*) .xliv. degrees, and more, as some say: the fourme of the ilande resembleth the leaffe of a *Chesnutte* tree. Upon a hygh hyll on the North syde of the ilande, he buylde a cite, because this place was most apt for that purpose, by reason of a myne of stones whiche was neare vnto the same, seruyng well both to buylde with, and also to make *Lyme*: at the bottome of this hyll, is there a great playne of threescore myles in length, and in breadth somewhere .xii. somewhere .xx. myles where it is broadest, & sixe myles where it is narrowest: through this playne runne diuers fayre ryuers of whollsome waters, but the greatest of them, whiche is nauigable, falleth into the hauen of the cite for the space of halfe a furlong: howe fertile and fruitful this balley is, you shal vnderstande by these thynges whiche folowe. On the shore of this ryuer, they haue hymitted and enclosed certayne ground, to make gardenes and orchardes, in the whiche al kynde of hygger hearbes, as radish, letuse, cole worts, borage, & suche other, waxe ripe within .xvi. dayes after the seede is sowne, *Lykwyle* *Delones*, *Gourdes*, *Cucumers*, and suche other, within the space of .xxvi. dayes, these garden hearbes they haue freshe & greene al the whole yere. Also the rootes of the canes or reedes of the licour whereof suger is made, growe a cubite hygh within the space of .xv. dayes, but the licour is not yet hardened. The lyke they affirme of plantes or shroudes of young vines, and that they haue the seconde yere geathered ripe and sweete grapes of the same: but by reason of to much rankenelle they beare but fewe clusters. Furthermore, a man of the countrey sowed a lytle Wheate about the Calendes of Februarye, and brought with hym to the cite an handfull

*Ophir, whither  
Solomons  
shipp sailed for  
Golde.*

*Isabella.*

*A token of mar-  
vellous fruites,  
fulnesse.*

*Hearbes greene  
al the whole  
yere.*

*Suger reedes,  
Planties and  
vines.*

*Corne & grape  
ripe wylle  
a yere.*

Di

of

of the rypp eares of the same the thyrde day before the calendes of Aprill, which was that yeere the vigile of the Resurrection of our Lord. Also, al kyndes of pulse, as beanes, peason, fytches, tares, & such other, are rypp twyse in the yeere, as al they whiche come from thence affirme with one voyce, yet the grounde is not vniuersally apte to beare wheate. In the meane tyme whyle these thinges were doing, the Admirall sent out a compaignie of .xxx. men to searche the Region of *Cipanga*, otherwyle called *Cibana*. This Region is full of mountaynes and rockes: and in the myddle backe of the whole ilande is great plentie of golde. When they that went to searche the region were returned, they reported maruelous thinges as touching the great ryches of this Region. From these mountaynes, descende foure great ryuers, which by the maruelous industrie of nature, diuiderh the whole ilande into foure partes, in maner equal, ouerspreading & waterpnyng the whole ilande with their bzanches. Of these foure ryuers, the one reacheth towarde the Easte, this the inhabitantes call *Iuma*: another towarde the weste, and is called *Attibunicus*: the thirde toward the North, named *Iachem*: the laste reacheth into the South, and is called *Naiba*. The day before the Ides of Marche, the Admirall him selfe, with al his hoxlemen, and foure hundred footemen, marched directly towarde the South syde of the golden Region. Thus passing ouer the ryuer, the playne, and the mountayne which enuironed the other syde of the playne, he chaunced vppon an other vale, with a ryuer much bygger then the fyrste, & many other meane ryuers running through. When he had also conuicghed his armie ouer the ryuer, and passed the seconde vale, which was in no part inferiour to the fyrst, he made away through the thirde mountaine, where was no passage before, and descended into another vale, whiche was now the begynnynge of *Cibana*. Through this also runne many fluddes and ryuers out of euery hyll, and in the sandes of them all is founde great plentie of golde. And when he had now entered threescore and twelue myles into the golden Region from the citie, he intended to buylde a fortresse vppon the toppe of a hyll, standyng by y<sup>e</sup> shoze of a certayne great ryuer, that he myght the better and moze safelpe searche the secretes of the inner partes of the Region: this he called the

The region of  
*Cipanga*, or  
*Cibana*.

Golde.

The golden  
region of  
*Cibana*.

The vale of  
*Cibana*.

fortresse

fortresse of saint Thomas, the whiche in the meane tyme whyle he was buylodyng, the inhabitantes beyng desyrours of haukes belles, and other of our thinges, resorted dayly thither, to whom the Admirall declared, that yf they woulde byng golde, they shoulde haue whatsoeuer they woulde aske. Foozthwith turning theyr backes, and runnyng to the shoze of the next riuer, they returned in a shozte tyme, byngyng with them theyr handes ful of golde. Amongst all other, there came an olde man, byngyng with him two pibble stones of golde, wepghyng an ounce, desyring them to geue hym a bell for the same: who when he sawe our men marueyle at the bygnesse thereof, he made signes that they were but small and of no value in respecte of some that he had seene, and takyng in his hande foure stones, the least wherof was as bigge as a Walnut, and the biggest as bigge as an Orange, he sayd that there was founde peeces of golde so bygge in his countrey, beyng but halfe a dayes iourney from thence, and that they had no regarde to the geatheryng thereof, wherby we perceiued that they passe not muche for golde, inasmuche as it is golde only, but so farre esteeme it, as the hande of the Artificer hath fashioned it in any comely fourme. For who dooth greatly esteeme rough marbre, or vnwrought Iuorie: but if they be wrought with the cunning hande of *Phidias* or *Praxiteles*, and shaped to the similitude of y<sup>e</sup> fayre *Rimphes* or *Faires* of the sea (called *Nereiades*) or the *Fayres* of the wooddes (called *Hama-driades*) they shal neuer lacke byers. Besyde this olde man, there came also diuers other, byngyng with them pybble stones of golde, weighing .x. or .xii. drammes, & feared not to confesse, that in y<sup>e</sup> place where they geathered that gold, there were found sometyne stones of golde as bygge as the head of a childe. When he had taried here a few dayes, he sent one *Luxanus*, a noble yong gentleman, with a few armed men, to search al the partes of this region: who at his returre, reported that the inhabitantes shewed him greater thynges then we haue spoken of here before, but he dyd openly declare nothyng thereof, whiche they thought was done by the Admirals commaundement. They haue woods full of certayne spyes, but not such as we commonly vse: these they geather euen as they do golde, that is, as muche as wyl serue for their purpose, euery man for him selfe, to exchange the same with

Golde for  
haukes bels.

Grappes and  
pibble stones  
of golde.

They passe  
not for golde,  
in that it is  
golde onely  
but. &c.

Stones of  
golde as big  
as the head  
of a childe.

Spices.

the inhabitauntes of other countreys adioyning to them, for such thynges as they lacke, as dyshes, pottes, stooles, and such other necessities. As *Luxanus* returned to the Admirall (whiche was about the Ides of Marche) he founde in the woods certaine wilde vines, rype, and of pleasant taste, but the inhabitauntes passe not on them. This region, though it be full of stones and rockes (and is therefore called *Cibana*, whiche is as much to say as a stone) yet it is wel replenished with trees and pastures, yea they constantly affirme, that yf y<sup>e</sup> grasse of these mountaynes be cutte, it groweth agayne within the space of foure dayes, hygher then wheate. And forasmuche as many shewes of rayne doe fall in this region, whereof the ryuers and flooddes haue they<sup>e</sup> encrease, in euery of the whiche golde is founde myxt with sande in all places, they iudge that the golde is dyuen from the mountaynes, by the vehement course of the streames whiche fall from the same, and runne into the ryuers. The people of this region are geuen to idlenesse and play, for suche as inhabite the mountaynes, syt quakyng for colde in the Wynter season, and had rather to wander by and downe idelly, then take the paynes to make them apparell, where as they haue wooddes full of Gossampine cotton: but suche as dwell in the valles, or playnes, feele no colde in Wynter. When the Admirall had thus searched the beginning of the region of *Cibana*, he repayed to *Isabel-la* (for so he named the citie) where, leauyng the gouernaunce of the Ilande with his deputies, he prepared hym selfe to search further the limittes of the Ilande of *Cuba* or *Iohanna*, whiche he yet doubted to be the firme lande, and distant from *Hispaniola* only .lxx. myles. This dyd he with more speedye expedition, calling to remembraunce the kynges commaundement, who wylled hym fyrst with al celeritie, to ouerrunne the coastes of the new Ilandes, lest any other prince shoulde in the meane time attempt to inuade the same, for the kyng of Portugale affirmed that it parteyned only to him to discouer these vnknown landes: but the bishop of Rome, Alexander the sixt, to auoyde the cause of this dissention, graunted to the kyng of Spayne by the auctoritie of his leaden bulles, that no other prince shoulde be so bolde, as to make any voyages to any of these unknown regions, ly- ing without the precinct of a direct lyne drawen from the North

to the South a hundred leagues Westwarde, without the parallels of the Ilandes called *Capud Viride*, or *Cabuerde*, whiche we thinke to be those that in olde tyme were called *Hesperides*: these parteyne to the kyng of Portugale, and from these his pylotes, whiche do peerelely searche newe coastes and regions, directe they<sup>e</sup> course to the East, saylyng euer towarde the left hande by the backe of *Aphyrike*, and the seas of the Ethiopians: neyther to this day had the Portugales at any tyme sayled Southwarde or Westwarde from the Ilandes of *Cabouerde*. Preparing therfore thre shippes, he made haste towarde the Ilande of *Iohanna* or *Cuba*, whither he came in short space, and named the poynt therof, where he fyrste arryued, *Alpha* and *O*, that is, the fyrste and the last: for he suppoled that there had ben the ende of our East, because the sonne falleth there, and of the West, because it ryseth there. For it is apparant, that Westwarde, it is the beginning of *India* beyonde the ryuer of *Ganges*, and Eastwarde, the furthest ende of the same: whiche thyng is not contrary to reason, forasmuche as the Cosmographers haue left the lymittes of *India* beyond *Ganges* vndetermined, where as also some were of opinion, that *India* was not farre from the coastes of *Spaine*, as we haue said before. Within the prospect of the beginning of *Cuba*, he founde a commodious haven in the extreme angle of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, for in this part the Ilande receiueth a great goulfe: this haven he named *Saint Nicholas porte*, beyng scarcely twentie leagues from *Cuba*. As he departed from hence, and sayled Westward by the South syde of *Cuba*, the further that he went, so muche the more the sea seemed to be extended in breadth, and to bende toward the South. On the South syde of *Cuba*, he founde an Ilande whiche the inhabitauntes call *Iamaica*, this he affirmeth to be longer & broder then the Ilande of *Scicile*, haung in it only one mountaine, which on euery part, beginning from the sea, ryleth by litle and litle into the myddest of the Ilande, and that so playnely without roughnesse, that such as goe by to the toppe of the same, can scarcely perceiue that they assende: This Ilande he affirmeth to be very fruiteful and full of people, as wel in thinner partes of the same, as by the shore, and that the inhabitauntes are of quicker wytte then in the other Ilandes, and more expert Artificers, and warlike men: For

The Ilandes of cabouerde or Hesperides.

The Portus gales viages.

The ende of the easte and weste.

Note. India not far from Spaine.

Sainte Nicolas las porte.

The Iland of Iamaica.

Quicke witted people.

Wilde vines of pleasure taste.

Fruitful mountaynes.

Golde in the Ilande of ryuers falling from the mountaynes.

Libertie and idleness. The mountaynes are colde.

The Ilande of Cuba.

Least any other prince, &c.

Dissention betwene the Portugales and Spaniards.

The compass  
sing of the  
earth.

Aurea Chers-  
sonellus, or  
Malaccha.

A secrete of  
Astronomie.

The river of  
Ganges.

Dangerous  
streights by  
reason of ma-  
ny Ilandes.

A large  
hauen.

Stolck fische  
and serpentes  
of viii. foote  
longe.

in many places where he woulde haue aryued, they came ar-  
med against him, and forbode him with threathynge wordes: but  
beyng ouercome, they made a league of frendshyp with hym.  
Thus departing from *Iamaica*, he sayled toward the West, with  
a prosperous wynde, for the space of threescore and tenne dayes,  
thynking that he had passed so farre by the compass of the earth  
being vnderneath vs, that he had ben neare vnto *Aurea Chersone-  
sus* (nowe called *Malaccha*) in our east India, beyonde the be-  
gynnyng of *Persides*: for he playnely beleued that he had left on-  
ly two of the twelue houres of the sunne, which were vnknewen  
to vs, for the olde wyters haue left halfe the course of the sunne  
vntoucht, where as they haue but only discusst that superficial  
parte of the earth whiche lyeth betweene the Ilandes of *Gades*,  
and the ryuer of *Ganges*, or at the vttermoost, to *Aurea Chersone-  
sus*. In this Nauigation, he chaunced on many furious seas,  
running with a fall as it had ben the streames of floods, also  
many whyrlepooles, and shelles, with many other dangers, and  
strayghtes, by reason of the multitude of ilandes whiche lay on  
euery syde. But not regardyng al these perilles, he determined  
to proceede, vntil he had certayne knowledge whether *Cuba* were  
an ilande, or firme lande. Thus he sayled forward, coastyng euer  
by the shore toward the West for the space of CC. xii. leagues,  
that is, about a thousande and three hundred myles, and gaue  
names to seuen hundred ilandes by the way, leauyng also on the  
left hande (as he feared not to report) three thousande here and  
there. But let vs nowe retorne to suche thynges as he founde  
worthy to be noted in this nauigation. Saylyng therefore by  
the syde of *Cuba*, and searchyng the nature of the places, he espy-  
ed not farre from *Alpha* and *O* a large hauen, of capacite to har-  
borowe many shippes, whose entraunce is berdyng, beyng in-  
closed on both sydes with rapes or poyntes whiche receiue the  
water: this hauen is large within, and of exceedyng deapth.  
Saylyng by the shore of this porte, he sawe not farre from the  
same, two cotages, couered with reedes, and in many places fyre  
kyndled. Here he sent certayne armed men out of the shippes to  
the cotages, where they founde neyther man nor woman, but  
rustemeate penough, for they founde certayne spytes of wood  
lying at the fyre, haung fyre on them about a hundred  
pounde

pounde weight, and two serpentes of eyght foote long apiece:  
whereat marueplyng, and lookyng about if they could espye any  
of the inhabitauntes, and that none appeared in syght (for they  
fledde al to the mountaynes at the commyng of our men) they  
fel to theyr meate, and ate the fyre taken with other mens tra-  
uayle, but they absteyned from the serpentes, which they affirme  
to differ nothing from the Crocodiles of Egypt, but only in byg-  
nesse: for (as *Plinie* sayth) Crocodiles haue sometymes ben found  
of .xviii. cubits long, but of these the biggest were but of eyght  
foote. Thus being wel refreshed, they entred into the next wood,  
where they found many of the same kynde of serpentes, hanging  
vpon boughes of trees, of the whiche, some had theyr mowthes  
tyed with strynges, and some theyr teeth taken out. And as they  
searched the places neare vnto the hauen, they sawe about .lxx.  
men in the top of a hygh rocke, whiche fled as soone as they had  
espyed our men, who by signes and tokens of peace callyng  
them agayne, there was one which came neare them, and stoode  
on the toppe of a rocke, seemyng as though he were yet feare-  
full: but the Admiral sent one *Didacus* to hym, a man of the same  
countrie, whom he had at his fyrste voyage taken in the ilande  
of *Guanahani*, being neare vnto *Cuba*, wylllyng hym to come  
neare, and not to be afraide. When he hearde *Didacus* speake to  
hym in his owne tongue, he came boldly to hym, and shortly af-  
ter resorted to his company, perswading them to come without  
al feare. After this message was done, there descended from  
the rockes to the shypes, about threescore and ten of the inhabi-  
tantes, profering frendship and gentlenesse to our men: whiche  
the Admiral accepted thankfully, and gaue them diuers rewar-  
des, and that the rather, for that he had intelligence by *Didacus*  
the interpreter, that they were the kynges fyshers, sent of theyr  
lorde to take fyre agaynst a solenne feast whiche he prepared  
for another kyng. And whereas the Admiralles men had eaten  
the fyre whiche they leste at the fyre, they were the gladder  
therof, because they had leste the serpentes: for there is nothing  
among theyr delicate dysshes, that they esteeme so muche  
as these serpentes, in so muche that it is no more lawfull for  
common people to eate of them, then *Peacockes* or *Phe-*  
lantes among vs: as for the fyshes, they doubted not to take

Crocodiles of  
Egypte.

The kynges  
fyshers.

Serpentes  
esteemed for  
delicate meate  
as



as many more the same nyght. Beyng asked why they fyrste  
 costed the fythe whiche they intended to beare to theyr kyng &  
 they answered, that they myght be the fresher and vncorrupted.  
 Thus ioynnyng handes for a token of further frendshyp, euerye  
 man resorted to his owne. The Admirall went forwarde as he  
 had appoynted, folowynge the falling of the sunne from the be-  
 ginning of *Cuba*, called *Alpha* and *O*: the shores of sea bankes  
 euen vnto this hauen, albeit they be full of trees, yet are they  
 rough with mountaines: of these trees, some were full of blis-  
 somes and flowres, and other laden with frutes. Beyond the  
 hauen, the lande is more fertile and populous, whose inhabitantes  
 are more gentle, and more desirous of our thynges: for as soone  
 as they had espied our shippes, they flocked all to the shore,  
 byngnyng with them suche bread as they are accustomed to eate,  
 and gourdes full of water, offerynge them vnto our men, and fur-  
 ther, desyring them to come alande. In al these Ilandes is a cer-  
 taine kinde of trees as bigge as *Elmes*, whiche beare *Gourdes*  
 in the steade of frutes, these they vse only for drynkynge pottes,  
 and to fetch water in, but not for meate, for the inner substance  
 of them is sowyer then gall, and the barke as harde as any shell.  
 At the Ides of May, the watchmen lookynge out of the top castle  
 of the shyp, towarde the South, sawe a multitude of Ilandes  
 standynge thicke togeather, being al wel replenished with trees,  
 grasse, and hearbes, and well inhabited: in the shore of the conti-  
 nent, he chaunced into a nauigable riuer, whose water was so  
 hot, that no man might endure to abyde his hande therein anye  
 time. The day folowynge, espying a farre of a *Canoa* of fyshermen  
 of the inhabitantes, fearynge lest they shoulde see at the syght of  
 our men, he commaunded certayne to assaile them priuily with  
 the ship boates: but they fearing nothing, carped the comynge  
 of our men. Nowe shall you heare a newe kynde of fyshynge.  
 Lyke as we with Greyhoundes do hunt Hares in the playne  
 feeldes, so doo they, as it were with a hunting fythe, take other  
 fishes: this fythe was of shape or fourme vnknewen vnto vs,  
 but the bodye thereof not muche vnylike a great peece, haupng  
 on the hynder parte of the head a very tough skynne, lyke vnto  
 a great bagge or purse; this fythe is tyed by the syde of the boate  
 with a corde, let downe so farre into the water, that the fythe  
 may

Molluskes &  
 frutes both  
 at one time.

Trees which  
 beare gourdes.

A multitude  
 of Ilandes.

Hotte water.

A strange  
 kinde of fy-  
 shing.

may lye close hid by the keele or bottome of the same, for she may  
 in no case abyde the syght of the ayre. Thus when they espye any  
 great fythe, or *Cortopse* (wherof there is great abundance, byg-  
 ger then great targettes) they let the corde at length, but when  
 she feeleth her selfe loosed, she inuadeth the fythe or *Cortopse* as  
 swiftly as an arrowe, and where she hath once fastened her holde,  
 she casteth the purse of skynne, whereof we spake before, and  
 by drawynge the same togeather, so graspeleth her pray, that no  
 mans strength is sufficient to vnlouose the same, excepte by lytle  
 and lytle drawynge the lyne, she be lyfted somewhat aboue the  
 bymme of the water, for then, as lone as she seeth the bright-  
 nesse of the ayre, she letteth goe her holde. The praye therfore  
 beyng nowe drawen nere to the bymme of the water, there  
 leapeth sodenly out of the boate into the sea, so manye fythers as  
 may suffice to holde fast the praye, vntill the rest of the company  
 haue taken it into the boate. Whiche thyng doone, they loole  
 so muche of the corde, that the huntynge fythe may agayne  
 retorne to her place within the water, where by an other corde,  
 they let downe to her a peece of the pray, as we use to rewarde  
 greyhoundes after they haue kylled theyr game. This fythe,  
 they cal *Guaicanum*, but our men cal it *Renersum*. They gaue our  
 men foure *Cortopses* taken by this meanes, and those ofliche  
 byggennesse, that they almost fylled theyr fyshynge boate: for  
 these fythes are esteemed among them for delectate meate. Our  
 men recompensed them agayne with other rewarde, and so let  
 them depart. Beyng asked of the compasse of that lande, they  
 answered that it had no ende westwarde. Most instantly they  
 desyred the Admirall to come a lande, or in his name to sende  
 one with them to salute theyr *Cazicus*, (that is) their kyng, af-  
 firmynge that he woulde geue our men many presentes, yf they  
 woulde goe to hym. But the Admirall, lest he shoulde be hindered  
 of the voyage whiche he had begunne, refused to goe with them.  
 Then they desyred to knowe his name, and tolde our men lyke-  
 wise the name of theyr king. Thus sayling on yet further euer  
 towarde the West, within fewe dayes he came nere vnto a cer-  
 tayne exceedynge high mountayne, wel inhabited by reason of the  
 great fertillite of the same. The inhabitantes of this mountaine,  
 brought to our shyp, bread, gossampine cotton, cunnies, & sundry  
 kyndes

Abundance  
 of Cortopses.

Fisher men.

The fythe  
*Guaicanum*.

Humane  
 people.

A mountayne  
 fruitful and  
 well inhabited

kyndes of wyldfoule, demaundyng relygiouſly of thinterpre-  
tours, if this nation deſcended not from heauen. The kyng of  
this people, and dyuers other ſage men that ſtoode by him, infor-  
med hym that that lande was no Iſlande. Shortly after, entring  
into one of the iſlandes being on the leſte hande of this lande,  
they founde no body therein, for they fledde al at the comming of  
our men: Yet founde they there foure dogges of maruelous de-  
formed ſhape, & ſuche as coulde not barke. This kynd of dogges,  
they eate as we do goates. Here is great plentie of geefe, duckes,  
and hearons. Betwene theſe iſlandes and the continent, he en-  
tered into ſo narrowe ſtreightes, that he coulde ſcarſely turne  
backe the ſhyppes, and theſe alſo ſo ſhalowe, that the keele of the  
ſhyppes ſomtyme raſed on the ſandes. The water of theſe ſtrep-  
ghtes, for the ſpace of fourtie myles, was white and thicke, lyke  
vnto mylke, and as though meale had ben ſparkeled throughout  
al that ſea. And when they had at the length eſcaped theſe ſtrap-  
ghtes, and were nowe come into a mayne and large ſea, and had  
ſayled thereon for the ſpace of foureſcore myles, they eſpyed an o-  
ther exceeding hygh mountayne, whither the Admirall reſorted  
to ſtoze his ſhyppes with freſhe water and fuel. There among  
certayne wooddes of Date trees, & pyneapple trees of exceeding  
height, he founde two natie ſpynges of freſhe water. In the  
meane tyme, whyle the woodde was cutting, and the barrells  
ſpyllyng, one of our archers went into the wood to hunt, where  
he eſpyed a certayne man with a whyte veſture, ſo lyke a fryer of  
the order of ſaynt Barpe of *Mercedis*, that at the fyrſte ſight he  
ſuppoſed it had ben the Admirals priet, which he brought with  
hym, being a man of the ſame order: but two other folowed him  
immediatly out of the ſame wooddes. Shortly after, he ſawe a  
farre of a whole company of men clothed in apparell, being about  
xxx. in number. Then turning his backe, and crying out to his  
felowes, he made haſte to the ſhyppes with all that he myght  
dyeue. Theſe apparelled men, made ſygnys and tokens to hym  
to tary, and not to be aſtrayd, but that notwithstanding he ceaſed  
not to flee. The Admirall being aduertysed hereof, and not  
a lytle reioycyng that he had founde a ciuile people, in-  
continently ſent forth armed men, with commaundement  
that yf neede ſhould ſo requyre, they ſhoulde enter ſometyme  
into

into the iſlande, vntyl they myght fynde eyther thoſe apparelled  
men, or other inhabitauntes of that countrey. When they had  
paſſed ouer the wood, they came into a great playne ful of graſſe  
and hearbes, in whiche appeared no token of any pathway. Here  
attemptyng to goe through the graſſe and hearbes, they were  
ſo entangled and bewrappt therein, that they were ſcarſely able  
to paſſe a myle, the graſſe being there lytle lower then our ripe  
corne: being therefore weeryed, they were enforced to retorne  
agayne, finding no pathway. The day folowynge he ſent forth  
xxx. armed men another way, commaundyng them to make dili-  
gent ſearch and inquiſition what manner of people inhabited the  
lande: Who departyng, when they had found, not farre from the  
ſea ſide, certayne ſteps of wyld beaſtes, of the which they ſuſpec-  
ted ſome to be of Lions ſeete, being ſtrycken with feare, retur-  
ned backe agayne. As they came, they founde a wood in the  
whiche were many natie vines, here and there creepynge about  
hygh trees, with many other trees bearyng aromatical fruites  
and ſpyces. Of theſe vines they brought with them into Spaine  
many cluſters of grapes, very ponderous, and full of licour: but  
of the other fruites they brought none, becauſe they putrified by  
the way in the ſhypp, & were caſt into the ſea. They ſay alſo that  
in the landes or medowes of thoſe wooddes, they ſawe flockes of  
great Cranes, clype as bygge as ours. As he went forward, and  
turned his ſayles toward certayne other mountaynes, he eſpied  
two cotages on the ſhore, in the whiche he ſawe only one man,  
who being brought to the ſhippe, ſignified with head, ſyngers,  
and by al other ſignes that he coulde deuſe, that the lande whiche  
lay beyonde thoſe mountaynes was very full of people: and as  
the Admiral drew neare the ſhore of the ſame, there met him cer-  
taine *Canoas*, haunyng in them many people of the countrey, who  
made ſignes and tokens of peace and frendſhypp. But here *Dida-*  
*cus* the interpreter, which underſtoode the language of thinha-  
bitantes of the beginning of *Cuba*, underſtoode not them one whit,  
whereby they conſidered that in ſundry prouinces of *Cuba*, were  
ſundry languages. He had alſo intelligence, that in the inlande of  
this region was a king of great power, & accuſtomed to weare  
apparell: he ſayde that all the tracte of this ſhore was drow-  
ned with water, and full of mudde, beſette with manye trees,  
after

Natie vines.  
Trees bearyng  
ſpyces & ſweete  
fruites.

Diners lan-  
guages in the  
Iſlande of  
*Cuba*.

Dogges of  
ſtrange ſhape  
and dunne

white and  
thicke water.

Wooddes of  
date trees.

Men apparel-  
led like white  
pers.

Apparelled  
men.

**Pearles in the** after the maner of our maryshes: Yet whereas in this place  
**shippes.** they went alande for freshe water, they founde many of the best  
fshes in the whiche pearles are gathered. But that coude not  
cause the Admirall to tracte the tyme there, extending at this  
viage, only to proue howe many landes & seas he could discover  
according to the kinges commaundement. As they yet proceeded  
forwarde, they sawe here and there, al the way along by the shore,  
a great smoke rysing, vntyll they came to an other mountayne  
foure score myles distant, there was no rocke or hyl that  
coude be seene, but the same was all of a smoke. But whether  
these fyres were made by thynhabitanes for their necessary  
busynes, or (as we are wont to sette beacons on fyre when we  
suspecte thapproche of our enimies) thereby to geue warning to  
theyr neyghbours to be in a redines, & gather together, if per-  
haps our men shoulde attempt any thyng against them, or other-  
wyle as (seemeth most lykely) to cal them together, as to a won-  
der, to beholde our shippes, they knowe yet no certentie. In  
this tracte, the shores bended somtyme towarde the South, and  
sometyme towarde the West and west south west, and the sea  
was euerye where entangled with Ilandes, by reason whereof,  
the keeles of the shippes often times raised the sandes for shalow-  
nesse of the water: So that the shippes being very sore bruised  
and appayred, the sayles, cables, and other tackelinges, in maner  
rotten, and the bytailes (especially the biskette head) corrupted  
by takynge water at the ryftes euyl closed, the Admirall was en-  
forced to turne backe agayne: This laste poynte where he  
touched of *Cuba* (not yet being knowen to be an ilande) he called  
*Euangelista*. Thus turning his sayles towarde other ilandes ly-  
ing not farre from the supposed continent, he chaunced into a  
mayne sea, where was suche a multitude of great Tortoyles, that  
sometyme they stayed the shippes: Not long after, he entred into  
a gulfe of whyte water, lyke vnto that wherof we spake before.  
At the length, fearing the shelves of the ilands, he returned to the  
shore of *Cuba* by the same way whiche he came. Here a multitude  
of thynhabitanes, as well women as men, resorted to hym with  
cheerfull countenances, and with feare, bringyng with them  
popyngayes, bread, water, and cummys, but especially stocke  
doues, much bygger then ours, which he affirmeth, in sauour and  
taste,

The sea entan-  
gled with I-  
landes.

A multitude of  
great Tortoy-  
les.  
A gulfe of white  
water.

taste, to be muche more pleasaunt then our partryches. Where-  
fore where as in eating of them he perceiued a certayne sauoure  
of spyce to proceede from them, he commaunded the crowe to  
be opened of suche as were newly kylled, and founde the same  
full of sweete spyces, whiche he argued to be the cause of theyr  
strange taste: For it standeth with good reason, that the fleshe  
of beastes, shoulde drawe the nature and qualitie of theyr ac-  
customed nourishment. As the Admirall harde masse on the  
shore, there came towarde hym a certayne gouernoure, a man  
of foure score yeeres of age, and of great grauitie, although he  
were naked sauing his pyuie partes. He had a great trayne of  
men wayting on hym. All the whyle the prieste was at masse,  
he shewed him selfe very humble, and gaue reuerent attendance,  
with graue and demure countenance. When the masse was  
ended, he presented to the Admirall a baskette of the fruites of  
his countrey, deliuering the same with his owne handes. When  
the Admirall had gentelly entertayned him, desyring leaue to  
speake, he made an oration in the presence of *Didacus* the inter-  
preter, to this effect. I haue byn aduertised (most mighty prince)  
that you haue of late with great power subdued many lands and  
Regions, hitherto unknowen to you, and haue brought no litle  
feare vpon all the people and inhabitauntes of the same: the  
whiche your good fortune, you shal beare with lesse insolencie, if  
you remember that the soules of men haue two iourneys after  
they are departed from this body: The one, soule and darke, pre-  
pared for suche as are iniurious and cruell to mankynde: the  
other, pleasaunt and delectable, ordeyned for them which in theyr  
lyfe tyme loued peace and quietnes. If therfore you acknowledge  
your selfe to be mortall, and consider that euery man shal receiue  
condigne rewarde or punishment for suche thynges as he hath  
done in this life, you wyl wrongfully hurte no man. When he  
had saide these wordes and other lyke, which were declared to the  
Admirall by the interpreter, he marueyling at the iudgement of  
the naked olde man, answered, that he was gladd to heare his  
opinion as touching the sundry iourneys and rewarde of soules  
departed from theyr bodies, supposing that nother he, or any  
other of thynhabitanes of those Regions, had had any know-  
ledge thereof: declaring further, that the chiefe cause of his  
comming

The humanitie  
of a reuerende  
olde gouernour

An oration of  
the naked go-  
uernour.

a most rare  
wonderfull

The opinion  
of the soule of  
man.



Despye of gold,  
founde that  
which religion  
coude not  
fynde.

Virtus post  
hummos. &c.

comming thither, was to instruct them in such godly knowledge and true religion: and that he was sent into those countreys by the Christian kyng of Spayne (his lord and maister) for the same purpose, and specially to subdue and punyche the *Canibales*, and suche other mischeuous people, and to defend innocentes against the violence of euyl dooers, wyllyng hym, and al other suche as imbraced vertue, in no case to be afrayde, but rather to open his mynde unto hym, yf eyther he, or any other suche quiet men as he was, had susteyned any wrong of theyr neyghbours, and that he woulde see the same reuenged. These comfortable words of the Admirall so pleased the olde man, that notwithstanding his extreme age, he woulde gladly haue gone with the Admiral, as he had done in deede, yf his wyfe and chyldren had not hyndered hym of his purpose: but he marueled not a lytle, that the Admiral was vnder the dominion of another: and much more, when the interpretour tolde hym of the glorie, magnificence, pompe, great power, and furnimentes of warre of our kinges, and of the multitudes of cities and townes whiche were vnder theyr dominions. Intendyng therefore to haue gone with the Admirall, his wyfe and chyldren fell prostrate at his feete, with teares desyryng him not to forsake them and leaue them desolate: at whose pitiful requestes, the woorthy olde man beyng mooued, remayned at home to the comfort of his people and familie, satisfiying rather them then hym selfe: for not yet ceassyng to woonder, and of heauie countenance because he myght not depart, he demaunded oftentymes yf that lande were not heauen, whiche brought forth suche a kynde of men? For it is certaine, that among them the lande is as common as the sunne and water, and that Pyne and Thyne (the seedes of all mylcheefe) haue no place with them. They are content with so lytle, that in so large a countrey they haue rather superfluitie then scarcenelle: so that (as we haue sayde before) they seeme to lyue in the golden worlde without toyle, lyuyng in open gardens, not intrenched with dyches, diuided with hedges, or defended with walles: they deale truely one with another without lawes, without bookes, and without iudges: they take hym for an euyl and mischeuous man, whiche taketh pleasure in dooing hurt to other. And albeit that they delyste not in superfluities, yet make they

The lande as  
common as  
the sunne and  
water.

they prouision for the increafe of suche rootes whereof they make theyr bread, as *Maizium*, *Lucca*, and *Ages*, contented with suche symple dyet, whereby health is preserued, and diseases auoyded. Simple dyet. The Amirall therefore departyng from thence, and myndyng to returne agayne shortly after, chaunced to come agayne to the Ilande of *Lamaica*, beyng on the south syde thereof, and coasted all along by the shore of the same from the West to the East, from whose last corner on the East syde, when he saue toward the North syde on his left hande certayne hygh mountaynes, he knewe at the length that it was the south syde of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, whiche he had not yet passed by. Therefore, at the Calendes of September, entryng into the hauen of the same Ilande, called *saint Nicholas hauen*, he repayred his shyppes, to the intent that he might agayne waste and spoyle the Ilandes of the *Canibales*, and burne all theyr *Canoas*, that those rauenyng wolues might no longer persecute and deuoure the innocent sheepe: but he was at this tyme hyndered of his purpose, by reason of a disease which he had gotten by to much watching. Thus beyng feeble and weake, he was ledde of the Maryners to the citie of *Isabella*, where, with his two brethren whiche were there, and other of his familiars, he recovered his health in short space: yet coulde he not at this tyme assaile the *Canibales*, by reason of sedition that was risen of late among the Spaniards whiche he had left in *Hispaniola*, whereof we wyl speake more hereafter. Thus fare ye well.

Hispaniola.

The Canibales.

Sickenesse of  
to much watch-  
ing.

The fourth booke of the first Decade, to  
*Lodouike Cardinal of Aragonie.*



**C**olumus the Admirall of the Ocean, returning (as he supposed) from the continent of syenne lande of East India, had aduertisment that his brother *Boilus*, and one *Peter Margarita*, an olde familiar of the kynges, and a noble man, with diuers other of those to whom he had left the gouernment of the Ilande, were (of corrupted mynde agaynst hym) departed into Spayne. Therefore, aswel to purge hym selfe of suche crimes,

The Spaniards  
rebell  
is the Admirals  
absence.

as they shoulde lay to his charge, as also to make a supply of other men in the place of them whiche were returned, and especiallly to prouide for byttualles, as wheate, wine, oyle, and suche other, whiche the Spanyardes are accustomed to eate, because they coulde not yet well agree with such meates as they founde in the Ilandes, determined shortly to take his voyage into Spayne: but what he dyd befoze his departure, I will breefely rehearse.

The kynges of the Ilandes which had hitherto lyued quietly, and content with theyr lytle whiche they thought aboundant, wheras they nowe perceiued that our men began to fasten foote within theyr regions, & to beare rule among them, they toke the matter so greuously, that they thought nothyng els but by what meanes they myght utterly destroy them, and for euer abolyse the memory of theyr name, for that kinde of men (the Spanyardes I meane, which folowed the Admirall in that nauigation) were for the moste part vnruly, regarding nothyng but idlenesse, play, and libertie, and woulde by no meanes absteyne from iniuries, rauishing of the women of the Ilandes befoze the faces of their husbandes, fatherz, and brethren: by which theyr abominable mysdemeanour, they disquieted the myndes of all the inhabitants, insomuche that wheresoeuer they founde any of our men vnprepared, they slue them with such fiercenesse and gladnesse, as though they had offered sacrifice to God. Intendyng therfore to pacifie theyr troubled myndes, and to punyshe them that slue his men befoze he departed from thence, he sent for the king of that bale, whiche in the booke befoze we described to be at the foote of the mountaynes of the region of *Cibana*. this kynges name was *Guarionexius*: who, the more straghtly to conueyle vnto hym the frendshyp of the Admirall, gaue his syster to wyfe to *Didacus*, a man from his chyldes age brought vp with the Admirall, whom he vsed for his interpreter in the prouinces of *Cuba*. After this, he sent for *Caunaboa*, called the lord of the house of golde, that is, of the mountaynes of *Cibana*: For this *Caunaboa* he sent one Captayne *Hoieda*, whom the dictionaries of *Caunaboa* had enforced to keepe his holde, besieging for the space of thirtie dayes the fortreffe of saint Thomas, in the whiche *Hoieda* with his sylvie souldiers stode at theyr defence, vntill the comming of the Admirall. Whyle *Hoieda* remayned with *Caunaboa*, ma-

The kinges  
of the ilande  
rebell.

The Spanis  
ardes milbe:  
haue ear.

A iust reuenge.

Captayne Ho:  
ieda.

nye ambassadours of the kynges of diuers regions were sent to *Caunaboa*, perswading him in no condition to permit the Christians to inhabite the Ilande, except he had rather serue then rule. On the other partie, *Hoieda* aduertised *Caunaboa* to goe to the Admirall, and to make a league of frendshyp with hym: but the ambassadours on the contrary part, threatened hym, that if he woulde so doo, the other kynges woulde inuade his region. But *Hoieda* answered them agayne, that whereas they conspired to maynteyne theyr libertie, they shoulde by that meanes be brought to seruitude & destruction, if they intended to resist or kepe warre against the Christians. Thus *Caunaboa* on the one side and the other beyng troubled, as it were a rocke in the sea beaten with contrary floodes, and muche more vexed with the stormes of his gyltie conscience, for that he had priuily slayne xx. of our men vnder pretence of peace, feared to come to the Admirall: but at the length, haupng excogitated his deceit, to haue slayne the Admirall and his companye, vnder the colour of frendshyp, yf oportunitie woulde so haue serued, he repayed to y<sup>e</sup> Admirall, with his whole familie, and many other wayting on him, armed after theyr manner. Beyng demaunded why he brought so great a rout of men with him, he answered, that it was not decent for so great a prince as he was, to goe out of his house without suche a bande of men: but the thyng chaunced muche otherwys then he looked for, for he fell into the snares whiche he had prepared for other, for whereas by the way he began to repent hym that he came forth of his house, *Hoieda* with many fayre woordes & promises brought him to the Admirall, at whose commaundement he was immediatly taken and put in prison, so that the soules of our men were not long from theyr bodies vnreuenged. Thus *Caunaboa* with al his familie beyng taken, the Admirall was determined to runne ouer the Ilande, but he was certified that there was suche famine among the inhabitauntes, that there was alredy sylvie thousande men dead thereof, and that they dyed yet dayly, as it were rotten sheepe, the cause whereof, was wel knownen to be theyr owne obstinacie and frowardnesse: for wheras they sawe that our men intended to choole them a dwelling place in the Ilande, supposing that they myght haue dy-  
men them from thence if the vittualles of the Ilande shoulde faile,

Caunaboacons  
pyrth the Ad-  
mirals death.

Famine in the  
ilande of his  
paniola.

The hunger  
of golde caus-  
eth greate  
famine.

they determined with them selues, not only to leaue folowyng and plantyng, but also to destroy and plucke vp by the rootes, euery man in his owne region, that whiche they had already solwen, of both kyndes of bread, whereof we made mention in the first booke, but especially among the mountaynes of *Cibana*, otherwyle called *Cipanga*, forasmuche as they had knowledge that the golde whiche aboundeth in that region, was the chiefe cause that deteyned our men in the Island. In the meane tyme, he sent forth a Captayne with a bande of men, to searche the South syde of the Island, who at his returne, reported that throughout all the regions that he traualled, there was suche scarcenesse of bread, that for the space of xvi. dayes, he ate nothyng but the rootes of hearbes, and of young date trees, or the fruites of other wyld trees: but *Guarionexius* the kynge of the vale, lying beneath the mountaynes of *Cibana*, whose kyngdome was not so wasted as the other, gaue our men certayne vyttualles. Within a fewe dayes after, both that the iourneys myght be the shorter, and also that our men myght haue more safe places of refuge, if the inhabitauntes shoulde hereafter rebell in lyke manner, he buylded another fortreffe (whiche he called the Towre of Conception) betweene the Citie of *Isabella*, and *Saint Thomas* fortreffe, in the marches of the kyngdome of this *Guarionexius*, within the precincte of *Cibana*, vpon the syde of a hyll, hauing a fayre riuer of hollesome water runnyng harde by the same. Thus when the inhabitantes sawe newe buyldinges to be dayly erected, and our shippes lying in the haven rotten and halfe broken, they began to dispayre of any hope of libertie, and wandred vp and downe with heauie cheare. From the Towre of Conception, searchyng diligently the inner partes of the mountaynes of *Cibana*, there was a certayne kyng whiche gaue them a masse of rude golde as bigge as a mans fist, weighing .xx. ounces: this golde was not founde in the banke of that riuer, but in a heape of dye earth, and was lyke vnto the stone called *Tophus*, whiche is soone resolued into sande. This masse of golde I mee selfe sawe in Castile, in the famous Citie of *Met hymna Campi*, where the Court lay at that tyme. I sawe also a great peece of pure *Electrum*, of the which belles, and Apothecaries morters, & many suche other vesselles and instrumentes may be made, as were in

olde

olde tyme of copper the citie of *Corinthus*. This peece of *Electrum* was of suche weight, that I was not only with both my handes vnable to lift it from the ground, but also not of strength to remoue it eyther one way or other: they affirmed that it weyged more then thre hundred pounde weyght, after epyght ounces to the pounde, it was founde in the house of a certayne prynce, and left hym by his predecessours: and albeit that in the dayes of the inhabitauntes yet luyng, *Electrum* was no where digged, yet knewe they where the myne thereof was, but our men with muche adoo coulde hardly cause them to shewe them the place, they bore them suche pryue hatred, yet at the length they brought them to the myne, beyng now rinate and stopped with stones and ruddy sheit is muche easier to digge then is the iron myne, and might be restored agayne, yf myners and other workmen skilful therein were appoynted thereto. Not farre from the towre of Conception, in the same mountaynes, is founde great plentie of Amber, and out of certayne rockes of the same, distilleth a substance of the yelow colour whiche the Paynters vse. Not farre from these mountaynes are many great woods, in the whiche are none other trees then *Brasile*, which the Italians call *Verzino*. But here perhaps (ryght noble prynce) you woulde aske, what shoulde be the cause, that where as the Spanyardes haue brought out of these Landes certayne shippes laden with *Brasile*, somewhat of Gossampine cotton, a quantitie of Amber, a lytle golde, & some spyes, why they haue not brought suche plentie of golde, and suche other ryche marchaundizes, as the fruitfulness of these regions seeme to promyse? To this I aunswere, that when *Colonus* the Admirall was lykewyse demaunded the cause hereof, he made aunswere, that the Spanyardes whiche he tooke with hym into these regions, were geuen rather to sleepe, play, and idlenesse, then to labour, and were more studious of ledition and newes, then desirous of peace and quietnesse: also, that being geuen to licenciousnesse, they rebelled & forsooke hym, findyng matter of false accusation against hym, because he went about to repressse theyr outragiousnesse: by reason whereof, he was not yet able to breake the power of the inhabitauntes, and freely to possesse the full dominion of the Island, and these hynderaunces to be the cause that hy-

E iii

ther to

*Electrum* is a metall naturally mixt of one portion of golde, & all other of siluer, being of propriety to be wyape popson, and was therefore in olde tyme in greater estimation then golde. The mine of *Electrum*.

An other kinde of amber is taken out of greate whale fishes.

Spement of oker.

Wooddes of *brasil* trees.

Licentiousnes of to much libertie.

And this only  
gathered, and  
not digged out  
of the bodie of  
the mine.

ther to the gaynes haue scarcely counteruayled the charges: at  
beit, euen this yere whyle I wrote these thyngs at your request,  
they gathered in two monethes the summe of a thousande and  
two hundred poundes weyght of gold. But because we entende  
to speake more largely of these thynges in theyr place, we wyll  
nowe retorne from whence we haue digressed. When the inha-  
bitantes perceiued that they coulde by no meanes shake the  
poke from theyr necks, they made humble supplication to the Ad-  
miral, that they myght stande to theyr tribute, and applye them  
selues to reincrease the frutes of theyr countrey, beyng nowe al-  
most wasted. He graunted them theyr request, and appoynted  
suche order that euery region shoulde pay theyr tribute, with  
the commodities of theyr countreys, accordyng to theyr portyon,  
and at suche tyme as they were agreed vpon: but the violent fa-  
mine did frustrate al these appoyntementes, for al the traualles  
of theyr bodyes, were scarcely able to suffice to fynde them  
meate in the wooddes, whereby to susteyne theyr lyues, beyng  
of long tyme contented with rootes and the frutes of wyld  
trees: yet many of the kynges with theyr people, euen in this ex-  
treme necessitie, brought part of theyr tribute, most humblye  
desyryng the Admiral to haue compassion of their calamities,  
and to beare with them yet a whyle, vntyl the Islande were resto-  
red to the olde state, promysyng further, that that whiche was  
nowe wantyng, shoulde then be double recompenced. But fewe  
of the inhabitauntes of the mountaynes of *Cibaua* kept theyr pro-  
mise, because they were sore oppressed with famine then anye  
of the other. They say that the inhabitantes of these mountaynes  
differ no lesse in language and manners from them whiche  
dwell in the playnes, then among vs the rusticalles of the coun-  
treys, from the gentlemen of the courte: wheras notwithstanding  
they lyue as it were both vnder one portyon of heauen, and in ma-  
ny thynges much after one fashyon, as in nakednesse, and rude  
simplicitie. But nowe let vs retorne to *Caunaboa* the king of  
the house of golde, beyng in captiuitie. When he perceiued hym  
selfe to be cast in prison, frettyng and gratyng his teeth, as it  
had been a Lion of *Libia*, and dayly and nyghtly deuylyng with  
hym selfe howe he myght be deliuered, beganne to perswade  
the Admiral, that forasmuche as he had nowe taken vnto his

dominion

The nature of  
the region dis-  
poseth the ma-  
ner of the peo-  
ple.

King *Cauna-*  
*boa* in capti-  
uitie.

dominion the region of *Cipanga* or *Cibaua* (wherof he was king)  
it shoulde be expedient to sende thither a garrison of Christian  
men, to defende the same from the incursions of his olde enimies  
and borderers: for he sayde, that it was signified vnto him, that  
the countrey was wasted and spoyled with suche incursions.  
By this craftie deuise, he thought to haue brought to passe, that  
his brother whiche was in that region, and the other his kyn-  
folkes and frendes with theyr adherentes, shoulde haue taken, ey-  
ther by sleight or force, as many of our men as myght haue re-  
deemed hym. But the Admiral vnderstandyng his craftie mea-  
nyng, sent *Holida* with suche a companye of men, as myght  
banquishe the *Cibauians*, yf they shoulde moue warre agaynst  
them. Our men had scarcely entred into the region, but the  
brother of *Caunaboa* came agaynst them with an armie of fyue  
thousande naked men, armed after theyr manner, with clubbes,  
arrowes tyed with bones, and speares made harde at the endes  
with fyre. He stole vpon our men beyng in one of theyr houses,  
and encamped rounde about the same on euery syde. This *Ciba-*  
*nian*, as a man not ignorant in the discipline of warre, about  
the distaunce of a furlong from the house, diuided his armie  
into fyue battayles, appoyntyng to euery one of them a circuite  
by equall diuision, and placed the froont of his owne battayle  
directly agaynst our men. When he had thus set his battayles  
in good aray, he gaue certayne signes that y whole armie shoulde  
marche forwarde in order with equall paces, and with a larme  
freshly assaile theyr enimies, in such sort that none might escape.  
But our men iudging it better to encontre with one of the bat-  
tayles, then to abyde the brunt of the whole armie, gaue onset  
on the mayrie battayle aranged in the playne, because that place  
was most commodious for the horsmen. When the horsmen  
therefore had geuen the charge, they ouerthrewe them with the  
brestes of theyr horses, and slue as many as abode the ende of the  
fight, the residue beyng strycken with feare, disparcelled, and fledde  
to the mountaynes and rockes: from whence they made a piti-  
full howlyng to our men, desyryng them to spare them, pro-  
testyng that they woulde neuer more rebell, but doo what so e-  
uer they woulde commaund them, yf they woulde suffer them  
to lyue in theyr owne countrey. Thus the brother of *Caunaboa*  
beyng

*Caunaboa* his  
brother rebels  
lye.

A conflict be-  
twene the *Ci-*  
*bauians* and  
the Spaniards.

being taken, the Admiral licenced the people to resort euerye man to his owne: these thynges thus fortunately atchiued, this region was pacified. Among these mountaynes, the vale whiche *Caunaboa* inhabited, is called *Magna*, and is exceeding fruitful, hauing in it many goodly springes and riuers, in the lande whereof is founde great plentie of golde. The same yeere in the moneth of June, they say there arose such a boystous tempest of winde from the Southwest, as hath not lightly ben heard of, the violence wherof was such, that it plucked vp by the rootes whatsoeuer great trees were within the reache of the force thereof. When this whylde wynde came to the hauens of the citie, it beat downe to the bottome of the sea three shippes, whiche lay at anker, and broke the cables in sunder, and that (whiche is the greater marueyle) without any storme or roughnesse of the sea, only turnyng them three or foure tymes about. The inhabitants also asseyne, that the same yeere the sea extended it selfe further into the lande, and rose hygher then euer it dyd before by the memorie of man, by the space of a cubit. The people therefore muttered among them selues, that our nation had troubled the elementes, & caused suche portentous signes. These tempestes of the ayre (whiche the Grecians call *Tiphones*, that is, whylde wyndes) they call *Furacanes*, whiche they say, doo often tymes chaunce in this Ilande: but that neyther they, nor they great graundfathers, euer sawe suche violent and furious *Furacanes*, that plucked vp great trees by the rootes, neyther yet such surges and vehement motions on the sea, that so wasted the land: as in deede it may appeare, forasmuche as wheresoeuer the sea bankes are neere to any playne, there are in maner euery where floryshyng medowes reaching euen vnto the shore: but nowe let vs retorne to *Caunaboa*. As kynge *Caunaboa* therefore and his brother shoulde haue ben brought into Spayne, they dyed by the way, for very penituenesse and anguish of minde. The Admiral, whose shippes were drowned in the foresayd tempest, perceiuing him selfe to be nowe enclosed, commaunded forthwith two other shippes (whiche the Spanyardes call *Carauelas*) to be made: for he had with hym all manner of Artificers parteyning thereunto. Whyle these thynges were dooyng, he sent forth *Bartholomeus Colon* his brother, being Lieutenent of the Ilande,

A greates tempest in the moneth of June.

Whyle winde.  
Furacanes.

The death of  
king *Caunaboa*  
and his  
brother.

with an armie of men to searche the golde mynes, being distant threescore leagues from the citie of *Isabella*, whiche were founde by the conducte of certayne people of the Ilande, before the mynes of *Cipanga* or *Cibana* were knowen. In these mynes they founde certayne deepe pittes, which had ben dygged in old time, out of these pyttes, the Admiral (who affirmeth this Ilande of *Hispaniola* to be *Ophir*, as we sayde before) suppoeth that *Solomon* the kynge of *Hierusalem* had his great ryches of golde, whereof we reade in the olde Testament, and that his shippes sayled to this *Ophir* by the gulfes of *Persia*, called *Sinus Persicus*. But whether it be so or not, it lyeth not in me to iudge, but in my opinion it is farre of. As the myners dygged the superficial or byppermost part of the earth of y mynes, durynge for the space of sixe myles, & in dyuers places lysted the same on the dype lande, they founde suche plentie of golde, that euery byred labourer could easily finde euery day the weight of three drammes. These mynes being thus searched & founde, the Lieutenent certified the Admirall hereof by his letters, the which when he had receiued, the fifth day of the Ides of March, Anno. 1495. he entred into his newe shippes, and tooke his voyage directly to Spayne, to aduertise the kynge of all his affayres, leauynge the whole regiment of the Ilande with his brother the Lieutenent.

The golde mines of *Solomon*.

Sold in the superficiall partes of the earth.

The fift booke of the fyrst Decade, to  
*Lodouike* Cardinall of *Aragonie*.



After the Admirals departing into Spaine, his brother the Lieutenent buylded a fortresse in the golde mines, as he had commaunded hym: this he called the golden towre, because the labourers founde golde in the earth, and stone wherof they made the walles of the fortresse. He consumed three monethes in makynge the instrumentes wherewith the golde shoulde be geathered, washed, tryed, and moulten: yet was he at this tyme, by reason of wante of vittualles, enforced to leaue al thynges imperfecte, and to goe seeke for meate. Thus as he, with a bande of armed men, had entred threescore myles further

The golden tower.

Eache of his  
towers.



further within the land, the people of the countrey here and there resortyng to hym, gaue hym a certayne portion of theyr bread, in exchaunge for other of our thynges: but he coulde not long tary here, because they lacked meate in the fortreffe, whycher he hasted with such as he had now gotten. Leauyng therefore in the fortreffe a garrison of ten men, with that portion of the Ilande bread whiche yet remayned, leauyng also with them a Hounde to take those kyndes of lytle beastes whiche they call *Vissas*, not muche vnylike our Conies, he returned to the fortreffe of Conception. This also was the moneth wherein the kynge *Guarionexius*, and also *Manicautexius* borderer vnto hym, shoulde haue brought in theyr tributes. Remaynyng there the whole moneth of Iune, he exacted the whole tribute of these two kynges, & vntualles necessary for hym and such as he brought with hym, whiche were about foure hundred in number. Shortly after, about the Kalendes of Iuly, there came three Carauels from Spayne, brynging with them sundry kyndes of vntualles, as wheate, oyle, wine, bakon, & Hartelmas beefe, whiche were diuided to euery man accordyng as neede required, some also was lost in the caryage for lacke of good lookyng to. At the arpyual of these shyppes, the Lieutenant receiued commaundement from the kynge and the Admiral his brother, that he with his men shoulde remoue their habitation to the south syde of the Ilande, because it was nearer to the golde mynes: Also that he shoulde make diligent searche for those kinges whiche had slayne the Chyistian men, and to sende them with theyr confederates bounde into Spayne. At the next voyage therefore he sent three hundred captiues, with three kynges, and when he had diligently searched the coastes of the south syde, he transported his habitation, and buylded a fortreffe there, vpon the toppe of a hyll neare vnto a sure haven: this fortreffe he called saint Dominikes towre. Into this haven runneth a riuer of wholsome water, replenished with sundry kyndes of good fyshes: they aspyre this ryuer to haue many benefites of nature, for where so euer it runneth, all thynges are exceedyng pleasaunt and fruitefull, haupyng on euery syde groues of Date trees, and diuers other of the Ilande frutes so plentifulle, that as they sayled along by the shore, oftentymes the bryanches thereof, laden with flowres

and

and frutes, hong so ouer theyr heades, that they might plucke them with theyr handes: also that the fruitfulness of this ground, is eyther equall with the soyle of Isabella, or better. In Isabella he lesse only certayne sicke men, and shippe wyghtes, whom he had appoynted to make certayne carauels, the residue of his men, he conueighed to the south, to saynt Dominikes towre. After he had buylded this fortreffe, leauyng therein a garrison of .xx. men, he with the remanent of his souldiers, prepared them selues to searche the inner partes of the West syde of the Ilande, hitherto knowen onely by name. Therefore about .xxx. leagues, (that is) fourescore and tenne myles from the fortreffe, he chaunced on the ryuer *Naiba*, whiche we sayde to defende from the mountaynes of *Cibaua*, ryght toward the south, by the myddest of the ilande. When he had ouerpasse this ryuer with a companye of armed men diuided into .xxb. decurions, that is, tenne in a company, with theyr capitaynes, he sent two decurions to the regions of those kynges in whose landes were the great wooddes of brasile trees. Inclinyng toward the lesse hande, they founde the wooddes, entred into them, and felled the high and precious trees, which were to that day vntouched. Eche of the decurions filled certayne of the ilande houses with the trunkes of brasile, there to be reserued vntill the shippes came which shoulde cary them away. But the Lieutenant directing his iourney toward the right hande, not farre from the bankes of y riuer of *Naiba*, founde a certayne kyng whose name was *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, encamped against th inhabitantes of the prouince of *Naiba*, to subdue them vnder his dominion, as he had done many other kinges of the iland, borderers vnto him. The palace of this great king, is called *Xaragua*, & is situate toward the West ende of the ilande, distant from the ryuer of *Naiba*. xxx. leagues. All the prynces which dwell betwene the West ende & his palace, are dictionaryes vnto him. All that region from *Naiba*, to the furthest marches of the west, is utterly without golde, although it be full of mountaynes. When the kyng had espied our men, laying a part his weapons, & geuyng signes of peace, he spake gently to them (vncerteyne whether it were of humanitie or feare) and demaunded of them what they woulde haue. The Lieutenant answered, That he shoulde

paye

Isabella.

The River of Naiba.

Wooddes of Brasile trees.

Mountaynes without golde.

Wittualles brought from Spayne.

saint Dominikes towre.



pape tribute to the Admirall his brother, in the name of the Christian kyng of Spayne. To whom he sayde, Howe can you requyre that of me, whereas neuer a region vnder my dominion bringeth forth golde? For he had heard, that there was a strange nation entred into the lande, whiche made great search for golde: But he supposed that they desired some other thyng. The lieutenant answered agayne, God forbidde that we shoulde enioyne any man to paye such tribute as he myght not easely forbear, or such as were not engendered or growing in the region: but we vnderstande that your regions bring forth great plenty of Gossampine cotton, and hempe, with such other, wherof we desire you to geue vs parte. When he heard these wordes, he prompted with cherefull countenance, to geue hym as much of these thynges as he woulde requyre. Thus dismissing his army, and sending messengers before, he him selfe accompanied the Lieutenant, and brought him to his palace, being distant (as we haue sayde) .xxx. leagues. In al this tracte, they passed through the iurisdiction of other princes, beyng vnder his dominion: Of the whiche, some gaue them hempe, of no lesse goodnes to make tackelinges for shippes then our wood: Other some brought bread, and some gossampine cotton. And so euery of them payde tribute with suche commodities as they countreys brought forth. At the length they came to the kinges mansion place of *Xaragua*. Before they entered into the palace, a great multitude of the kynges seruantes & subiectes resorted to the court, honorably (after their maner) to receiue their kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, with the strangers which he brought with him to see the magnificence of his court. But now shal you heare howe they were intertained. Among other triumphes and sightes, two are especially to be noted: First, there mette them a company of .xxx. women, beyng al the kynges wyues and concubines, bearyng in theyr handes branches of date trees, singyng and dauncyng: they were all naked, sayng that theyr priue partes were couered with breeches of gossampine cotton: but the virgins, hauyng theyr heare hangyng downe about their shoulders, tyed about the forehead with a syllet, were vterly naked. They affirme that theyr faces, breastes, pappes, handes, and other partes of theyr bodies, were exceedyng smoothe,

smoothe, and well proportioned, but somewhat inclynyng to a lonyly browne. They supposed that they had seene those most beutyfull *Dryades*, or the natyue nymphes or fayres of the fountaynes wherof the antiques spake so muche. The branches of date trees, which they bore in theyr right handes when they daunced, they deliuered to the Lieutenant, with lowe curtesy and synlyng countenance. Thus enterpyng into the kynges house, they founde a delicate supper prepared for them, after theyr maner. When they were well refreshed with meate, the nyght drawyng on, they were brought by the kynges officers, euery man to his lodgyng, accordyng to his degree, in certayne of theyr houses about the pallasce, where they rested them in hangyng beddes, after the maner of the countrey, wherof we haue spoken more largely in an other place.

The day folowynge, they brought our men to their common hall, into the whiche they come togeather as often as they make any notable games or triumphes, as we haue sayde before. Here, after many dauncynges, synynges, maskynges, runnynges, wrestlynges, and other tryng of mastres, sodaynly there appeared in a large plaine neere vnto the hal, two great armies of men of warre, whiche the kyng for his pastyme had caused to be prepared, as the Spaniards vse the playe with reedes, which they call *Luga de Canias*. As the armies drew neere togeather, they assailed the one the other as fiercelly, as if mortall enimites with theyr baners spleade, shoulde fight for theyr goodes, theyr landes, theyr lynes, theyr libertie, theyr countrey, theyr wyues & theyr children, so that within the momente of an houre, foure men were slayne, and many wounded. The battayle also shoulde haue continued longer, yf the kyng had not, at the request of our men, caused them to cease. The thyrde day, the Lieutenant counsaylyng the kyng to sowe more plenty of gossampine vpon the bankes neere vnto the waters syde, that they myght the better paye theyr tribute pryuately, accordyng to the multitude of theyr houses, he preparred to *Isabella*, to visite the sycke men whiche he had left there, and also to see howe his woorkes went forwarde. In the tyme of his absence .xxx. of his men were consumed with diuerse diseases. Wherefore beyng sore troubled in his mynde, and in maner at his wyttes ende,

Dyades.

Nietie  
passing.Foure men  
slayne in 1592.Diuision for  
diseased men.

what

The kinges  
wyues.Well fattored  
women.

what he were best to doo, for as muche as he wanted al thynges necessarie, as wel to restore them to health whiche were yet accraled, as also vitayles to mayntayne þ whole multitude, where as there was yet no thynge come from Spayne: at the length, he determyned to sende abrode the sicke men here and there to sundrye Regyons of the ilande, and to the castelles whiche they had erected in the same. For directly from the citie of Isabella to saynt Dominikes towne, that is, from the north to the south, throught the ilande, they had buylded thus many castles. First, xxxvi. myles distant from Isabella, they buylded the castell of *Sperantia*. From *Sperantia*, xxv. myles, was the castell of saynt Katharine. From saynt Katharines. xx. myles, was saynt James towne. Other. xx. myles from saynt James towne, was a stronger fortresse then any of the other, whiche they called the towne of Conception, which he made the stronger, because it was situat at the rootes of the golden mountaynes of *Cibana*, in the great and large playne, so fruiteful and well inhabited as we haue before described. He buylded also an other in the mydde waye betwene the towne of Conception, & saynt Dominikes towne, the whiche also was stronger then the towne of Conception, because it was within the lymittes of a great kyng, haupng vnder his dominion fye thousande men, whose chiefe citie and head of the Realme, beyng called *Bonauum*, he wylled that the castell shoulde also be called after the same name. Therefore leaupng the sicke men in these castles, and other of the ilande houses nere vnto the same, he hym selfe repayred to saynt Dominikes, exacting trybutes of al the kynges whiche were in his way. When he had tarped there a fewe dayes, there was a rumour spredde, that all the kynges about the borders of the towne of Conception, had conspyred with desperate myndes to rebell agaynst the Spaniardes. When the Lieutenaunt was certified hereof, he tooke his tourney towarde them immediately, not beyng discouraged eyther by the length of the waye, or feeblenesse of his souldyers, beyng in maner foreweryed with trauayle. As he dreyne nere vnto them, he had aduertysment that kyng *Guarionexius* was cholen by other prynces to be the Capitayne of this rebellion, and that he was enforced therto halfe vntwyllyng, beyng seduced by perswasions and prouocations: the

The castles  
or towers of  
Hispaniola.

The golden  
mountaynes  
of *Cibana*.

The kinges  
rebell.

whiche is more lykely to be true, for that he had before had experience of the power and policie of our men. They came together at a daye appoynted, accompanied with .xv. thousande men, armed after their manner, once agayne to proue the fortune of warre. Here the Lieutenaunt, consultyng with the Capitayne of the fortresse and the other souldiers of whom he had the conducte, determyned to sette vpon them vntowares in their owne houses, before they coulde prepare theyr army. He sent forth therefore to euery kyng a Centurion, that is, a captayne of a hundred, which were commaunded vpon a sudden to inuade theyr houses in the nyght, and to take them sleepyng, before the people (being scattred here & there) myght assemble togeather. Thus secretly enterpyng into their byllages, not fortified with walles, trenches, or bulwarks, they broke in vpon them, toke them, bound them, & led away euery man his prisoner according as they were commaunded. The Lieutenaunt hym selfe with his hundred men, assayled kyng *Guarionexius* as the worthier personage, whom he tooke prisoner, as did the other captaines theyr kings, and at the same houre appoynted. Foureteene of them were brought the same nyght to the towne of Conception. Shorlyte after, when he had put to death two of the kynges whiche were the chiefe autours of this newe reuolte, and had suborned *Guarionexius* & the other kynges to attempt the same, least the people for sorowe of theyr kinges shoulde neglecte or forsake their countrey, whiche thyng myght haue ben great incommoditie to our men, who by thincrease of theyr seedes and frutes were oftentimes ayded, he freely pardoned and dismissed *Guarionexius* and the other kynges, the people in the meane tyme flocking togeather about the towne, to the number of fye thousande without weapons, with pitiful howling for the deliuerance of their kinges: The ayre thundered, & the earth trembled through the vehemencie of theyr outcry. The Lieutenaunt warned *Guarionexius* and the other kynges, with threatenynge, with rewardes, and with promyses, neuer thereafter to attempt any suche thyng. Then *Guarionexius* made an oration to the people, of þ great power of our men, of theyr clemencie towarde offenders, & liberalitie to suche as remaine faithfull, desyring them to quiet theyr myndes, and from thenceforth neyther in deede nor thought to interpyte

An army of  
xv. thousand  
Barbarians.

The kinges  
are taken pris  
oners.

king *Guarionexius* is  
pardoned.

any

Lacke of by-  
rapples.

xxii. kinges.

Serpentes  
eaten.

any thyng agaynst the Chyistians, but to obeye and serue them, excepte they woulde dayly bypnyng them selues into further calamities. When the oration was synthyed, they tooke hym vp, and set hym on theyr shoulders, and so carped hym home to his owne pallace: and by this meanes, this Region was pacified for a whyle. But our men, with heauy countenance wandered by and doونه, as desolate in a strange countrey, lacking vittailles, and woyned out of apparell, whereas, xv. monethes were now passed sence the Admirals departure, during which tyme, they coulde heare nothyng out of Spayne. The Lieutenant comforted them all that he coulde with fayre wordes and promyses. In the meane tyme, *Beuchius Anacauchoa* (the kyng of the West partes of the Region of *Xaragua* (of whom we spake before) sent messengers to the Lieutenant, to signifye vnto hym, that he had in a redynes the gossampine cotton, and suche other thynges as he wylled hym to prepare for the payment of his tribute. Whereupon the Lieutenant tooke his iourney thither, and was honorably receiued of the kyng and his sister, somtyme the wyfe of *Caunaboa* the kyng of *Cibana*, bearyng no lesse rule in the gouernance of her brothers kyngdome, then he hym selfe: For they affirmed her to be a wyle woman, of good maners, & pleasaunt in company. She earnestly perswaded her brother, by the example of her husband, to loue and obey the Chyistians. This woman was called *Anacaona*. He founde in the palace of *Beuchius Anacauchoa*. xxii. kinges, which had brought theyr tributes with them, and abode his comming. They brought with them also, besyde theyr tribute assigned them, further to demerite & fauour of our men, great plentie of vittailles, as both kindes of bread, cumles, and fishes, already dried, because they shoulde not putrifie: Serpentes also of that kynde which we sayd to be esteemed among them as most delicate meat, and lyke vnto Crocodiles sauing in bygnes. These serpentes they call *Anannas*, which our men learned (somewhat to late) to haue ben engendred in the ilande: For vnto that day, none of them durst aduenture to tast of them, by reason of theyr horrible deformitie and lothsomnes. Yet the Lieutenant, being enticed by the pleasantnes of the kynges sister, determined to tast of the serpentes. But when he felte the fleshe thereof to be so delectable to his tongue,

tongue, he fel to amayne without al feare: the whiche thyng his companions percciuing, were not behinde hym in greedynesse, insomuch that they had now none other talke, then of the sweetnesse of these serpentes, which they aspyne to be of more pleasaunt taste, then eyther our *Whelantes* or *Partriches*: but they lose theyr taste, except they be prepared after a certayne fashion, as doo *Peacokes* and *Whelantes*, except they be enterlarded before they be roasted. They prepare them therefore after this manner: First, taking out theyr bowelles, cnen from the throte to the thyghes, they walsh and rubbe theyr bodyes very cleane both within & without, then rolling them together on a circle, inuolued after the manner of a sleeppng snake, they thruste them into a pot, of no bigger capacitee then to holde them only, this done, putting a litle water vnto them, with a portion of the *Ilande Pepper*, they seethe them with a soft fyre of sweete wood, and such as maketh no great smoke: Of the taste of them being thus sodde, is made an exceedyng pleasant broth or potage. They say also, that there is no meate to be compared to the egges of these serpentes, which they vse to seele by them selues: they are good to be eaten as soone as they are sodde, and may also be reserved many dayes after. But haupng sayde thus much of their entertaynement and dayly fare, let vs now speake of other matters. When the Lieutenant had fylled one of the *Ilande houses* with the Gossampine cotton which he had receiued for tribute, the kynges promysed furthermore to gratifye hym as muche of theyr bread as he woulde demaunde: he gaue them hartie thankes, and gently accepted theyr frendly proffer. In the meane tyme, whyle this bread was a gathering in sundry regions, to be brought to the pallace of *Beuchius Anacauchoa* kyng of *Xaragua*, he sent messengers to *Isabella*, for one of the two *Catauelles* whiche were lately made there, intending to send the same againe thither laden with bread. The *Mariners* glad of these typpnges, sayled about the *Ilande*, and in shorte space brought the shyppe to the coastes of *Xaragua*. The sister of kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, that wyle and pleasaunt woman *Anacaona* (the wyfe somtyme of *Caunaboa* the kyng of the golden house of the mountaynes of *Cibana*, whose husbande dyed in the way when he shoulde haue ben carped into Spayne) when

The dressing  
of serpentes  
to be eaten.Serpentes  
egges eaten.Gossypine  
cotton.Queene *Anas-  
caona*.

If i

she

The treasure  
of Queene  
Anacaona.

Yebene wood.

The Ilande of  
Guanabba.

Cunning Ar-  
tificers.

A stone in the  
Reede of Iron.

Summes.

the hearte say that our shyppe was arrived on the shore of her na-  
tive countrey, perswaded the king her brother, that they both  
myght goe together to see it; for the place where the shyppe lay,  
was not passe. vi. myles distant from *Xavagua*. They rested all  
nyght in the midway, in a certayne byllage in the which was the  
treasure of iewel house of *Anacaona*. Her treasure was neither  
golde, siluer, or pretious stones, but only thynges necessary to be  
vled, as chayres, stooles, settels, disshes, poringers, pottes,  
pannes, balons, treyes, and such other houtholde stuffe and in-  
strumentes, workemanly made of a certayne blacke and harde  
shynning wood, which that excellent learned phisicion, *Iohn bap-  
tist Elisius*, affirmeth to be Yebene. Whatsoever portion of wit  
nature hath geuen to the inhabitantes of these landes, the same  
doth most appeare in these kynde of woorkes, in which they  
shewe great art and cunnyng, but those which this woman had,  
were made in the land of *Guanabba*, situate in the mouth of the  
west syde of *Hispaniola*: In these they graue the lyuely images  
of such phantasies as they suppose they see walke by nyght,  
which the antiquies called *Lemures*: Also the images of men, ser-  
pents, beastes, & what so euer other thing they haue once seene.  
What would you thinke (moste noble prince) that they coulde  
doe, if they had the vble of Iron and Steele? For they only fyrt  
make these soft in the fyre, & afterwarde make them holowe and  
carue them with a certayne stone which they fynd in the ryuers.  
Of stooles and chayres, he gaue the Lieutenaut fourtene,  
and of wellles partayning to the table and kitchen, thre gaue  
hym threefore, some of wood, and some of earth, also gossam-  
pyne cotton redye spunne, foure great bottomes of exceeding  
weight. The day folowing, when they came to the sea side, where  
was an other byllage of the kynges, the Lieutenaut com-  
maunded the shyppe boate to be brought to the shore. The kyng  
also had prepared two Canoes, paynted after theyr maner, one  
for hym selfe, and certayne of his gentelmen, an other for his si-  
ster *Anacaona* and her wayting women: but *Anacaona* despyed to  
be caried in the shyppe boate with the Lieutenaut. When  
they nede approached nere unto the shyppe, certayne great pee-  
ces of ordynance, were discharged of purpose, the sea was spl-  
led with thunder, and the ayre with smoke, they trembled  
and

and quaked for feare, supposyng that the frame of the worlde had  
ben in daunger of fallyng, but when they sawe the Lieutenaut  
laugh, and looke chearefully on them, they called agayne theyr  
spirates, and when they yet drew nearer to the shyp, and hearde  
the noyle of the flutes, shawlnes, and drummes, they were won-  
derfully astonied at the sweete harmonie thereof. Entryng into  
the shyppe, and beholdyng the foreshypp and the sterne, the toppe  
castel, the masse, the hatches, the rabbens, the keele, and the tack-  
lynges, the brother fyryng his eyes on the syster, and the syster  
on the brother, they were both as it were dumme and amazed,  
and wiste not what to say for to muche woondryng. Whyle  
beholdyng these thyngs, they wandered vp and downe the ship,  
the Lieutenaut commaunded the ankers to be loosed, and the  
sayles to be hoysed vp. Then were they further astonysed, when  
they saw so great a mole to mooue as it were by it selfe, without  
ores, and without the force of man: for there arose from the earth  
suche a wynde, as a man woulde haue wyshed for of purpose. Yet  
furthermore, when they perceiued the shyppe to mooue sometime  
forwarde, and sometyne backward, sometyne toward the righte  
hande, and sometyne toward the lefte, and that with one winde,  
and in manner at one instant, they were at theyr wyttes ende for  
to much admiration. These thynges finished, and the shippes la-  
den with bread, and suche other rewardes, they beyng also re-  
compenched with other of our thynges, he dismissed not onely  
the kyng *Beuchius Anachauba* and his syster, but lykewise all  
theyr seruauntes & women, replenished with ioye & wondering.  
After this, he hym selfe tooke his iorney by foote with his sould-  
diers to the citie of *Isabella*, where he was aduertised that one  
*Roldanus Ximenes*, a noughty felowe (whom before, beyng his  
seruant, he had preferred to be capitayne of the myners and la-  
bourers, & after made hym a Iudge in causers of controuersie)  
had vled hym selfe outragiously, and was maliciously mynded  
against hym, and further, the cause of much mischief in his  
absence. For kyng *Guarionexius* (who a whyle before was par-  
doned of his former rebellion, and perswaded the people to obey  
the Spanyardes) was by his noughtie vllage, and suche other as  
were confedered with hym, so accented to reuenge the iniuries  
whiche they susteyned at his handes, besyde the abominable

Musical in-  
strumentes.

Ignorance can-  
scry admiras-  
tion.

The intempe-  
rancie & malice  
of a feruile wit  
aduanced.

If it actes

Ciguanius.

actes whiche they, folowing only the lawe of nature, abhorred to admit, that he, with his samylie, samplers, and dictionaries, of desperate minde fledde to the mountaynes, being distaunt from *Isabella* only tenne leagues westwarde, towarde the north side of the sea. These mountaynes, and also the inhabitantes of the same, they call by one name, *Ciguaios*. The great king of all the kinges and regions of these mountaynes is called *Maiohanexius*, and his court or pallace is named *Capronus*: the mountaynes are rough, high, and such as no man can passe to the toppes therof, they are also bending, and haue their corners reaching downe to the sea. Betweene both the corners of the mountaynes, is there a greate playne, by the whiche many riuers fall from the mountaynes into the sea, the people are verie fierse and warlike men, hauing theyr original of the *Canibales*: for when they descend from the mountaynes to the playnes, to keepe warre with theyr borderers, they eat all such as they kill. *Guarionexius* therfore, fleeing to this kyng of these mountaynes, gaue him many presentes of such thinges as are wanting in his countrey, therewith declaring how vilely, villanously, and violently he had ben vsed of our men, with whom he coulde nothyng preuaile, neither by fayre meanes, nor by foule, nother by humilitie, nor by stoutnesse, and that to be the cause of his resorting, to hym at that tyme, most humbly desyring him to be his defence agaynst thoppressions of suche myscheuous people. *Maiohanexius* hereupon, made hym promise to ayde and helpe hym against the Christians al that he might. The Lieutenant therfore made haste to the foytresse of *Conception*, whither, as soone as he was come, he sent for *Roldanus Xeminus*, who with suche as folowed hym, lay in certayne of the Island villages, xii. myles distant from the foytresse. At his commyng, the Lieutenant asked him what al these sturres and tumultes meant: He answered without abashment, Your brother the Admirall hath to doo therewith, and shall aunswere for the same before the kyng, for we perceiue that the kyng hath so put hym in trust, that he hath had no regarde to vs: here we perishe for hunger, whyle we folowe you, and are dyuyn to seeke our vnhappye foode in the desartes: Your brother also assigned me assystaunt with you in gouernyng the Islande. Therefore, syth you haue no more respect

respecte vnto vs, we are determined no longer to be vnder your obedience. When *Roldanus* had spoken these wordes, and suche other, the Lieutenant woulde haue layde handes on hym, but he escaped his syngers, and fledde to the West partes of the region of *Xaragua*, haupng with hym a trayne of threescore and ten men, whiche were of his confederacie. Here this fylthy synke of rebelles thus conspired, playde theyr vages, and lyued with loose byddes in al kynde of myscheefe, robbing the people, spoyling the countrey, and rauishyng both wyues and virgins. Whyle these thynges were dooing in the Islande, the Admirall had eithe shippes appoynted him by the kyng, of the whiche he sent two laden with byttualles, from *Cales* or *Gades* of *Hercules* pylsers, directly to the Lieutenant his brother. These shypes by chaunce arryued fyrst on that syde of the Islande where *Roldanus Xeminus* ranged with his companions. *Roldanus* in short tyme had seduced them, promysyng them in the steede of mattockes, wenchys pappes: for labour, pleasure: for hunger, abundance: and for weerynesse and watching, sleepe and quietnesse. *Guarionexius* in the meane tyme assembled a power of his frendes and confederates, & came ostentymes downe into the playne, and slue as many of the Christian men as he coulde meete conuenientlye, and also the Islande men whiche were theyr frendes, wastyng theyr groundes, destroyng theyr seedes, and spoyling their byllages. But *Roldanus* and his adherentes, albeit they had knowledge that the Admirall woulde shortly come, yet feared they nothing, because they had seduced the newe men whiche came in the fyrst shippes. Whyle the Lieutenant was thus tossed in the myddest of these stozmes, in the meane tyme his brother the Admirall set forwarde from the coastes of *Spayne*: but not directly to *Hispaniola*, for he turned more towarde the south. In the whiche voyage, what he dyd, what coastes both of the lande and sea he compalled, and what newe regions he discouered, we wyl fyrst declare: for to what ende and conclusion the sayd tumultes and seditions came, we wyl expresse in the ende of the booke following. Thus fare ye well.

Licentiousnesse  
in libertie.

Hercules pylsers.

A violent perswasion.

The furie of  
Guarionexius.The thyrd voyage  
of Colonius  
the Admirall.





**C**olonus the Admirall, the thirde day of the Calendes of Iune, in the yere of Chyriste 1498. hysped by his sayles in the hauē of the towne *Barramedabas*, not farre distant from *Cales*, and set forwarde on his voyage with eyght shippes laden with vittualles and other necessities. He diuered from his

accustomed race, whiche was by the Ilandes of *Canarie*, by reason of certayne frenchmen pyrates and rousers on the sea, whiche lay in the ryght way to meete with hym. In the way from *Cales* to the Ilandes of *Canarie*, about fourescore and tenne myles toward the left hande, is the Ilande of *Madera*, more southward then the citie of *Ciuite* by foure degrees, for the Pole Arctike is eleuate to *Ciuite* xxxvi. degrees, but to this Ilande (as the *Mariners* say) only. xxii. He sayled therefore fyrst to *Madera*, and sendyng from thence directly to *Hispaniola* the residue of the shippes laden with vittualles and other necessities, he him selfe with one shyppe with deckes, and two *Marchant Carauelles*, coasted toward the South to come to the Equinoctial lyne, and so forth to folowe the tracte of the same toward the West, to the intent to search the natures of suche places as he coulde finde vnder or neare vnto the same, leauing *Hispaniola* on the north side on his ryght hande. In the middle of this race, lye iii. Ilandes of the *Portugales*, whiche were in olde tyme called *Hesperides*, and are nowe called *Caput Viride*, or *Cabouerde*, these are situate in the sea, ryght ouer agaynst the inner partes of *Ethiope*, Westwarde two dayes saylyng. One of these the *Portugales* call *Bonanista*. With the *Snayles*, or rather the *Tortoyles* of this Ilande, many leproous men are healed and cleansed of theyr leprosie. Departing sodainly from hence, by reason of the contagiousnesse of the ayre, he sayled. CCC. lxx. myles toward the West southwest, whiche is in the middell betweene the West and the South. There was he so vexed with maladies and heate (for it was the moneth of Iune) that his shypes were almost set on fyre: The hoopes of his barrells cracked and brake, and the fresh water ranne out: the men also complayned that they were not able

Frenchmen  
pyrates.

The island of  
*Madera*.

Healing of  
the leper.

Contagious  
ayre and ex-  
treeme heate.

to

to abide that extremitie of heate. Here the north pole was eleuate onely. v. degrees from the Horizontall. For the space of .viii. dayes, in the which he suffered these extremities, onely the fyrst day was sayre, but al the other, cloudy and rayny, yet neuer thelesse seruent hotte: Wherefore it oftentimes repented hym not a litle, that euer he tooke that way. Being tossed in these dangers and vexations eyght continuall dayes, at the lengthe an Eastsoutheast wynde arole, and gaue a prosperous blaste to his sayles. Whiche wynde folowing directly toward the west, he founde the starres ouer that paralell placed in other order, and an other kynde of ayre, as the Admirall hym selfe tolde me. And they al affirme, that within thre dayes sayling, they founde most temperate and pleasaunt ayre. The Admiral also affirmeth, that from the clime of the great heate and vnhollsome ayre, he euer ascended by the backe of the sea, as it were by a hygh mountayne toward heauen, yet in all this tyme, coulde he not once see any land: But at the length, the day before the Calendes of Iuly, the watchman lookyng forth of the toppe castel of the greatest shippe, cried out aloud for ioy that he espied thre exceeding hygh mountaynes, exhortyng his felowes to be of good cheere, and to put away al pensiuenes: for they were very heauy and sorowfull, as well for the grece which they susteyned by reason of chintollerable heate, as also that their freshe water sayled them, whiche ranne out at the ryftes of the barels, caused by extreme heate, as we haue sayd. Thus being wel comforted, they dreyw to the land, but at theyr fyrst appoach they could not aryue, by reason of the shalownes of the sea nere the shore: Yet looking out of theyr shippes, they myght well perceiue that the Region was inhabited, and wel cultured, for they sawe very sayre gardens, and pleasaunt medowes: from the trees and herbes wherof, when the moynyng dewes beganne to rylse, there proceeded manye sweete sauoures. Twentie myles distant from hence, they chaunced into a hauē, very apte to harborowe shippes, but it had no ryuer running into it. Sayling on yet somewhat further, he founde at the length a commodious hauē, wherin he might repayre his shippes, and make prouision of freshe water and fuel. *Arenalis* calleth this land *Putu*. They found no houses nere vnto the hauē, but innumerable steppes of certeyn wilde

f. iiii. beastes

The island of  
*Putu*.



beastes feete, of the whiche they founde one dead, muche lyke a goate. The day folowynge, they sawe a Canoa commynge a farre of, haupng in it foure and twentie young men of goodly corporature and high stature, al armed with targets, bowes, & arrowes: the heare of theyr heades was long and playne, and cutte on the forehead much after the manner of the Spanyards, their pyruie partes were couered with fyllets of gossampine cotton, of sundry colours enterlaced, & were beside al ouer naked. Here the Admirall, consydering with him selfe the corporature of this people, and nature of the lande, he beleued the same to be so muche the nearer heauen, then other regions of the same paralel, and further remooued from the grosse vapours of the vales, and marishes, howe muche the hyghest toppes of the hyggest mountaynes are distant from the deepe vales. For he earnestly affirmeth, that in al that nauigation, he neuer went out of the paralels of Ethiopie: So great difference is there betweene the nature of inhabitants, and of the soyles of diuers regions, al vnder one clime or paralel, as is to see betweene the people and regions beyng in the same lande of Ethiopie, and them of the Ilandes vnder the same clime, haupng the pole starre eleuate in y same degree. For the Ethiopians are all blacke, hauing theyr heare curled, moze like wool then heare: but these people of the Iland of Puta, (theyng as I haue sayde vnder the clyme of Ethiopie) are white, with long heare, and of yelow colour. Wherefore it is apparant, the cause of this so great difference, to be rather by the disposition of the earth, then constitution of heauen. For we knowe, that snowe falleth on the mountaynes of the Equinoctial, or burnt lyne, and the same to endure there continually: we knowe lykewyse, that the inhabitants of the regions farre distant from that lyne toward the north, are molested with great heate. The Admirall, that he myght allure the young men to hym with gentlenesse, shewed them lookyng glasses, sayre and bygght vessels of copper, haukes belles, and suche other thynges unknowen to them. But the moze they were called, so muche the moze they suspected craft and decepte, and fledde backward: Yet dyd they with great admiration beholde our men and theyr thynges, but styll haupng theyr oyes in theyr handes redy to flee. When the Admirall sawe that he coulde

by

by no meanes allure them by gyftes, he thought to prooue what he coulde do with muscical instrumentes, and therefore commaunded that they whiche were in the greatest shyp, should play on theyr drummes and shawlnes. But the young men supposing this to be a token of battayle, left theyr oyes, & in the twinclyng of an eye had theyr arrowes in theyr bowes, and theyr targets on their armes: and thus directing theyr arrowes toward our men, stood in expectation to knowe what this noyle might meane. Our men likewyse preparynge theyr bowes and arrowes, approached toward them by litle and litle. But they departing from the Admirals shyppe, and trusting to the dexteritie of theyr oyes, came so neare one of the lesse shippes, that one of them plucked the cloke from the gouernour of the shyppe, and as wel as they coulde by signes, required hym to come alande, promisyng sayth that they woulde commune with him of peace. But when they sawe him goe to the Admirals shyp, whyther he went to aske leaue that he might commune with them, suspecting hereby some further decept, they leapt immediatly into the Canoa, and fledde as swyft as the wynde, so that to conclude, they could by no meanes be allured to familiaritie: Wherefore the Admirall thought it not conuenient to bestowe any long time there at this voyage. No great space from this Ilande, euer toward the West, the Admirall sayth he found so outrageous a fall of water, runnyng with suche a violence from the East to the West, that it was nothyng inferior to a myghtie streame fallynge from hygh mountaynes. He also confessed, that synce the first day that euer he knewe what the sea meant, he was neuer in suche feare. Proceedyng yet somewhat further in this daungerous voyage, he founde certayne gulfes of eyght myles, as it had ben the entraunce of some great hauen, into the whiche the sayde violent streames dyd fall. These gulfes or streyghtes he called *Os Draconis*, that is, the Dragons mouth: and the Ilande directly oueragaynst the same, he called *Margarita*. Out of these straghtes, issued no lesse force of freshe water, whiche encounteryng with the salte, dyd stryue to passe forth, so that betweene both the waters, was no small conspycter: But entryng into the gulfe, at the length he founde the water thereof verpe freshe and good to drynke. The Admirall

hym

Musical instruments.

The violent course of the water from the East to the West.

The gulfe called *Os Draconis*.

People of comely corporature, and long heare, neere the Equinoctial.

The higher, the colder.

hym selfe, and they which were his companions in this byoage, beyng men of good credit, and perceauing my diligence in searchyng for these matters, tolde me yet of a greater thyng, that is, that for the space of .xxvi. leagues, amountyng to a hundred and foure myles, he sayled euer by freshe water, inso- much that the further he pzoceaded, especially towarde the west, he affirmed the water to be the fresher. After this, he came to a highe mountayne inhabited onely with Monkeyes or Mar- mals, on that part towarde the East: For that syde was rowgh with rocke and stony mountaynes, and therefore not inhabited with men. Yet they that went a lande to searche the countrey, founde nere vnto the sea, many fayre fieldes, well tyllid and sowed, but no people, nor yet houses or cotages: Wharhappes they were gone further into the countrey, to sowe theyr corne, and applye theyr husbandy, as wee often see our husbandemen to leaue theyr stations and villages for the same purpose. In the west syde of that mountayne, they espyed a large playne, whither they made hast, and cast anker in the brode ryuer. As soone as the inhabitantes had knowledge that a strange nation was arryued in theyr coastes, they came flockyng without all feare to see our men. We vnderstode by theyr spygnes and poyntynges, that this Region was called *Paria*, and that it was very large: inso muche that the further it reacheth towarde the weste, to be so muche the better inhabited and replenished with people. The Admiral therfore, takyng into his shippe foure of the men of that lande, searched the west partes of the same. By the temperatenes of the ayer, the pleasauntnes of the ground, and the multitude of people which they sawe daily more & more as they sayled, they coniectured that these thynges portended some great matter: as in deede their opininon failed them not, as we will further declare in his place. The sonne not yet rylen, but begynyng euen now to ryle, being one day allured by the pleasauntnes of the place, and sweete sauours which breathed from the lande to the shyppes, they went a lande: Here they founde a greater multytude of people, then in any other place. As our men appoched towarde them, there came certeine messengers from their *Cacici*, that is, the kinges of the countrey, to desyre the Admirall in the name of theyr pynces to come to theyr palaces with,

without feare, and that they and al theyrs shoulde bee at his commaundement. When the Admirall had thanked them, and made his excuse for that tyme, there came innumerable people with theyr boates to the shyppes, haupyng for the most parte cheynes about theyr neckes, garlandes on theyr heades, and braselettes on theyr armes of pearles of India, and that so commonly, that our women in playes and tryumphes, haue not greater plentie of stones of glasse and crystall in theyr garlands, crownes, girdels, and suche other typpementes. Beyng asked where they gathered them, they poynted to the next shore by the sea bankes. They signified also, by certeyne scozefull testures whiche they made with theyr mouthes and handes, that they noughtyng esteemed pearles. Taking also baskettes in their handes, they made signes that the same myght be fylled with them in shorte space. But because the corne wherewith his shyppes were laden to be carped into *Hispaniola*, had taken hurt by reason of the salt water, he determined to deferre this marte to a more conuenient tyme: Yet he sent to land two of the shyp boates laden with men, to thintent to fetch some garlands of pearles for erchange of our thynges, and also somewhat to searche the nature of the Region, and disposition of the people. They enterteined our men gently, and came flocking to them by heapes, as it had ben to beholde some strange monsters. Fyrst there came to meete our men, two men of grauitie, whom the multitude folowed: One of these was well in age, and the other but young. They thinke it was the father, with his sonne whiche shoulde succede hym. When the one had saluted and embrased the other, they brought our men into a certeyne rounde house, neere vnto the whiche was a great courte. Wyther were brought many chapers and stooles made of a certeyne blacke wood, and very cunnynghly wrought. After that our men and theyr pynces were sette, theyr waytyng men came in laden, some with sundry delycate dyshes, and some with wyne: But theyr meat, was only frutes, and those of dyuers kyndes, and vterly unknownen to vs. Theyr wyne was both whyte and redde, not made of grapes, but of the lycour of dyuers frutes, and very pleasaunte in drynkpyng. After this banquet made in the olde mans house, the young man brought them to his tabernacle or mantion place, where was

Chapers and  
stooles of  
bene.

the sea of fresh  
water.

Marmasets.  
Monkeyes.

The saye and  
large region  
of Paria.

Humane  
people.

## The fyrst Decade.

was a great company both of men and women, but they stood  
disseuered the one from the other. They are whyte, euen as  
our men are, sauynge suche as are much conuersant in the sunne.  
They are also very gentle, and full of humanitie toward stran-  
gers. They couer theyr priue partes with gossampine cotton,  
wrought with sundry colours, and are besyde all naked. There  
was fewe, or none, that had not eyther a collar, a chayne, or a  
bracelet of golde and pearles, and many had all. Beyng as-  
ked where they had that golde, they poynted to certayne moun-  
taynes, seemyng with theyr countenance to dissuade our men  
from goyng thither: For putting theyr armes in theyr mouthes,  
and grynnyng as though they bytte the same, still poyntyng  
to the mountaynes, they seemed to insinuate that men were  
eaten there: but whether they meant by the Canibales, or wylde  
beastes, our men coulde not wel perceiue. They tooke it excee-  
dyng greuouslye, that they coulde neyther vnderstande our  
men, nor our men them. When they whiche were sent to lande,  
were returned to the shippes about thre of the clocke at after  
noone the same day, byngyng with them certayne garlandes,  
and collers of pearles, they loosed theyr ankers to departe, in-  
dyng to come agayne shortlye, when all thynges were set in  
good order in *Hispaniola*: but he was preuented by another,  
whiche defeated him of the rewarde of his traualle. He was al-  
so hyndered at this time by reason of the shalownesse of the sea, &  
violent course of the water, whiche with continuall tossyng, brui-  
sed the greatest shippe as often as any great gale of wind arose. To  
auoyde the daungers of suche shalowe places and shelves,  
he euer sent one of the smallest Carauelles before to trye the  
way with soundyng, and the byggest shippes folowed be-  
hynde. The regions beyng in the large prouince of *Paria*, for the  
space of *Cxxx. myles*, are called of the inhabitants, *Cumana*, and  
*Manacapana*; from these regions distant *ix. leagues*, is there an  
other region called *Curiana*. When he had thus passed ouer this  
long tract of sea, supposing styl that it had ben an Islande, & doub-  
tyng that he myght passe by the West to the North directly to  
*Hispaniola*, he chaunced into a ryuer of *xxx. cubits* deapth, and  
of suche breadth as hath not lyghtly ben hearde of. For he as-  
symeth it to be, *xxviii. leagues*. A lytle further toward the  
West,

Whyte men  
neere the Equi-  
noctiall.

Shalownesse  
of the sea.

The use of Ca-  
rauels or Bri-  
gandines.

A riuer of mar-  
ueylous deapth  
and breadth.

## The first decade.

39

West, yet somewhat more southwarde, as the bendyng of the  
shore requyred, he entered into a sea full of herbes or weedes.  
The seede of the herbes whiche swymme on the water, are  
muchelyke the berryes of the tree called *Lentiscus*, whiche bea-  
reth the sweete gumme called *Mastix*: they grewe so thicke,  
that they somtyme in maner stayed the shippes. The Admiral  
reported, that here there is not one daye throughtout all the  
yeere much longer or shorter then an other, and that the North  
pole is here eleuate onely fyue degrees as at *Paria*, in whose  
tracte all these coastes lye. He also declared certayne thinges  
as concernyng the variete of the north pole: the whiche because  
they seeme contrarpe to thopinions of all the Astronomers, I  
wyl touche them but with a dyde foote, as sayth the prouerbe.  
But it is well knowen (most noble prince) that whiche we call  
the pole starre, or north starre (called of the Italians *Tramon-  
sana*) is not the very poynt of the pole Arctike, vppon the whiche  
the ares or extremities of heauens are turned about. The whi-  
che thing may well be proued, if when the starres fyrst appeare,  
you beholde the pole starre through any narrow hole: For so,  
applying your instrument therto in the moornyng, somewhat be-  
fore the daye spring haue blemished theyr light, yf then you looke  
through the same hole, you shall perceiue it to be moued from  
the place where you sawe it fyrst. But howe it cometh to  
passe, that at the begynnyng of the euenyng twilight it is eleuate  
in that Region only fyue degrees in the moneth of June, and  
in the moornyng twylyght to be eleuate *xv. degrees* by the same  
quadrant, I doo not vnderstande, nor yet doo the reasons  
whiche he byngeth, in any poynt satisfye me. For he sayth,  
that he hereby coniectured, that the earth is not perfectly round:  
but that when it was created, there was a certayne heape  
rayled thereon, muchelygher then the other partes of the same.  
So that (as he sayth) it is not rounde after the forme of an apple  
or a bal (as other thinke) but rather lyke a peare as it hangeth on  
the tree, and that *Paria* is the Region which possesseth the  
superminient or hyghest part thereof nearest vnto heauen: In so  
much that he earnestly contendeth, the earthly *Paradyse* to be  
syuate in the toppes of those thre hylls, whiche we sayde  
before, that the watchman sawe out of the toppe castell of  
the

The eleuation  
of the Pole as  
Paria.

Note a secreete  
as concernyng  
the Pole starre.

An experience.

A marueylous  
secrete.

## The first decade.

the shippe, and that the outrageous streames of the fre the waters whiche so violently issue out of the sayde gulfes, and strue so with the salt water, fall headlong from the toppes of the saide mountaynes: But of this matter, it shall suffice to haue sayde thus muche. Let vs nowe therefore returne to the hystorie from whiche we haue digressed. When he perceiued him selfe to be thus intwapped in so great a gulfie beyonde his expectation, so that he had nowe no hope to fynde any passage toward the north, wherby he myght sayle directly to *Hispaniola*, he was enforced to turne backe the same way by the whiche he came, and directed his voyage to *Hispaniola* by the north of that lande lying toward the East. They whiche afterwarde searched this lande more curiously, wyll it to be parte of the continent or firme lande of *India*, and not of *Cuba* as the Admirall supposed: For there are many whiche affirme that they haue sayled round about *Cuba*. But whether it be so or not, or whether enuyng the good fortune of this man, they seeke occasion of quarelyng agaynst hym, I can not iudge: But tyme shall speake, whiche in tyme appoynted, reuealeth both truth and falschod. But whether *Paria* be continent or not, the Admirall doth not muche contende, but he supposeth it to be continent: He also affirmeth that *Paria* is more southwarde then *Hispaniola*, by eyght hundred fourescore and two myles. At the length he came to *Hispaniola* (to see his souldiers which he left with his brethren) the thyrty day of the calendes of September, in the yere. 1498. but (as often times chaunceth in humane thynges) among his so many prosperous, pleasaunt, and luckye affayres, fortune myngled some seedes of wormewood, and corrupted his pure corne with the malicious weedes of cockle.

Time reuealeth  
all thynges.

¶ The seuenth booke of the fyrst decade, to the same Lodowike Cardinal. &c.



The Spaniards  
des rebel in the  
Admiralles ab-  
sence.

When the Admirall was now come to the lande of *Hispaniola*, he founde all thynges confounded and out of order. For *Roldanus* (of whom we spake before) refused in his absence to obey his brother, trusting to the multitude of such as were confedered with hym,

hym, and not onely behaued hym selfe proude agaynst the Admiralles brother and Lieutenent, sometyme his maister, but also sent letters to his reproche to the kyng of Spayne, therein accusyng both the brethren, laying heynous matters to theyr charges. But the Admirall agayne sent messengers to the kyng, whiche myght informe hym of theyr rebellyon, instantly desyring his grace to sende hym a newe supplye of men, wherby he might suppress the lecentiousnes, and punish them for theyr mischeuous actes. They accused the Admirall and his brother to be vniust men, cruel enemies, and shedders of the Spanyshe blood, declaryng that vpon euery lyght occasion they woulde racke them, hang them, and head them, and that they tooke pleasure therein, and that they departed from them, as from cruell tyrantes and wyld beastes reioycyng in blood, also the kynges enemies: affirmyng lykwyl, that they wel perceiued theyr entent to be none other then to blurpe thempire of the *Islandes*, whiche thyng (they sayde) they suspected by a thousande coniectures, and especially in that they woulde permit none to resorte to the golde mynes, but only suche as were theyr familliers. The Admirall on the contrary part, when he desyred ayde of the kyng to infringe theyr insolencie, auouched that at those his accusers, which had deuised suche lyes agaynst hym, were noughtie felowes, abhominable knaues and vilains, theeves and bandes, ruffians, adulterers, & rauishers of women, false periured bagaboundes, and such as had ben eyther conuict, in prysons, or fledde for feare of iudgement: so escaping punishment, but not leauing vice, wherin they styll continued, and brought the same with them to the land, lying there in like manner as before, in theste, lechery, & all kyndes of mischeefe, and so gyuen to Idleness and sleepe, that wheras they were brought thither for myners, labourers, & scullpans, they woulde not now goe one furlong from theyr houses, except they were borne on mens backs, like vnto them whiche in olde time were called *Ediles Curules*: For, to this office they put the miserable land me, whom they handled most cruelly. For least theyr handes should discontinue from shedding of blood, and the better to trye theyr strength and manhod, they used now & then for their pastyme, to strue among them selues, and proue who coulde most cleanly

The Spaniards  
des accuse the  
Admiral.

The Admirals  
answere.

These had the  
custodies of the  
temples.

with

A cruel & deuill,  
in the payne.

with his swoorde at one stroke stryke of the head of an innocent  
Doo that he whiche coulde with moſte agilitie make the head  
of one of theſe pooſe wretches to flee quyte and cleane from the  
bodde to the grounde at one ſtrocke, he was the beſt man, and  
counted moſt honorable. Theſe thyngs, and many ſuche other,  
the one of them laide to the others charge before the king. While  
theſe thynges were dooyng, the Admirall ſent his brother the  
Lieutenannt with an army of foureſcore and tenne footemen,  
and a fewe hoſemen (with three thouſande of the Ilande men,  
whiche were moſtall enimyes to the Ciguauians) to meete  
the people of *Ciguana*, with Kyng *Guarionexius* theyr graunde  
capitayne, who had doone muche myſcheefe to our men, and  
ſuche as fauoured them. Therefore when the Lieutenannt  
had conducted his army to the bankes of a certeyne great ryuer  
rummyng by the playne, whiche we ſayde before to lye betwene  
the corners of the mountaynes of *Ciguana* and the ſea, he founde  
two ſcoutes of his enimies lurking in certeyne buſhes, where-  
of the one, caſtyng hym ſelfe headlong into the ſea, eſcaped, and  
by the mouth of the ryuer ſwamme ouer to his companions: the  
other being taken, declared that in the woodde on the other ſyde  
the ryuer, there lay in campe ſixe thouſande *Ciguauians* redy,  
vnwares to aſſaile our men paſſing bye. Wherefore the Lieute-  
nannt finding a ſhalow place where he might paſſe ouer, he with  
his whole army entred into the ryuer, the which thing when the  
*Ciguauians* had eſpyed, they came rummyng out of the wooddes  
with a terrible crye, and moſt horrible aſpect, much like vnto the  
people called *Agathyſi*, of whom the poet *Virgil* ſpeaketh: For  
they were all paynted and ſpotted with ſundry colours, and eſ-  
peciall with blacke and red, which they make of certeyne fruites  
nooryſhed for the ſame purpoſe in theyr gardens, with the iuyce  
wherof they paynt them ſclues from the forehead, euen to the  
knees, hauyng theyr heare (whiche by art they make long and  
blacke, if nature deny it them) wreathed and rolled after a thou-  
ſande faſhions, a man woulde thinke them to be deuylles incar-  
nat newly brooke out of hell, they are ſo like vnto helhoundes. As  
our men waded ouer the ryuer, they ſhotte at them, and hurled  
dartes ſo thicke, that it almoſt tooke the lyght of the ſonne from  
our men: inſomuche that if they had not bozne of the force  
therof

Heare made  
long & blacke  
by arte.

thereof with theyr targettes, the matter had gone wrong with  
them. Yet at the length, manye beyng wounded, they paſſed  
ouer the ryuer: which thyng when the enimies ſawe, they fledde,  
whom our men purſuyng, ſlue ſome in the chace, but not manye,  
by reaſon of theyr ſwiftheſſe of foote. Thus beyng in the wood-  
des, they ſhotte at our men more ſafely, for they beyng accuſto-  
med to the wooddes, and naked without anye lette, paſſed  
thorough the buſhes and ſhrubbes, as it had ben wyld bores or  
hartes, whereas our men were hyndered by reaſon of theyr ap-  
parell, targettes, long iauelins, & ignoraunce of the place. Where-  
fore, when he had reſted there al that nyght in bayne, and the day  
folowyng he ſawe no ſtirring in the wooddes, he went (by the  
counſel and conducte of the other Ilande men whiche were in  
his army) immediatly fro thence to the mountaynes, in the whi-  
che kyng *Maioanaxius* had his cheefe manſion place, in the vil-  
lage called *Capronum*, by the which name alſo the kyngs palace  
was called, beyng in the ſame village. Thus marching forwarde  
with his armie, about twelue myles of, he encamped in the vil-  
lage of another kyng, whiche the inhabitauntes had forſaken for  
feare of our men: Yet makyng diligent ſearche, they found two,  
by whom they had knowledge that there was tenne kinges with  
*Maioanaxius* in his palace of *Capronum*, with an armie of eight  
thouſand *Ciguauians*. At the Lieutenants fyrſt appoach, he durſt  
not gene them battayle, vntyll he had ſomewhat better ſearched  
the region: yet dyd he in the meane tyme ſkrympſhe with them  
twyle. The next nyght about mydnyght, he ſent forth ſcoutes,  
and with them guides of the Ilande men whiche knewe the  
countrey: Whom the *Ciguauians* eſpying fro the mountaynes,  
prepared them ſelues to the battayle, with a terrible crye or ala-  
rum after their maner, but yet durſt not come out of the woods,  
ſuppoſing that the Lieutenannt with his mayne army had ben  
euen at hande. The day folowyng, when he brought his army  
to the place where they encamped, leaping out of the wooddes,  
they twyle attempted the fortune of warre, fiercely aſſayling our  
men with a mayne force, and wounding many before they  
coude coouer them with theyr targettes: Yet our men put  
them to flight, ſlue manye, and tooke manye, the reſidue  
fledde to the wooddes, where they kept them ſpyll as in their  
moſt

Kyng *Maioanaxius*.

An army of  
eight thouſand  
*Ciguauians*.



most safe holbe. Of them whiche were taken, he sent one, and with him another of the Ilande men, which was of his part. to *Maiobanexius*, with commaundement in this effect, The Lieutenannt brought not hyther his army (*Maiobanexius*) to kepe warre either against you, or your people, for he greatly despyeth your frendship: but his intent is, that *Guarionexius*, who hath perswaded you to be his ayde against him, to the great destruction of your people, and vndoyng of your countrey, may haue due correction, as well for his disobedience toward him, as also for rayssing tumultes among the people: Wherefore he requireth you, and exhorteth you to deliuer *Guarionexius* into his handes, the whiche thing yf you shal perfourme, the Admirall his brother wyll not only gladly admyt you to his frendshyp, but also enlarge and defende your dominion. And yf herein you refuse to accomplysh his request, it wyll folowe, that you shal shortly repent you thereof: For your kyngdome shalbe wasted with sworde and fyre, and you shall abyde the fortune of warre, wherof you haue had experience with fauour, as you shall further know heereafter to your payne, yf with stubbernesse you prouoke him to shewe the uttermoste of his power. When the messenger had thus doone his arant, *Maiobanexius* answered, that *Guarionexius* was a good man, indued with many vertues as all men knewe, and therfore he thought him worthy his ayde, especially in as much as he fled to him for succoure, and that he had made him suche promise, whom also he had proued to be his faithfull frend: againe, that they were noughty men, violent, and cruell, desiring other mens goodes, and such as spared not to shed innocentes blood: in fine, that he would not haue to doo with suche myscheuous men, nor yet enter into frendshyppe with them. When these thynges came to the Lieutenanntes eare, he commaunded the village to be burnt where he hym selfe encamped, with manye other villages there about: and when he dzewe nere to the place where *Maiobanexius* lay, he sent messengers to him agayne, to commion the matter with him, and to wyll hym to send some one of his moiste faythfull frendes to entreate with hym of peace. Whereuppon the kyng sent vnto hym one of his cheefe gentelmen, and with hym two other to wayte on hym: When he came to the Lieutenanntes presence,

Kyng *Guarionexius*.

Naturall hatred of vyce.

sence, he frendly requyred hym to perswade his lord and maister in his name, and earnestly to admonishe hym, not to suffer his flourishing kyngdome to be spoyled, or hym selfe to abyde the harden of warre for *Guarionexius* sake: and further to exhorte hym to deliuer hym, excepte he would procure the destruction both of hym selfe, his people, and his countrey. When the messenger was returned, *Maiobanexius* assembled the people, declaring vnto them what was doone: but they cryed out on him to deliuer *Guarionexius*, and began to curse the dape that euer they had receaued hym, thus to disturbe theyr quietnesse. *Maiobanexius* answered them, that *Guarionexius* was a good man, & had well deserved of him, geuing him many princely presentes, and had also taught both his wife and him to sing and daunce, which thing he did not little esteeme, and was therfore fully resolued in no case to forsake him, or agaynst al humanitie to betray hys frende, which fled to him for succoure, but rather to abide al extremities with him, then to minister occasion of obloquie to slanderers, to reposte that he had betrayed his ghest, whom he toke into his house with warranties. Thus dimissing the people, sighing and with sorowfull hartes, he called *Guarionexius* before him, promising him agayne, that he would be partaker of his fortune while life lasted: in so much that he thought it not best to send any further wooorde to the Lieutenannt, but appoynted him whom before he sent to him, to keepe the way with a garrison of men, to chintent, that yf any messengers should be sent from the Lieutenannt, to slay them by the way, and admit none to communication, or further entreatie of peace. In the meane time, the Lieutenannt sent two, wherof the one was a captiue Ciguauian, and the other an Iland man, of them which were frendes to our men: and they were both taken and slaine. The Lieutenannt followed them only with ten footemen & foure horsemen, finding his messengers dead in the way, he was further prouoked to wrath, and determined moze extremely to deale with *Maiobanexius*, & therfore went forward incontinently with his whole army to his cheefe pallace of *Capronum*, where he yet lay in campe. At his approche, al y kinges fled. euery man his way, & forsoke their capitaine *Maiobanexius*, who also with al his familye, fled to y rough mountaines. Some of the Ciguauians fought for

The Lieutenanntes gentlenesse toward *Maiobanexius*.

A rare faithfullnesse in a barbarous kyng.

The Lieutenanntes messengers are slaine.



*Guarionexius* to slay hym, for that he was the cause of all these troubles: but his secte saued his lyfe, for he fledde in tyme to the mountaynes, where he lurked in maner alone among the desolate rockes. Wheras now the *Lieutenantes* souldiers were forerweped with long warre, with watching, labour, and hunger (for it was now three monethes sence the warres began) many despyred leaue to departe to the towne of *Conception*, where they had graneges, & exercised tillage. He gaue them their passeports with allowaunce of vittayles, and so that onely thyrtye remayned with hym. These three monethes warre, they contynued very paynfull and myserabyle: So that durynge al that tyme, they had none other meate but only *Cazibi*, that is, such rootes wherof they make theyr bread, and that but seldome to theyr syll: also *Vias*, that is, lyttle beastes lyke Conyes, if by chaunce now and then they tooke some with theyr houndes. Their drinke was none other then water, such as they founde, somtyme sweete, and somtyme muddie, saueryng of the marishes. Among these delicacies, that lyttle sleepe that they had, was euer for the most parte abrode vnder the firmament, and that not without watchmen, and in continual remoouing, as the nature of warre requirereth. With these fewe therfore, the *Lieutenant* determined to searche the mountaynes, denues, and caues, if he coulde in any place fynde the steppes of *Maibonexius* or *Guarionexius*. In the meane tyme certayne of his men (whom hunger enforced to goe a hunting, to proue if they coulde take any conies) chaunced vpon two of *Maibonexius* familyers, which were sent to certayne villages of his, to make prouision of bread. These he enforced to declare where theyr lord lay hid, & vsed the same also for guides, to bring our men to the place. Twelue of our men tooke this enterpryse in hand, painting them selues after y maner of the *Ciguauians*: So that by this stratageme or policie, they came sodenly vpon *Maibonexius*, and tooke hym prisoner, with his wyfe, chyldren, & family, and conueighed them to the towne of *Conception* to the *Lieutenant*. Within a fewe dayes after, hunger compelled *Guarionexius* to come out of the denues, whom certayne of the people fearing the *Lieutenant*, betrayed to our hunters. The *Lieutenant* being certified hereof, sent forth a bande of foote men, commaunding them to lye in ambushe vntill

The Spaniards are painfull in the warres.

A desperate adventure with thyrtye men.

A policie.

tyll suche tyme as *Guarionexius* went from the playnes to the mountaynes, and then sodenly to entrappe hym. They went as they were commaunded, tooke hym, and brought hym away with them, and by this meanes were al the regions neare about pacified and quieted. A certayne noble woman of neare kynred to *Maibonexius*, and wyfe to another kynge, whose dominion was yet vntouched, folowed hym in all these aduersities. They affirme this woman to be the fayrest and most beautifull, that euer nature brought forth in the Iland: Whom, when the king her husbnde, who loued her most ardently (as her beautie deserued) hearde say that she was taken prisoner, he wandered by and downe the desertes lyke a man out of his wytte, not knowing what to doo or say. But at the length, he came to the *Lieutenant*, promysing most faythfullye, that he woulde submit him selfe and al that he coulde make, vnder his power, so that he woulde restore hym his wyfe. The *Lieutenant* accepted the condition, & restored him his wife, with certayne other rulers and gentlemen which he had taken prisoners before: charging them, and bynding them with an othe, to be euer redy at his commaundement. Shortly after, this king of his owne free motion, came agayne to the *Lieutenant*, byngyng with him fyue thousande men without weapons, sayng only suche instrumentes as they vse in tyllage of theyr ground. He brought with hym also seedes to sowe, wherewith at his owne charge, he caused such plentie of theyr corne and fruites to growe in sundry places of the larg vale, wherof we spake before, that shortly after, were seene many fayre and fruitfull feedes that came therof: and for his gentelnelle being rewarded of the *Lieutenant* with certayne of our thynges, he departed ioyfullye. When the report hereof came to the *Ciguauians*, it moued the mindes of the kynges to hope of clemencie, wherevpon they came together to the *Lieutenant* with humble submission and faithfull promysse, euer after to be vnder his obedience, desyring hym to restore vnto them theyr kyng with his familie. At theyr request, the kynges wyfe and his housholde was set at libertie, but the king kept styl as a prisoner. These thynges dyd the *Lieutenant* in the Ilande, not yet knowing what his aduersaries and accusers had layde to his charge before the kyng of

A beautiful woman.

The kynges submit them selues to the Lieutenant.

Spain: whiche being disquieted with theyr quarelinges and accu-  
sations, and especially for that by reason of theyr discention, of so  
greate abundance of golde and other thynges, there was as yet  
but lytle brought into Spayne, appoynted a newe gouernour,  
which shoulde see a redresse in these thynges: and eyther to pu-  
nysh such as were faultie, or els to sende them to him. What  
was founde agaynst the Admirall and his brother, or agaynst  
his aduersaries which accused hym, I do not well knowe. But  
this I am sure of, that both the brethren are taken, brought, and  
caste in prison, with theyr goodes confiscate. But as loone as  
the king vnderstode that they were brought bounde to Cales, he  
sent messengers in poste, with commaundement that they  
shoulde be loosed and come freely to his presence: whereby he de-  
clared that he toke their troubles greenously. It is also said, that  
the new gouernour sent letters to the kyng, written with the Ad-  
miralles hand in straunge and vnknowne sypheringes, to his  
brother the Lieutenannt being absent, wplyng hym to be in a  
redynes with a power of armed men to come and ayde hym, if the  
Gouernour shoulde proffer hym any violence. Wherof the go-  
uernour hauing knowledge (as he sayth) beyng also aduertised  
that the Lieutenannt was gone to his brother before the men  
whiche he had prepared were in a redynes, apprehended them  
both vnwares, before the multitude came togeather. What wyl  
folowe, tyme, the most true and prudent Iudge wyl declare.  
Thus fare ye well.

¶ The eygth booke of the fyrst Decade,  
to Cardinall Lodouike.



The Ocean sea,  
heretofore vn-  
knowne.

The great, ryche, and plentifull Ocean sea,  
heretofore vnknewen, and nowe founde by  
Christophorus Colonus the Admirall, by thau-  
toritie & furtherance of the Catholyke king,  
I haue presented vnto your honour (ryght  
noble Prince) like a golden chayne vnwork-  
manly wrought: but you shal now receiue  
a pretious iewel to be appendaunt thereto. Therefore among  
such as were pylottes or gouernours vnder the admyrall, and  
had dyligently marked the courses & dyfferences of the windes,  
many

Many had lycences graunted them of the kyng to seeke further: as  
theyr owne charges, vpon condition to pay hym saythfully his  
portion, which is the fyfte part. But because amonge all other,  
one Petrus Alphonsus, called Nignus by his surname, sayled to-  
warde the south with more prosperous fortune then any of the  
other, I thinke it best first to speake somewhat of his voyage.  
He therfore with only one shyp, well furnished at his owne char-  
ges, after that he had his passeporte, with commaundement in  
no case to cast anker past fyfte leagues distant from anye place  
where the Admirall had touched, sayled fyrst to Paria, where the  
Admirall founde both the men and women so laden with cheines,  
garlandes, and braselettes of pearles, as we haue sayde before.  
Coastynge therfore along by the same shore, accordyng to the  
kings commaundement (yet leauing behynd hym the regions of  
Cumana and Manacapan) he came to the regions which thinha-  
bitantes therof call Curiana, where he founde a hauen (as he sayth)  
much lyke the port of Gades or Cales: into the which enterpynge, he  
sawe a farre of certayne houses one the shore, and perceyued,  
when he drew nere, that it was a village of only eyght houses.  
Proceeding yet further for the space of thre myles, he espied  
an other village well replenshed with people, where there met  
hym fyfte naked men on a company, hauing with them a cer-  
taine ruler, who despyred Alphonsus to come to theyr coastes.  
He brought with hym at thys tyme, many haukes belles, pyn-  
nes, needles, braselettes, cheynes, garlandes, and rynges, with  
counterfet stones and glasses, and such other tryfelles, the which  
within the moment of an houre, he had exchaunged for fyftee-  
n ounces of theyr pearles, which they wore aboute theyr neckes  
and armes. Then they yet more earnestly despyred hym to sayle  
to theyr coastes, promysynge hym that he shoulde there haue as  
many pearles as he woulde desyre. He condescended to theyr  
request: and the day folowing, came to the place where they ap-  
poynted hym: Lying there at anker, a great multitude of people  
resorted to hym, instantly requyring hym to come alande. But  
when he considered the innumerable multitude of people which  
was there assembled, and he had only .xxiii. men in his com-  
pany, he durst not commit hym selfe to theyr handes, but gaue  
them to vnderstand by sygnes and tokens, that they shoulde  
come

The navigati-  
on of Petrus  
Alphonsus.

Pearles for  
tryfles.

Great plentie  
of pearles.

come to the shyp with their Canoes: for their boates (which the men of the land call *Canos*) are made only of one whole peece of wood as in the Ilandes, yet more rude, and not so artificially as they are: these they call *Gallitas*. These swarmed therfore to the shyp as faste as they might, bringyng with them greate plenty of pearles (which they call *Tenoras*) exchaging the same for our marchaundies. He founde this people to be of gentyll nature, simple, and innocent, being conuersant with them in theyr houses, for the space of xx. dayes. Theyr houses are made of wood, couered with the leaues of date trees. Their meate for the moste parte, is the shelshyses in the which the pearles are engendered, wherof their sea costes are full. They haue also greate plenty of wyld beastes, as hartes, wyld bores, and conies like vnto hares, both in coloure and bignesse, stocke doues also, and turtle doues: lyke wyse geese and duckes, which they noythe in theyr houses as we doo. Peacockes flee aboute in maner in euery wood and groue, but they are not distinct with sundry colours as ours are: for the cockes are like vnto the hennes. These people of *Curiana* are craftie hunters, and exceeding cunning archers, so that they will not lyghtly misse any beaste or byrde that they shoote at. Our men consumed certayne dayes. heare very pleasauntly: durynge which time, whosoever brought them a peacocke, had for the same foure pinnes: he that brought a pheasant, had two, and for a stocke doue, or turtle doue, one; and for a goose, a finall looking glasse, or a tittle stone of glasse. Thus they bought and solde with profering and bydding, denyng and refusing, as it had byn in a greate market. When pinnes were profered them, they asked what they shoulde do with them, being naked: But our men satisfied them with a craftie answer, declaring by tokens that they were very necessary, to picke theyr teeth, and to pull thornes out of theyr fleshe. But about al thynges, haukes belles were most esteemed among them, for theyr sound & faire colour, and woulde therfore geue much for one of them. Our men, lodgyng in their houses, heard in the nyght season horrible noyses & roynages of wild beastes in the wooddes, whiche are full of exceeding great and hygh trees of sundrye kindes: but the beastes of these wooddes, are not noysome to men, for the people of the countrey goo daylye a huntynge naked,

Shelshyses in which pearles are engendered.

Theyr manner of bargayning.

The vse of pinnes.

Haukes belles in great estimation.

Roynage of wild beastes.

naked, with theyr bowes and arrowes, yet hath it not ben harde of, that any man hath ben slayne of any wyld beaste. As many hartes or wyld bores as our men woulde desyre them to byng, they woulde kyll in the wooddes with their arrowes, and not to sayle to byng them. They lacke kyne, goates, and sheepe. Theyr bread is made of rootes, as is theyr of the Ilandes. This nation, hath blacke heare, grosse and somewhat curide, yet long also. They keepe theyr teeth very whyte, and for that purpose vse to cary a certaine herbe betwene theyr lippes for the most part of the day, and to washe theyr mouthes when they cast it away. The women doo all theyr busynes at home in theyr houses, and haue also the cure of tyllage of the ground: but the men apply them selues to the warres and huntynge, to playe, syngyng and daunsyng. They haue sundry kyndes of water pottes, iugges, and drinkyng cuppes made of earth in other places about them, and brought thither for exchaung of other thynges: For they vse sayres and markettes for the same purpose, and are greatly despyous of such thynges, as are not brought forth or made in theyr countrey, as nature hath geuen a disposytion to al men, to desyre and be delpted with newe and strang thynges. Many of them had hangyng at theyr pearles the images of certeine beastes and birdes, very artitiously made of golde, but not pure: these also are brought them from other places for exchang of other thynges. The golde wherof they are made, is natieue, and of much lyke finenes to that wherof the florens are coynd. The men of this countrey, inclose theyr priue members in a gourde, cutte after the fashio of a coddepice, or els couer the same with the shell of a tortoise, tyed about theyr loynes with laces of gossampine cotton: In other places of that tract, they thrust the synew within the sheeth therof, and bynde the skynne fast with a string. The great wyld beastes wherof we spake before, and many other thynges which are not found in any of the Ilandes, testifie that this region is parte of y<sup>e</sup> continet or firme lande. But the chiefest coniecture wherby they argue the same, is, that by the coastes of that lande, from *Paria* towarde the west, they sayled about thre. M. myles, findyng no signe or token of any ende. These people of *Curiana* (whiche some call *Curtana*) being demaunded where they had such plentie of golde, signified that it was

Hartes and wyld bores.

Cunning artificers.

Base golde.

Tokens of the continet or firme lande.

The golden re-  
gion of Can-  
chieta.

was brought them from a region called *Canchieta*, or *Canchieta*, being distant from them six sunnes, that is, six dayes journey westwarde: and that they images of golde were made in the same region. Whereupon our men directed theyr voyage thither immediatly, and arriued there at the Kalendes of Nouember, in the yeere of Christe a thousande and fyue hundred. The people of the countrey resorted to them without feare, byngnyng with them of the golde whiche we sayde to be natie in that region. This people had also collers of pearles about theyr neckes, which were brought them from *Curiana* for exchange of theyr marchandises. None of them woulde exchange anye of those thynges whiche they had out of other countreys: as neyther the *Curians* golde, nor the *Canchietans* pearles: yet among the *Canchietans* they founde but lytle golde redy geathered. They toke with them from thence certayne very fayre *Parmalets* or *Dunkeyes*, and many *Hoppnyngayes* of sundrye coloures. In the moneth of Nouember, the ayre was there most temperate, and nothyng colde. The guardens of the north pole were out of syght to both these people, they are so neare the Equinoctial. Of the degrees of the pole, they can geue none other accompte. These people are wel disposed men, of honest conditions, and nothyng suspicious, for almost al the nyght long they resorted to the shyppe with theyr boates, and went aboord shyppe without feare, as dyd the *Curians*. They call pearles, *Corixas*. They are somewhat ielous, for when anye straungers come among them, they euer place theyr women behynde them. In this region of *Canchieta*, the gossampine trees growe of them selues commonly in many places, as doo with vs elines, wyllowes, and fallowes: and therefore they vse to make byeches of cotton, wherewith they couer theyr priuie partes in many other regions thereabout. When they had yet sayled on forwarde by the same coastes, there came forth against them about two thousande men, armed after theyr manner, forbidding them to come alande. These people were so rude and sauage, that our men coulde by no meanes allure them to familiaritie. Our men therefore, contented only with theyr pearles, returned backe y same way they came, where they remained with the *Curians* continually for the space of .xx. dayes, & spyled theyr bellies

The Equinoctial line.

Gossampine trees.

bellies wel with good meate. And here it seemeth to me not farre from my purpose, to declare what chaunced vnto them in theyr returne when they came now within the sight of the coast of *Paria*. They happened therfore in the way, at *Os Draconis*, and the gulfes of *Paria* (wherof we spake before) to meete with a nauy of viii. Canoas of *Canibales*, which went a rousing to hunt for men: who as soone as they had espied our men, assailed their ship fiercely, & without feare enclosed y same, disturbing our men on euery side with their arrowes: but our men so feared them with theyr gunnes, that they fled immediatly, whō our men folowing with the shyp boate, tooke one of theyr Canoas, and in it only one *Canibal* (for the other had escaped) and with him another man bounde, who with teares runnyng downe his cheekes, and with gesture of his handes, eyes, and head, signified that sixe of his companions had ben cruelly cut in peeces, and eaten of that mischeuous nation, and that he shoulde haue ben likewise handled the day folowynge: wherefore they gaue hym power ouer the *Canibal*, to do with him what he woulde. Then with the *Canibals* owne clubbe, he layde ou hym al that he might dyspue with hande and foote, grimming and scetting as it had ben a wylde boze, thinking that he had not yet sufficiently reuenged the death of his companions, when he had beaten out his braynes and guttes. When he was demaunded after what sort the *Canibales* were wont to inuade other countreys, he answered, that they euer vsed to carrie with them in theyr Canoas, a great multitude of clubbes, the whiche, wherefoener they do lande, they pytch in the grounde, and encampe them selues within the compasse of the same, to lye the more safely in the nyght season. In *Curiana* they founde the head of a captayne of the *Canibales*, napled ouer the doore of a certayne gouernour for a token of victoie, as it had ben the standerde or helmet taken from the enimie in battayle. In these coastes of *Paria* is a region called *Haraia*, in the which great plentie of salt is geathered after a strange sorte: for the sea being there tossed with the power of the wyndes, dyspueeth the salte waters into a large playne by the sea syde, where, afterwarde when the sea wareth calme, and the sunne begynneth to shine, the water is conicaled into most pure and whyte salte, wherewith innumerable shyppes myght be laden, yf men dyd resorte

Canibales in the gulfes of Paria.

Death for death.

Howe the Canibales fortifie their campe.

Haraia.

## The fyrst Decade.

resort thether for the same before there sale any rayne: For the rayne melteth it, and causeth it to synke into the sande, and so by the poores of the earth, to returne to the place from whence it was dyuen. Other say, that the playne is not fylled from the sea, but of certeine springes whose water is more sharpe and salt then the water of the sea. Thinhabitantes do greatly esteeme this bay of salt, whiche they vse, not only for theyr owne commoditie, but also woorking the same into a square forme lyke vnto byckes, they sell it to strangers for exchaunge of other thynges whiche the lacke. In this Region, they stretche and drye the dead bodies of theyr kinges and noble men, laying the same vpon a certayne frame of woodde, muche lyke vnto a hurdle or grediren, with a gentell fyre vnder the same, by litle and litle consuming the fleshe, and keping the skynne hole with the bones inclosed therein. These dyed carcases, they haue in great reuerence, and honour them for theyr houshoulde and famplier gods. They say that in this place they sawe a man, & in an other place a woman, thus dyed and reserued. When they departed from *Curiana*, the .viii. day of the Ides of February, to returne to *Spainne*, they had threescore and .xvi. poundes weight (after .viii. vnces to the pounce) of pearles, which they bought for exchange of our thinges, amounting to the value of fyue shillings. Departing therfore, they consumed threescore dayes in theyr tourney (although it were shorter then from *Hispaniola*) by reason of the continuall course of the sea in the west, which dyd not only greatly stepe the shippe, but also somtymes dyue it backe. But at the length they came home so laden with pearles, that they were with euery maryner, in maner as common as chaffe. But the master of the shippe, *Petrus Alphonsus*, being accused of his companyons that he had stowlen a great multitude of pretious pearles, and defrauded the kyng of his portion whiche was the fifth parte, was taken of *Fernando de Vega*, a man of great lerning and experience, & gouernour of *Gallecia*, where they aryued, and was there kept in pryson a long tyme. But he styll denyeth that euer he deteyned any part of the pearles. Many of these pearles were as bygge as halfe nuttes, and as oriente (as we call it) as they be of the East partes: Yet not of so great pryce, by reason that the holes thereof are not so perfecte. When I my selfe

Springes of salt water.

The bodies of pynces dyed and reserued.

Orient pearles as bygge as halfe nuttes.

## The first decade.

47

selfe was present with the right honorable duke of *Methyna*, and was bidde to dynner with him, in the citie of *Ciuite*, they brought to hym aboue a hundred and twentie ounces of pearles to be solde, whiche surely dyd greatly deelyte me with their fayrenes and brightnes. Some say, that *Alphonsus* had not these pearles in *Curiana*, being distant from *Os Draconis* more then a hundred & twentie leagues, but that they had them in the regions of *Chumana* and *Manacapana*, nere vnto *Os Draconis* and the ilande of *Margarita*: for they deny that there is any pearles founde in *Curiana*. But sith the matter is yet in controuersie, we wyl passe to other matters. Thus muche you haue, whereby you may conjecture, what commoditie in tyme to come may bee looked for from these newe landes of the west Ocean, whereas at the fyrst discovering, they shewe suche tokens of great ryches. Thus fare ye well.

The Ilande of Margarita.

## The .ix. booke of the fyrst Decade to Cardinal Lodowike.



*Incentiagnes Pinzonus*, & also *Aries Pinzonus*, his newew by his brother syde, whiche accompanied the Admiral *Colonus* in his fyrst vyage, & were by him appoynted to be maisters of two of the small shippes which the Spanyards call *Carauelas*, being moued by the great ryches & amplitude of the new landes, furnyshed of theyr owne charges foure *Carauels*, in the hauen of theyr owne countrey, which the Spanyardes cal *Palos*, bordering on the west Ocean. Hauing therfore the kings licence & passeport to depart, they loosed from the hauen, about the Calendes of December, in the yeere. 1499. This hauen of *Palos*, is threescore & twelue myles distant from *Gades*, commonly called *Cales*, and .lxxiii. myles from *Ciuite*. All thinhabitantes of this towne, not one excepted, are greatly geue to searching of the sea, and continually exercised in sayling. They also directed their vyage fyrst to the iland of *Canarie* by the ilands of *Hesperides*, now called *Cabouerde*, which some cal *Gorgodes Meducias*. Sayling therfore directly toward the south from that ilande of *Hesperides* whiche the *Portugales* (beyng possessers of the same) cal *Sancti Iacobi*,

The nauigation of Vincentus, and Aries Pinzonus.

The Ilandes of Canaris, Cabouerdes.



S. James  
Islande.

The north pole  
out of sight.

Habitable regi-  
ons under the  
Equinoctial  
lyne.

*Iacobi*, and departing from thence at the Ides of January, they followed the south west wynde, beyng in the myddest betwene the south and the west. When they supposed that they had sayled about thre hundred leagues by the same wynde, they say that they lost the syght of the Nothe starre: and were shortly after tossed with exceeding tempestes bothe of wynde and sea, and vexed with intollerable heate: Yet sayled they on further (not without great daunger) for the space of two hundred & fortie leagues, following yet the same wynd by the lost pole. Wherefore, whether habitable regions be vnder the Equinoctiall lyne or not, let these men and the olde wyrters, aswel philosophers as poetes and cosmographers discusse. For these men affirme it to be habitable, and meraciously replenished with people: and they, that it is uninhabitable by reason of the sonne beames depending perpendicularly or directely ouer the same. Yet were there many of the olde wyrters, whiche attempted to proue it habitable. These mariners being demaunded, if they saw the south pole, they answered that they knew no starre there like vnto this pole, that might be discerned about the poynt: but that they sawe an other order of starres, and a certeyne thicke myst rysing from the horizontall lyne, whiche greatly hyndered theyr syght. They contende also, that there is a great heape or rysing in the myddest of the earth, whiche taketh away the syght of the south pole, vntill they haue bitterly passed ouer the same: but they verely beleue that they sawe other images of starres, muche differing from the situation of the starres of our hemispherie, or halfe circle of heauen. Howe so euer the matter be, as they informe vs, we certifie you. At the length, the seuenth day of the calendes of Februarie, they espied lande a farre off: and seeing the water of the sea to be trobelous, sounding with theyr plummet, they founde it to be, xvi. fathames deepe. Going a lande, and taryng there for the space of two dayes, they departed, bycause they sawe no people stering, although they founde certeyne steppes of men by the sea syde. Thus graving on the trees & the stones nere vnto the shore, the kynge's name and theyrs, and the tyme of theyr comynge thither, they departed. Not farre from this station, folowynge the syers on the land by nyght, they founde a nation lying vnder the

the open symment, after the maner of warre. Our men thought it not best to trouble them vntill the mornynge. There fore, at the rysing of the sonne, fortie of our men well armed, wente towarde them: agaynst whom came forth. xxii. of them, with bowes, spynge and dartes, euen redy to fyght. The other compaignie folowed them, armed after the same maner. Our men affirme that they were of hygher stature then eyther the Almaynes or Pannonians. They beheld our men with frowning & threatenynge countenance: but our men thought it not good to fal to bickering with them, vncertaine whether it were for feare, or bycause they would not dyue them to flight. Wherefore they went about to allure them by faire meanes & rewards: but they refused all kynde of gentleness, and stood euer in a redynes to fight, declaring the same by signes and tokens. Thus our men resorted to theyr shippes, and they to the place from whence they came, without any further busines. The same nyght about mydnyght, they fledde, & left the place voyde where they lay in the campe. Our men suppose them to be a vagabund and wandering nation, lyke vnto the Scythians, without houses or certeyne dwelling places, lyuing only with the frutes of the earth, hauing theyr wyues and chyldren folowing them. Suche as measured their footesteppes in the sande, affirme with great othes, that one of theyr feete is almost as long as two feete of our men of the meane sorte. Sayling on yet further, they founde an other riuer, but not of deapth sufficient to heare the Carauels: they sent therefore the foure shippe boates to lande, full of armed men to search the countrey. They espyed vpon a hygh hyll nere vnto the sea syde, a greate multitude of people, to whom our compaignie sent forth one man with certeyne of our thynge to allure them to exchange. And when he had cast a haukes bell towarde them, they cast downe a wedge of golde a cubit longe: the which as he stoned to take vp, they suddenly inclosed hym, and caried hym away. But he was shortly after rescued by his companions, to some of their paynes: for they shue eyght of our men, & wounded many a farre off, with theyr arrowes, and dartes made of wood, hardened at the endes with fyre. After this they encompassed our shippe boates within the ryuer, and came rashly within the reache of our men, laying holde on the boates sydes,

People of high  
nature.

A vagabund  
kynde of men.

Giantes.



Desperate  
boldnesse.A sea of freche  
water.Many fruitful  
Ilandes.Humane peo-  
ple.Regions of  
Paria.

Gold &amp; pearles

sydes, where they were thrust through, and heuen in peeces as it had ben sheepe, by reason they were naked. Yet woulde they not for al this geue ouer, but tooke from our men one of their boates, hauing no men in it: for the gouernour thereof being slayne with an arrowe, the other fledde and escaped. And thus they leste this fierce and warlyke people, saylyng toward the north-west, along by the same coastes, with sorrowfull hartes for the death of theyr companions. When they had sayled about .xl. leagues, they chaunced into a sea of suche freshe water, that they fylled theyr barelles and hoggesheades therewith. Searching the cause hereof, they vnderstoode that a belement course of riuers descended with great violence from the toppes of certayne great hylles. They saw that there lyeth within the sea, manye fortunate and fruitfull Ilandes, and well inhabited, and that thynhabitanes of this tracte are men of meeke nature, and suche as doo not refuse straungers, yet lytle profytable to them, because they haue no marchandyses for their purpose, as golde, or precious stones: for lacke whereof, they brought from thence thyrtye captiues to sell for slaues. Thynhabitanes call this region *Mariatambal*. The region of the east part of that ryuer, is called *Camomorus*, and that of the west part *Paricora*, in the midlande whereof, thynhabitanes signified that there is great plenty of golde: For, folowing this ryuer directly toward the North (as the bending of the shore requyred) they recovered againe the syght of the north pole. All the coaste of this tracte, parteyneth to *Paria*, the which (as we sayd before) was fyrst found by *Colonus* hym selfe, and bath in maner in euery place great abundaunce of pearles. They say that these coastes are adioynnyng vnto, and all one with *Os Draconis*, and also bordering vppon the regions of *Cumana*, *Manacapana*, *Curiana*, *Cauchieta*, and *Cuchibachoa*: Wherefore they thought it to be part of the firme lande of India, beyonde the ryuer of *Ganges*. For the great & large compasse thereof, doth not permit that it shoulde be an ilande, albeit the whole earth vncouered with water, largely taken, may be called an Ilande. From the poynt of that land where they lost the sight of the north pole, saylyng by a continuall tracte about thre hundred leagues towarde the west syde of *Paria*, they say that (almost in the mid way) they chaunced into a ryuer called *Maragnonum*, whiche

whiche they affirme to be of suche exceedyng breadth, that it might seeme incredible, yf the antiques dyd not make mention of the lyke. Beyng demaunded of me yf it were not salt water where it diuided the lande, they answered that the water thereof was very freshe and sweete, and that the further it ranne, to be so muche the fresher: also ful of Ilandes and whollome fysh: they dare auouche the breadth thereof to be moze then thirtie leagues. Yet yf we wel weigh and consyder the largenesse and widenesse of *Boristomea* and *Spiriostomea*, the mouthes of the famous ryuer of *Ister* (nowe called *Danubius*) and howe farre they violate or corrupt the salt water with their fresheesse, we shal cease to marueyle, although this other ryuer be greater: for who can diminish the power of nature, but that it may make this bigger then the other, and another bygger then this? And I suppose this to be the ryuer whereof *Colonus* the Admirall made mention in the description of his voyage in these coastes. But we shal hereafter haue further knowledge hereof: let vs nowe therefore retorne to the commodities of these regions. They found in many Ilandes about *Paria*, great wooddes of *Basilie* trees, and brought away with them thre thousande poundes weyght thereof. They say that the *Basilie* of *Hispaniola*, is muche better then this to dye cloth with a moze sayre and durable colour. From hence, folowing the winds (which the Spaniards cal *Northwest* and the Italians *Graco*) they passed by many Ilandes very fruitfull, yet left desolate and wasted by reason of the crueltie of the *Canibales*: for they went alande in many places, they founde the ruines of many destroyed houses: yet in some places they founde men, but those exceedyng fearefull, fleeyng to the mountaynes, rockes, and wooddes at the syght of euery straunger or thyppe, & wanderyng without houses or certayne abydyng places, for feare of the *Canibales* laying wayte and huntynge after them. Here they found those great trees whiche of them selues in dyuers places bynyng forth that fruite or spice, which the Apothecaries cal *Cassia Phistula*, and that of no lesse goodnesse, then that which the phisitians minister to suche as be diseased with the ague, but it was not rype at theyr beyng there. They affirme that there are trees of suche bygnesse, that .xvi. men ioyning handes together, and standyng in compasse, can scarcely embrace some of them.

The commo-  
dities of the re-  
gions & Ilandes  
about *Paria*.  
*Basilie*.

Canibales.

Trees of *Cassia*  
*phistula*.

H i

Among

A monstrous  
beast.

Among these trees is found that monstrous beaste with a snoute  
lyke a fore, a tayle lyke a marmasette, eares lyke a bat, handes  
lyke a man, and feete lyke an ape, bearyng her whelpes aboute  
with her in an outwarde bellye much lyke vnto a great bagge  
or purse. The deade carkas of this beaste, you saue with me,  
and turned it ouer and ouer with your owne handes, maruey-  
lyng at that new belly, and wonderful prouision of nature. They  
say it is knowen by experience, that she neuer letteth her whel-  
pes goo out of that purse, except it be ether to play, or to sucke,  
vntill suche tyme that they be able to gette theyr lyupng by  
them selues. They tooke thys beaste with her whelpes: But  
the whelpes dyed shortly after in the shyppes. Yet the damme  
liued certayne monethes: but at the length, not being able to a-  
bide so great alteration of ayre, and change of meate, she died al-  
so in the way. But of this beaste, we haue saidt enogh. Let vs  
now therfore returne to the aucthours of these thinges. These  
two *Pinzoni*, the vncle and the neuiew, susteyned many greate  
troubles & horrible tempestes and perilles in this navigation.  
For when they had nowe sailed by the coastes of *Paria* about syre  
hundred leagues, & (as they supposed) beyond the cite of *Cathay*,  
and the coastes of East India beyond the riuer of *Ganges*, there  
rose sodenly so fierce a tempest in the moneth of *July*, that of the  
four Carauels which they had with them, two were drowned  
euen before theyr eyes: and the thyrde lying at anker, with lyke  
sodennes caried out of theyr syght throught the violence of the  
tempest: the fourth also lying at anker, was so shaken and broo-  
sed, that all the seames therof were almost loosed: Yet came  
they to land out of this last shyp, but vtterly despaynyng of the  
shyp. Therfore consultyng with them selues what was best  
to bee donne in so extreeime a case, and how to prouyde them  
a safe dwellyng place in those Regions, beyng out of all hope  
how to depart from thence, they determyned to slay all the in-  
habytauntes of the countrey nere about them, least they with  
the other shoulde conspyre together to kyll them, but theyr for-  
tune was better: For the Carauel which the tempest had caried  
away, was come to them agayne. This had in it. xviii. men:  
And the other that remayned, was saued and repayred. With  
these two therfore, they tooke theyr voyage directly to *Spayne*,  
and

Extreme reime-  
die in a despay-  
rate case.

and thus being tossed with tempestes, and vexed with aduersities,  
they returned to theyr natyue countrey of *Palos*, to theyr wyues  
and chyldren, the day before the Calendes of October, with the  
losse of many of theyr deere frends & neighbours. They brought  
with them *Cinamome* and ginger: but not very good, because  
they were not there fully seasoned with the heate of the sonne,  
before they brought them from thence. They brought also cer-  
tayne pretious stones, which *Baptista Elysus* that excellent phi-  
losopher, and your lordshyppes phisition, affirmeth to be true  
*Topases*. After these mens returne, other of theyr neighbours  
being moued therto by a certayne emulation, to proue yf theyr  
fortune wold be any better, lyke men of good corage, beyng no-  
thing discomforted by the hard fortune of their neighbours, kno-  
wing that it often times chaunceth, that that which is one mans  
vndoing, is an other mans making, attempted a newe voyage to-  
ward the south by the coastes of *Paria*, folowynge the steps of *Colonus*  
the Admiral, who had fyrste discovered the same. They also  
brought with them great plentie of *Cassia fistula*, and founde that  
precious medicine called of the Spaniards *Anima album*, whose  
perfume is of most excellent effect to heale the reumes, mures,  
and heauines of the head. Astouching this vyage, as yet I know  
no other newes that I thought woorthy to certifie you of, wher-  
fore, I wyl nowe make an ende of this booke, because you put  
me so often in remembrance of your departure: Yet to accom-  
ply the Decade, I wyl declare somewhat of the superstitions  
of *Hispaniola*. You shall nowe therfore vnderstand the illusions  
wherewith the people of the Ilande haue ben seduced after the  
errours of the olde gentilitie, and wandered in the ignorance  
and blyndnesse of humane nature, corrupted by the disobedience  
of our fyrst parentes, whiche hath remayned in all nations vpon  
the face of the earth, except where it hath pleased GOD by the  
lyght of his spirite by his woorde, to powre vpon his electe the  
grace of renouation, by the lyght whereof the natural darke-  
nesse receiueth some clearenesse as in a glasse, vntill imperfection  
shalbe abolished. Our men therfore were long in the Ilande of  
*Hispaniola*, before they knewe that the people thereof honoured  
any other thyng then the lyghtes of heauen, or had anye other  
religion: but when they had ben nowe long conuersaunt  
H ii with

*Cinamome*  
and *Ginger*.

*Topases*.

Men of noble  
courage.

Another  
voyage.

*Anima album*

The superstiti-  
ons of *Hispa-*  
*niola*.  
The errours of  
the olde genti-  
litie.

with them, and by vnderstand yng their language, drewe to a further familiaritie, they had knowledge that they vied diuers rites and superstitions: I haue therefore gathered these fewe thinges folowynge, out of a booke wyrtten by one Ramonus an Heremite, whom Colonus had left with certayne kyniges of the Ilande to instruct them in the Christian fayth. And because in manner their whole religion is none other thyng then idolatrie, I wil begyn at theyr idolles. It is therefore apparant by the images whiche they honour openly and commonly, that there appeare vnto them in the nyght seasons, certayne phantasies and illusions of euil spirites, seducing them into many fonde and foolish errorres: for they make certayne images of Gossampine cotton, folded or wreathed after theyr manner, and hard stopped within. These images they make lyttynge, muche lyke vnto the pyctures of spirites and deuyls which our paynters are accustomed to paynt vpon walles: but forasmuche as I mee selfe sent you foure of these images, you may better presently signifie vnto the kyng your vncle, what manner of thynges they are, and howe like vnto paynted deuylles, then I can expresse the same by wyrtynge. These images, the inhabitantes call *Zemes*, whereof the leaste, made to the lyknesse of young deuyls, they bynde to their foreheades when they goe to the warres agaynst theyr enimies, and for that purpose haue they those stringes hangynge at them which you see. Of these, they beleue to obteyne rayne, yf rayne be lackynge, lyke wyse saye weather: for they thynke that these *Zemes* are the mediatours and messengers of the great god, whom they acknowledge to be only one, eternal, without ende, omnipotent, and inuisible. Thus euery king hath his particuler *Zemes*, whiche he honoureth. They cal the eternal god by these two names, *Iocauna* and *Guamaonocon*, as theyr predecessours taught them, affyrmyng that he hath a father called by these fīue names: that is, *Attabeira*, *Mamona*, *Guacarapita*, *Liella*, *Guima-Zoa*. Nowe shal you heare what they fable on the earth as touching the original of man. There is in the Ilande, a region called *Caunana*, where they sayne that mankynde came fyrst out of two caues of a mountayne: and that the bygggest sorte of men came forth of the mouth of the bygggest caue, and the least sort out of the least caue. The rocke in the which these caues are, they call

Canta,

*Canta*. The greatest denne, they name *Cazibaxagua*, and the lesse, *Amaiauna*. They say, that before it was lawfull for men to come forth of the caue, the mouth of the caue was kept and watched nyghtly by a man whose name was *Machochael*: this *Machochael*, departynge somewhat farre from the caue, to the intent to see what thinges were abroad, was sodenly taken of the sunne, (whose syght he was forbidden) & was turned into a stone. They sayne the lyke of diuers other, that wheras they went forth in the nyght season a fyshynge so farre from the caue, that they could not returne before the rysynge of the sunne (the whiche it was not lawfull for them to beholde) they were transfourmed into *Pyrobalane* trees, which of them selues grow plentifully in the Ilande. They say furthermore, that a certayne ruler called *Vagoniona*, sent one forth of the caue to goe a fyshynge, who by like chaunce was turned into a *Nyghtingale*, because the sunne was rysen before he came agayne to the caue: and that peerele about the same time that he was turned into a byrde, he doth in the nyght with a mournynge song bewaile his mysfortune, and call for the helpe of his maister *Vagoniona*: And this they thynke to be the cause why that byrd syngeth in the nyght season. But *Vagoniona*, beyng sore troubled in his mind for the losse of his familiar frend whom he loued so entirely, leauynge the men in the caue, brought forth only the women with theyr suckynge chyldren, leauynge the women in one of the Ilands of that tracte, called *Matbinino*, and carped the chyldren away with hym: which poore wretches oppressed with famine, saynted and remayned on the banke of a certayne riuer, where they were turned into frogges, and cryed *toa, toa*, that is, *mamma, mamma*, as chyldren are woont to crye for the mothers pappe. And hereof they say it cometh that frogges vse to crye so pitifully in the sprynge tyme of the yeere: And that men were scattered abroad in the caues of *Hispaniola* without the company of women. They say also, that where as *Vagoniona* him selfe was accustomed to wander in diuers places, and yet by a special grace neuer transcurmed, descended to a certayne sayre woman whom he saue in the bottome of the sea, and receiued of her certayne pibble stones of marble (which they cal *Cibas*) and also certayne yallowe and bright plates of latton, which they cal *Guaninos*. These thinges to this day are had in

Fables muche lyke vnto his transfourmations.

The Nyghtingale.

The Ilande of Matbinino.

Chyldren turned into Frogs

A special grace.

Idolatrie and idolles.

Illusions of euil spirites. Images of gossampine cotton.

Young deuyls.

great estimation among the kynges, as goodly iewelless, and most holy reliques. But nowe (moste noble pryncce) you shall heare a more pleasaunt fable. There is a certayne caue called *Iouanaboma*, in the territozie of a certayne kyng whose name is *Machinnech*: This caue they honour more religiously then dyd the Grekes in tyme past, *Corinth*, *Cyrrha*, or *Nysa*, and haue adourned it with ppyctures of a thousand fashions. In the entrance of this caue they haue two grauen *Zemes*, wherof the one is called *Bintbaitel*, and the other *Marohn*. Bepng demaunded why they had this caue in so great reuerence, they answered earnestly, because the sunne and the moone came fyrst out of the same to geue lyght to the worlde: they haue religious concourse to these caues, as we are accustomed to goe on *Pygrynage* to Rome, or *Vaticane*, *Compostella*, or *Hierusalem*, as most holy & head places of our religion. They are also subiect to another kynde of superstition: for they thynke that dead folkes walke in the night, and eate the fruite called *Guamaba*, vnknewen vnto vs, & somewhat like vnto a Quinsle: affyrmyng also that they are couersant with lypng people, euen in theyr beddes, and to deceiue women in takyng vpon them the shape of men, shewyng them selues as though they woulde haue to do with them: but when the matter cometh to actual deede, sodaynely to vanishe away. If any do suspect that a dead body lyeth by him, whē he feeleth any strange thynge in the bed, they say he shalbe out of doubt by feelyng of the belly thereof: affyrmyng that the spirites of dead men may take vpon them al the members of mans body, sauing only the navel. If therfore by the lacke of y navel he do perceiue that a dead body lyeth by him, the feelyng is immediatly resolued. They beleeue verily, that in the nyght, and oftentimes in theyr iourneys, and especially in common and high wayes, dead men do meete with the lypng: Agaynst whom, yf any man be stowte and out of feare, the fantasie banysyth incontinently: but yf anye feare, the fantasie or vision dooth so assaulte hym and stryke hym with further feare, that manye are thereby astonysed, and haue the lynnes of theyr bodies taken. The inhabitants beyng demaunded of whom they had those wayne superstitions, they answered, that they were lesse them of theyr forefathers, as by discent of inheritauce, and that they haue

Holy reliques.

A holy caue.

The original of the sunne and moone.

Walkyng spirites.

A remedie against walking spirites.

had the same before the memoire of man, composed in certayne rymes and songes, whiche it was lawfull for none to learne, but only the kynges sonnes, who committed the same to memoire, because they had neuer any knowledge of letters. These they syng before the people on certayne solemne and festiuall dayes, as most religious ceremonies: whyle in the meane tyme they play on a certaine instrument made of one whole peece of wood, somewhat holowe lyke a tymbrel. Theyr priestes and diuines (whom they cal *Boitios*) instructe them in these superstitions: These priestes are also phisitions, deuplyng a thousande craftes and subtilties howe to deceiue the simple people whiche haue them in great reuerence: for they perswade them that the *Zemes* ble to speake with them familiarly, and tel them of thinges to come. And yf any haue ben sycke, and are recovered, they make them beleeue that they obteyned theyr health of the *Zemes*. These *Boitii* hynde them selues to muche fastyng, and outwarde cleanness, and pouergynges, especially when they take vpon them the cure of any pryncce, for then they drynke the powder of a certaine herbe, by whose qualitie they are driuen into a fury, at whiche time (as they say) they learne many thinges by reuelation of the *Zemes*. Then puttyng secretly in theyr mouthes, eyther a stone, or a bone, or a peece of fleshe, they come to the sicke person, commaundyng al to depart out of that place, except one or two, whom it shal please the sycke man to appoynt: this done, they goe about hym thre or foure tymes, greatly deforming theyr faces, lyps, and nothryls, with sundry fylthy gestures, blowing, breathyng, and suckyng the forehead, temples, and necke of the patient, whereby (they say) they drawe the euyl ayre from him, and sucke the disease out of his baynes: then rubbyng hym about the shoulders, thyghes, and legges, and drawyng downe theyr handes close by his secte, holdyng them yet faste together, they runne to the doore beyng open, where they vnclose and shake theyr handes, affyrmyng that they haue dryuen away the disease, and that the patient shall shortly be perfectly restored to health. After this, commyng behynde hym, he conueigheth a peece of fleshe out of his owne mouth lyke a sugger, and sheweth it to the sycke man, sayng, Beholde, you haue eaten to muche, you shal nowe be whole, because I haue

Priestes and diuines. Phisitions.

Ignorance is nourished with superstition.

A powder of marueylous effect.

A strange manner of curyng.

¶ iii

taken

Angry gods.

They make the dead to speake.

Famies of spirites of the gentiles, much like to the papistes.

The powder of the herbe Cobobba.

taken this from you. But yf he entende yet further to deceiue the patient, he perswadeth hym that his *Zemes* is angry, eyther because he hath not buylded hym a chappell, or not honoured him religiously, or not dedicated vnto hym a groue or garden. And if it so chauce that the sycke person dye, his kynfolks, by witchcraftie, enforce the dead to confesse whether he dyed by naturall destiny, or by the negligēce of the *Boitius*, in that he had not fasted as he shoulde haue done, or not ministred a conuenient medicine for the disease: so that if this phisition be founde faultie, they take reuenge of hym. Of these stones or bones whiche these *Boitii* cary in theyr mouthes, yf the women can come by them, they keepe them religiously, beleuyng them to be greatly effectuell to helpe women trauayling with chyldre, and therefore honour them as they do theyr *Zemes*. For diuers of the inhabitantes honour *Zemes* of diuers fashions: some make them of wood, as they were admonyshed by certayne visions appearing vnto them in the woods: Other, whiche haue receiued aunswere of them among the rockes, make them of stone and marbyle. Some they make of rootes, to the similitude of suche as appeare to them when they are geatheryng the rootes called *Ages*, whereof they make theyr bread, as we haue sayd before. These *Zemes* they beleue to send plentie & fruitfulness of those rootes, as the antiquitie beleued such fayries or spirites as they called *Dryades*, *Hamadryades*, *Satyros*, *Panes*, and *Nereides*, to haue the cure & prouidence of the sea, woods, springes, and fountaynes, assignyng to euery thing their peculier goddes: Euen so do the inhabitantes of this Ilande attribute a *Zemes* to euery thyng, supposyng the same to geue eare to theyr inuocations. Wherefore, as often as the kyngs aske counsel of theyr *Zemes* as concernyng their warres, increafe of fruites, or scarcenes, or health and sicknesse, they enter into the house dedicate to theyr *Zemes*, where, snuffing vp into theyr nosethys the powder of the herbe called *Cobobba* (wherewith the *Boitii* are dryuen into a furie) they say that immediatly they see the houses turned topsy turue, and men to walke with theyr heeles upward, of such force is this powder, utterly to take away all fence. As soone as this madnesse ceaseth, he embraceth his knees with his armes, holdyng downe his head. And when he hath remayned thus a whyle astonysed, he lysteth vp his head

Secrete mysteries.

Reuelations.

The spirite of Apollo. The Sibylles.

Children with two crownes.

Wandering images.

head, as one that came newe out of sleepe: and thus lookyng bp toward heauen, fyrst he fumbleth certayne confounded woordes with hym selfe, then certayne of the nobilitie or cheefe gentlemen that are about him (for none of the common people are admitted to these mysteries) with loude voyces geue tokens of reioycing that he is returned to them from the speech of the *Zemes*, demaundyng of hym what he hath seene. Then he openyng his mouth, doateth that the *Zemes* spake to hym duryng the tyme of his traunce, declaryng that he had reuelations either concerning victorie or destruction, famine or plentie, health or syckenesse, or whatsoeuer happeneth fyrst on his tongue. Nowe (most noble Prince) what neede you hereafter to marueyle of the spirite of *Apollo* so shakynge his *Sibylles* with extreme furie: you had thought that the superstitious antiquitie had perysed. But nowe wheras I haue declared thus muche of the *Zemes* in general, I thought it not good to let passe what is sayde of them in particuler. They say therefore that a certayne kyng called *Guamaretus*, had a *Zemes* whose name was *Corochotum*, who (they say) was oftentimes woont to descend from the hyghest place of the house where *Guamaretus* kept hym fast bound. They affirme, that the cause of this his breakyng of his bandes and departure, was eyther to hyde hym selfe, or to goe seeke for meate, or els for the acte of generation: and that sometymes beyng offended that the kyng *Guamaretus* had ben negligent and slacke in honouring hym, he was woont to lye hyd for certayne dayes. They say also, that in the kynges byllage there are sometyme chyldren bozne haupyng two crownes, whiche they suppose to be the chyldren of *Corochotum* the *Zemes*. They sayne likewise, that *Guamaretus* being overcome of his enimies in battayle, and his byllage with the pallace consumed with fyre, *Corochotus* brake his bandes, and was afterwarde founde a furlong of, safe and without hurte. He hath also another *Zemes* called *Epileguanita*, made of wood, in shape lyke a foure footed beast: who also is sayde, often tymes to haue gonne from the place where he is honoured, into the wooddes. As soone as they perceiue hym to be gone, a great multitude of them geather togeather to seeke him, with deuout prayers: and when they haue founde hym, byyng hym home religiously on theyr shoulders to the chappel dedicated



ted vnto hym. But they complayne, that sence the commynge of the Chyistian men into the Iland, he fled for altogether, and coulde neuer sence be founde, wher by they diuined the destruction of theyr countrey. They honoured an other *Zemes* in the lyknes of a woman, on whom wayted two other lyke men, as they were mynisters to her. One of these, executed thoffice of a mediatour to the other *Zemes*, which are vnder the power and commaundement of this woman, to raise wyndes, cloudes, and rayne. The other is also at her commaundement a messenger to the other *Zemes*, which are ioynd with her in gouernaunce, to geather togeather the waters which fall from the hygh hylls to the valletes, that being loosed, they may with force bruste out into greate floodes, and ouerslawe the countrey, yf the peop' do not geue due honoure to her Image. There remaineth yet one thing worthy to be noted, wherwith we will make an end of this booke. It is a thing well knowen, and yet freche in memory among the inhabitantes of the Iland, that there was sometime two kings (of the which one was the father of *Guarionexius*, of whom we made mention before) which were wont to absteyne fyue daies togeather continually from meate & drinke, to knowe some what of their *Zemes* of thinges to come, and that for this fasting beyng acceptable to their *Zemes*, they receyued answer of them, that within few yeres there shoulde come to the Ilande a nation of men couered with apparell, which shoulde destroy al the customes and ceremonies of the Iland, and eyther slay al theyr chyldren, or bring them into seruitude. The common sort of the people vnderstode this oracle to be ment of the *Canibales*, & therefore when they had any knowledge of theyr commynge, they euer fled, and were fully determined neuer more to aduenture the battayle with them. But when they saw that the Spanyardes had entered into the Ilande, consultyng among them selues of the matter, they concluded that this was the nation whiche was ment by thoracle. Wherin, theyr opinyon deceyued them not, for they are now all subiect to the Chyistians, all such beyng as yne as soberly resisted: Nor yet remaineth there anye memoire of theyr *Zemes*, for they are all brought into Spayne, that we myght be certyfied of theyr illusions of euill sprytes and Idolles, the which you your selfe (most noble Prince) haue

A woman *Zemes* of great power.  
A Mediatours.

A marueylous illusion of the deuill.

The idolles abolished.

haue seene and felt when I was present with you. I let passe many thynges because you put me in remembrance that to morowe you take your iorney towarde your countrey, to hyng home the queene your aunt, whom you accompanied hyther at the commaundement of kyng *Frederike* your vncle. Wherefore I byd you farewell for this time, desyryng you to remember your *Martyr*, whom you haue compelled in the name of the kyng your vncle, to geather these fewe thynges out of a large felde of hystories.

The tenth and last booke of the fyrst Decade, as a conclusion of the former bookes: wrytten to

*Inacus Iopez Mendocius*, Countie of *Tendilla*, & viceroy of *Granata*.



the fyrst begynning and newe attempte, when *Colonus* had taken vpon hym the enterpryse to seache the Ocean sea, I was earnestly moued and required by the letters of certaine of my frendes and noble men of Rome, to wyte those thinges as shoulde happen. For they whispered with great admiration, that where as there were many newe landes founde, and nations which liued naked and after the lawe of nature, they could heare no certentie therof, being greatly desyrous of y same. In this meane time had fortune ouerthrowne *Ascanius* (his brother *Lodonike* being cast out of *Billane* by the frenchmen) whose auctoritie would not suffer me to be idle, but euer to haue my pen in hand. To him I wrote the two first bookes of this decade, beside many other of my hid comentaries which you shal see shortly: but fortune dyd no lesse withdraw my minde from wryting, then disturbe *Ascanius* from power. As he was tossed with contrary stormes, and ceassed to perswade me: euen so steked my seruientnesse to enquire any further, vntill the yere of Christ. 1500: when the Court remained at *Granata* where you are viceroy: At whiche tyme, *Lodonike* the Cardinal of *Aragone*, newe to king *Frederike* by his brothers syde (beyng at *Granata* with the queene *Parthenopea* the sister of our Catholique kyng) brought me king *Frederikes* letters, whereby he exhorted me to finish the

Billane in the hands of the french men.



## The fyrst Decade.

the other bookes which folowed the two epyttell bookes, which I wypte to *Ascanius*: For they both acknowledged that they had the coppe of al that I wypte to cardinall *Ascanius*. And albeit that euen then I was sicke (as you knowe) yet tooke I the burden vppon me, and applyed my selfe to wyptyng. I haue therfore cholen these fewe thynges, out of a greate heape of such as seemed to me most worthy to be noted among the large wyptynges of the aucthoures and searchers of the same. Therfore, forasmuch as you haue endeouored to wryest out of my handes the whole example of all my woorkes, to adde the same to the innumerable volumes of your lybrarie, I thought it good now to make a bryefe reherfall of those thynges which were done from that yeaere of a thousand and fye hundred, euen vnto this yeaere which is the tenth from that: For I entend to wypte moze largely of these thynges hereafter, if god graunt me lyfe. I had wrytten a whole booke by it selfe of the superstitions of the people of the land, supposyng therewith to haue accomplished the whole Decade consistyng of ten bookes. But I haue added this to the tenth as a perpendyculer lyne, and as it were a backe guide or rereward to the other: So that you may knytte the fyrst tenth to the nynt, & impute this to occupye the place of the tenth to fyll vp the Decade. This order haue I appoynted, lest I shoulde be compelled often tymes to wypte ouer the whole woike, or send you the same defaced with blottes and interlynyng. But now let vs come to our purpose. The shyppes maisters and mariners ran ouer many coastes during these ten yeaeres: But euer folowed such as were fyrst found by *Colonus*. For rasyng continually alonge by the tract of *Paria*, which they beleue to be part of the firme land or continent of east India, some of them chaunced vppon certayne new landes toward the east, and some toward the west, in which they founde both golde and frankensence. For they brought from thence manye ietwells and ouches of golde, and greate plentie of frankensence, which they had of the people of those countreyes, partye for exchaunge of some of our thynges, and partye by force, ouercomyng them by warre. Yet in some places, although they be naked, they ouercame our men, and slewe whole armyes. For they are exceedyng fyerce, and vse venemous arrowes, and long

The history folowynge, containeth the actes of ten yeaeres.

*Paria* part of the fyne lande of East India.

Golde & Frankensence.

The fiercenesse of the naked people.

## The fyrst Decade.

long staues lyke iauelens, made hard at the ende with fire. They founde many beastes, both creepynge and foure footed, much dyfferyng from ours, varyable and of sundrye shapen innumerable: yet not hurtfull, except Lions, Tigers, and Crocodiles. This I meane in sundry regions of that greate lande of *Paria*, but not in the ilandes: no not so muche as one, for all the beastes of the ilandes, are meeke and without hurte, except men, which (as wee haue sayde) are in many ilandes deuourers of mans fleshe. There are also dyuers kyndes of foules. And in many places battes of such bygnes, that they are equall with turtle doues. These battes, haue oftentymes assailed men in the night in theyr sleepe, and so bytten them with theyr venemous teeth, that they haue ben thereby almost dyuen to madnes, in so much that they haue ben compelled to flee from such places, as from rauenous Harpies. In an other place, where certayne of them slept in the night season on the sands by the sea syde, a monster comyng out of the sea, came vpon one of them secretlye, and caried hym away by the myddest out of the syght of his fellows, to whom he cryed in bayne for helpe, vntyl the beast leapt into the sea with her pray. It was the kynges pleasure that they shoulde remayne in these landes, and buylde townes and fortresses: whereunto they were so well wyllynge, that diuers profered them selues to take vpon them the subduyng of the lande, making great suite to the kyng that they myght be appoynted thereto. The coast of this tracte is exceedyng great and large, and the regions and landes thereof extende marueylous farre, so that they affirme the continent of these regions with the Ilandes about the same, to be thyrse as bygge as al Europe, beside those landes that the Portugales haue founde southwarde, which are also exceedyng large. Therefore doubtlesse Spayne hath deserued great prayse in these our dayes, in that it hath made knowen vnto vs so many thousandes of *Antipodes* whiche lay hid before, and vnknown to our forefathers: and hath thereby mistred so large matter to wypte of, to suche learned wyttes as are desyrous to set forth knowledge to the comoditie of men: to whom I opened a way when I geathered these thynges rudelye togeather as you see: the whiche, neuerthelesse I truste you wil take in good part, aswell for that I can not adourne my

A man deuoured of a monster of the sea.

Note the largenesse of the new Ilandes.

Antipodes.

my rudenesse with better besture, as also that I neuer toke penne in hande to wyte lyke an hystoriographer, but only by epistles scribeled in haste, to satisfie them, from whose commaundementes I myght not drawe backe my foote. But nowe I haue digressed penough, let vs nowe therefore returne to *Hispaniola*. Our men haue founde by experience, that the bread of the *Ilande* is of smal strength to suche as haue ben used to our bread made of wheate, and that theyr strengthes were muche decayed by vsyng of the same: wherefore the kyng hath of late commaunded that wheate shoulde be sowen there in diuers places, and at sundry tymes of the peere: It groweth into holow reedes, with few eares, but those very bygge and fruitefull. They fynde the lyke softnesse and delicatenesse to be in hearbes, whiche growe there to the height of corne. Meate or cattel, become of bygger stature, and exceedyng fat, but theyr fleshe is more vnslauerie, and theyr bones (as they say) epyther without marow, or the same to be very waterythe: but of hogges and swyne, they affirme the contrary, that they are more whollome, and of better taste, by reason of certayne wyld frutes whiche they eate, beyng of much better nourishment then masse. There is almost none other kynde of fleshe commonly solde in the market. The multitude of hogges are exceedyngly encreased, and become wyld as soone as they are out of the swyneheardes keepyng. They haue suche plentie of beastes and foules, that they shal hereafter haue no neede to haue any brought from other places. The increase of al beastes grow bigger then the broode they came of, by reason of the ranknes of the pasture, although theyr feeding be only of grasse, without epyther barley or other grayne. But we haue sayd penough of *Hispaniola*. They haue nowe founde that *Cuba* (which of long tyme they thought to haue ben firme lande, for the great length thereof) is an *Ilande*: yet is it no maruayle that the inhabitants them selues tolde our men when they searched the length thereof, that it was without ende. For this nation beyng naked, and content with a lytle, and with the limittes of theyr owne countrey, is not greatly curious to knowe what theyr neyghbours doo, or the largenesse of theyr dominion, nor yet knewe they yf there were any other thyng vnder heauen, besyde that whiche they walked on with theyr feete. *Cuba* is from the East into

The nature of the place, altereth the formes and qualities of thynges.

Plentie of beastes and foule.

Cuba is an *Ilande*.

into the West, muche longer then *Hispaniola*, and in breadth from the North to the South, muche lesse then they supposed at the first: for it is very narowe in respect of the length, and is for the most part very fruitefull and pleasaunt. Eastwarde, not farre from *Hispaniola*, there lyeth an *Ilande* lesse then *Hispaniola* more then by the halfe, whiche our men called *Sancti Iohannis*, beyng in manner square, in this they founde exceedyng ryche golde mynes: but beyng nowe occupped in the golde mynes of *Hispaniola*, they haue not yet sent labourers into the *Ilande*. But the plentie and reuenue of golde of al other regions, geue place to *Hispaniola*, where they geue them selues in manner to none other thyng then to geather golde, of whiche worke this order is appointed. To euery such wittie and skilful man as is put in trust to be a surueyours or ouerseer of these workes, there is assigned one or more kinges of the *Ilande*, with their subiects. These kings accordyng to theyr league, come with theyr people at certayne tymes of the peere, and resort euery of them to the golde myne to the whiche he is assigned, where they haue al manner of dygging or mining tooles deliuered them, and euery king with his men, haue a certayne rewarde allowed them for theyr labour. For when they depart from the mynes to sowyng of corne, and other tyllage (wherunto they are addict at certayne other tymes, lest theyr foode shoulde faile them,) they receiue for their labour, one a ierkin, or a dublet, another a shyrte, another a cloke or a cap: for they nowe take pleasure in these thyngs, and goe no more naked as they were wont to doo. And thus they vse the helpe and labour of the inhabitauntes, both for the tyllage of theyr ground, and in theyr golde mynes, as though they were theyr seruantes or bondemen. They beare this yoke of seruitude with an euyl wyll, but yet they beare it: they cal these hyred labourers, *Anaborias*: yet the kyng dooth not suffer that they shoulde be used as bondemen, and only at his pleasure, they are set at libertie, or appoynted to worke. At suche tyme as they are called togeather of theyr kynges to worke (as souldiers or pyoners are assembled of theyr centurions) many of them stele away to the mountaynes and wooddes, where they lye lurkyng, beyng content for that tyme to lyue with wyld frutes, rather then take the paynes to labour. They are docible and apte to learne, and

The distric of Cuba.

The *Ilande* of *Sancti Iohannis*, or *S. Iohannis*. Golde mynes.

Tyllage.

They abhorre labour.

They are docible.

haue nowe utterly forgotten theyre olde superstitions. They beleue godly, and heare well in memory such thynges as they haue learned of our sayth. They kynges children are brought vp with the chiefe of our men, and are instructed in letters and good maners. When they are growen to mans age, they sende them home to theyr countreyes to be example to other, and especially to gouerne the people, yf theyr fathers be dead, that they may the better set forth the Christian religion, and keepe theyr subiectes in loue and obedience. By reason wherof, they come now by faire meanes & gentel perswasions, to the mines which lye in two regions of the ilande, about thyrtye myles dysstaunt from the cytie of *Dominica*, wherof the one is called *Sancti Christophori*: and the other beyng distant aboute fourscore and tenne myles, is called *Cibana*, not farre from the cheefe haven called *Portus Regalis*. These regions are very large, in the which in many places here and there, are founde somtyme euen in the vpper crust of the earth, and somtyme among the stones, certayne rounde pieces or plates of golde, sometime of smale quantytie, and in some places of great wayght: in so much that there hath byn founde rounde pieces of thre hundred pounce weyght, and one of thre thousande, thre hundred and tenne pounce weyght, the whiche (as you harde) was sent whole to the kyng in that shipp in the which the gouernour *Boadilla* was commyng home into Spaine, the shipp with all the men beyng drowned by the way, by reason it was ouer laden with the weyght of gold & multitude of men, albeit, there were mo then a thousande persons which saw and handeled the piece of gold. And wheras here I speake of a pounce, I do not meane the common pounce, but the summe of the ducate of gold, with the coyne called *Triens*, which is the third part of a pounce, which they call *Pesus*. The summe of the weight hearof, the Spanyardes call *Castellatum Aureum*. All the gold that is digged in the mountaines of *Cibana* and *Port Regale*, is caried to the tower of Conception, where shoppes with al thinges appertayning are redy furnished to fine it, melt it, and caste it into wedges. That doone, they take the kynges portion therof, which is the fyfte parte, and so restore to euery man his owne which he gotte with his labour. But the gold which is founde in saynt *Christophorus* myne and

The kynges children.

The two cheefe golde mines of Hispaniola.

A rostip shipp marke.

Pesus.

The founing and distribus sing of gold.

and the regions there about, is carped to the shoppes which are in the byllage called *Bonauentura*. In these two shoppes, is moulted ten peere of aboute thre hundred thousand pounce wayght of gold. If any man be knowen deceytfulle to keepe backe any portion of golde, whereof he hath not made the kynges officers priue, he forfeiteth the same for a fyne. There chaunceth among them oftentymes many contentions and controuerlies, the whiche vntill the magistrates of the Ilande do synpse, the case is remoued by appellation to the hygh counsaile of the court, from whose sentence it is not lawfull to appeale in al the dominions of Castyle. But let vs nowe returne to the newe landes, from whence we haue digressed. They are innumerable, diuers, and exceeding fortunate. Wherefore the Spanyardes in these our dayes, and theyr noble enterpryses, do not geue place eyther to the factes of *Saturnus*, or *Hercules*, or anye other of the auncient prynces of famous memory, which were canonized among the goddes, called *Heroes*, for theyr searchyng of newe landes and regions, and byngyng the same to better culture and ciuilitie. Oh God, howe large & farre shal our posteritie see the Christian religion extended: howe large a campe haue they now to wander in, whiche by the true nobilitie that is in them, or moued by vertue, wyl attempt eyther to deserue lyke prayse among men, or reputation of well doyng before God: What I conceiue in my mynde of these thynges, I am not able to expresse with penne or tongue. I wil now therfore so make an end of this perpendiculer conclusion of the whole Decade, as myndyng hereafter to search and geather euery thyng particulerly, that I may at further leysure wyte the same moze at large. For *Colonus* the Admiral, with foure shippes, and a hundred, threescore, and ten men, appoynted by the kyng, discovered in the peere of Christe. 1520. the lande oueragaynst the West corner of *Cuba*, distant from the same about a hundred and thirtie leagues: in the myddest of whiche tracte, lyeth an Ilande called *Guanassa*. From hence he directed his voyage backwarde toward the East, by the shore of that coast, supposyng that he shoulde haue founde the coastes of *Paria*, but it chaunced otherwise. It is sayde also that *Vincencius Agnes* (of whom we haue spoken before) and one *Iohannes Diaz* (with diuers other, of whose voyages I haue as yet no certayne knowledge)

Three hundred thousand weight of gold molten peere in Hispaniola.

The newe landes.

Enlarging of the Christian religion. The original of true nobilitie.

The Ilande of Guanassa.

The voyage of Iohannes Diaz.

knowledge) haue ouerrunne those coastes: but yf God graunte me lyfe, I trust to knowe the trueth hereof, and to aduertise you of the same. Thus fare ye well.

*The ende of the fyrst Decade.*

The fyrst booke of the seconde Decade, to Leo Bishop of Rome, the tenth of that name, of the supposed continent or firme lande.



Since the tyme that Galeatius Butrigarius of Bononie, and Iohannes Curcius of Florence (most holy father) came to the Catholique kyng of Spayne, the one of your holynesse ambassage, and the other for the assayes of his common wealth, I was euer for the moste parte in theyr companie, and for theyr vertues and wysedome had them in great reuerence. And where as they were greatlye geuen to studie, and continuall reuoluing of diuers auctours, they chaunced vpon certayne bookes, negligently let slippe out of my handes, entreatyng of the large landes and regions hitherto lying hyd, and almost *Uest Antipodes*, founde of late by the Spanyardes. Yet being allured and delyted with the newnesse and straungenesse of the matter, although rudely adourned, they commended the same, therewith earnestly desyring me in theyr owne names, and requiring me in the name of your holynesse, to adde hereunto al such thynges as were founde after that tyme, and to geue them a copie therof, to sende to your holynesse, that you myght thereby vnderstande, both howe great commodities is chaunced to the progenie of mankynde, as also encrease of the militant congregation in these our dayes, by the fortunate enterpryses of the kynges of Spayne. For lyke as rased and vnpaynted tables, are apte to receiue what fourmes soeuer are fyrst drawen thereon by the hande of the paynter, euen so these naked and simple people, doo soone receyue the customes of our religion, and by conuersation of our men, shake of theyr fierce and native barbarous

*West Antipodes.*

*The encrease of the Christian congregation.*

barbarousnesse. I haue thought it good therfore to satisfie the request of these wise men, especially vsing chauchoytrie of your name, wherunto not to haue obeyed, I shoulde esteeme my selfe to haue committed a heynous offence. Wherefore I will nowe briefly rehearse in order, what hyd coastes the Spanyardes ouerran, who were chauchours therof, where they rested, what further hope they brought, and finallye what greates thynges those tractes of landes do promyse in time to come. In the declaration of my decade of the ocean, which is nowe prynted and dyspersed throughout Chyristendome vnwares to me, I described howe Christophorus Colonus founde those ilandes wherof wee haue spoken, and that turnyng from thence towarde the left hande southward, he chaunced into greates regions of landes, and large seas, distant from the Equinoctiall lyne, onely from fyue degrees to tenne: where he founde brode ryuers and exceeding hygh mountaynes couered with snowe, and harde by the sea bankes, where were manye commodious and quyet hauens. But Colonus being now departed out of this lyfe, the kyng beganne to take care, how those lands might be inhabited with Chyristian men, to thyncrease of our fapth: Whereupon he gaue lycence by his letters patentes to al such as would take the matter in hand, and especially to two, wherof Diego Nicuesa was one, & the other was Alphonsus Fogeda. Wherefore about the Ides of December, Alphonsus departing fyrst with thre hundred souldiers from the ilande of Hispaniola (in the which we sayd the Spaniardes had builded a cytie, & planted theyr habitation) & saylyng in maner ful south, he came to one of the hauens found before, which Colonus named *Portus carthaginiis*, both because of the iland standyng agaynst the course of the streame, and also that by reason of the largenesse of the place and bendyng sydes, it is much lyke to the hauen of Spayne called *Carthago*. The inhabitantes call the Ilande *Codego*, as the Spanyardes call the Ilande of theyr hauen *Scombria*. This region is called of the inhabitantes *Caramairi*, in the whiche they affyrme both the men and women to bee of goodly stature, but naked. The men haue theyr heare cutte rounde by theyr eares, but the women were it long, both the men and women are very good archers. Our men founde certayne trees in this prouince, which bore great plenty of sweete  
I ii apples,

*Ilandes distant from the Equinoctiall, from fyue degrees to ten.*

*The death of Colonus.*

*A generall licence.*

*The nauigation of Alphonsus Fogeda.*

*The region of Caramairi.*

Apples whiche  
turne into woormes.  
A tree whose  
shadowe is  
hurtful.

Maripke  
people.

Arrows in-  
fected with  
poyson.

The nanigati-  
on of Diego  
Nicuesa.

apples, but hurtful, for they turne into woormes when they are eaten. Especially the shadowe of the tree is contagious, for such as sleepe vnder it any tyme, haue theyr heades swolne, and lose their sight: but if they sleepe but a while, theyr sight cometh agayne after a fewe dayes. This porte is distant foure hundred, fyfte, & sixe myles from that port of *Hispaniola* whiche the Spaniards call *Beata*, in the whiche also they furnishe them selues when they prepare anye voyage to seeke other newe landes. When *Fogeda* had entred into the hauen, he enuaded, slue, and spoyled the people, whom he founde naked and scattered: for they were geuen him for a pray by the kynges letters patentes, because they had ben before tyme cruell agaynst the Christians, and coulde neuer be allured to permitt them quietly to come within theyr dominions. Here they founde golde, but in no great quantitie, nor yet that pure: they make of it certayne best plates and brooches whiche they weare for comelynesse. But *Fogeda* not content with these spoyles, vsyng certayne captiues, which he had taken before, for guydes, entred into a byllage twelue myles distant from the sea syde further into the lande, into the which they were fled when he fyrst enuaded. Here he found a naked people, but apte to warre: for they were armed with targettes, shieldes, long swoordes made of wood, and bowes with arrowes typt with bone, or hardened with fyre. As soone as they had espyed our men, they with theyr ghestes who they had receyued, assailed them with desperate myndes, beyng therto more earnestly prouoked, beholdyng the calamitie of these whiche fled vnto them, by the violence done to theyr women and chyldren, in the spoyle and slaughter. In this conflict our men had the ouerthrowe: in the which, one *Iohannes de Lacossa* (being in authoritie next vnto *Fogeda* the captayne, and also the fyrste that geathered gold in the sandes of *Vraba*) was slaine with fiftie souldiers: for these people infecte their arrowes with the deadlye poyson of a certayne herbe. The other with theyr captayne *Fogeda* beyng discomfited, fledde to the shippes. Whyle they remayned thus in the hauen of *Carthago*, sorrowful and pensue for the losse of theyr companions, the other captayne *Diego Nicuesa*, (whom they left in *Hispaniola*, preparyng hym selfe toward the voyage in the hauen *Beata*) came to them with fyue shippes,

and

and seuen hundred fourescore and fyftee men. For the greater number of souldyers folowed *Nicuesa*, bothe because free liberty was geuen them to choose which of the capytaynes them lyst, and also that by reason of his age, he was of greater authoritie: But especially because the rumoure was that *Beragua* being by the kyngs commission appoynted to *Nicuesa*, was rycher in golde then *Vraba* assigned to *Alphonso Fogeda*. Therefore, at the arryual of *Nicuesa*, they consulted what was best to be doone: and determyned fyrste to reuenge the deathe of theyr felowes. Therupon, setting theyr battayle in aray, they marched in the nyght toward them whiche slue *Cossa* with his companions. Thus stealyng on them vnwares in the laste wathe of the nyght, and encompassyng the byllage where they lay, conspytyng of a hundred houses and more, haupng also in it thyle as many of theyr neyghbours as of them selues, they set it on fyre, with diligent wathe that none myght escape. And thus in short time they brought them and theyr houses to ashes, and made them paye the raunsome of blood with blood: for of a great multitude of men and women, they spared only fyre chyldren, all other beyng destroyed with fyre or swoord, except fewe whiche escaped priuily, they learned by these reserued chyldren, that *Cossa* and his felowes were cut in peeces, and eaten of them that slue them. By reason whereof, they suppose that these people of *Camairi* tooke theyr original of the *Caribes*, otherwyse called *Canibales*. Here they founde some golde among the ashes. For the hunger of golde dyd no lesse incourage our men to aduenture these perils and labours, then dyd the posselving of the landes. These thinges thus finished, and the deathe of *Cossa* and his felowes reuenged, they returned to the hauen. After this, *Fogeda* whiche came fyrst, fyrst lykewyse departyng with his armie to seeke *Vraba*, committed to his gouernance, sayled by an *Ilande* called *Fortis*, lyng in the myddway betweene *Vraba* and the hauen of *Carthago*: into the whiche descending, he founde it to be an *Ilande* of the *Canibales*, byngyng with hym from thence two men and seuen women, for the residue escaped. Here he founde in the cotages of them that fledde, a hundred, fourescore, and teune drammes of golde, caste and wrought in dyuers fourmes. Saylyng forwarde from hence, he came to the

The regions of  
Vraba and  
Beragua.

The Spaniards  
revenge the  
death of theyr  
companions.

A great slaugh-  
ter.

Canibales.  
The hunger  
of golde.

The *Ilande*  
*Fortis*.

Wrought gold.



East coastes of *Vraba*, whiche the inhabitauntes call *Caribana*, from whence the *Caribes* or *Canibales* of the *Ilandes* are sayd to haue theyr name and originall. Here he began to builde a fortresse, and a byllage neere vnto the same, therein intendyng to place theyr fyrst habitation. Shortly after, beyng instructed by certayne captaynes, that there was about twelue myles further within the lande, a certayne byllage called *Tirusi*, hauyng in it a ryche golde myne, he determined to destroy the byllage, to the which when he came, he founde the inhabitantes redy to defende theyr ryght, and that so stoutly, that encounteryng with them, he was repulsd with shame and damage: for these people also vse bowes and benemous arrowes. Within a fewe dayes after, beyng enforced for lacke of vittualles to invade another byllage, he hym selfe was strycken in the thygh with an arrowe. Some of his felowes say, that he was thus wounded of one of the inhabitauntes whose wyfe he had ledde away captiue before. They say also that he had fyrst frendlye communed with *Fogeda* for redeming of his wyfe, and had appoynted a day to bring a portion of golde for her ransome, and that he came at the day assigned, not laden with golde, but armed with bowes and arrowes, with eyght other confederate with hym, which had ben before partakers of the iniuries done to them fyrst at the hauen of *Carthago*, and afterward at the burnyng of the byllage, in reuenge whereof, they had desperately consecrated them selues to deathe. But the matter beyng knowen, the captayne of this conspiracie was slayne of *Fogeda* his companions, and his wyfe deteyned in captiuitie. *Fogeda* also through the maliciousnesse of the venime, consumed and was dyed vpon by litle & litle. While these things chaunced thus, they espied *Nicuesa* the other captayne, to whom *Beragua* the region of the West syde of *Vraba* was assigned to inhabite. He gaue wynd to his sayles to take his voyage toward *Beragua*, the day after that *Fogeda* departed out of the hauen of *Carthago*. He with his armie that he brought with hym, coasted euery along by the shore, vntyll he came to the gulfe *Coiba*, whose kynges name is *Careta*. Here he founde theyr language to be in manner nothyng lyke vnto that of *Hispaniola*, or of the hauen of *Carthago*: whereby he perceyued that in this tracte, there are many languages differyng from theyr owne borderers, *Nicuesa*

Nicuesa.

The gulfe  
Coiba.

departyng from *Coiba*, went to the prouince of *Lieutenant* *Thyp* of *Fogeda* his companion. Within a fewe dayes after, he hym selfe entryng into one of those marchaunt shippes whiche the *Spanyarden* call *Carauelas*, commaunded that the bigger vessels should folow farre behinde. He tooke with hym two smal shippes commonly called *Bergandines* or *Brigandines*. I haue thought it good in al the discourse of these booke, to vse the common names of thinges, because I had rather be playne then curious, especially forasmuche as there do dayly aryse many newe thynges unknowen to the antiquitie, whereof they haue left no true names. After the departure of *Nicuesa*, there came a shyppe from *Hispaniola* to *Fogeda*, the captayne wherof, was one *Barnardino de Calauera*, who had stolne the same from *Hispaniola* with threescore men, without leaue or aduice of the Admiral and the other gouernours. With the vittualles which this shyppe brought, they refreshed them selues, and somewhat recovered theyr strengthes, muche weakened for lacke of meate. *Fogeda* his companions whyspered and muttered agaynst hym daylye more and more, that he fedde them forth with vayne hope: for he had tolde them that he left *Ancifus* in *Hispaniola* (whom he chose by the kinges commission to be a iudge in causes, because he was learned in the law) to come shortly after him with a shyp laden with vittualles, and that he marueyled that he was not come many dayes synce. And herein he sayd nothing but trueth: for when he departed, he left *Ancifus* halfe redye to folowe hym. But his felowes supposyng that al that he had sayde of *Ancifus* had ben fayned, some of them determined priuily to steale away the two *Brigandines* from *Fogeda*, and to returne to *Hispaniola*. But *Fogeda* hauyng knowlege hereof, preuented theyr deuice: for leauyng y<sup>e</sup> custodie of the fortresse with a certayne noble gentleman called *Francisco Pizarro*, he hym selfe thus wounded, with a fewe other in his compaignie, entred into the shyppe wherof we spake before, and sayled directly to *Hispaniola*, both to heale the wounde of his thygh, yf any remedie myght be found, and also to knowe what was the cause of *Ancifus* taryng: leauyng hope with his felowes (whiche were nowe brought from thre hundred to threescore, partly by famine, and partly by warre) that he woulde returne within the space of. xv. dayes, prescribyng

Barnardino de  
Calauera.

Fogeda returneth to Hispaniola.

famine.

I iiii

also

also a condition to *Pizarro* and his companions, that it should not be imputed to them for treason, to depart from thence yf he came not agayne at the day appoynted, with vyrtuales, and a newe supplie of men. These xv. dayes beyng now past, wheras they coulde yet heare nothyng of *Fogeda*, and were dayly more and more oppressed with sharpe hunger, they entred into the two *Bizigandines* which were left, and departed from that land. And as they were now saylyng on the mayne sea towarde *Hispaniola*, a tempest sodaynely arysyng, swallowed one of the *Bizigandines* with all that were therein. Some of theyr felowes asfymyng, that they playnely sawe a sphe of huge greatnesse, swimmyng about the *Bizigandine* (for those seas byyng soorth great monsters) and that with a stroke of her tayle, she broke the rudder of the shyppe in peeces, whiche saylyng, the *Bizigandine* being dnyen about by force of the tempest, was drownded not farre from the Island called *Fortis*, lying betwene the coastes of the haven *Carthago* and *Vraba*. As they of the other *Bizigandine* would haue landed in the Islande, they were dnyen backe with the bowes and arrowes of the fierce barbarians. Proceeding therefore on theyr voyage, they mette by chaunce with *Ancisus*, betwene the haven of *Carthago*, and the region of *Cuchibacoa* in the mouth of the riuer whiche the Spanyardes called *Boium gatti*, that is, the house of the catte, because they sawe a catte fynde in that place: *Boium*, in the tongue of *Hispaniola*, is a house. *Ancisus* came with a shyppe laden with al thynges necessarie, both for meate, and dnyke, and apparell, byyngyng also with hym another *Bizigandine*. This is he for whose comyng the captayne *Fogeda* looked for so long. He loosed anker from *Hispaniola* in the Ides of September: and y fourth day after his departure, he espyed certayne hygh mountaynes, the whiche for the abundance of snow which lieth there continually in the toys therof, the Spanyardes called *Serra Neuata*, when *Colonus* the fyrst fynder of those regions passed by the same. The fift day he sayled by *Os Draconis*. They which were in the *Bizigandine*, tolde *Ancisus* that *Fogeda* was returned to *Hispaniola*: but *Ancisus* supposyng that they had fained that tale, commaunded them by chauctostie of his commission to turne backe agayne. The *Bizigandiners* obeyed & folowed him: yet made they humble suite vnto him that

A *Bizigandine* drownded with the stroke of a sphe.

The region of *Cuchibacoa*.

*Serra Neuata*.

*Os Draconis*.

he woulde graunt them that with his fauour they myght eyther goe agayne to *Hispaniola*, or that he hym selfe would bring them to *Nicuesa*: and that they woulde for his gentlenesse, declared towarde them in this behalfe, rewarde hym with two thousande drammes of golde: for they were ryche in golde, but poore in bread. But *Ancisus* assented to neyther of theyr requestes, asfymyng that he myght by no meanes goe any other way, then to *Vraba* the prouince assigned to *Fogeda*. Whereupon, by theyr conduct, he tooke his voyage directly towarde *Vraba*. But now let it not seeme tedious to your holynesse, to heare of one thyng woorthy to be remembred, whiche chaunced to this Lieutenant *Ancisus* as he came thither: for he also cast anker in the coastes of the region of *Caramairi*, whiche we sayde to be famous, by reason of the haven of *Carthago*, and of the goodly stature, strength, and beautie both of men and women beyng in the same. Here he sent certayne to goe alande on the shore both to fetch fresh water, & also to repayre the ship boate which was sore brylled. In this meane tyme, a great multitude of the people of the countrey, armed after theyr manner, came about our men, as they were occupied about theyr busynesse, and stode in a redynesse to fyght, for the space of thre dayes continually, duryng whiche time, neyther durst they set vpon our men, nor our men assaile them. Thus both parties keepyng theyr aray, stode styll thre whole dayes, the one gasyng on the other. Yet al this tyme our men applyed theyr woorkes, placyng the shypwyghtes in the myddest of theyr armie. As they stode thus amased, two of our company went to fyll theyr water pottes at the mouth of the ryuer neere vnto them both, where sodenly there came soorth agaynst them a captayne of the barbarians with tenne armed men, whiche inclosed them, and with terrible countenance bent theyr arrowes against them, but shot them not of. One of our men fledde, but the other remayned, callyng his felowe agayne, and rebukyng hym for his fearefulnesse. Then he spake to the barbarians in theyr owne language, whiche he had learned beyng conuersant with the captiues that were carped from thence long before. They marueplyng to heare a stranger speake in theyr native tongue, put of theyr fiercenesse, and fell to frendly communication, demaundyng who were the captaynes of that company whiche

riche in golde, and poore in bread.

were

were argued in theyr lande. He answered that they were strangers passing by, and that he marueyled why they would attempt to daine them from theyr coastes, and disturbe their shyppe: arguyng them of follie and crueltie, and further threating their ruine and destruction, except they woulde vse them selues more frendely towarde them. For he aduertised them that there woulde shortly come into theyr lande armed men, in number like vnto the sandes of the sea, and that to theyr vtter destruction, not only yf they resysted them not, but also except they receiued them, and entertayned them honourably. In the meane time,

The vse of targettes agaynst venemous arrowes.

*Ancifus* was enfourmed that his men were deteyned: wherefore suspectyng some decepte, he brought forth all his target men, for feare of theyr venemous arrowes: and setting them in battel araye, he marched forwarde towarde them whiche stayed his men. But he whiche communed with the barbarians, geuyng hym a signe with his hande to proccede no further, he stayed, and calling to hym the other, he knewe that all was safe: for the barbarians profered hym peace, because they were not they whom they suspected them to haue ben, meanyng by *Fogeda* & *Nicuesa*, who had spoyled the byllage standyng there by the sea syde, and caried away many captiues, and also burnt another byllage further within the lande. And therefore (as they sayde) the cause of theyr conuynyng thither, was to reuenge those iniuries, yf by any meanes they coulde, yet that they woulde not exercise theyr weapons agaynst the innocent: for they sayd, it was vngodly to fyght agaynst any, not beyng prouoked. Laying apart therefore theyr bowes and arrowes, they enterteyned our men gently,

The barbarians haue respect to iustice.

Salted fysh.

Wine of frutes and seedes.

Artillerie.

and gaue them great plentie of salted fysh, and bread of theyr countrey, and filled theyr vessels with Syder made of their countrey frutes and seedes, not inferior to wine in goodnesse. Thus *Ancifus* hauing entred into frendship, and made a league of peace with thynhabitantes of *Caramairi*, which were before sore prouoked by other captaynes, he lanched from that lande, and directed his course to *Vraba* by the *Ilande Fortis*, hauing in his shippe a hundred and fyfte freshe men, whiche were substitute in the place of suche as were dead: also twelue Mares, and manye swine, and other beastes both males and females for encrease. Lykewyse, fyfte peeces of ordinaunce, with great multitude

of targettes, swoordes, sauelyngs, and suche other weapons for the warres, but all this with euil speede, and in an euil houre: for as they were euen now entryng into the hauen, the gouernour of the shyppe whiche sate at the helme, stroke the shyppe vpon the sandes, where it was so fast enclosed and beaten with the waues of the sea, that it opened in the myddest, and all lost that was therein, a thyng surely miserable to beholde: for of all the vyrtualles that they had, they saued only twelue barrells of meale, with a fewe cheeses, and a lytle bysket bread, for all the beastes were drowned, and they them selues escaped hardly and halfe naked, by helpe of the *Vigandine* and ship boate, caryng with them only a fewe weapons. Thus they fell from one calamitie into another, beyng now more carefull for theyr lyues then for golde. Yet beyng brought alyue and in health to that lande whiche they so greatly despyred, they coulde do no lesse then to prouide for the susteynyng of theyr bodies, because they coulde not lyue only by ayre: and whereas theyr owne fayled, they must needes lyue by other mens. Yet among these so many aduersities, one good chaunce offered it selfe vnto them: for they founde, not farre from the sea syde, a groue of *Date* trees, among the which, and also among the reeke or weedes of the marishes, they espyed a multitude of wyld bores, with whose fleshe they fed the selues wel certayne dayes. These they say to be lesse then ours, and with so short tayles, that they thought they had ben cut of. They differ also from ours in theyr feete: for theyr hinder feete are whole vndiuided, and also without any hoofe. But they affirme that they haue proued by experience, theyr fleshe to be of better taste and more wholsome then ours. During this time, they fed also of Dates, and the rootes of young *Date* trees, whiche they eate likewise in *Ciuite* and *Granata*, where they call them *Palmitos*, of y leaues wherof they make beescmes in *Rome*. Sometymes also they eate of the apples of that region, whiche haue the taste of pynes, and haue also stones in them, and are but lytle and of redde colour: I suppose them to be of that kinde, wherof I ate in the cite of *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, in the moneth of *Apryll*, the trees whereof, the *Iewes* that dwell there, beyng learned in the lawe of *Moses*, affirme to be the Cedars of *Libanus*, whiche beare olde frutes and newe all the yere,

*Ancifus* shyppe was lacke.

A groue of date trees.

Wyld bores.

Apples of a strange kynde.

Cedars of Libanus.

as

as doth the orange tree. These apples are good to be eaten, and haue a certayne sweetenesse myxte with a gentyll sharpnesse, as haue the fruites called *Sorbes*. Thinhabytantes plant these trees in theyr orchardes and gardens, and noy. he them with greate diligence as we do cherries, peaches, and quinces. This tree in leaues, heygth, and trunke, is very lyke vnto the tree that beareth the fruyte called *Zizipha*, which the Apothecaries call *Iuiuba*. But whereas now the wyld bores began to fayle them, they were agayne enforced to consulte and prouyde for the tyme to come: Whereuppon with theyr whole armye, they entered further into the land. The Canibales of this prouynce, are most expert archers. *Ancifus* had in his companye, a hundred men. They mette by the way with only thre men of thinhabytantes, naked, and armed with bowes & venomous arrowes, who without all feare, assayed our men sperecelly, wounded manye, and slue manye, and when they emptyed theyr quiers, fledde as swyftely as the wynde: For (as we haue saide) they are exceeding swyfte of foote by reason of theyr loose gooing from theyr chyldes age, they aspyre that they lette slyp no arrowe out of theyr bowes in vayne. Our men therfore returned the same way that they came, muche more vnsfortunate then they were before, and consulted among them selues to leaue the land, especialy because the inhabytantes had ouerthrowne the fortreffe which *Fogeda* buylded, and had burnt thyrtye houses of the byllage, as soone as *Pizarrus* and his company lefte of *Fogeda*, and forsaken the land. By this occasion therfore, being dyuen to seeke further, they had intelligence that the west syde of that goulfe of *Vraba*, was more fruitfull & better to inhabite. Wherefore, they sent the one halfe of theyr men thither with the bygandine, and left the other neere to the sea syde on the east part. This gulf, is fourteene myles in breadth, and howe muche the further it entereth into the fyrme lande, it is so much the narrower. Into the gulf of *Vraba*, there fall many riuers, but one (as they saye) more fortunate then the ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypt. This ryuer is called *Darien*, vpon the bankes whereof, being very fruitfull of trees and grasse, they entended to plante theyr newe colonye or habitation. But the inhabytantes marueyllyng at the bygandyne being bigger then theyr canoas, and specially at the sayles therof,

Men of desperate boldnesse.

The gulf of Vraba.

The great riuer of Darien.

therof, first sent away theyr chyldren and weakest sort of theyr people with theyr baggage and houthould stuffe, and assembled all suche togeather both men and women, as were meete for the warres. Thus beyng armed with weapons and desperate mindes, they stood in a redynesse to fyght, and tarped the comming of our men vpon a lytle hyll, as it were to take the aduantage of the ground: our men iudged them to be about foure hundred in number. Then *Ancifus* the captayne of our men, and Lieutenant in the steede of *Fogeda*, setting his men in order of battayle aray, and with his whole company kneeling on his knees, they all made humble prayers to GOD for the victorie, and a bowe to the image of the blessed virgin whiche is honoured in Ciuite, by the name of *Sancta Maria Antiqua*, promysing to sende her many golden gyftes, and a straunger of that countrey: also, to name the byllage *Sancta Maria Antiqua* after her name: lykwyse to erecte a temple called by the same name, or at the least to dedicate the king of that prouince his pallace to that vse, if it should please her to assist them in this dangerous enterprise. This done, al the souldiers toke an oth, that no man should turne his backe to his enemies. Then y captayne commaunding them to be in a redynesse with theyr targets and iauelyngs, and the trumpetter to blowe the battayle, they fiercely assayed theyr enemies with a larome: but the naked barbarians, not long able to abyde the force of our men, were put to flight, with theyr kyng and captayne *Cemaccus*. Our men entred into the byllage, where they founde plentie of meate, such as the people of the countrey vse, sufficient to asswage theyr present hunger, as bread made of rootes, with certayne fruites vnyke vnto ours, whiche they reserue for store, as we doo Chestnuttes. Of these people, the men are vtterly naked, but the women, from the navel downewarde are couered with a fyne cloth made of gossampine cotton. This region is vtterly without any sharpenesse of wynter: for the mouth of this ryuer of *Darien*, is onlye eyght degrees distaunt from the Equinoctiall lyne, so that the common sorte of our men, scarcely perceue any dyfference in length betweene the day and nyght all the whole yere: but because they are ignorant in astronomie, they can perceue no small dyfference. Therefore we neede not muche passe if the degree differ somewhat

The souldiers make an othe.

The barbarians are dyuen to flight.

The riuer of Darien, but vii. degrees from the Equinoctiall lyne.

what from theyr opinion, forasmuche as the dyfference can not be great. The day after that they aryued at the lande, they sayled along by the ryuer, where they founde a great thicket of reedes, continyng for the space of a myle in length, supposing (as it chaunced in deede) that the borderers thereabout whiche had fled, had epyther lye lurking there, or els to haue hid theyr stuffe among those reedes: Whereupon, armyng them selues with theyr targets, for feare of the people lying in ambushe, they searched the thicket diligently, and founde it without men, but replenyshed with housholde stuffe and golde. They founde also a great multitude of shetes, made of the silke or cotton of the gossampine tree: lykwyse diuers kyndes of vessels & tooles made of wood, and many of earth: also many best plates of golde, and ouches wrought after theyr manner, to the summe of a hundred & two pound weight: for they also take pleasure in the beautie of golde, and worke it very artificially, although it be not the pryce of thyngs among them as with vs. They haue it out of other regions, for exchaunge of such thynges as theyr countrey bringeth forth: for such regions as haue plentie of bread and gossampine, lacke golde, and suche as bypnyng forth golde, are for the most part rough with mountaynes and rockes, and therefore barren: and thus they exercise marchandies without the vse of money. Reioysyng therefore with double gladnesse, as wel in that they sawe great lykenesse of golde, as also that fortune had offered them so fayre and fruiteful a countrey, they sent for theyr felowes whom they had left before in the East syde of the gulfe of Vraba. Yet some say, that the ayre is there but wholsome, because that part of the region lyeth in a lowe valley, enuironed with mountaynes and maryshes.

Golde founde in a thicket of reedes.

Best plates of golde.

The golden regions are for the most part barren.

The seconde booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



Haue described to your holynesse where Fogeda with his companie (to whom the large tractes of Vraba was assigned to inhabite) entended to fasten theyr foote. Let vs now therefore leaue them of Vraba for a whyle, and returne agayne to Nicuesa, to whom

who in the gouernaunce and Lieutenanthishipp of the moste large prouince of Beragua (beyng the West syde of the gulfe of Vraba) was appoynted. We haue declared howe Nicuesa, departyng with one Carauel and two Brigandines, from Vraba the iurisdiction of his frend & companion Fogeda, directed his course Westwarde to Beragua, leauing the bygger shippes somewhat behind hym, to folowe hym a farre of, but he tooke this deuice in an euyl houre, for he both lost his felowes in the nyght, and went past the mouth of the riuer Beragua, whiche he cheefely sought. One Lupus Olanus a Cantabrian, and gouernour of one of the great shippes, had the conduct of one of the Brigandines: he comyng behynde, learned of the inhabitants, whiche was the way Eastwarde to the gulfe of Beragua, ouerpasse and left behynde of Nicuesa. Olanus therfore directyng his course toward the East, met with the other Brigandine, which had also wandered out of the way by reason of the darkenes of the night. The gouernour of this Brigandine, was one Petrus de Vmbria. Thus both beyng glad of theyr meetyng, they consulted what was best to be done, and whiche way they coulde coniecture theyr gouernour had taken his voyage. After deliberation, they iudged that Nicuesa coulde no more lacke some to put hym in remembrance of Beragua, then they them selues were mindful hereof, hoppyng also to fynde hym there. They sayled therefore toward Beragua, where they founde within xvi. myles distant, a ryuer whiche Colonus named Lagartos, because it nouryssheth great Lysards, whiche in the Spanishe tongue are called Lagartos. These Lysards are hurtful both vnto man and beast, and in shape much like vnto the Crocodiles of the ryuer Nilus in Egypt. In this ryuer they founde theyr companions and felowes of theyr errour, lying at anker with the great shippes, whiche folowed behynde by the gouernours commaundement. Here the whole assemblie beyng careful and disquieted by reason of the gouernours errour, after consultation, by the aduice of the captaynes of the Brigandines, who had raled neere vnto the coastes of Beragua, they sayled directly thither. Beragua, in the language of the inhabitants of the same prouince, is as much to say, as the golden riuer. The region it selfe is also called by the same name, takyng name of the ryuer. In the mouth of this ryuer, the greatest vesselles call

Lupus Olanus

Petrus de Vmbria.

The ryuer Lagartos.

The golden ryuer of Beragua.



The enterpryse  
& death of Petrus de Umbria

The dangerous place of Scylla in the sea of Sicilie.

cast anchor, and conueyghed all theyr victuals and other necessities to lande with theyr shyp boates, and elected *Lupus Olanus* to be theyr gouernour in steede of *Nicuesa* whom they had losse. By chaduyce therfore of *Olanus* and the other vnder capytaines, that all hope of departure myght be taken from the souldyers which they had now brought thither, and to make them the more wylling to inhabite that lande, they vterly forsooke and caste of those shippes beyng nowe rotten for age, and suffered them to be shaken and brooled of the furies of the sea. Yet of theyr soundeste planks, wyth other netwe, made of the trees of that Region (which they saue to be exceeding bigge and hygh) they framed a new carauell shoptelye after, whiche they myght vse to serue for theyr necessitie. But *Beragua* was founde by the unfortunate desceyn of *Petrus de Umbria*. For hee, beyng a man of prompt wit and apt forwardnesse to attempte thinges (in which some tyme fortune will beare a stroke notwithstanding our prouidence) tooke vppon hym chaduenture to searche the shore, to thintent to fynde a way for his felowes where they myght beste come aland. For this purpose, he chose hym .xii. maryners, and went aboord the shyp boate whiche serued the greatest shippes. The flowping of the sea, raged and rozed there, with a horryble whurling, as we reade of the dangerous place of *Scylla* in the sea of *Sicilie*, by reason of the houghe & ragged rockes reaching into the sea, from whiche the waues rebounding with vpolence, make a great noyse and roughnesse on the water, which roughnesse or reflowing, the Spaniardes call *Refacca*. In these dangers wretched *Umbria* wresteled a while, but in short space, a waue of the sea almoste as bygge as a mountayne, reboundyng from the rockes, ouerwhelmed the boate, and deuoured the same with the men, euen in the sight of their felowes: So that of them all, only one escaped by reason he was expert in swimming. For getting holde of the corner of a rocke, and susteyning the rage of the sea vntyll the next day when it waned caulme, and the shore was vnye by the fall of the water, he escaped and resorted to his companie. But *Umbria* with the other eleuen, were vterly caste awaye. The resydue of the companie, durst not committe them selues to the shyppe boates, but went alande with theyr byggantines. There remayning a fewe dayes, and saylyng along

along by the ryuer, they founde certayne byllages of the inhabitants, which they call *Mumu*. Here they began to builde a fortress, and to sowe seedes after the manner of theyr countrey, in a certayne vale of fruiteful grounde, because in other places the region is barren. As these thyngs were thus doing in *Beragua*, one of theyr companie standing vpon the top of a high rocke of especiall, and lysterlyng his eyes toward the West, began to crye, *Lynnen sayles, lynnen sayles*. And the neerer it drew toward hym, he perceiued it to be a shyp boate, commyng with a lytle sayle: yet receiued they it with muche reioycing, for it was the fysher boate of *Nicuesa* his Carauel, and of capacitie to cary only fyue men, and had nowe but thre in it, whiche had stolne it from *Nicuesa*, because he refused to geue credite to them that he had passed *Beragua*, and left it behinde him Eastwarde. For they seeyng *Nicuesa* and his felowes to consume daylye by famine, thought that they would prouue fortune with that boate, if theyr chaunce myght be to fynde *Beragua*, as in deede it was. Debatyng therefore with theyr felowes of these matters, they declared how *Nicuesa* erred and lost the Carauel by tempest, and that he was nowe wanderyng among the maryshes of vnknowen coastes, full of miserie and in extreme penurie of all thynges, hauyng nowe lyued for the space of threescore and tenne dayes, only with herbes and rootes, & seldome with fruites of the countrey, contented to drynke water, and yet that oftentymes saylyng, because he was instant to trauallye Westwarde by foote, supposyng by that meanes to come to *Beragua*. *Colonus* the fyrrst fynder of this mayne lande, had coasted along by this tracte, and named it *Gracia Dei*, but the inhabitants cal it *Cerabaro*. Through this region, there runneth a riuer, whiche our men named *Sancti Matthei*, distant from the West syde of *Beragua*, about an hundred and thyrtye myles. Here I let passe the name of this riuer, and of manye other places by the names whiche the inhabitants vse, because our men are ignoraunt thereof. Thus *Lupus Olanus* the conductour of one of the shypes of *Nicuesa*, and nowe also vice Lieutenant in his steede, after that he had receyued this information of the Maryners, sent thither a Brigandine vnder theyr guydyng. These Maryners therefore, whiche came in the fysher boate, founde *Nicuesa*, and brought hym to the place

The miserable  
case of Nicuesa

The riuer of  
S. Matthei.

The rigd  
cousinelle of  
Aicuesla.

Some waxeth  
rype euerpe  
fourth moneth

The commen-  
dation of a  
young man  
brought vp  
with Colonius.  
Portus Bellus.

Weakenesse of  
hunger.

place where *Olanus* lay, whom at his conning he cast in prison, and accused hym of treason, because he vsurped the aucthoritie of the Lieutenants, and that for the desyre he had to beare rule and be in aucthoritie, he tooke no care of his errours: also that he behaued him selfe negligently, demaunding furthermoze of hym, what was the cause of his so long delay. Lykewys he spake to al the vnder officers sharply, and with a troubled mind, and with in fewe dayes after, commaunded them to trusse vp theyr packes, and make them redy to depart. They despyed him to quyet hym selfe, and to forbear them a whyle, vntyl they had reaped the coyne that they had sowed, whiche woulde shortly be rype: for all kynde of coyne waxeth rype there euerie fourth moneth after it is sowed. But he bitterly denyed to tarpe anye whyle, but that he woulde forthwith depart from that vnforsunate lande, and plucked vp by the rootes all that euer was brought into the gulfes of *Beragua*, and commaunded them to direct theyr course towarde the East. After they had sayled about the space of sixtene myles, a certayne young man, whose name was *Gregorie*, a *Venus* boyme, and of a chyld brought vp with *Colonus*, called to remembraunce that there was a haven not farre from thence: and to prooue his sayinges true, he gaue his felowes these tokens, that is, that they shoulde fynde vpon the shore, an anker of a lost shyppe halfe couered with sande, and vnder a tree next vnto the haven a spring of cleare water. They came to the lande, founde the anker and the spring, and commended the wytte and memorie of the young man, that he onely among manye of the *Barpyers* which had searched those coastes with *Colonus*, bore the thyng so well in mynde. This haven *Colonus* called *Portus Bellus*. Where as in this voyage for lacke of vtualles, they were sometymes enforced to goe alande, they were euyl entreated of thynhabitantes: by reason whereof, theyr strengthes were so weakened with hunger, that they were not able to keepe warre against naked men, or scarcely to beare their harness on theyr backes: and therefore our men lost twentie of theyr companions, which were slayne with venemous arrowes. They consulted to leaue the one halfe of theyr felowes in the haven of *Portus Bellus*, & the other part *Nicuesa* toke with hym towarde the East, where about twentie and epyght myles from

Por-

*Portus Bellus*, he intended to buylde a forresse harde by the sea syde, vpon the poynt or cape, whiche in tyme past *Colonus* named *Marmor*, but they were so feeble by reason of long hunger, that theyr strength serued them not to susteyne suche labour, yet he erected a lytle towre, able to resyst the fyrst assaulte of the inhabitants: this towre he called *Nomen Dei*. From the tyme that he left *Beragua*, what in the iourney among the sandie playnes, then also for hunger while he buildd the towre, of the fewe whiche remayned alpye, he lost two hundred. And thus by litle and lytle, the multitude of seuen hundred, fourescore, and fyue men, was brought now to scarcely one hundred. Whyle *Nicuesa* lyued with these fewe miserable men, there arose a contention among them of *Vraba*, as concerning the Lieutenants shyppe: for one *Vascus Nummez*, by the iudgement of al men, trustyng moze to his strength then wit, styred by certayne light felowes agaynst *Ancifus*, saying that *Ancifus* had not the kyngs letters patentes for that office, and that it was not sufficient that he was aucthorised by *Fogeda*, and therefore forbode that he shoulde execute the office of the Lieutenants shyp, and wylled them to choose certayne of theyr owne companye, by whose comfayle and aucthoritie they myght be gouerned. Thus being diuided into factions, by reason that *Fogeda* theyr captayne came not agayne, whom they supposed to be nowe dead of his venemous wound, they contended whether it were best to substitute *Nicuesa* in his place. The wysest sort, suche as were famillier with *Nicuesa*, & could not beare the insolencie of *Vascus Nummez*, thought it good that *Nicuesa* shoulde be sought out throughtout all those coastes: for they had knowledge that he departed from *Beragua*, because of the barrennesse of the grounde, and that by the example of *Ancifus*, and suche other as had made shypwacke, it were possible that he myght wander in some secreete place, and that they coulde not be quiet in theyr myndes, vntyl they knewe the certayntie whether he with his felowes were alieue or dead. But *Vascus Nummez*, fearyng lest at the connyng of *Nicuesa*, he shoulde not be had in aucthoritie among his felowes, sayd they were mad men to thynke that *Nicuesa* lyued, and although he were alpye, yet that they had no neede of his helpe: for he auouched that there was none of his felowes, that were not

Cape Mar-  
mor.

Nomen Dei.

It ii

as

The navigati-  
on of Roderi-  
cus Colmena-  
ris.

An exceeding  
high mount-  
ayne covered  
with snowe.

Apparelled  
men.

as meete to rule as *Nicuesa*. Whyle they were thus reasonyng to and fro, one *Rodericus Colmenaris* arpyed in those coastes with two great shypes, haupyng in them threescore freshe men, with great plentie of vyttualles and apparell. Of the navigation of this *Colmenaris*, I entend to speake somewhat more. He therfore departed from the hauen of *Hispaniola*, called *Beata* (where they prepare and furnyshe them selues whiche make any voyage into these landes) about the Ides of October, in the yeere. 1510. and landed the .ix. of Nouember in a region in the large prouince of *Paria*, founde by *Colonus* betwene the hauen *Carthago*, and the region of *Cuchibachoa*. In this voyage, what by the roughnesse of the sea, and fiercenesse of the barbarians, he suffered many incommodities: for when his freshe water fayled, he sayled to the mouth of a certayne riuer which the inhabitantes cal *Gaira*, beyng apt to receiue shippes. This riuer had his course from the toppe of an exceeding high mountayne couered with snowe, hygher then the which, al the companions of this captayne *Rodericus* say, that they neuer saw: And that by good reason, yf it were couered with snowe in that region, which is not past ten degrees distant from the *Equinoctial* lyne. As they began to draw water out of the shyp boate, a certayne kyng made towarde them, apparelled with vestures of gossampine cotton, haupyng twentie noble men in his company apparelled also: which thyng seemed straunge to our men, and not seene before in those parties. The kynges apparell hong loose from his shoulders to his elbowes, and from the gyrdle downewarde, it was much lyke a womans kytte, reaching euen to his heeles. As he drew neere towarde our men, he seemed frendly to admonyshe them to take none of the water of that ryuer, affyrmyng it to be unwholsome for men, and shewed them that not farre from thence, there was a ryuer, of good water. They came to the ryuer, and endeuouryng to come neere the shore, they were duiuen backe by tempest. Also the burbuling of the sand, declared the sea to be but shalow there. They were therefore enforced to returne to the fyrste ryuer where they myght safely cast anker. This kyng layde wayte for our men: for as they were fyllyng the barrells, he set on them with about seuen hundred men (as our men iudged) armed after the manner, although they were naked:

for

for only the kyng and his noble men were apparelled. They tooke away the shypboate, and broke it in manner to chips: so fiercely assaulyng our men with the venemous arrowes, that they slue of them fourtie and seuen, before they coulde couer them selues with their targets. For that popson is of such force, that albeit the woundes were not great, yet they dyed therof immediately, for they yet knewe no remedie agaynst this kynde of popson, as they after learned of the inhabitauntes of *Hispaniola*: for this Islande byngeth forth an hearbe which quencheth and mortifieth the violent popson of the hearbe, wherewith they are rowes are infected, so that it be ministred in tyme. Yet of our companie whiche went for water, seuen escaped that conspycte, and hydde them selues in a hollowe tree, luryng there vntyll nyght, yet escaped they not the handes of the enemies: for the shyppe departed from thence in the nyght season, and left them there, supposyng that they had ben slayne. Thus by manie suche perils and daungers (which I lyghly ouerpasse, because I wyl not be tedious to your holynesse) he arpyed at the length at the hauen of *Vraba*, and cast anker at the East syde thereof, from whence not long before, our men departed to the West syde, by reason of the barremesse of that soyle. When he had continued a whyle in the hauen, and sawe no man stirryng, marueled at the scilence of the places (for he suppoled there to haue found his felowes) he could not coniecture what this should meane: and thereupon began to suspect that eyther they were dead, or that they had changed the place of the habitation. To knowe the certayntie hereof, he commaunded all the great ordinaunce, and other small gunnes whiche he had in his shippes, to be charged, and fyers to be made in the night vpon the toppes of the rockes. Thus the fyers beyng kyndled, he commaunded all the gunnes to be shot of at one instant, by the horrible noyse whereof, the gulf of *Vraba* was shaken, although it were .xxiii. myles distant, for so bryde is the gulf. This noyse was hearde of the felowes in *Dariena*, and they aunswared them agayne with mutual fyers. Wherefore, by the folowynge of these fyers, *Colmenaris* brought his shippes to the West syde. Here those wretched and miserable men of *Dariena*, whiche nowe through sampe and feeblenesse, helde the weerie soules in the teeth,

R iii

rede

Spanyarde  
slayne with  
venemous  
arrowes.

A remedie  
agaynst  
venemous  
arrowes.

The hauen  
of  
Vraba.

redy to depart from theyr bodies, by reason of the calamities whiche beset vnto them after *Ancifus* shipwracke, lifting vp their handes to heauen, with the teares running downe theyr cheekes both for ioy and sorow, embraced *Rodericus* and his felowes with such kinde of reioycyng, as theyr present necessitie seemed to require: for whereas they were before his commyng, without vittuals, and almost naked, he brought them abundance of meate, drinke, and apparel. It resteth now (most holy facher) to declare what came of the dissention among them of *Vraba*, as concerning the gouernance after the losse of theyr captaynes.

The thirde booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



**A**t the cheefe officers in *Beragua*, and suche as were most politike in counsaile, determined that *Nicuesa* should be sought out, yf by any meanes he coulde be founde. Whereupon they tooke from *Ancifus* the gouernour, refusing the comming of *Nicuesa*, a Brigandine whiche he made of his owne charges: and agreed, agaynst both the wyl of *Ancifus*, and the maister of fence *Vaschus Nunnez*, that *Nicuesa* should be sought forth to take away the stryfe as touching the gouernment. They elected therefore *Colmenaris* (of whom we spake before) to take this matter in hande, willing him to make diligent searche for *Nicuesa* in those coastes where they supposed he erred: for they hearde that he had forsaken *Beragua*, the region of an vnfruitfull ground. They gaue him therefore commaundement to bring *Nicuesa* with hym, and further to declare vnto him that he should do right good seruice to come thither, in takyng away the occasion of theyr seditions. *Colmenaris* tooke the thyng vpon hym the more gladly, because *Nicuesa* was his very frende, supposyng his commyng with vittualles shoulde be no lesse thankfull to *Nicuesa* and his company, then it was to them of *Vraba*. Furnishyng therefore one of his owne shippes which he brought with hym, and also the Brigandine taken from *Ancifus*, he frapghted the

the same with part of the vittuals and other necessities which he brought with hym before from *Hispaniola* to *Vraba*. Thus coursyng along by al the coastes and gulfes neere thereabout, at the length, at the poynt called *Marmor*, he founde *Nicuesa*, of al lyuyng men most infortunate, in manner dyed vp with extreme hunger, fylthy and horrible to beholde, with only threescore men in his company, left aliuie of seuen hundred. They all seemed to him so miserable, that he no lesse lamented theyr case, then yf he had found them dead. But *Colmenaris* comforted his frende *Nicuesa*, and embracyng hym with teares and cheareful wordes, releued his spirites, and further encouraged hym with great hope of better fortune, declaring also that his commyng was looked for, and greatlye desyred of all the good men of *Vraba*, for that they hoped that by his aucthoritie, theyr discorde and contention shoulde be finished. *Nicuesa* thanked his frende *Colmenaris* after suche sorte as his calamitie required. Thus they tooke shyp together, and sailed directly to *Vraba*. But so variable and vncoustant is the nature of man, that he soone groweth out of vse, becominge insolent and vniyndfull of benefites after to muche felicitie: for *Nicuesa* after thus many teares and weepynge, after diuers bewaplynges of his infortunate destenye, after so many thankesgeuyng, yea after that he had fallen downe to the ground and kysed the feete of *Colmenaris* his sautour, he began to quarel with hym before he came yet at *Vraba*, repprouyng hym & them all for the alteration of the state of thynges in *Vraba*, and for the gathering of golde, assymyng that none of them ought to haue layde hande of anye golde without the aduice of hym or *Fogeda* his companion. When these sayynges and suche lyke, came to the eares of them of *Vraba*, they so styred vp the myndes of *Ancifus* Lieutenant for *Fogeda*, and also of *Vaschus Nunnez* of the contrary part, agaynst *Nicuesa*, that shortly after his aryual with his threescore men, they commaunded hym with threathyng to depart from thence: but this pleased not the better sort. Yet fearyng lest tumult shoulde be among the people, whom *Vaschus Nunnez* had styred to factions, the best part was fayne to geue place to y greatest. This wretched man therefore *Nicuesa* thus drowned in miseries, was thrust into the Brigandine whiche he him selfe brought, and with him only seuentene men, of

*Nicuesa* is founde in a miserable case.

Insolencie after muche felicitie.

his theescope whiche remayned alpye. He tooke shippe in the Calendes of Marche, in the yere. 1511. intendyng to goe to Hispaniola to complayne of the rathnesse of *Vaschus Nunnez*, and of the violence done to hym by *Ancifus*: But he entred into the *Brigandine* in an vnfortunate houre, for he was neuer seene after. They suppose that the *Brigandine* was drowned with all the men therein. And thus unhappie *Nicuesa* falling headlong out of one misery into another, ended his life more miserably then he lyued. *Nicuesa* being thus bylely reiecte, and theyr vyttuals consumed which *Colmenaris* brought them, falling in maner mad for hunger, they were enforced lyke rauening woodues seekyng theyr pray, to invade suche as dwelt about theyr contryes. *Vaschus Nunnez* therfore, their new captaine of their owne election, assemblyng togeather a hundred and thirtie men, and setting them in order of battayle after his swoordplayers fashon, pushed vp with pryde, placed his souldiers as pleased hym, in the forewarde and rerewarde, and some, as partizens, about his owne person. Thus assoziatyng with hym *Colmenaris*, he went to spoyle the kynges which were borderers therabout, and came fyrst to a region about that coast called *Coiba* (whereof we made mention before) imperiously and with cruell countenance commaundyng the kyng of the region, whose name was *Careta* (of whom they were neuer troubled as often as they passed by his dominions) to geue them vyttualles. But *Careta* denyed that he coulde geue them any at that tyme, alleagyng that he had oftentimes ayded the Christians as they passed by those coastes, by reason whereof, his store was now consumed: also that by the meanes of the continuall warre whiche he kept euer from his chyldeys age with a kyng whose name was *Poncha*, borderyng vpon his dominion, he and his familie were in great scarcenelle of all thynges. But *Vaschus* woulde admyt none of these excuses, and thereupon tooke *Careta* prisoner, spoiled his byllage, and brought him bounde with his two wyues and chyldren, and all his familie to *Dariena*. With this kyng *Careta*, they found three of the felowes of *Nicuesa*, the which whē *Nicuesa* passed by those coastes to seeke *Beragua*, fearing punishment for theyr euil desertes, stole away from the shippes lying at anker: And when the nauie departed, committed them selues to the mercie of *Careta*, who

The death of *Nicuesa*.

Famine enforced them to fall to spoyling. *Careta* kyng of *Coiba*.

Kyng *Careta* is taken and spoiled.

who enterteyned them very frendly. They had now ben there eightene monethes, and were therefore as bitterly naked as the people of the countrey. Duryng this tyme, the meate of thynhabitanes seemed vnto them delicate dishes & princely fare, especially because they enioyed the same without any stryfe for mine and thynne, whiche two thynges mooue and enforce men to suche harde thynges and miseries, that in lyuyng they seeme not to lyue. Yet desyred they to returne to theyr olde cares, of suche force is education and naturall affection towarde them with whom we haue ben brought vp. The vyttuals which *Vaschus* brought from the byllage of *Careta*, to his felowes left in *Dariena*, was rather somewhat to asswage theyr present hunger, then utterly to take away theyr necessitie. But as touching *Ancifus*, beyng Lieutenannt for *Fogeda*, whether it were before these thynges, or after, I knowe not: but this I am sure of, that after the reiecyng of *Nicuesa*, many occasions were sought against *Ancifus* by *Vaschus* and his factionaries. Howsoever it was, *Ancifus* was taken, and cast in pryson, and his goodes confiscate: the cause hereof was (as *Vaschus* alleaged) that *Ancifus* had his commission of the Lieutenanntshyp of *Fogeda* only, whom they said to be now dead, and not of the kyng, saying that he woulde not obey anye man that was not put in offyce by the kyng him selfe by his letters patentes. Yet at the request of the grauest sort, he was somewhat pacified, and dealt more gentelly with hym, haupyng some compassion on his calamities, and thereupon commaunded him to be loosed. *Ancifus* beyng at libertie, tooke shyppe to depart from thence to *Hispaniola*: but before he had hoyled vp his sayle, at the wisest sort resorted to him, humblye desyryng hym to returne agayne, promysyng that they woulde doo their diligence, that *Vaschus* being reconciled, he myght be restored to his full aucthoritie of the Lieutenanntshyp: but *Ancifus* refused to consent to theyr request, and so departed. Yet some there were that murmured that God and his angels shewed this reuenge vpon *Ancifus*, because *Nicuesa* was reiecte through his counsaile. Howe so euer it be, the searchers of the newe landes fall headlong into ruine by theyr owne follie, consuming them selues with ciuile discorde, not weighing so great a matter, nor employing theyr best endeuour about the same, as the woorthynesse

Mine & thine the seedes of all mischance.

*Ancifus*, Lieutenant for *Fogeda*, is cast in pryson.

*Ancifus* taketh his voyage to *Hispaniola*.

The reuenge of God.

The inconueniencies of discorde.



nesse of the thyng required. In this meane tyme, they determined all with one agreement, to sende messengers into Hispaniola to the pong Admiral and viceroy, sonne and heyre to *Christophorus Colon* the synder of these landes, and to the other gouernours of the Islande (from whom the newe landes receiue theyr ayde and lawes) to signifie vnto them what state they stood in, and in what necessitie they liued, also what they had founde, and in what hope they were of greater thyngs, if they were furnished with plentie of vyttualles and other necessaries. For this purpose they elected, at the assignement of *Vaschus*, one *Valdiuia*, being one of his faction, and instructed by hym agaynst *Ancisus*, and to be assystant with hym, they appoynted one *Zamudius* a *Cantabrian*, so that commaundement was geuen to *Valdiuia* to returne from Hispaniola with vittuals, & *Zamudius* was appoynted to take his voyage into Spayne to the kyng. They toke ship both togeather with *Ancisus*, hauyng in mind to certifie the king howe things were handled there, much otherwile then *Zamudius* information. I mee selfe spake with both *Ancisus* & *Zamudius* at their comming to the court. Whyle they were occupied about these matters, those wretched men of *Dariena* looted *Careta* the king of *Coiba*, vpon condition that he shoulde ayde them in their warres agaynst his enemye and theys, kyng *Poncha*, bordering vpon his dominions. *Careta* made a league with them, promising that as they passed by his kingdom, he woulde geue them all things necessarie, & meete them with an armie of men, to goe forward with them to the battaile against *Poncha*. Theyr weapons are neyther bowes nor benomed arrowes, as we sayde thynhabitauntes to haue, whiche dwel eastward beyonde the gulf. They fyght therefore at hande with long swordes (whiche they call *Macanas*) made of wood, because they haue no Iron. They vse also long staues lyke sauelyns, hardened at the endes with fyre, or typt with bone, also certayne sponges and darters. Thus after the league made with *Careta*, both he and our men had certayne dayes appoynted them to tyll theyr grounde and sowe theyr seedes. This done, by the ayde of *Careta*, and by his conduction, they marched toward the pallace of *Poncha*, who fled at theyr comming. They spoyled his byllage, and mitigated theyr hunger with such vyttuals as they founde there: yet coulde they not

King Poncha.

Swordes of wood.

Kyng Careta conspireth with the Spaniards agaynst kyng Poncha.

not helpe theyr felowes therewith, by reason of the farre distance of the place, although they had great plentie: for the byllage of *Poncha* was more then a hundred myles distant from *Dariena*, whereas was also none other remedie, but that the same shoulde haue ben carped on mens backes to the sea syde, being farre off, where they left theyr shippes in the whiche they came to the byllage of *Careta*. Here they founde certayne poundes weight of gold, grauen & wrought into sundry ouches. After the sackynge of this byllage, they reioyced toward the ships, intending to leaue the kynges of the inlande vntouched at this tyme, and to inuade only them which dwelt by the sea coastes. Not farre from *Coiba*, in the same tracte, there is a region named *Comogra*, and the king thereof called *Comogrus*, after the same name. To this kyng they came fyrst next after the subuersion of *Poncha*, and founde his pallace situate in a fruitfull playne of .xii. leagues in breadth, at the rootes of the further syde of y next mountaynes. *Comogrus* had in his courte a certaine noble man of neere consanguinite to kyng *Careta*, whiche had fled to *Comogrus* by reason of certayne dissentions which was betwene *Careta* & hym, these noble men, they cal *Iura*. This *Iura* therefore of *Coiba*, met our men by the way, and conciled *Comogrus* to them, because he was wel known to our men, from the tyme that *Nicuesa* passed fyrst by those coastes. Our men therfore went quietly to the pallace of *Comogrus*, being distant from *Dariena* thirtie leagues by a plaine way about the mountaynes. This kyng *Comogrus* had seuen sonnes, young men, of comely fourme and stature, which he had by sundry wyues. His pallace was framed of postes or proppes made of trees fastened together after a strange sort, and of so strong building, that it is of no lesse strength then walles of stone. They whiche measured the length of the floore thereof, founde it to be a hundred and fyfte paces, and in breadth, fourescore foote, being roofed and paued with marueylous arte. They founde his storehouse furnished with abundance of delicate vittuals, after the manner of theyr countrey, and his wyne seller replenished with great bestelles of earth and also of wood, fylled with their kinde of wine and syder, for they haue no grapes: but lyke as they make theyr bread of those three kindes of rootes called *Iucca*, *Agis*, and *Maizium* (whereof we spake in the fyrst Decade) so make

The region of Comogra, distant from Dariena, .xxx. leagues.

Kyng Comogrus.

The kynges pallace.

Wine &amp; syder.

make they they? wyne of the frutes of Date trees, and Syder of other frutes and seedes, as do the Almaynes, Fleminges, Englyshe men, & our Spanyardes which inhabite the mountaynes, as the *Vascons* and *Asturians*: lyke wyse in the mountaynes of the Alpes, the *Noricians*, *Sweuians*, and *Heluecians*, make certayne drynkes of barley, wheate, hoppes, and apples. They say also that with *Comogrus* they drunke wines of sundry tastes, both whyte and blacke. But nowe you shal heare of a thyng more monstrous to beholde. Enteryng therefore into the inner partes of the pallace, they were brought into a chamber hanged about with the carkasses of men, tyed with ropes of gossampine cotton. Beyng demaunded what they meant by that superstition, they answered that those were the carkasses of the father, graundfather, & great graundfather, with other the auncetours of they? kyng *Comogrus*, declaryng that they had the same in great reuerence, and that they tooke it for a godly thyng to honour them religiously, and therefore apparelled euery of the same sumptuously with gold and precious stones, accordyng vnto they? estate. After this sorte dyd the antiquitie honour they? *Penates*, whiche they thought had the gouernance of they? lyues. Howe they dyde these carkasses vpon certayne instrumentes made of wood, lyke vnto hurdells, with a soft fyre vnder the same, so that only the skynne remaineth to hold the bones togeather, we haue described in the former Decade. Of *Comogrus* his seuen sonnes, the eldest had an excellent natural wyl. He therefore thought it good to flatter and please this wanderyng kinde of men (our men I meane) liuing only by thiftes and spoyles, lest being offended, and seeking occasions against him & his familie, they should handle hym as they dyd other which sought no meanes how to gratifie them: Wherefore, he gaue *Vaschus* and *Colmenaris* foure thousande ounces of golde artificially wrought, and also fiftie slaues, whiche he had taken in the warres: for suche, eyther they sell for exchaunge of other thynges, or otherwyse vse them as them listeth, for they haue not the vse of money. This golde with as muche more which they had in another place, our men weighed in the porche of *Comogrus* his palace, to separate the fift parte thereof, whiche portyon is due to the kynges *Erchequer*: for it is decreed, that the fyft part of both golde, pearles, and

Blacke wine.

The carkasses of men dyed.

The distributi-  
on of golde.

precious stones, shoulde be assigned to the kynges treasurers, and the residue to be diuided among them selues by composition. Here as brabbling and contention arose among our men about the diuidyng of golde, this eldest sonne of kyng *Comogrus* beyng present, whom we praysed for his wysedome, commyng somewhat with an angry countenance towarde hym whiche helde the ballaunces, he stroke them with his fyfte, and scatterred all the golde that was therein about the porche, sharpe lyce rebukynge them with woordes in this effecte. What is the matter, you Chyristian men, that you so greatly esteeme so lytle portyon of golde more then your owne quietnesse, whiche neuerthelesse you entende to deface from these fayre ouches, and to melt the same into a rude masse. If your hunger of golde be so insatiable, that onely for the desyre you haue thereto, you disquiete so manye nations, and you your selues also susteyne so many calamities and incommodities, lyuyng lyke banished men out of your owne countrey, I wyl shewe you a region flowyng with golde, where you may satisfie your rauenyng appetites: But you must attempt the thing with a greater power, for it standeth you in hand by force of armes to ouercome kings of great puissaunce, and rigorous defendours of they? dominions. For beynde other, the great kyng *Tumanama* wyl come soorth agaynst you, whose kyngdome is most riche with golde, and distant from hence only fyre sunnes, that is, fyre dayes: for they number the dayes by the sunne. Furthermore, or euer you can come thither, you muste passe ouer the mountaynes inhabited of the cruell *Canibales*, a fierce kynde of men, deuourers of mans fleshe, lyuyng without lawes, wanderyng, and without Empire: for they also beyng desyrous of golde, haue subdued them vnder they? dominion, whiche before inhabited the golde mynes of the mountaynes, and vse them lyke bondemen, vsyng they? labour in dyggyng and woorkyng their golde in plates and sundry images, lyke vnto these whiche you see here: for we do no more esteeme rude golde unwrought, then we do cloddes of earth, before it be fourmed by the hande of the woorkeman to the similitude eyther of some bestell necessarye for our vse, or some ouch beautiful to be worne. These thynges doo we receyue of them for exchaunge of other of our

Young *Comogrus* his oration.

The hunger of golde.

A region flowyng with golde.

Kyng *Tumanama*.

Canibales.

The golde mynes of the mountaynes.

Unwrought golde not esteemed.

our thynges, as of pysoners taken in warre, whiche they buye to eate, or for sheetes and other thynges parteynyng to the furniture of houtholde, suche as they lacke whiche inhabite the mountaynes, and especially for vittualles, whereof they stande in great neede, by reason of the barrennes of the mountaynes. This iourney therefore must be made open by force of men, and when you are passyng ouer these mountaynes (poyntyng with his finger towarde the south mountaynes) you shal see another sea, where they sayle with shippes as bygge as yours (meanyng the Carauels) vsyng both sayles and ores as you doo, although the men be naked as we are: all the way that the water runneth from the mountaynes, and al that syde lying towarde the South, byngeth forth golde abundantly. As he sayd these woordes, he poynted to the vesselles in whiche they vse to serue theyr meate, affyrmyng that kyng *Tumanama*, and all the other kyngs beyond the mountaynes, had such & al other theyr household stuffe of golde, and that there was no lesse plentie of gold among those people of the South, then of Iron with vs: for he knewe by relation of our men, whereof our swoordes and other weapons were made. Our captaynes marueplyng at the oration of the naked young man (for they had for interpreters those thre men whiche had ben before a peere and a halfe conuersant in the court of kyng *Careta*) pondered in theyr mindes, and earnestly consydered his saynges, so that his rashnesse in scatteryng the golde out of the ballaunces, they turned to myrth and brabantie, commendyng his dooynge and sayng therein. Then they asked hym frendly, vpon what certayne knowledge he spake those thynges, or what he thought best herein to be done, yf they should bring a greater supple of men? To this young *Comogrus*, stayng a whyle with him selfe, as it were an Orator preparing hym selfe to speake of some graue matter, and disposyng his body to a iesture meete to perswade, spake thus in his mother tongue, Geue eare vnto me, O you Christians. Albeit that the greddie hunger of golde hath not yet vered vs naked men, yet do we destroy one another by reason of ambition and desyre to rule. Hereof spryngeth mortal hatred among vs, and hereof cometh our destruction. Our predecessours kept warres, and so dyd *Comogrus* my father, with princes beyng borderers about him.

Abundance of golde.

Houtholde stuffe of golde.

Naked people contented with ambition.

In the whiche warres, as we haue ouercome, so haue we ben ouercome, as doth appeare by the number of bondmen among vs, whiche we toke by the ouerthrowe of our enemies, of the whiche I haue geuen you sytie. Lykewyle at another tyme, our aduersaries hauyng the upper hande agaynst vs, ledde awaye many of vs captiue, for suche is the chaunce of warre. Also, among our familiers (whereof a great number haue ben captiues with them) beholde here is one whiche of long time led a payneful lyfe in bondage vnder the yoke of that kyng beyonde the mountaynes, in whose kyngdome is such abundance of gold. Of hym, and suche other innumerable, and lykewyle by the resort of free men on theyr side comyng to vs, and agayne of our men resoptyng to them by safe conduct, these thynges haue ben euer as well knowen vnto vs, as our owne possessions: but that you may be the better assured hereof, and be out of all suspition that you shall not be deceiued, make me the guyde of this voyage, byndyng me fast, and keepyng me in safe custodie to be hanged on the next tree, yf you fynde my saynges in anye poynt vntreue. If olowe my counsaile therefore, and sende for a thousande Christian men apt for the warres, by whose power we may, with also the men of warre of *Comogrus* my father, armed after our manner, invade the dominions of our enemies: where both you may be satisfied with golde, and we for our conductyng and abyng you in this enterpryse, shall thinke our selues abundantly rewarded, in that you shal helpe to deliuer vs from the iniuries and perpetuall feare of our enemies. After these woordes, this prudent young *Comogrus* helde his peace, and our men mooued with great hope and hunger of golde, began agayne to swalowe downe theyr spyttle.

A vehement perswasion.

A token of hunger.

The fourth booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



After that they had tarried here a fewer dayes, and baptised *Comogrus*, with all his familie, and named hym by the name of Charles, after the kyng of Spayne, they returned to theyr felowes in *Dariena*, leauyng with hym the hope of the thousande

Kyng Comogrus is baptised with his familie.

lande souldiers, whiche his sonne required to passe ouer those mountaynes toward the South sea. Thus entryng into the byllage whiche they had chosen to inhabite, they had knowledge that *Valdiuia* was returned within fife monethes after his departure, but with no great plentie of vyttualles, because he brought but a smal shyppe: yet with hope that shortly after, there shoulde be sent them abundance of vyttualles, and a newe supplie of men. For young *Colonus* the Admiral, and viceroy of *Hispaniola*, and the other gouernours of the Ilande, acknowledged that hitherto they had no respect to them of *Dariena*, because they supposed that *Ancisus* the Lieuutenant had safely arryued there with his shyppe laden with vyttualles: wylling them from henceforth to be of good cheare, and that they shoulde lacke nothing hereafter, but that at this present tyme they had no bigger ship wherby they myght send them greater plentie of necessaries by *Valdiuia*. The vyttuals therfore which he brought, serued rather somewhat to mitigate theyr present necessitie, then to satisfie theyr lacke. Wherefore, within a fewe dayes after *Valdiuia* his returne, they set agayne into lyke scarcenesse: especially forasmuche as a great storme and tempest whiche came from the hygh mountaynes, with horrible thunder and lychtning in the moneth of Nouember, brought with it suche a floodde, that it partly caried away, and partly drowned al the corne and seedes which they had sowne in the moneth of September, in a fruitfull grounde before they went to kyng *Comogrus*. The seedes whiche they of *Hispaniola* call *Maizium*, and they of *Vraba* call *Hobba*, whereof they make theyr bread, whiche also we sayde to be rypp thysle euery yeere, because those regions are not bytten with the sharpenesse of wynter by reason of theyr neerenesse to the Equinoctial lye. It is also agreeable to the principles of natural philosophie, that this bread made of *Maizius* or *Hobba*, shoulde be more wholsome for the inhabitauntes of those countreys then bread made of wheate, by reason that it is of easier digestion: for whereas colde is wantyng, the natural heate is not byuen from the outwarde partes into the inwarde partes and precordials, whereby digestion is muche strengthened. Beyng therfore thus frustrate of the increase of theyr seedes, and the kynges neere about them, spoyled of both vyttualles and

Horrible thunder and lychtning in the moneth of Nouember.

and golde, they were enforced to seeke theyr meate further off, and therewith to signifye to the gouernours of *Hispaniola* with what great necessitie they were oppressed, and what they had learned of *Comogrus* as concernyng the Regions toward the South, wylling them in consideration thereof, to aduertise the kyng to send them a thousande souldiers, by whose helpe they myght by force make waye through the mountaynes, diuidyng the sea on both sydes, if they coulde not byng the same to passe quietly. The same *Valdiuia* was also sent on this message, carryng with hym to the kynges treasurers (hauing theyr office of receipt in *Hispaniola*) three hundred poundes weyght of golde, after eyght ounces to the pounce, for the fyft portion due to the kynges exchequer. This pound of eight ounces, the Spaniardes call *Marcha*, whiche in weight amounteth to fyfye peeces of golde called *Castellani*, but the Castilians call a pounce *Pesum*. We conclude therfore, that the summe hereof, was .xv. thousand of those peeces of gold called *Castellani*. And thus is it apparent by this accompt, that they receiued of the barbarous kinges, a thousande and fyue hundred poundes, of eyght ounces to the pounce: all the whiche they founde readye wrought in sundrye kyndes of ouches, as cheynes, bracelets, tablets, and plates, both to hang before theyr brestes, and also at theyr eares, and nolethyrps. *Valdiuia* therfore tooke shyping in the same Carauell in the which he came last, and returned also before the thyrde day of the Ides of January, in the yeere of Christe M. D. XL. That chaunced to hym in this voyage, we wyl declare in place conuenient. But let vs now returne to them whiche remayned in *Vraba*. After the dismyssyng of *Valdiuia*, beyng pickt forward with outrageous hunger, they determined to searche the inner partes of that gulle in sundry places. The extreme angle or poynt of the same gulle is distant from the enterance thereof, about fourescore myles. This angle or corner, the Spaniardes call *Culata*. *Vaschus* hym selfe came to this poynt with a hundred men, coasting along by the gulle with one byggandine and certayne of the boates of those regions, whiche the Arabians call *Vru*, lyke vnto them whiche the inhabitauntes of *Hispaniola* call *Canoas*. From this poynt, there falleth a ryuer from the East into the gulle, ten times bigger then the ryuer of *Dariena*, which al-

so falleth into the same. Saylyng along by the ryuer about the space of thyrty myles (for they cal it niene leagues) and somewhat enclpyng towarde the ryght hande Southwarde, they founde certayne byllages of inhabitauntes, the kyng whereof was called *Dabaiba*. Our men also were certified beloe, that *Cemacbus* the kyng of *Dariena*, whom they put to flyght in the battayle, fledde to this *Dabaiba*, but at the comynge of our men, *Dabaiba* also fledde. It is thought that he was admonished by *Cemacbus*, that he shoulde not abyde the byunte of our men. He folowed his counsaile, forsooke his villages, and left all thynges desolate: yet our men founde heapes of bowes and arrowes, also muche household stuffe, and many fshyng boates. But those maryshe groundes were neyther apt for sowynge of seedes, or plantynge of trees, by reason whereof, they founde there fewe suche thynges as they desyred, that is, plentie of vntualles: for the inhabitauntes of this region haue no bread, but such as they great in other countreys neare about them by exchange, for their fshye, onely to serue theyr owne necessitie: yet founde they in the houses of those whiche fledde, golde wrought and grauen, amountynge to the summe of seuen thousande of those peeces, whiche we sayde to be called *Castellani*: also certayne Canoes, of the whiche they brought away two with them, and great plentie of theyr household stuffe, with certayne bundels of bowes & arrowes. They say, that from the maryshes of that riuer, there come certayne bates in the nyght season, as bygge as turtle doves, inuadynge men, and bytynge them with a deadly wounde, as some of them testifie whiche haue ben bytten of the same. I mee selfe communing with *Ancifus* the Lieuetenant whom they reiecte, and among other thynges as kyng hym of the venemous byting of these bates, he tolde me that he hym selfe was bytten by one of them on the heele, his foote lying vncouered in the nyght, by reason of the heate in sommer season, but that it hurte hym no more, then if he had ben bitten by any other beast not venemous. Other say, that the byting of some of them is venemous: yet that the same is healed incontynently, yf it be washed with water of the sea. *Ancifus* tolde me also, that the venemous woundes made by the Canibales arrowes infected with popson, are healed by washyng with water of the sea, and also by cauterisynge

Maryshe  
grounde.

Ancifus bitten  
of a batte.

with whot irons, and that he had experience thereof in the region of *Caribana*, where many of his men were so wounded. They departed therefore from the poynt of the gulfe of *Vraba*, not well contented, because they were not laden with vntualles. In this theyr retorne, there arose so great a tempest in that wyde gulfe, that they were enforced to cast into the sea al the household stuffe, whiche they tooke from the poore wretches whiche liued only by fshyng. The sea also swallowed by the two boates that they tooke from them, wherewith the men were lykewyse drowned. The same tyme that *Vaschus Nunnez* attempted to searche the poynt of the gulfe towarde the south, euen then by agreement, dyd *Rodericus Colmenaris* take his voyage toward y mountaines by the east, with threescore men, by the riuer of the other gulfe. About fourtie myles distant from the mouth of the other ryuer, (for they cal it twelue leagues) he founde certayne byllages situate vpon the bankes of the ryuer, whose *Chini* (that is) kyng, they cal *Turui*. With this kyng dyd *Colmenaris* yet remayne, when *Vaschus* after his retorne to *Dariena*, saylyng by the same ryuer, came to hym. Here refreshyng theyr whole compaigne with the vntuals of this *Turui*, they departed from thence togeather. D- King Turui, ther fourtie myles from hence, the ryuer encompasseth an Ilande inhabited with fshermen. In this, because they sawe great plentie of trees whiche beare *Cassia fistula*, they named the Ilande *Cannafistula*. They found in it .ix. villages of ten cotages apeece. The Ilande of Cannafistula. On the ryght syde of the Ilande there runneth another riuer, whose chanel is of deapth sufficient to beare *Brigandines*. This riuer they called *Riuum Nigrum*, fro the mouth wherof, about .x. miles distant, they found a towne of fine .C. houses seuered, whose *Chebi* (that is) kyng, was called *Abenamachei*. They al forsooke theyr houses, as soone as they heard of our mens comynge: but when they saw that our men pursued them, they turned againe, & ran vpon them with desperate mindes, as men dyuen from their owne possessions. Theyr weapons are swoords of wood, & long stauers lyke iauelins, hardened at the ende with fyre: but they vse neyther bowes nor arrowes, nor any other of the inhabitauntes of the West syde of the gulfe. The poore naked wretches were easly dyuen to flyght with our weapons. As our men folowed them in the chafe, they tooke the kyng *Abenamachei*, and

L ii

certayne



certaine of his noble men. A common souldier of ours, whom the kyng had wounded, commyng to hym when he was taken, cut of his arme at one stroke with his swoorde: but this was done vnawares to the captaynes. The number of the Christian men whiche were here, was about an hundred and fytie: the one halfe whereof the captaynes left here, and they with the residue rowed by the riuer agayne, with twelue of the boates of those regions, whiche they call *Vru*, as they of *Hispaniola* call them *Canons* as we haue sayde. From the ryuer of *Riuus Niger*, and the Islande of *Cannafistula*, for the space of threescore and ten myles, leauyng both on the right hande and on the left, many riuers falling into it bygger then it selfe, they entred into one, by the conductyng of one of the naked inhabitauntes, beyng appoynted a guyde for that purpose. Vppon the banke of this ryuer next vnto the mouth of the same, there was a kyng called *Abibeiba*, who because the region was full of maryshes, had his pallace buylded in the toppe of a hygh tree, a new kind of buildyng, and seldome seene: but that lande byngeth forth trees of such exceeding height, that among theyr branches a man may frame large houses: as we reade the lyke in diuers auctours, howe in many regions where the Ocean sea riseth and ouerfloweth the lande, the people were accustomed to flee to the hygh trees, and after the fall of the water, to take the fysh left on the lande. This manner of buyldyng, is to lay beames crosse ouer the branches of the trees, fast bounde togeather, and thereupon to rayse theyr frame, strongly made agaynst wynde and weather. Our men suppose that they builde theyr houses in trees, by reason of the great floods and ouerflowyng of riuers, whiche oftentimes chaunce in those regions. These trees are of suche heygth, that the strength of no mans arme, is able to hurle a stone to the houses buylded therein. And therfore do I geue the better credit to *Plinie*, and other auctours, whiche write that the trees in some places in *India* are so high by reason of the fruitfulness of y<sup>e</sup> ground, abundance of water, and heate of the region, that no man is able to shoote ouer them with an arrowe: and by iudgement of all men, it is thought that there is no fruitfuller grounde vnder the linne, then this is whereof we nowe entreate. Our men measurynge manye of these trees, founde them to be of

King Abibeiba  
dwelleth in  
a tree.

The ryng of  
the Ocean sea.

Trees of mar-  
ueilous height.

Plinie.

Fruitfull  
grounde.

suche bignes, that seuen men, yea sometimes eight, holdyng hande in hande with theyr armes stretched forth, were scarcely able to fathame them about: yet haue they theyr cellers in the grounde, well replenished with such wyne wherof we haue spoken before. For albeit that the vehemencie of the winde is not of power to cast downe those houses, or to breake the branches of the trees, yet are they tossed therewith, and swaye somewhat from syde to syde, by reason whereof, the wyne shoulde be muche troubled with moouing. All other necessarye thinges, they haue with them in the trees. When the kyng or any other of the noble men, dyne or suppe in these trees, theyr wyues are brought them from the cellers by theyr seruauntes, whiche by meanes of exercise, are accustomed with no lesse celeritie to runne vp and downe the staires adherente to the tree, then doo our wayting boyes vppon the playne grounde fetch vs what wee call for from the cobbarde besyde our dyning table. Our men therefore came to the tree of kyng *Abibeiba*, and by thinterpretoures called hym forth to communication, geuing hym signes of peace, and thereupon wpylling hym to come downe. But he denyed that he woulde come out of his house, desyring them to suffer hym to lyue after his fashon: but our men fell from sayre woordes to threating, that except he woulde descend with all his familie, they woulde eyther ouerthrowe the tree, or elles set it on fyre. When he had denied them agayne, they fell to helwing the tree with theyr axes. *Abibeiba* seeing the chippes fall from the tree on euery syde, chaunged his purpose, and came downe with only two of his sonnes. Thus after they had entreated of peace, they communed of geatheryng of golde. *Abibeiba* ainsweared that he had no golde, and that he neuer had any neede therof, nor yet regarded it any more then stones. But when they were instante vppon hym, he sayde vnto them, If you so greatly desyre golde, I wylle seeke for some in the next mountaynes, and byng it vnto you: for it is plentifully engendred in those mountaynes. Then he appoynted a daye when he woulde bring this golde. But *Abibeiba* came neyther at the day, nor after the day appoynted. They departed therfore from thence well refreshed with his vittuals and wyne, but not with golde as they hoped: yet were they enfourmed the kyng by *Abibeiba* and his

*Abibeiba*, the  
kyng of the  
tree, needeth  
to *Palchus*.

Golde no more  
esteemed then  
stones.

Canibales.

his dictionaries as concerning the golde mynes and the Canibales, as they hearde before of kyng Comogrus. Saylyng yet further about thyrtye myles, they chaunced vpon certayne cotages of the Canibales, but vterly voyde without men or stuffe: for when they had knowledge that cur men wandered in the prouinces neere about them, they resorted to the mountaynes, carying all theyr goodes and stuffe with them.

The fyfte booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



In the meane tyme while these thynges were done along by the shores or bankes of the ryuer, a certayne Decurian, that is, a captayne ouer tenne, of the compaignie of those which Vascus and Colmenaris had left for a garrison in *Riuo Nigro*, in the dominion of kyng *Abinamacheius*, whether it were that he was compelled through hunger, or that his fatal day was now come, he attempted with his souldiers to searche the countreys neere thereabout, and entred into the byllage of a king called *Abraiba*. This captaynes name was *Raia*, whom *Abraiba* slue with two of his felowes, but the residue fledde. Within a fewe dayes after, *Abraiba* hauyng compassion on the calamitie of his kynsman and neyghbour *Abenamacheius*, beyng dyuen from his owne possessions (whose arme also we sayd before that one of the souldiers cut of at the riuer of *Riuo Nigro*) and now remaynyng with *Abraiba*, to whom he fled by stealth after he was taken, went to *Abibeiba* thynhabitour of the tree, who had nowe likewise forsaken his countrey for feare of our men, and wandered in the desolate mountaynes and woods. When he had therfore sounde hym, he spake to hym in this effect, What thyng is this, oh vnforsunate *Abibeiba*? or what nation is this that so tormenteth vs, that we can not enioy our quiet libertie? howe long, howe long I say, shall we suffer theyr crueltie? were it not much better for vs to dye, then to abide suche iniuries and opprellions as you, as *Abinamacheius* our kinsman, as *Cemacchus*, as *Careta*, as *Poncha*, as I and other prynces of our order doo susteyne? Can anye thyng be moze intollerable, then to see our wyues,

our

our chyldren, and our subiectes, to be ledde away captiues, and our goodes to be spoyled euen before our faces: I take the gods to witnesse, that I speake not so much for mine owne part, as I do for you, whose case I lament: for albeit they haue not yet touched me, neuertheless by the example of other, I ought to thinke that my destructio is not farre of. Let vs therfore (if we be men) trye our strength, & prooue our fortune agaynst them which haue dealt thus cruelly with *Abenamacheius*, and dyuen him out of his countrey, let vs set on them with al our power, and vterly destroy them. And if we can not slay the al, yet shal we make them afraide either to assaile vs agayne, or at the least diminishe their power: for whatsoeuer shal befall, nothyng can chaunce woofe vnto vs then that which we nowe suffer. When *Abibeiba* heard these words, & such other lyke, he condescended to do in al things as *Abraiba* would require: whereupon they appoynted a day to byyng theyr conspiracie to passe, but the thyng chaunced not accordyng to their desyre: for of those whiche we sayd to haue passed to the Canibals, there returned by chaunce to *Riuo Nigro*, the night before the day appoynted to woofe their seate, thirtie men, to the ayde of them whiche were left there, yf any sedition should rise as they suspected. Therfore at the dawning of the day, the confederate kynges, with fyue hundred of theyr dictionaries armed after theyr maner, besieged the byllage with a terrible alarome, knowyng nothing of the newe men whiche came thither the same nyght. Here our target men came forth agaynst them, and first assailed them a farre of with theyr arrowes, then with theyr pykes, and last with theyr swoordes: but the naked seelye soules, perceiuyng a greater number of theyr aduersaries then they looked for, were soone dyuen to flyght, and slayne for the most parte lyke scatteryng sheepe. The kynges escaped, they slue many, and tooke many captiues, whiche they sent to *Darien*, where they vled them for labourers to tyll and sowe theyr grounde. These thynges thus happily atchpyued, and that prouince quieted, they returned by the ryuer to *Darien*, leauyng theyr thyrtye men for a garrison, vnder the gouernance of one *Fur* *rato* a captayne. This *Fur* *rato* therfore, sent from *Riuo Nigro*, where he was appoynted gouernour, xx. of his felowes, and one woman, with xliii. captiues, to *Vascus* and his compaignie, in

Then good people enough of them had iron.

Captiues.

A garrison of thirtie men.

L iiii

one

Eightene Spaniards slaine and drowned.

The kinges which conspired the death of the Christians.

A strange chance.

Women can keepe no counsell.

one of the byggest *Canoas* of that prouince. As they rowed downe by the ryuer, there came forth suddenly ouerthwart the ryuer agaynst them foure great *Canoas*, which ouerthelpe theyr boate, and slue as many of them as they coulde come by, because they were vnprepared, suspecting no such thyng. Our men were all drowned and slaine, except two, which hid them selues among certeyne sagottes that swanne on the water, in the whiche they laye lurkyng, and so escaped to theyr felowes in *Dariena*: who by them beyng aduertysed hercof, beganne to cast theyr wyttes what this thyng myght meane, being no lesse sollicitate for them selues, then meditatyng in what daunger theyr felowes had ben in *Riuo Nigro*, excepte by good fortune, those thirtie newe men whiche were sent to them, had come to the byllage the nyghe before the conspiracie shoulde haue ben wrought. Consultyng therefore what was best to be doone herein, at the length with diligent searchyng, they had intelligence that syue kynges, that is to wytte, *Abibeiba* the inhabitour of the tree, and *Cemacchus* dyuen from his byllage which our men nowe possessed, *Abraiba* also and *Abenamacheius*, kynsmen, with *Dabaiba* the kyng of the fysher men, inhabytyng the corner of the gulse whiche we called *Culata*, were al assembled to conspire the Christian mens destruction at a daye assigned: whiche thyng had surely come to passe, if it had not ben otherwyle hyndered by Gods prouidence. It is therefore ascribed to a myracle, and truely not vnworthyly, if we waye howe chaunce detected and betrayed the counsaile of these kynges. And because it is worthy to be heard, I wyll declare it in fewe woordes. *Vaschus Nummez* therefore, who rather by power then by election, vsurped the gouernance in *Dariena*, beyng a maister of fence, and rather a rathe royster then a politike captaine (although fortune sometime fauoureth fooles) among many women whiche in diuers of these regions he had taken captiue, had one, whiche in fauour and beutie excelled all other. To this woman her brother often tymes resorted, who was also dyuen out of his countrey with king *Cemacchus*, with whom he was very famylar, and one of his cheefe gentelmen. Among other communication whiche he had with his syster whom he loued entierly, he vttered these woordes, *O my deare and welbeloued syster, geue eare to my sayinges, and keepe most secretely*

that

that whiche I wyll declare vnto you, yf you desyre your owne wealch and myne, and the prosperitie of our countrey and kynsefolkes. The insolencie and crueltie of these men whiche haue dyuen vs out of our possessions, is so intollerable, that the princes of the lande are determyned no longer to susteyne theyr oppressions. By the conducting therefore of syue kynges (whiche he named in order) they haue prepared a hundred great *Canoas*, with syue thousande men of warre by lande and by sea, with bristals also in the village of *Tichiri*, sufficient to mantayne suche an army: declaryng further, that the kynges by agreement, had dyuided among them the goodes and heades of our men, and therefore admonysed her, at the day appoynted by some occasion to conueigh her selfe out of the way, lest she shoulde be slayne in the confusion of the battayle: For the souldier victourer, is not wont to spare any that cometh in his rase. And thus shewing his syster the day assigned to the slaughter, he departed. But the young woman (for it is the swoorde that women feare, and obserue more then the grauitie of *Cato*) whether it were for the loue or feare that she had to *Vaschus*, forgetting her parentes, her kynfolkes, her countrey, and all her freendes, yea and al the kynges into whose throttes *Vaschus* had thruste his swoorde, she opened al the matter vnto hym, and concealed none of those thynges which her vndiscrete brother had declared to her. When *Vaschus* therfore had hearde the matter, he caused *Fulua*, (for so had they named her) to sende for her brother, who came to her immediatly, was taken, & enforced to tel the whole circumstances of the matter: wherupon he playnely confessed, that king *Cemacchus* his lord and maister, sent those foure *Canoas* to the destruction of our men, and that these new conspiracies were attempted by his counsaile: likewise that *Cemacchus* sought the destruction of *Vaschus* him selfe, when he sent him. xl. men, vnder pretence of frendshyp, to tyll and sowe his grounde, after the maner of the countrey, geuing them in comaundement to slay *Vaschus* at *Marris*, whither he resorted to comfort his labourers, as the maner is of al good husbandes, yet durst they at no time execute their lordes commaundement vpon hym, because *Vaschus* came neuer among them a foote or vnarmed, but was accustomed to ryde to them in harnesse with a sauelyn in his hande, and a swoorde

An armie of an hundred *Canoas*, and syue. *Th. men.*

Triumph besyde victorie.

Affection corrupteth true iudgement.

The conspiracie of the kynges is detected.

King *Cemacchus* conspireth the death of *Vaschus*.

a swoorde by his syde. Wherefore *Cemacchus* being frustrate of his particuler counsaile, tooke this last thing in hande, to his owne destruction and his neighbours: for the conspiracie being detected, *Vaschus* called threescore and tenne souldiers, commaunding them to folowe hym, but declared nothing vnto them whither he went, or what he intended to do. He went forwarde therfore fyrst toward *Cemacchus*, which lay from hym only tenne myles: but he had knowledge that he was fledde to *Dabaiba*, the kyng of the maryshes of *Culata*. Yet searching his billage, he founde a noble man, a ruler vnder hym, and also his kynsman, whom he tooke prysoner, with many other of his familiers and frendes both men and women. The same houre that he set forwarde to seeke for *Cemacchus*, *Rodericus Colmenaris* rowed by the ryuer with foure of theyr byggest *Canoas*, and threescore men, by the conduction of the maydes brother who brought hym to the village of *Tichiri*, in þ which we said al their vittuals to remaine which were prepared for theyr armie. *Colmenaris* therfore sacked the village, and possessed all their vittuals, and wine of sundry colours, likewise tooke the gouernour thereof prysoner, and hanged him on the tree in whiche he dwelt him selfe, commaunding hym to be shotte through with arrowes in the syght of thynhabitantes, and with hym foure other rulers to be hanged on gibbets, to the example of other rebelles. This punishment thus executed vppon the conspiratours, stroke the hartes of all thynhabitantes of the prouince with such feare, that there is not now a man that dare styre his synger agaynst the wrath of our men. They lyue now therfore quietly, and the other kyngs by theyr example do the gladlyer lyue in subiection, with lesse offence bearyng the yoke which they can by no meanes shake of.

The syxte booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



These thynges thus synysshed, assembling al theyr company togeather, they determined with one consent, that a messenger shoulde forthwith be sent to *Hispaniola* (from whence they haue theyr lawes and ayde) to declare the whole order of al these affayres, fyrste

fyrst to the Admiral and gouernour of the Ilande, and afterward to the Kyng of Spayne, and to perswade hym to sende those thousande men whiche young *Comogrus* sayde to be expedient to passe ouer the mountaynes, lying betwene them and the golden regions toward the South. *Vaschus* hym selfe dyd greately affect this embassage: but neither would the residue of his felowes electe hym therto, nor his factionaries suffer hym to departe, aswell for that thereby they thought they should be left desolate, as also that they murmured, that if *Vaschus* should once go from them, he woulde neuer returne to suche turmoyles and calamities, by the example of *Valdiua* and *Zamudius*, who had ben now absent sence the moneth of January, in so much that they thought they woulde neuer come agayne: but the matter was otherwyse then they tooke it, as I wyll shewe in his place, for they were perished. At the length after many scrutines, they elected one *John Quicedus*, a graue man, wel in peeres, and treasurer of the kynges Exchequer in those prouinces: they had conceiued a good opinion of this *Quicedus*, that all thynges shoulde be well brought to passe by his meanes, aswell for his wysdome, as also that they were in good hope of his return, because he had brought his wife with hym to those regions, whom he left with his felowes for a pledge of his comynge agayne. When they had thus elected *Quicedus*, they were agayne of diuers opinions whom they might ioine with him for assistance, affirming that it were a dangerous thing to committe so weightie a matter to one mans handes, not that they mistrusted *Quicedus*, but because the life of man is fraile, & the change of the ayre perillous, especially to them, haupng now of long time ben accustomed to the temperature neere vnto the *Equinoctial*, if they should be compelled to returne to þ North, with alteration of ayre & diet. They thought it therfore good to appoynt a companion to *Quicedus*, that if by chaunce the one should faile, thother might remaine, & that if they both escaped, the king should geue þ better credit to the relation of both. After long consultation therfore, they chose *Rodericus Colmenaris*, a man of good experience, of whom we haue oftentimes made mention: for from his youth he had traualled ouer al Europe by lande and by sea, and was present at the doynges of al thyngs in *Italie* agaynst the Frenche men, of whose returne also, they had

*Johan. Quicedus* is sent to Spayne.

*Vaschus* pursueth the kyngs with threescore and ten men.

*Colmenaris* sacketh the vylage of *Tichiri*.

Four rulers hanged & shot through with arrowes.

His wife is a hindrance.

The death of aldiuia.

Wurt of lausph-  
nelle of the  
tongue.

had no smal hope, because he had many farmes, and had tyllid and sowne much grounde in *Dariena*, by the increafe wherof, he myght get much gold by selling the same to his felowes. He left therfore the charge of al his affayres in *Dariena* with his partner *Alphonfus Nunnez*, a iudge of the lawe, who also was lyke to haue ben chosen procuratour of this voyage before *Colmenaris*, yf one had not put them in remembrance that he had a wife at *Matritis*, fearing lest being ouercome with her teares, he woulde no more returne. *Colmenaris* therfore, a free man, & at libertie, being associate assystant with *Quicedus*, they tooke shyping together in a Brigandine, the fourth day of the Calendes of Nouember, in the peere of Christe. 1512. In this voyage, beyng tossed with sundry tempestes, they were by the violence of the winde cast vpon the West coastes of that large Island, which in the fyrst Decade we called *Cuba*, supposed to haue ben firme land. They were sore oppressed with hunger, for it was now three monethes synce they departed from theyr felowes: by reason whereof, they were enforced to take lande, to prooue what ayde they coulde get among the inhabitauntes. Theyr chaunce therefore was to arryue in that part of the Islande, where *Valdiuia* was dyuen aland by tempest. But oh you wretched men of *Dariena*, tary for *Valdiuia*, whom you sent to prouide to helpe your necessities, prouyde for your selues rather, and trust not to them whose fortune ye knowe not. For when he arryued in *Cuba*, the inhabitauntes shue hym with al his felowes, and left the Carauel wherin they were caryed, tozme in peeces, and half covered with sande on the shore, where *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* binding the fragmentes thereof, bewayled theyr felowes my fortune: but they founde none of theyr carcasses, supposyng that they were eyther drowned, or deuoured of the Canibales, which oftentimes make incursions into that Islande to hunt for men. But at the length, by two of the Islande men which they had taken, they had knowledge of *Valdiuia* his destruction, and that the inhabitauntes the more greedily attempted the same, for that they had heard by the babbling of one of his felowes, that he had great plentie of golde: for they also take pleasure in the beautie of golde, whiche they fourme artificially into sundry ouches. Thus our men stricken with pensiuennesse for the cruell destenie of theyr felowes, and

and in bayne seekyng reuenge for theyr iniuries, determined to forsake that vnfortunate lande, departyng from those couetous naked barbarians, with more sorowe and necessitie then they were in before. Or euer they had passed the South syde of *Cuba*, they fel into a thousande myfortunes, and had intelligence that *Fogeda* arryued therabout, leadyng a miserable lyfe, tossed and turmoyled with tempestes, and vexed with a thousande perplexities: so that departyng from thence almost alone, his felowes beyng for the most part al consumed with maladies and famine, he came with much difficultie to *Hispaniola*, where he dyed by force of the poyson of his venemous wounde which he had receiued in *Vraba* as we haue sayde before. But *Ancifus* elected Lieutenant, sayled by al those coastes with much better fortune: for as he hym self tolde me, he founde prosperous wyndes in those parties, and was wel entercepted of the inhabitantes of *Cuba*, but this specially in the dominion of a certayne kyng whose name was *Commendator*: for wheras he desyred of the Christian men whiche passed by, to be baptised, demaundyng the name of the gouernour of the Islande next vnto *Hispaniola*, beyng a noble man, and a knyght of the order of *Galatrua*, of whiche order, all are called *Commendatores*, this kings desyre was to be named after him. Kyng *Commendator* therefore frendly receiued *Ancifus*, & gaue him great abundance of al thinges necessarie. But what *Ancifus* learned of theyr religion during the tyme of his remaynyng there, I haue thought good to aduertise your holynesse. You shal therfore vnderstande, that certayne of our men saylyng by the coastes of *Cuba*, left with kyng *Commendator* a certayne poore Maryner beyng diseased, who in short space recoveryng his health, and hauyng now somewhat learned theyr language, began to growe into great estimation with the kyng and his subiectes, insomuche that he was oftentimes the kynges Lieutenant in his warres agaynst other princes his borderers. This mans fortune was so good, that al thynges prospered well that he tooke in hande: and albeit that he were not learned, yet was he a vertuous and well meanyng man, accordyng to his knowledge, and dyd religiouslye honour the blessed virgin, bearyng euer about with him her pycture fayre paynted vpon paper, and folwed in his apparel neere vnto his brest, signifyng vnto the kyngs

The calamities and death of Fogeda.

Maladies and famine.

The prosperous voyage of Ancifus.

A king of Cuba baptised by the name of Commendator.

A marueylous hyppocrite howe Sod wrought miracles by the simple faith of a Maryner.

Be not rasha in iudgement.



kyng, that this holynes was the cause of al his victories: per-  
swading him to doo the like, and to cast away all his *Zemes*,  
which were none other then the similitudes of euill spirites, most  
cruell enemies and deuourers of our soules, and to take vnto  
him the holy virgin and mother of God to be his patronesse, if  
he despyed all his assayes aswel in warre as in peace to succede  
prosperously: also that the blessed virgyn woulde at no tyme  
fayle hym, but be euer redye to helpe him and his, if they woulde  
with deuout hartes call vpon her name. The maryner had  
soone perswaded the naked nation, and therevpon gaue the  
king (who demaunded the same) his picture of the virgin, to  
whom he buylded and dedicated a chapell and an alter, euer af-  
ter contemning and reiecting his *Zemes*. Of these *Zemes* made of  
gossampine cotton, to the similitudes of spirites walking in the  
nyght, which they oftentimes see, and speake with them famili-  
erly, we haue spoken sufficiently in the nyenth booke of the first  
Decade. Furthermore, according to the institution of this ma-  
ryner, when the sonne draweth towarde the fall, this king Com-  
mendator with al his famly, both men and women, refozt daylye  
to the laide chapell of the virgin Marie, where kneeling on theyr  
knees, and reuerently bowing downe theyr heades, holdyng  
theyr hands ioyned together, they salute the image of the virgin  
with these woordes, *Aue Maria, Aue Maria*, for fewe of them  
can rehearse any moze woordes of this prayer. At Ancifus his be-  
ing there, they tooke hym and his felowes by the handes, and  
ledde them to this chapell with reioysing, saying that they  
woulde shewe them marueylous thinges. When they were en-  
tered, they poynted with theyr fyngers to the Image of the vir-  
gyn, al to be set and hanged about with ouches and iewels, and  
many earthen pottes, fylled some with sundry meates, and some  
with water, rounde about all the tabernacle: for these thinges  
they offer to the image in the steede of sacrifice, accordyng to  
theyr olde superstition towarde theyr *Zemes*. Being demaunded  
why they dyd thus, they answered, Lest the image should lacke  
meate, if perhaps it should be a hungred: for they most certainly  
beleue that images may hunger, and that they doo eat & drinke.  
But what ayde and helpe they confesse that they haue had of the  
godly power of this image, that is of the blessed virgyn, it is

A Chappell  
builded to the  
picture of the  
virgin Marie.

One superstiti-  
ous religion  
turned into an  
other, holdeth  
stil many thin-  
ges of the first.

a thing woorthy to be heard, and most assuredly to bee taken for  
a trueth: for by the report of our men, there is such seruent god-  
ly loue and zeale in these simple men toward the holy virgin, that  
to them being in the daunger of warre agaynst theyr enemies,  
they doo in maner (yf I may so terme it) compel her to descende  
from heauen to helpe them in theyr necessities. For such is the  
goodnes of God, that he hath left vnto men in maner a prync-  
e whereby we may purchase hym with his holy angels & sayntes,  
that is to witte, burnyng loue, charitie, and zeale. Howe ther-  
fore can the blessed virgin at any time be absent from them which  
call for her helpe with pure faith and seruent loue? Commendator  
him selfe, with al his noble men and gentelmen, doo testifie with  
one voyce, that in a fought battayle in the whiche this maryner  
was capitaine, bearing with him this picture of the virgin Ma-  
rie, the *Zemes* of theyr enemies turned their backs, and trem-  
bled in the presence of the virgins image, and in the sight of them  
all: for euerye of them byrnyng theyr *Zemes* to the battaile, ho-  
ping by theyr helpe to obtaine the victorie. Wea they say further,  
that during the time of the battaile, they saw not only an Image,  
but a liuely woman clothed in sayre and white apparel, ayding  
them agaynst theyr enemies: which thing also the enemies them-  
selues acknowledged, confessyng that on the contrary part, she  
appeared to them shakynge a scepter in her hande with threate-  
nyng countenance, whiche caused theyr hartes to shake and faint  
for feare: but after that this Maryner departed from them, being  
taken into a shyppe of certayne Christians passyng by those  
coastes, Commendator declared that he with al his subiectes, con-  
tinually obserued his institutions: inso much that beyng at con-  
tention with another prync, whiche of theyr *Zemes* were most  
holy and of greatest power, the matter grewe to such extremitie,  
that they tryed it with hande strokes: and that in all these at-  
temptes, the blessed virgin neuer fayled hym, but was euer pre-  
sent in the byunt of the battayle, and gaue hym easie victorie  
with a final power of men, agaynst a maine armie of his enemies.  
Beyng demaunded with what woordes they cryed vpon the vir-  
gin Mary when they assailed theyr enemies, they answered that  
they had learned no other woordes of the Maryners doctrine, but  
*Sauita Maria adiuna nos. Sauita Maria adiuna nos.* That is, holy  
Mary

Zeale without  
knowledge is  
neuer godly.

Marke this  
blindnesse.

This ignorance  
is to be lamene-  
ted.

The deuil dis-  
sembleth to  
keepe his in-  
blindnesse  
still.

A notable type  
of a papistical  
heretike.

One blasphemie  
vpon a  
nother.

Marie helpe vs, holy Marie helpe vs, and this also in the Spanishe tongue: for he had left these wordes in the mouthes of all men. Whyle they murdered and destroyed them selues thus on both sides, they fell to entreatie of peace, and agreed to trye the matter, not hande to hande by combatte of certayne chosen for both parties, as the maner was among the Romanes and diuers other nations in the old tyme, or by any sleight or policie, but that two young men shoulde be chosen, for eche partie one, with theyr handes bounde faste behynde them in the playne spelde, bothe parties beyng sworn to acknowledge that Zemes to be the better, which fyrst loosed the bandes of the young man which stood bounde for the tryall of his religion. Thus diuidyng them selues, and placynge the sayd young men before them in the syght of them all, with theyr handes fast bounde by theyr enymies, the contrary parte called fyrst on theyr Zemes (that is the deuyl, to whose similitude theyr Images are made) who immediately appeared in his lykenesse aboute the young man that stood bounde in the defence of Satans kyngdome. But as soone as Commendator with his compaignie cryed *Sancta Maria adiuua nos, Sancta Maria adiuua nos*, forthwith there appeared a fayre virgin clothed in whyte, at whose presence the deuyl vanquished immediatly. But the virgin, hauing along rod in her hande, & putting the same on the bandes of the young man that stood for Commendator, his handes were loosed immediatly in the syght of them all, and his bandes found about the bandes of hym that stood for the other partye, insomuch that theyr them selues founde hym double bounde. But for all this, were not the enymies satisfied, quarelling that this thyng was done by some slepyght or deuile of man, & not by the power of the better Zemes. And thereupon requyred, for thaduoydyng of all suspicion, that there myght be eyght graue and sage men appoynted, for eche side foure, which shoulde bynde the men in the syght of them all, and also geue iudgement whether the thing were done with out craft or guyle. Oh pure simplicitie and constant fayth: oh golden and blessed confidence. Commendator and his familiers, doubted not to graunt theyr enymies theyr request, with lyke fayth wherewith the diseased woman obtayned health of the flure of her blood, and wherby Peter feared not to walke on the sea

The deuyl appeareth in his lykenesse.

What likenes?

A Grange miracle not to be credited.

Another miracle.

Wise men.

Math. xiiii. This is another matter.

sea at the syght of his maister Christ. These young men therfore were bounde in the presence of these eight graue men, and were placed within theyr lyttes in the syght of both parties. Thus vpon a signe geuen, when they called vpon theyr Zemes, there appeared in the sight of them all, a deuyl with a long taile, a wide mouth, great teeth, and hornes, resembling the similitude of the image whiche the kyng beyng enemie to Commendator honored for his Zemes. As the deuyl attempted to loose the bandes of his client, the blessed virgin was immediatly present as before at the call of Commendator & his subiects, & with her rodde loosed the bandes of her suppliant, whiche were agayne likewise founde fast tyed about the bandes of hym that stood for the contrary part. The enymies therfore of Commendator, being stricken with great feare, and amased by reason of this great myracle, confessed that the Zemes of the virgin was better then theyr Zemes: for the better prooffe whereof, these pagans being borderers to Commendator, whiche had euer before ben at continuall warre and enmitie with hym, when they had knowledge that Ancifus was arrived in those coastes, they sent Ambassadors vnto hym, to desire him to sende them priestes, of whom they might be baptised: wherupon he sent them two which he had there with hym at that present. They baptised in one day an hundred and thyrtye of thynhabitanes, sometime enymies to Commendator, but nowe his frendes, and ioynded with hym in aliance. All suche as came to be baptised, gaue the priestes of theyr owne liberalitie, either a cocke or a henne, but no capons, for they can not yet skil howe to carrie theyr cocke chickens to make them capons. Also certayne salted fishes, and newe fyne cakes made of theyr bread: likewise certayne foules franked and made fatte. When the priestes resorted to the thyrtye, syre of these newe baptised men accompanied them laden with vittuals, wherewith they ledde a ioyful Easter: for on the Sunday, two dayes before saynt Lazarus day, they departed from Dariena, and touched at that tyme only the cape or angle of Cuba, neere vnto the East syde of Hispaniola. At the request of Commendator, Ancifus left with him one of his compaignie, to the intent to teache hym and his subiectes, with other his borderers, the salutation of the angell, whiche he cal the *Aue Maria*: for they thynke them selues to be so much

The deuyl appeareth againe

The virgin Mary in her owne person ouercometh the deuyl.

The priestes reward.

Why name you Capons?

Ancifus voiage  
to Spayne.

Ancifus com-  
playneth of  
Walchus.

Marke to whō  
this fabled  
myraculous  
storie was  
wrytten.

the more beloued of the blessed virgin, as they can rehearse the more woordes of that prayer. Thus *Ancifus* takynge his leaue of kyng *Commendator*, directed his course to *Hispaniola*, from which he was not farre. Shortly after, he tooke his voyage to Spayne, and came to *Valladoleta* to the kyng, to whom he made greuous complaynt of the insolencie of *Walschus Nunnez*, insomuche that by his procurement the kyng gaue sentence agaynst hym. Thus muche haue I thought good (most holy father) whereof to aduertise your holynesse, as concernynge the religion of these nations, not only as I haue ben instructed of *Ancifus* (with whom I was dayly conuersant in the Court, and used hym familiarly) but also as I was enformed of diuers other men of great auctoritie, to the intent that your excellencie may vnderstande howe docible this kynd of men are, and with what facilitie they may be allured to embrace our religion: but this can not be done sodenly, yet we haue great cause to hope that in short time they wyl be al drawen by litle and litle, to the Euangelical lawe of Christe, to the great encrease of his flocke. But let vs nowe returne to the messengers or procuratours as concernynge the affayres of *Dariena*.

The seuenth booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



**R**om *Dariena* to *Hispaniola*, is eyght dayes saylunge, and sometimes lesse with a prosperous winde: yet *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* the procuratours of *Dariena*, by reason of tempestes & contrary windes, could scarcely sayle it in a hundred dayes. When they had tarped a fewe dayes in *Hispaniola*, and had declared the cause of the commynge to the Admirall and the other gouernours, they toke shipping in two marchant shippes, beyng redy furnyshed, whiche were also accustomed to sayle to and fro betweene Spayne and the Ilande of *Hispaniola*. They departed from *Dariena* (as we sayde before) the fourth day of the Calends of Nouember, in the yere of Christ. 1512. and came not to the court before the Calendes of May in the yere folowynge, beyng the yere of Christ. 1513. At theyr commynge to the court,

*Iohannes*

*Iohannes Fonseca* (to whom at the beginnyng the charge of these affayres was committed, whom also for his faythfull seruice towarde the kyng, your holynesse created general Commisarie in the warres agaynst the *Moors*) receiued them honourably, as men commynge from the newe worlde, from naked nations, and landes vnknown to other men. By the preferment therfore of the Bpshopp of *Burges*, *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* were brought before the kyng, and declared theyr legacie in his presence. Suche newes and presentes as they brought, were dilectable to the kyng and his noble men, for the newnesse and strangenesse thereof. They also sojourned with me ostentymes. Theyr countenaunces do declare the intemperatnesse of the ayre and region of *Dariena*, for they are pelowe, lyke vnto them that haue the pelowe gaundies, and also swolne: but they ascribe the cause hereof, to the hunger whiche they susteyned in tymes past. I haue ben aduertised of the affayres of this newe worlde, not only by these procuratours of *Dariena*, and *Ancifus*, and *Zamudius*, but also by conference with *Baccia* the lawyer, who ran ouer a great part of those coastes: lykewyse by relation of *Vincentius Ammez*, the patrone of the shypes, and *Alphonfus Nignus*, both being men of great experience, and wel trauailed in those parties, beside many other, of whom we haue made mention in other places, for there came neuer any from thence to the court, but tooke great pleasure to certifie me of al thynges, eyther by worde of mouth or by wrytyng. Of many thynges therfore whiche I learned of them, I haue geathered such as to my iudgment seme most worthy to facillie them that take delyte in histories. But let vs nowe declare what folowed after the commynge of the procuratours of *Dariena*. Therfore, before theyr arryual, there was a rumor spred in the court, that the cheefe gouernours and Lieutenantes *Nicuesa* and *Fogeda*, also *Iohannes de la Cossa* (a man of such reputation, that by the kinges letters patentes he was named the great maister of the kyngs shypes) were al perished by mischaunce: and that those fewe whiche yet remayned alpye in *Dariena*, were at contention and discorde among them selues, so that they neither endeouored theyr diligence to assure those synple nations to our fayth, nor yet had regarde to searche the naturcs of those regions. In consyderation whereof, the kyng was determined

The procuratours of *Dariena* are honourably receiued at the court.

The great maister of the kinges shippes.

¶ ii

terminated

*Petrus Arias*  
is elected go-  
vernour of  
Dariena.

The oration of  
the Bishop of  
Burges, in the  
defence of *Petrus Arias*.

The warres of  
Aphryca.

terminated to sende a newe captayne thither, which should restore and set al thynge in good order, and put them out of auctoritie whiche had usurped the Empire of those prouinces without the kynges speciall commaundement: To this office, was one *Petrus Arias* assigned, a man of great prowesse, and a citizen of *Segonia*, but when the procuratours of *Dariena* had published in the court howe great a matter it was, and of what moment, many laboured earnestly to the kyng, to take the office out of his handes: but the Bishop of *Burges*, being the kyngs cheefe chaplayne, and one of the Commissioners appoynted by hym in these matters, being aduertised hereof, came immediatly to the king, and spake to hym in this effect: May it please your highnesse to vnderstande (most catholique pryncce) that whereas *Petrus Arias*, a man of valiant courage and great seruice, hath offered him selfe to aduenture his life in your maiesties affaires, vnder vncertaine hope of gayne, and most certayne perylls, yet that notwithstanding, some other haue ambiciouly maliced his felicitie and preferment, laboring for the office wherto he is elected. It may please your grace herein, so to shew him your fauour, and permit hym to enioy his sayde office, as your maiestie do knowe hym to be a woorthy and meete man for the same, hauyng in tyme past had great experience of his prowesse and valyantnesse, as wel in behauyng him selfe, as orderyng his souldiers, as your highnesse may the better consyder, yf it shal please you to call to remembraunce his dooynges in the warres of *Aphryca*, where he shewed him selfe both a wise Captaine, and a valiant souldier. As concernyng his manners and vices otherwayes, they are not vnknownen to your maiestie, vnder whose wyng he hath of a chylde ben brought up in the Courte, and euer founde faythfull toward your highnesse. Wherefore, to declare my opinion, vnder your graces fauour (whom it hath pleased to appoynt me a Commissioner in these affaires) I thynke it were vngodly that he shoulde be put from his office at the suite of any other, especially being thereto mooued by ambition and couetousnesse, who perchance would proue them selues to be the same men in the office, if they shoulde obteyne it, as they now shew them selues in the ambitious despyng of the same. When the Bishop had sayd these wordes, the kyng confirmed the election of *Petrus Arias* in more

more ample manner then before, wyllyng the byshop to appoynt hym a thousande and two hundred souldiers at his charges, making hym a warrant to the officers of his Exchequer, to despyuer hym money in prest for the same purpose. *Petrus Arias* therfore being thus put in office, and auctorized by the kinges letters patentes vnder his hynde seale, chose a great number of his souldiers in the court, and so departed from *Valladoletto*, about the Calends of October, in the yere. 1513. and sayled first to *Ciuite*, being a very ryche citie, and wel replenished with people, where by the kynges magistrates, he was furnyshed with men and vtualles, and other necessaries parteynyng to so great a matter: for the kyng hath in this citie erected a house, seruyng only for the affaires of the Ocean, to the whiche al they that goe or come from the newe landes and Ilandes, resort to geue accomptes, as wel what they cary thither, as what they bring from thence, that the kyng may be truly answered of his custome of the fyft part, both of golde and other thynge, as we haue sayde before. This house they cal the house of the Contractes of *Indi*. *Petrus Arias* founde in *Ciuite* aboue two thousand young men, whiche made great suite to goe with hym, lyke wyse no smal number of couetous olde men, of the whiche, many offered them selues to goe with him of their owne charges without the kings stipende. But lest the ships shoulde be pestered with to great a multitude, or lest vittuals shoulde fayle them, the libertie of free passage was restraynt. It was also decreed that no stranger myght passe without the kynges licence. Wherefore I doo not a lytle maruaile at *Aloisius Cadamustus* a Venetian, and wytyer of the *Portugales* voyages, that he was not ashamed to wyte thus of the Spanyarde nauigations: we went, we sawe, we dyd: whereas he neuer went, nor any Venetian sawe, but he stole certayne annotations out the thre first bookes of my fyrst Decade, wytten to Cardinal *Ascanius* & *Arcimbodus*, supposyng that I would neuer haue published the same. It myght also happen that he came by the copie therof at the hand of some ambassadour of Venice, for I haue graunted the copie to many of them, & was not dangerous to forbyd them to communicate the same to other. Howe so euer it be, this honest man *Aloisius Cadamustus* feared not to challenge vnto hym the fruite of another mans labour.

A house in *Ciuite* appoynted to the affaires of *India*.

*Perularia*.

The Portugales inuasions.

The nauigation of Petrus Arias.

A shipwrecke.

Americus Vesputius.

A notable example of a valiant woman.

Of the inuentions of the Portugales (whiche surely are wonderfull) whether he haue written that which he hath seene (as he saith) or likewise bereaued other men of the iust commendations of thei trauayles, I wyl not iudge, but am content to let hym lyue after his manner. Among the company of these souldiers, there were none embarked but such as were licenced by the king, except a few Italians, Genues, who by frendshyp and suite were admitted for the Admiralles sake young *Colonus*, sonne and heyre to *Christophorus Colonus*, the fyrst fynder of those landes. *Petrus Arias* therfore toke shipping in the riuer *Betis* (now called *Guadalqueuir*) running by the cite of *Ciuit*, about the begynnyng of the yere of *Christ*. 1514. But he loosed anker in an euyl houre, for such a tempest folowed shortly after his departure, that it rent in peeces two of his ships, and so tossed the other, that they were enforced to heaue ouerboorde part of thei vyttualles to lyghten them. All suche as escaped, sayled backe agayne to the coastes of *Spayne*, where, beyng newly furnyshed and refreshed by the kyngs officers, they went forward on thei voyage. The master Pilot of the gouernours shyp, was *Iohannes Vesputius* a *Florentine*, the newiew of *Americus Vesputius*, who left him as it were by discent of inheritance, the experience of the *Harpners* facultie, and knowledge of the sea, carde, and compasse. But we were aduertised of late by certayne whiche came from *Hispaniola*, that they had passed the Ocean with more prosperous winde: for this marchant shyppe commyng from *Hispaniola*, founde them landing at certayne Islands neere therabout. But in the meane time, whyle my importunate callers on, *Galeacens Butrigarius*, and *Iohannes Cursius*, men studious by al meanes to gratifie your holynesse, ceassed not to put me in remembrance that they had one in a redynes to depart into *Italy*, & taried only to cary with him vnto your holines these my saye *Nereides*, although rudely decked, lest I shoulde bestow much tyme in bayne, I haue let passe many things, & wil reherse only such as seeme in my iudgement moste worthy memory, although somewhat disordered, as occasion hath serued. So it is therefore, that this *Petrus Arias* hath a wife named *Helisabetha Boadilla*, beyng nyse by the brothers syde to the marques of *Boadilla*, whiche reioyed the cite of *Segouia* to *Fernando* and *Helisabeth* princes of *Spayne*, at suche time as the

*Portugales* inuaded the kingdome of *Castile*, by reason wherof, they were encouraged fyrst to resyst, and then with open warre to assaile and expulle the *Portugales*, for the great treasure whiche kyng *Henry* brother to queene *Helisabeth* had geathered together there. This marquesse, while she liued, did euer shewe a manly and stout mynde, both in peace and warre, so that by her counsaile, many noble thinges were brought to good effecte in *Castile*: vnto this noble woman the wyfe of *Petrus Arias* was nyse by her brothers syde. She, folowynge the magnanimitie of her aunt, perceiuyng her husband now furnyshyng hym selfe to depart to the unknowen coastes of the newe worlde, and those large tractes of lande and sea, spake these wordes vnto hym: My most deare and welbeloued husbande, we ought not now to forget that from our young yeres we haue ben ioyned togeather with the yoke of holy matrimonie, to thintent that we shoulde so lyue togeather, and not asunder, duryng the tyme of our natural lyfe: wherfore for my part, to declare my affection hercin, you shal vnderstande, that whither soeuer your fatall destenie shall dyue you, epyther by the furious waues of the great Ocean, or by the manyfolde and horrible daungers of the lande, I wyl surely beare you company: there can no peryll chaunce to me so terrible, nor any kynde of death so cruell, that shal not be muche ealser for me to abyde, then to liue so farre separate from you. It were muche better for me to dye, and epyther to be cast into the sea, to be deuoured of the fyshes, or on the lande to the *Cannibales*, then with continual mournyng and bewaylyng, to liue in death, and delyuyng, whyle I consume in lookyng rather for my husbandes letters, then for hym selfe. This is my ful determination, not rashly, nor presently excogitate, nor conceiued by the lyght phantasie of womans brayne, but with long deliberation and good aduilement. Nowe therefore choose to whether of these two you wyl assent, epyther to thruste your swoorde in my throte, or to graunt me my request. As for the children which god hath geuen vs as pledges of our inseparable loue (for they had foure sonnes, and as many daughters) shal not stay me a moment: let vs leaue vnto them such goodes and possessions as haue ben left vs by our parentes and frendes, wherby they may lyue among the woozshypfull of thei order:

The wyfe of Petrus Arias.

¶ iii for



for other thynges I take no care. When this noble matrone of manly vertue had finished these woordes, her hulbande seepng the constant mynde of his wyfe, and her in a redynesse to do accordyng to her woordes, had no hart to denye her loupng petition, but embracing her in his armes, commended her intent, and consented to her request. She folowed hym therfore, as did *Ipsicratea* her *Mithridates*, with her heare hangyng loose about her shoulders: for she loued her hulband, as dyd *Halicarnassea* of *Caria* hers, being dead, and as dyd *Artemisia* her *Mausolus*. We haue also had aduertisement since theyr departure, that she (beyng brought by as it were amōg soft fethers) hath with no lesse stoute courage susteyned the roxynges and rages of the Ocean, then dyd eyther her hulbande, or any of the *Harpners* brought by euen among the surges of the sea. But to haue sayde thus muche hereof, this shall suffice: let vs now speake of other thynges no lesse worthy memoire. Therfore, wheras in the first Decade we haue made mention of *Vincentius Annez Pinzonus*, ye shal vnderstand, that he accompanied *Christophorus Colonus* the Admiral in his first voyage, and afterwarde made an other voyage of his owne charges with only one shyppe. Agayne, the fyrst peere after the departing of the Captaynes *Nicuesa* and *Fogeda*, he ran ouer those coastes from *Hispaniola*, and searched al the South syde of *Cuba*, from the East to the West, and sayled rounde about that Island, whiche to that day, for the great length thereof, was thought to haue ben part of the continent or firme land, although some other say that they dyd the lyke. *Vincentius Annez* therfore, knowyng now by experyence that *Cuba* was an Islande, sayled on further, and found other landes Westwarde from *Cuba*, but suche as the Admiral had first touched. Wherfore, beyng in manner encompassed with this newe lande, turning his course towarde the left hande, and rasing the coastes of that lande by the East, ouerpassing also the mouthes of the gulfes of *Beragua*, *Vraba*, and *Cuchibacboa*, he arryued at the region whiche in the first Decade we called *Paria* and *Os Draconis*, and entred into the great gulf of fre the water, which *Colonus* discovered, beyng replenished with great abundance of fysh, and famous by reason of the multitude of Islandes lying in the same, beyng distant Eastwarde from *Curiana* about an hundred and thirtie myles, in the which tracte,

are

are the regions of *Cumana* and *Manacapana*, whiche also in the first booke of the fyrst Decade we sayd to be regions of the large prouince of *Paria*, where many affyrme to be the greatest plentie of the best pearles, and not in *Curiana*. The kynges of these regions (whom they cal *Chiacones*, as they of *Hispaniola* cal them *Cacici*) beyng certified of the comming of our men, sent certayne spyes to enquire what new nation was arryued in theyr coastes, what they brought, and what they would haue, and in the meane tyme furnyshed a number of theyr Canoas (whiche they call *Chibchos*) with men armed after theyr manner: for they were not a lytle astonysed to beholde our shippes with the sayles spread, whereas they vse no sayles, nor can vse but small ones yf they would, by reason of the narrowesse of theyr Canoas. Swarmyng therfore about the shyppe with theyr Canoas (whiche we may wel cal *Monoxyla*, because they are made of one whole tree) they feared not to shoote at our men, beyng yet within their shippes, and keepyng them selues under the hatches, as safely as yf they had ben defended with stone walles. But when our men had shotte of certayne peeces of ordinaunce agaynst them, they were so discomfited with the noyle and slaughter thereof, that they droue them selues to flyght. Being thus disparcled, our men chased them with the ship boate, toke many, and slue many. When the kynges heard the noyle of the gunnes, and were certified of the losse of theyr men, they sent ambassadours to *Vincentius Agnes* to entreate of peace, fearyng the spoyle of theyr gooddes, and destruction of theyr people, yf our men should come alande in theyr wrath and furie. They desired peace therfore, as coulde be coniectured by theyr signes and poyntynges: for our men vnderstoode not one woord of theyr language. And for the better prooffe that they desired peace, they presented our men with thre thousande of those weyghtes of gold that the Spany-ardes call *Castellanium Aureum*, whiche they commonly call *Pesum*. Also a great barrel of wood ful of moiste excellent masculine Frankencense, weighing about two thousande and sixe hundred poundes weight, after eight ounces to the pounce: where- by they knewe that that lande brought forth great plentie of Frankencense, for there is no entercourse of marchandises betweene the inhabitauntes of *Paria* and the *Sabeans*, being so farre

Plentie of pearles,

The vse of gunnes,

Great abundance of gold &amp; frankencense, Olibanum.

Sabea is a coaste in Vraba, which bringeth forth Frankencense.

farre distant, wheras also they of *Paria* knowe nothing without theyr owne coastes. With the golde and *Frankencense* whiche they presented to our men, they gaue them also a great multitude of theyr peacockes, both cockes and hennes, dead and alpye, as wel to satysfie theyr present necessitie, as also to carry with them into *Spayne* for encrease, lykewyse certayne carpettes, couerlettes, table clothes, and hangyngs, made of *Gossampine* like, finely wrought after a strange deuice, with pleasant and variable colours, haupng golden belles, and such other spangles and pendauntes, as the *Italians* call *Sonaglios*, and the *Spanyarde* *Cascaules*, hangyng at the pursles therof. They gaue them furthermoze speakyng poppyngayes of sundry colours, as many as they woulde aske: for in *Paria* there is no lesse plentie of poppyngayes, then with vs of doves or sparows. The inhabitants of these regions, both men & women, are apparelled with vestures made of gossampine cotton, the men to the knees, and the women to the calfe of the legge. The fashion of theyr apparel is simple and playne, muche lyke vnto the *Turkes*: but the mens is double, and quilted, like that which the *Turkes* vse in the warres. The princes of *Paria* are rulers but for one yeere: but theyr auctoritie is no lesse among the people both in peace and warre, then is chauctoritie of other kyngs in those regions. Their villages are builded in compasse, along by the bankes of al that great gulfe. Fyue of theyr princes came to our men with theyr presentes, whose names I thought woorthy to be put in this historie, in remembrance of so notable a thing, *Chiaconus Chiauccha* (that is, the prince of *Chiauccha*, for they cal princes or kyngs *Chiaconus*) *Chiaconus Pintiguanus*, *Chiaconus Chamailaba*, *Chiaconus Polomus*, and *Chiaconus Potto*. The gulfe beyng first found of the *Admiral Colon*, they cal *Baia Natiuitatis*, because he entred into the same in the day of y<sup>e</sup> natiuitie of *Christ*, but at that time he only passed by it without any further searchoyng, and *Baia* in the *Spanyshe* tong, signifieth a gulfe. The *Vincentius* had thus made a league with these princes, folowynge his appoynted course, he founde many regions toward y<sup>e</sup> East, desolate by reason of diuers floods and ouerflowyngs of waters: also many standyng pooles in diuers places, and those of exceeding largenesse. He ceassed not to folowe this tracte, vntyl he came to the poynt or cape of that mooste

Rulers for  
one yeere.

The great  
gulfe of *Paria*.

W. 11.

most long lande. This poynt seemeth as though it woulde inuade the mount *Atlas* in *Africa*: for it prospecteth toward that part of *Aphyke*, which the *Portugales* cal *Caput bonae Sperantie*. The poyntes or capes of the mount *Atlas*, are rough and sauage, neere vnto the sea. The cape of *Bona Speranza*, gathereth thyrtye and foure degrees of the South pole, called the pole *Antarctike*, but that poynt only seuen degrees. I suppose this lande to be that, whiche I fynde in olde wyrters of *Cosinographie* to be called the great *Ilande Atlantike*, without any further declaryng eyther of the situation, or of the nature thereof.

The great I-  
lande Atlantike.

The eight booke of the seconde Decade, of  
the supposed continent.



When *John* the king of *Portugale* liued, whiche was predeceffour to him that nowe raigneth, there arose a great contention betwene the *Castilians* and the *Portugales*, as concernyng the dominion of these newe founde landes. The *Portugales*, because they were the fyrst that durst attempt to searche the Ocean sea synce the memorie of man, affirmed that al the nauigations of the Ocean, ought to parteyne to them only. The *Castilians* argued on the contrary part, that whatsoeuer God by the ministracion of nature hath created on the earth, was at the begynnynge common among men, and that it is therefore lawfull to euery man to possesse such lands as are voyde of *Christian* inhabitours. Whyle the matter was thus vncertainely debated, both parties agreed that the controuersie shoulde be desyded by the byshop of *Rome*, and plighted fayth to stande to his arbitrement. The kyngdome of *Castile* was at that tyme gouerned by that great queene *Helisabeth* with her husband: for the Realme of *Castile* was her dowrie. She also and the kyng of *Portugale*, were colyn germanes of two systers, by reason whereof, the dissention was moze easly pacified. By the assent therfore of both parties, *Alexander* the byshop of *Rome*, the vi. of that name, by chauctoritie of his leaden bull, dreyne a right lyne from the North to the South, an hundred leagues Westwarde,

Contention be-  
twene the *Ca-*  
*stilians* & *Por-*  
*tugales* for the  
newe landes.

The bishop of  
*Rome* diuideth  
the landes.

with:

without the paralels of those Ilandes whiche are called *Caput Viride*, or *Cabouerde*, within the compasse of this lyne (although some denye it) falleth the poynt of this lande whereof we haue spoken, whiche they cal *Caput Sancti Augustini*, otherwyle called *Promontorium Sancti Augustini*, that is, saint Augustines cape or poynt: and therefore it is not lawfull for the Castilians to fasten foote in the begynnyng of that land. *Vincentius Annez* therefore departed from thence, beyng aduertised of the inhabitantes, that on the other syde of the hygh mountaynes towarde the South, lying before his eyes, there was a region called *Ciamba*, whiche brought forth great plentie of golde. Of certayne captiues whiche he tooke in the gulfes of *Paria* (whiche certaynely parteyneth to the dominion of Castile) he brought some with him to *Hispaniola*, and left them with the young Admirall to learne our language: but he hym selfe repayed to the court, to make earnest suite to the kyng, that by his fauour he myght be gouernour of the Island of *Sancti Iohannis* (otherwyle called *Burichena*, being distant from *Hispaniola* only .xxv. leagues) because he was the fyrst finder of golde in that Islande. Before *Vincentius* made suite for this office, one *Don Christopher*, a Portugale, the sonne of the countie of *Camigna*, was gouernour of the Island, whom the *Canibales* of the other Ilandes slue, with al the Christian men that were in the same, except the Bishop and his familiers, whiche fled and hyfted for them selues, forsakynge the churche and al the ornaments thereof: for your holynesse hath consecrated foure byshops in these Ilands, at the request of the most catholique king. In *Sancto Dominico* the chiefe citie of *Hispaniola*, *Garsia de Padilla*, a regular Fryer of the order of saint *Frauncis*, is byshop. In the towne of *Conception*, doctor *Petrus Xuarez* of *Deza*, and in the Islande of saint *John* or *Burichena*, *Alphonfus Mansus* a licenci-ate, being both obseruautes of the institution of saint *Peter*. The fourth is Fryer *Barnarde* of *Mesa*, a man of noble parentage, borne in *Toledo*, a preacher, & biishop of the Islande of *Cuba*. The fift is *Iohannes Cabedus*, a fryer preacher, whom your holynesse annointed minister of *Christe*, to teache the Christian sayth among the inhabitantes of *Dariena*. The *Canibales* shal shortly repent them, and the blood of our men shalbe reuenged, and that the sooner, because that shortly after they had committed this

The golden re-  
gio of Ciamba.

The Islande of  
S. Iohannis.

Foure byshops  
of the Islande  
made by the bi-  
shop of Rome.

this abominable slaughter of our men, they came agayne from theyr owne Islande of *Sancta crux* (otherwyle called *Ay Ay*) to the Islande of *Sancti Iohannis*, and slue a kyng whiche was a freende to our men, and ate hym, and al his family, bitterly subuertynge his village, vpon this occasion, that violating the law of hostage, he had slayne seuen *Canibales* whiche were left with hym by composition to make certayne Canoas, because the Islande of *Sancti Iohannis* beareth greater trees, and apter for that purpose, shendeth the Island of *Sancti crux*, the cheefe habitatio of the *Canibales*. These *Canibales* yet remaynyng in the Island, certayne of our men saylyng from *Hispaniola*, chaunced vpon them. The thyng beyng vnderstoode by the interpretours, our men quarelling with them, and calling them to accompt for that mischeuous deede, they immediatly directed theyr bowes and venemous arrowes against them, and with cruell countenances threatned them to be quiet, lest it shoulde repent them of theyr commynge thither. Our men fearyng theyr venemous arrowes (for they were not prepared to fyght) gaue them signes of peace. Beyng demaunded why they destroyed the byllage, and where the king was with his familie, they answered, that they rased the byllage, and cut the kyng with his familie in peeces, and ate them in the reuenge of theyr seuen woorkmen: and that they had made faggottes of theyr bones, to cary them to the wiues and chyldren of theyr slayne woorkmen, in wytnesse that the bodies of theyr husbandes and parentes lay not vreuenged, and therewith shewed the faggottes of bones to our men, who beyng astonyshed at theyr fiercenesse and crueltie, were enforced to dissemble the matter, and holde theyr peace, quarellynge no further with them at that tyme. These and suche other thynges doo dayly chaunce, the whiche I do let passe, lest I shoulde offende the eares of your holynesse with such bloody narrations. Thus haue we sufficiently digressed from the regions of *Beragua* and *Vraba*, beyng the cheefest foundations of our purpose. We wyl now therefore entreate somewhat of the largenesse and deapth of the ryuers of *Vraba*: also declare both what they and the landes which they runne through do bynyng forth: lykewyle of the greatnesse of the lande from the East to the West, and of the breadth thereof from the South to the North, and what theyr opinion and hope

The *Canibales*  
of the Island of  
*Sancta Crux*.

The ryuers of  
*Vraba*.

hope is of thynges yet unknownen in the same. We wil therefore begyn at the newe names, wherewith the Spanyardes haue named these prouinces, synce they were vnder the dominions of the Christians.

The nienth booke of the second Decade, of the supposed continent.



*B*eragua therfore they called *Castella Aurea*, that is, golden Castile, and *Vraba* they named *Andalusia noua*, that is, newe Andalusia. And lyke as of many Ilandes whiche they subdued, they chole *Hispaniola* for the cheefe place of theyr habitation: so in the large tracte of *Paria*, they appoynted theyr

colonie or biding place in the two regions of *Vraba* and *Beragua*, that al suche as attempt any voyages in those coastes, may resort to them, as to safe portes to be refreshed when they are weerie or dyuen to necessitie. Al our seedes and plantes do now marueylously encrease in *Vraba*, lyke wyle blades, settes, slippes, grasses, suger canes, and suche other as are brought from other places to those regions, as also beastes and foules, as we haue sayd before: O marueylous fruitfulness. Twentie dayes after the seede is sownen, they geather rypp cucumbers, and such lyke, but Colwדות, Beetes, Lettule, Borage, are rypp within the space of ten dayes. Gourdes, Melones, and Pompsions, within the space of .xxviii. dayes. *Dariena* hath many natie trees and fruites, of diuers kinds, with sundry tastes, & hollome for the vse of men, of the which I haue thought it good to describe certaine of the best. They nouryshe a tree whiche they call *Guaiana*, that beareth a fruite muche resembleng the kinde of Citrons which are commonly called Limones, of taste somwhat sharpe, myrr with sweetenes. They haue also abundance of nuts of pinetrees, and great plentie of Date trees, which beare fruites bigger then the Dates that are knownen to vs, but they are not apt to be eaten for theyr to much sowzenesse. Wilde & barren Date trees grow of them selues in sundry places, the branches wherof they vse for beeynes, and eate also the buddes of the same. *Guarauana*, being hygher and hygger then the orange tree, byngeth forth a great fruite

The fruitfulness  
of Vraba.

The fruitfulness  
of Dariena

fruite as hygge as pome Citrons. There is another tree much like to a chestnut tree, whose fruite is like to the bigger sorte of pygs, being hollome and of pleasant taste. *Mameis*, is another tree that byngeth forth fruite as hygge as an orange, in taste nothing inferior to the best kindes of Melones. *Guananala*, beareth a fruite lesse then any of the other, but of sweete sauour like spice, and of dilectable taste. *Houos* is another tree, whose fruite both in shape and taste is muche lyke to pyms, but somewhat hygger: they are surely perswaded that this is the *Myrobalane* tree. These growe so abundantly in *Hispaniola*, that the hogges are fedde with the fruite therof, as with mast among vs. The hogges like this kynde of feedyng so wel, that when these fruites ware ripe, the swineheards can by no meanes keepe them out of the woods of these trees, by reason whereof, a great multitude of them are become wilde. They also affirme, that in *Hispaniola* swines flesh is of muche better taste and moze whollome then mutton: for it is not to be doubted, but that diuers kindes of meates do engender sundry tastes and qualities in such as are nourished therewith. The most puissant prince *Ferdinandus*, declared that he had eaten of another fruite brought from those landes, being full of scales, with keyes, much lyke a pineapple in fourme and colour, but in tendernes equal to melow pepons, and in taste excedyng al garden fruites: for it is no tree, but an hearbe, much like vnto an archichoke, or *Acantho*: The king him selfe gaue the cheefest commendation to this. I haue eaten none of these fruites: for of a great number which they brought from thence, only one remained vncorrupted, the other being putrified by reason of the long voyage. Al suche as haue eaten of them newly geathered in their natie soyle, do marueylously commende theyr sweetenesse and pleasaunt taste. They dygge also out of the grounde certayne rootes growyng of them selues, whiche they call *Betatas*, muche lyke vnto the nauie rootes of *Billane*, or the great pusses or mushromes of the earth. Howsoeuer they be dressed, eyther fryed or sodde, they geue place to no suche kynde of meate in pleasant tendernes. The skime is somwhat tougher then eyther the nauies or mushromes, and of earthy colour, but the inner meate therof is very white: These are nourished in gardens, as we sayd of *Iucca* in the first Decade. They are also eaten rawe, and

Swines flesh  
of better taste &  
more hollome  
then mutton,

Fruitess putrified  
on the sea.

and haue the taste of rawe chestnuts, but are somewhat sweeter. We haue spoken sufficiently of trees, hearbes, and fruites, we wyl now therefore entreate of thynges fencitiue. The landes and desolate pastures of these regions, are inhabited and deuoured of wyld and terrible beastes, as Lions, Tygers, and suche other monstres as we now knowe, and haue ben described of olde auctours in tyme past. But there is specially one beast engendred here, in which nature hath endeuoured to shew her cunning: This beast is as bygge as an Oxe, armed with a long snoute lyke an Elephant, and yet no Elephant, of the colour of an ore, and yet no ore, with the hooft of a hoxse, and yet no hoxse, with eares also muche lyke vnto an Elephant, but not so open, nor so much hangyng downe, yet muche wyder then the eares of any other beast. Of the beast which beareth her whelpes about with her in her second belly as in a purse (beyng knowne to none of the olde wyrters) I haue spoken in the fyrst Decade, which I doubt not to haue come to the handes of your holynesse. Let vs nowe therefore declare what resteth of the flooddes and ryuers of *Vraba*. The riuer of *Dariena* falleth into the gulfe of *Vraba*, with a narrow chanel, scarcely able to beare the Canoas or Lighters of that prouince, and runneth by the village where they chose theyr dwelling place, but the ryuer in the corner of the gulfe whiche we sayde that *Vaschus* passed by, they founde to be .xxiii. furlonges in breadth (which they call a league) and of exceeding deapth, as of two hundred cubits, falling into the gulfe by diuers mouthes. They say that this riuer falleth into the gulfe of *Vraba*, lyke as the ryuer *Ister* (otherwyle called *Danubius*, and *Danowe*) falleth into the sea *Pontike*, and *Nilus* into the sea of *Egypte*, wherefore they named it *Grandis*, that is, great: whiche also they affyrme to nouryshe many and great Crocodiles, as the old wyrters testifie of *Nilus*, and especially as I haue learned by experience, hauyng sayled vp and downe the riuer of *Nilus*, when I was sent Ambassadour to the Souldane of *Alcayr*, at the commaundement of the most catholique kyng. What I may therefore geather out of the wyrtynge of so many learned auctours as concernyng the riuer of *Nilus*, I knowe not: for they say that nature hath geuen two ryuers of that name to water the lande, whether they wyl them to spring out of the mountaynes of the moone

Lions and Tygers.

A strange beast.

The ryuers of Vraba.

A league is .xxiii. furlonges.

Danubius.

A Crocodile is muche lyke a Jacute, but of exceeding bygnesse.

moone or the sunne, or out of the tops of the rough mountaynes of *Ethiopia*, affyrmyng one of the same to fall into the gulfe of *Egypt* toward the North, and the other into the South Ocean sea. What shal we say in this place? Of that *Nilus* in *Egypt* there is no doubt. The Portugales also which sayle by the coastes of the *Ethiopians* called *Nigrita*, and by the kyngdome of *Melinda*, passyng vnder the Equinoctial lyne, among theyr marueplous inuentions haue found another toward the South, and earnestly affirme the same to be also deriued from the mountaynes of the moone, and that it is another chanel of *Nilus*, because it bringeth forth Crocodiles, whereas it hath not ben read before time, that any other riuer nourished Crocodiles sauing only *Nilus*. This riuer the Portugales call *Senega*. It runneth through the region of the *Nigritas*, beyng very fruitfull toward the North shore, but on the South syde sandie and rough. Crocodiles are also engendred herein. What shal we then say of this thirde? yea I may wel say the fourth; for I suppose them also to be Crocodiles, whiche *Colonus* with his company found, armed with scales as hard as shelles, in the ryuer called *Delagartos*, wherof we haue made mention before. Shal we say that these ryuers of *Dariena* also and *Vraba*, haue theyr original from the mountaynes of the moone, wheras they spring out of the next mountaynes, and can by no meanes haue the same original with *Nilus* in *Egypt*, or that in *Nigrita*, or els that in the kyngdome of *Melinda*, from whence so euer they are deriued, whereas these other (as we haue sayde) spring out of the next mountaynes, which diuide another South sea, with no great distance from the North Ocean. Wherefore, it appeareth by experience of such as haue trauailed the world in our tyme, that other waters helpde the riuer of *Nilus* in *Egypt*, may lykelwyle byng forth Crocodiles. In the *Barbyses* also and fennes of the regions of *Dariena*, are founde great plenty of *Phesantes* and *Peacocks* (but not of variable colours) with manye other kyndes of byrdes and foules vnylike vnto ours, aswel apt to be eaten, as also to delyte the eares of men with pleasaunt noyse. But our *Spanyarden*, because they are ignorant in fowlyng, take but fewe. Also innumerable poppingayes of sundry kyndes are founde chattering in the groues of those fennie places. Of these there are some equall to Ca-

The Portugales nauigations.



A philosophi-  
cal discourse  
as concerning  
the original of  
springs and  
rivers.

The breadth  
of the lande  
at Oraba, from  
the North Sea  
to the  
South sea.

pons in bygnesse, and some as lytle as sparowes. But of the di-  
uersitie of poppngapes, we haue spoken sufficiently in the fyrste  
Decade: for in the case of this large lande, *Colonus* hym selfe  
brought and sent to the courte a great number of euery kynde,  
the whiche it was lawfull for all the people to beholde, and are  
yet dayly brought in like manner. There remaineth yet one  
thyng mooste woorthy to be put in hystorie, the whiche, I had ra-  
ther to haue chaunced into the handes of *Cicero* or *Linie*, then in-  
to myne: for the thyng is so marueylous in my estimation, that  
I fynde my wytte more entangled in the discription hereof, then  
is sayde of the henne when she seeth her young chpyken intwrap-  
ped in towne or flaxe. The breadth of that lande from the North  
Ocean to the south sea, is only sixe dayes iourney, by relation of  
the inhabitauntes. The multitude therfore and greatnesse of the  
rivers on the one syde, and on the other syde the narrownesse of  
the lande, bying me into suche doubt howe it can come to passe,  
that in so lytle a space of thre dayes iourney, measuryng from  
the high toppes of those mountaynes, I doo not vnderstande  
howe so many and so great ryuers may haue recourse vnto this  
North sea: for it is to be thought, that as many do flow toward  
thinhabitants of the south. These rivers of *Oraba* are but small,  
in comparison of many other in those coastes: for the *Spany-  
ardes* say, that in the tyme of *Colonus*, they found and passed by an  
other riuer after this, whose gulfe fallynge into y<sup>e</sup> sea, they affirme  
to be litle lesse then a hundred myles in the fyrst coastes of *Paria*,  
as we haue sayde elsewhere: for they say, that it falleth from the  
toppes of high mountaynes with so swyft and furious a course,  
that by the violence and greatnesse thereof, it dyueth backe the  
sea, although it be rough & enforced with a contrary wynd. They  
al affirme lykewyse, that in al the large tracte therof, they felt no  
swyre or salt water, but that all the water was freshe, swecte,  
and apt to be drunke. Thinhabitantes call this ryuer *Marag-  
nonum*, and the regions adiacent to the same, *Mariatambal*, *Ca-  
mamorus*, and *Paricora*: besyde those rivers whiche I haue na-  
med before, as *Darien*, *Grandis*, *Dabaiba*, *Beragua*, *Sancti Mathei*,  
*Boius gatti*, *Delagartos*, & *Gaira*, they which of late haue searched  
those coastes, haue founde many other. Deliberatyng there-  
fore with me selfe, from whence these mountaynes, beyng so  
narrowe

narrowe and neare vnto the sea on both sydes, haue suche great  
holowe caues or denues of such capacite, and from whence they  
are fylled, to cast forth suche abundance of water: hereof also as-  
kyng them the opinions of the inhabitauntes, they affirme them  
to be of diuers iudgements herein, alleaging fyrst the greatnes  
of the mountaynes to be the cause, whiche they say to be verpe  
high, whiche thyng also *Colonus* the first fynder thereof affirmeth  
to be true, addyng thereunto that the paradise of pleasure is in  
the tops of those mountaynes whiche appeare from the gulfe of  
*Paria* & *Os Draconis*, as he is fully perswaded. They agree there-  
fore that there are great caues within these mountaynes, but it  
resteth to consyder from whence they are fylled. If therfore al the  
rivers of freshe waters, by the opinion of many, do so flowe out  
of the sea, as dyuen and compelled through the passages of  
pores of the earth, by the ponderous weyght of the sea it selfe,  
as we see them breake forth of the springes, and directe theyr  
course to the sea agayne, then the thyng is lesse to be marueyl-  
ed at here, then in other places: for we haue not read that in  
any other place, two suche seas haue enuironed any lande with  
so narrowe symytes: for it hath on the ryght syde the great De-  
an, where the sunne goeth downe on the left hande, and another  
on the other syde where the sunne ryseth, nothyng inferiour to the  
fyrst in greatnesse, for they suppose it to be myrte and ioyned  
as al one with the sea of East India. This lande therfore beyng  
burdened with so great a weyght on the one syde, & on the other,  
(yf this opinion be of any value) is enforced to swalowe vp such  
deuoured waters, and agayne to cast forth the same in open  
springes and streames. But yf we shall denye that the earth  
draweth humours of the sea, and agree that all fountaynes or  
springes are engendred of the conuersion or turnyng of ayre  
into water, distilling within the holow places of the mountaynes  
(as the most part thinke) we wyll geue place rather to chauch-  
rinite of them whiche stycke to those reasons, then that our sense  
is satisfied of the full truthe thereof. Yet do I not repugne, that in  
some caues of mountaynes, water is turned into ayre: for I  
mee selfe haue seene, howe in the caues of manye mountaynes  
in Spayne, in manner shewes of rayne do fall continuallye,  
and that the water geathered by this meanes, doth sende forth  
J2 ii certayne

The sea.

The lande en-  
closed with  
two seas.

Conuersion of  
ayre into wa-  
ter in the ca-  
ues of mount-  
aynes.

certaine riuers by the sydes of the mountaynes, wherewith all suche trees as are planted on the steepe or foote of the mountaynes, as vines, olive trees, and suche other, are watered, and this especially in one place: as the right honorable Lodouike the Cardinal of Aragonie, most obsequious to your holynesse, and two other bishops of Italy, whereof the one is *Siluius Pandorus*, and the other an Archbishop (whose name and title I do not remember) can beare me witnesse: for when we were together at *Granata*, lately deliuered from the dominion of the Moors, and walked for our pastyme to certaine pleasant hilles (by the whiche there ranne a fayre ryuer). While Cardinal Lodouike occupied hym selfe in shootyng at byrdes whiche were in the bushes neere vnto the ryuer, I & thother two bishops determined to clyme the mountaynes, to searche the original and spring of the ryuer: for we were not farre from the toppes thereof. Following therfore the course of the ryuer, we founde a great caue, in which was a continual fall of water, as it had ben a showre of rayne, the water whereof, falling into a trenche made with mans hande, encreaseth to a ryuer, and runneth downe by the sydes of the mountaynes. The lyke is also scene in this famous towne of *Vallado-leto* (where we nowe sojourne) in a certaine greene close, not past a furlong distant from the walles of the towne. I graunt therefore, that in certaine places, by conuersion of the ayrie deaw into water, within the caues of suche mountaynes, many springes and riuers are engendred: but I suppose that nature was not sollicitate to byng forth suche great floods by this so small industrie. Two reasons therfore do sounde best to my iudgement: wherof the one is, the often fall of rayne: the other, the continual autumne or spring tyme which is in those regions, being so nere vnto the Equinoctial, that the common people can perceiue no difference betweene the length of the day and the nyght throughout all the yeere, where as these two seasons are moze apt to engender abundance of rayne, then eyther extreme wynter, or feruent sommer. An other reason in effect much like vnto the first, is this: If the sea be full of pores, and that by the pores thereof, being opened by the south wyndes, we shal consent that vapours are lyfted vp, wherof the watery cloudes are engendred, this lande must needes be moysted with moe showres then anye other,

The often fall of  
rayne and con-  
tinual spring  
tyme.  
The Equinoctiall.

The pores of  
the sea, and the  
south wynde.

ther, yf it be as narrowe as they say, and enuironed with two mayne seas collaterally beatyng on the same: howsoeuer it be, I can not but geue credite to the report of suche worthy men as haue recourse to those regions, and can no lesse then declare the same, albeit it may seeme incredible to some ignorant persons, not knowing the power of nature, to whom, *Plinie* was perswaded, that nothing was impossible. We haue therefore thought it good to make this discourse by the way of argument, lest on the one syde, men of good learnyng and iudgement, and on the other syde, suche as are studious to finde occasions of quarelyng in other mens wytynges, shoulde iudge vs to be so vndiscrete, lightly to geue credite to euery tale, not being consonant to reason: but of the force and great violence of those freshe waters, whiche repullying the sea, make so great a gulf (as we haue sayde) I thynke the cause thereof to be the great multitude of floods and riuers, whiche beyng geathered together, make so great a poole, and not one ryuer, as they suppose. And forasmuch as the mountaynes are exceeding high and steepe, I thinke the violence of the fall of the waters to be of suche force, that this conflict betweene the waters, is caused by thimpulsion of the poole, that the salt water can not enter into the gulf. But here perhaps some wyl marueyle at me, why I should marueyle so much hereat, speakyng vnto me scornefully, after this manner: Why doth he so marueyle at the great riuers of those regions? Hath not *Italie* his *Eridanus*, named the kyng of ryuers of the old wyters: Haue not other regions also the lyke: as we reade of *Tanais*, *Ganges*, and *Danubius*, which are sayde so to ouercome the sea, that freshe water may be drawen fourtie myles within the same. These men I would satisfie with this aunswere. The famous ryuer of *Padus* in *Italie* (whiche they nowe call *Po*, and was of the Greekes called *Eridanus*) hath the great mountaynes called *Alpes*, diuiding *Fraunce*, *Germaine*, and *Pannonie*, from *Italic*, lying at the backe therof, as it were bulwarke agger, full of moysture, and with a long tracte receiuyng *Ticinam*, with innumerable other great ryuers, falleth into the sea *Adriatique*. The lyke is also to be vnderstoode of the other. But these ryuers (as our men were enfourmed by the kynges) fall into the Ocean sea with larger and fuller channels neere hande,

The fludde  
Eridanus.

and some there are whiche affirme this lande to be very large in other places, although it be but narrow here. There cometh also to my remembrance another cause, the whiche although it be of no great force, yet do I entende to wyte it. Perhaps therefore the length of the lande reachyng farre from the East to the West, if it be narrowe, may be a helpe hereunto: for as we reade, that the ryuer *Alpheus* passeth through the holowe places under the sea, from the cite of *Elis* in *Peloponeso*, and breaketh forth at the fountayne or spring *Arctusa* in the Island of *Sicillia*, so is it possible that these mountaines may haue such long caues parteynyng vnto them, that they may be the receptacles of the water passing through the landes beyng farre distant, and that the same waters commyng by so long a tracte, may in the way be greatly encreased, by the conuersion of ayre into water, as we haue sayde. Thus much haue I spoken freely, permitting both to them which do frendly interprete other mens dooyns, and also to the malicious scorers, to take the thing euen as them lysteth, for hitherto I can make no further declaration hereof, but when the trueth shalbe better knowen, I wil do my diligence to commit the same to wytyng. Nowe therefore, forasmuch as we haue spoken thus muche of the breadth of this lande, we entende to describe the length and fourme of the same.

The ryuer  
Alpheus.

Longe caues in  
the mount-  
taines.

The tenth booke of the seconde Decade, of  
the supposyd continent.

The length  
and fourme of  
the Island.



What lande reacheth forth into the sea, euen as doth Italy, although not lyke the legge of a man, as it doth. But nowe I compare a Pigmean or a dwarfe, to a Giant: for that part thereof whiche the Spanyarden haue ouer runne, from the sayd East poync which reacheth toward the sea Atlantike, (the ende not beyng yet founde toward the West) is more then eyght tymes longer then Italye. And by what reason I am moued to say eyght tymes, your holynesse shall vnderstande. From the tyme therefore that I fyrste determined to obeye theyr requestes, who wylled me fyrst in your name to wyte these thynges

thynges in the Latine tongue, I did my endeuour that al thyngs myght come forth with due tryal and experience: whereupon I repayed to the Bishop of *Burges*, beyng the cheefe refuge of this nauigation. As we were therfore secretly togeather in one chamber, we had many instruments pertainyng to these affaires, as globes, and many of those maps whiche are commonly called the shipmans cardes, or cardes of the sea. Of the which, one was drawen by the Portugales, wherunto *Americus Vesputius* is said to haue put to his hande, beyng a man most expert in this facultie, and a Florentine borne, who also under the stipende of the Portugales, had sayled toward the South pole many degrees beyonde the Equinoctiall. In this carde we founde the first front of this lande to be broder then the kynges of *Praba* had perswaded our men of theyr mountaynes. To another, *Colonus* the Admiral, while he yet lyued, and searched those places, had geuen the beginning with his owne handes: wherunto *Bartholomewus Colonus* his brother and Lieutenannt had added his iudgement, for he also had sayled about those coastes. Of the Spanyarden lykewyse, as many as thought them selues to haue anye knowledge what parteyned to measure the land & the sea, drew certayne cardes in parchment as concernyng these nauigations. Of all other, they moste esteeme them whiche *Iohannes de la Cossa* the companion of *Fogeda* (whom we sayde to be slayne of the people of *Caramairi* in the hauens of *Carthago*) and another expert pylote called *Andreas Moralis*, had set forth. And this aswel for the great experience which they both had (to whom these tractes were aswel known as the chambers of theyr owne houses) as also that they were thought to be cunninger in that part of Cosmographie, which teacheth the discription and measuring of the sea. Conferring therfore al these cardes togeather, in euery of the whiche was drawen a lyne, expyessing not the myles, but leagues, after the maner of the Spanyarden, we took our compasses, & began to measure the sea coastes after this order. From that poync or fronte whiche we sayde to be included within the lyne parteynyng to the Portugales iurisdiction, beyng drawen by the paralelles of the Islandes of *Cabouerde*, but a hundred leagues furth towards the West (whiche they haue now also searched on euery syde) we founde three hundred leagues to the

Cardes of  
the sea.

The carde of  
Americus  
Vesputius.

The carde of  
Colonus.

The carde of  
Iohannes de la  
Cossa.

The carde of  
Andreas mor-  
alis.

The maner of  
measuring the  
cardes.

28 league.

entraunce of the riuer *Maragnonum*: and from thence to *Os Draconis* seuen hundred leagues, but somewhat lesse by the discription of some, for they doo not agree in al poyntes exquisitely. The Spaniards wyl that a league conteyne foure myles by sea, and but thye by lande. From *Os Draconis*, to the cape or poynt of *Cuchibacoa*, whiche being passed, there is a gulf on the left hande, we measured three hundred leagues in one Card, & much thereabout in another. From this poynt of *Cuchibacoa*, to the region of *Caramairi*, in whiche is the haven *Carthago* (whiche some cal *Carthagena*) we found about a hundred & seuentie leagues. From *Caramairi* to the Island *Fortis*, fiftie leagues. From thence to the gulfes of *Vraba*, among the whiche is the byllage called *Sancta Maria Antiqua*, where the Spaniards haue appoynted theyr habitation, only xxxiii. leagues. From the ryuer of *Vraba* in the prouince of *Dariena*, to y riuer of *Beragua*, where *Nicuesa* had intended to haue fastened his foote, if God had not otherwyle decreed, we measured a hundred and thirtie leagues. From *Beragua*, to that riuer, which we said of *Colonus* to be called *Sancti Matthei*, in the which also *Nicuesa* loosing his Carauel, wandered in great calamities, we founde in our Cardes only a hundred and fourtie leagues: Yet many other whiche of late tyme haue come from these partes, haue described many mo leagues in this tract from the ryuer of *Sancti Matthei*, in whiche also they place diuers ryuers, as *Aburema*, with the Island called *Scutum Catiba*, lying before it, whose kyngs name is *Facies combusta*. Likewise another ryuer called *Zobraba*, after that, *Vrida*, and then *Duraba*, in the which golde is founde. Furthermore, many goodly hauens, as *Cerabaro* and *Hiebra*, so called of the inhabitants. And thus yf your holynesse wyl conferre these numbers together, you shall fynde in this accompt, a thousand, fyue hundred, twentie and fye leagues, which amount to fyue thousande & seuen hundred myles, from the poynt of *Sancti Matthei*, whiche they cal *Sinum perditorum*, that is, The gulf of y lost men. But we may not leaue here: for after this, one *Astur Ouetenfis*, otherwyle named *Iohannes Dias de Solis*, bozne in *Nebrissa* (whiche byngeth forth many learned men) sayling from this riuer towarde the West, ouerranne many coastes and leagues, but the middest of that shore bendeth towarde the North, and is not therefore directly placed in order with

The navigati-  
on of Iohannis  
Dias.

with the other, yet may we geather by a diameter or right lyne, about thye hundred leagues. Hereby may you geather what is the length of this lande, but of the breadth, perhaps we shal hereafter haue further knowledge. Let vs nowe speake somewhat of the varietie of the degrees of the eleuation of the pole starres. This lande therefore, although it reache forth from the East into the West, yet is it crooked, and hath the poynt bendyng so towarde the South, that it looeth the syght of the North pole, and is extended beyonde the Equinoctial lyne seuen degrees towarde the South pole: but the poynt hereof, parteyneth to the iurisdiction of the Portugales, as we haue sayde. Leauing this poynt, and saylyng towarde *Paria*, the North starre is seene againe, & is so much the more lifted vp, in how much the region enclineth more towarde the West. The Spaniards therefore haue diuers degrees of eleuations, but yll they come to *Dariena*, being theyr cheefe station and dwelling place in those landes: for they haue forsaken *Beragua*, where they founde the North pole eleuate viii. degrees, but from hence, the land doth so much bend towarde the North, that it is there in manner equal with the degrees of the strayghtes of *Hercules pylers*, especially yf we measure certaine landes founde by them toward the North syde of *Hispaniola*, among the which there is an Island about thye .C. and .xxv. leagues fro *Hispaniola*, as they say whiche haue searched the same, named *Boiuca*, or *Agnaneo*, in the which is a continuall spring of running water, of such marueilous vertue, that y water thereof being drunke, perhaps with some diet, maketh olde men young agayne. And here must I make protestation to your holynesse, not to thynke this to be sayde lyghtly or rashly, for they haue so spread this rumour for a trueth throughout al the court, that not onely al the people, but also many of them whom wysedome or fortune hath diuided from the common sort, thynke it to be true: but yf you shal aske my opinion herein, I wyl answer, that I wyl not attribute so great power to nature, but that God hath no lesse reserued this prerogatiue to hym selfe, then to searche the hartes of men, or to geue substance to priuation, (that is) beyng, to no beyng, except we shal belceue the fable of *Colchis* of *Eson* renouate, to be as true as the wpytynge of *Sibylla Erytbrea*, Albeit perhaps the scooles of *Philistines*

The eleuation  
of the pole.

The iurisdic-  
tion of the  
Portugales.

*Hercules pylers*.

The Islande  
*Boiuca* or  
*Agnaneo*.  
The renouati-  
on of age.  
A water of mar-  
ueilous vertue.

and

The accidentes  
of age may be  
bydden.

Extreme hun-  
ger.

This was at  
the siege of Jeru-  
salem.

Many dogges  
eaten.

A mangie dog  
dare folde.

and natural philosophers, wyl not muche stycke to affyrme, that  
by the vse of certayne secrete medicines and dyet, the accidentes  
of age (as they cal them) may be long bydden and deferred, whi-  
che they wyl to be vnderstoode by the renouation of age. And so  
haue sayde thus much of the length and breadth of these regions,  
and of the rough and hugious mountaynes, with theyr waterpe  
caues, also of the diuers degrees of that lande, I thinke it suf-  
ficient. But I thought it not good to let passe what chaunced  
to these miserable men among theyr generall calamities. I re-  
member that when I was a chyld, me thought my bowelles  
grated, and that my spirites were marueylously troubled for very  
pittie, when I read in the poete Virgyl, howe *Achemenides* was  
left of *Vlysses* vpon the sea bankes among y<sup>e</sup> gigantes called *Cyclo-  
pes*, where for the space of many dayes from the departyng of  
*Vlysses*, vntyl the comming of *Eneas*, he eate none other meate,  
but only berries and hawes. But our vnfortunate *Spaniards*,  
whiche folowed *Nicuesa* to inhabite *Beragua*, would haue este-  
med hawes & berries for great delicates. What should I heare  
speake of the head of an asse bought for a great pryce, and of such  
other extremities as men haue suffered in towne belleged:  
After that *Nicuesa* had determined to leaue *Beragua* for the bar-  
rennesse of the soyle, he attempted to searche *Portum Bellum*, and  
then the coastes of the poynt called *Marmor*, yf he myght there  
fynde a place moze fortunate to inhabite. In this meane tyme,  
so greuous famine oppressed his souldiers, that they neyther ab-  
steined fro eating of mangie dogges, which they had with them,  
as wel for theyr defence as for huntynge (for in the warre agaynst  
the naked people, dogges stoode them in great steade) nor yet  
sometyme from the flaine inhabitauntes: for they found not there  
any fruitfull trees, or plentie of foules, as in *Dariena*, but a barren  
ground, and not meete to be inhabited. Here certaine of the soul-  
diers made a bargayne with one of their felowes for the pryce of  
a leane dogge, who also was almost dead for hunger: they gaue  
the owner of the dogge many of those peeces of gold which they  
cal *Pesos*, or golden Castellans. Thus agreeing of the pryce, they  
slayed the dogge to be eaten, and cast his mangie skinne, with the  
bones of the head hangyng thereto, among the bushes. The  
day folowyng, a certayne footeman of theyr compaigne, chaun-

ced

ced to fynde the skynne being nowe full of maggottes and stynk-  
yng. He brought it home with hym, sodde it, and eate it. Many  
resorted to hym with theyr dysthes for the bothe of the sodde  
skynne, profering hym for euerye dysthefull a piece of golde.  
An other founde two coades, and sodde them, which a sycke man  
bought of hym for two fine shurtes, curiously wrought of linnen  
intermyxed with golde. Certayne other wanderyng about to  
seeke for vittuals, found in a pathway in the myddest of a feelde,  
a dead man, of the inhabitantes, which had ben slaine of his owne  
compaign, and was nowe rotten and stynkyng. They drewe  
hym a syde, dismembred hym secretly, roasted hym, and ate  
hym, therewith asswagynge theyr hunger, as yf they had ben  
fedde with pheasauntes. One also, whiche departing from his  
companions in the nyght season, went a fyshyng among the  
reeses of the maryshes, lyued only with slime or mudde for the  
space of certayne dayes, vntyl at the length creepynge, & almost  
deade, he founde the way to his felowes. And thus these mise-  
rable men of *Beragua*, vexed with these and suche other afflictions,  
were brought from the number of seuen hundred, threescore and  
ten souldiers, scarcely to fourtie, beyng nowe also added to the  
company of them in *Dariena*. Fewe were stayne of thinhabi-  
tauntes, but the resydue consumed by famine, breathed out  
theyr wery soules, openyng a way to the newe landes for suche  
as shal come after them, appeasyng the fury of the barbarous na-  
tions, with the pryce of theyr blood. Consyderynge therfore, after  
these stoxmes, with what ease other men shall ouerrunne and in-  
habite these landes, in respect to the calamities that these men  
haue suffered, they shal seme to goe to byde feastes, where all  
thynges are redy prepared agaynst theyr commynge. But where  
*Petrus Arias* arryued with the kynges nauie and newe supply of  
men, to this houre I knowe no certantie. What shal chaunce  
hereafter, I wyl make diligent inquisition, if I shal vnderstand  
this to be acceptable to your holynes. Thus I byd you farewell:  
from the courte of the most Catholyke kyng, the daye before the  
nones of December, in the yere of Christ. 1514.

Booth of a  
mangie dogs  
skynne.

Coades eaten.

A dead man  
eaten.

Port.

Petrus Arias  
whō the Spa-  
nyardis call  
Pedarias.

The



The fyrst booke of the thynde Decade, to the Bishop of Rome *Leo* the tenth.



**W**as determined (most holpe father) to haue closed by the gates to this new worlde, supposyng that I had wandered farre y<sup>e</sup>nough in the coastes thereof, whyle in the meane time newe letters were brought me from thence, whiche caused me agayne to take my penne in hande: for I receiued letters not only from certayne of mine acquayntance there, but also from *Vaschus Nunnez*, whom we sayde by the confidence of his owne power with his confederates, to haue vsurped the gouernance of *Dariena*, after the reiecting of *Nicuesa* and *Ancisus*, Lieutenantes. By his letter, wrytten after his warlike maner, we vnderstande that he hath passed ouer the mountaynes, diuidyng the Ocean, knowen to vs, from the other mayne sea on the south side of this lande, hitherto vnknowen. His epistle is greater then that called *Capreensis de Seiano*. But we haue geathered out of that and other, only such things as we thought most worthy to be noted. *Vaschus* so behaued hym selfe in these affayres, that he dyd not only pacifie the kynges displeasure conceiued agaynst him, but also made hym so fauourable and gracious good lord towarde hym, that he rewarded him and his companions with many honozable gyftes and priuileges for theyr attempts. Wherefore, I desyre your holynesse to encline your attentue eares, & to consyder with a ioyful minde what they haue brought to passe in these great enterpryses: for this valiaunt nation (the *Spanyarden* I meane) haue not only with great paynes and innumerable daungers subdued, to the Christian empire, infinite hundredes and legions, but also myriades of men. *Vaschus Nunnez* therfore, whether it were that he was impacient of idleness, (for a valiant mynde can not rest in one place, or be vnuccupied) or lest any other shoulde preuent him in so great a matter (suspectyng the newe gouernour *Petrus Arias*) or being moued by both these causes, and especially for that the kyng had taken displeasure with hym for suche thynges as he had done before, tooke the aduventure vppon hym, with a fewe men to bying that to passe,

*Vaschus Nunnez*, gouernour of *Dariena*.

The newe south Ocean.

Commendation of the *Spanyarden*.

A valiant mynde can not be idle.

passe whiche the sonne of kyng *Comogrus* thought coulde hardly haue ben done with the ayde of a thousande men, whereof *Petrus Arias* was appoynted captaine for the same purpose. Assembling therfore certayne of the olde souldiers of *Dariena*, and manye of those whiche came lately from *Hispaniola*, allured by the fame of greater plentie of golde, he geathered an armie of a hundred fourescore and tenne men. Thus beyng furnyshed, and redye to take his voyage by sea, whyle the wynde serued hym, he departed from *Dariena* with one *Brigandine*, and ten of their boates whiche they call *Canoas*, as we haue sayde. Fyrst therfore arriving in the dominion of *Careta* kyng of *Coiba*, and frende to the Christians, and leapyng his shyppe and boates there, he made his deuout prayers to almighty God, and therewith went forward on his tourney by lande towarde the mountaynes. Here he fyrst entred into the region of kyng *Poncha*, who fledde at his commyng, as he had done before. But *Vaschus* sent messengers to hym by the conduct of certayne of *Careta* his men, promysing hym frendshyp & defence agaynst his enemies, with many other benefites. *Poncha* thus entised with fayre speache and frendlye proffers, both of our men, and of the *Caretans*, came to our men gladly and wyllyngly, making a league of frendshyp with them. *Vaschus* enterteyned him very frendly, and perswaded him neuer thereafter to stande in feare. Thus they ioyned handes, embraced, and gaue great gyftes the one to the other, to knytte by the knotte of continuall amitie. *Poncha* gaue *Vaschus* a hundred and ten poundes weight of golde, of that pounce whiche the *Spanyarden* call *Pesum*. He had no greater plentie of golde at this tyme, by reason he was spoyled the peere before, as we haue said. *Vaschus* to recompence one benefite with another, gaue him certayne of our thynges, as counterfayte rynges, Chyrtal stones, copper chaynes, & bracelets, haukes belles, lookyng glasses, and suche other fine stuffe. These thynges they set muche by, & greatly esteeme: for suche thynges as are strange, are euery where counted precious. He gaue also to *Poncha* certayne axes to fell trees, whiche he accepted as a princely gyfte, because they lacke Iron, and al other mettals except golde: by reason wherof, they are enforced with great labour to cutte theyr trees to buylde theyr houses, and specially to make theyr boates holowe, without

*Vaschus* his voyage toward the golden mountaynes.

*Careta* kyng of *Coiba*.

Kyng *Poncha*.

Strange thynges are counted precious.

Lacke of Iron.

A Stone in the without instrumentes of Iron, with certayne sharpe stones,  
 Reede of Iron. whiche they fynde in the ryuers. Thus *Vaschus*, leauyng all  
 thynges in safetie behinde hym, marched forwarde with his ar-  
 mie toward the mountaines, by the conduct of certayne guides  
 and labourers whiche *Poncha* had geuen him, aswel to leade hym  
 the way, as also to cary his baggages, and open the straghtes  
 through the desolate places and craggie rockes ful of the denness  
 of wyld beasts: for there is seldome any entercourse of buying  
 and sell yng betweene these naked people, because they stande in  
 neede offewe thynges, and haue not the vse of money: but yf at  
 any tyme they exercise any barter yng, they doo it but neere  
 hande, exchang yng golde for houthold stufte, with their conynes,  
 whiche somewhat esteeme y same for ornamēt when it is wrought.  
 Other superfluities they vterly contemne, as hynderaunces of  
 theyr sweete libertie, forasmuche as they are geuen only to play  
 and idleness. And for this cause y high wayes whiche lye betwene  
 theyr regions, are not muche woyn with manye iourneyes, yet  
 haue theyr scoutes certayne priuie markes, wherby they knowe  
 the way the one to inuade the others dominions, and spoyle and  
 infest them selues on both sydes with mutual incursions priuily  
 in the nyght season. By the helpe therefore of theyr guides and  
 laborers, with our Carpenters, he passed ouer the horrible moun-  
 taines, and many great ryuers lying in the way, ouer the which  
 he made byddges, either with pylles or trunks of trees. And here  
 doo I let passe many thynges whiche they suffered for lacke of  
 necessaries, being also in maner ouercome with extreme labour,  
 lest I shoulde be tedious in rehearsing thinges of small value.  
 But I haue thought it good not to omitt suche dooynges as he  
 had with the kynges by the way. Therefore or euer he came to  
 the toppes of the high mountaynes, he entred into a region cal-  
 led *Quarequa*, and mette with the king thereof called by the same  
 name, with a great bande of men armed after theyr manner,  
 as with bowes and arrowes, long and byde two handed  
 swoordes made of wood, long staues hardened at the endes with  
 fyre, darts also and synges. He came proude and cruellye  
 agaynst our men, and sent messengers to them to bydde them  
 stande and proceede no further, demaundyng whyther they  
 went, and what they had to doo there: Herewith he came  
 forth

Superflui-  
 ties hynder  
 libertie.

Carpenters.

Byddges.

The region of  
 Quarequa.

forth and shewed hym selfe, beyng apparelled with al his no-  
 bilitie, but the other were al naked. Then appoaching toward  
 our men, he threatned the, with a Lions countenance, to depart  
 from thence, except they woulde be slayne euery mothers some.  
 Then our men denyed that they woulde goe backe, he assailed  
 them fiercely, but the battayle was soone finished: for assoone  
 as they hearde the noyse of the hargabulies, they beleued that  
 our men carped thunder and lyghtnyng about with them. Na-  
 my also beyng slayne and sore wounded with quarrels of crosse-  
 bowes, they turned theyr backs and fledde. Our men folowing  
 them in the chase, hewed them in peeces, as the Butchers doo  
 fleshe in the shambles, from one an arme, from another a legge,  
 from hym a buttocke, from another a shoulder, and from some  
 the necke from the bodye at one stroke. Thus, fyre hundred of  
 them, with theyr kyng, were slayne lyke brute beasts. *Vaschus*  
 founde the house of this kyng infected with molte abominable  
 and vnnaturall lechery: for he founde the kynges brother, and  
 many other young men in womens apparell, smoothe and effe-  
 minately decked, whiche by the report of suche as dwelt about  
 hym, he abused with preposterous venus. Of these about the  
 number of fourtie, he commaunded to be geuen for a pray to his  
 dogges: for (as we haue sayd) the Spanyardes vse the helpe of  
 dogges in theyr warres agaynst the naked people, whom they  
 inuade as fiercely and rauenyngly, as yf they were wilde bores  
 or Hartes: insomuche that our Spanyardes haue founde theyr  
 dogges no lesse faythful to them in al dangers and enterpryses,  
 then byd the Colophonians or Castabalences, whiche instituted  
 whole armies of dogges, so made to serue in the warres, that be-  
 yng accustomed to place them in the forefront of the bat-  
 tayles, they neuer shonke or gaue backe. Then the people had  
 hearde of the seuer punishment whiche our men had execu-  
 ted vpon that fylthy kynde of men, they resorted to them as it  
 had ben to *Hercules* for refuge, by violence byng yng with them  
 all suche as they knewe to be infected with that pestilence, spy-  
 tyng in theyr faces, and crying out to our men to take reuenge  
 of them, and rydde them out of the worlde from among men,  
 as contagious beasts. This styngyng abomination had  
 not yet entred among the people, but was exercised onely  
 by

kyng Quare-  
 qua is dyuen  
 to flyght.  
 Hargabulies.

Crossebowes

bi. C. Barbari-  
 ans are slaine

The vse of  
 dogges in the  
 warre agaynst  
 the naked  
 Barbarians.

Natural ha-  
 tred of vnnat-  
 ural sinne.

I woulde al  
men were of  
this opinion.

The haruest is  
great and the  
woorkmen  
but fewe.

Warlike peo-  
ple.

The higher, the  
colder.

A region of  
blacke, & Doores

Diseases of  
change of ayre  
and dyet.

The south sea.

by the noble men and gentlemen. But the people lyster by  
theyr handes & eyes toward heauen, gaue tokens that God was  
greeuouly offended with suche vyle deedes, affyrmyng this to  
be the cause of theyr so many thunderynges, lyghtnyng, and tem-  
pestes, wherewith they are so often troubled, and of the ouer-  
flowyng of waters which drowne theyr sets and frutes, wherof  
fampyne and diuers diseases ensue, as they simply and saydfully  
beleue, although they knowe none other GOD then the sunne,  
whom only they honour, thinkyng that it doth both geue and  
take away, as it is pleased or offended: Yet are they very docti-  
ble, and easie to be allured to our customes and religion, if they  
had any teacher. In theyr language there is nothyng vnplea-  
sant to the eare, or harde to be pronounced, but that all theyr  
woordes may be wyrtten with latine letters, as we sayde of the  
inhabitauntes of *Hispaniola*. It is a warlike nation, and hath  
ben euer hytherto molestous to theyr borderers: but the region  
is not fortunate with fruiteful grounde, or plentie of golde. Yet  
is it full of great barren mountaynes, beyng somewhat colde by  
reason of their height, and therefore the noble men and gentle-  
men are apparelled, but the common people liue content only  
with the benefites of nature. There is a region not past two  
dayes iourney distant from *Quarequa*, in whiche they founde on-  
ly blacke Doores, and those exceedyng fierce and cruel: They  
suppose that in tyme past certayne blacke Doores sayled thy-  
ther out of *Ethiopia* to robbe, and that by shypwacke or some  
other chaunce, they were dyuen to those mountaynes. The in-  
habitauntes of *Quarequa* lyue in continual warre and debate with  
these blacke men. Here *Vasbus* leauing in *Quarequa* many of his  
souldiers (which by reason they were not yet accustomed to such  
trauayles and hunger, fel into diuers diseases) tooke with hym  
certayne guides of the *Quarequatans*, to conduct hym to the  
toppes of the mountaynes. From the pallace of kyng *Poncha*, to  
the prospect of the other south sea, is only sixe dayes iourney, the  
whiche neuerthelesse, by reason of many hinderances & chaunces,  
and especially for lacke of vittuals, he coulde accomplishe in no  
lesse then xxv. dayes. But at the length, the seuench day of the  
Calendes of October, he behelde with woonderyng eyes  
the toppes of the hygh mountaynes, shewed vnto hym by the  
guides

of *Quarequa*, from the whiche he myght see the other sea so long  
looked for, and neuer seene before of any man commyng out of  
our woylde. Approching therfore to the toppes of the moun-  
taynes, he commaunded his armye to stay, and went hym selfe  
alone to the toppe, as it were to take the fyrst possession thereof.  
Where, fallyng prostrate vppon the grounde, and rayling hym  
selfe againe vpon his knees, as the maner of the Christians is to  
praye, lyster by his eyes and handes toward heauen, and di-  
rectyng his face toward the newe founde south sea, he powred  
foorth his humble and deuout prayers before almighty God, as  
a spirituall sacrifice with thankes gyuing, that it pleased his  
diuine maiestie, to reserue vnto that day the victorie and prayse  
of so great a thyng vnto hym, beyng a man but of smal wyt and  
knowledge, of lytle experience, and base parentage. When he  
had thus made his prayers after his warlike maner, he beckned  
with his hande to his companions, to come to hym, shewyng  
them the great mayne sea heretofore unknowen to inhabitants  
of Europe, Aphrike, and Asia. Here agayne he fell to his pray-  
ers as before, desyryng almyghtie God (and the blessed virgin) to  
fauour his beginnynges, and to geue hym good successe to sub-  
due those landes, to the gloyp of his holy name, and encrease of  
his true religion. All his companions vnd lykewylse, and pray-  
sed God with loude voyces for ioy. Then *Vasbus*, with no lesse  
manlye corage then Hanniball of Carthage shewed his souldiers  
Italye, and the promontories of the Alpes, exhorted his men to  
lyft vp theyr hartes, and to beholde the lande euen nowe vnder  
theyr feete, and the sea before theyr eyes, whiche shoulde bee  
vnto them a full and iust rewarde of theyr great laboures and tra-  
uayles nowe ouerpassed. When he had sayde these woordes, he  
commaunded them to raise certayne heapes of stones, in the stede  
of alters, for a token of possession. They descendyng from the  
toppes of the mountaynes, least suche as myght come after hym  
shoulde argue hym of lying or fallshood, he wrote the kyng of  
Castels name here and there, on barkes of the trees, both on the  
ryght hande and on the left, and rayled heapes of stones all the  
way that he went, vntyll he came to the region of the next kyng  
toward the south, whose name was *Chiapes*. This kyng came  
foorth agaynst hym with a great multitude of men, threatnyng  
and

Prayer.

God rapeth  
the poore from  
the dounghel

Hanniball of  
Carthage.

King Chiapes. and forbyddynge him not only to passe through his dominions, but also to goe no further. Whereupon *Vaschus* set his battayle in aray, and exhorted his men (beyng nowe but fewe) fierly to assaile theyr enemies, and to esteeme them no better then dogges meate, as they shoulde be shortly. Placing therefore the hargabusters and masties in the forefront, they saluted kynge *Chiapes* and his men with such alarome, that when they hard the noyse of the gunnes, saw the flames of fire, and smelt the sauer of brimstone (for the wynde blew towards them) they droue them selues to flyght, with such feare lest thunderboltes and lyghtnynges folowed them, that many fell downe to the ground, whom our men pursuing, kept keepynge theyr order, and after breakynge theyr aray, slue but fewe, and tooke manye captiue: For they determined to vse no extremitie, but to pacifie those regions as quietly as they myght. Enterynge therefore into the pallace of kynge *Chiapes*, *Vaschus* commaunded many of the captiues to be loosed, wyllynge them to search out theyr kynge, and to exhorte hym to come thither: and that in so doyng, he woulde be his frend, and profer hym peace, besyde many other benefites: But if he refused to come, it shoulde turne to the destruction of hym and his, and utter subuersion of his countrey. And that they myght the more assuredly do this message to *Chiapes*, he sent with them certayne of the guides whiche came with hym from *Quarequa*. Thus *Chiapes*, beyng perswaded aswell by the *Quarequans*, who coulde coniecture to what end the matter woulde come, by the experience whiche they had seene in them selues and theyr kynge, as also by the reasons of his owne men, to whom *Vaschus* had made suche frendly promyses in his behalfe, came forth of the caues in the whiche he lurked, and submitted hym selfe to *Vaschus*, who accepted hym frendly. They ioyned handes, embraced the one the other, made a perpetuall league of friendship, and gaue great rewardes on both sydes. *Chiapes* gaue *Vaschus* foure hundred poundes weyght of wrought golde, of those poundes whiche they call *Pesos*, and *Vaschus* recompenced hym agayne with certayne of our thynges. Thus beyng made frendes, they remayned together a fewe dayes, vntill *Vaschus* souldiers were come, whiche he left behynde hym in *Quarequa*. Then calling vnto hym the

3 battayle.

Chiapes is drempt  
men to flyght.

Vaschus sendeth  
forth for kynge  
Chiapes.

Chiapes submitte  
thymselfe to Vaschus.

the guides and labourers whiche came with hym from thence, he rewarded them liberally, and dismissed them with thanks. Shortly after, by the conduct of *Chiapes* hym selfe, and certayne of his men departing from the toppes of the mountaynes, he came in the space of foure dayes to the bankes of the newe sea: where assemblyng all his men together, with the kynges scribes and notaries, they addicted all that mayne sea with all the landes adiacent thereunto, to the dominion and Empire of Castile. Here he left part of his souldiers with *Chiapes*, that he myght the easier search those coastes. And takynge with hym niene of theyr lyghters made of one whole tree (whiche they call *Culchas*, as the inhabitants of *Hispaniola* call them *Canoas*) & also a hande of fourescore men, with certayne of *Chiapes* men, he passed ouer a great riuer, and came to the regio of a certeine king, whose name was *Coquera*. He attempted to resist our men as dyd the other, and with lyke successe: for he was overcome and put to flight. But *Vaschus*, who entended to winne hym with gentlenes, sent certayne *Chiapeans* to hym, to declare the great power of our men, howe inuincible they were, howe mercifull to such as submit them selues, also cruell and seuerer to such as obstinately withstand them: Promysynge hym furthermore, that by the friendship of our men, he might be wel assured by the example of other, not only to liue in peace and quietnes hym selfe, but also to be reuenged of the iniuries of his enemies: Appoyntynge hym in conclusion so to weigh the matter, that if he refused this gentlenes profered vnto hym by so great a victourer, he shoulde or it were long learne by feelyng, to repent hym to late of that peryll whiche he myght haue auoyded by hearyng. *Coquera* with these wordes and examples, shaken with great feare, came gladly with the messengers, byngynge with him .650. *Pesos* of wrought golde, whiche he gaue vnto our men. *Vaschus* rewarded hym likewise, as we sayd before of *Poncha*. *Coquera* beyng thus pacified, they returned to the pallace of *Chiapes*, where, visitynge theyr companions, and resting there a whyle, *Vaschus* determined to search the next great gulf, the whiche, from the furthest reachynge thereof into the lande of theyr countreyes, from the enterance of the mayne sea, they say to be threescore myles. This they named saint Michaels gulf, whiche they say to be full of inhabited

A gulf of threescore myles.  
Saint Michaels gulf.

The manly  
courage and  
godly zeale of  
Vaschus

Fishes are  
the spynwes of  
warre  
The fapthful-  
nes of kynge  
Chiapes.

A tempest on  
the sea.

The increas-  
ing of the  
South sea.

The North  
Ocean.

habited Ilandes and hugious rockes. Entyrng therefore into the niene boates of *Culchas*, wherewith he passed ouer the ryuer before, haupng also with him the same compayne of fourescore whole men, he went forwarde on his purpose, although he were greatly dissuaded by *Chiapes*, who earnestly desyred him not to attempt that voyage at that tyme, affirming y<sup>e</sup> gulfe to be so tempestuous and stormie three monethes in the yeere, that the sea was there by no meanes nauigable, and that he had seene many *Culchas* deuoured of whirlepooles, euen before his eyes. But inuincible *Vaschus*, impatient of idlenesse, and voyde of all feare in Gods cause, answered, that God and his holy saintes would prosper his enterpryses in this case, forasmuche as the matter touched God, and the defence of the Christian religion, for the mayntenance wherof, it shoulde be necessarie to haue abundance of ryches and treasure, as the sinewes of warre against the enemies of the fapth. Thus vsyng also the office both of an orator and preacher, and haupng perswaded his companions, he launched from the lande. But *Chiapes*, lest *Vaschus* shoulde any thyng doubt of his fapthfulnesse toward him, profered hym selfe to goe with hym whyther soeuer he went, and woulde by no meanes assent that *Vaschus* shoulde depart from his palace, but that he woulde byng hym on the way, and take part of his fortune. Therfore, as soone as they were now entred into the maine sea, such surges & conflictes of water arose agaynst them, that they were at theyr wittes endes, whither to turne them, or where to rest. Thus being tossed and amased with feare, the one looked on the other with pale & vnchearefull countenances, but especially *Chiapes* and his company, who had before tyme with theyr eyes seene the experience of those leopardies, were greatly discomforted (yet as God woulde) they escaped all, and landed at the next Ilande, where, makyng fast theyr boates, they rested there that nyght. Here the water so encreased, that it almost oneflowed the Ilande. They say also, that the South sea doth so in manner boyle and swel, that when it is at the hygh-est, it doth couer many great rockes, whiche at the fall thereof, are seene farre aboue the water. But on the contrarye parte, all suche as inhabite the North sea, affyrme with one voyce, that it scarcelye ryleth at any tyme a cubite aboue the bankes,

as

as they also confesse whiche inhabite the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, and other Ilandes situate in the same. The Ilande therefore being nowe dyde by the fall of the water, they resorted to theyr boates, whiche they founde al ouerwhelmed, & ful of sande, and some soze brylled with great ryftes, and almost lost by reason theyr cables were broken: suche as were brylled, they tyed faste with theyr gyrdles, with sylppes of the barkes of trees, and with tough and long stalkes of certayne hearbes of the sea, stoppyng the ryftes or chynkes with grasse, according to the present necessitie. Thus were they enforced to retorne backe agayne, lyke vnto men that came from shyppwracke, beyng almost consumed with hunger, because theyr vytualles were utterly destroyed by tempest. The inhabitants declared that there is hearde all the yeere horrible roying of the sea among those Ilandes, as often as it ryleth or falleth, but this most especially in those three monethes in the whiche it is most boytous, as *Chiapes* tolde *Vaschus* before, meanyng (as they coulde coniecture by his wordes) October, Nouember, and December: for he signified the present moone, & the two moones folowynge, countynge the monethes by the moones, whereas it was nowe October. Here therefore refreching him selfe and his souldiers a whyle, and passyng by one vnprofitable kyng, he came to another, whose name was *Tumaccus*, after the name of the region, beyng situate on that syde of the gulfe. This *Tumaccus* came forth agaynst our men, as dyd the other, and with lyke fortune: for he was ouercome, dyuen to flyght, and many of his men slayne. He him selfe was also soze wounded, but yet escaped. *Vaschus* sent certayne messengers of the *Chiapians* to hym, to retorne, and not to be afrayde: but he coulde be nothing moued, neyther by promises, nor threathynge: yet when the messengers were instant, and ceased not to threathen death to him and his familie, with the vtter desolation of his kyngdome, if he persistted in that obstinacie, at the length he sent his sonne with them, whom *Vaschus* honourably enterteynyng, apparelllyng hym gorgeously, and geuyng him many gyftes, sent him to his father, wplyng hym to perswade hym of the puissaunce, munificence, liberalitie, humanity, and clemencie of our men. *Tumaccus* beyng moued by this gentlenesse declared toward his sonne, came with hym

Hard shypp in  
necessitie.

The region  
Tumacca.

Kyng Tumaccus  
is dyuen to  
flyght.



Golde and  
pearles.

Muscles of  
the sea.

Fysshing for  
pearles.

The thyrst of  
golde.

Ambition a-  
mong naked  
men.

the thyrd day, byngyng nothyng with hym at that tyme. But after that he knewe that our men desyred golde and pearles, he sent for fyre hundred and fourteene *Pesos* of golde, and two hundred and fourtie of the byggeit and fayrest pearles, besyde a great number of the smallest sort. Our men marueyled at the byggenes and fayrenes of these pearles, although they were not perfectly whyte, because they take them not out of the sea muscles, except they fyrt rost them, that they may the easelper open them selfe, and also that the fyshie may haue the better tast, whiche they esteeme for a delicate and princely dyshe, and set more therby, then by the pearles them selues. Of these thynges I was enfourmed of one *Arbolantius*, beyng one of *Vaschus* companions, whom he sent to the kyng with many pearles, and certayne of those sea muscles. But when *Tumaccus* sawe that our men so greatly regarded the beaultie of the pearles, he commaunded certayne of his men to pzeare them selues to go a fysshing for pearles: Who departing, came agayne within foure dayes, byngyng with them twelue pounce weight of orient pearles, after eight ounces to the pounce. Thus reioyng on both parties, they embrased, and made a league of continual frendshyp. *Tumaccus* thought hym selfe happie that he had pzedented our men with such thankefull gyftes, and was admitted to theyr frendshyp: and our men thynkyng them selues happie and blessed that they had founde such tokens of great ryches, swalowed downe theyr spyttle for thyrst. At all these dopinges, kyng *Chiapes* was present, as a wytnes and companion. He also reioyced not a litle, aswell that by his conductyng he sawe that our men shoulde bee satisfied of theyr desyre, as also that by this meanes he had declared to the next kyng his borderer and enemie, what frendes he had of our men, by whose ayde he myght lyue in quietnes, and be reuenged of his aduersarie, if neede shoulde so requyre. For (as we haue sayde) these naked kynges infect them selues with greuous warres, onely for ambition and desyre to rule. *Vaschus* boisteth in his epistle, that he learned certayne marue- lous secretes of *Tumaccus* hym selfe, as concernyng the great ryches of this lande, wherof (as he sayth) he would utter nothyng at this present, forasmuche as *Tumaccus* tolde it hym in his eare. But he was enfourmed of both the kynges, that there is an

Ilande

Ilande in that gulfe, greater then any of the other, haupyng in it but onely one kyng, and hym of so great power, that at suche tymes of the peere as the sea is calme, he inuadeth theyr domi- nions with a great nauie of *Culchas*, spoylyng and carryng away for a praye all that he meeteth. This Ilande is distant from these coastes, only twentie myles: So that the promontories or poyntes thereof, reachyng into the sea, may be seene from the hylles of this continent. In the sea neere about this Ilande, sea muscles are engendred, of such quantitie, that many of them are as brode as bucklers. In these are pearles founde (beyng the hartes of those shell fyshes) oftentimes as bygge as beanes, som tymes bygger then *Olyues*, and suche as sumptuous *Cleopatra* myght haue desyred. Although this Ilande be so neere to the shore of this firme lande, yet is the begynnyng thereof in the mayne sea, without the mouth of the gulfe. *Vaschus* beyng ioyful and mery with this ryche communication, fantasying now and cruell woordes against the tyrant of that Ilande, meanyng hereby to wynde the myndes of the other kynges, and bynde them to hym with a neerer bonde of frendshyp. Yet therefore raylyng further on hym with spytefull and approbrious woordes, he swoie great othes, that he woulde forthwith inuade the I- lande, spoylyng, destroying, burnyng, drownyng, and hang- yng, sparyng neyther swoorde nor fyre, vntyll he had re- uenged theyr iniuries: and therewith commaunded his *Culchas* to be in a redynes. But the two kynges, *Chiapes* and *Tumaccus*, exhorted hym frendly to deferre this enterpryse, vntill a more quiet season, bycause that sea was not nauigable without great daun- ger, beyng now the begynnyng of Nouember: Wherein the kynges seemed to saye true. For as *Vaschus* hym selfe wyrteth, great roying of the sea was heard among the Ilands of the gulfe, by reason of the ragyng and conflict of the water. Great ryuers also, descendyng from the toppes of the mountaynes the same tyme of the peere, and ouerflowyng theyr banks, dryuyng downe with theyr violence great rockes and trees, make a mar- ueylous noyse. Lykewise the furie of the South and Northeast wyndes, associate with thunder and lychtning at the same sea- son, doo greatly molest them. Whyle the wether was fayre,

D iiii

they

A kyng of great  
power.

Byg pearles.

Cleopatra,  
queene of E-  
gypt, resolued  
a pearle in his  
neger & drunke  
it. Whiche fine  
thousande  
pounce of our  
money.

## The thynde Decade.

they were vexed in the night with colde, and in the day tyme the heat of the Sonne troubled them, wherof it is no marueyle, forasmuche as they were neere vnto the Equinoctial line, although they make no mention of the eleuation of the pole, for in suche regions, in the nyght the Moone and other colde planettes, but in the day the Sonne and other hotte planettes, doo cheefely exercyse theyr influence, although the antiquitie were of another opinion, supposyng the Equinoctiall circle to bee inhabitable and desolate, by reason of the heate of the Sonne, haupng his course perpendicularly or directly ouer the same, except a fewe of the contrary opinion, whose assertions the Portugales haue at these dayes by experience proued to be true: for they sayle peereley to the inhabitants of the south pole, beyng in maner *Antipodes* to the people called *Hyperborei* vnder the North pole, and exercise marchaundize with them. And here haue I named *Antipodes*, forasmuche as I am not ignorant that there hath ben men of singuler witte and great learnyng, whiche haue denyed that there is *Antipodes*, that is, suche as walke feete to feete. But it is most certaine, that it is not geuen to any one man to knowe all thynges, for euen they also were men, whose propertie is to erre, and be deceiued in many thynges. Neuerthelesse, the Portugales of our tyme, haue sayled to the syue and fyftie degree of the south pole: where, compassyng about the poynt therof, they myght see throughout all the heauen about the same, certeyne shynnyng whyte cloudes here and there among the starres, lyke vnto them which are scene in the tract of heauen called *Lactea via*, that is, the mylke whyte way. They say, there is no notable starre neare about that pole, lyke vnto this of oures, which the common people thynke to be the pole of it selfe (called of the Italians *Tramontana*, and of the Spanyardes *Nortes*) but that the same falleth beneath the Ocean. When the Sonne descendeth from the myddest of the exiltree of the worlde from vs, it ryseth to them, as a payre of ballances, whose weyght enclinyng from the equall payle in the myddest toward epyther of the sydes, causeth the one ende to ryse as much as the other falleth. When therfore it is Autumne with vs, it is spring tyme with them, and sommer with vs, when it is wynter with them. But it sufficeth to haue sayde thus much of strange matters. Let vs nowe there-

foze

The starres about the south pole.

A similitude declaring *Antipodes*.

## The thynde decade.

foze returne to the historie, and to our men.

101

## The seconde booke of the thynde Decade.



*Vaschus* by thaduice of king *Chiapes* and *Tumaccus*, determined to deferre his voyage to the sayde Ilande, vntill the next spring or sommer, at which tyme, *Chiapes* offered him selfe to accompany our men, and ayde them therein al that he myght. In this meane tyme, *Vaschus* had knowledge that these

kynges had nettes and fysshynge places in certeyne stations of that sea neare vnto the shore where they were accustomed to fysh for sea muscles, in the which pearles are engendred, and that for this purpose they had certeyne dyuers or fyshers, exercised from theyr youth in swimmyng vnder the water. But they doo this onely at certeyne tymes when the sea is calme, that they may the easlier come to y place where these shel fishes are wont to lye: for the bygger that they are, so much lye they the deeper & neerer to y bottom: but the lesser, as it were daughters to thother, are neerer the bymme of the water: likewise the least of al, as it were their nieces, are yet neerer to the superficial part thereof. To them of the byggest sort whiche lye lowest, the fyshers descende the depth of thre mens heygth, and somtyme foure, but to the daughters or nieces, as their succession, they descende only to the mydde thygh. Somtymes also, after that the sea hath ben disquieted with vehement tempestes, they fynde a great multitude of these fishes on the sandes, beyng dryuen to the shore by the violence of the water. The pearles of these, which are founde on the sande, are but lytle, the fysh it selfe, is more pleasaunt in eatyng, then are our oysters, as our men report: But perhaps hunger, the swete saule of all meates, caused our men so to thynke. Whether pearles be the hartes of sea muscles (as Aristotle supposed) or the byrth or spawne of their intrals (as *Plinie* thought) or whether they cleaue continually to the rockes, or wander by companies in the sea by the guyding of the eldest, whether euery fysh bypynge forth one pearle or more, at one byrth, or at dyuers: also whether

The manner of of fysshynge for pearles.

whether they be fyled from the rockes wherunto they cleaue, or may be easely pulled away, or otherwyle fall of by them selues when they are come to theyr full growth: Lykewyle whether pearles be harde within the shel, or soft, our men haue as yet no certayne experience, but I trust or it be long to knowe the trueth hereof: for our men are euen now in hand with the matter. Also, as soone as I shall be aduertised of the aryuall of *Petrus Arias* the captayne of our men, I wyll desire hym by my letters to make diligent search for these thynges, and certifie me therof in all poyntes. I knowe that he wyll not be slacke or omit any thyng herein, for he is my verie freende, and one that taketh great pleasure in considering the workes of nature. And surely it seemeth vnto me vndeceit, that we shoulde with silence ouerslyp so great a thyng, which aswel in the olde tyme, as in our dayes, hath and yet doth, drawe both men and women to the immoderate desire of superfluous pleasure. Spayne therfore shalbe able hereafter with pearles to satisfie the greedy appetyte of such as in wanton pleasures are lyke vnto *Cleopatra* and *Asopus*: So that from hencefoorth we shall neyther enuie nor reuerence the nice fruitfulnessse of *Stoicum*, or *Taprobana*, or the red sea. But let vs now returne to our purpose. *Vaschus* therfore determined with the fyshers of *Chiapes*, to proue what myght be doone in his fishe pooles or stations of sea muscles. *Chiapes* to shewe hym selfe obedient to *Vaschus* his request, although the sea were boystous, commaunded thyrte of his fyshers to prepare them selues, and to resort to the fishyng places. *Vaschus* sent onely sixe of his men with them, to beholde them from the sea bankes, but not to commit them selues to the daunger of the sea. The fishyng place was distant from the pallace of *Chiapes* about tenne myles. They durst not aduenture to dyue to the bottome, by reason of the furie of the sea: Yet of the muscles whiche lye hyghest, and of such as were dyuen to the thore by the violence of the water, they brought sixe great fardelles in the space of a fewe dayes. The pearles of these were but lytle, about the bygnesse of small fythes: yet verie fayre and beautifull, by reason that they were taken newly out of the fythe, beyng yet rawe. And that they should not be reppoued of lping, as

concerning

*Petrus Arias.*

Wanton and superfluous pleasures.

The fishyng place of kynge *Chiapes*.

concernyng the bygnesse of these sea muscles, they sent many of them into Spayne to the kyng, with the pearles, the fythe beyng taken out: We thynke verily that there may in no place bygger be founde. These shel fythes therfore beyng thus founde here in so many places in that sea, and gold in maner in euery house, doo argue the ryche treasure of nature to be hydde in those coastes, forasmuche as great ryches haue ben founde, as it were in the litle fynger of a giantes hande. What then may we thynke of the whole hande of the giant (for hitherto they haue onely benne in hande with the confines of *Vraba*) when they shall haue throughe searche all the coastes and secretes of the inner partes of all that large lande? But *Vaschus* contented with these signes, and ioyfull of his good successe in these enterpyles, determined by another way to returne to his felowes in *Dariena*, where also they haue golde mynes, about tenne myles from the byllage. He gaue therfore kyng *Chiapes* leaue to depart, and to folowe hym no further, counsaylyng hym to continue faythful vnto the christian king his lord and maister. Thus embracing the one the other, & ioyning handes, *Chiapes* departed with teares, declaring the good minde which he bore to our men. *Vaschus* leauing his likke men with *Chiapes*, went forward on his iourney with the residue, hauyng also with hym for guides thre of *Chiapes* Daryners. He conueyghed his armie ouer a great riuer, into the dominion of a certayne king called *Teaocha*, who beyng aduertised of the comyng of our men, of whose famous actes he had hearde muche before, was very glad thereof, and enterpyned them honourably, so that for a token of his frendly affection toward them, he gaue *Vaschus* twentie pounds weight of wrought golde, after eyght ounces to the pounce: also two hundred bygge pearles, but not fayre, by reason they were taken out of the muscles after they had ben sodden. After they had ioyned handes, *Vaschus* recompenced him with certayne of our thynges: lykewyle rewarding his guides the seruantes of *Chiapes*, he dismissed them with commendations to their lord, King *Teaocha*, at the departure of our men from his pallace, dyd not only appoynt them guides to conduct them in the way, but also gaue them certayne slaues, in the steede of beastes to cary theyr vittuals, because they should passe through many desartes, barren and

Sold in maner in euery house. The ryche treasure of nature.

The golde mynes of *Dariena*.

King *Teaocha* enterpyneth *Vaschus* frendly.

Twentie pound weight of wrought gold.

rough

## The thynde decade.

Desartes ful of rough mountaynes and terrible woods ful of Tigers and Lions. wylde beastes. He sent also one of his sonnes with these slaues, lading them with salted and dried fishe, & bread of those regions, made of the rootes of *Maizium* and *Iucca*. He also commaunded his sonne not to depart from our men, until he were licensed by *Vaschus*. By theyr conductyng therfore, *Vaschus* came to the dominion of an other kyng, whose name was *Pacra*, a cruel tyrant, fearefull to the other kynges his borderers, and of greater power then any of them. This tyrant, whether it were that his gilty conscience, for his mischeuous actes, put him in feare that our men woulde reuenge the same, or that he thought him selfe inferior to resist them, fled at their comming. *Vaschus* wryteth, that in these regions in the moneth of *November*, he was sore afflicted with great heate and intollerable thirst, by reason that side of the mountaynes hath little water: Insomuche that they were in daunger to haue perished, but that certayne of thynhabitanes shewed them of a spring, which was in y secret place of a wood, whither *Vaschus* with all speede sent two quicke & strong young men of his companions, with theyr gourdes, and such water vessels as *Taocha* his men brought with them. Of thynhabitanes, there durst none depart from theyr company, because the wylde beastes do sone inuade naked men: For in those mountaynes, and especially in the woods neare unto the spring, they say that they are sometimes taken out of theyr houses in the night, except they take good heede that the doores be well sparde. It shal not be from my purpose heere to declare a particuler chaunce, before I enter any further in this matter. They say therfore, that the last peere the region of *Dariena* was no lesse infested and troubled with a fierse Tiger, then was *Calidonia* in tyme past with a wild Booze, and *Nemea* with a horrible Lion. For they affyrme that for the space of fyre whole monethes, there passed not one nyght without some hurt doone: so that it kylled nyghtly eyther a Bullocke, a Hare, a Dogge, or a Hogge, and sometymes euen in the hygh wayes of the byllage: For our men haue now great heardes of cattayle in those regions. They say also, that when this Tyger had whelpes, no man myght safelye goe forth of his doores, because thee sparred not men, yf thee mette fyrste with them. But at the length,

Dried fysh.

Kyng Pacra a tyrant.

Great heate in the moneth of November.

Hurt by wylde beastes.

A Tyger. Calidonia is a forrest in Scotlande. Nemea is a wood in Grece.

Tigers whelpes.

## The thynde Decade.

103

length, necessitie enforced them to inuent a policie howe they myght be reuenged of suche bloodshed. Searchyng therfore diligently her footesteppes, and folowynge the pathe whereby she was accustomed in the nyght season to wander out of her denne to seeke her praye, they made a great trench or pyt in her walke, coueryng the same with hurdels, whereupon they caste chaunced fyrst into this pitfall, and fel vpon the pointes of sharpe stakes, and such other engins as were of purpose fyxed in the bottome of the trench. Beyng thus wounded, he roled so terribly, that it grated the bowels of suche as harde hym, and the wooddes and mountaynes neare about rebounded the noyse of the horryble crye. When they perceiued that he was layde fast, they resorted to the trench, and slue hym with stones, dartes, and pykes. With his teethe and clawes he brake the dartes into a thoulande chypes. Beyng yet dead, he was fearefull to all such as behelde hym: what then thynke you he woulde haue doone beyng alyue and loose? One *Iohannes Ledisma* of Ciuille, a neare frende to *Vaschus*, and one of the companions of his traualles, tolde me that he hym selfe dyd eate of the fleshe of that Tyger, and that it was nothyng inferior to beefe in goodness. Beyng demaunded howe they knewe it to be a Tyger, forasmuch as none of them had euer seene a Tyger: they answered that they knewe it by the spottes, fiercenes, agilitie, and suche other markes and tokens wherby auncient wryters haue described the Tyger. For some of them had before tyme seene other spotted wylde beastes, as *Libardes* and *Panthers*. The dogge Tyger beyng thus kylled, they folowynge the trace of his steppes toward the mountaynes, came to the denne where the bytche remainned with her two young suckyng whelpes. But she was not in the denne at their commyng. They fyrst carped away the whelpes with them. But afterwarde, fearyng lest they shoulde dye because they were young, entendyng when they were bygger to send them into Spaine, they put cheynes of iron about theyr neckes, and carped them agayne to their denne: whither returnyng within a fewe dayes after, they founde the denne emptye, and they cheynes not remoued from theyr place. They suppose that the damme in her furye toze them in peeces, and carped

Thus the Egyptians take Crocodiles

The dogge tyger taken.

The roying of the tyger.

Tigers flesh eaten.

The bytche tyger.

Tigers whelpes.

A strange thyng.

caryed them away, lest any shoulde haue the fruition of them. For they playnly affirme, that it was not possible that they shoulde be loosed from the charynes alyue. The sayngs of the dead Tyger stuffed with dyse herbes and straws, they sent to Hispaniola, to the Admiral, and other of the cheefe rulers, from whom the newe landes receiue their lawes and succour. It shall at this tyme suffice to haue wyitten thus muche of the Tygers, as I haue learned by report of them which both sawe the damage by their rauenyng, and also handled the saynne of that whiche was slayne. Let vs now therefore returne to King Pacra, from whom we haue digressed. When Vascbus had entred into the houses forsaken of Pacra, he sent messengers to reconcile him, as he had doone the other kynges. At the first he refused to come: but after threathynge he came, with three other kynges in his company. Vascbus wytteth, that he neuer sawe a more monstrous & deformed creature, and that nature hath only geuen hym humane shape, and otherwyle to bee worse they a byuite brast, with maners accordyng to the liniamentes of his body. He abused, with most abominable lechery, the daughters of foure kynges his borderers, from whom he had taken them by violence. Of the fylthy behauiour of Pacra, of his crueltie, and iniures doone by hym, many of the other kyngs made greuous complayntes to Vascbus, as vnto a hygh Iudge, and iust reuenger, most humbly beseechyng hym to see suche thynges punished, forasmuche as they tooke hym for a man sent of God for that purpose. Herevpon Vascbus, aswell to wynn their good wylls, as also to shewe an example of terrour to such as vsed lyke fashions, commaunded that this monstrous beast, with the other three kynges whiche were subiecte to hym, and of lyke conditions, shoulde be geuen for a pray to his fygthynge dogges, and their tozue carkales to bee burned. Of these dogges whiche they vse in the warres, they tell marueylous thynges: for they say, that they runne vpon thinhabitauntes, armed after their maner, with noo lesse fiercenes, then if they were Partes or wylde Bores, if the Spaniardes doo but onely poynt towarde them with theyr syngers: Insomuche that ofentymes they haue had no neede to dyue their enemyes to flyght with swoordes or arrowes, but haue doone the

King Pacra.

Natural hatred of vice.

Foure kynges deuoured of dogges.

The use of dogges in warre against naked men.

the same only with dogges, placed in the forefront of theyr battayle, and lettynge them slpye with theyr watche woorde and priuie token: whercupon the barbarians strycken with feare, by reason of the cruell countenances of theyr masties, with theyr desperate boldenesse, and vnaccustomed howlyng and barkyng, haue disparckled at the first onlette, and brake theyr array. Yet it chaunceth otherwyle when they haue any conflycte agaynst the Canibales, and the people of Caramairi: for these are fiercer and more warlyke men, also so expert archers, that they can molte certaynely direct theyr venemous arrowes agaynst the dogges, with suche seleritie as yf they were thunderboltes, by reason whereof, they sometymes kyll many of them. Thinhabitauntes of these mountaynes doo not keepe warre with bowes and arrowes, but vse only Macanis, that is, certayne long and brode swoordes made of wood, also synges, long pykes, and dartes, hardened at the endes with fyre. Whyle kyng Pacra yet lyued, no man coulde knowe of hym, neyther by sayre meanes nor by fowle, where he had the golde whiche was founde in his house: for our men founde in his iewell house fiftie poundes weyght of golde. Weyng therefore demaunded where he had it, he answered, that they whiche geathered the same in those mountaynes in his fathers dayes, were all dead, and that sence he was a chyld, he neuer esteemed golde more then stones: Hope then this they coulde not geat of hym. By this seuerer punishment executed vpon Pacra, Vascbus conplected vnto hym the myndes of all the other kynges of that prouince, and by this meanes it came to passe, that when he sent for the sycke men whiche he left behynde hym with kyng Chiapes, another kyng whiche was in the mydde way, (whose name was Bononima) enterteyned them genelly, and gaue them twentie pounde weight of pure wrought golde, besyde great plentie of vittualles. And not this onely, but also accompanied them hym selfe, vntyll he had brought them safely from his passace, into the dominion of Pacra, where takyng eche of them by the ryght handes, he deliuered them to Vascbus hym selfe, as a faythfull pledge committed to his charge, and there with spake to Vascbus in this effecte: Wolle myghtie and valyaunt victourer, beholde, I beere deliuer vnto you, pour

The Canibales are expert archers.

Swoordes of wood.

Fiftie pound weight of gold.

King Bononima, friend to the christians.

Wrought gold.



The oration  
of kyng  
Bononiana.

The sparke of  
the lawe of  
nature, is the  
lawe written in  
the hartes of  
men.

Great plenty  
of golde.

A similitude  
for the prafe of  
plentye of  
golde.

your companions in suche plight as I receiued them: wishyng that I had ben aswell able to gyue them health, as they were hartly welcome to suche poore entertaynement as I was able to shewe them. For the fauoure and gentelnesse whiche I haue founde both in you and them, he shall rewarde you whiche sendeth thunderyng and lyghtnyng to the destruction of mycheuous men, and of his clemencye gyueth vnto good men plentye of *Iucca* and *Maizium* in due season. As he spake these wordes, he lysted vp his handes and eyes toward the Sonne, whom they honour as God. Then he spake further to *Vaschus*, saying, In that you haue destroyed and slayne our violent and proude enemies, you haue brought peace and quietnesse to vs and our families, and bounde vs for euer to loue and obey you. You haue so ouercome and tamed wyld monsters, that we thynke you to bee sent from heauen, for the punishment of euill men, and defence of innocentes, that vnder the protection of your myghtie swoorde, we maye hereafter leade our lyues without feare, and with more quietnesse geue thanks to the geuer of all good thynges, for his mercie shewed vnto vs in this behalfe. When the interpretoure had tolde *Vaschus* that the kyng *Bononiana* had sayde these wordes, and suche lyke, *Vaschus* rendered hym lyke thanks for his humanitie declared toward our men, and rewarded hym as he had doone o-ther in whom he founde lyke gentilnesse. *Vaschus* wyrteth, that he learned manye thynges of this kyng as concernyng the great rycheffe of these regions, but that he woulde at this present speake nothing thereof, and rehearseth the same, as thynges lyke to haue good successe. That this implicate *Hiperbole*, or aduancement meaneth, I do not well vnderstand, but he plainly seemeth hereby to promise many great thynges. And suerly it is to be thought, that accordyng to his hope, great riches may be looked for. For they came in maner into none of thynhabitauntes houses, but that they founde in them eyther byestplates or curettes of golde, or elles golden ouches, iewels, or garlandes to weare about their heades, neckes, or armes. I coniecture therefore thus by a similitude of our houses: If among vs any man of great power were moued with the desyre to haue great plentye of Iron, and woulde enter into *Italie* with a mayne force, as

dyd

dyd the Gothes in tyme past, what abundance of Iron shoulde he haue in theyr houses, whereas he shoulde fynde in one place a fryngpan, in another a caldron, here a triuet, and there a spitte, and these in manner in euery poore mans house, with suche other innumerable? whereby any man may coniecture, that iron is plentifully engendred in suche regions where they haue so great vse thereof. Our men also perceined, that the inhabitants of these regions do no more esteeme golde then we do iron, nor yet so much, after they sawe to what vse iron serued vs. Thus much haue I thought good to write to your holynesse, of suche thynges as I haue geathered out of the letters of *Vaschus Nunnez*, and learned by woorde of mouth of suche as were his companions in these assayes. As we receiue them, so we geue them vnto you. Tyme, whiche reuealeth al secretes, shal hereafter miniter larger argument of wyrtynge. They coulde at this tyme do no great thyng in searchyng the golde mynes, forasmuche as of a hundred, fourscore, and tenne men, which *Vaschus* brought with him from *Dariena*, there remayned only threescore and ten, or at the most fourscore, whose ayde he nowe vsed in these daungerous aduentures, leauing euer the crased men behynde hym in the kynges houses all the way that he went, but they moste especially fel into sundry diseases, whiche came late-ly from *Hispaniola*, for they were not able to abyde such calamities, as to lyue only contented with the bread of those regions, and wyld hearbes, without salt, drynyng none other then riuer water, and that oftentimes eyther lackyng, or vnhellome, where as before theyr stomakes had ben used to good meates. But the olde souldiers of *Dariena*, were hardened to abyde all sorowes, & exceeding tollerable of labour, heate, hunger, & wat- chynge, insomuche that merily they make theyr boast, that they haue obserued a longer & sharper Lent then euer your holynesse enioyned: for they say, that for the space of foure whole yeres, they ate none other then hearbes and fruites, except nowe and then perhappes fysh, and very seldome fleshe: yea, and that sometyme for lacke of all these, they haue not abhorred from mangie dogges and fylthy toades, as we haue sayde before. The olde souldiers of *Dariena*, I call those whiche fyfte folowed the captaynes *Nicuesa* and *Fogeda*, to inhabite the

Change of  
dyet is daunge-  
rous.

Old souldiers.

A long Lent.

W i lande,

land, of the whiche nowe fewe were lyving. But let vs nowe ompt these thynges, and retorne to *Vaschus*, the byctourer of the mountaynes.

The thyrd booke of the thyrd Decade.



When *Vaschus* had remained thyrtye dayes in the palace of kyng *Pacra*, concilyng unto him the mindes of the inhabitauntes, and prouidyng thynges necessarie for his companions. As he departed fro thence, by the conduct of certayne of kyng *Teaocha* his men, and came to the banke of the riuer *Comogrus*, wherof the region and kyng thereof, are named by the same name, he found the spres of these mountaynes so rude and barren, that there was nothyng apt to be eaten but wilde rootes, and certayne vnpleasaunt frutes of trees. Two kynges beyng neere of blood, inhabited this vnfortunate region, which *Vaschus* ouerpasse with allspede, for feare of hunger. One of these pooze kynges was named *Cotochus*, and the other *Ciurizs*. He tooke them both with him, to guyde hym the way, and dismissed *Teaocha* his men with vittuals and rewards. Thus for the space of thre dayes, he wandered through many desart woods, craggy mountaynes, & muddie marishes, ful of suche quarynes, that men are oftentimes swallowed by in them, if they loke not more warely to their feete: also through places not frequented with resort of men, and suche as nature had not yet opened to theyr vse, forasmuche as the inhabitauntes haue seldome entercourse betweene them, but only by sundry incursions, the one to spoyle and destroy the other: beyng otherwyse contented to lyue onely after the lawe of nature, without al worldly toyle for superfluous pleasures. Thus entryng at the length into the territarie of another kyng, whose name was *Bechebea*, they founde all thynges voyde and in scilence: for the kyng and his subiectes were all fledde to the woods. When *Vaschus* sent messengers to fetch hym, he dyd not onely at the first submit hym selfe,

*Comogrus.*

Two pooze  
kynges.

Desartes.

selfe, but also promise his ayde, with all that he myght make: Protestyng furthermoze, that he fledde not for feare that our men woulde doo them iniurie, but that he had hym selfe for verpe shame and greefe of mynde, for that he was not able to receiue them honorablie, accordyng vnto theyr dignitie, because his store of vitayles was consumed. Yet in a token of obedience and frendshyppe, he sent our men many vesselles of golde, despying them to accepte them as the gifte of a frend, whose good wyll wanted not in greater thynges, if his abilitie were greater. By whiche woordes, the pooze man seemed to insinuate that he had ben robbed, and otherwyse cruelly handled of his borderers, by reason whereof, our men were enforced to depart from thence more hungerly then they came. As they went forwarde therfore, they espyed certayne naked men comyng downe from a hyll toward them. *Vaschus* commaunded his armye to stay, and sent his interpretours to them, to knowe what they woulde haue. Then one of them, to whom the other seemed to geue reuerence, spake in this effect. Our lord and kyng *Chiorisus*, greeteth you well, wyllyng vs to declare that he harde of your puissaunce and vertue, whereby you haue subdued euill men, and reuenged the wronges doone to innocentes: For the whiche your noble factes and iustyce, as he doth honour your fame, so woulde he thynke hym selfe most happie, if he myght receiue you into his palace. But, forasmuch as his fortune hath ben so euill (as he imputeth it) that beyng out of your way, you haue ouerpasse hym, he hath sent you this golde, in token of his good wyll and frendshyppe toward you. And with these woordes he deliuered to *Vaschus* thirtie dishes of pure golde, addyng hereunto, that when so euer it shoulde please hym to take the paynes to come to theyr kyng, he shoulde receaue greater gyftes. He declared further, that a kyng whiche was their borderer and mortall enemye, was very ryche in golde, and that in subduyng of hym, they shoulde both obtayne great rycheesse, and also deliuer them from dayly vexations: whiche thyng myght easily be doone by their helpe, because they knewe the countrey. *Vaschus* put them in good comfort, and gaue them for rewarde certayne Iron axes, whiche they more esteemed then great heapes of gold. For they haue

Vesselles of  
golde.

kyng *Chiorisus*  
sendeth  
*Vaschus* xxx.  
dishes of pure  
golde.

Axes of Iron  
more esteemed  
then any golde.

they haue lytle neede of golde, haupng not the vse of pestiferous money: but he that may geat but one are or hatchet, thynketh hym selfe richer then euer was *Crassus*. For euen these naked men, doo perceiue that an are is necessarie for a thousande vbes, and confesse that golde is despyed only for certayne bayne and effeminate pleasures, as a thyng whiche the lyfe of man may lacke without any incomuenience: for our gluttony and superfluous sumptuousnesse hath not yet corrupted them. By reason whereof, they take it for no shame to lacke cobordes of plate, whereas the pryde and wantonnesse of our tyme, doth in maner impute it to vs for ignominie, to be without that, whereof by nature we haue no neede. But they contentation with the benefites of nature, doth playnely declare, that men may leade a free and happye lyfe without tables, table clothes, carpets, napkyns, and towels, with such other innumerable, wherof they haue no vse, except perhaps the kynges furnysh theyr tables with a fewe golden vessels. But the common people driue away hunger with a peece of theyr bread in the one hand, and a peece of broyled fysh, or some kynde of fruite in the other hand: for they eate flesh but seldome. When theyr syngers are imbued with any unctionous meates, they wyppen them eyther on the soles of theyr feete, or on theyr thyghes, yee and sometimes on the skyns of theyr priuie members, in the steede of a napkyn: and for this cause do they oftentimes washe themselves in the riuers. Our men therfore went forwarde laden with gold, but sore afflicted with hunger. Thus they came at the length to the dominion of kyng *Pocchorrosa*, who fled at their commynge. Here for the space of thyrte dayes, they fylled their empty bellies with bread of the rootes of *Mazium*. In the meane tyme, *Vaschus* sent for *Pocchorrosa*, who beyng allured with promises and fayre wordes, came and submitted hym selfe, byngynge with hym for a present fyftene poundes weight of wrought golde, and a fewe slaues: *Vaschus* rewarded hym as he had doone other before. When he was mynded to depart, he was aduertised, that he shoulde passe through the dominion of a certayne kyng, whose name was *Tumanama*. This is he whom the sonne of kyng *Comogrus* declared to be of so great power, and fearefull to all his borderers, and with whom

Plenty of gold  
and scarcenesse  
of meate.

many

many of *Comogrus* familiars had ben captiue, but our men now percepued that they measured his power by theyr owne: For theyr kynges are but gnattes (compared to *Elephantes*) in respect to the power & policie of our men. Our men were also enfourmed by such as dwelt neare about *Tumanama*, that his region was not beyond the mountaynes as they supposed, nor yet so ryche in golde as young *Comogrus* had declared: Yet consulted they of his subduing, whiche they thought they myght the easeliar byng to passe, because *Pocchorrosa* was his mortal enemy, who most gladly promised them his aduice and ayde herein. *Vaschus* therfore, leauynge his sick men in the byllage of *Pocchorrosa*, tooke with hym threescore of his most valiant soldiers, and declared vnto them, howe kyng *Tumanama* had often tymes spoken proude and threathynge wordes agaynst them: <sup>so good purpose</sup> lykewyse that it nowe stood them in hand of necessitie to passe through his dominion, and that he thought it best to set vpon hym vnwares. The souldiers consented to his aduice, and exhorted hym to geue the aduenture, promysing that they woulde folow hym, whither soeuer he went. They determined therfore to goe two dayes iourney in one day, that *Tumanama*, not knowynge of theyr sodayne commynge, myght haue no leysure to assemble an army: and the thyng came to passe euen as they had deuised. For in the first watche of the nyght, our men, with the *Pocchorrosians*, inuaded the village and pallace of *Tumanama*, where they tooke hym prisoner, suspectynge nothyng lesse. He had with hym two young men, whiche he abused vnnaturally, also fourescore women, whiche he had taken violently from diuers kynges: lykewyse, a great number of his gentlemen & subiectes were taken straglynge in other byllages neere about his pallace. For theyr houses are not adherent togeather as ours be, because they are oftentimes troubled with vehement whirlewyndes, by reason of the sodayne chaunges and motions of the ayer, caused by the influence of the planettes, in the equalitie of the day and nyght, beyng there in maner both of one length throughout all the yeere, forasmuch as they are neere vnto the Equinoctiall line, as we haue sayde before. Theyr houses are made of trees, couered, and after theyr maner thatched with the stalkes of certayne rough hearbes. To the pallace

The cause of  
vehement  
windes neere  
the Equinoctiall.

¶ iii

of

of *Tumanama*, was only one house adherent, and that euen as bygge as the pallace it selfe. Epyther of these houses were in length a hundred and twentye paces, and in breadth fiftie paces, as our men measured them. In these two houses the kynge was accustomed to muster his men, as often as he prepared an army. When *Tumanama* therfore was thus taken captiue, with all his *Sardanapanicall* familie, the *Pocchorrosians* bragged and threated hym, beyng now bound, that he shoulde shortly be hanged: the other kynges also his borderers, reioyced at his myffortune. Whereby our men perceyued that *Tumanama* was no lesse troublesome to his neyghbours, then was *Pacra* to the kynges of the south syde of the mountaynes. *Vaschus* also the better to please them, threatened hym greuouslye, but in deede entended no euill towards hym. He spake therfore sharply vnto hym with these woordes: Thou shalt now suffer punishment thou cruell tyrant, for thy pryde and abominations. Thou shalt knowe of what power the Christians are, whom thou hast so contemned, and threated to drawe by the heare of theyr heades to the next ryuer, and there to drowne them, as thou hast oftentimes made thy vaunt among thy naked slaues: But thou thy selfe shalt first feele that, whiche thou hast prepared for others. And heerewith commaunded hym to be taken vp: Neuerthelesse geuyng a pryue token of pardon to them whiche layde handes on hym. Thus vnhappy *Tumanama*, fearyng and beleeyng that *Vaschus* had ment in earnest as he commaunded, fell prostrate at his feete, and with teares desired pardon: Protesting that he neuer spake any suche woordes, but that perhaps his noble men in theyr drunkenesse had so abused theyr tongues, whiche he coulde not rule: For theyr wyues, although they be not made of grapes, yet are they of force to make men drunken. He declared furthermore, that the other kynges his borderers had of malice surmised such lyes of hym, enuyng his fortune, because he was of greater power then they, most humbly despyng *Vaschus*, that as he tooke hym to be a iust victourer, so to geue no credite vnto theyr vniust and malicious complayntes: Addyng heereunto, that if it woulde please hym to pardon hym, not haupng offended, he woulde byng hym great plenty of golde. Thus laying his ryght hande on his breast, he

*Vaschus* his  
woordes to  
king *Tuma-*  
*nama*.

*Oderunt quem*  
*metuunt.*

he swore by the Sonne, that he euer loued and feared the Christians sence he first hearde of theyr fame and victories: especially when he harde say, that they had *Michanas*, that is, swordes sharper then theyrs, and suche as cutte in peeces all thinges that come in theyr wayes. Then directyng his eyes toward *Vaschus*, who had his sword in his hand, he spake thus, Who (except he were out of his witte) dare I set vp his hande agaynst this sword of yours, wherewith you are able with one strooke to cleaue a man from the head to the nauell? Let no man therfore perswade you (O most myghty victourer) that euer such woordes proceeded out of my mouth. As *Tumanama* with tremblyng spake these woordes, therewith swallowyng downe the knot of death, *Vaschus* seemed by his teares to be moued to compassion, and speakyng to hym with chearfull countenance, commaunded hym to be loosed. This doone, he sent immediatly to his pallace for thyrty poundes weyght of pure golde, artifically wrought into sundry ouches, whiche his wyues and concubines vsed to weare. Also the thyrde daye folowynge, his noble men and gentlemen, sent threescore poundes weyght of gold for theyr fine and raunsome: *Tumanama* beyng demaunded where they had that gold: he answered, that it was not geathered in his dominions, but that it was brought his auncestours from the riuer *Comogrus* toward the south. But the *Pocchorrosians* and other his enemies sayde that he lyed, affirmyng that his kyngdome was ryche in golde. *Tumanama* on the contrary part, instantly protested that he neuer knewe any golde myne in all his dominions: yet denied not but that there hath sometymes been found certayne small graynes of golde, to the geathering whereof, he neuer had any regard, because they could not get it without great & long labour. While these things were doing, the sicke men which *Vaschus* had left in the vyllage of *Pocchorrosa*, came to hym the .viii. day of the Calendes of Iamary, in the yeere of Christ. M.D.LXIII. byngyng with them certayne labourers from the kynges of the south, with sundry instrumentes to bygge the grounde, and geather gold. Thus passing ouer the day of the natiuite of Christ without bodily labour, vpon Saynt Stephens day he brought certayne miners to the syde of a hyll, not farre distant from the pallace

xxx. pounde  
weight of  
wrought gold.

Threescore  
poundes  
weight of gold.

They abhorre  
labour.

of *Tumanama*, where (as he sayth) he perceyued by the coloure of the earth, that it was lyke to byng forth golde. When they had dygged a pyt, not past a hand breadth and a halfe, and syfted the earth thereof, they founde certayne small graynes of golde, no bygger then lintell seedes, amountyng to the weyght of twelue graynes, as they proued with theyr balances of assaie, before a notarie and wytnesse, that the better credite myght bee geuen thereto. Whereby they argued, that the rychenesse of that land was agreeable to the report of the borderers, although *Vaschus* coulde by no meanes cause *Tumanama* to confesse the same. They suppose that he nothynge esteemed so small a portion: but other say, that he denyed his countrey to be fruiteful of golde, least by reason thereof, the desyre of golde myght intyse our men to inhabyte his kyngdome, as in deede the seely kyng was a prophet in so thynkyng. For they chose that and the region of *Pocchorrosa* to inhabite, and determyned to buylde townes in them both, if it should so please the kyng of Castile: aswel that they myght be baptyng places and victuallynge houses for suche as shoulde tourney toward the south, as also that both the regions were fruiteful, and of good ground to beare frutes and trees. Intendyng now therefore to depart from thence, he tryed the earth by chaunce in an other place, where the colour of the ground, with certayne shynyng stones, seemed to be a token of golde, where causyng a small pyt to be dygged, litle beneath the upper crust of the earth, he founde so muche golde, as weyghed the peece of golde whiche the Spaniardes call *Castellatum aureum*, and is commonly called *Pesus*, but not in one graine. Reioycyng at these tokens, in hope of great riches, he bad *Tumanama* to be of good comfort, promysyng hym that he woulde be his frende and defender, so that he troubled not any of the kynges, whiche were frendes to the Christians: He also perswaded hym to geather plentie of golde. Some say that he ledde away all *Tumanama* his women, and spoyled hym, least he shoulde rebell. Yet he deliuered his sonne to *Vaschus*, to be brought up with our men, to learne theyr language and religion, that he myght hereafter the better vse his helpe, aswell in all thynges that he shoulde haue to doo with our men, as also more politickely rule, and obtayne the loue of his owne subiectes.

The coloure of  
the golden  
earth, and a tri-  
all of the same.

Tokens of  
great plentie  
of gold.

subiectes. *Vaschus* at this tyme fell into a vehement feter, by reason of excess of labour, immoderate watchyng, and hunger, insomuche that departyng from thence, he was sayne to be borne vpon mens backs in sheetes of gossampyne cotton: lykewyse also manye of his souldiers, which were soo weake, that they could nother go nor stande. To this purpose they bled the helpe of thynhabitanes, who shewed them selues in all thynges wyllynge and obedient. Also some of them whiche were somewhat feeble, and not able to traualle, although not greuously sycke, were led by the armes, vntyll they came to the dominion of kyng *Comogrus*, a great frende to the Christians, of whom we haue largely made mention before. At *Vaschus* comyng thither, he founde that the olde kyng was dead, and his sonne (whom we so prayed for his wysdome) to reigne in his steade, and that he was baptised by the name of *Charles*. The palace of this *Comogrus* is situate at the foote of a steepe hyll well cultured, haupyng toward the south a playne of twelue leagues in breadth, and very fruitfull. This playne they call *Zauana*. Beyond this, are the great and hygh mountaynes, whiche diuide the two seas, whereof we haue spoken before. Out of the steepe hylls, spryngeth the ryuer *Comogrus*, whiche runneth through the sayde playne to the hygh mountaynes, receauyng into his chanel by their valleyes, all other ryuers, and so falleth into the south sea: It is distant from *Dariena*, about threescore and tenne leagues toward the west. As our men therefore came to these parties, kyng *Comogrus* (otherwyse called *Charles* by his christian name) met them ioyfully, and entertayned them honorably, geuyng them their fyll of pleasaunt meates and drynkes: He gaue also to *Vaschus* twentie pounce weight of wrought golde. *Vaschus* recompensed hym with thynges whiche he esteemed muche more, as axes, and sundry kyndes of carpenters tooles: also a souldiours cloke, and a sayre hurt, wrought with needle woork. By these gyftes, *Comogrus* thought hym selfe to be halfe a God among his borderers. *Vaschus* at his departyng from hence, earnestly charged *Comogrus*, and the other kynges, to remayne faythful and obedient to the christian kyng of Castile, if they desyred to lyue in peace and quietnesse, and that they shoulde hereafter more diligently

Feeblenesse of  
hunger and  
watchyng.

The riuer  
*Comogrus*.



gently apply them selues to the geathering of golde, to be sent to the great chrystian *Tiba* (that is) kyng: Declaryng further, that by this meanes, they shoulde both get them and their posteritie a patrone and defender agaynst their enemyes, and also obtayne great abundaunce of our thynges. These sayes thus happely atchiued, he went forward on his voyage to the palaice of kyng *Poncha*, where he found foure young men, which were come from *Dariena*, to certifie hym that there were certayne thynges come from *Hispaniola* laden with byttayles, and other necessaries. Wherefore takyng with hym twentie of his most lusty souldiers, he made hast to *Dariena*, with long iorneyes: leaping the residue behynd him, to folowe at theyr leysure. He writeth, that he came to *Dariena* the .xiii. Ca. of Fe. An. 1514. The date of his letter is: From *Dariena*, the .iiii. day of March. He writeth in the same letter, that he had many sore conflictes, & that he was yet neyther wounded, or lost any of his men in the battayle: and therefore in all his large letter, there is not one lease without thankes geuyng to almyghty God for his deluyery, and preseruacion from so many imminent perylls. He attempted no enterpryse, or toke in hand any voyage, without chynuocation of God and his holy sayntes. Thus was *Vaschus Balboa* of a byolent Goliath, turned into *Heliseus*, and from *Anteus* to *Hercules*, the conquerour of monsters. Beyng therefore thus turned from a rashe royster, to a polypike and descrete captayne, he was iudged woorthy to be aduanced to great honour: By reason whereof, he was both receiued into the kynges fauour, and thereupon created the generall or Lieutenannt of the kynges army in those Regions. Thus muche haue I geathered both by the letters of certayne my saythfull frendes beyng in *Dariena*, and also by woorde of mouth of suche as came lately from thence. If your holynes desyre to knowe what I thynke herein, suerly, by suche thynges as I haue seene, I beleue these thynges to be true, euen so thowder and agreepng of *Vaschus* and his companions warrelpyke letters, seeme to confirme the same. The Spaniarde therefore shall not neede hereafter, with vndermynyng the earth with intollerable labour, to breake the bones of our mother, and enter many myles into her bowels, and with innumerable daungers cut in sunder whole

*Vaschus* returneth to *Pariena*.

The good fortune of *Vaschus*.

A flatterynge fortune, looke his death in the hooke of the Tland lately found

The earth is our generall mother.

whole mountaynes, to make away to the courte of infernal *Pluto*, to byyng from thence wycked gold, the seede of innumerable mescheues, without the whiche, notwithstanding we may nowe scarcely leade a happye lyfe, sith iniquitie hath so preuayled, and made vs slaues to that, whereof we are lordes by nature: The Spaniarde (I say) shall not neede with such trauayles and difficultie, to dygge farre into the earth for gold, but shall fynde it plentifully, in maner in the upper crust of the earth, or in the sandes of ryuers dyed by by the heat of sommer, onely washyng the earth softly from the same, and shall with lyke facilitie geather plentie of pearles. Certaynly the reuerent antiquitie (by all the Cosmographers assent) obteyned not so great a benefyte of nature, nor yet aspired to the knowledge hereof, because there came neuer man before out of our known worlde, to these vnknown nations, at the least with a power of men by force of armes, in maner of conquest: wheras otherwysely nothyng can be gotton here, forasmuche as these nations are for the most part seuered defenders of theyr patrimonies, and cruell to strangers, in no condition admitting them otherwise then by conquest, especially the fierce *Canibales* or *Caribes*. For these wylde hunters of men, geue them selues to none other kynde of exercyse, but onely to manhuntynge, and tyllage, after theyr maner. At the comynge therefore of our men into theyr regions, they looke as surely to haue them fall into their snares, as if they were hartes or wylde boyes: and with no lesse confydence, like their lippes secretly, in hope of their praye. If they get the upper hande, they eate them greedily: if they mistrust them selues to be the weaker part, they trust to theyr feete, and flee swifter then the wynde. Agayne, yf the matter be tryed on the water, aswel the women as the men can dyte and swymme, as though they had ben euer brought vp and fedde in the water. It is no marueyle therefore, yf the large tract of these regions haue ben hitherto vnknown. But nowe sith it hath pleased God to discouer the same in our tyme, it shall become vs to shewe our naturall loue to mankynde, and duetie to God, to endeouour our selues to byyng them to ciuilitie and true religion, to thyncrease of Christes flocke, to the confusion of Infidels and the Deuyll theyr father, who delpyeth in our destruction, as he hath doone from

The court of infernal *Pluto*.

Manhunters.

The fierynesse of the *Canibales*.

Our duty to god, and naturall loue to mankynde.

## The thyrd decade.

doone from the beggynnyng. By the good successe of the fyfth frutes, our hope is that the Christian religion shall stretch forth her armes very farre, whiche thyng shoulde the sooner come to passe, yf all men to theyr power, especially Christian princes (to whom it cheefely parteyneth) woulde put theyr handes to the plough of the lordes vineyarde: The haruest surely is great, but the woorkemen are but fewe. As we haue sayde at the beggynnyng, your holynesse shal hereafter nouryshe many myriades of broodes of chyckens vnder your wynges. But let vs nowe retorne to speake of *Beragua*, beyng the West syde of *Vraba*, and first found by *Colonus* the Admiral, then vnforgunately gouerned by *Diego Nicuesa*, and nowe left in maner desolate, with the other large regions of those prouinces, brought from theyr wyld and beastly rudenesse, to ciuilitie and true religion.

### The fourth booke of the thyrd Decade.



**L**as determined (moste holy father) to haue proceeded no further herein, but y one spery sparke, yet remaynyng in my minde, would not suffer me to ceasse. Whereas I haue therfore declared how *Beragua* was first founde by *Colonus*, me thynke I shoulde commit a haynous crime, if I shoulde defraud the man of the due commendations of his trauayles, of his cares and troubles, and finally of the daungers & perylls whiche he susteyned in that nauigation. Therfore in the peere of Christ 1502. in the 6. day of the Ides of May, he hoysed vp his sayles, and departed from the Ilandes of *Gades*, with foure shippes, of fyfte or threescore tunne a peece, with a hundred, threescore, and ten men; and came with prosperous wynde to the Ilandes of *Canaria*, within fyue dayes folowynge. From thence, arryuyng the 16. day at the Ilande of *Dominica*, being the cheefe habitati- on of the *Canibales*, he sailed from *Dominica* to *Hispaniola* in fyue other dayes. Thus within the space of 26. dayes, with prosperous wynde, and by the swyfte fall of the Ocean from the East to the West, he sayled from Spayne to *Hispaniola*, whiche

The office of Christian princes. The haruest is great.

The fourth nauigation of Colonus the Admiral.

## The thyrd Decade.

III

courte is counted of the mariners, to be no lesse then a thousand and two hundred leagues. He tarped but a whyle in *Hispaniola*, whether it were wyllynge, or that he were so admonished of the Vice Roy. Directyng therfore his voyage from thence toward the west, leauynge the Ilandes of *Cuba* and *Iamaica* on his ryght hand toward the north, he wytteth that he chaunced vpon an Ilande more southwarde then *Iamaica*, whiche the inhabitants call *Guanassa*, so flozzyshyng and fruitefull, that it might seeme an earthlye Paradyse. Coastynge along by the shores of this Iland, he mette two of the *Candas*, or boates of those prouinces, whiche were drawne with two naked slaues agaynst the streame. In these boates was carped a ruler of the Iland, with his wyfe and chyldren, all naked. The slaues seepng our men a lande, made signes to them with proud countenance in theyr maisters name, to stand out of the way, and threatned them, if they woulde not geue place. Their sympleness is such, that they neyther feared the multitude, or power of our men, or the greatnes and straungenes of our shippes. They thought that our men woulde haue honoured theyr maister with lyke reuerence as they dyd. Our men had entelligence at the length, that this ruler was a great marchant, which came to the parte from other coastes of the Ilande: for they exercyse bying and sellynge by exchange with their confines. He had also with hym good store of suche ware as they stand in neede of, or take pleasure in: as lator belles, ralers, knyues, and hatchettes made of a certayne sharpe pellicule byght stone, with handles of a strong kinde of wood: also many other necessary instrumentes, with kyche stuffe, and vesselles for all necessary vses: lykewyse sheetes of gossampine cotton, brought of sundrie colours. Our men toke hym prysoner, with al his family, but *Colonus* commaunded hym to be loosed shortly after, and the greatest part of his goodes to bee restored, to wyne his frendshyppe. Beyng here instructed of a land lyng further toward the south, he tooke his voyage thither. Therfore litle more then tenne myles distant from hence, he founde a large land, whiche the inhabitants called *Quiriquetana*, but he named it *Ciamba*. When he went a lande, and commaunded his chaplaine to say masse on the sea bankes, a great confluence of the naked inhabitantes flocked thither,

From Spayne to Hispaniola a thousande and two hundred leagues.

Simple people

A great marchant.

**Gentle people.** ther, simply and without feare, bringyng with them plenty of meate and freshe water, marueyllyng at our men, as they had ben some straunge miracle. When they had presented theyr gistes, they went somewhat backward, and made lowe curtesy after theyr maner, bowyng their heades and bodies reuerently. He recompensed their gentilnes, rewardyng them with other of our thynges, as counters, brassettes, and garlands of glasse, and counterfet stones, lookyng glasses, needelles, and pynnes, with suche other trashe, whiche seemed vnto them pretious marchandise. In this great tracte, there are two regions, whereof the one is called *Tuia*, and the other *Maia*. He writeth, that all that lande is very fayre and hollome, by reason of the excellent temperatnesse of the ayre: And that it is inferiour to no land in fruitefull ground, beyng partly full of mountaynes, and partly large playnes: also replenished with many goodly trees, hollome hearbes, continuynge greene, and flopphyng al the whole yeere. It beareth also very many holly trees, and pyneapple trees. Also .vii. kyndes of date trees, whereof some are fruitefull, and some baren. It byngeth forth like wyle of it selfe *Pelgoras*, and wilde vines, laden with grapes, euen in the wooddes among other trees. He sayth furthermore, that there is such abundaunce of other pleasant and profitable fruites, that they passe not of vines. Of one of those kyndes of date trees, they make certayne long and brode swoordes, and dartes. These regions beare also gossampyne trees here and there commonly in the woods. Lykewise *Mirobalanes* of sundry kyndes, as those which the phisicians call *Emblicos*, and *Cebulos*: *Maizium* also, *Lucca*, *dges*, and *Battatas*, lyke vnto those which we haue sayd before to be founde in other regions in these coastes. The same nooyeth also Lions, Tygers, Hartes, Roes, Goates, and dyuers other beastes. Lykewise sundry kyndes of byrdes and foules: among the whiche they keepe onely them to franke and feede, which are in colour, bygnes, and tast, muche lyke vnto our *Dehennes*. He sayth that inhabitants are of hygh and goodly stature, well lynned and proportioned, both men and women, coueryng theyr priuy partes with fyne breeches of gossampyne cotton, wrought with diuers colours. And that they may seeme the more comely and beautifull (as they take it)

The regions of  
*Tuia* & *Maia*.

Senten kyndes  
of date trees.

Wilde vines.

*Mirobalanes*.

Byrdes and  
foules.

People of  
goodly stature.

it) they paynt theyr bodies redde and blacke, with the iuice of certayne apples, whiche they plant in theyr gardens for the same purpose. Some of them paynt theyr whole bodies, some but part, and other some drawe the portitures of hearbes, floures, and knottes, euery one as seemeth best to his owne phantasie. Theyr language differeth utterly, from theyrs of the *Ilandes* neere about them. From these regions, the waters of the sea ran with as full a course towards the West, as if it had byn the fall of a swift riuer. Neuerthelesse he determined to searche the East partes of this land, reuoluyng in his minde that the regions of *Paria* & *Os draconis* with other coastes founde before towards the East, shoulde be neere there about, as in deede they were. Departyng therfore from the large region of *Quiriquetana*, the .xiii. day of the calendes of September, when he had sayled thyrty leagues, he found a ryuer, within the mouth wherof he drew freshe water in the sea: where also the shore was so cleane without rockes, that he founde grounde euery where, where he myght aply cast anker. He writeth, that the swift course of the Ocean was so vehement and contrary, that in the space of fourtie dayes, he coulde scarcely sayle threescore and tenne leagues, and that with much difficultie, with many fetches and compassynges, fyndyng him selfe to be some tymes repulsed and dryuen farre backe by the violent course of the sea, when he woulde haue taken lande toward the euening, leaste perhaps wanderyng in vnknown coastes in the darcknesse of the nyght, he myght be in daunger of shypwacke. He writeth, that in the space of eyght leagues, he found thre great and fayre ryuers, vpon the bankes whereof there grewe reedes hygger then a mannes thygh. In these riuers was also great plenty of fysh, and great Tortoyles: Lykewise in many places, multitudes of Crocodyles lying in the sande, and panyng to take the heate of the sonne: besyde, dyuers other kyndes of beastes, wherunto he gaue no names. He sayeth also, that the soyle of that lande is verie diuers and variable, beyng somewhere stonpe and full of rough and craggie promontories, or poyntes reachyng into the sea, and in other places as fruitefull as may be. They haue also diuers kynges and rulers. In some places they call a kyng *Cacicus*; in other places they

They paynt  
theyr bodies.

The swift  
course of the sea  
from the East  
to the West.

Freshe water  
in the sea.

Fayre ryuers.  
Great reedes.

Great  
Tortoyles.

they call hym *Quebi*, and somewhere *Tiba*. Such as haue behaued them selues valiantlye in the warres agaynst theyr enemies, and haue theyr faces full of scarres, they call *Cupras*, and honour them as the antiquitie dyd the gods whiche they called *Heroes*, supposed to be the soules of suche men, as in theyr lyfe tyme excelled in vertue and noble actes. The common people they call *Chini*, and a man, they say *Hoppa homo*. After this, he came to an other ryuer apt to beare great shippes, before the mouth whereof, lye foure small Ilandes, full of stony thyng and fruitfull trees: these Ilandes he named *Quatuor tempora*. From hence, sayling toward the East for the space of .xiii. leagues, styl against the violent course of the water, he founde twelue other small Ilandes, in the which, because he founde a new kind of frutes, much like vnto our Lemons, he called them *Limonars*. Wanderyng yet further the same way for the space of .xii. leagues, he founde a great haven entryng into the lande, after the maner of a gulf, the space of thre leagues, and in maner as byde, into y<sup>e</sup> which fel a great riuer. Here was *Nicuesa* lost afterward, when he sought *Beragua*, by reason whereof, they called it *Rio de los perdidos*, that is, the ryuer of the lost men. Thus *Colonus* the Admirall, yet further continuing his course agaynst the furpe of the sea, founde manye hygh mountaynes, and horrible valleys, with dyuers ryuers and hauens, from all the which (as he sayth) proceeded sweete sauiours, greatly recreatyng and comfortyng nature: Insomuche that in al this long tract, there was not one of his men diseased, vntyll he came to a region whiche the inhabitants call *Quicuris*, in the whiche is the haven called *Cariai*, named *Mirobalanus* by the Admirall, because the *Mirobalane* trees are natie in the regions thereabout. In this haven of *Cariai*, there came about two hundred of inhabitants to the sea syde, with enerye of them thre or foure darters in theyr handes, yet of condition gentle yenough, and not refusing straungers. Their comyng was for none other purpose, then to knowe what this newe nation meant, or what they brought with them. When our men had geuen them sygnes of peace, they came swymmyng to the shypes, and desyred to barter with them by exchaunge. The Admirall, to

*Quatuor tempora.*

The region of *Quicuri*.

The haven of *Cariai* or *Mirobalanus*.

assure them to frendshyppe, geue them many of our thynges: But they refused them, suspecting some disceyt thereby, because he would not receiue theirs. They wrought all by sygnes: for one vnderstoode not a woord of the others language. Suche gyftes as were sent them, they left on the shore, and would take no part thereof. They are of suche ciuilitie and humanitie, that they esteeme it more honorable to geue, then to take. They sent our men two yong women, beyng virgines, of commendable fauour, and goodly stature, signifying vnto them, that they myght take them away with them, if it were their pleasure. These women, after the maner of their countrey, were couered from their ancles somewhat aboue their priue partes, with a certayne cloth made of gossampine cotton, but the men are all naked. The women vse to cut their heare: but the men let it growe on the hynder part of their heades, and cut it on the fore part. Their long heare, they bynde by with sylletes, and wynde it in sundry rowles, as our maydes are accustomed to do. The virgines whiche were sent to the Admirall, he decked in fayre apparell, and gaue them many gyftes, and sent them home agayne. But lykewyse all these rewardes and apparel they left vppon the shore, because our men had refused their gyftes. Yet tooke he two men away with hym (and those very wyllyngly) that by learnyng the Spanyshe tongue, he myght afterward vse them for interpretours. He considered that the tractes of these coastes were not greatly troubled with vehement motions, or ouerflowynges of the sea, forasmuche as trees growe in the sea not farre from the shore, euen as they doo vppon the bankes of ryuers: the whiche thyng also other do affirme, whiche haue lately searched those coastes, declaring that the sea ryseth and falleth but litle therabout. He sayth furthermore, that in the prospect of this land, there are trees engendred euen in the sea, which after that they are growen to any height, bend downe the toppes of theyr braunches into the ground: whiche embracing them, causeth other braunches to spring out of the same, and take roote in the earth, byngyng forth trees in theyr kynd successiuelly, as dyd the fyrst root from whence they had theyr originall, as do also the settes of vines, when onely both the endes thereof are put into the grounde. Plinie in the twelfth

Ciuite and humane people

Trees growing in the sea after a strange sort.

Di booke

booke of his natural historie maketh mention of suche trees, describving them to be on the lande, but not in the sea. The Admirall wytteth also, that the lyke beastes are engendred in the coastes of *Cariac*, as in other prouinces of these regions, and such as we haue spoken of before: Yet that there is one founde here in nature muche differing from the other. This beast is of the bygnesse of a great Donkey, but with a tayle much longer and bygger, it lyueth in the wooddes, and remoueth from tree to tree in this maner: Hangyng by the tayle vppon the bratunche of a tree, and geatheryng strength by swaying her body twyle or thysle to and fro, she casteth her selfe from branche to branche, and so from tree to tree, as though she flew. An archer of ours hurt one of them, who, perceiuyng her selfe to be wounded, leapt downe from the tree, and fiercely set on him whiche gaue her the wound, in so much that he was fayne to defend hym selfe with his sword. And thus by chaunce, cuttyng of one of her armes, he tooke her, and with much ado brought her to the shippes, where within a while she waxed tame. Whyle she was thus kept and bounde with cheynes, certayne other of our hunters had chased a wylde Boze out of the maryshes neere vnto the sea syde: for hunger and desyre of fleshe, caused them to take double pleasure in huntynge. In this meane tyme other which remayned in the shippes, goyng a lande to recreate them selues, tooke this Donkie with them, who, as soone as she had espyed the Boze, set vp her bystels, and made towarde him. The Boze lykewyle shooke his bystels, and whet his teeth. The Donkie furiously innaded the Boze, wrappynge her tayle about his body, & with her arme, referued of her victourer, helde him so fast about the throte, that he was suffocate. These people of *Cariac*, vse to dye the dead bodies of theyr princes vppon hurdels, and so referue them inuolued in the leaues of trees. As he went forward, about twentie leagues from *Cariac*, he founde a gulfe of suche largenes, that it contayned .xii. leagues in compasse, in the mouth of this gulfe was foure litle Ilandes, so neere togeather, that they made a safe haven to enter into the gulfe: This gulfe is the haven whiche we sayde before to be called *Cerabaro* of thynhabitanes. But they haue nowe learned, that only the land of the one syde therof, lying on the ryght hande

A strange kynde  
of Monkeys.

A Monkey  
fgyhteth with  
a man.

A conflict be-  
twene a Mon-  
key and a wylde  
Boze.

The bodies of  
kynge dyed  
and referued.

at the enterynge of the gulfe, is called by that name, but that on the left syde, is called *Aburema*. He sayth that all this gulfe is full of fruitefull Ilandes, wel replenished with goodly trees, and the grounde of the sea to be very cleane without rockes, and commodious to cast anker: lykewyle the sea of the gulfe to haue great abundance of fyshe, and the lande on both the sydes to bee inferyor to none in fruitfulness. At his fyrst arryuyng, he espyed two of thynhabitanes, hauyng cheynes about theyr neckes, made of ouches (whiche they call *Guainis*) of base golde, artificially wrought in the fourmes of Eagles, and Lions, with dyuers other beastes, and foules. Of the two *Cariacians* whiche he brought with hym from *Cariac*, he was enformed that the regions of *Cerabaro* and *Aburema* were ryche in golde, and that the people of *Cariac* haue al theyr gold from thence for exchaunge of other of theyr thynges. They tolde hym also, that in the same regions there are fve villages, not farre from the sea syde, whose inhabitants apply them selues onely to the geathering of gold. The names of these villages are these, *Chirara*, *Puren*, *Chitaza*, *Jureche*, *Atamea*. All the men of the prouince of *Cerabaro*, go naked, & are painted with diuers colours. They take great pleasure in weating garlandes of floures, and crownes made of the clawes of Lions & Tygers. The women couer only theyr priue partes with a syllet of gossampine cotton. Departing from hence, & coasting styll by the same shore for the space of .xviii. leagues, he came to another ryuer, where he espyed about thre hundred naked men in a company. When they sawe the shippes drawe neare the lande, they cryed out aloud, with cruel countenaunces, shakynge theyr wooden swoordes, and hurlyng daries, takynge also water in theyr mouthes, and spoutynge the same agaynst our men: whereby they seemed to insinuate, that they woulde receiue no condonion of peace, or haue ought to do with them. Here he commaunded certayne pieces of ordynance to be shot of towarde them, yet so to overshoote them, that none myght be hurt thereby: For he euer determined to deale quietly & peaceably with these newe nations. At the noyse therefore of the gunnes, and sight of the fyre, they fel downe to the grounde, and shewynge peace. Thus enterynge vnto theyr frendshipp, they exchaunged theyr cheynes and ouches of golde,

Crownes of  
beastes clawes.

Spytefull  
people.

Guns make  
peace.



Seven golden  
ryuersNote wher the  
plentie of gold  
andethCrocodyles of  
sweete saour.Mear of Babyl  
lon in Egypt.

golde, for glasses, and haukes belles, and suche other marchan-  
dies. They vse drummes or tymbrels made of the shelles of  
certaine sea fyshes, wherewith they encoage them selues in the  
warres. In this tract are these seven ryuers, *Acateba, Quareba,*  
*Zobroba, Aiaguitin, Vrida, Duribba, Beragua*, in all the whiche,  
golde is founde. They defende them selues agaynst rayne and  
heat with certayne great leaues of trees, in the steade of clokes.  
Departing from hence, he searched the coastes of *Ebetere*, and  
*Embigar*, into the whiche fall the goodly ryuers of *Zoboran* and  
*Cubigar*: And here ceaseth the plentie and fruitfulness of gold, in  
the tract of fiftie leagues, or there about. From hence, only three  
leagues distant, is the rocke whiche in the vnsfortunat discourse  
of *Nicuesa* we sayde was called of our men *Pignonem*, but of thin-  
habitantes the Region is called *Vibba*. In this tract also, about  
fye leagues from thence, is the hauen whiche *Colonus* called  
*Portus Bellus* (wherof we haue spoken before) in the region which  
thinhabitantes cal *Xaguaquara*. This region is very populous,  
but they goe all naked. The kyng is paynted with blacke  
colours, but all the people with redde. The kyng and seven of  
his noble men, had euery of them a litle place of golde hangyng  
at theyr nosethpylles, downe vnto theyr lyppes: and this they  
take for a comely ornament. The men inclose theyr priue mem-  
bers in a shell, and the women couer theyr with a fyllet of gol-  
dampine cotton, tyed about theyr loynes. In theyr gardens they  
noryshe a fruite muche lyke the nut of a pine tree, the which (as  
we haue sayde in an other place) groweth on a shubbe, muche  
lyke vnto an hartichoke, but the fruite is muche softer, and meate  
for a kyng: also certayne trees whiche beare gourdes, whereof  
we haue spoken before: this tree they call *Hibuero*. In these  
coastes they met sometymes with *Crocodyles* lying on the  
sandes, the whiche when they fled, or tooke the water, they  
left a very sweete sauoure behynde them, sweeter then mulke  
or *Castoreum*. When I was sent ambassadoure for the catho-  
lyke kyng of Castile, to the Soltane of Babylon, or Alcayre in  
Egypt, thinhabitantes neere vnto the ryuer of *Nilus* tolde me  
the lyke of theyr female *Crocodyles*, affyrmyng furthermore,  
that the fat or the wet of them, is equall in sweetness with the  
pleasaunt gummies of Arabie. But the Admirall was nowe at  
the

the length enforced of necessitie to depart from hence, aswell  
for that he was no longer able to abyde the contrarie and vio-  
lent course of the water, as also that his shippes were dayly  
more and more putrified, and eaten through with certayne wo-  
mes, which are engendred of the warmenelle of the water in al  
those tractes, neere vnto the Equinoctiall line. The Vene-  
tians call these wormes *Bissas*. The same are also engendred in  
two hauens of the citie of *Alexandria* in Egypt, and destroy the  
shippes if they lye long at anker. They are a cubit in length,  
and somewhat more, not passing the quantitie of a fynger in big-  
nesse. The Spanysh mariner calleth this pestilence *Broma*. *Co-*  
*lonus* therfore, whom before the great monsters of the sea could  
not feare, now fearyng this *Broma*, being also sore vexed with the  
contrary fall of the sea, directed his course with the Ocean toward  
the west, and came first to the riuer *Hiebra*, distant only two  
leagues from the riuer of *Beragua*, because that was comodious  
to harborowe great shypes. This region is named after the riuer,  
and is called *Beragua* the lesse, because both the riuers are in the  
dominion of the kyng whiche inhabiteth the region of *Beragua*.  
But what chaunced vnto hym in this voyage on the ryght  
hand and on the left, let vs now declare. While therfore *Co-*  
*lonus* the Admirall remayned yet in the riuer *Hiebra*, he sent *Bar-*  
*tholomeus Colonus* his brother, and *Liesetenaunt* of *Hispaniola*,  
with the shyp boates, and threescore and eyght men, to the riuer  
of *Beragua*, where the kyng of the region, being naked, and  
paynted after the maner of the countrey, came towards them,  
with a great multitude of men waytyng on hym, but all vnarmed  
and without weapons, geuyng also signes of peace. When he  
approched neerer, and entred communication with our men, cer-  
tayne of his gentlemen, neereff about his person, remembryng  
the maiestie of a kyng, and that it stood not with his honour to  
bargayne standyng, tooke a great stone out of the riuer, wash-  
yng and rubbing it very decently, and so put it vnder hym, with  
humble reuerence. The kyng thus sittynge, seemed with signes  
and tokens, to insinuate that it should be lawfull for our men to  
search and viewe al the riuers within his dominion. Wherefore,  
the fyrst day of the Ides of February, leauing his boates with  
certayne of his company, he went by land a foote, from the  
bankes

Shippes eaten  
with wormes.Alexandria in  
Egypt.Houere the kyng  
of Beragua en-  
tertained the  
Lieutenant.Their reuerence  
to their kyng.

bankes of *Beragua*, vntyll he came to the ryuer of *Duraba*, which he affirmeth to be rycher in gold then eyther *Hiebra* or *Beragua*: For gold is engendred in all ryuers of that land, inſomuch that among the rootes of trees growing by the bankes of the ryuers, and among the ſtones left of the water, and alſo whereſoeuer they dygged a hole or pyt in the ground, not paſt the deapth of a handefull and a halfe, they founde the earth, beyng taken out therof, myxte with golde: whereuppon he determynd to faſten his foote there, and to inhabit. Whiche thing the people of the countrey perceiuing, and ſmellyng what inconuenience and miſchiefe myght thereof enſue to their countrey, if they ſhould permit ſtraungers to plant theyr inhabitations there, aſſembled a great armie, and with horrible outcryes aſſayled our men (who had now begun to build houſes) ſo deſperatly, that they were ſcarcely able for to abyde the fyrſt byunt. Theſe naked Barbarians at theyr fyrſt approche, vſed onely ſynges and dartes: but when they came neerer to hande ſtrokes, they fought with theyr wooden ſwoordes, whiche they cal *Machanas*, as we haue ſayde beſore. A man woulde not thynke what great malice and wrath was kyndled in theyr hartes agaynſt our men, and with what deſperate myndes they fought for the defence of theyr libertie, whiche they more eſteeme then lyfe or riches: For they were now ſo boyde of al feare, and condemning death, that they neyther feared long bowes or croſſe bowes, nor yet (which is moſte to be marueyled) were any thyng diſcouraged at the terrible noyſe of the gunnes, ſhotte of from the ſhyppes. They rettyred once: but ſhortly after increaſyng theyr number, they returned more fiercely then at the fyrſt. They woulde haue ben contented to haue receiued our men frendly as ſtraungers, but not as inhabitours. The more iſtant that our men were to remayne, ſo much the greater multitude of borderers flockted togetheather dayly, diſturbyng them both nyght and day, ſometymes on the one ſyde, and ſometymes on the other. The ſhyppes lying at anker neare vnto the ſhoze, warded them on the backe halfe: but at the length they were fayne to forſake this lande, and returne backe the ſame way by the whiche they came. Thus with much difficultie & daunger they came to the land of *Iamaica*, lying on the ſouth ſide of *Hiſpaniola* & *Cuba*, with theyr

ſynges and dartes.

Libertie more eſteemed then riches.

The Spaniards are dyuident ſo ſpyght.

theyr ſhyppes as full of holes as ſpues, and holes ſo eaten with wormes, as though they had been boyled through with wymbles. The water entred ſo faſt at the ryſtes and holes, that yf they had not with the paynfull labour of theyr handes emptied the ſame as faſt, they were lyke to haue peryiſhed: where as yet by this meanes they arryued at *Iamaica*, although in manner halfe dead. But theyr calamitie ceaſſed not heere: For as faſt as theyr ſhyppes leaked, theyr ſtrength diminiſhed, ſo that they were no longer able to keepe them from ſynkyng. By reaſon whereof, falling into the handes of the Barbarians, and included without hope of departure, they led theyr lyues for the ſpace of tenne monethes among the naked people, more miſerable then euer dyd *Achemenides* among the *Giautes*, called *Cyclopes*, rather lyuyng, then beyng eyther contented or ſatiſfied with the ſtrange meates of that Ilande, and that onely at ſuche tymes as pleaſed the Barbarians to geue them part of theyrs. The deadly enmytie and malice whiche theſe barbarous kynges beare one agaynſt an other, made greatly with our men: For at ſuche tymes as they attempted warre agaynſt theyr borderers, they woulde ſometymes geue our men part of theyr bread, to abyde them. But how miſerable and wretched a thyng it is to liue onely with bread gotten by beggyng, your holynelle may eaſly coniecture: eſpecially where al other accuſtomed foode is lacking, as wyne, oyle, fleiſhe, butter, cheeſe, and mylke, wherewith the ſtomackes of our people of Europe haue euer been noyſhed, euen from theyr cradels. Therfore as neceſſitie is ſubiect to no law: ſo doth it enforce men to attempt deſperate aduentures, and thoſe yf ſooner, which by a certayne nobilitie of nature, do no further eſteeme lyfe then it is ioynd with ſome felicitie. *Bartholomeus Colonius* therfore, intending rather to proue what God woulde do with hym and his companions in theſe extremities, then any longer to abyde the ſame, commaunded *Diego Mendez* his ſteward, with two guides of that Ilande, whom he had hyred with promiſes of great rewardes at theyr returne, to enter into one of theyr Canoas, and take theyr voyage to *Hiſpaniola*. Beyng thus toſſed on the ſea to and fro from rocke to rocke, by reaſon of the ſhortnelle and narrowelle of the Canoa, they arryued at the length at the laſt corner of *Hiſpaniola*.

A miſerable caſe.

Necellitie hath no lawe.

Howe farre life is to be eſteemed

niola, beyng distant from *Iamaica* fourtie leagues. Here his gupdes departyng from hym, returned agayne to *Colonus*, for the rewardes whiche he had promised them: but *Diegus Mendez* went on forwarde a foote, vntyll he came to the citie called *Sancus Dominicus*, beyng the chiefe & head citie of the *Ilande*. The offycers and rulers of *Hispaniola*, beyng enfourmed of the matter, appoynted hym two shypes, wherewith he returned to his maister and companions. As he founde them, so came they to *Hispaniola*, very feeble, and in maner naked. That chaunced of them afterwarde, I knowe not as yet. Let vs now therefore leaue these particulers, and speake somewhat more of generals. In al those tracts, whiche we sayd here before to haue been founde by *Colonus* the Admiral, both he hym selfe writeth, and all his companions of that voyage confesse, that the trees, hearbes, and fruites, are flozthyng and greene all the whole yeere, and the ayre so temperate & holefome, that of all his companie there neuer fel one man sycke, nor yet were vexed eyther with extreme colde or heate, for the space of fyfte leagues, from the great hauen of *Cerabaro*, to the ryuers of *Hiebra* and *Beragua*. The inhabitants of *Cerabaro*, and the nations whiche are bewyrt that & the sayde ryuers, applie not them selues to the gathering of gold, but only at certayne tymes of the yeere, and are very expert and cunnynge herein, as are our myners of syluer and Iron. They knowe by long experience in what places golde is most abundantly engendred: as by the colour of the water of the ryuers, and such as fall from the mountaynes, and also by the colour of the earth and stones. They beleeue a certayne godly nature to be in golde, forasmuche as they neuer geather it, except they vse certayne religious expiations or purgynge, as to absteyne from women, and all kyndes of pleasures, and delicate meates and drinckes, during all the tyme that their golden harnest lasteth. They suppose that men do naturally liue and die as other beastes do, and therefore honour none other thyng as God: Yet do they pray to the Sonne, and honour it when it ryseth. But let vs now speake of the mountains, and situation of these landes. From all the sea bankes of these regions, exceedyng great and hygh mountaynes are seene toward the South, yet reaching by a continual tract from the East into the west,

*Sancus Dominicus*.

Landes founde by *Colonus*.

Temperat regions and hol some ayre.

Expert miners

A godly nature in golde.

Golden harnest

Hygh and great mountaynes.

west, by reason wherof, I suppose that the two great seas (wherof I haue spoken largely before) are deuided with these mountaynes, as it were with bulwarkes, least they shoulde ioyne and repugne, as *Italie* diuiderh the sea called *Tirrhenum*, from the sea *Adriatike*, whiche is now commonly called the gulfe of *Venice*. For whiche way so euer they sayled from the poynt called *Promontorium*, *S. Augustini* (whiche parteyneth to the *Portugales*, and prospecteth against the sea *Atlantike*) euen vnto *Vraba* and the hauen *Cerabaro*, and to the furthest landes founde hitherto westward, they had euer great mountaynes in syght, both neere hande, and also farre of, in all that long rase. These mountaynes were in some place smooth, pleasaunt, and fruitfull, full of goodly trees and hearbes, and somewhere hygh, rough, full of rockes, and barren, as chaunceth in the famous mountayne of *Taurus* in *Asia*, and also in dyuers coastes of our mountaynes of *Apennini*, & such other of like bygnesse. The rydgies also of these mountaynes are diuided with goodly and fayre balleys. That part of the mountaynes whiche includeth the limittes of *Beragua*, is thought to be hygher then the cloudes, insomuch that (as they say) the tops of them can seldome be seene for the multitude of thicke cloudes whiche are beneath the same. *Colanus* the Admiral, the fyrst synder of these regions, affirmeth that the toppes of the mountaynes of *Beragua*, are more then fyfte myles in heygth. He sayth furthermore, that in the same region at the rootes of the mountaynes the way is open to the south sea, & compareth it as it were betwene *Venice* and *Genua*, or *Ianua*, as the *Genues* wyl haue it called, whiche fable that theyr citie was builded of *Ianus*. He affirmeth also, that this land reacheth forth toward the south, and that from hence it taketh the beggynning of breadth: lyke as from the Alpes, out of the narowe thygh of *Italie*, we see the large and mayne landes of *Fraunce*, *Germanie*, and *Spannie*, to the *Sarmatians* and *Scythians*, euen vnto the mountaynes and rockes of *Riphea*, and the frosen sea, and embrace therewith, as with a continuall bonde, al *Thracia*, and *Grecia*, with all that is included within the promontorie or poynt of *Malea*, and *Hellepontus* southwarde, and the sea *Euzinus*, and the myrysthes of *Meotis* in *Scythia* northwarde. The Admiral supposeth, that on the left hande, in saylyng toward the west, this lande

*Tirrhenum* is now called *Tuscanus*.

The mostaynes of *Beragua* higher then the cloudes.

Mountaynes of fyfte myles heygth.

*Ianus* others wyle called *Iapyx* the son of *Noe*.

By this coniecture, the way shoulde open to Cathai by the Hyperboreans.

Booke the navigation of Cabote. Deca. iii. lib. vi.

The great river Maragnonius.

The great river Dabaiba, of sancti Iohannis.

lande is ioyned to India, beyonde the ryuer of Ganges, and that on the ryght hande toward the North, it is extended to the frozen sea, beyonde the Hyperboreans and the North pole. So that both the seas (that is to meane that south sea which we sayd to bee founde by *Vaschus*, and our Ocean) shoulde ioyne and meete in the corners of that lande, and that the waters of these seas do not onely inclose and compass the same without diuision, as Europe is inclosed with the seas of *Hellepontus*, and *Tanais* with the frozen Ocean, and our sea of *Cyrrhenum* with the Spanysh seas: But in my opinion, the vehement courle of the Ocean toward the west, doth signifie the let that the sayd two seas shoulde not so ioyne togeather, but rather that that lande is adherent to the firme landes toward the North, as we haue sayde before. It shall suffice to haue sayde thus muche of the length hereof: Let vs nowe therefore speake somewhat of the breadth of the same. We haue made mention before howe the south sea is diuided by narrowe limittes from our Ocean, as it was proued by the experience of *Vaschus Nunnez* and his companions, which fyrst made open the way thither. But as dyuersly the mountaynes of our Alpes in Europe are somewhere narrowe, and in some place bryde: euen so, by the lyke prouidence of nature, this land in some part therof reacheth farre in breadth, and is in other places coarcted with narrowe limittes from sea to sea, with valleyes also in some places, whereby men may passe from the one syde to the other. Where we haue described the regions of *Vraba* and *Beragua* to be situate, these seas are diuided by small distaunce: Yet ought we to thynke the region, whiche the great ryuer of *Maragnonius* runneth through, to be very large, if we shall graunt *Maragnonum* to be a ryuer, and no sea, as the freshe waters of the same ought to perswade vs. For in suche narrowe caues of the earth, there can be no swallowyng gulfes of suche bygnesse as to receiue or nooryshe so great abundance of water. The lyke is also to be supposed of the great ryuer of *Dabaiba*, whiche we sayde to be from the corner of the gulfe of *Vraba*, in some place of fourtie fathomes depth, and somewhere fiftie: also thre myles in breadth, and so to fall into the sea. We must needes graunt, that the earth is bryde there, by the which the ryuer passeth from the high mountaynes of *Dabaiba* from

from the East, and not from the west. They say that this ryuer consisteth and taketh his encrease of foure other ryuers, falling from the mountaynes of *Dabaiba*. Our men call this ryuer *Flumen S. Iohannis*. They say also that from hence it falleth into the gulfe of *Vraba* by seuen mouthes, as dooth the ryuer of *Nilus* into the sea of Egypt: Lykewyse that in the same region of *Vraba*, there are in some places narrowe streyghtes, not passing fyftee leagues, and the same to be sauage, and without any passage, by reason of dyuers maryshes and desolate wapes, whiche the Latines call *Lamas*, but the Spanyardes accordyng to theyr varietie call them *Tremedales*, *Trampales*, *Cenegales*, *Sumideros*, & *Zabondaderos*. But before we passe any further, it shall not be greatly from our purpose to declare from whence these mountaynes of *Dabaiba* haue theyr name, accordyng vnto the antiquities of thynhabitanes. They sayd that *Dabaiba* was a woman, of great magnanimitie and wysedome among theyr predecessours in olde tyme, whom in her lyfe all thynhabitanes of those prouinces dyd greatly reuerence, and beyng dead, gaue her diuine honour, and named the region after her name, beleeyng that she sendeth thunder and lyghtnyng, to destroy the frutes of the earth yf she be angred, and to sende plentie if thee be well pleased. This superstition hath been perswaded them by a craftie kynde of men, vnder pretence of religion, to thintent that they myght enioy suche gyftes and offerings as were brought to the place where she was honoured. This is sufficient for this purpose. They say furthermore, that the maryshes of the narrowe land, whereof we haue spoken, bring forth great plentie of *Crocodiles*, *Dragons*, *Battes*, and *Gnats*, beyng very hurtfull. Therefore whensoever they take any iorney toward the south, they go out of the way toward the mountaynes, and eschewe the regions neere vnto those peryllous fennes or maryshes. Some thynke that there is a valley lying that way that the ryuer runneth, which our men call *Rio de los perdidos* that is, the ryuer of the lost men (so named by the misfortune whiche there befell to *Niquesa* and his company) and not farre distant from the hauen *Cerabaro*, whiche diuideth those mountaynes toward the south. But let vs now finish the this booke with a fewe other thinges woorth to be noted. They say there-

The rivers haue theyr increase from the springes of the mountaynes. The ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypt.

Maryshes and desolate wapes

A superstitious opinion of the originall of the mountaynes of *Dabaiba*.

Dragons and Crocodiles in the maryshes.

The hauen *Cerabaro*.

fore,

## The thyrd Decade.

Twentie gol-  
den ryuers.

Precious  
stones.

A precious Di-  
amond offer-  
reeding bignes.

Copasis.

foze, that on the ryght hand and left hande from *Dariena* there are  
twentye ryuers, in all the whiche great plente of gold is found.  
Beyng demaunded what was the cause why they brought no  
greater aboundance of golde from thence: they answered, that  
they lacked miners, and that the men whiche they tooke wiche  
them from *Spayne* thither, were not accustomed to labour, but  
for the most part brought up in the warres. This land seemeth  
also to promise many precious stones: For helpe those which  
I sayde to be founde neere vnto *Cariac* and *Sancta Martha*, one  
*Andreas Moralis*, a pilot (who had trauayled those coastes with  
*Iohannes dela Cossa* whyle he yet lyued) had a precious Dia-  
monde, whiche he bought of a naked young man in the region  
of *Cumana*, in the prouince of *Paria*. This stone was as long  
as two ioyntes of a mans myddle fynger, and as byg as the  
first ioynt of the thumbe, beyng also paynted on euery syde, con-  
sisting of eynht squares, perfectly fourmed by nature. They say  
that wiche this they made scarres in anuyles and hammers, and  
broke the teeth of fylles, the stone remayning vnperyshe. The  
young man of *Cumana*, wore this stone about his necke among  
other ouches, & solde it to *Andreas Moralis* for syue of our coun-  
terfect stones, made of glasse, of diuers colours, wherewith the  
ignozant young man was greatly deleyted: They found also cer-  
tayne *Copasis* on þ shore. But the estimation of gold was so farre  
entred into the heades of our men, that they had no regarde to  
stones. Also the most part of the *Spaniards*, do laugh them  
to scozne which vse to weare many stones. specially such as are  
common, iudging it to be an effeminate thyng, and moze meete  
for women then men. The noble men onely, when they celebrate  
solemne mariages, or set forth any triumphes, weare cheynes  
of gold, beset with precious stones, and vse sayre apparel of silke,  
embroidered with golde, intermixt wiche pearles and precious  
stones, and not at other tymes. They thynke it no lesse effe-  
minate for men to smel of the sweete sauours of *Arabie*, and iudge  
hym to be infected wiche some kynde of fylthylechery, in whom  
they smel the sauour of muske or *Castoreum*. But lyke as by one  
apple taken from a tree, we may perceiue the tree to be fruitfull,  
and by one fysh taken in a ryuer, we may knowe that fysh is  
ingendored in the same: euen so, by a litle gold, and by one stone,  
we

## The thyrd Decade.

119

we ought to consyder that this land bringeth forth great plen-  
tie of golde, and precious stones. What they haue founde in the  
poynte of *Sancta Martha*, in the region of *Cariac*, when the whole  
naute passed thereby vnder the gouernaunce of *Petrus Arias*  
and his company, wiche certayne other of the kynges officers, I  
haue sufficiently declared in his place. To be short therefore,  
al thynges do so flozyshe, growe, encrease, and prosper, that  
the last are euer better then the first. And surely to declare my  
opinion herein, whatsoeuer hath heretofore ben discovered by the  
famous trauayles of *Saturnus* and *Hercules*, wiche suche other  
whom the antiquitie for their heroical factes honoured as gods,  
seemeth but litle and obscure, if it be compared to the *Spaniards*  
victorious labours. Thus I hyde your holynesse farewell,  
despyng you to certifie me howe you lyke these first frutes of  
the *Ocean*, that beyng encouraged wiche your exhortations, I  
may the gladlyer, and wiche lesse tediousnesse, wyte suche thin-  
ges as shall chaunce hereafter.

## The fyfth booke of the thyrd Decade.



Aliche luyng creatures, as vnder the  
cycle of the moone bring forth any thing,  
are accustomed by thynstincte of nature, as  
soone as they are deliuered of theyr byrth,  
eyther to close by the matrice, or at the  
least to be quyet for a space: But our most  
fruitfull *Ocean* and newe worlde, engen-  
deth and byngeth forth dayly new byrthes, wherby men of  
great wyl, and especially such as are studious of new and mar-  
ueylous thynges, may haue somewhat at hand wherwiche to feed  
theyr myndes. If your holynesse do aske to what purpose is all  
this: ye shal vnderstand, that I had scarcely finished the hystorie of  
such thynges as chaunced to *Vasbus Nunnez* and his compa-  
nie in theyr voyage to the south sea, when sodenly there came  
new letters from *Petrus Arias* the new gouernour, whom the  
kyng had appoynted the yere before wiche an army of men and a  
nauy of shypes to sayle to these newe landes. He signified by his  
letters,



letters, that he with his nauie and company arryued al safely. Furthermoze, *Iohannes Cabedus* (whom your holinesse at the request of the most catholique kyng had created Bishop of that prouince of *Dariena*) and thre other of the cheefe officers ioyned in commission to be his assistantes, as *Alfonfus de Ponte*, *Diegus Marques*, and *Iohannes de Taura*, confirmed the same letters, and subscribed them with theyr names. The nauigation therfore of *Petrus Arias*, was in this maner. The day before the Ides of *April*, in the yeere of *Christe*. 1514. he hoyled by his sayles, in the towne of *saint Lucar de Barrameda*, situate in the mouth of the ryuer *Batis*, which the Spanyardes now cal *Guadalquivir*. The seuen Ilandes of *Canaria* are about foure hundred myles distant from the place where this riuer falleth into the sea. Some thynke that these are the Ilandes whiche the olde wyters do call thefortunate Ilandes: but other thynke the contrary. The name of these Ilandes are these. The two that appeare fyrst in sight, are named *Lanzelota* and *Fortisuentura*. On the backhalfe of these, lyeth *Magna Canaria* or *Grancanaria*. Beyond that is *Teuerif* and *Gomera* somewhat towarde the north from that. *Palma* and *Ferrealpe* behynde, as it were a bulwarke to al the other. *Petrus Arias* therfore, arriued at *Gomera* the eyght day after his departure, with a nauie of seenteene ships, & a thousand and fye hundred men, although there were only a thousand and two hundred assigned hym by the kynges letters. It is sayd furthermoze, that he left behynde hym more then two thousande, very penfue and sighing that they also myght not be receiued, proferpng them selues to goe at theyr owne charges. He tarped xvi. dayes in *Gomera*, to the intent to make prouision of fuel and freshe water, but cheefely to repayre his shippes, beyng sore broosed with tempestes, and especially the gouernours shippe, which had lost the rudder: For these Ilandes are a commodious resting place for al suche as intende to attempt any nauigations in that maine sea. Departing from hence in the Mones of May, he sawe no more lande vntyll the thyrd day of June, at the whiche he arryued at *Dominica* an Ilande of the *Canibales*, being distant from *Gomera* about eight hundred leagues. Here he remained foure dayes, makpng newe prouision of freshe water and fuell, durpng whiche tyme, he sawe no man, nor yet anye

The nauigation of *Petrus Arias*.

The Ilande of *Canarie*.

Prouision of freshe water and fuel.

steppes of men, but founde plenty of sea Crabbes and great Lizards. From hence he sayled by the Ilandes of *Matinina* (otherwyle called *Madanino*) *Guadalupea* and *Galanta* (otherwyle called *Galana*) of al which we haue spoken in the fyrst Decade. He passed also through the sea of hearbes or weedes, continuing a long tract: Yet neyther he, nor *Colonus* the Admirall (who fyrst found these Ilandes, and sayled through this sea of weedes) haue declared any reason how these weedes shoulde come. Some thynke the sea to be verpe muddye there, and that these weedes are engendred in the bottome thereof, and so beyng loosed, to ascende to the vppermost part of the water, as we see oftentimes chaunce in certayne standyng pooles, and sometymes also in great ryuers. Other suppose that they are not engendred there, but to be beaten from certayne rockes by the violence of the water in tempestes: And thus they leaue the matter in doubt. Neyther haue they yet any certayne experience whether they stycke fast and geue place to the shippes, or wander loose vpon the water: But it is to be thought, that they are engendred there, for otherwyle they shoulde be dyuen together on heapes, by the impullion of the shippes, euen as a beasome greathereth the sweepynge of a house, and shoulde also let the course of the shippes. The fourth day after that he departed from *Dominica*, the hyghe mountaynes couered with snowe (whereof we haue spoken in the seconde Decade) appeared vnto hym. They say that there the seas runne as swyftly towarde the west, as it were a ryuer fallpng from the toppes of hygh mountaynes, although they sayled not directly towarde the west, but inclined somewhat to the south. From these mountaynes falleth the ryuer of *Gaira*, famous by the slaughter of our men, at such tyme as *Rodericus Colmenares* passed by those coastes, as we haue sayde before: Lykewyle many other saye ryuers haue theyr original from the same mountaynes. This prouince (in the which is also the region of *Caramairi*) hath in it two notable hauens, of y which our men named the one *Carthago* or *Carthage-na*, and thother *Sancta Martha*, the region wherof thynhabitantes call *Saturma*. The port of *Sancta Martha*, is nerer to the mountaynes couered with snow, called *Montes Niuales*, for it is at the rootes of the same mountaynes, but y haue of *Carthago* is more westwarde,

The sea of hearbes.

These mountaynes are called *Montes Niuales*, or *Serra Menata*, Decade. ii. lib. i. and. ii.

Mountaynes couered with snowe.

## The thynde Decade.

westward, about fyfte leagues. He wytteth manieplous things of the hauen of *Sancta Martha*, whiche they also confirme that came lately from thence: Of the which young *Vesputius* is one, to whom *Americus Vesputius* his vncle (beyng a florentine boine) left the exact knowledge of the mariners facultie, as it were by inheritance after his death, for he was a very expert maister in the knowledge of his carde, his compasse, and the eleuation of the pole starre, with all that parteyneth thereto. This young *Vesputius* was assigned by the kyng to be one of the maisters of the gouernours shipp, because he was cunning in iudging the degrees of the eleuation of the pole starre by the quadrant: For the charge of gouerning the rudder, was cheefly committed to one *Iohannes Serranus* a Spaniard, who had oftentimes ouerrunne those coastes. *Vesputius* is my very familiar frende, and a witty young man, in whose company I take great pleasure, and therfore vse hym oftentimes for my ghest. He hath also made many voyages into these coastes, and diligentely noted suche thynges as he hath seene. *Petrus Arias* therfore wytteth, and he confirmeth the same, that the inhabitants of these regions tooke theyr originall of the Caribbes or Canibales, as appeared by the desperat fieriuelles and crueltie which they oftentimes shewed to our men when they passed by theyr coastes. Suche stoutnesse and fortitude of mynde is naturallie engendred in these naked Barbarians, that they feared not to assaile our whole natty, and to forbyd them to come a lande. They fyght with venemous arrowes, as we haue sayde before. Parceyuyng that our men contemned theyr threathynges, they ranne furiously into the sea, euen vnto the breastes, nothyng fearyng eyther the bygnesse or multitude of our shippes, but ceased not contynualle, beyng thus in the water, to cast dartes, and to shoote theyr venemous arrowes as thicke as hayle: Inso much that our men had byn in great daunger, yf they had not bin defended by the cages or pauises of the shippes, and their targettes: Yet were two of them wounded, which died shortly after. But this conflict continued so sharp, that at the length our men were enforced to shoote of theyr greatest pieces of ordinaunce with hayeshoote: at the slaughter and terrible noyse wherof, the Barbarians beyng soze discomfited and shaken with feare, thynkyng

The stoutnes  
of the Barbari-  
ans.

The Canibales  
fight in the  
water.

The use of  
gunnes.

## The thynde Decade.

121

thynkyng the same to be thunder and lychtning, turned theyr backs, and fledde amayne. They greatly feare thunder, because these regions are oftentimes vexed with thunder and lychtninges, by reason of the hyghe mountaynes, and nearenesse of the same to the region of the ayre, wherein such fierie tempestes are engendred, whiche the philosphers call *Meteora*. And albeit that our men had nowe dyuen theyr ennies to flyght, and sawe them disparcelled and out of order, yet doubted they, and were of diuers opinions, whether they shoulde pursue them, or not. On the one partie shame pricked them forwarde, and on the other syde, feare caused them to caste manye perylls, especially consyderyng the venemous arrowes whiche these Barbarians can direct so certaynely. To depart from them with a dyde foote (as sayth the prouerbe) with so great a nauie, and suche an armie, they reputed it as a thyng greatly soundyng to theyr reproche and dishonour. At the length therefore, shame ouercomyng feare, they pursued them, and came to land with theyr ship boates. The gouernour of the nauie, & also *Vesputius* do wytte, that the hauen is no lesse then three leagues in compasse, beyng also safe without rockes, and the water therof so cleare, that a man may see pybble stones in the bottome twentie cubits deepe. They say lykewyse, that there falleth two sayre ryuers of freche water into the hauen: but the same to be meete to beare the Canoas of these prouinces, then any hygger vessels. It is a delectable thyng to heare what they tel of the plentie and varietie, and also of the p'esaunt taile of the fyshes, aswell of these ryuers, as of the sea therabout: By reason wherof they found here manye fysher boates and nettes woonderfully wrought of the stalkes of certayne hearbes or weedes, dyed and talwed, and wreathed with cords of spynne gossampyne cotton. For the people of *Caramairi*, *Gaira*, and *Saturma*, are very cunning in fishyng, and vse to sel fysh to theyr borderers, for exchange of such thynges as they lacke. When our men had thus chased the Barbarians from the sea coastes, and had now entred into theyr houses, they assailed them with newe skymishes, especially when they sawe them fall to laking and spolyng, and theyr wyues and chyldren taken captiue. Their household stuffe was made of great reedes, whiche growe on the sea ban-

The generati-  
on of thunder  
and lychtning.

Plentie of fysh.

Cunning  
fishers.

R i kes,

Capistris.

This is he  
whom Carda-  
nus praileth.

Precious  
stones.  
The Smaradge  
is the true  
Smaradge.  
Another kynde  
of Amber is  
founde in  
Wales.

Solde and  
Basilis.  
Marchasites  
are flowes of  
mettals, by the  
colours where-  
of, the kyndes  
of mettals are  
known.

These Locustes  
burne the corne  
with touching,  
and deuoure  
the residue.  
They are in  
India of three  
foote length.

kes, and the stalkes of certayne hearbes beaten, and afterwarde made harde. The floores thereof were strewed with hearbes of sundry colours, and the walles hanged with a kynde of capstry, artificially made of gossampine cotton, and wrought with pictures of Lions, Tygers, and Eagles. The doores of theyr houses and chambers were full of dyuers kyndes of shelles, hanging loose by small cordes, that beyng shaken by the wynde, they myght make a certayne rattelyng, and also a whystelyng noyse, by geatheryng the wynde in theyr holowe places: for herein they haue great delyght, and impute this for a goodly ornament. Dyuers haue shewed me many wonderfull thynges of these regions, especially one *Conzalus Fernandus Oniedus*, beyng one of the magistrates appoynted in that office, which the Spanyarden call *Vedor*, who hath also hitherto entred further into the lande then any other. He affirmeth, that he chaunced vpon the fragment of a Saphire, bygger then the egge of a goose, and that in certayne hylles where he trauayled with thirtie men, he founde many of the pretious stones called Smaragdes, Calcido- nes, and Iaspers, besyde great peeces of Amber of the moun- taines. He also, with diuers other, do affirme that in the houses of some of the Canibales of these regions, they founde the like preci- ous stones, set in gold, and inclosed in capstry or arras (if it may so be called) wherewith they hang theyr houses. The same lande bypgeth forth also many wooddes of basile trees, and great plentie of golde, in so much that in maner in al places they founde on the sea bankes, & on the shores, certayne marchasites in to- ken of golde. *Fernandus Oniedus* declareth furthermore, that in a certayne region called *Zenu*, lying fourescore and tenne myles from *Dariena* Eastwarde, they exercise a straunge kynde of mar- chaundize: For in the houses of the inhabitantes, they founde great chestes and baskets, made of the twiggess and leaues of cer- tayne trees apte for that purpose, being all full of Grasshoppers, Grylles, Crabbes, or Crespshes, Snaples also, and Locustes, whiche destroye the fieldes of corne, al well dyed and salted. Be- yng demaunded why they reserued suche a multitude of these beastes: they answered, that they kept them to be solde to theyr borderers, whiche dwell further within the lande, and that for the exchange of these pretious byrdes, and salted fyshes, they re- ceiued

reiuied of them certayne strange thynges, wherein partly they take pleasure, and partly vse them for theyr necessary affayres. These people dwell not togeather, but scattered here and there. The inhabitantes of *Caramairi*, seeme to dwell in an earthly Para- dise, theyr region is so fayre and fruitefull, without outragious heate, or sharpe colde, with litle difference of the length of day and nyght throughout all the yeere. After that our men had thus dyuen the Barbarians to flyght, they entred into a balley, of two leagues in breadth, and thre in length, extendyng to cer- tayne fruitefull mountaynes, full of grasse, hearbes, and trees, at the rootes whereof, lye two other balleis towarde the ryght hande and the least, through cyther of the whiche runneth a fayre ryuer, wherof the ryuer of *Caira* is one, but vnto the o- ther they haue yet geuen no name. In these valleys they founde many fayre gardens, and pleasaunt feedes, watered with tren- ches, distributed in maneyfous order, with no lesse art then our Insulubrians and Petrurians vse to water their feedes. Theyr common meate, is *Ages*, *Iucca*, *Maizium*, *Battata*, with suche other rootes and frutes of trees, and also such fysh as they vse in the Ilandes and other regions of these prouinces. They eate mans fleshe but seldome, because they meete not oftentymes with strangers, except they goe forth of theyr one dominions with a mayne army, of purpose to hunt for men, when theyr rauenyng appetite prickteth them forwarde: For they abstayne from them selues, and eate none but suche as they take in the warres, or otherwyle by chaunce. But surely it is a miserable thyng to heare howe many myriades of men these fyllyp and vn- naturall deuourers of mens fleshe haue consumed, and lesse thou- sandes of most fayre and fruitefull Ilandes and regions desolate without men: by reason whereof, our men founde so manye Ilandes, whiche for theyr fayrenesse and fruitefulness myght seeme to be certayne earthly Paradyses, and yet were utterly voyde of men. Hereby your holynesse may consider howe perniti- cious a kynde of men this is. We haue sayde before, that the I- lande named *Sancti Iohannis* (which thynhabitantes call *Burichena*) is next to *Hispaniola*. It is sayde, that only the Canibales which dwell in the other Ilandes neere about this, as in the Ilande cal- led *Haybay* or *Sancta Crucis*, and in *Guadalupea* (otherwyle called

Gardens.

Insulubres are  
nowe called  
Lumbardes,  
and Petrurians,  
Tuscanis.

One myriade,  
is ten thou-  
sands.

R ii

Queraqueira.

*Quevaqueiera*, or *Carucuiera*) haue in our tyme violently taken out of the sayde Ilande of *Sancti Iohannis*, more then fyue thousande men to be eaten. But let it suffice thus muche to haue wandered by these monstrous bloodsuckers. We wyl nowe therfore speake somewhat of the rootes whereof they make theyr bread, forasmuche as the same shal hereafter be foode to Christian men, in steade of bread made of wheate, and in the steade of rabythe, with such other rootes as they haue been accustomed to eate in Europe. We haue oftentimes sayd before, that *Lucca* is a roote, whereof the best and most delicate bread is made, both in the firme lande of these regions, and also in the Ilandes: but howe it is tyllid or husbanded, howe it groweth, and of how dyuers kyndes it is, I haue not yet declared. Therfore, when they entende to plant this *Lucca*, they make a hole in the earth, knee deepe, and rayse a heape of the earth taken out of the same, fashionyng it lyke a square bedde, of niene foote breadyth on euery syde, settyng twelue trunks of these roots (be- yng about a foote and a halfe long a peece) in euery of the sayd beddes, contaynyng thre rootes of a syde, so layde a slope, that the endes of them ioyne in maner togeather in the center or middest of the bedde within the ground. Out of the ioyntes of the rootes, and spaces betwene the same, spryng the toppes and blades of newe rootes, whiche by litle and litle encreasynge, growe to the bygnes and length of a mans arme in the byawne, and oftentimes as bygge as the thygh: so that by the tyme of theyr full ryppenes, in maner all the earth of the heape is conuerted into rootes. But they say that these rootes are not ryppened in lesse then a yeere and a halfe, and that the longer they are suffered to grow, euen vntyl two yeeres complete, they are so much the better, and more perfecte to make bread thereof. When they are taken forth of the earth, they scrape them, and sylfe them, with certayne sharpe stones, seruyng for the same purpose: And thus laying them betwene two great stones, or puttyng them in a sacke made of the stalkes of certayne tough hearbes and smal reedes, they presse them (as do we cheese or crabbes, to drawe out the iuice thereof) and so let them drye a daye before they eate them. The iuice or liquour they cast away: for (as we haue sayde) it is deadly popson in the Ilandes. Yet is the iuice of

suche

The manner of  
plantynge the  
roote *Lucca*.

Earth turned  
into rootes.

Howe bread is  
made of rootes

suche as growe in the firme land wholesome, yf it be sodde, as is the whey of our mylke. They say that there are many kyndes of this *Lucca*, wherof some are more pleasaunt and delicate then the other, and are therefore reserued as it were to make fyne Banquet for the kynges owne table: But the Gentlemen eate of the meaner sort, and the common people of the basest. The finest they call *Cazabbi*, whiche they make rounde lyke cakes, in certayne presses, before they see the it, or bake it. They say furthermore, that there are lykewyse diuers kyndes of the rootes of *Ages*, and *Battata*. But they vse these rather as frutes, and dyshes of seruice, then to make bread thereof, as we vse Rapes, Radishes, Mushromes, Rauies, Persnippes, and suche lyke. In this case, they moste especially esteeme the best kynde of *Battatas*, which in pleasant taste and tendernesse, farre exceedeth our Mushromes. It shal suffice to haue sayd thus much of rootes: We wyl nowe therefore speake of another kynde of their bread. We declared before, that they haue a kynde of grayne or Husle, muche lyke vnto *Panicum*, but with somewhat bygger graynes, whiche they beate into meale, vpon certayne great hollow stones, with the labour of theyr handes, when they lacke *Lucca*, and of this is made the more vulgar or common bread. It is sowne thysle a yeere, so that the fruitefulness of the ground may beare it, by reason of the equalitie of the tyme, whereof we haue spoken sufficiently before. In these regions they founde also the grayne of *Maizium*, and sundry kyndes of frutes of trees, diligently planted, and wel husbanded. The way betwene the regions of *Caramairi* and *Saturma*, is fayre, broode, and ryght footth. They founde here also sundry kyndes of water pottes made of earth, of diuers colours, in the whiche they both fetch and keepe freshe water: Lykewyse sundry kyndes of iugges, godderbes, dynkyng cuppes, pottes, pannes, dyshes, and platters, artificially made. When the gouernour had geuen commaundement by proclamation, that the inhabitauntes should eyther obey the Christian kyng, and embrace our religion, or els to depart out of theyr countrey: they answered with benemous arrowes. In this skymynge, our men tooke some of them: whereof, clothynge the moste parte in fayre apparell, they sent them againe to their owne company: But leauing the residue to

R iii

the

*Panicum* is a  
grayne some-  
what lyke mil:  
The Italians  
call it *Melica*.

He meaneth the  
equal length of  
day and nyght  
which is con-  
tinually in regis-  
ons vnder the  
Equinoctiall  
line.

the shippes, to chintene to shewe them the power and magnificence of the christians, that they might declare the same to the companions, thereby to wyne their fauour, they appareled them lykewyse, and sent them after thei fellows. They aspyme, that in all the ryuers of these coast, they sawe great argumentes and tokens of golde. They founde here and there in their houses good store of Harts flesh, & Bores fleshe, wherewith they fedde them selues delicately. They also haue great plentie of sundry kyndes of byrdes, and foules, whereof they byng by many in their houses, some for necessary foode, and other for dayntie dyshes, as we do Venues and Partridges. Our men hereby coniecture, that the ayre of these regions is very hollsome, forasmuche as slepyng all nyght vnder the skyment on the bankes of the ryuers, none of them were at any tyme offended with reumes or headache, by reason of any noysome humour, or vapour procedyng from the earth, ayre, or water. Our men furthermore founde there many great botomes of gossampyne cotton redy spunne, and fardelies of dyuers kyndes of fethers, whereof they make them selues cresses and plumes, after the maner of our men of armes: also certeine clokes, whiche they esteeme as most comely ornamentes. They founde lykewyse an innumerable multitude of bowes and arrowes. Whinhabitants also of these regions, in some places vse to burne the carcases of their princes when they are dead, and to reserue their bones buryed with spyes in certayne hylles. In other places, they onely dye them, and imbawme them with spyes and sweete gummes, and so reserue them in sepulchers in thei owne houses. Somewhere also, they dye them, spye them, adourne them with precious iewelles, and ouches, and so reuerently place them in certayne tabernacles, made for the same purpose in thei owne palaces. When our men had many of thei tablets, braselettes, collers, and suche other ouches (whiche they call Guanines) they founde them rather to be made of laton then of golde: whereby they suppose that they haue used to exchaunge thei ware with some craftie straungers, whiche brought them those counterfeyt ouches, to defraude them of thei golde: For euen our men perceiued not the decepte vntill they came to the melting. Furthermore, certayne of our buy-

Hollsome apie.

Gossampyne  
Cotton.  
Fethers.

Bowes and  
arrowes.

Dead bodies  
reserued.

Sonzalus Quis  
edus lapyth,  
that they gyt  
marueylously  
wyt the rice of  
a certayne  
hearbe.

gred

ers wanderyng a litle way from the sea coastes, chaunced to fynde certayne peeces of white marble: whereby they thynke, that in tyme past some straungers haue come to those landes, whiche haue dygged marble out of the mountaynes, and leste those fragmentes on the playne. There our men learned that the ryuer Maragnonus descendeth from the mountaynes couered with snowe, called Montes Niuales, or Serra Niuata, and the same to be encreased by many other ryuers, whiche fall into it throughtout all the lowe and waterly regions, by the whiche it runneth with so long a tract from the sayd mountaynes into the sea, and this to be the cause of the greatnesse thereof. These thynges being thus brought to passe, the gouernour commaunded the trumpeter to blowe a reiraite: Afteruppon they which were sent to lande (beyng fife hundred in number) making a great shout for ioy of thei victorie, set them selues in order of battayle, and so keepyng thei array, returned to the shippes laden with spoyle of those prouinces, and shynyng in souldiers clokes of feathers, with sayre plumes and cresses of variable colours. In this meane tyme, haupyng repaired thei shippes, and furnished the same with all necessities, they looked anker the xvi day of the Calendes of July, directyng their course to the haue of Carthazena, in the whiche voyage they destroyed and wasted certayne Islandes of the Canibales, lpyng in the way, accordyng as they were commaunded by the kyng. But the swift course of the water deceiued both Iohannes Sarranus the chiefe pilot of the gouernours shipp, and all the other, although they made their best that they perfectly knewe the nature thereof: For they aspyme, that in one night they were caried fourtie leagues beyond their estimation.

White marble.

The great river  
Maragnonus.  
This iopneth  
wyt the mighty  
r river called  
flumen Amazonum,  
founde  
of late.

Clokes of  
fethers.

The swift  
course of the  
water.

Fourtie leagues  
in one  
nyght.

The sixte booke of the thynde Decade.



Here must we somewhat digresse fro Cosmography, & make a philosophical discourse to searche the secrete causes of nature. For whereas they all affirme with one consent, that the sea runneth there from the east to the west, as swiftly as it were a ryuer fallyng from hygh mountaynes, I thought it not good

Sundry opinto  
ons why the  
sea runneth  
wyt so swifte  
course from  
the East into  
the West.

R iiii



good to let suche matter slpye vntouchyd. The which whyle I consyder, I am drawen into no small ambiguitie and doubte, whyther those waters haue theyr course, whiche flowe with so continuall a tract in circuite from the East, as though they fledde to the west, neuer to retorne, and yet neyther the west thereby any whit the more fylled, nor the East emptied. If we shall say that they fall to theyr centre (as is the nature of heauie thynges) and assigne the Equinoctiall line to bee the centre (as some affyrme) what centre shall we appoynt to be able to receiue so great abundance of water? Or what circumference shall be founde wet? They whiche haue searched those coastes, haue yet founde no lyke reason to be true. Many thynke that there shoulde bee certayne large straighytes or entrances in the corner of that great lande, whiche we described to be epyght tymes bygger then Italye, and the corner thereof to be full of gulfes, whereby they suppose that some straghtes shoulde passe through the same, lying on the west syde of the Islande of Cuba, and that the sayde straghtes shoulde swallowe vp those waters, and so conuey the same into the west, and from thence agayne into our East Ocean, or north seas, as some thynke. Other wyl, that the gulse of that great lande be closed by, and the lande to reache farre toward the north on the backe syde of Cuba, so that it embrace the north landes, whiche the frosen sea encompasseth vnder the north pole, and that all the lande of those coastes, shoulde ioyne togeather as one firme lande: Whereby they coniecture, that those waters shoulde be turned about by the obiecte or resistance of that land, so bendyng toward the north, as we see the waters turned about in the crooked bankes of certayne ryuers. But this agreeth not in all poyntes. For they also whiche haue searched the frosen sea, and sayled from thence into the west, do lykwylse affyrme, that those north seas flowe continually toward the west, although nothyng so swiftly. These north seas haue ben searched by one Sebastian Cabot, a Venetian bozne, whom beyng yet but in maner an infant, his parentes carped with them into Englande, hauyng occasion to resorte thither for trade of merchandise, as is the maner of the Venetians, to leaue no part of the worlde vnsearched to obtaine rycheffe. He therfore furnished

The Equinoctiall line.  
Why al waters moue toward the south or Equinoctial, read Cardanus ac subtilit liber ii. de elementis. Straghtes.

As by the straght of Magelanus The north landes.

The frosen sea.

Sebastian Cabot.

two shippes in England at his owne charges: And fyrst with thre hundred men, directed his course so farre toward the north pole, that euen in the moneth of Iuly he founde monstrous heapes of Ice swymming on the sea, and in maner continually day lycht: Yet sawe he the lande in that tract free from Ice, whiche had ben moulted by heat of the Sonne. Thus seepng suche heapes of Ice before hym, he was enforced to turne his sayles, and folowe the west, so coastyng styll by the shore, that he was thereby brought so farre into the south, by reason of the lande bendyng so muche southwarde, that it was there almost equall in latitude with the sea called *Fretum Herculeum*, hauyng the north pole eleuate in maner in the same degree. He sayled lykwylse in this tract so farre toward the west, that he had the Islande of Cuba on his left hande, in maner in the same degree of longitude. As he traueyled by the coastes of this great lande (whiche he named *Baccallaos*) he sayth, that he founde the lyke course of the waters toward the west, but the same to runne more softly and gentely, then the swift waters whiche the Spanyardes founde in their nauigations southwarde. Therefore, it is not onely more lyke to be true, but ought also of necessitie to be concluded, that betwene both the landes hitherto vnknewen, there shoulde be certayne great open places, wherby the waters shoulde thus continually passe from the East into the west: whiche waters I suppose to be dyuen about the globe of the earth by the vncessant mouyng and impulsion of the heauens, and not to be swallowed by and cast out agayne by the breathyng of *Demogorgon*, as some haue imagined, bycause they see the seas by increas & decreas, to flow & reflow. Sebastian Cabot hym selfe, named those landes *Baccallaos*, bycause that in the seas therabout he founde so great multitudes of certayne bygge fyshes, muche like vnto Tunnies (which inhabitants cal *Baccallaos*) that they somtymes stayed his shippes. He founde also the people of those regions couered with beastes skynnes: yet not without the vse of reason. He also sayth there is great plentie of Beares in those regions, whiche vse to eate fysh: For plungyng them selues into the water where they perceiue a multitude of these fyshes to lye, they fasten theyr clawes in theyr scales, and so drawe them to lande, and eate them: So that (as he sayth) the

The voyage of Sebastian Cabot from Englands to the frosen sea.

Demogorgon is the spirite of the earth.

People couered with beastes skynnes.

the Beares beyng thus satisfied with fysh, are not noysome to men. He declareth further, that in many places of these regions, he sawe great plentie of laton among the inhabitauntes. Cabot is my very frend, whom I vse familiarly, and delprie to haue hym sometymes keepe me company in my owne house: For beyng called out of Englande by the commaundement of the catholique kyng of Castile, after the death of Henry kyng of Englande, the seuenth of that name, he was made one of our counsaile and assistance as touching the attayres of the new Indies, lookyng dayly for shippes to be furnished for hym to discouer this hyd secret of nature. This voyage is appoynted to be begunne in Marche in the peere next folowynge, beyng the peere of Christ. 1516. What shall succede, your holynesse shalbe aduertysed by my letters, yf God graunt me lyfe. Some of the Spaniards denye that Cabot was the fyrst synder of the lande of *Bacallass*, and affirme that he went not so farre westwarde: But it shall suffice to haue sayde thus muche of the gulfes and straghtes, and of Sebastian Cabot. Let vs nowe therfore retorne to the Spaniards. At this tyme, they let passe the hauens of *Carthago* vntouched, with al the Ilandes of the *Canibales* there aboute, whiche they named *Insulas Sancti Bernardi*, leauyng also behind theyr backs, al the region of *Caramairi*. Where by reason of a sodayne tempest, they were caste vpon the Ilande *Fortis*, beyng about fyftie leagues distant from the entraunce of the gulse of *Vraba*. In this Iland, they founde in the houses of thynhabitantes, many baskettes made of certayne great sea reedes, ful of salt. For this Iland hath in it many goodly salt bayes, by reason wherof they haue great plentie of salte, which they sell to other nations for such thyngs as they stande in neede of. Not farre from hence, a great Curlew, as bygge as a Storke, came flyng to the gouernours shyp, and suffered herselfe to be easely taken, whiche beyng carryed aboute among all the shippes of the nauie, dyed shortly after: They sawe also a great multitude of the same kynde of foules on the shore a farre of. The gouernours shyppe, whiche we sayd to haue lost the rudder, beyng nowe soze brooked, and in maner vnprowfyttable, they left behynde, to folowe at leasure. The nauie arryued at *Dariena* the twelfth day of the Calendes of Iuly, and the gouernours

The Ilandes of the Canibales.

The Ilande Fortis.

Salte.

A strange thing

uernours shyppe (beyng boyde of men) was dyuen alande in the same coastes within foure dayes after. The Spaniards whiche now inhabited *Dariena*, with theyr Captayne and Lieutenant *Vaschus Nunnez Balboa* (of whom we haue largely made mention before) beyng certified of the arriual of *Petrus Arias* and his companye, went forth thre myles to meete him, and receiued him honorably, and religiously with the psalme *Te deum laudamus*, geuyng thankes to god by whose safe conduct they were brought so prosperously thither to al theyr comfortes. They receyued them gladly into theyr houses builded after the maner of those prouinces. I may wel cal these regions, *Provincies*, a *Procul Vitis* (that is) such as are ouercome farre of, forasmuche as our men do now inhabite the same, al the barbarous kynges and Idolatours beyng elected. They entertayned them with such cheare as they were able to make them: as with the fruites of those regions, and new bread, both made of rootes, and the graine *Maizium*. Other delicacies to make vp the feast, were of theyr own store, which they brought with them in theyr ships, as poudred flesh, salted fysh, and bread made of wheat: for they brought with them many barrelles of wheate meale for the same purpose. Where may your holynesse, not without iust cause of admiration, beholde a kynges nauie and great multitude of Christians, inhabiting not only the regions situate vnder the circle of heauen, called *Tropicus Cancrari*, but also in maner vnder the Equinoctiall line, contrary to the opinion of the olde wyriters, a fewe excepted. But after that they are now mette together, let vs further declare what they determined to do. Therfore, the day after that the nauie arriued, there assembled a company of Spaniards thynhabitours of *Dariena*, to the nuber of foure hundred and fiftie men. *Petrus Arias* the gouernour of the nauie, and his companye, conferred with them both priuily and openly of certayne articles, whereof it was the kynges pleasure he shoulde enquire: and most especially as concernyng suche thynges wherof *Vaschus* the fyrst synder and Admirall of the South sea, made mention in his large letter sent from *Dariena* to Spayne. In this inquisition they founde althyngs to be true wherof *Vaschus* had certified the king by his letters, and thereupon concluded, that in the dominions of *Comogra*, *Pocchorrosa* & *Tumanana*,

Howe Vaschus receiued the newe gouernour.

Habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall line.

Where the new  
gouvernour  
planteth his ha-  
bitation.

20 passenger  
shipp.

Decurians are  
officers deu-  
ded into  
tennes &c.

The gold mi-  
nes of Dabaiba.

*Tumanama* at the assignement of *Vaschus*, certayne fortresses should be erected forthwith, to thintent there to plant theyr colonie or habitation. To the better accomplishment hereof, they sent immediatly one *Iohannes Aiora*, a noble young gentleman of *Corduba*, and under Lieutenent, with foure hundred men, and foure Carauels, and one other lytle shipp. Thus departyng, he sayled fyrst directly to the hauen of *Comogrus*, distant from *Dariena* about twentie and fyue leagues, as they wyte in theyr last letters. From hence, he is appoynted to send a hundred and fytie of his foure hundred, towarde the South, by a newe and ryghter way founde of late, by the whiche (as they say) it is not past twentie and fyve leagues from the pallace of kyng *Comogrus* to the entraunce of the gulse of *Sancti Michaelis*. The residue of the foure hundred shal remaine there, to be an ayde and succour to al such as shal toyne to and fro. Those hundred and fytie whiche are assigned to go southward, take with them for inter-pretours certain of our men, which had learned the soothern language of the bondmen which were geuen to *Vaschus* when he ouerranne those regions, and also certayne of the bondemen themselves which had nowe learned the Spanyshe tongue. They say that the hauen of *Pocchorrosa* is only seuen leagues distant from the hauen of *Comogrus*. In *Pocchorrosa* he is assigned to leaue fytie men, with the lightest ship, which may be a passenger betwene them: that like as we vse post horses by land, so may they by this currant shipp, in short space certifie the Lieutenant and inhabitaours of *Dariena* of such thynges as shal chaunce. They entend also to build houses in the region of *Tumanama*. The pallace of king *Tumanama*, is distant fro *Pocchorrosa* about twenty leagues. Of these foure hundred men, beyng of the olde soldiers of *Dariena*, & men of good experience, fytie were appointed to be as it were Decurians, to guide and conduct the new men from place to place to do theyr affayres. When they had thus set all thynges in order, they thought it good to aduertise the kyng hereof, and therewith to certifie hym, that in those prouinces there is a kyng named *Dabaiba*, whose dominion is verie ryche in gold: but the same to be yet vntouched by reason of his great power. His kyngdome toyneeth to the second great ryuer, named *Dabaiba* after his name, whiche falleth into the sea

sea out of the corner of the gulse of *Vraba*, as we haue largely declared before. The common report is, that all the land of his dominions is ryche in gold. The pallace of kyng *Dabaiba* is fytie leagues distant from *Dariena*. The inhabitantes saye, that from the pallace, the gold mynes reache to the borders on euery syde. Albeit our men haue also golde mynes not to be contemned, euen within thre leagues of *Dariena*, in the whiche they geather golde in many places at this present: Yet do they affirme greater plente to be in the mynes of *Dabaiba*. In the bookes of our fyrst fruites, witten to your holynesse, we made mention of this *Dabaiba*, wherein our men were deceyued, and mystooke the matter: For where they founde the fyshermen of kyng *Dabaiba* in the marishes, they thought his region had been there also. They determined therfore to send to kyng *Dabaiba*, thre hundred choise young men, to be chosen out of the whole army, as most apt to the warres, and well furnyshe with all kyndes of armour and artyllerie, to the intent to go by to hym, and wyl hym, eyther frendly and peaceably to permit them to inhabite part of his kyngdome, with the fruition of the golde mynes, or els to byd hym battayle, and dyue hym out of his countrey. In theyr letters, they oftentymes repeate this for an argument of great ryches to come, that they in a maner dygged the ground in no place, but found the earth myxt with sparkes and small graynes of golde. They haue also aduertised the kyng, that it shalbe commodious to place inhabitours in the hauen of *Sancta Martha*, in the region of *Saturma*, that it may be a place of refuge for them that sayle from the Ilande of *Dominica*, from the whiche (as they saye) it is but foure or fyue dayes saylyng to that hauen of the region of *Saturma*, and from the hauen, but thre dayes saylyng to *Dariena*. But this is to be vnderstoode in goyng, and not in returnyng. For the returnyng from thence is so laborious and difficulte, by reason of the contrary course of the water, that they seeme as it were to ascende hygge mountaynes, and stryue agaynst the power of *Neptunus*. This swyft course of the sea towards the west, is not so violent to them whiche returne to Spayne from the Ilandes of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, although they also do labour agaynst the fall of the Ocean: The cause whereof is, that the sea is here

An error.

The region of  
*Saturma*.  
The Ilande of  
*Dominica*.

Difficult say-  
lyng agaynst  
the course of  
the sea.

beere very large, so that the waters haue theyr full scope. But in the tract of *Paria*, the waters are constraigned together by the bendyng sydes of that great land, and by the multitude of *I*landes lying agaynst it, as the lyke is scene in the strayghtes or narrow seas of *Scicile*, where the violent course of the waters cause the dangerous places of *Scilla* and *Caribdis* by reason of those narrow seas which conteyne *Ionium*, *Libicum*, and *Tirre- num*. *Colonus* the fyrste synder of these regions, hath left in wy- tyng, that saylyng from the *I*lande of *Guanassa*, and the prouin- ces of *Iaia*, *Maia*, and *Cerabaro*, beyng regions of the west mar- ches of *Beragua*, he founde the course of the water so vehement and furious agaynst the foreparte of his shyp, whyle he sayled from those coastes toward the East, that he coulde at no time touche the grounde with his soundyng plummet, but that the contrary violence of the water woulde beare it vp from the bottome: He affyrmeth also, that he coulde neuer in one whole day, with a meetely good wynde, wynde one myle of the course of the water. And this is the cause why they are often- tymes enforced to lasse fyrst by the *I*landes of *Cuba* and *Hispani- ola*, and so into the mayne sea toward the North, when they returne to *Spayne*, that the North wyndes may further theyr boyage, whiche they can not byyng to passe by a direct course: But of the motions of the Ocean sea to and fro, this shal suffice. Let vs nowe therefore rehearse what they wyte of *Dariena*, and of theyr habitation there, whiche they cal *Sancta Maria Antiqua*, planted on the sea bankes of *Dariena*. The situation of the place, hath no natural munition or defence, and the ayre is moze pestife- rous then in *Sardus*. The Spanishe inhabitours are al pale and pelowe, lyke vnto them whiche haue the pelowe iaundies: which neuerthelesse cometh not of the nature of the region, as it is si- tuate vnder the heauen. For in many regions beyng vnder the selfe same degree of latitude, hauing the pole of the same eleuati- on, they fynd holsome & temperate ayre, in such places where as the earth byyngeth forth fayre sprynges of water, or where hol- some riuers runne by bankes of pure earth without mudde: but most especially where they inhabite the sides of the hyls, and not the valleys. But that habitation whiche is on the bankes of the ryuer of *Dariena*, is situate in a deepe valley, and enuironed

The daunges-  
rous straightes  
of *Scilla* and  
*Charibdis*.

The vehement  
course of the sea  
from the east to  
the west.

on euery syde with hygh hylles: By reason wherof, it receyueth the Sonne beames at noonetyde dyrectly parpendicular ouer theyr heades, and are therefore sore vexed by reflection of the beames, both before, behynde, and from the sydes. For it is the reflection of the sonne beames whiche causeth feruent heate, and not theyr accesse or neerenesse to the earth, forasmuche as they are not passyble in themselves, as doth manifestly appeare by the snowe lying contynually vnmolten vpon certayne hygh mountaynes, as your holynesse knoweth ryght well. The sonne beames therfore fallyng on the mountaynes, are reflected down- warde into the valley, by reason of the object of the declining sydes of the hylles, as it were the fall of a great round stone, rololed from the toppe of a mountayne. The valley therefore receyueth both those beames whiche fall directly thereon, and also those whiche are reflected downwarde from euery syde of the mountaynes. Theyr habitation therefore in *Driena*, is per- nicious and unhollome, onely of the particuler nature of the place, and not by the situation of the region as it is plased vnder the heauen, or neare to the sonne. The place is also contagious by the nature of the soyle, by reason it is compassed about with muddy and stynkyng marishes, the infection wherof is not a lytle encreased by the heate. The byllage it selfe is in a marishe, and in maner a standyng puddle, where, of the droppes fallyng from the handes of the bondemen, whyle they water the pau- mentes of theyr houses, Toades are engendred immediately, as I my selfe saw in an other place the droppes of that water turne into flies in the sommer season. Furthermore, wheresoeuer they dygge the grounde the deapth of a handful and a halfe, there spryngeth out unhollome and corrupt water, of the nature of the ryuer, whiche runneth through the deepe and muddy chanel of the valley, and so falleth into the sea: Nowe therefore they consist of remouyng theyr inhabitations. Necessitie caused them fyrst to fasten theyr foote heers, because that they whiche fyrst arryued in those landes, were oppressed with suche v- gent hunger, that they had no respect to chaunge the place, although they were thus vexed by the contagion of the soyle and heate of the Sonne, besyde the corrupt water, and in- fectious ayre, by reason of venemous vapours, and exhalati- ons

By what mea-  
nes the Sonne  
beames are  
cause of fer-  
uent heate.

The pernicious  
ayre of *Dari-  
ena*.

Toades and  
flies engen-  
dred of drops  
of water.

Necessitie hath  
no lawe.

ons ryfing from the fame . An other great incommoditie was , that the place was deftitute of a commodious haue, beyng three leagues diftant from the mouth of the gulfe : The way is alfo rough and difficult to byng vntayles and other neceffaries from the fea . But let vs nowe fpeake fomewhat of other particuler thynges whiche chaunced . Therefore fhortly after that they were arryued, there happened many thynges whereof they had no knowledge before . A certayne well learned philifion of Ciuite, whom partly the auctoritie of the Bifhop of *Dariena*, and partly the defyre of golde, had allured to thofe landes, was fo fcarred with lychtynng in the nyght feafon, lying in bedde with his wyfe, that the houfe and all the ftuffe therein beyng fet on fyre and burnt, he and his wyfe beyng both foze fcorched, ranne forth crying, and almoft naked, hardely elcappng the daunger of death. And an other tyme, as certayne of them ftoode one the fhoze, a great Crocodile foderly carped away a mafly of a yeere and a halfe olde, as a kyte fould haue fatched by a chicken : and this euen in the prefence of them all, where the miserable dogge cryed in bayne for the helpe of his maifter . In the nyght feafon they were tormented with the bytting of Battes, which are there fo noyfoime, that if they bite any man in his fleepe, they put hym in daunger of lyfe, onely with drawyng of blood : In fo muche that fome haue dyed thereof, falling as it were into a confumption through the maliciousneffe of the benemous wounde . If thefe Battes chaunce to fynde a cocke or a henne abrode in the nyght feafon, they bite them by the combes, and fo kyl them. They alfo whiche went laft into thefe regions, do wyte, that the lande is troubled with Crocodiles, Lions, and Tygers: but that they haue nowe deuifed artes and ingens howe to take them . Lykelwyle that in the houfes of theyr felowes, they founde the hydes and cafes of fuche Lions and Tygers as they had kylled . They wyte furthermore, that by reafon of the rankenefle and fruitefulneffe of the grounde, kyne, fwyne, and hoxes, doo marueloufly increafe in thefe regions, and growe to a muche bygger quantitie then they whiche were of the fyrft broode. Of the exceeding hyghneffe of the trees with theyr fruites, of the garden hearbes, fruites, plantes, and feedes, whiche

A houfe fet on  
fyre with lycht-  
ynng.

A dogge de-  
uoured of a  
Crocodile.  
*Tanquam ca-  
nis de Nilo.*

The bytting  
of Battes.

Lions and  
Tygers.

Beaſtes were  
hygher in theyr  
kynde.

whiche our men brought from Spayne, and fowled and fet the fame in thefe regions : lykelwyle of the Hartes and other foure footed beaſtes both tame and wylde, alfo of ouers kyndes of foules, byrdes, and fyſhes, they wyte euen as we haue declared in the decades before. *Careta*, the kyng of the region of *Cioba*, was with them for the fpace of three dayes : whom when they had frendly entertayned, and ſhewed hym the ſecrete places of theyr ſhyppes, their Hoxes alfo, with theyr trappers, bardes, and other furnimentes, beſyde many other thynges whiche ſeemed ſtraunge to hym, and had further deſyred his mynde with the harmony of theyr muſycal inſtrumentes, & geuen hym many rewardes, they diſmyſſed hym halfe amaſed with to muche admiration. He ſygnified vnto them, that there are trees in that prouynce, of the plankes whereof if ſhyppes were made, they ſhoulde be ſafe from the woozmes of the ſea, whiche they call *Bromas* . Howe theſe woozmes gnawe and corode the ſhyppes, we haue declared before . Our ſhyppes are greatly troubled with this plague, if they lye long in the hauens of theſe regions . But they aſſyryme that the wood of this tree is ſo bytter, that the woozmes wyl not taſte thereof. There is alfo an other tree peculiar to theſe landes, whole leaues if they onely touche the bare in any place of a mans body, they cauſe great blyſters, and thoſe ſo malicious, that except the ſame be forthwith healed with ſalte water or faſtynng ſpyttle, they do incontynently engender deadly paynes . They ſay lykelwyle, that the ſauour of the wood is preſent poiſon, and that it can no whither be caried without daunger of lyfe . When the inhabitants of the Iſlande of *Hiſpaniola* had oftentimes attempted to ſhake of the yoke of ſeruitude, and coulde neuer byng the ſame to paſſe, neyther by open warre, nor yet by priuie conſpiracies, they were determined in the nyght feafon to haue kylled our men in theyr ſleepe with the ſmoke of this wood: But when the Chriſtian men had knowledge hereof, they compelled the pooze wretches to confeſſe theyr intent, and punyſhed the chiefe auctours of the deuice . They haue alfo a certayne hearbe with the ſauour whereof they are preſerued from the hurt of this venemous wood, ſo that they may

Note.

*Broma* or *Billa*  
are woozmes  
which deſtroy  
ſhyppes.

A venemous  
tree.

Perhaps their  
venemous ar-  
rows are made  
of this wood.

A preſervative  
againg poiſon.

Si

beare



beare it safely . Of these small thinges it shall suffice to haue sayde thus much. They looke dayly for many greater thinges to certifie vs of from the Ilandes of the south sea: For at such tyme as the messenger whiche brought our letters departed from thence, *Petrus Arias* prepared an expedition to that ryche Iland which lyeth in the mouth of the gulfe called *Sinus S. Michaelis*, and reacheth into the south sea, being also left vntouched of *Vaschus*, by reason that the Sea was at that tyme of the peere sore troubled with tempestes, as we haue further declared in *Vaschus* his byage to the south . Wee looke therefore dayly for greater thinges then are hitherto paste : For they haue now taken in hande to subdue many other prouinces, which we suppose to be eyther very ryche, or to bypnyng forth some straunge workes of nature . *Iohannes Diaz Solisius* of *Nebrissa* (of whom we haue made mention before) is sent by the froont of the cape or poynt of *Sancti Augustini* (which reacheth seuen degrees beyonde the Equinocital lyne, and parteyneth to the dominion of the *Portugales*) to thintent to ouerrunne the south syde, from the backe halfe of *Paria*, *Cumana*, *Cuquibacca*, with the hauens of *Carthago*, and *Sancta Martha*, of *Dariena* also, and *Beragua*, that moze perfect and certayne knowledge may be had of those tractes . Furthermoze, one *Iohannes Poncius* was sent forth with three ships, to destroye the *Canibales*, both in the lande and Ilandes there about : as well that the nations of the moze humane and innocent people may at the length lyue without feare of that pestiferous generation, as also the better and moze safely to searche the secretes and ryche of those regions. Many other lykewyse were sent dyuers and sundry wayes, as *Gasper Badaocius* to search the West parts, *Franciscus Bexerra*, to sayle by the corner of the gulf, and *Valleius*, to passe by the mouth or entraunce thereof to the East coastes of the gulf, to searche the secretes of that lande, in the which *Fogeda* with his company had of late begunne to plant their habitation, and had buylde a foyrtresse and a byllage. *Badaocius* departed fyrst from *Dariena*, with fourescore souldiours well appoynted, whom *Lodowicus Mercado* folowed with fyfthe : To *Bexerra* were also fourescore assigned, and threescore and tenne to *Valleius* . Whether they shall arryue at safe and commodious hauens, or fall into vnfortunate stations, he onely knoweth whose

The Ilandes of the south sea.

The rich Iland called Dites.

Cap. sancti Augustini. Of the euill successe of these viages, reade the 3. Liber. 9.

An expedition to destroy the Canibales.

Booke decade. 3. lib. 9.

whose prouidence ruleth all : for as for vs men wee are included within the knowledge of thinges after they haue chaunced. Let vs now therefore come to other matters.

The seuenth booke of the third decade.



*Petrus Arias* the gouernour of the supposed continent, was scarcely entred into the mayne sea with his nauyge, onwarde on his byage to *Dariena*, but I was aduertised that one *Andreas Moralis* a pilot, who had oftentimes ouerrunne the coastes of these new seas, and the Ilandes of the same, was come to the court to sell such marchaundies as he brought with him from thence . This man had diligently searched the tracte of the supposed continent, and especially thinner regions of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, whereunto he was appoynted by his brother *Nicolaus Ouandus* (the gouernour of the Ilande, and chiefe Commendator of the order of the knyghtes of *Alcantara*) by cause he was a wyrtie man, and moze apt to searche suche thinges then any other : so that with his owne handes he dyete faire cardes and tables of such regions as he discouered . Wherein as he hath been founde faythfull of such as haue since had better tryall hercof, so is he in most credite amongst the best sorte . He therefore resorted to me, as all they are accustomed to doe which retorne from the Ocean . What I learned of him and dyuers other, of thinges heretofore vnknewen, I will now declare . The beginning of this narration, shalbe the peticular description of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, forasmuch as it is the heade, and as it were, the principall marte of all the liberalitie of the Ocean, & hath a thousand & againe a thousand, faire, pleasant, beauntiful, & ryche *Nereides*, which lye about it on euery syde, adournyng this their ladie & mother, as it were an other *Tethis* the wyfe of *Neptunus*, enuyroning her about, & attending vpon her as their queene & patronesse.

The nauigations of *Andreas Moralis*.

A peticular description of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*.

*Nereides* are nymphes of the sea, he meaneth Ilandes. Tethis the wyfe of *Neptunus* & gods drake of the sea.

tronesse. But of these *Nereiades* (that is to saye, the *Ilandes* placed about her) we will speake more hereafter. Let vs in the meane tyme declare somewhat of the *Ilande* whiche our men named *Margarita Dives* (whiche the *Spanyarden* call *De las perlas*) beyng now well knowen, and lying in the south sea in the gulf called *Sinus Sancti Michaelis* (that is) saint Michaels gulf. This *Ilande* hath presently brought to our knowledge many straunge and woonderfull thynges, and promyseth no small hope of greater thynges in tyme to come. In this is founde great plentie of pearles, so saye and great, that the sumptuous queene *Cleopatra* myght haue seemed to weare them in her crownes, chaynes, and bzallettes. Of the shellfishes wherein these are engendered, we will speake somewhat more in the end of this narration. But let vs now returne to *Hispaniola*, most lyke vnto the earthly paradise. In the description hereof, we will begynne of the imposition of dyuers names, then of the fourme of the *Ilande*, temperate ayre, and beneficial heauen, and finally of the deuision of the regions. Therefore for the right pronunciation of the names, your holynesse must vnderstande, that they are pronounced with thaccent, as you may knowe by the verge set ouer the heddes of the bowels, as in the name of the *Ilande* *Matinino*, where the accent is in the last bowell, and the lyke to be vnderstoode in all other names. They saye therefore, that the fyrst inhabitours of the *Ilande* were transported in theyr *Canoas* (that is, boates made of one whole peece of wood) from the *Ilande* of *Matinino*, beyng lyke banysht men dyuen from thence by reason of certayne contrary factions and deuylions among them selues, lyke as we reade howe *Dardanus* came from *Corytho*, and *Teucrus* from *Creta* into *Asia*, and that the region where they placed their habitation, was afterward called *Troianum*. The lyke we reade howe the *Cyrians* and *Sidonians* arrived with their nauie in *Libya* by the fabulous conduction of *Dido*. These *Matinians* in like maner being banysht from their owne countrey, planted their fyrst habitation in that parte of the *Iland* of *Hispaniola*, which they call *Cabonao*, vppon the banke of the ryuer named *Bahaboni* as is redde in the begynnyng of the *Romanes* that *Eneas* of *Troy* arryued in the region of *Italy*, called *Latium*, vppon the bankes of the ryuer of *Tiber*.

Great pearles.

*Hispaniola* lyke vnto the earthly paradise

The fyrst inhabitants of *Hispaniola*.

Within

Within the mouth of the ryuer of *Bahaboni*, lyeth an *Ilande*, where it is sayde that th inhabitants buylded theyr fyrst house, whiche they named *Camoteia*. This house they consecrated shortly after, and honoured the same reuerently, with continual gyftes and monumentes, euen vntill the commyng of our men, lyke as the *Christians* haue euer religiously honoured *Ierusalem* the fountayne and originall of our fayth: As also the *Turkes* attribute the lyke to the cite of *Mecha* in *Araby*, and the inhabitants of the fortunat *Ilandes* (called the *Ilandes* of *Canarie*) to *Tyrma*, buylded vppon a hygh rocke, from the whiche many were wont with toyfull myndes and songes to cast them selues downe headlong, beyng perswaded by theyr priestes that the soules of all such as so dyed for the loue of *Tyrma*, shoulde thereby enioye eternall felicitie. The conquerours of the *Ilandes* of *Canarie*, founde them yet remaynyng in that superstition euen vntill our tyme, nor yet is the memory of theyr sacrifices vnterly worne away: the rocke also referueth the olde name vnto this daye. I haue also learned of late, that there yet remayneth in the *Ilande* some of the faction of *Betanchor* the *Frenchman*, and fyrst that brought the *Ilandes* to good culture and ciuilitie, beyng thereto lycenced by the kynge of *Castile*, as I haue sayde before. These do yet (for the most part) obserue both the language and maners of the *French* men, although the heyres and successours of *Betanchor*, had solde the two subdued *Ilandes* to certayne men of *Castile*: Yet th inhabitants whiche succeeded *Betanchor*, and builded them houses, and encreased their families there, do continue to this day, and lyue quietly and pleasauntly with the *Spanyarden*, not greued with the sharpe colde of *Fraunce*. But let vs now returne to th inhabitants of *Matinino* and *Hispaniola*. The *Iland* of *Hispaniola* was first named by the first inhabitants *Quizqueia*, and then *Haiti*: and this not by chaunce, or at the pleasure of suche as diuided these names, but of credulitie and beleefe of some great effecte. For *Quizqueia*, is as muche to say as, A great thyng, and that so great, that none may be greater. They interpret also, that *Quizqueia* signifieth, large, vniuersall, or all, in lyke signification as the *Greekes* named theyr god called *Pan*, by cause that for y greatnes therof, these simple soules

*Ierusalem*.

*Mecha*.

The *Ilandes* of *Canarie*.

*Betanchor* a *Frenchman*.

The first names of *Hispaniola*.

Supposed

supposed it to bee the whole worlde : and that the Some beames gaue lyght to none other worlde, but onely to this Ilande, with the other adiacent about the same, and there- vpon thought it most woorthy to be called great, as the great- est of all other knowen to them. *Haiti* is as muche to saye by interpretation, as, rough, sharpe, or craggie. But by a fyguratiue speache called denomination (whereby the whole is named by part) they named the whole Ilande *Haiti* (that is) rough : Forasmuche as in many places the face of this Ilande is rough, by reason of the craggie mountaynes, horrible thicke wooddes, and terribly darke and deepe valleyes, enuironed with great & high mountaynes, although it be in manye other places exceedyng beautifull and flozzyng. Where must we somewhat digresse from thozder we are entred into. Perhaps your holy- nesse wyll maruell by what meanes these symple men shoulde of so long continuance beare in mynde suche principles, wher- as they haue no knowledge of letters. So it is therefore, that from the begynnyng, they princes haue euer been accustomed to commit theyr chyldren to the gouernaunce of their wise men, whiche they call *Boitios*, to be instructed in knowledge, and to beare in memorie such thynges as they learne. They geue them selues chiefly to two thynges: As generally, to learne the originall and successe of thynges, and peticulerly, to rehearse the noble factes of theyr graundefathers, great graundefathers, and aun- cestours, aswell in peace as in warre. These two thynges they haue of olde tyme composed in certayne myters and ballettes in theyr language. These rymes or ballettes, they call *Areitos*. And as our mynistrelles are accustomed to syng to the Harpe or Lute, so do they in lyke maner syng these songes, and daunce to the same, playing on Tymbrels made of shels of certaine fishes: These Tymbrels they call *Magueti*. They haue also songes and ballettes of loue, and other of lamentations and mournyng, some also to encourage them to the warres, with euery of them theyr tunes agreeable to the matter. They exercise them selues muche in daunceyng, wherein they are very actyue, and of greater agilitie then our men, by reason they geue them selues to nothyng so muche, and are not hyndered with apparell, whiche is also the cause of theyr swiftenesse of foote. In theyr be- liefe them of thozder auncestours, they haue prophecies

Thei manner of learning.

Ballettes and rymes.

Syngyng and daunceyng. Songes of loue and mour- nyng.

of

of the commyng of our men into theyr countrey. These they syng with mournyng, and as it were with gromyng, bewayle the losse of their libertie and seruitude. For these prophecies make mention that there shoulde come into the Iland *Maguaco- chias*, that is, men clothed in apparell, and armed with suche swoordes as shoulde cut a man in sunder at one stroke, vnder whose yoke their posteritie shoulde be suboued. And here I do not maruell that theyr predecessours coulde prophcey of the ser- uitude and bondage of their succession (if it be true that is sayd) of the familiaritie they haue with spirites, whiche appeare to them in the nyght, whereof we haue largely made mention in the nienth booke of the fyfth decade, where also we haue entreated of their Zemes (that is) their Idoles, and Images of deuylles whi- che they honoured. But they saye that since these Zemes were taken away by the Christians, the spirites haue no more ap- peared. Our men ascribe this to the signe of the crosse, wherewith they defende them selues from suche spirites: For they are nowe all cleansed and sanctified by the water of baptisme, whereby they haue renounced the deuyl, and are consecrated the holy members of Christ. They are vniuersally studious to knowe the boundes and limittes of their regions & kingdomes, and especially their *Mitani* (that is) noble men: so that euen they are not vtrierly ignorant in the surueying of theyr landes. The common people haue none other care then of setting, sowing, and plantyng. They are most expert fyshers, by reason that throughout the whole peere, they are accustomed dayly to plunge them selues in the ryuers, so that in maner they lyue no lesse in the water then on the lande. They are also geuen to huntynge: For (as I haue sayd before) they haue two kindes of foure footed beastes, whereof the one is, litle Cunnys, called *Vtias*, and other Ser- pentes, named *Luannas*, much lyke vnto Crocodils, of eyght foote length, of most pleasaunte tast, and lyuyng on the lande. All the Ilandes noozye innumerable byrdes and foules: as Stockoues, Duckes, Geese, Hearons, besyde no lesse num- ber of Poppingiays then Sparowes with vs. Euery kyng hath his subiectes diuided to sundrye affaires: as some to huntynge, other to fyshyng, & other some to husbandrye. But let vs nowe returne to speake further of the names. We haue sayde that

Prophecies.

Note.

Their familiar- itie with spi- rites.

The deuyl is dyuen away by baptisme.

Surueyers.

Serpentes. A Crocodile is muche lyke to our Cate or Aspicke.

Siiii

Quizqueia

Cipanga.

Italy called  
Latium.

Isabella.

The fourme of  
the Ilande of  
Hispaniola.A particuler  
carde of Hispani-  
ola.Hispaniola  
compared to  
Italy.The tempera-  
ture of Hispani-  
ola.

*Quizqueia* and *Haiti*, were the olde names of this Ilande. The whole Ilande was also called *Cipanga*, of the region of the mountaynes aboundyng with golde: lyke as our aunient poetes called all Italy *Latium*, of part thereof. Therefore as they called *Ausonia* and *Hesperia*, Italy: euen so by the names of *Quizqueia*, *Haiti*, and *Cipanga*, they vnderstode the whole Ilande of *Hispaniola*. Our men dyd fyrst name it *Isabella*, of queene *Helisabeth*, whiche in the Spanyshe tounge is called *Isabella*, and so named it of the fyrst Colonie where they planted their habitation, vpon the banke neere vnto the sea on the North syde of the Ilande, as we haue further declared in the fyrst decade. But of the names, this shal suffice. Let vs nowe therefore speake of the fourme of the Ilande. They whiche fyrst ouerran it, described it vnto me to be lyke vnto the leafe of a Chestnut tree, with a gulfie towarde the west syde, lying open agaynst the Ilande of *Cuba*. But the expert Shippmaister *Andreas Moralis*, brought me the fourme thereof somewhat differyng from that. For from both the corners, as from the East angle and the West, he described it to be indented & eaten with many great gulfes, and the corners to reache forth very farre, and placeth manye large and safe hauens in the great gulfie on the East syde: But I trust shortly so to traunyle further herein, that a perfect carde of the particuler description of *Hispaniola* may be sent vnto your holynesse. For they haue nowe drawne the Geographicali description thereof in cardes, euen as your holynesse hath seene the fourme and situation of Spayne and Italy, with theyr mountaynes, valleyes, riuers, cities, and colonies. Let vs therefore without shamfastnesse compare the Iland of *Hispaniola* to Italy, somtyme the head and queene of the whole worlde. For if we consyder the quantitie, it shalbee founde little lesse, and muche more fruitefull. It reacheth from the East into the West, fyue hundred and fourtie myles, accordyng to the computation of the later searchers, although the Admiral somewhat increased this number, as we haue sayde in the fyrst decade. It is in breadth somewhere almost thre hundred myles, and in some places narrower, where the corners are extended: But it is surely muche more blessed and fortunate then Italye, beyng for the most part thereof so temperate and flopphyng, that it is

it is neyther vexed with sharpe colde, nor afflicted with immoderate heate. It hath both the stepynges or conuersions of the Sonne (called *Solstitia*) in maner equall with the Equinoctial, with little differance betwene the length of the day and the nyght throughout all the yere. For on the south syde, the day ascendeth scarcely an houre in length aboue the nyght, or contrarywysle. But the difference is more on the north syde: Yet are there some regions in the Ilande in the whiche the colde is of some force. But your holynesse must vnderstande this to be incident by reason of the object or neerenes of the mountaynes, as we wyll more largely declare hereafter: Yet is not this colde so pearcyng or sharpe, that thinhabitanes are molested with snowe or bytyng frost. In other places, the Ilande enioyeth perpetuall spring tyme, and is fortunate with continuall sommer and haruest. The trees flopphe there all the whole yere, and the medowes continue alway greene. All thynges are exceedyng fortunate, and growe to great perfection. Howe wonderfully all garden hearbes and fruites do encrease, so that within the space of syxtene dayes after the seede is sowne, all hearbes of small steames, as lettise, bozage, radish, and suche other, come to theyr full rypenesse, and also howe hearbes of the bygger sort, as Gourdes, Melons, Cucumbers, Pompons, Citrons, and such other, come to theyr perfection in the space of thyrtye dayes, we haue sufficiently declared elsewhere. Of the beastes transported out of Spayne thither, we haue sayde howe they growe to a muche greater kynde: insomuch that when they fall into communication of the oxen or kyne, they compare them in bygnesse to Elephantes, and swyne to Hyles: but this somewhat by an excessive kynde of speache. We haue also made mention howe theyr swynes fleshe is more sauourye and of farre better and of more pleasaunt tast, and more holosome then ours, by reason that they are fedde with the fruites of *Arborescent* trees, and other pleasaunt and nourishing fruites of that countrey, whiche growe there of them selues, as do with vs Beeches, Holly, and Okes. Vines woulde also prosper there with marueylous encrease, if they had any regarde to the plantyng thereof. The lyke encrease cometh of wheate, if it be sowne vpon the mountaines, where the cold is of some strength: but not

The Equinoctiall.

Cold accidents  
tal. and not by  
the situation of  
the region.Perpetuall  
spring and  
sommer.Maruelous  
fruitfullnesse.

Beastes.

Oxen and  
swyne of excee-  
ding bygnesse.Swyne fed  
with *Arbores-*  
cent trees.

In the same playnes, by reason of to much fatnesse and ranknesse of the ground. It is in maner incredible to heare, that an eare of wheate shoulde be bygger then a mans arme in the byawne, and moze then a spanne in length, bearyng also moze then a thousand graynes, as they all confesse with one voyce, and earnestlye as- tyyme the same with othes. Yet they say that the bread of the I- land called *Cazabbi*, made of the roote of *Iucca*, to be moze hol- some, because it is of easier digestion, and is cultured with lesse labour, and greater encrease. The residue of the tyme which they spend not in setting and plantyng, they bestowe in geathering of golde. They haue nowe such plenty of foure footed beastes, that Horses and oxe hydes, with sheepe skynnes, and goate skynnes, and such other, are brought from thence into Spayne: so that now the daughter in many thynges helpeth and succoureth her mother. Of the trees of bysyle, spycer, the grayne which colou- reth scarlet in bright shyning red, mastic, gossampyne cotton, the precious metall called *Electrum*, and such other commodities of this Ilande, we haue spoken sufficiently before. What ther- fore can chaunce moze happye vnto man bypon the earth, then there to lyue where he neede not to be dyuened to close chaumbers with sharpe colde or fayntyng heate, nor yet in winter eyther to be laden with heauy apparel, or to burne the shinnes with conti- nual sitting at the fyre, which thynges make men olde in short tyme, by resoluing the naturall heate, whereof a thousand di- seases ensue. They also affirme the ayre to be very healthfull, and the waters and ryuers to be no lesse holtsome, as they which haue their contynuall course through the earth of the golden mynes. For there is in maner no ryuers, no mountaynes, and but fewe playnes, that are vterly without golde. But let vs nowe at the length come to the particuler description of the in- ner partes of this blessed Ilande. We haue before declared how it is in maner equally diuided with foure great ryuers, de- scendyng from hygh mountaynes, whereof that whiche runneth towards the East, is called *Iuma*, as that towards the West is named *Atibunicus*, the thyrd is *Nabiba* or *Haiba*, which runneth Southward, the fourth is called *Iache*, & falleth toward the North. But this thymmaister hath brought an other de- scription, obserued of the inhabitauntes from the beginnyng.

Let

An eare of wheate as bigge as a mans arme in the byawne.

Great plenty of cattayle.

Incommodi- ties of intempe- rate regions

Holsome ayre and water.

Golde enery where.

Let vs therefore diuide the whole Ilande into fve partes, cal- lyng the regions of euery prouince by theyr olde names: and fi- nally make mention of such thyngs as are worthy memory in euery of them. The beginning of the Ilande on the East syde, is conteyned in the prouince named *Caizcimu*, so named for that in theyr language *Cimu* signifieth the front or beginning of anye thyng. After this, foloweth the prouince of *Hubabo*, and then *Caibabo*, the fourth is *Bainoa*. *Guaccaiarima* conteyneth the west corner. But the last saue one, *Bainoa* is of larger boundes then the three other. *Caizcimu* reacheth from the fyrst front of the I- land to the ryuer *Hozama*, which runneth by the cite of saint Dominicke. But towarde the North syde, it is ended at the rough mountaynes of *Haiti*. *Hubabo*, is enclosed within the mountaynes *Haiti* and the ryuer *Iaciga*. *Caibabo* the thyrd pro- uince, conteineth al that lyeth between *Cubabo* and *Dabatio*, euen vnto the mouth of the ryuer of *Iaccha* or *Iache* (one of the foure which diuide the Ilande equally) & ascendeth to the moun- taynes of *Cibana*, where the greatest plenty of gold is found, out of the which also the ryuer *Demabus* spryngeth: and ioyning with the sprynges of the ryuer of *Naiba* (beyng an other of the foure which diuideth the Ilande toward the south sea) falleth to an o- ther banke of the riuer of saint Dominick. *Bainoa*, beginneth at the confines of *Caiabi*, and reacheth euen vnto the Ilande of *Cabi- ni*, which lyeth neare vnto the sea bankes of the North syde of the Ilande, where we sayde that they erected y first colonie or habita- tion. The prouince of *Guaccaiarima*, occupieth the remanent to- ward the west: this they named *Guaccaiarima*, because it is the extreme or vtermoost part of the Ilande. For *Iarina* in theyr lan- guage, signifieth the taylor or end of any thing, and *Gua*, is an ar- ticle which they vse oftentimes in the names of things, and espe- cially in the names of theyr kinges, as *Guarionexius* & *Guaccana- rillus*. In the prouince of *Cazium*, are these regions, *Higuei*, *Gua- nama*, *Reyre*, *Xagua*, *Aramana*, *Arabo*, *Hazoa*, *Macorix*, *Caiacoa*, *Guaiaqua*, *Baguauimabo*, & the rough mountaynes of *Haiti*. Here let vs speake somewhat of their aspirations, which they vse other- wise then the Latines do. It is to be noted that there is no aspira- tion in their vowels, which hath not the effect of a consonant. So that they pronounce theyr aspirations moze vehemently then we

The cite of s. Dominick.

Of prouinces diuided into regions.



we do the consonant .f. Vea, all suche wordes as in theyr tongue are aspirate, are pronounced with lyke breath and spirite as is .f. sayng that heerin the neather lippe is not moued to the vppermost teeth, With open mouthes and shakynge theyr breathes they breathe out these aspirations, *ba, be, bi, bo, bu*, as the Hebrewes and Arabians are accustomed to pronounce theyrs. I fynde also that the Spanyardes vse the lyke vehemencie in the aspirations of those wordes which they haue receyued of the Moores & Arabians which possessed Spaine, and continued there many yeeres, as in these wordes *Almohadda*, which signifieth a pylow or boullster, also *Almohaza*, that is a hoyle combe: with diuers such other wordes, which they speake in maner w<sup>th</sup> panting breathes, and vehement spirite. I haue thought it good to rehearse these thyngs, because among the Latines it oftentimes chaunceth, that only the accent or aspiration, chaungeth the significati- on of the worde, as *hora*, for an houre, and *ora*, for the plurale number of this worde *os*, whiche signifieth the mouth: also *ora*, whiche signifieth regions or coastes. The lyke also chaunceth in y<sup>e</sup> diuersitie of y<sup>e</sup> accent, as *occido* I kil, & *occido* I fal: euen so in the language of these simple men, there are many thynges to be obserued. But let vs now returne to the discription. In the prouince of *Hubabo*, are these regions, *Xamana*, *Canabacoa*, *Cubabo*, with many other, the names wherof I haue not yet learned. The prouince of *Cubabo*, conteyneth these regions, *Migua* and *Cacacubana*. The inhabitauntes of this region, haue a peculier language much differing from the common language of the Island, and are called *Maioiexes*. There is also an other region called *Cubana*, whose language differeth from the other. Lykewyse the region of *Baiobagua*, hath a diuers tongue. There are also o- ther regions, as *Dahabon*, *Cybabo*, and *Manababo*. *Cotoy* is in the middle of the Island. By this runneth the riuer *Nizaus*, and the mountaines called *Matbaitin*, *Hazua*, & *Neibaymao*, confine w<sup>th</sup> the same. In the prouince of *Bainoa*, are y<sup>e</sup> regions of *Maguana*, *Iago- baiucho*, *Baurucco*, *Dabaiagua*, & *Attibuni*, so named of the riuer: also *Caunoa*, *Buiaici*, *Dababonici*, *Maiauariti*, *Atiei*, *Maccazina*, *Gua- babba*, *Anniuci*, *Marië*, *Guaricco*, *Amaguei*, *Xaragua*, *Taguana*, *A- zuei*, *Iacchi*, *Honorucco*, *Diagno*, *Camaie*, & *Neibaimao*. In *Guaccarie- rima* y<sup>e</sup> last prouince, these regions are contained *Manicarao*, *Gua- bagua*, *Taque-*

The pronun-  
ciation of the He-  
brewes and Ara-  
bians.  
The Moores  
and Arabians  
possessed  
Spayne.

Howe the aspi-  
ration chaun-  
geth the signi-  
fication of  
wordes.

Diuers lan-  
guages in  
the Island.

*Taquenazabo*, *Nimaca*, *Baiona* the lesse, *Cabaini*, *Iamaici*, *Manabaxao*, *Zauana*, *Habacoa*, and *Ayquiora*. But let vs entreate some- what of the particulers of the regions. In the prouince of *Cai- zimu*, within the great gulf of the beginning, there is a great caue in a hollow rocke vnder the roote of a high mountayne, about two furlonges from the sea, the entry of this caue is not muche vnlyke the doores of a great temple, beyng very large, and tur- ning many wayes. *Andreas Moralis* the shypmaister, at the commaundement of the gouernour, attempted to searce the caue with the smalest vessels. He sayeth that by certayne priuie waies many ryuers haue concourse to this caue, as it were a syncke or chanel. After the experience hereof, they ceased to manueyle whi- ther other riuers ranne, which comming fourscore and ten miles were swallowed vp, so that they appeered no more, nor yet fell in- to the sea by any knowen wayes. Nowe therefore they su- ppose that ryuers swallowed vp by the hollowe places of that stony mountayne, fall into this caue. As the shypmaister entred in- to the caue, his shyp was almost swallowed. For he sayth, that there are many whyrlepooles and rylinges or boylynges of the water, whiche make a violent conflict and horrible roynge, one encounteryng the other: also many huge holes and hollowe pla- ces, so that what on the one syde with whirlepooles, and on the other syde with the boylyng of the water, his shyppe was long in maner tossed vp and downe like a ball. It greatlye repented hym that he had entred, yet knew he no way how to come forth. He now wandred in darknesse, aswell for the obscurenesse of the caue into the which he was farre entred, as also that in it were thicke clouds, engendred of the moist vapours proceeding of the conflict of the waters, which continually fal with great violence into the caue on euery syde. He compareth the noyse of these waters, to the fal of the famous ryuer *Nilus* from the mountains of *Ethiope*, they were also deafe, that one coulde not heare what an other saide. But at the length with great daunger and feare, he came forth of the caue, as it had been out of hell. About thre- score myles distant from the chiefe citie of saint Dominicke, there are certayne hygh mountaynes, vpon the toppes where- of is a lake or standing poole inaccessible, neuer yet seene of them which came latelpe to the Islande, both by reason of the rough- nesse

Riuers denou-  
red of caues.

Whirlepooles,  
and conflict of  
waters.

Cloudes in the  
caue.

The Cataracts  
of Nilus.

A standing  
poole in the  
top of a hygh  
mountayne.

## The thynde decade.

roughnesse of the mountaynes, and also for that there is no path or open way to the toppes of the same. But at the length the shypmaister being conducted thither by one of the kynges, ascended to the toppes of the mountaynes, and came to the poole. He sayth that the colde is there of some force: and in token of wynter, he founde fearne and bramble bushes, whiche two growe only in colde regions. These mountaynes, they call *Ymizui Hibabaino*. This poole is of freshe water thre myles in compasse, and well replenished with diuers kyndes of fshes. Many small riuers or brookes fall into it. It hath no passage out, bycause it is on euery syde enclosed with the toppes of mountaynes. But let vs nowe speake of another poole, whiche may well be called a sea in the mydlande, and be compared to the Caspian or Hyrcanian sea in the fyne lande of *Asia*, with certayne other lakes and pooles of freshe water.

### The eyght booke of the thynde decade.



A great lake of soure and salte water.

Sea fshes in lakes of the midlande.

The deuouring fsh called Tiburonus.

The prouince of *Bainoa* being thise as bigge as the thre fyrst, that is, *Caizimu*, *Vhabo*, and *Caibabo*, includeth a valley named *Caiouani*, in the whiche there is a lake of salt, sower, and bytter water, as we reade of the sea called *Caspium*, lying in the firme lande betwene *Sarmatia* and *Hircania*. We haue therefore named it *Caspium*, although it bee not in the region of *Hircania*. It hath manye swallowyng gulfes, by the whiche, both the water of the sea spyngeth into it, and also suche as fall into it from the mountaynes are swallowed up. They thynke that the causes thereof, are so large and deepe, that great fshes of the sea passe by the same into the lake. Among these fshes, there is one called *Tiburonus*, whiche cutteth a man in sunder by the myddest at one snyp with his teeth, and deuoureth hym. In the ryuer *Hozama*, rummyng by the cheefe citie of saint *Dominicke*, these *Tiburoni* do sometymes come from the sea, and deuoure many of the inhabitants: especially suche as do dayly ploonge them selues in the water, to thint

## The thynde Decade.

144

tent to keepe their bodies very cleane. The ryuers whiche fall into the lake, are these. From the North syde *Guanicabon*: From the South, *Xaccoei*: from the East, *Guannabo*: And from the West, *Occoa*. They saye that these ryuers are great and continuall, and that besyde these, there are .xx. other small ryuers whiche fall into this *Caspium*. Also on the North syde within a furloug of the lake, there are aboute twoo hundred springes, occuppyng lykewys about a furlong in circuite, the water wherof is colde in sommer, freshe also, and hollome to be drunke. These springes make a ryuer that can not bee waded ouer, which neare at hande ioyning with the other, falleth into the lake. Here must we stape a whyle. The kyng of this region founde his wyfe praying in a Chapell buylded by the Christians within the precincte of his dominion, and requyred her company to satysfie his fleshly lust. His wyfe reproued him, and put him in remembraunce to haue respecte to the holy place. The wordes which she spake to him were these, *Teitoca, Teitoca*, which is as muche to say, as, be quyet, be quyet. *Techeta cynatoguamechyna*: That is, God will be greatly angry. *Guamechyna*, signifyeth God, *Techeta* greatly, *Cynato* angrey. But the husbände halpyng her by the arme, sayde, *Guaibba*, that is, goe, *Cynato macabuca guamechyna*: That is, What is that to me if God be angry? And with these wordes as he profered her violence, sodeinly he became dumme and lame. Yet by this myracle being stryken with repentaunce, he euer after ledde a religious lyfe, insomuche that from thenceforth he would neuer suffer the Chapell to bee swept or decked with any other mans hande. By the same myracle, many of the inhabitants, and all the Christians being moued, resorted deuoutly to the Chapell. They take it in good parte that the kyng suffered the reuenge of that reproche. Let vs nowe returne to *Caspium*. That salte lake is tossed with stormes and tempestes, and ofentymes drowneeth small shyppes or syllyer boates, and swalloweth them vp with the maryners: In so muche that it hath not been hearde of, that any man drownd by shypwreake, euer plunged by againe, or was caste on the shore, as commonly chaunceth of the dead bodies of suche as are drownd in the sea. These tempestes, are the daintie banquets of the *Tiburones*.

The ryuers that fall into the lake Caspiun.

CC. springes within the space of a furloug.

A myracle.

The Indian language.

A kyng stricken dumme and lame by a myracle.

Such as are drownd in the lake are not cast by againe.

This

This *Caspium*, is called *Hagueigabon*. In the myddest hereof, lyeth an Island named *Guarizacca*, to the which they resort when they go a fishyng: but it is now cultured. There is in the same playne, an other lake next unto this, whose water is myxte of salt and fresh, and is therfore neyther apt to be drunke, nor yet to be refused in vrgent necessitie: This conteyneth in length twentie and fyue myles, and in breadth eyght myles, in some places also niene or ten. It recepueth many ryuers, which haue no passage out of the same, but are swallowed vp as in the other. Water spyngeth out of the sea into this also: but in no great quantitie, which is the cause that it is so commyxt. In the same prouince towards the west syde, there is an other lake of freshe water, not farre distaunt from *Caspus*: this the inhabitants call *Iainagua*. The same salte lake hath on the North syde thereof, an other named *Guaccaa*: this is but lytle, as not past thre or foure myles in breadth, and one in length, the water of this may well be drunke. On the South syde of the salte lake, there lyeth an other named *Babbareo*, of thre myles in length, and in maner rounde. The water of this is freshe, as of the two other. This lake, because it hath no passage out, nor yet any swalowynge gulfes, conueyeth the superfluous waters to the sea, if it be encreased with y<sup>e</sup> streames which fall sometymes more abundantly from the mountaynes: this is in the region of *Xamana* in the prouince of *Bainoa*. There is an other called *Guaniba*, lying betwene the East and the South, neere unto the syde of *Caspus*: this is ten myles in length, and almost round. There are furthermore many other small standyng pooles or lakes dispersed here and there in the Island, whiche I wyll let passe, lest I shoulde be tedious in remaynyng to long in one thyng. I wyll therfore make an ende with this addition, that in all these great plentie of fysh and foule is nourished. All these lakes lye in a large playne, the whiche from the East reacheth into the West a hundred and twentie myles, being of breadth. xliii. myles where it is narrowest, and .xxv. where it is largest. Lookyng toward the West, it hath collaterally on the left hande the mountaynes of *Daiguani*, and on the ryght hande, the mountaynes of *Gaigua*, so called of the name of y<sup>e</sup> vale it selfe. At the rootes of the mountaynes

A lake of salt & freshe water.

A lake of freshe water.

A lake of ten myles in length.

A playne of a hundred and twenty myles

mountaynes of *Caigua* toward the North syde, there lyeth an other vale much longer and larger then that before named: For it conteyneth in length almost two hundred myles, and in breadth thirtie where it is largest, and about. xx. where it is narrowest. This vale in some parte thereof, is called *Maguana*, in an other place *Iguaniu*, and els where, *Hathathiei*. And forasmuch as we haue yete made mention of this parte of the vale named *Hathathiei*, we will somewhat digresse from the discourse of this description, and entreate of a thing so straunge and marueilous, that the lyke hath not been hearde of. So it is therfore, that the kyng of this region named *Caramatexius*, taketh great pleasure in fishyng. Into his nettes chaunced a young fysh, of the kynde of those huge monsters of the sea which inhabitants call *Manati*, not founde I suppose in our seas, nor knowne to our men before this tyme. This fysh is foure footed, and in shape lyke unto a Tortoise, although shee be not couered with a shell, but with scales, and those of such hardnesse, & couched in such order, that no arrow can hurte her. Her scales are beset & defended with a thousande knobbes, her backe is playne, and her head viterly lyke the head of an Ox. She lyueth both in the water, & on the lande, shee is slowe of mouyng, of condition mecke, gentle, affociable, and louing to mankynde, and of a marueilous sense or memorie, as are the Elephant and the Delphyn. The kyng nourished this fysh certeine dayes at home with the bread of the countrey, made of the roote of *Lucca* & *Panycke*, & with such other rootes as men are accustomed to eate: For when shee was yet but young, hee cast her into a poole or lake neare unto his palace, there to be fed with hande. This lake also receiueth waters, and casteth not the same forth againe. It was in tyme paste called *Guanrabo*: but is now called the lake of *Manati*, after the name of this fysh, which wandered safely in the same for the space of .xxv. yeres, and grewe exceeding byg. Whatsoeuer is written of the Delphines of *Baian* or *Arion*, are muche inferior to the dooinges of this fysh, whiche for her gentle nature they named *Matum*, that is, gentle, or noble. Therefore whensoever any of the kynges familyers, especially such as are knowne to her, resorte to the bankes of the lake, and call *Matum*, *Matum*, then she (as mynde full of such benefites as shee hath receyued of men) listeth by her head,

A plaine of two hundred myles in length.

The marueilous fysh *Manati*.

A monster of the sea fedde with mans hande.

*Matum*.

As the carpeeth  
men ouer the  
lake.

A marueilous  
thing.

The ryuer  
Atribunicus.

head, and cometh to the place whither shee is called, and there recepueth meate at the handes of such as feede her. If any desirous to passe ouer the lake, make signes and tokens of theyr intent, shee broweth her selfe to them, therewith as it were gently inuetyng them to amount vppon her, and conueyeth them safely ouer. It hath been seene, that this monstrous fische hath at one tyme safely carped ouer tenne men singing and playing. But if by chaunce when she lysted by her head shee espyed any of the Christian men, she would immediatly plunge downe againe into the water, and refuse to obey, bycause shee had once receyued iniury at the handes of a certayne wanton young man among the Christians, who had cast a sharpe darte at her, although shee were not hurt, by reason of the hardenesse of her skynne, being rough, and full of scales and knobbes, as we haue sayde: Yet yd she beare in memorie thiniurie shee susteyned, with so gentle a reuenge requityng thingratitude of him, which had delt with her so vngentelly. From that day whensoever shee was called by any of her familiers, she would fyrst looke circumspectly about her, least any were present apparelled after the manner of the Christians. She would oftentimes play and wrestle vppon the banke with the kynges chamberlens, and especially with a young man whom the kyng fauoured well, being also accustomed to feede her. Shee would be sometimes as pleasant and full of play as it had been a monkey or marmoset, and was of long tyme a great comfort and solace to the whole Ilande: For no small confluence aswell of the Christians as of thynhabitantes, had dayly concourse to beholde so straunge a myracle of nature, the contemplation whereof was no lesse pleasant then wonderfull. They say that the meate of this kynde of fische, is of good taste, and that many of them are engendred in the seas thereabout. But at the length, this pleasant playfellowe was losse, and carped into the sea by the great ryuer *Atribunicus*, one of the foure which diuide the Ilande: For at that tyme there chaunced so terrible a tempest of wynde, and rayne, with suche floods ensuing, that the lke hath not lightly been heard of. By reason of this tempest, the ryuer *Atribunicus* so overflowed the bankes, that it filled the whole vale, and myxt it self with all the other lakes: at which tyme also, this gentle *Matum* & pleasant compa-

companyon, folowing the vehement course and fall of the floods, was thereby restoyed to his olde moother and natyue waters, and since that tyme neuer seene agayne. Thus hauyng digressed sufficiently, let vs now come to the situation of the vale. It hath collatera by the mountaynes of *Cibana* and *Caiguam*, which bying it to the South sea. There is an other vale beyonde the mountaynes of *Cibana* towards the North, this is called the vale of *Guarionexius*, bycause that before the memorie of man, the predecessours & auncestours of kyng *Guarionexius*, to whom it is descended by ryght of inheritance, were euer the Lordes of the whole vale. Of this kyng, wee haue spoken largely in the fyrst narration of the Ilande in the fyrst Decade. This vale is of length from the East to the West, a hundred and fourescore myles, and of breadth from the South to the North, thirtie myles where it is narrowest, and little where it is broadest. It beginneth from the region *Canobocoa* by the prouinces of *Huhabo* and *Caibao*, and endeth in the prouince of *Bainoa*, and the region of *Mariena*: it lyeth in the myddest betweene the mountaynes of *Cibana*, and the mountaynes of *Cabonai* & *Caxacubuna*. There is no prouince nor any region, which is not notabie by the maiestie of mountaynes, fruitfulness of vales, pleasauntnesse of hylles, and delectableness of playnes, with abundance of faire ryuers running throughe the same. There are no sides of mountaynes or hylles, no ryuers, which abound not with golde and deelycate fishes, except only one ryuer, which from the original there of, with the springes of the same breakyng forth of the mountaynes, cometh out salt, and so continueth untill it perishe: This ryuer is called *Babuan*, and runneth throughe the myddle of the region *Maguana*, in the prouince of *Bainoa*. They suppose that this ryuer hath made it selfe a way vnder the grounde, by some passages of playster, or salte earth: for there are in the Ilande manie notable salte bayes, wherof we will speake moxe heereafter. Wee haue declared howe the Ilande is diuided by foure ryuers, and fyue prouinces. There is also an other partition, which is this, The whole Ilande consisteth of the toppes of foure mountaynes, whiche diuide it by the myddest from the East to the West: in all these is abundance of nooryshyng moysture, and great plentie of golde, of the causes also of the which, the waters

The great vale  
of *Guarionexius*  
is.

Golde in all  
mountaynes,  
and golde and  
fishes in all ry-  
uers.

Salte bayes.

The ryuers  
haue their in-  
crease from the  
caues of the  
mountaynes.  
No hurtfull or  
rauening beast  
in the Ilande.

The anctours  
excuse.

By what mea-  
nes the people  
of the Ilande  
are greatly  
consumed.

The pleasures  
of Hispaniola.

The region of  
Cotobi, situate  
in the cloudes.

of all the ryuers (into the which the caues emptie them selues) haue theyr originall and increase. There are lyke wyse in them horrible denues, obscure and darke vales, and myghtie rockes of stone. There was neuer any noysome beast founde in it, nor yet any rauening foure footed beast: no Lion, no Beare, no fierce Tigers, no crasie Foxes, nor deuouring Woolfes. All thinges are blessed and fortunate, and now more fortunate, for that so many thousandes of men are receyued to bee the sheepe of Christes flocke, all theyr zemes and Images of deuylles being reiected and utterly out of memorie. If I chaunce now and then in the discourse of this narration to repeate one thing dyuers tymes, or other wyse to make digression, I must desyre your holynesse therewith not to bee offended: For whyle I see, heare, and wyte these thinges, mee seemeth that I am heere with so affected, that for very ioy I feele my mynde stirred as it were with the spirite of Apollo, as were the Sibilles, whereby I am enforced to repeate the same agayne: especially when I consider howe farre the amplitude of our religion spreadeth her wynges. Yet among these so many blessed and fortunate thinges, this one greuethe mee not a lytle: that these simple poore men, neuer brought vp in labour, doe dayly peryshe with intollerable traualle in the golde mynes, and are thereby brought to suche desperation, that many of them kyll them selues, hauing no regarde to the procreation of chyldren: insomuche that women with chyldre, perceyuing that they shall byng forth suche as shall be slaues to the Christians, vse medecines to destroy theyr conception. And albeit that by the kynges letters patentes it was decreed that they should be set at libertie: yet are they constrained to serue more then seemeth conuenient for free men. The number of the poore wretches is wonderfully extenuate, they were once reckened to bee aboute twelue hundred thousand heades: but what they are now, I abhorre to rehearse. We will therfore let this passe, and returne to the pleasures of Hispaniola. In the mountaynes of Cibaua, which are in maner in the myddest of the Ilande, in the prouince of Caiabo (where we sayde to bee the greatest plentie of natyue golde) there is a region named *Cotobi*, situate in the cloudes, emironed with the toppes of hygh mountaynes, and well inhabited: it consisteth of a playne

of

of .xxv. myles in length, and .xx. in breadth. This playne is hygher then the toppes of other mountaynes: so that these mountaynes may seeme to bee the chiefe progenitours of the other. This playne suffereth alterations of the foure tymes of the yere, as the Spring, Sommer, Autumne, and wynter. Heere the herbes were wythered, the trees loose theyr leaues, and the meadowes become hoare: the whiche thinges (as wee haue sayde) chaunce not in other places of the Ilande, where they haue onely the Spring and Autumne. The soyle of this playne byngeth fourth fearne and hyamble busshes, bearyng blacke berries, or wyld raspes, which two are tokens of colde regions: Yet is it a fayre region, for the colde thereof is not very sharpe, neyther doeth it afflict inhabitants with frost or snowe. They argue the fruitfulness of the region by the fearne, whose stalkes or steames are hygger then a speare or Iauelyn. The sydes of those mountaynes are ryche in golde, yet is there none appoynted to digge for the same, because it shall be needefull to haue apparelled myners, and such as are bled to labour: For inhabitants lyuyng contented with little, are but tender, and can not therefore away with labour, or abyde any colde. There are two ryuers which runne throughe this region, and fall from the toppes of the present mountaynes: One of these is named *Comoiayxa*, whose course is towarde the West, and falleth into the chanell of *Nai-ba*: the other is called *Tirecotus*, which runnyng towarde the East, toyneith with the ryuer of *Iunna*. In the Ilande of *Creta* (now called *Candie*) as I passed by in my legacie to the Soldane of *Alcay* or *Babylon* in *Egypt*, the Venetians tolde mee, that there lay such a region in the toppes of the mountaynes of *Ida*, whiche they affirme to bee more fruitfull of wheate corne then any other region of the Ilande: But forasmuch as once the Cretences rebelled against the Venetians, and by reason of the streight and narrow way to the toppes thereof, long defended the region with armes against the aucthoritie of the Senate, and at the length, being forwerped with warres, rendred the same, the Senate commaunded that it should be left desarte, and the streightes of the entraunces to be stopped, least any should ascend to the region without their permission. Yet in the yere of Christ M. D. ii. licence was graunted to the husbande men to tyll

T iii

and

a playne in the  
toppes of  
mountaynes.

The hygger,  
the colder.  
Moderate  
colde in the  
mountaynes.

Golde.

Thinhabi-  
tantes of His-  
paniola can a-  
byde no labour  
nor colde.

The Ilande of  
*Creta* or *Candia*  
die, vnder the  
dominion of  
the Venetians.



and manure the region, on such condition, that no such as were apte to the warres myght enter into the same. There is also an other region in *Hispaniola*, named *Cotohy*, after the same name: this diuideth the boundes of the prouinces of *Vbabo* and *Caiaho*. It hath mountaynes, vales, and playnes: but bycause it is barren, it is not much inhabited: Yet is it richest in golde, for the originall of the abundaunce of golde beginneth herein, in so much that it is not geathered in small graines and sparkes, as in other places: but is founde whole, massie, and pure, among certaine softe stones, and in the baynes of rockes, by breakyng the stones whereof, they folowe the baynes of golde. They haue founde by experience, that the bayne of golde is a lyuing tree, and that the same by all wayes that it spreadeth and springeth from the roote by the softe pores and passages of the earth, putteth forth branches, even vnto the uppermost parte of the earth, and ceaseth not vntill it discover it selfe vnto the open ayre: at which tyme, it sheweth forth certaine beautifull colours in the steede of floures, rounde stones of golden earth in the steede of frutes, and thynne plates in steede of leaues. These are they which are disparted throughout the whole Ilande by the courses of the ryuers, eruptions of the springes out of the mountaynes, and violent falles of the flooddes: For they thinke that such graines are not engendred where they are geathered, especially on the drye land, but otherwise in the riuers. They say that the roote of the golden tree extendeth to the center of the earth, and there taketh nourishment of increase: For the deeper they dygge, they fynde the trunks thereof to be so much the greater, as farre as they may folowe it for abundaunce of water springing in the mountaynes. Of the branches of this tree, they fynde some as small as a thread, & other as bygge as a mans fynger, accordyng to the largenesse or straightnesse of the ryftes and clyftes. They haue sometymes chanced vpon whole canes, susteyned & borne up as it were with golden pylles, and this in the wayes by the which the branches ascende: the which being fylled with the substance of the trunk creppynge from beneath, the branche maketh it selfe waye by whiche it maye passe out. It is oftentimes diuided by encountring with some kynde of harde stone: Yet is it in other clyftes nourished by the exhalations

Pure and massie golde in the region of *Cotohy*.  
The bayne of golde, is a lyuing tree.  
These colours of floures are called *Maraschallies*.

The roote of the golden tree.

The branches of the golden tree.  
Canes susteyned with pylles of golde.

The stones of the golde mynes.

and vertue of the roote. But nowe perhaps you will aske mee what plentie of golde is brought from thence. You shall therfore vnderstand, that onely out of *Hispaniola*, the summe of foure hundred, and sometymes fyue hundred thousande ducates of golde is brought yeerely into Spayne: as may be geathered by the fyfth portion due to the kynges Exchequer, which amounteth to the summe of a hundred and fourescore, or fourescore and tenne thousande Castellans of golde, and sometymes moze. What is to be thought of the Ilande of *Cuba* and *Sancti Iohannis* (otherwise called *Burichena*) being both very ryche in golde, we will declare further hereafter: to haue sayde thus much of golde, it shall suffice. We will now therfore speake somewhat of salt, wherewith wee may season and reserue suche thinges as are bought with golde. In a region of the prouince of *Bainoa*, in the mountaynes of *Daiaño*, about twelue myles distant from the salt lake, called *Caspis*, there are salte bayes in the mountaynes, in a manner as harde as stones, also clearer and whiter then cristall. There are lyke wyse such salt bayes, which grow wonderfully in *Laletania* (now called *Cataloma*) in the territorie of the duke of *Cadona*, the chiefe ruler in that region: but suche as knowe them both, affyrme that these of *Bainoa* are most notable. They say also, that this can not bee cleft without wedges and beetelles of Iron: But that of *Laletania* may easily bee broken, as I my selfe haue proued. They therfore compare this to suche stones as may easily bee broken, and the other to marble. In the prouince of *Caizimu*, in the regions of *Iguanama*, *Caiacoa*, and *Guariagua*, there are springes whose waters are of marueylous nature, being in the superfiuall or uppermost parte freshe, in the myddest myrte of salte and freshe, and in the lowest parte salte and soure. They thinke that the salt water of the sea issueth out softly, and the freshe to springing out of the mountaynes: The one falleth downe, and the other riseth, and are not therfore so vniuersally myrte, whereby the one may utterly corrupte the other. If any man laye his eare to the grounde neere to any of these springes, hee shall perceyue the grounde there to bee so hollow, that the reboundyng noyse of a horseman commyng, may bee hearde for the space of thre myles, and a footeman one myle. In the last region toward the South, named *Guacciarima*, in the

What golde is brought yeerely from *Hispaniola* into Spayne.

Salt of the mountaynes, very harde and cleare.

Salt as harde as stones.

Springes of salt, freshe, and souer water.

Hollow canes in the grounde.

Certaine wyld  
men lyuing in  
caues and  
denues.

Men without  
a certayne lan-  
guage.

Men as swift  
as Grehoundes

A wyld man  
runneth away  
with a chylde.

Pitch or the  
rocke.

Pitch of two  
kynndes of trees  
The Wyne  
tree.

lordship of *Zahina*, they say there are certaine wyld men, which lyue in the caues and denues of the mountaynes, contented onely with wyld frutes: these men neuer vse the company of any other, nor will by any meanes become tame. They lyue without any certayne dwelling places, and without tyllage or culturyng of the grounde, as wee reade of them which in olde tyme lyued in the golden age. They say also that these men are without any certayne language: They are sometymes seene, but our men haue yet layde handes on none of them. If at any tyme they come to the syght of men, and perceue any makynge toward them, they flee swifter then a Harte: Yea, they as fynde them to bee swifter then Grehoundes. What one of these solitarie wanderers dyd, it is worth the hearyng. So it is, that our men hauyng granges adioynyng neere vnto the thicke woods, certayne of them repaired thither in the moneth of September, in the yere *M.D. lxxxiii.* in the meane tyme, one of these wyld men came leapyng out of the wood, & approachyng somewhat toward them with smyllyng countenaunce, suddenly snatched by a chylde of theys, being the sonne of the owner of the grange, which he begot of a woman of the Ilande: Hee ranne away with the chylde, and made signes to our men to folowe hym: Many folowed, aswell of our men, as of the naked inhabitantes, but all in vayne. Thus when the pleasaunt wanderer perceued that the Christians ceased to pursue hym, hee left the chylde in a crosse way by the which the swyneherdes were accustomed to dreyne the swyne to theys pasture. Shortly after, a swyneherde founde the chylde, and brought him home to his father, yet tormenting him selfe for sorowe, supposing that wyld man to haue been one of the kynde of the Canibales, and that his sonne was now deuoured. In the same Ilande they geather pytch, which sweateth out of the rockes, being muche harder and sourer then the pytche of the tree, and is therefore more commodious to calke or defende shyppes agaynst the woormes called *Bromas*, whereof wee haue spoken largelye before. This Ilande also byngeth forth pytche in two kynndes of trees, as in the Wyne tree, and an other named *Copeia*. I neede not speake of the Wyne tree, bycause it is engendred and knowne in maner euery where. Let vs therefore speake somewhat of the

the other tree called *Copeia*. Pitche is lyke wyse geathered of it, as of the Wyne tree, although some say that it is geathered by distylling or droppynge of the wood when it is burnt. It is a straunge thyng to heare of the lease thereof, and howe necessary prouision of nature is shewed in the same. It is to be thought that it is the tree, in the leaues whereof the Chaldeans (beyng the fyrst fynders of letters) exprested theyr myndes before the vse of paper was knowen. This lease is a spanne in breadth, and almost rounde. Our men wyte in them with pynnes or needles, or any suche instrumentes made of metall or wood, in maner as well as on paper. It is to be laughed at, what our men haue perswaded the people of the Ilande as touchyng this lease. The symple soules beleue, that at the commaundement of our men, leaues do speake and disclose secretes. They were brought to this credulitie by this meanes. One of our men dwelling in the cite of *Dominica*, the cheife of the Ilande, deliuered to his seruaunt (beyng a man borne in the Ilande) certayne costed Connies (whiche they call *Vias*, beyng no bygger then myle) wylling him to cary the same to his frende, whiche dwelt further within the Ilande. This messenger, whether it were that he was thereto constrained through hunger, or entysed by appetite, deuoured thre of the Connies by the way. He to whom they were sent, wrote to his frende in a lease howe many he receyued. When the maister had looked a while on the lease in the presence of the seruaunt, he sayde thus vnto hym, Ah sonne, where is thy fayth? Couldst thou greedie appetite preuaile so muche with thee, as to cause thee to eate the Connies committed to thy fidelitie? The poore wretche tremblyng and greatly amased, confessed his faulte, and therewith desyred his maister to tell hym howe he knewe the trueth thereof. This lease (quod he) whiche thou broughtest me, hath tolde me all. Then he further rehearsed vnto hym the houre of his comyng to his frende, and lyke wyse of his departyng when he retourned. And thus they merly deceyue these feely soules, and keepe them vnder obedience: insomuche that they take our men for Goddes, at whose commaundement leaues do disclose suche thynges as they thynke most hye and secrete. Both the sydes of the lease receyuethe the fourmes of

The tree  
*Copeia*.

The lease of a  
tree in the Ilands  
of paper.

They beleue  
that leaues do  
speake.  
A piete  
storie.

Ignorance  
causeth ad-  
miracion.

The leafe  
wherein they  
wypte.

of letters, euen as dooth our paper. It is thpycker then double parchment, and marueplous tough. Whyle it is yet flozpyshyng and newe, it sheweth the letters whyte in greene, and when it is drye, it becommeth whyte and harde, lyke a table of wood, but the letters were yelow: It dooth not corrupt or putrify, nor yet loofeth the letters though it bee wet, nor by any other meanes, except it be burnt. There is an other tree named *Xagua*, the iuice of whose soure apple, beyng of a darke redde coloure, stayneth and coloureth whatsoeuer is touched therewith, and that so fyrmely, that no washyng can take it away for the space of twentie dayes. When the apple is full ripe, the iuice loofeth that strength. The apple is eaten, and of good tast. There is an hearbe also, whose smoke (as we haue rehearsed the lyke before of a certayne wood) is deadly popson. On a tyme when the kynges assembled together, and conspired the destruction of our men, where as they durst not attempt thinterpryse by open warre, they deuise was, pryuile to lay many bundels of those hearbes in a certayne house, whiche shortly after they intended to set on fyre, to thintent that our men, makynge hast to quench the same, myght take theyr death with the smoke thereof: But, theyr purposed practyse beyng betrayed, the authours of the deuise were punyshed accordyngly. Nowe (most holy father) forasmuche as your holynesse wyrteth, that whatsoeuer we haue wyrtten of the newe worlde, dooth please you ryght well, we wyll rehearse certayne thynges out of order, but not greatly from our purpose. Of the lettynge the rootes of *Maisium*, *Ages*, *Lucca*, *Battatas*, and such other, beyng their common foode, and of the vse of the same, we haue spoken sufficiently before: But by what meanes they were fyrst applyed to the commoditie of men, we haue not yet declared. We nowe therefore entende to entreate somewhat hereof.

A stronge co-  
loure of the  
iuice of an  
apple.

An hearbe  
whose smoke  
is popson.

The

The nienth booke of the  
thyrd Decade.

They say that the fyrst inhabitours lyued contented with the rootes of Dates, and *Guaieans*, which is an hearbe, much lyke vnto that which is commonly called *Sent-grene* or *Dypin*: also the rootes of *Guaie-gans*, which are rounde and great, muche lyke vnto puffes of earth or mushrooms. They dyd lykewyse eate *Guaieros*, lyke vnto *Perlinsips*, *Cibaies*, lyke *Muttes*, *Cibaies* and *Macoanes*, like vnto *Onions*, with diuers other such rootes. They say that after many peeres, a certayne *Boition*, that is, a wyle old man, saw vpon the bankes syde a bush lyke vnto fenell, & transplanting the roote therof, brought it from wylde nesse to a better kynde, by nooptyhing it in gardens. This was the begynning of *Lucca*, which at the fyrst was deadly poison to al such as did eate therof rawe. But for as muche as they perceyued it to be of pleasaunt tast, they determined many wayes to proue the vse therof, and at the length founde by experience, that beyng sodde, or fryed, it was lesse hurtful: by whiche meanes also, they came to the knowledge of the venome lying hyd in the iuice of the roote. Thus by drying, salting, seafoning, and otherwyle temperyng it, they brought it to theyr fyne bread, whiche they call *Cazabbi*, more delectable and holsome to the stomacke of man then bread made of wheate, because it is of easer digestion. The same is to be vnderstood of other rootes, and the grayne of *Maisium*, which they haue cholen for theyr chiefe meate among the seedes of nature, as we reade howe *Ceres* the daughter of *Saturnus*, geathered wheate and barley (with suche other corne as are now most in vse among men) in *Egypt*, of certayne graynes taken out of the mudde dyuen from the mountaynes of *Ethiopia* by thincrease of the riuer *Nilus*, & left in the playne at such tyme as *Nilus* resorted agayne to his chancell. For the which fact, we reade that the antiquitie gaue diuine honour to *Ceres*, who fyrst nooptyhed and increasede suche chosen seedes. There

The kyndes of  
frutes where,  
with thinhabit-  
tauntes lyued  
fyrst.

Aceritie  
the mother of  
all artes.

The fyne  
bread *Cazab-  
bi*, made of the  
rootes of  
*Lucca*.

Howe *Ceres*  
fyrst founde  
wheate and  
barley in  
*Egypt*.

The rootes of  
Ages.

There are innumerable kyndes of *Ages*, the varietie wherof, is knowen by theyr leaues and flowers. One kynde of these, is called *Guanaguax*, this is white both within and without. Another named *Guaragui*, is of violet colour without, and white within. The other kyndes of *Ages*, they call *Zazauaios*, these are redde without and white within. *Squiuetes*, are whyte within and without. *Tumma*, is altogether of violet colour. *Hobos* is yelow both of skynne and inner substance. There is an other named *Aribunieux*, the skynne of this is of violet colour, and the substance white. *Aniguamar*, hath his skynne also of violet colour, and is white within. *Guaccaracca*, hath a white skynne, and the substance of violet colour. There are many other, which are not yet brought to vs. But I feare me lest in the rehearfall of these, I shal prouoke the spures of malicious persons against me, which wyl scoone these our doynges, for that we haue wrytten of many such small thynges, to a pynce occupied in suche weyghtie affayres, as vnto your holynesse, vpon whose shoulders resteth the burden of the whole Christian worlde. But I would aske of these malicious enuyers of other mens traualles, whether *Plinie* and such other famous wryters, when they directed and dedicated such thynges to kynges and pynces, intended only to profite them to whom they consecrated the fruite of theyr knowledge. They sometimes intermixt famous things with obscure things, light with heauie, and great with small, that by the furtheraunce of pynces, theyr vniuersall posteritie might enioye the fruition of the knowledge of thynges. At other times also being content about perticular things, and desirous of new things, they occupied them selues in searchoyng of perticular tractes and coastes, with such thynges as nature brought forth in the same, by this meane to come the better to more absolute and vniuersall knowledge. Let them therfore contemne our doyng, and we wyl laugh to scoone, not theyr ignoraunce and slouthfulnesse, but pernicious curiosynesse: and therewith haupng pryde of theyr frowarde dispositions, wyl commit them to the venemous Serpentes of whom enuye tooke his fyrst originall. It shall in the meane tyme abundantly content vs, that these thynges doo please your holynesse, and that you do not dyspyle our symple vestures, wherewith we haue onely weaved togea-

The authours  
excuse.

*Plinie.*

together, and not atourned, geathered, and not described, such maruelous thynges, in the garnyschyng wherof, nature hath sufficiently shewed her cunnyng. Our desyre is none other herein, but for your sake to doo our endeouore that these thynges may not perishe: let euery man take hereof what lyketh hym best. Of the sheepe or Bullocke solde in the market, nothyng remaineth in the euenyng, because the shoulder please one, the legge another, and the necke another: yea some haue most phantasie to the bowels, and some to the feete. Thus haupng yenough wandered, let vs returne to our purpose, and declare with what wordes they salute the kynges chyldren when they are fyrst borne, and howe they applye the beginning of their liues to the end, and why their kynges are called by many names. Therefore when the kyng hath a sonne borne, suche as dwell neare about his pallace or village, repayre to the queenes chamber, where one saluteth the newe borne chyld with one name, and another with another name. God saue thee thou shynyng lampe, sayth one: Another calleth hym, bygyht and cleare: Some name hym the victourer of his enimies: and other some, the puissant conquerour descended of blood royall, and byghter then gold: with dyuers other suche vayne names. Therefore lyke as euery of the Roman emperours was called *Adiabenicus*, *Parthicus*, *Armenicus*, *Dacicus*, *Gothicus*, and *Germanicus*, according to the titles of their parentes and auncestours: euen so by thimpositi- on of names inuented by other kynges, *Beuchicus Anacacoa* the lord of the region of *Xaragua* (of whom and of the wyse woman *Anachauona* his wyfe, we haue spoken largely in the first Decade) was called by all these names tolowyng, *Tureigua Hobin*, whiche is as muche to saye as, a kyng shynyng as bygyht as laton, *Starei*, that is, bygyht, *Huibo*, byghynesse, *Duibequeuen*, a ryche flood. With all these names, and more then fourtie other suche, dooth kyng *Beuchicus* magnifie hym selfe as often as he commaundeth any thing to be doone, or causeth any proclamation to be made in his name. If the cryer by negligence leaue out any of these names, the kyng thynketh it to sounde greatly to his contumely and reproche: The lyke is also of other. Howe fondely they vse them selues in makynge theyr testamentes, we wyl now declare. They leaue thynheritaunce of their kyngdomes to the eldest sonnes

By what na-  
mes they salute  
the kyngs chil-  
dren when they  
are borne.

The names  
and titles of  
the Romaine  
Emperours.

Howe they  
make theyr  
testamentes.

So dyd great  
Alexander.

The kynges  
wyues & con-  
cubines are bur-  
yed with him.

They burye  
theyr iewels  
with them.

It dreame of  
an other lyfe  
after this.

Where it rap-  
neth but sel-  
dome.

Where it rap-  
neth much.

sonnes of theyr eldest sisters. If the sayle, to the eldest of the seconde sister, and so of the thyrd if the secunde also sayle: For they are out of doubt that those chyldren come of theyr blood, but the chyldren of theyr owne wyues, they counte to be not legitimate. If there remaine none of theyr sisters chyldren, they leaue thynheritaunce to theyr brothers: and if they sayle, it descendeth to theyr owne sonnes. Last of all, if all these faile, they assigne it to the woorthiest, as to him that is of greatest power in all the Ilande, that he may defende theyr subiectes from their auncient enemies. They take as many wyues as them lyketh. They suffer the best beloued of the kynges wyues and concubines to be buried with hym. *Anachiona* the sister of *Beuchius* the kyng of *Xaragua*, being a woman of such wisdom and cunning, that in makynge of rhymes and balades she was counted a prophetesse among the best, commaunded, that among all the wyues and concubines of the kyng her brother, the fayrest (whose name was *Guanabattabenechina*) shoulde be buried aloue with hym, and two of her waytyng maydes with her: She would surely haue appointed diuers other to that offyce, if she had not been otherwyle perswaded by the prayers of certayne fryers of saint *Jfraunces* order, whiche chaunced then to be present. They saye that this *Guanabattabenechina* had none in all the Ilande comparable to her in beautie. She buried with her all her iewels, and twentie of her best ornaments. Their custome is, to place besyde euery of them in their sepultures, a cuppe full of water, & a portion of the fyne bread of *Cazabbi*. In *Xaragua*, the region of this kyng *Beuchius*, and in *Hazua*, part of the region of *Caiabo*, also in the fayre vale of salt and freshe lakes, and lykwyle in the region of *Yaquino* in the prouince of *Bainoa*, it rayneth but seldome: In all these regions are fosses or trenches made of olde tyme, wherby they conueye the waters in order to water theyr fieldes, with no lesse art then do thynhabitours of newe *Carthage*, and of the kingdome of *Murcién* in *Spartaria* for the seldome fall of rayne. The region of *Maguana*, diuideth the prouince of *Bainoa* from *Caiabo*, and *Lauana* from *Guaccaiarima*. In the deepe vales, they are troubled with rayne more often then nedeth. Also the confines of the chiefe citie, named saint *Dominike*, are moister then is necessary. In other places, it raineth moderately

moderately. There are therfore in the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, diuers and variable motions of the elementes, as we reade the lyke of many other regions. Of theyr colonies or mancions which the *Spaniards* haue erected in this Ilande, we haue spoken sufficiently before. They haue since that tyme builded these villages, *Portus plata*, *Portus Regalis*, *Lares*, *Villanona*, *Azuam*, and *Salua terra*. Having sayde thus much of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, the mother and lady of the other Ilandes, and as it were *Tethys* the most beautifull wyfe of *Neptunus* the god of the sea, let vs now entreate somewhat of her *Nymphes* and sayre *Nereides*, which wayte vpon her, and adourne her on euery syde. We wyll therfore begyn at the nearest, called the newe *Arethusa*, so named of the fountaine *Arethusa* in the Ilande of *Sicilie*. This is famous by reason of a spring, but otherwyle vnprofitable. Our men named it of late *Duas Arbores*, because it hath onely two trees growng in it: neere vnto the which is a fountayne that commeth from the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, throughe the secreete passages of the earth vnder the sea, and breaketh forth in this Inde, as the ryuer *Alpheus* in *Achaia* runneth vnder the sea from the citie of *Elle*, and breaketh forth in y<sup>e</sup> Ilande of *Sicilie* in the fountayne *Arethusa*. That the fountayne of this newe *Arethusa*, hath his originall from the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, it is manifest hereby, that the water issuing out of the fountayne, bryngeth with it the leaues of many trees whiche growe in *Hispaniola*, and not in this Ilande. They saye that the fountayne hath his originall from the ryuer *Tiamiron*, in the region of *Guaccaiarima*, consynng with the lande of *Zauana*. This Ilande is not past a myle in circuite, and commodious for fishermen. Directly towards the East (as it were the porter keepng the entree to *Tethys*) lieth the Ilande of *Santi Iohannis* (otherwyle called *Burichena*) wherof we haue spoken largely before: this aboundeth with golde, and in fruitfull soile is equall with her mother *Hispaniola*: in this are many colonies or mancions of *Spaniards*, which apply them selues to geathering of golde. Towards the west on the North syde, great *Cuba* (for the longnesse thereof, long supposed to be continent or tyme lande) wardeth our *Tethys* on the backe halfe. This is much longer then *Hispaniola*, and from the East to the west, is diuided in the myddest

Variable motions of the Elementes.

The colonies and villages whiche the Spaniards haue builded.

The other Ilandes about Hispaniola.

The Ilande of Arethusa.

A spring runnyng vnder the sea from Hispaniola to Arethusa.

The Ilande of Santi Iohannis.

The Ilande of Cuba.



Habitable regions under the Equinoctial.

The rich golde mines of Cuba.

The Island of Iamaica.

The Island of Guadalupea.

England and Scotland

The gum called Anime album.

Dates.

Pine trees.

The Canibales.

middest with the circle called *Tropicus Cancrī*. *Hispaniola* and the other lying on the South syde of this, are enclosed almost in the mydde space betwene the sayde Tropike and the Equinoctiall line, which many of the olde wyters supposed to be uninhabitable and desart, by reason of the feruent heate of the Sonne in that clyme, as they coniectured: but they were deceyued in theyr opinion. They affirme that rycher golde mynes are founde in *Cuba*, then in *Hispaniola*. They say also that euen now whyle I wyte these thynges, there is golde geathered togeather redy to the melting, amounyng to the quantitie of a hundred and fourescore thousand Castellans of golde, an argument surely of great rycheesse. *Iamaica* is more towards the South then these, and is a pleasaunt and fructifull Islande, of soyle apt for corne, grasse, and settes, it consisteth of onely one mountayne: the inhabitantes are warrelke men, and of good wyt, *Colonus* compared it to *Scicilie* in bygnesse. They whiche of late searched it more exactly, say that it is somewhat lesse, but not much. It is thought to be without golde and precious stones, as the lyke was supposed of *Cuba* at the begynning. The Islande of *Guadalupea* (first named *Caraqueira*) lying on the South syde of *Hispaniola*, is foure degrees nearer the Equinoctiall. It is eaten and indented with two gulfes (as we reade of great *Britanie*, nowe called *England*, and *Calidonia*, nowe called *Scotland*) beyng in maner two Islandes. It hath famous *Portes*. In this they founde that gumme whiche the Apothecaries call *Anima Album*, whose fume is holsome agaynst reumes and heauinesse of the head. The tree whiche engendzeth this gumme, beareth a fruite much like vnto a Date, beyng a spanne in length. When it is opened, it seemeth to contayne a certayne sweete meale. As our husbandmen are accustomed to referue Chestnuts, and such other harde fruites, all the winter, so do they the Dates of this tree, beyng muche lyke vnto a Fygge tree. They founde also in this Islande, Wyne trees, of the best kynde, and such other dayntie byshes of nature, whereof we haue spoken largelye before: Yea they thynke that the inhabitants of other Islandes, had theyr seedes of so many pleasaunt fruites from hence. For the *Canibales*, beyng a wynde and wanderyng people, and ouerrumyng all the countrey about them,

to

to hunte for mans fleshe, were accustomed to byng home with them whatsoeuer they founde straunge or profytable in anye place: They are intractable, and will admit no straungers. It shall therefore bee needefull to ouercome them with great power: For as well the women as men, are experte archers, and vse to inuenome theyr arrowes. When the men go forth of the lande a man huntynge, the women manfully defend their coastes agaynst suche as attempt to inuade the same. And hereby I suppose it was thought, that there were Islandes in the Ocean, inhabited onely with women, as *Colonus* the Admiral him selfe perswaded mee, as I haue sayde in the fyrst Decade. This Islande hath also fruitefull mountaynes and playnes, and notable ryuers. It nouryssheth hony in trees, and in the caues of rockes, as in *Palma* one of the Islandes of *Canarie*, hony is geathered among the byers and bramble bushes. About xviii. myles Eastward from this Islande, lyeth an Islande which our men named *Desiderata*, beyng xx. myles in circuite, and verye fayre. Also about tenne myles from *Guadalupea* towarde the South, lyeth the Islande of *Galanta*, beyng thirtie myles in circuite, and plaine: It was so named for the neatenesse and beautifullnesse therof. Niene myles distant from *Guadalupea* towarde the East, there are sixe small Islandes, named *Todos Sanctos*, or *Barbata*: these are full of rockes, a barren, yet necessary to be knowen to such as vse to trauallye the seas of these coastes. Agayne, from *Guadalupea* xxxv. myles towarde the North, there is an Islande named *Monsserratus*, conteynyng in circuite fourtie myles, hauyng also in it a mountayne of notable heygth. The Islande named *Antiqua*, distante from *Guadalupea* thirtie myles, is about fourtie myles in circuite. *Diegus Colonus* the sonne and heyre of *Christophorus Colonus*, tolde me that his wyfe (whom he left in the Islande of *Hispaniola* at his comming into Spayne to the courte) did wyrie vnto him, that of late among the Islandes of the *Canibales*, there is one founde which aboundeth with golde. On the lesse syde of *Hispaniola* towarde the South, neere vnto the haven *Beata*: there lyeth an Islande named *Portus Bellus*: they tell marueilous thynges of the monsters of the sea about this Islande, and especially of the *Cortopces*, for they say that they are bygger then great rounde targettes. At suche tyme as the

U.i.

heate

Whereby it was thought that there were Islandes of women.

Hony in trees and rockes.

The Islande Desiderata. The Islande Galanta.

The Islandes of Todos Sanctos, or Barbata.

The Islande Monsserratus The Islande Antiqua.

The Islande Portus Bellus Great Cortopces. The generation of Cortopces.

## The thynde Decade.

heate of nature moueth them to generation, they come forth of the sea, and makynge a deepe pyt in the sande, they lay three or foure hundred egges therein. When they haue thus emptied theyr bagge of conception, they put as muche of the sande agayne into the pyt, as may suffyse to couer the egges, and so resorte agayne to the sea, nothyng carefull of theyr succession. At the day appoynted of nature to the procreation of these beastes, there creepeth out a multitude of Tortoyles, as it were pyssimaes swarming out of an ant hyll: and this onely by the heate of the Sunne, without any helpe of theyr parentes. They say that theyr egges are in maner as bygge as Geese egges. They also compare the fleshe of these Tortoyles, to bee equall with beale in taste. There are besyde these, innumerable Ilandes, the whiche they haue not yet feared, nor yet is it greatly necessary to syt this meale so synely. It may suffyse to vnderstande that there are large landes, and many regions, which shall hereafter receyue our nations, tounges, and maners, and therewith embrace our religion. The Troians dyd not sodeinly replenysh Asia, the Tyrians Libya, nor the Greekes and Phenices Spayne. As touchyng the Ilandes whiche lye on the North syde of Hispaniola, I haue let passe to speake: For albeit they are commodious for tyllage and syllyng, yet are they lesse of the Spanyardes as pooze and of small value. We will nowe therefore take our leaue of this olde Tethis, with her moyst and watery Nymphe, and receyue to our new acquayntance the beautifull lady of the South sea, ryche crowned with great pearles, the Ilande of Dites beyng ryche both in name and in treasure. In my Epistle booke which I sent vnto your holynesse this last yere, I declared howe Vascus Nunnez Balboa, the Captayne of them which passed ouer the daungerous mountaynes toward the South sea, learned by report, that in the prospecte of those coastes there laye an Ilande aboundyng with pearles of the greatest sort, and that the kyng thereof was ryche, and of great power, infestynge with warres the other kynges his borderers, and especially Chiapes and Tumacchus: Wee declared further, howe at that tyme it was left vntouched by reason of the ragynge tempestes which troubled that South sea three monethes in the yere. But

The Egges of  
Tortoyles.

Innumerable  
Ilandes.

Troians.  
Tyrians.  
Greekes.  
Phenicians.  
The North  
Ilandes.

The Ilandes  
of the South sea.

The Ilande of  
pearles.

## The thynde Decade.

146

It is now better knowne to our men, who haue now also brought that fierce kynge to humanitie, and conuerted him from a cruell Tyger, to one of the mecke sheepe of Christes flocke, sanctified with the water of baptysme, with all his family and kyngdome. It shall not therefore bee from our purpose to declare, by the gouernance of what captaines, or by what meanes these thynges were so happily atchpyed.

Wayde beastes  
must be tamed  
with the rod.

## The tenth booke of the thynde Decade.



The arryual of *Petrus Arias* the netwe gouernour of *Dariena*, he gaue commaundement that one *Gasper Moralis* should take in hande the expedition to the Ilande of *Dites*. He therefore tooke his vyage first to *Chiapes* and *Tumacchus* kings of the South, whom *Vaschus* before had conciled and left friends to the Christians. They friendly and magnifically enterptyned our men, who prepared them a nauie of the kyngs boates to passe ouer into this Ilande, which they call *Dites*, & not *Margarita* or *Margaritea*, although it abounde with pearles, which in the latin tonge are called *Margarita*. For they first called an other by this name, which lyeth next to the mouth of *Os Draconis* in the region of *Paria*, in the which also is found great plenty of pearles. *Gasper* brought with him onely 12. armed men to the Ilande, for that hee could conuey ouer no greater number, by reason of the smalnesse and narrownes of their boates or barkes, which they call *Culchas*, made of one whole peece of timber, as we haue sayd before. The kyng of this Ilande came forth agaynst them fiercely, with cruell and threathning countenance, & with a great bande of armed men, cryng in maner of a larome, & in token of the battaile, *Guazzauara*, *Guazzauara*, which is as much to say as, battaile agaynst my enemy, & is (as it were) a watch word to giue thonslet: wherewith also they threw their darts, for they haue not thuse of bowes. They were so obstinate & desperate, that they assailed our men with foure *Guazzauaras*, that is, battayles. At the length our men with certaine of *Chiapes* and *Tumacchus* men (being olde enemies to this kyng of the Ilande) got the vpper hande, by reason they assayed

An expedition  
to the Ilande  
of Dites in the  
south sea.

The Ilande of  
Margaritea.

Os Draconis,  
Paria.

A conflict.

A.ii.

the

the kyng sodeinly and vnawares. Yet was he determined to assemble a greater power, and once agayne to attempt the fortune of warre, but that he was otherwyle perswaded by the kynges his borderers, whiche counsellled him to geue ouer, and submit him selfe, sometyne by the example of them selues & other, threatening the destruction of his floozysing kyngdome, and otherwhyles declaring vnto him the humanity and gentleness of our men, by whose friendship hee might obteyne honour and quietnesse to him and his: willyng him furthermore to consider, what chaunced vnto them which the yeere before resisted and aduenured the harsarde of the battayle, as dyd these kynges, *Poncha, Pochorrofa, Quarequa, biapes, and Tumacchus*, with such other. By these perswasions, the kyng submitted him selfe, and came friendly to our men, whom he conducted to his palace, which they say to bee marueylously adourned and princelyke. As soone as they entred into the pallasce, hee brought forth a basket of curious workemanshype, and full of pearles, which he gaue them. The summe of these pearles amounted to the weight of a hundred and ten poundes, after .viii. vnces to the pounce: being agayne rewarded of our men, with such tryfles as they brought with them of purpose, as garlandes of Christall, and glasse, and other counterfet stones of dyuers colours, with looking glasses also, and lalon belles, and especially two or thre Iron hatchets (whiche they more esteeme then great heapes of golde) hee thought him selfe abundantly recompenced. They laugh our men to scorne, that they will depart with so great and necessarie a thing for any summe of golde: assymyng an axe or hatchet to bee profitable for many uses of men, and that golde serueth onely for wanton pleasures, and not to be greatly necessary. Being therefore so full and glad of the friendship of our men, he tooke the captayne by the hande, and brought him with certayne of his familiars to the hyghest towre of his palace, from whence they might prospecte the mayne sea: then casting his eyes about him on euery syde, and looking towarde the East, he sayde vnto them, Beholde, heere lyeth open before you the infinite sea, extended beyonde the sunne beames: then turnyng hym towarde the South and West, he signified vnto them that the lande which laye before their eyes, the toppes of whose great mountaynes they

The kyng of the Ilande of Bites submitteth him selfe. The kynges pallasce. A hundred and ten pounce weight of pearles.

Axe and hatchets more esteemed then golde.

The kynges wordes.

they myght see, was exceeding large: then commyng somewhat neerer, hee sayde, Beholde these Ilandes on the ryght hande and on the left, which all obey vnto our empyre, and are ryche, happye, and blessed, if you call those landes blessed whiche abounde with golde and pearle. We haue in this Ilande litle plentie of golde: but the deepe places of all the seas about these Ilandes are full of pearles, whereof you shall receyue of mee as many as you will requyre, so that yee persist in the bonde of friendship which you haue begonne. I greatly desyre your friendship, and woulde gladly haue the fruition of your thinges, whiche I set muche more by then millions of pearles: You shall therefore haue no cause to doubt of any unfaithfulnesse or breache of friendship on my behalfe. Our men gaue hym lyke friendly wordes, and encouraged him with many sayre promyses to doe as hee had sayde. When our men were now in a readynesse to depart, they couenaunted with him to paye yeerely to the great kyng of Castyle a hundred pounce weyght of pearles. Hee gladly agreed to the request, and tooke it for no great thyng, nor yet thought him selfe any whit the more to become tributary. With this kyng they founde suche plentie of Hartes and Cunnies, that our men, standyng in the houses, myght kyll as many as them lyst with their arrowes. They lyue heere very pleasauntly, hauyng great plentie of all thinges necessary. This Iland is scarcely sixe degrees distant from the Equinocall lyne. They haue the same maner of bread, made of rootes and the graine of *Maxium*, and wyne made of seedes and frutes, euen as they haue in the region of *Comogra*, and in other places, aswell in the Ilandes, as in the firme lande. This kyng is now baptised, with all his family and subiectes. His desyre was, at his baptism, to bee named *Petrus Arias*, after the name of the gouernour. When our men departed, he accompanied them to the sea syde, and furnished them with boates to returne to the continent. Our men diuided the pearles among them, reseruyng the litle portion to bee deliuered to chofficers of the kynges. Ercheke in those parts. They say that these pearles were maruelous precious, faire, orient, & exceeding byg: insomuch that they brought many with them bygger then harsell nutres. Of what price & value

Ilandes ryche in golde and pearles.

C. pounce weyght of pearles yeerely for a tribute.

Plentie of Hartes and Cunnies.

Wyne of frutes and seedes.

The kyng is baptised.

The litle part of pearles due to the kyng.

23.5 pearles.

A pearle for a  
Pope.

26th other  
pearle of great  
price.

Also and fur-  
perious  
pleasures.

Dyers opini-  
ons of the ge-  
neration of  
pearls.

Hearbes in the  
bottom of  
the sea.

A hundred  
pearles in one  
shell fythe.

lue they myght bee, I consider by one pearle the which *Paulus*,  
predicessour to your holines, bought at the second hand of a mar-  
chant of *Venice* for foure & fourtie thousand ducates: Yet among  
those which were brought from this *Island*, there was one bought  
euen in *Dariena*, for a thousand & two hundred Castellans of gold:  
this was almost as byg as a meane walnut, & came at y length  
to the handes of *Petrus Arias* the gouernour, who gaue it to that  
noble and faythfull woman his wyfe, of whose maner of depar-  
ture with her husbände, we haue made mention before. We must  
then needes thinke that this was very precious, whiche was  
bought so deare among such a multitude of pearles, where they  
were not bought by one at once, but by poundes, and at the least  
by ounces. It is also to be thought that the *Venecian* marchant  
bought his for no great summe of money in the East partes: But  
he tolde it the dearer, for that he chaunced to lyue in those lasciu-  
ous and wanton dayes, when men were giuen to such nyse and  
superfluous pleasures, and met with a marchant for his purpose.  
But let vs now speake somewhat of the shell fythes, in the which  
pearles are engendred. It is not vnknewne to your hoynesse,  
that *Aristotle*, and *Plinie* his folower, were of dyuers opini-  
ons as concerning the generation of pearles. But these *In-*  
*dians*, and our men, rest onely in one assertion, not assentynge to  
them in any oher: as, eyther that they wander in the sea, or,  
that they moue at any tyme after they are bozne. They will  
therefore that there be certayne greene places, as it were mea-  
dowes, in the bottom of the sea, byingng forth an hearbe much  
lyke vnto *Cyme*, and affyrme that they haue scene the same, and  
that they are engendred, noryshed, and growe therein, as wee see  
thyncrease and succession of *Dysters* to grow about them selues:  
Also that these fythes delygtheth not in the conuersation or com-  
pany of the sea dogges, nor yet to bee contented with onely  
one, two, or thre, or at the most foure pearles, affyrmyng  
that in the fyshyng places of the kyng of this *Islande*, there  
was founde a hundred pearles in one fythe, the whiche *Cas-*  
*par Moralis* the captayne him selfe, and his companions, di-  
ligently numbred: For it pleased the kyng at theyr beyng  
there, and in their presence, to commaunde his dyuers to goe a  
fyshyng for those kynde of fythes. They compare the matrice

ces

tes of these fythes, to the places of conception in *Vennes*, in  
the whiche theyr egges are engendred in great multitudes and  
clusters, and beleue that these fythes byingng forth theyr byrth  
in lyke maner. For the better prooffe whereof, they say that  
they founde certayne pearles comynge forth of their matrice-  
ces, as beyng nowe come to the tyme of theyr full rypenesse,  
and moued by nature to come out of theyr mootheres wombe, o-  
penyng it selfe in tyme conuenient: lykwylse, that within a  
whyle after, they sawe other succede in lyke maner. So that  
to conclud, they sawe some comynge forth, and other some  
yet abyding the tyme of theyr perfection: whiche beyng com-  
plete, they also became loose, and opened the matrice. They  
perceyued the pearles to bee inclosed in the myddest of theyr  
bellies, there to bee nourished and increase, as an infant sucking  
his mootheres pappes within her wombe, before hee moue to  
come forth of her priuie places. And if it chaunce any of these  
shell fythes to bee founde scattered in the sande of the sea (as I my  
selfe haue scene *Dysters* disparted on the shores in dyuers pla-  
ces of the Ocean) they affyrme that they haue been violently dy-  
uen thither from the bottom of the sea by force of tempestes, and  
not to haue wandered thither of them selues: But, that they be-  
come whyte by the clearenesse of the moynynge deawe, or waue  
pelowe in troubled weather, or otherwylse that they seme to re-  
ioyce in fayre weather and cleare ayre, or contrarywylse, to bee  
as it were astonysed and dymme in thunder and tempestes,  
with suche other: the perfect knowledge hereof, is not to bee loo-  
ked for at the handes of these vnlearned men, whiche handle the  
matter but grossely, and enqyre no further then occasion ser-  
ueth. Yet doe they affyrme by the experyence and industrie of the  
dyuers, that the greatest pearles lye in the deepest places, they of  
the meane sort hygher, and the least hyghest of all, and neerer to  
the byrth of the water: And say therfore, that the greatest doe  
not wander, but that they are created, noryshed, and increase in  
the deepest places of the sea, whither fewe dyuers (and that  
but seeldome) dare aduventure to diue so deepe to geather them,  
aswell for feare of the sea crabbes, whiche wander among these  
pearle fythes to feede of them, and for feare of other monsters  
of the sea, as also least their breath should fayle them in to long

U.iii.

remay-

The matrice  
of the pearle  
fythe.

The byrth of  
pearles.

Where the  
biggest, meane,  
and least pearles  
are engendred.

Sea crabbes.

The sea mus-  
cles wherein  
pearles are en-  
gendred.

remayning in the water: And this they say to bee the cause why the oldest (& therfore byggest) sea muscles inhabite y<sup>e</sup> deepest places, from whence they are not lightly moued by tempestes. Furthermore, how much the bygger & older these fyshes are, they say that in their larger matrices, the greater number & bigger pearles are founde, & that for this cause there are fewer founde of the byggest sort. They thinke also, that when they first fall from their fyshes in the deepe places, they are deuoured of other fyshes, because they are not yet hearde. Againe, the smallest differ from the byggest in a certayne swelling or impostumation, which y<sup>e</sup> Spaniardes call a tympany: For they deny that to be a pearle which in olde muscles cleaueth faste to the shell, but that it is a wart, which being rased from the shell with a fyke, is rounde & bygght but onely of one syde, and not precious, being rather of the nature of the fysh it selfe, then of a pearle. They confesse that they haue seene certayne of these muscles cleauyng on rockes, yet these but fewe, and nothyng woorth. It is also to bee thought, that the pearle fyshes or sea muscles which are founde in India, Arabia, the redde sea, or Caprobana, are ruled in suche order as the aforesaid famous authours haue written: For their opinion herein is not utterly to bee reiected, forasmuch as they were learned men, and trauayled long in the searchoyng of these thynges. But wee haue now spoken sufficiently of these sea fyshes, and of their egges, which the fonde nysenelle and wantonnesse of men haue made deerer then the egges of hennes or geese. Let vs therfore entreate somewhat of other perticular thynges, which are come to our knowledge of late. Wee haue elsewhere largely described the mouthes of the gulfes of *Vraba*, with sundry and variable regions diuided with the manifolde gulfes of that sea: But as concernyng the West coastes, in the which our men haue buylded houses, and planted their habitations on the bankes of *Dariena*, I haue no newe matter to wyte. Yet as touchyng the East partes of the gulfes, I haue learned as followeth. They say that the vniuersall lande of the East region of the gulfes, from the corner thereof farre reachyng into the sea, and from the extreme or uttermoste mouth of the same, receuyng the waters of the sea whiche fall into it, euen vnto *Os Draconis* and *Paria*, is by one generall name called *Caribana*.

The regions  
of the East syde  
of the gulfes of  
*Vraba*.

*bona*, of the *Caribes* or *Canibales* whiche are founde in euery region in this tract: But from whence they had theyr perticular originall, and howe, leauyng theyr natie soyle, they haue spredde theyr generation so farre, lyke a pestiferous contagion, we wyl now declare. Therefore from the fyrst front reachyng forth into the sea (in whole tract we sayde that *Fogeda* fastened his foote) towarde the corner, about niene myles distant, there lyeth a village of *Caribana*, named *Eutracca*: three myles distant from this, is the village of *Vraba*, of the whiche it is thought that the whole gulfes toke his name, because this village was once the head of the kyngdome. About fyve myles from this, is *Feti*: Niene myles from *Feti*, is *Zerema*: And about twelue myles from this, *Sorache*. Our men founde all these villages full of people, al the whiche gyue them selues onely to manhuntynge: Insomuche that if they lacke eninies agaynst whom they may keepe warre, they exercise crueltie agaynst them selues, and eyther slaye the one the other, or els dyue the vanquished to flyght. Whereby it is apparant, that by these theyr continuall warres, and dyuyng the one the other out of theyr countreys, this infection hath gone so farre, not onely on the fyne lande, but also into the *Islandes*. I was also aduertised of an other thyng, the whiche to my iudgement seemeth woorth to be put in memoire. One *Cornuales*, a iudge in causes of lawe among the Spaniardes of *Dariena*, sayth, that on a tyme walkyng abrode with his booke in his hande, he met by the way with a fugityue, whiche had fledde from the great landes lying farre towarde the west, and remayned here with a kyng with whom he was entertayned. When this man perceyued the lawyer lookyng on his booke, marueyllyng thereat, he came runnyng vnto hym, and by interpretours of the kyng whom he serued, spake thus vnto hym, Haue you also bookes, wherein you may referue thynges in perpetual memoire: and letters, whereby you may declare your mynde to suche as are absent? And herewith desyred that the booke myght be opened vnto hym, supposyng that he shoulde therein haue founde the letters of his owne countrey: But when he sawe them vnylike, he sayde further, that in his countrey there were cities fortified with walles, and gouerned by lawes, and that the people

The region of  
*Caribana*.

The original  
of the *Carib*  
*bales*.

The villages  
of *Caribana*.

Manhunters.

Bookes:  
Like in the de-  
scribing of the  
booke of the  
landes lately  
founde.



Circumcised  
people.

What chaunced  
to the Cap-  
taines whi-  
che the gouer-  
nour sent dy-  
uers waies.

Booke decade  
iii. liber. vi.

The bioage of  
Iohannes Soli-  
sius.  
Cab. S. Augu-  
stini.

John Solisus  
is name of the  
Canibales.

The cruelties of  
the Canibales.

people also bled apparell: but of what religion they were, I dyd not learne. Yet had our men knowledge both by the woordes and signes of this fugitiue, that they were circumcised. What nowe thynke you hereby (most holy father?) Of what do you diuine may come hereof, when tyme shall subdue all these vnder your throne? Let vs nowe entermyngle certayne small thynges among these great matters. I haue not thought good to pretermit that which chaunced to *Iohannes Solisus*, who, to searche the South syde of the supposed continent, departed with thre shippes from the port *Ioppa* (not farre distant from the *Ilandes* of *Gades* or *Cales* in the Ocean) the fourth day of the *Ides* of *September*, in the yere. *M.D.xv.* or what successe *Iohannes Pontius* had, whom the newe gouernour *Petrus Arias* appoynted to vanquish and destroy the *Canibales* or *Canibales*, deuourers of mans flesh: also to what ende the voyages of the other captaines came, which were sent forth diuers waies at the same tyme, as *Gonzalus Badaocius*, *Franciscus Bezerra*, and *Valleius*, *Iohannes Solisus* tooke the matter in hand in an euill houre. He sayled beyond the point of *saint Augustine* (which they call *Cabo, S. Augustini*) toward the South side of the supposed continent beyond the *Equinoctial* line. For (as we haue said before) that point reacheth Southwarde to the seuenth degree of the South pole, called the pole *Antartike*. He proceeded in that voyage syxe hundred leagues, and found the lande from the point to extend so farre toward the South beyonde the *Equinoctial*, that he came to the thirtieth degree of the South pole. As he sayled thus forward, hauing nowe on his backe halfe the starres named *Caput Draconis*, (that is, the *Dragons* head) and the regions of *Paria* lying northwarde from hym, & prospectyng toward the pole *Arctike*, he chaunced to fall into the handes of the filthy *Canibales*: For these craftie foxes seemed to make signes of peace, when in theyr myndes they conceived a hope of a dainty banquet, & espying their enimies a farre off, began to swallowe theyr spittle, as their mouth watered for greedines of theyr pray. As unhappy *Solisus* descended, with as many of his company as coude enter into the boate of the byggest shyppe, sodenly a great multitude of inhabitants burst forth vpon them, and slue them euery man with clubbes, euen in the syght of theyr felowes.

felowes. They caried away the boate, and in a moment broke it all to pyeces, not one escaping. Theyr furie not thus satisfied, they cut the slayne men in peeces, euen vpon the shoze, where theyr felowes myght behold this horrible spectacle from the sea. But they beyng stricken with feare through this example, durst not come forth of their shippes, or deuise how to reuenge the death of theyr Captayne and companions. They departed therefore from these unfortunate coastes, and by the way lading theyr shyppe with brasse, returned home agayne with losse, and heauie cheare. Of these thynges I was aduertised of late by theyr owne letters. What they haue els doone, I shall haue more perticular knowledge hereafter. *Iohannes Pontius* was also repulled by the *Canibales* in the *Iland* of *Guadalupea*, beyng one of the chiefe *Ilandes* of theyr habitation. For when they sawe our men a farre off on the sea, they lay in ambushe, sodenly to inuade them when they shoulde come alande. Our men sent forth a fewe foote men, and with them theyr *Laundresses* to washe theyr shertes and sheetes: For from the *Iland* of *Ferrea*, beyng one of the *Ilandes* of *Canarie* (euen vnto this *Iland*, for the space of foure thousand and two hundred myles) they had seene no land, where they myght fynde any freish water, forasmuche as in all this large space the Ocean is without *Ilandes*. At theyr commyng therefore to lande, the *Canibales* assailed them, caried away the women, and put the men to suche distresse, that fewe of them escaped. By reason wherof, *Pontius* beyng greatly discomfited, durst not inuade the *Canibales*, fearyng theyr venommed arrowes, which these naked man-hunters can direct most certaynely. Thus good *Pontius* sayling of his purpose, was fayne to geue ouer the *Canibales*, whom (being safe & vnder the house rooffe) he threatned to vanquish and destroy. Whither he went from thence, or what new thyngs he founde, I haue as yet no further knowledge. By these mysfortunes, *Solisus* lost his lyfe, & *Pontius* his honour. Let vs nowe speake of an other, whose enterpryse came to lyke purpose the same yere. *Iohannes Aiora*, borne in the citie of *Corduba*, a man of noble parentage, sent in steade of the *Lieutenant* (as we haue saide) more couetous of gold, then careful of his charge, or desirous of praye for well deseruing, sought occasions of quarelyng agaynst

Wasples.

Iohannes  
Pontius is re-  
pulled by the  
Canibales.

The bioage of  
Iohannes  
Aiora.  
Booke Decade  
iii. liber vi.

agaynst the kynges, and spoyled many, violently extortynge gold of them agaynst ryght & equitie: and further, handeled them so extremely, that of frendes they became most cruel enemies, insomuch that they ceased not with desperat myndes, by al meanes they coulde, to slay our men openly or pryvily. By reason whereof it is come to passe, that where before they battered quietly, exchanging ware for ware, they are nowe sayue to do all thynges by force of armes. When he had thus exacted a great quantitie of golde of them (as it is sayde) he fled pryvily, and tooke away a hypp with hym by stealth, as the common rumour goeth, nor yet hitherto haue we hard whyther he went, or where he is arryued. Some suspect that *Petrus Arias* the gouernour should consent to his departure, because this *Iohannes Aiora*, is brother to *Gonsalus Aiora*, the kynges historiographer, a man both learned, and expert in the discipline of warre, and so much the gouernours frend, that these two among a fewe, may be counted examples of rare amitie. I my selfe also am greatly bounde vnto them both, and haue long enioyed theyr frendshipp: yet shall I desire them both to pardon me in declaring my phantasie heerein, that in al the turnoyles and tragical assayes of the Ocean, nothyng hath so muche displeased me, as the couetousnesse of this man, who hath so disturbed the pacified myndes of the kynges. Nowe among these troublous chaunces, let vs rehearse the variable fortune of *Gonsalus Badaicius*, and his felowes, whose prosperous begynnings, ended with vnfortunate successe. *Gonsalus* therfore in the moneth of May, in the yere of Christ. 1515. departed from *Dariena* with fourscore armed men, directing his voyage toward the South, and resting in no place vntyll he came to the region of *Cerabaro*, which our men named *Gratia Dei*, distaunt from *Dariena* about a hundred and fourscore myles: for they call it theescore leagues. He spent certayne dates heere in idlenesse: for he coulde neither by sayre meanes, nor by foule, allure the kyng of the region to come to hym. Whyle he lay thus idelly, there came to hym other fyfte men, sent from *Dariena* vnder the gouernaunce of capytayne *Lodonicus Mercado*, who departed from *Dariena* in the calendes of May, to the intent to searche the inner partes of those regions. When they met together, they determined, after consultation, to passe ouer

The selowe be-  
haviour of  
John Aiora.

The variable  
fortune of Gon-  
salus Badaio-  
cius.

Cerabaro. De-  
cade. iii. li. iii.

ouer the mountaynes lying toward the South, euen vnto the South sea lately founde. Beholde nowe a wonderfull thyng, that in a lande of suche marueylous longitude in other places, they founde it here to be onely about fyfte myles distant to the South sea: for they count it .xvii. leagues, as the maner of the Spanyardes is to reckon, and not by myles: Yet saye they that a league consisteth of thre myles by lande, and foure by sea, as we haue noted before. In the toppes of the mountaynes and turnyng of the waters, they founde a kyng named *Iuana*, whose kyngdome is also named *Coiba*, as is the region of king *Careta*, of whom we haue made mention elsewhere. But for as muche as the region of this *Iuana*, is rycher in golde, they named it *Coiba Dites*, that is, *Coiba* the ryche: For, wheresoeuer they dygged the grounde, whether it were on the drye lande, or in the wet chanelles of the ryuers, they founde the lande, whiche they cast forth, myxt with golde. *Iuana* fledde at the commyng of our men, and coulde neuer be brought agayne. They spoyled all the countrey neare about his palace: yet had they but litle golde, for he had carped all his stuffe with hym. Here they founde certayne slaues, marked in the faces after a straunge sorte: For with a sharpe pycke made eyther of bone, or els with a thorne, they make holes in theyr faces, and forthwith sprynglyng a powder thereon, they moiste the pounced place with a certayne blacke or redde iuice, whose substance is of suche tenacitie and clamminesse, that it wyll neuer weare away: They brought these slaues away with them. They say that this iuice is of suche sharpenesse, and putteth them to suche payne, that for extreme doloure they haue no stomacke to theyr meate certayne dayes after. The kynges whiche take these slaues in theyr warres, vse theyr helpe in seekyng for golde, and in tyllage of the grounde, euen as doo our men. From the pallace of *Iuana*, folowyng the course of the water about tenne myles toward the South, they entred into the dominion of an other kyng, whom our men named the olde man, because he was olde, not passyng of his other name. In the region of this kyng also, they founde golde in all places, both on the lande, and in the ryuers. This region is very sayre, and fruitefull, and hath in it many famous ryuers. Departyng from

The South  
sea.

A league con-  
sisteth foure  
myles by sea  
and but thre  
by lande.

The golden re-  
gion Coiba  
Dites.  
Sande myxt  
with golde.

Howe they  
slaues are  
marked in  
the face.

Golde.

A fruitefull res-  
gion left desol-  
ate by ciuile  
discoide.

from hence, in fyue dayes iourney they came to a lande lesse  
desolate: They suppose that this was destroyed by ciuile dis-  
corde, forasmuche as it is for the most parte fruitefull, and  
yet not inhabited. The fyfth day, they sawe two men com-  
myng a farre of: these were laden with bread of *Maizium*, whi-  
che they caried on theyr shoulders in sakes. Our men tooke  
them, and vnderstoode by them that there were two kynges in  
that tract, the one was named *Periquete*, who dwelt neere  
vnto the sea, the others name was *Totonoga*. This *Totonoga*  
was blynde, and dwelt in the continent. The two men which  
they met, were the fyshers of *Totonoga*, whom he had sent  
with certayne fardelles of fysh to *Periquete*, and had agayne re-  
ceyued bread of hym for exchange: For thus do they commu-  
nicate theyr commodities one with an other by exchange, with-  
out the vse of wycked mony. By the conductyng of these two  
men, they came to kyng *Totonoga*, dwelling on the West  
syde of saint Michaels gulfe, in the South sea. They had of  
this kyng the summe of fyre thousand Castellans of golde, both  
rude, and artfycially wrought. Among those groumes of ride  
or natyue golde, there was one founde of the weyght of two Cas-  
tellans, whiche argued the plentifull rychenesse of the grounde.  
Following the same coast by the sea syde towarde the West,  
they came to a kyng, whose name was *Taracuru*, of whom they  
had golde, amountyng to the weyght of eyght thousande *Pesos*.  
We haue sayde before that *Pesos* is the weyght of a Castel-  
lane, not copied. From hence they went to the dominion of  
this kynges brother, named *Pananome*, who fledde at their com-  
myng, and appeared no moze afterwarde. They say that his  
kyngdome is ryche in golde. They spoyled his pallace in his  
absence. Syre leagues from hence, they came to another king,  
named *Tabor*. From thence they came to the kyng of *Cheru*. He  
frendly entertained our men, and gaue them foure thousand *Pesos*  
of golde. He hath in his dominion many goodly salt bayes: the  
region also aboundeth with golde. About twelue myles from  
hence, they came to another king called *Anata*, of whom they had  
xv. thousande *Pesos* of golde, whiche he had gotten of the kynges  
his bozverers, whom he had vanquished by warre. A great part  
of this gold was in rude forme, bycause it was molten when he  
set

Fyre thousand  
Castellans of  
golde.

kyng *Taracuru*.

Foure thou-  
sand pesos of  
gold.  
Salte.

They maner  
of warre.

set the kinges houses on fyre whom he spoyled. For they robbe  
and slay the one the other, sackyng & fyryng theyr villages, and  
wasting theyr countreyes. They keepe warre barbarously, and  
to bitter destruction, executyng extream crueltie agaynst them  
that haue the ouerthrowe, *Gonsalus Badaocius*, with his felowes,  
wandred at libertie, vntyll they came to this kyng, and had gea-  
thered great heapes of golde of other kynges. For, what in bra-  
siettes, collers, earetynges, brest plates, helmettes, and certayne  
barres wherewith women beare vpon theyr brestes, they had gea-  
thered togeather in gold the summe of fourscore thousand Castel-  
lans, which they had obtayned partly by exchange for our things  
where they founde the kynges theyr frendes, & otherwise by for-  
cible meanes where they founde the contrary. They had got-  
ten also fourtie slaues, whose helpe they vied both for cariage of  
their victualles and baggagies, in the steede of Hopyles or other  
beastes of burden, & also to releue such as were sick and forwee-  
ried by reason of theyr long iourneies and hunger. After these  
prosperous voyages, they came by the dominion of kyng *Scoria*,  
to the palace of a kyng named *Pariza*, where (fearyng no suche  
thing) *Pariza* enclosed them with a great armie, and assailed  
them straggelyng and vnwares, in such sort that they had no lea-  
sure to put on theyr armure. He slue and wounded about fyftee,  
and put the resydue to flyght. They made suche hast, that they  
had no respect eyther to the golde they had geathered, or to theyr  
slaues, but left all behynde them. Those fewe that escaped,  
came to *Dariena*. The opinion of all wyse men, as concernyng  
the variable and inconstant chaunces of fortune in humane things  
were false, if all thynges shoulde haue happened vnto them pro-  
sperously. For such is the nature of this blynde goddesse, that she  
ostentymes despyteth in the ouerthrowe of them whom she hath  
exalted, and taketh pleasure in confounding hygh thynges with  
lowe, and the contrary. We see this order to be imper-  
mutable, that who so wyl apply hym selfe to geather rootes, shal  
sometymes meete with sweete *Lpyqueresse*, and other whyles  
with sowre Cockle. Yet wo vnto *Pariza*: for he shal not long  
sleepe in rest. The gouernour him selfe was of late determined  
with thre hundred & fiftie choise souldiers to reuenge the death  
of our men: but where as he by chaunce fel sicke, his power wente  
forwarde

*Gonsalus Badaocius* hath  
the ouerthrowe  
and is spoyled  
of great riches  
of gold.

The inconstan-  
cie of fortune.

forwarde vnder the conducting of his Lieutenaut Gaspar Spina-  
nosa, a Iudge in cases of lawe in Dariena. At the same tyme o-  
ther were sent forth to the Island of Dites, to exact the portion  
of pearles limited to the kynge for his tribute. What shal suc-  
ceede, time wyl bring to our knowledge. The other two attempt-  
ed thinhabitauntes beyond the gulfie Francisus Bezerra, pas-  
syng ouer the corner of the gulfie, & the mouthes of the riuer of  
Dabaiba, with two other captaines, and a hundred and fiftie soul-  
diers wel appoynted, went to make warre vpon the Canibales,  
euen in Caribana theyr owne cheefest dominion, towards the vil-  
lage of Turusy, wherof we haue made mention befoze in the  
comynge of Fogeda. They brought also with them diuers en-  
gins of warre, as thre peeces of ordinaunce, whose shot were  
hygger then egges: lykewyle fourtie archers, and .xxv. hagbut-  
ters, to the entent to reach the Canibales a farre off, & to preuent  
theyr venomed arrowes: But what became of him & his compa-  
ny, or where they arriued, we haue yet no perfect knoweledge.  
Certayne which came of late from Dariena to Spaine reported,  
that at theyr departure they of Dariena stood in great feare lest  
they also were tossed with some misfortune. The other captain  
Valleius obteyned the fore part of the gulfie, but he passed ouer  
by an other way then did Bezerra, for he tooke the beginning of  
Caribana, & Bezerra the end: Valleius returned againe. But of the  
threescore and ten men which he conueighed ouer with hym, he  
left fourtie and eight slayne among the Canibales. These are the  
newes which they bring that came last from Dariena. There  
came to me the day befoze the Ides of October in this yeeze  
1516. Rodericus Colmenares (of whom we haue made mention  
befoze) & one Francisus Delapuenta. This Francisus was one of  
the vnder captaines of this band, whose cheefe captain was Gon-  
salus Badaocius, who hardly escaped the handes of king Pariza.  
These two captaines therfore, Rodericus & Francisus, who depar-  
ted from Dariena immediatly after y misfortune which befel to Ba-  
daocius & his company, do both affirme, the one, that he hath  
hard, & the other, that he hath seene, that in the South sea there  
are diuers Ilandes lying westward from the Island of Dites, and  
Saint Michaels gulfie, in many of the which are trees engen-  
dyed & nooyshed, which bring forth y same arrormatical frutes

as doeth the region of Collacutia. This lande of Collacutia, with  
the regions of Cochinus and Camemorus, are the chiefe marte pla-  
ces from whence the Portugales haue their spices: And hereby  
doe they coniecture, that the lande where the fruitfullesse of spice  
beginneth, should not be farre from thence, in somuche, that many  
of them which haue ouerrunne those coastes, do onely desire that  
leauie may be graunted them to searche further, and that they  
will of their owne charges frame and furnysh shippes, and ad-  
uenture the vyage to seeke those Ilandes and regions. They  
thinke it best that these shippes should be made and prepared, e-  
uen in saint Michaels gulfie, and not to attempt this vyage by  
saint Augustines point, which way were both long and difficult,  
and full of a thousande daungers, and is sayde to reache beyonde  
the fourtieth degree of the pole Antartike. The same Francis-  
cus, being partener of the traualles and daungers of Gonfalus,  
saith, that in ouerrunning those landes, he founde great hearbes  
of Hartes and wylde Bozes, and that he tooke many of them by  
an arte which thinhabitauntes taught him: which was, to make  
pittes or trenches in their walkes, and to couer the same with  
boughes: By this meanes also they deceyue all other kyndes of  
wylde & foure footed beastes. But they take fowles after y same  
maner that we do: As stocke doves, w an other tame stocke dove  
brought vp in their houses. These they tye by a stryng, and suffer  
them to flee a litle among the trees: to the which as other birdes  
of their kynde resort, they kill them with their arrowes. Other-  
wyle they take them with nettes, in a bare place purged from  
trees & bushes, & scattering certayne seedes round about y place,  
in y middest wherof they tye a tame foule or byrd, of the kynde of  
them which they desyre to take: In lyke maner doe they take  
Dopingiayes and other fowles. But they say that Dopingiayes  
are so simple, that a great multitude of them wyl flee euen  
into the tree in whose boughes the fouler sitteth, and swarme a-  
bout the tame chatteryng Dopingiay, sufferyng them selues to  
bee easily taken: For they are so without feare of the sight of the  
fouler, that they tary whyle he cast the snare about their neckes,  
the other beyng nothyng feared heereby, though they see him  
drawe them to him with the snare, and put them in the bagge  
which hee hath about him for the same purpose. There is an  
other

Collacutia,  
Cochinus and  
Camemorus,  
from whence  
the Portugales  
haue their spices.

He meaneth by  
the streight of  
Magellanus.

Howe they  
take Hartes  
and wylde  
Bozes.

Stocke doves,

They maner  
of fowlyng.

Dopingiayes  
are easily taken

The expedition  
of Fraunces  
Bezerra aganst  
the Canibales.

Guines.

Valleius repul-  
sed of his ene-  
mies.

The Ilandes of  
the South sea.

In this sea lye  
the Ilandes of  
Mollucca,  
most fruitfull  
of spices.

so strange  
kynde of fou-  
lyng.

other kynde of foulyng, heere tofore neuer hearde of, and pleasant to consider. Wee haue declared before howe that in certayne of the Ilandes, and especially in *Hispaniola*, there are dyuers lakes or standyng pooles: In some of these (being no deeper then men may wade ouer them) are seene great multitudes of water foules: as well for that in the bottome of these lakes there growe many hearbes and weedes, as also that by reason of the heate of the Sunne, pearlyng to the naturall place of generation and conception, where being doubled in force by reflection, and preserued by moyster there, are engendred of the stymynesse of the earth and water, and by the prouidence of the vniuersall creator, innumerable little fythes, with a thousand sundry kyndes of frogges, wormes, gnattes, flies, and such other. The foules which vse these lakes, are of dyuers kyndes: as Duckes, Geese, Swannes, sea Pelwes, Gullies, and such other. We haue sayde also, that in theyr Dycharides they noryshe a tree which beareth a kynde of great Gourdes. Of these Gourdes therfore, well stopped least any water should enter in at theyr ryftes, & cause them to sinke, they cast many in the shalowe pooles, where, by theyr continuall wanderyng and waueryng with the motions of the wynde and water, they put the foules out of suspencion & feare: the fouler in the meane tyme, disguising him selfe as it were with a visour, putteth a great gourde on his head, much lyke to a helmet, with two holes neere about his eyes, his face and whole head besyde being couered therewith: and thus entred hee into the poole cuen vnto the chymne. For being from theyr infancie exercised in swymnyng, and accustomed to the waters, they refuse not to continue therein a long space: the foules thynking this Gourde to bee one of the other that swymme vppon the water, the fouler goeth softly to the place where hee seeth the greatest flocke of foules, and with waggyng his head, counterfeyting the mouyng of the waueryng Gourdes, draweth neare to the foules, where softly puttynge forth his ryght hande, he sodainly snatcheth one by the legges, and plungeth her into the water, where hee putteth her into a bagge whiche hee hath with hym of purpose: The other foules supposyng that this dyued into the water of her owne motion to seeke for foode (as is theyr maner) are nothyng moued heereby, but goe forwarde on theyr way

Fythes and  
wormes engend-  
red of stymine.  
Foules.

Gourdes of  
the tree.

way as before, vntyll they also fall into the same snare. I haue heere for this cause entred into the declaration of theyr maner of huntynge and foulyng, that by these moze pleasaunt narrations, I may somewhat mittigate and asswage the horroure conceyued in your stomake by the former rehearal of theyr bloody actes and cruell maners. Let vs nowe therfore speake somewhat agayne of the newe and later opinions, as concernyng the swyft course of the sea toward the West about the coastes of *Paria*, also of the maner of geatheryng of golde in the golde myne of *Dariena*, as I was aduertised of late: and with these two quiet and peaceable thinges, we will make an ende of the tragicall affayres of the Ocean, and therewith byd your hoynesse farewell. So it is therfore, that *Andreas Moralis* the pilot, and *Oniedus* (of whom wee haue made mention before) repayed to mee, at my house in the towne of *Matrite*. As we met thus togeather, there arose a contention betweene them two, as concernyng this course of the Ocean. They both agree, that these landes and regions parteynyng to the dominion of *Castile*, doe with one continual tract & perpetual bond, embzale as one whole firme lande or continent, all the mayne lande lying on the North side of *Cuba*, & the other Ilands, being also North west both from *Cuba* & *Hispaniola*. Yet as touching the course of the water, they vary in opinion. For *Andreas* wil that this violent course of water be receiued in the lappe of the supposed continent, which bendeth so much, and extendeth so farre toward the North, as wee haue sayde: and that by the object or resistance of the lande, so bending and crookyng, the water should as it were rebounde in compasse, and by force thereof bee drien about the North syde of *Cuba*, and the other Ilands, excluded without y circle called *Tropicus Cancr*, where the largenes of y sea may receiue the waters falling from the narrow streames, & therby represseth that inordinate course, by reason that the sea is there very large and great. I can compare his meanyng to nothing moze aptely, then to the swyft streame comyng forth of a myll, and fallynge into the myll poole: For in all such places where waters runne with a violent fall thzough narrowe chanelles, and are then receyued in large pooles, they are sodainly disparced, and theyr violence broken: So that whereas before they seemed of such force as

Later opinions  
of the swyft  
course of the  
Ocean toward  
the West.

The continene  
or firme lande.



The bypages  
of Diego  
Colonus.

The blage  
from the new  
lands to Spain

The contrary  
course of wa-  
ters.

to ouerthrowe all thinges beyng in theyr way, it can not them be perceyued which way they runne. The Admirall him selfe *Diego Colonus*, sonne and heire to *Christophorus Colonus*, the fyrst synner of these landes (who had nowe in commynge and going, foure tymes passed through these seas) being demaunded of me what he founde or perceyued in sayllyng too and fro: answered, that there was muche difficultie in returnyng the same way by the which they goe. But whereas they fyrst take the way by the mayne sea toward the North, before they directe theyr course to Spayne, he sayth that in that tract hee felt the shyppe sometymes a litle dyuen backe by the contrary course of the water: Yet supposeth that this chaunceth onely by the ordinary flowyng and reflowyng of the sea, and the same not to bee enforced by the circumflection or course of the water, reboundyng in compasse as wee haue sayde: But thinketh rather, that this mayne lande or supposed continent, should somewhere bee open: and that the sayde open place, should bee as it were a gate, entrie, or streight, diuiding the North partes of that lande from the South, by the which also the Ocean runnyng toward the West, may by the rotation or impulsion of the heauens, bee dyuen about the whole earth. *Ouidius* agreeth with *Andreas Moralis* as touchyng the continuall adherence and closenesse of the sayde continent: Yet neyther that the waters should so beate agaynst the bendyng backe of the West lande, or bee in such sort repulled and dyuen into the mayne sea: But sayth, that he hath diligently considered, that the waters runne from the deepest and myddest of the mayne sea, toward the West: Also, that sayllyng neere vnto the shoie with small vessels, hee founde the same waters to returne againe toward the East, so that in the same place they runne togeather with contrary course, as we oftentimes see the lyke to chaunce in ryuers, where by the obiect of the bankes, dyuers whirlepooles and turnynges arylle in the water. By reason whereof, if any chaffe, strawe, wood, or any other thyng of lyght substance be cast in any such places in ryuers, it foloweth, that all suche as runne with the water in the myddest of the channell, proceede well forwarde, but suche as fall into the bendyng gulfes and indented margentes of the crooked bankes, are carryed ouerthwart the channell, and so wander about vntyll they

they meete with the full and directe course of the ryuer. Thus haue we made you partener of suche thinges as they haue giuen vs, and witten their dyuers opinions: We will then giue moze certayne reason, when moze certayne truely shalbe knowne. We must in the meane tyme leane to opinions, vntill the day come appointed of God to reueale this secreete of nature, with the perfect knowledge of the pointe of the pole starre. Hauyng sayde thus muche of the course of the Ocean, a bryefe declaration of the golde mynes of *Dariena*, shall close vp our Decades, and make an ende of our traualles. Wee haue sayde, that niene mynes distant from *Dariena*, are the sydes of the hylles and the dyue playnes in the whiche golde is geathered, both on the dyue lande, and also on the bankes, and in the chanelles of ryuers. Therefore to all suche as are wyllyng to geather golde, there is of ordinarie custome appointed to euery man by the suruoyers of the mynes, a square plotte of grounde, conteynyng twelue paces, at the arbitrement of the chooser, so that it be not grounde already occupied, or left of other. The portion of grounde being thus cholen (as it were assigned of the augures to buylde a temple) they inclose their slaues within the same, whose helpe the Christians vse in tylling of their grounde, and geatheryng of golde, as we haue sayde. These places appointed vnto them, they keepe as long as them lyst: and if they perceyue tokens of little golde, they requyre an other plot of grounde of twelue paces to be assigned them, leauyng the first in common: And this is the order which the Spaniardes inhabiting *Dariena* obserue in geatheryng of golde. I suppose also, that they vse the lyke order in other places: Howbeit, I haue not yet enquired so farre. It hath been proued, that these twelue paces of grounde, haue yelded to their choosers the summe of fourescore Castellanes of golde. And thus leade they theyr lyues in fulfillyng the holy hunger of golde. But the more they fyll their handes with syndyng, the more increaseth theyr couetous desyre. The more woodde is sayde to the fyre, the more furiously rageth the flame. Unsatiabable couetousnesse is no more diminished with increase of rychesse, then is the drynesse of the dryppe satisfied with drynke. I let passe many thinges, whereof I intende to wyte moze largely in tyme conuenient, if I shall in the meane season vnderstande

The point of  
the pole starre.

The golde  
mynes of *Dariena*, and the  
maner of geatheryng golde.

Our inclosers  
would leaue no  
such commons

*Auri sacra Fames.*

The dryppe of  
couetousnesse.

derstande these to bee acceptable unto your holynesse: my dutie and obseruance to whose auctoritie, hath caused mee the gladlier to take this labour in hande. The prouidence of the eternall creatour of all thinges, graunt your holynesse many prosperous yeeres.

Here endeth the three booke of  
the Decades.

## Of Cuba, Hispaniola, and other Ilands

in the West Indies seas: and of the maners  
of the inhabitants of  
the same.



Booke Decade  
3. Liber. 10.

Cities fortified  
with walles.

The Ilande of  
Cuba or Fernandina.

I haue partly declared before in my Decades, howe certaine fugitiues which came out of the large West landes, arriued in the confines of *Dariena*, and howe that maruelling at the booke of our men, they declared that they sometime dwelt in regions whose inhabitantes used such instruments, & were ruled by politike lawes: Also that they had cities fortified with walles, and faire pallaces, with streates well paved, & common places whither marchauntes resorte, as to the burse or streate: These landes, our men haue now founde. Therefore who were thaucoys hereof, or what successe they had herein, who so desireth to knowe, with the conditions of straunge regions, and the maners of the people, let him giue diligent attendaunce to suche thinges as folow. Of the Ilande of *Cuba* (now called *Fernandina*, lying next unto *Hispaniola* on the West syde, and yet somewhat so bending towarde the North, that the circle called *Tropicus Cancrici* diuidenth it in the myddest, whereas *Hispaniola* is distant from the Tropike, and declining certayne degrees towarde the Equinoctiall line) we haue spoken somewhat before. In this Iland of *Fernandina*, there are now sixe towne erected, wherof the chiefe is named *Sanctiago*, of *S. James*, the patrone of the Spaniards. In this, there is natieue gold found, both in y<sup>e</sup> mountaines and

and ryuers: by reason wherof they are dayly occupied in geathering & digging the same. But shortly after that I had finished my sayd booke, three Spaniards y<sup>e</sup> were the most auncient citizens of *Cuba*, as *Franciscus Fernandes* of *Corduba*, *Lupus Ocho*, & *Christophorus Morantes*, determined to seeke new landes, as the myndes of the Spaniards are euer vnquiet & giuen to attempt great enterpryses. They furnished, at their owne charges, three of those shippes which they call *Carauels*, and hauing first lycence of *Diego Velasquen* the gouernour of the Ilande, they departed with a hundred and ten men from the West angle of *Cuba*: For this angle is most commodious to relieue shippes, & to make prouision for freshe water & fuell. Thus they sayled continually sixe dayes and a halfe betwene the west & the South, contented onely with the sight of the heauen & the water, during which tyme, they suppose that they sayled not past threescore and sixe myles: For they lay at anker all nyght, wheresoeuer the falling of the Sunne tooke the day lyght from them, least by wanderyng in vnknown seas, they myght chaunce to bee cast vpon rocks or sandes: But at the length they chaunted vpon a great Ilande, named *Iucatana*, whose begynnyng thynhabitaunt call *Eccampi*. Our men went to the citie, standyng on the sea syde, the which, for the bygnesse thereof, they named *Cayrus*, or *Alcair*, thynhabitauntes wherof entertained them very friendly. When they were entred into the citie, they marueyled to beholde the houses buylded lyke Towres, magnificall temples, streates well paved, and great exercise of bying and sellyng by exchaunge of ware for ware. Their houses are either built of stone, or of byicke and lyme, and artificially wrought. To the first porches of theyr houses, and fyrst habitations, they ascend by ten or twelue stappes: they are couered either with tyles, slates, reades, or stalkes of certayne hearbes, they gratified the one the other with mutuall gyftes. The Barbarians gaue our men many brooches and ieweltes of golde, very fayre, and of cunnyng workemanshypp: our men recompensed them with vestures of sylke and wooll, counterfeyte stones, of coloured glasse and chrystall, Haukes belles of laton, and suche other rewardes, whiche they greatly esteemed for the straungenesse of the same: they set nought by lookyng glasses, bycause they haue certayne stones muche byghter.

¶.iiii.

This

The Spaniards of Cuba attempt new vpages.

The West angle of Cuba.

Note.

The Ilande of Iucatana. A great citie well buylded.

Temples.

Humane people.

Cunnyng artificers.

Apparelled  
people.Circumcised  
Idolaters.Campechium.  
A towne of  
three thousand  
houses.

This nation is apparelled after a thousande fashions, with be-  
stures made of gossampyne cotton or bombage, of dyuers co-  
loures. The women are couered from the girdle to the heele, ha-  
uyng dyuers fashions of hailes about their heades and brestes,  
with great cautell least any part of their legges or feete be seene:  
they resorte muche to their temples, vnto the whiche the chiefe  
rulers haue the wayes paved from their owne houses: they are  
Idolaters, and circumcised, they occupie their maner of ex-  
chaunging with muche fidelitie: they vse to adourne the heares  
of their heades. Being demaunded by chinperpretours, of whom  
they receyued theyr circumcision: they answered, that there once  
passed an exceeding fayre man by their coastes, who left them  
that in token to remember him. Other say, that a man bright-  
er then the Sunne, went among them, and executed that of-  
fyce: but there is no certayntie heereof. When our men had  
remayned there certayne dayes, they seemed to bee molestous to  
thinhabitanes, accordyng to the common saying, The lon-  
ger a ghest tarreth, the worse is his entertainment: The which  
thyng our men perceyving, they made the more hast away. Be-  
ing therefore prouided of all thinges necessary, they tooke theyr  
viage directly toward the West, by the prouince which thinha-  
bitauntes call *Comi*, and *Maia*. They ouerpasse these regi-  
ons, takyng onely freshe water and fuell in the same. The Bar-  
barians, both men, women, and children, flocked to the sea syde,  
astonyshed greatly to beholde the huge bygnesse of the shippes.  
Our men marueyled in maner no lesse to view their buydinges,  
and especially their temples situate neare vnto the sea, and erect-  
ed after the maner of towres. Thus at the length hauyng say-  
led about a hundred and ten myles, they thought it good to lay  
Anker in a prouince named *Campechium*, whose chiefe towne  
consisteth of three thousande houses. Thinhabitanes came swim-  
myng to the shippes, marueplyng exceedingly at the maner of  
saylyng, and at the sayles and other tackelynges: But when they  
hearde the thunder of the gunnes, sawe the smoke, and smelte  
the sauour of bymistone and fyre, they supposed that thunderbolts  
and lyghtrynges had been sent from God. The kyng recey-  
ued our men honourably, and brought them into his pallace:  
where hee feasted them well, after his maner. They are accusto-  
med

Plentie of  
beastes and  
fowles.

med to eate fleshe, and haue great plentie of beastes and fowles,  
as Peacocks, and other, whiche they francke and feede in  
theyr houses: also dyuers kyndes of wyld fowles of the moun-  
taines, wooddes, and waters: lykwyle Partriches, Quails,  
Turtle doones, Duckes, and Geese. Of beastes, they haue  
Connies, Woolues, Lions, Tigers, Foxes, wyld Boozes,  
Hartes, and Hares. After this banquet, the kyng with his  
trayne and familye brought our men into a hyde crosse way,  
where many streates do meete: In this, they shewed them as it  
were a great and high alter, buylded foure square of marble, com-  
pacte togeather partly with the tough clepe of Babilon called *Bi-  
tumem*, and partly with small stones, it had on euery syde foure  
staples: Upon the altare was an Image of a man made of mar-  
ble, and fast by it the images of two beastes of vnknownen shape,  
which seemed as though they woulde with yanyng mouth haue  
toyne in sunder the belly of the mans Image. On the other syde  
stoode a great Serpent, compact of the sayde tough clepe and  
small stones: This Serpent beyng in length .xliiij. foote, and  
of the bygnesse of a large Ore, seemed to deuour a Lion of mar-  
ble, and was all besparckled with freshe blood. Harde by the al-  
tare, were three postes fastned in the ground, the which thre o-  
ther trauerfed, and were susteyned with stones. In this place  
offenders were put to death, in token wherof they sawe innume-  
rable arrowes stayned with blood, some scattered, some lying on  
heapes, & some broken: also a great number of mens bones, ly-  
ing in a court or yarde nere vnto this funestall place, their houses  
are here also buylded of lyme and stone: They named this kyng  
*Lazarus*, because they arriued at this lande on saint *Lazarus* day.  
Departing from hence, and directing their course stil toward the  
West, for the space of .xv. myles, they came to a prouince named  
*Aquanil*, whose chiefe towne is called *Mosco*, and the king therof  
*Cupoton*. We behelde our men with a frowarde countenance, and  
sought occasion to do the some priuy mischief, while they sought  
for freshe water: For he made signes vnto them, that on the fur-  
ther syde of the next hyl they shoulde fynde springes of water, en-  
tending to haue assailed them in that narowe passage: But by the  
colouring of theyr foreheades (as they are accustomed in theyr  
warres) and by the bearing of theyr bowes & other weapons, our  
men

Theyr Idoles  
and Idolatry.Houses of lime  
and stone.The prouince  
*Aquanil*.  
*Mosco*.

The Spaniards are put to flight, and many slayne.

men perceyued theyr wplynes, and refused to go any further: Yet a thousande of the Barbarians assailed them vnwares, and vnprepared: by reason whereof, they were put to flight, and dyuers of them slayne in the chase. Many that fledde towarde the shypes, were entangled in the mudde and maryshes neere vnto the shore: Twentie and two were slayne with arrowes, and the resydue for the most part wounded. *Franciscus Fernandes* the gouernour of the nauie, receyued in this conflict three and thirtie woundes, and in maner none escaped without hurt: If they had gone to the hylles whiche were appoynted them, they had ben slaine euery man. They therfore that escaped, returned to the Ilande of *Fernardina*, from whence they came, where they were receyued of theyr felowes with heauie cheare. But when *Diegus Velasquen* the gouernour of the Ilande, had intelligence hereof, he immediatly furnyshed a newe nauie of foure Carauelles, with three hundred men: Of this nauie he appointed *Iohn Grisalu*, his nephue, to be y<sup>e</sup> gouernour, & assigned for vnder captaynes, *Alphons Auila*, *Frannces Montegio*, and *Peter Aluaredo*: For the pylot he assigned *Antonie Alaminio*, who had the regiment of the fyrst nauie. They attempted the same viage agayne, but declined somewhat more towarde the South, about threescore and tenne myles. Before they sawe any lande, they espyed a towne a farre of, by the biewe whereof, they came to an Ilande named *Cozumella*, from the whiche they smelt sweete sauiours proceeding with the wynde, before they approached to the lande by the space of three myles. They founde the Ilande to be xlv. myles in circuitie, it is playne, and of maruelous fruitfull soyle, there is also golde in it, but it is not engendred there, but brought thither from other regions: It aboundeth with hony, frutes, and hearbes, and hath also great plentie of foules, and foure footed beastes. Theyr order and maner of lypynge, is in al thynges lyke vnto theyr of *Iucatana*: lyke wyse theyr houses, temples, streates, and apparrell. In many of theyr houses, are great postes of marble, after the maner of our buyldyng. They found there, the fundacions of certayne olde towres ruinate, and one especially with xlviii. stappes ascendyng to it, after the maner of solemne temples. They marueyled greatly at our shypes and maner of saylyng. At the fyrst, they woulde admit no straungers:

An other expedition.

The Ilande of Cozumella. Sweete sauiours. A fruitfull Ilande.

Towres and temples.

gers: but shortly after, receiued them gentely. Theyr cheiffe ruler (whom our men supposed to bee a priest) led them vp to the toppe of the towre, where they erected a banner and addicted the Ilande to the dominion of the kyng of Castyle, namyng it *Sancta Crux*, because they entred into the same in the nones of Maye, being then the feast of the holpe crosse. They sape that it was called *Cozumella*, of kyng *Cozumellaus*, whose auncestours were the fyrst that inhabited the Ilande. In the towre they found many chambers furnished with Images, made both of earth and marble to the similitude of Beares: these they cal vpon with a howling and lamentable songue, perfumming them with sweete odours, and otherwyse honouring them as theyr domestticall goddesses: they are also circumcised. The kyng was in sayre apparell, made of gossampine cotton, curiously wrought: he was lame on the one foote, by reason that as he once exercised hym selfe in swymmyng, a deuouryng fyre called *Tuberon*, byt of all the toes of one of his feete: he entreated our men very frendly, and made them great cheare. After they had been heere three dayes, they departed: and saylyng still towards the West, they espyed great mountaynes a farre of, but as they drew neare, they perceyued it to be the Ilande of *Iucatana*, being distant from *Cozumella* only fyue myles. Directyng therfore theyr course towards the south syde of *Iucatana*, they compassed it on that syde which lyeth nearest to be supposed continent: yet coulde they not saile round about it, by reason of the multitude of rocks, shalowe places, and shelves of lande. Then *Alaminus* the pilot turned his sayles to the North syde, whereof he had better knowledge. Thus at the length, they came to the towne *Campechium*, and kyng *Lazarus*, with whom they had been that attempted the first voyage the yere before. At the fyrst, they were gentely receiued, and required to resort to the towne: but shortly after, they repented that they had bydden them, and therupon willed them to stay about a stones cast from the towne, and to proccede no further. When our men desired that they myght make provision for freshe water before theyr departure, they assigned them to a certayne well whiche they had left behynde them, declaring further, that it shoulde be lawfull for them to take water there, or els no where. Our men rested that nyght in the feilde

Cozumella named Sancta Crux.

Idles lyke Beares.

Idolatry.

Scute people.

Iucatana but fyue myles from Cozumella.

The Barbarians make resistance.

adiouynyng

adjoining to the well: the whiche thing the Barbarians suspecting, assembled an army of three thousand men, and encamped not farre from them. Both partes passed a way the nyght without sleepe: they fearyng lest our men shoulde breake into the towne: and our men, lest the Barbarians shoulde invade them sodenly, on the one part with Trumpettes, and on the other syde with the noyse of Tymbrels, kept them still wakyng that were disposed to sleepe. At the spryng of the day, the Barbarians appoched to our mens campe, and called for the interpreters of *Cuba*, whose language is much agreable unto theirs. They had devised to lyght a Torche of franckenlence, and to place the same betweene both the armies, to the intent that yf our men dyd not depart before the Torche were consumed, to stand to theyr peryll. The Torche was wasted, and the matter came to hand strokes. They slue only one of our men with an arrowe, because his Target failed him: but many were wounded. After this conflict, our men resorted to theyr ordinaunce, whiche they had planted neere unto the wel. When they had discharged certayne peeces, the Barbarians fled backe into the towne, and our men were of fierse and greedie courage to haue pursued them, but that *Grisalua* the gouernour would not suffer them. From thence they proceeded to the last ende of *Iucatana*, which they founde to reach more then two hundred myles from the East to the West. Here they founde a commodious haven, and named it *Portus desideratus*. From hence they sailed to other landes, & came to the region next to *Iucatana* Westward, which they doubt whether it be an Island, or part of the same lande, but thinke it rather to be annext to y<sup>e</sup> continēt: in this there is a gulf, whiche they suppose to be compassed with both the landes: but of this there is no certentie. The inhabitauntes call this region *Caluacam*, or otherwise *Oloan*. They found here also a great riuer, whiche by his violent course and fall, driueth freshe water two myles into the sea: this they called *Grisalua*, after the name of the gouernour. The Barbarians marueplyng at the huge greatness and mouing of our shypes, came swarmyng on the bankes of both sydes the riuer, to the number of fyre thousande men, armed with targettes and best plates of golde, bowes and arrowes,hode swoordes of heauie wood, and long sauelyng hardened

A conflict.

The length of  
Iucatana.The region of  
Caluacam, or  
Oloan.The riuer  
Grisalua.Targettes and  
best plates of  
golde.

ned at the endes with fyre. Thus standyng in battayle raye to defende theyr coastes, and with proude countenances forbyddyng our men to come alande, both parties watched all that nyght in armes. In the dawne of theyr dape, our men espyed about a hundred Canoas (whiche we haue sayde to bee theyr boates) full of armed men. Here also, the language of chinterpretours of *Cuba* agreed well yenough with theirs. When they had admitted the peace profered them by chinterpretours, al the Canoas staid, except one which appoched toward the shippes. A certayne ruler that was in this Canoa, demanded of our men what they sought in other mens landes. They answered, Gold, and that for permutation of other ware, and not of gift, or violently. The Canoa returned, and the ruler certified the king hereof, who came gladly to the shippes. When he had saluted the gouernour, he called his chamberlaine vnto him, commaundyng hym to byng his armor, and other ornaments of gold, wherewith he armed *Grisalua* from the toppe of the head, to the sole of the foote: insomuche that what so euer any man of armes, armed at all partes, is among vs accustomed to weare of Iron or Steele when he cometh into the fiede, all such kynde of furnitures made of golde, and wrought with woonderfull art, the kyng gaue to the gouernour. He recompenced hym with vestures of sycke, cloth, linnen, and other of our thynges. In the begynnyng of this *Iucatana*, when they sayled to *Cozumella*, they chaunced vpon a Canoa of fishermen, to the number of niene, shypyng with hokes of golde: they tooke them all prysoners. One of them was knowen to this kyng, who promysed the day following, to send the gouernour as much gold for his raunsome, as the man hym self waight. But the gouernour denied that he could release hym, without the consent of his felowes, and therefore kept hym still, to proue what he coulde further knowe of hym. Departyng from hence, and saylyng still westwarde, they founde a great gulf, in the which three small Ilandes were situate: Of these, they went to the byggest. But oh abominable crueltie, oh most corrupted myndes of men, and diuyllysh impietie. Let euery godly man close y<sup>e</sup> mouth of his stomake, lest he be disturbed. They offer young chyldren of both kyndes to their Idoles of marbie & earth. Among their Idoles of marbie, there standeth

Armor of gold.

Expert artificers.

Fishhookes  
of golde.The Ilandes  
of Sacrifice.Chyldren sacrificed  
to Idols.  
Theyr Idoles  
of marbie.



standeth a Lion, hauping a hole through the necke, into the whiche they poure the blood of the miserable sacrifice, that it may from thence runne downe into a syncke of marble. Let vs now declare with what ceremonies they sacrifice the blood of these poore wretches. They cut not theyr thyotes, but open the very brestes of these seelye soules, and take out theyr hartes yet pantyng, with the hot blood whereof, they annoynt the lippes of theyr Idoles, and suffer the residue to fall into the syncke: This doone, they burne the harte and bowels, supposyng the smoke thereof to be acceptable to theyr goddes. Of theyr Idoles, one is made to the shape of a man, bowyng downe his head, and lookyng toward the syncke of blood, as it were acceptyng the offeryng of the sayne sacrifice. They eate the fleshe of the armes, thyghes, and legges, especially when they sacrifice an enemie taken in the warres. They founde a streame of coniealed blood, as though it had runne from a bozchery. For this mischeuous purpose, they bring these wretches from the next Ilandes. They sawe also innumerable heades, and trunks of bodie thus mangled, besyde many other yet remainyng whole, and couered with certayne mattes. Al the tractes of these regions abound with gold and pretious stones. One of our men wandryng in the Ilande, chaunced to fynde two water pottes of alabaster, artificially wrought, and full of litle stones of dyuers colours. They say also that they founde a stone of the value of two thousande Castellans of golde, which they sent to the gouernour. This Iland they named the Iland of sacrifice. Thynhabitantes are circumcised. There are also other Ilands situate about this Coluacana, or Galuacam, the which are inhabited onely with women, lyuing without the companye of men, after the maner of the Amazones. But they that ponder the matter more wysely, thynke them rather to be certayne women whiche haue bowed chastitie, and professed a solitarie life, as the Nunnes do with vs, or as the virgins called Vestales, or Bone Dea, were accustomed to do among the gentiles in olde tyme. At certayne tymes of the yere, men of the other Ilandes resorte vnto them, not for thintent of generation, but moued with pittie, to helpe them to dresse theyr gardenes, and tyll theyr grounde. The reporte goeth lykewyse, that there are other Ilandes of corrupt

Golde and pretious stones.

A stone of great price.

Ilandes of women.

rupt women, to whom men resorte for carnall copulation, and that they cut of one of the pappes of theyr women chyldren, lest it shoulde hynder theyr shootyng: also that they keepe only the women chyldren, and send away the men chyldren. Our men therefore dywe neare to the shore of Coluacana, where they quietly exercised marchandies with thynhabitantes. The king gaue them a great Pot of golde: also bracelets, chaynes, brooches, with many other iewels, and all of golde. Our men agayne on the other part satified hym with such stuffe as they had done other before. Here would they gladly haue planted a new colonie or habitation, but that the gouernour woulde not permit them, whereat they grudged not a litle. The houses and other edifices of this prouince, are builded lyke vnto Towres. It hath also fyfteene great townes in it. Of these they aspyre, that they haue seene some consistyng of more then twentie thousand houses, not ioyned together, but disscuered with courtes and gardenes. They haue also certayne large market places, encompassed with walles, and streates wel paved: likewise forniaces & ouens, made of lime and brycke: furthermore al sortes of handie craftes men, and very cunning artificers. This kynges name was Potanchanus, and the region is called Palmaria. The towne where the kyng keepeth his court, conteyneth .xv. thousand houses. When they receyue any straungers, & make a league of frendship with them, they are accustomed with a knyfe made of a sharp stone to let them selues blood in the tongue, hande, arme, or some other part of the bodie, and this euen in the syght of them whom they admit to frendship, in token that they are redy to shed theyr blood in theyr frendes causes. Theyr priestes professe a berruous lyfe, and lyue vnmarrid. What it is to haue doto w women, no man knoweth before he be married. Fornication and adulterie (which seldome chaunceth among them) they count abhominacion. The women are of marueilous chastitie. Euery noble man, after that he haue had one wife, may haue as many concubines as hym lyketh: but a married woman taken in adulterie, is sold of her husband, but this onely to the prince, at whose handes it shal be lawfull for her kynsfolke to redeme her. It is not lawfull for suche as are not married, to sit at the same table with them that are married, or to eate of the same dyshe, or drynke of the same cup.

Golde.

Houses lyke Towres. xv. great townes in the prouince of Coluacana. Townes of .xx. thousand houses.

The region of Palmaria.

A token of frendshipp.

Priestes.

Chastitie.

The punishment of adulterie.

Marriage is honoured.

In

Fasting.

Knyng Quantus.

Idoles, Jewels  
and ourches of  
golde.Gold in mountaynes  
and ri-  
uers.The manner  
of gathering  
golde.Sweete sa-  
uours.

In the moneth of August and September, they abstepne .xxv. dayes, not onely from fleshe, whereof they haue great plentie, but also from fysh, and all other thynges that lyue by blood, and during these dayes, lyue onely with hearbes and frutes. They reckon twentie dayes to the moneth, and twentie monethes to the yere. Our men consumed certayne dayes here very pleasantly. When they departed, coasting still by the same shore, they came to an other knyng, whom they named *Oumil*. When he had intelligence that our men desired gold, he brought forth certayne plats of molten gold. But when the gouernour signified vnto hym by the interpreter, that he desired great plentie of that metall, the day following he brought him a mans image of gold, beyng a cubite in length: also a panne of golde, and an Idole of one of his domestical gods, of curious workmanship: likewise garlandes of stones of sundry colours, with many best plates, brooches, and other kyndes of ornaments, and all of golde. He gaue hym furthermore abundance of delicate meates, well salted, and powdered with spices. When he had required our men to come alande, he commaunded his seruantes with all speede to prepare a great multitude of boughes of trees, and to wayte vpon our men to his pallace. As they went thus in order, some behynde, and some before, on both sydes, they seemed so to shadow our men with bowes, as though they had gone in a continuall arbour. The knyng hym selfe haupng a Scepter in his hande, dyd set them in theyr arraye, and some tyme stryke suche as were negligent in bearyng theyr bowes. They thewed them selues obedient in all thynges, and with graue countenance humbled them selues to receyue his stryppes. When he was demaunded where he had suche plentie of golde: he poynted with his synger to the next mountaynes, and to the riuers descending from the same. They are so accustomed to the riuers, and exercised in swymmyng, that it is all one to them to lyue in the water and on the lande. When they desire to gather golde, they plunge them selues in the riuers, and byng from the bottome therof both theyr handes full of sande, whiche sifting from hande to hande, they geather out the graynes of golde. And by this meanes in the space of two houres, they fyll a reede as bygge as a mans synger. Of the sweete sa-  
uours

saours of these landes, many thynges might be spoken, the which bycause they make rather to theffminaryng of the myndes of men, then for any necessary purpose, I haue thought best to omit them. The knyng also gaue the gouernour a young virgin, of twelue yeeres of age, adourned with ryche and fayre Jewelles. Of the stones whiche hee had of this knyng, one was valued at two thousande Castellanes of golde. Thus at the length they departed from this knyng, laden with golde and precious stones. *Grisalua* the gouernour, sent one of the Carauelles to his vncle *Diego Velasquen*, gouernour of the Ilande of *Cuba*, with messengers to deliuer him the golde, Jewelles, and other ornaments, the residue in the meane tyme still folowed the tracte toward the West. One of them in the whiche *Frauncis Montegius* the vnder gouernour was carped sayled harde by the shore, and the other two kepte aloofe within prospecte of the lande. Thinhabitauntes of these coastes also, no lesse marueplyng at the shippes then dyd the other, came with twelue Canoas to *Montegius*, desirynge hym by thinterpreter to come alande, promysynge in the name of theyr knyng, that hee shoulde bee honourably entertayned. But *Montegius* answered, that hee coulde not assent to theyr request, bycause his companions were so farre from him: Yet dyd hee gyue them certayne of our thynges, straunge vnto them, and thankes for their gentlenesse. Shortly after, espyng a great towne, they directed their course thither. Thinhabitauntes prohibyted them to come alande, and came forth agaynst them with bowes and quiers full of arrowes, broad swoordes made of heauy wood, and Iauelins hardened at the ende with fyre. They shot at our men a farre of, and our men discharged certayne peeces of ordinaunce agaynst them. The Barbarians astonished at the noyse of the gunnes fled amayne, and desired peace. Here our mens vitayles began to fayle them, and theyr shippes were brooked with long viages. Haupng therefore founde and done these thynges whereof wee haue spoken, *Grisalua* returned to the Ilande of *Eernandina* well contented, but so were not his companions. We muste nowe diuerse somewhat from this matter, and speake of an other nauigation: and from thence will wee retorne to these landes whiche our men haue founde. So it is therefore, that  
P.i. Diegus

A stone of  
Great Price.Other viages  
from Cuba to  
Eernandina.

Diegus Velasquez, the gouernour of the Ilande of *Fernandina*, about the same tyme that he had sent forth this nauie of foure Carauelles, he prepared an other nauigation of onely one Carauell, and one byggantine, with fourtie and fyue men. These exercised violent handes against thynhabitauntes of those regions where they arryued, thynkynge that they myght forceably drawe them to the dyggynge of golde, bycause they were Cassanite Idolaters and circumcised. There are at the sea syde not farre from the supposed continent, many litle Ilandes, of most fortunate and fruitefull soyle, whereof thre are thus named, *Guanapan*, *Guan-guan*, and *Quitilla*. Out of one of these (which they named *Sancta Marina*) they violently carped away thre hundred men & women, which they thrust into the Carauell, and returned immediately to *Fernandina*, leauynge the byggantine with .xxv. of theyr felowes, to thynnt to hunt for more men. The haue where the Carauell first arryued, is called *Carenas*, beyng distant from the angle of *Cuba*, and the chiefe citie of *Sanctiago*, two hundred and fiftie myles: For this Ilande of *Cuba*, is very long, reachynge in length from the East to the West, and situate directly vnder the circle called *Tropicus Cancr*, as we haue sayd before. Nowe shall you heare howe fortune sought the reuenge of these poore wretches. Therfore as their keepers went aland, and few remained in the Carauell, they perceiuing occasion ministred whereby they myght recouer their libertie, sodainly snatched by our mens weapons, and slue sixe of them which yet remained in the Carauell, whyle the residue leaped into the sea. And by this meanes the Barbarians possessed the Carauell whiche they had soone learned to rule, and thus returned to their owne countreys. But they sayled first to the nexte Ilande, where they burnt the Carauell, and carped away the weapons with them. From hence they conueyed them selues to their owne countreys with the Canoas of this Iland. Here in lyke manner they priuily assailed them that were left with the byggantine, and slue many of them also: The residue that escaped, fledde to the byggantine, where they bewayled theyr felowes deathes, and counted theyr owne escape a victorie. On the shore not farre from the place where they suffered this misfortune, there is a tree, in the toppe whereof they set vp a crosse, and graued this inscription in the barke of the

Many Ilands  
betwene Cuba  
and the fyne  
lande.

Sanctiago the  
chiefe citie of  
Cuba.

The Barbari-  
ans slep the  
Spaniards  
with theyr  
own weapons

the tree, *Vannus Aldarieci*. There is a ryuer named *Darien*, on the banke whereof standeth the chiefe citie of the supposed continent. The gouernour therefore hauynge intelligence heereof, sent with all speede two shippes of warre well furnished, to the ayde of them that were left: but they were wyse to late. Yet folowing the viewe of the crosse, they came to the shore, and red the letters grauen on the tree, but durst not attempt fortune. Thus with all theyr hardie souldiers departynge from hence with dispayre, they sayled to the nexte Ilande, out of the whiche they carped away by violence fyue hundred men and women, supposynge lyke wyse that they myght lawfully so doe, bycause they were Idolaters and circumcised: But the lyke chaunce happened vnto them when they landed at *Fernandina*. For the Barbarians, espynge oportunitie, set vpon the Spaniards in one of the shippes with theyr owne weapons, and slue theyr keepers: the residue that escaped, castynge them selues into the sea, swamme to the next Carauell, and with theyr felowes assailed the Carauell that was taken from them. This conflict was so sharpe, that for the space of foure houres, it was doubtfull whether parte should obteyne the victorie. The Barbarians both men and women fought very fiercely, aswell to recouer their libertie, as also to holde fast the praye which they had gotten: But in fine, the Spaniards had the vpper hande, by reason they were more experte in handlynge of theyr weapons, & rulyng of their Carauell. The Barbarians beyng thus ouercome, leapt into the sea, but the Spaniards tooke them agayne with the shyppe boates. About a hundred of the Barbarians perished, being partly drowned, and partely slayne with the swoorde, and but fewe of the Spaniards. These thinges thus pacified, the residue of the Barbarians were carped to the towne of *Sanctiago*, and condemned to labour in the golde mynes. Shortly after they made out a newe viage to another of the Ilandes, which lye there about so thicke, that they commonly call the number of them *Archipelagus*, as they in our sea of *Ionicum* are called *Symplegades*. Here our men were cruelly handled, and as many of them as came a lande eyther slayne or wounded. This Ilande they named *Florida*, bycause they arryued there on Easter day, whiche the Spaniards call the floppshynge day of the resurrection. They say

The chiefe citie  
of the supposed  
continent.

The Spaniards  
are slayne  
again with  
their owne  
weapons.

The Barbari-  
ans are slayne  
and put to  
flyght.

A multitude  
of Ilandes.  
*Archipelagus*.  
An other viage

xxvi. Ilandes  
about Hispani-  
ola & Cuba.Images of  
golde.Rasars of  
stone.Instruments  
and tooles.Ilandes lyke  
vnto the earth  
in Paradyse.An other vpage  
of ten Car-  
uels and fyue  
hundred men.Horses and  
mares.Fernando  
Cortezius.

also that in this tracte they sawe. xxvi. Ilandes, which *Colonus* had ouerpasse, and the same so to lye about *Hyspaniola* and *Cuba*, as though they warded them from the furie of the Ocean. In many of these they founde native golde, of lyke goodnesse to that which is founde in *Granatum*. Thynhabitauntes also weare many iewelless, and haue many Images of theyr domesticall goddes, made both of golde artificially wrought, and also of wood gylded. *Frauncis Cheregatus* brought one of theyr Idols with him, whereby may bee considered of what wytte and aptnesse they are. It is a marueylous thynge to see what maner of rasars they haue, made of certayne pelowe stones, cleare and transparent lyke vnto chystall, with these they shaue and carue, as though they were made of fyne Steele: When the edges are blunt with long exercyse, they sharpen them not with a whetstone, or powder, or any other stone, but temper them onely with water. They haue also a thousande kyndes of instrumentes or tooles, and such other thinges of fyne deuice, which were to long to rehearse. Let vs therefore returne from whence wee haue digressed, as to *Cozumella*, *Iucatana*, *Coluacana*, or *Oloa*, being all landes lately founde, and so ryche, fruitfull, and pleasaunt, that they may in maner bee compared to the earthly Paradyse. Therefore, after that it was knowne to our men of howe great moment these tractes were, the Spaniards which inhabited the Ilande of *Cuba*, *Annunsius* being the gouernour of the Ilande, furnished a new nauie of ten Carauelles, and fyue hundred raen, with two small brigantines, as it were in the steade of lpght hoysmen, or forerunners, whose ayde they myght vse as scoutes, to search the wayes for daunger of rockes and shalow sandes or shelles. They shipte also certayne horses, as fyue stoned horses, and. xxvi. mares, apt for the warres. For theyr generall gouernour and Admirall of the nauy, they elected *Fernando Cortezius*, who at thyme was y chief ruler of the cite of *Sanctiago*. For vnder Capitaynes, they appoynted *Alfons Portucareius*, *Francis Montegius*, *Alfons Auila*, *Aluerado Spatenze*, *Iohn Velasquen*, and *Diegus Ordassus*. They styll folowed the same wynde, from the last angle of *Cuba* toward the West. Assoone as *Francis Fernandes* of *Corduba*, and then *Iohn Grisalua* came within prospecte of the Ilands of *Sacrifices* (wherof wee haue made mention before) sodainly a tempest of

contrary

contrary wynde prohibited them to take lande, and droue them backwarde to *Cozumella*, lying on the East syde of *Iucatana*: The Ilande of this Ilande hath onely one hauen, named sainte Iohns porte, and hath in it onely fyre towne: also none other water then in welles and cisternes, bycause it lacketh ryuers and sprynges by reason it is playne, conteynyng onely. xlv. myles in circuite. At the commyng of our men, thynhabitauntes fledde to the thicke woods, and forooke theyr towne for feare: Our men entred into theyr houses, where they founde plentie of vittayles, and many ornamentes parteynyng to the furnyshyng of theyr houses, as hanginges and carpettes of dyuers colours, sheetes also of gossampine cotton (whiche they call *Amaccas*) and muche apparell. They haue furthermore innumerable bookes, of the which with many other thinges sent to our newe Emperour, wee will speake more largely heereafter. The souldiers wandered about the Ilande, and viewed all thinges diligently, keepyng them selues styll in battayle raye, least they myght bee sodainly inuaded. They founde but a fewe of thynhabitauntes, and onely one woman in theyr company. By thinterpretours of *Cuba*, and other which the Spaniards tooke first from *Iucatana*, they perswaded the woman to call the kynges that were absent. They came gladly, and made a league of friendship with our men, whereby they were restored to theyr houses, and a great parte of their stuffe. They are circumsised Idolatours, and sacrifice chyldren of both kyndes to their *Zemes*, which are the Images of their familiar and domesticall spirites, whiche they honour as goddes. When I enquired of *Alaminus* the pilot, also of *Francis Montegius*, and *Portucareius*, from whence they had the chyldren they offered in sacrifice: they answered, that they bought them in the Ilandes thereabout, by exchaunge for golde and other of their trashycke: For in all this so large a space of land, the deuillye anxietie for the desyre of wicked money, hath not yet oppressed thynhabitauntes. They say the same also of the Ilandes lately founde, whereof two are named *Destam* and *Sestam*, whose inhabitants go naked, and for scarcenesse of chyldren, sacrifice dogges, which they nouryshe aswell for that purpose, as also to eate, as wee doe *Cummies*: these dogges are dumme, & can not barke, hauing snoutes lyke vnto foxes. Suche as they destinate

The Ilande of  
Cozumella.Carpettes and  
sheetes.  
Innumerable  
bookes.Circumsised  
Idolaters.They Sacrifice  
Chyldren.The Ilandes  
of Destam and  
Sestam.The sacrifice of  
dogges.

They are soone  
perswaded to  
our religion.

This people  
leaving one  
kynde of Ido-  
latry be taught  
another.

An other viage

to eate, they gelde while they are whelpes, whereby they were very fat in the space of foure monethes. They reserue all the bytches for increase, and but fewe dogges. Our men diswaded them from these superstitions, declaring howe they were abhominable, and detested of God. They were soone perswaded, and despyed a lawe which they myght folowe. Our men therfore declared vnto them, that there was onely one God, which made heauen and earth, the giuer of all good thinges, beyng of one incomprehensyble substance, vnder triplicitie of person. As soone as they heard these wordes, they broke their *Zemes*, and pared, scraped, and washed the pauements and walles of their temples. Our men gaue them a paynted picture of the blessed virgine, which they placed reuerently in their temple, & about it a crosse, to be honoured in the remembraunce of God and man, and the saluation of mankynde. They erected also an other great crosse of wood in the toppe of the temple, whither they oftentimes resorte togeather to honour the Image of the virgine. Thinhabitauntes signified by thinterpretours, that in the Ilande of *Iucatana*, not farre from them, there were seuen Christians captiues, which in tyme past were byuen thither by tempest. The Ilande of *Cozumella*, is onely fyue myles distant from *Iucatana*. The gouernour *Cortezus* being aduertised hereof, furnished two Carauels with fiftie men, willing them incōtinent to direct their viage thither, & to make search for these mē. They tooke w̄ them iii. interpreters of *Cozumella* (whose lāguage agreeth w̄ theirs) with letters to the Christians if any might be founde. He further declared vnto them, howe goodly a matter they should byng to passe, if they coulde byng away any of them: For hee no wayes doubted but that by their information, he should be fully certified of the commodities of all those tractes, & the maners of thinhabitauntes. Thus they departed, with commaundement to returne within the space of six dayes. But when they had remayned there now. viii. dayes, & heard no word of their *Cozumellane* interpreters, whom they had sent alande with the message and letters, our men returned to *Cozumella* without them, suspectyng that they were either slaine, or deteyned. And where as the whole nauie was now determined to depart from *Cozumella*, but that they were hyndered by contrary wynde, they sodeinly espied towarde the

the west a Canoa commyng from *Iucatana*, and in it one of the Christian captiues (named *Hieronimus Aquillaris*) who had lyued seuen yeeres in that Ilande: With what ioye they embraced the one the other, the chaunce may declare. They were no lesse desirous to heare, then he to tell of the mysfortune which befell to him and his companions. And heere it shall not bee greatly from my purpose, briefly to rehearse howe the thing chaunced. In my *Decades* I haue made mention of a certayne noble man named *Valdinia*, whom the Spaniards which inhabited *Darien* in the supposed continent of the gulf of *Vraba*, sent to the Ilande of *Hispaniola* to *Colonus* the Admirall and viceroy, with the residue of the Senate and counsaile there (to whom parteyneth the redresse and oueryng of all thinges in these new landes) to signifie vnto them in what extreme necessitie and penurie they lyued. Unhappy *Valdinia* therefore, takyng this matter in hande in an euill houre, was with a sodeine and violent whirlewynde byuen vpon certayne quicksand, in the prospecte of the Ilande of *Iamaica*, lying on the South syde of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*. These blynde and swallowyng sandes, the Spaniards call *byppers*, and that by good reason, because in them many shyppes are entangled, as the *Lisertes* are implicate in the tayles of the *byppers*. While the Carauell thus wresteled with the water, it was so burst in sunder, that *Valdinia* with thirtie of his felowes could scarcely with much difficultie discende into the shyp boate: where without oyes, and without sayles, they were carped away by the violence of the water. For (as we haue sayd before in our *Decades*) the seas doe runne there continually with a violent course toward the West. They wandered thus, xiii. dayes, not knowing whither they went, nor yet fyndyng any thing to eate. Famine consumed seuen of them, which were cast into the sea to feede the fshes. The residue lykewyse, in maner consumed by famyne, and fallyng from one calamitie into an other, were byuen to *Iucatana*, and fell into the handes of a cruell kyng, who sūe *Valdinia* the gouernour, with certayne of his felowes: and when he had fyrst sacrificed them to his *Zemes*, shortly after hee ate them, with his friendes of that conspiracie. For they eate onely their enemies & straungers, & doe otherwise absteyne from mans flethe. In this meane tyme, while *Hieronimus Aquillaris*,

*Aquillaris*, wherres captiue in the Ilande of *Iucatana*.

*Valdinia*.

The shipwreck of *Valdinia*.

The quicke sandes called *byppers*.

The course of the sea toward the West.

*Valdinia* is sacrificed to *Idoles*.

How *Aquillaris* escaped.



with fyre of his felowes, were referued to be sacrificed the thyrde day, they brake theyr bandes, escaped the handes of that cruell Tyrant, and fledde to an other kyng beyng his enemy, who receyued them, yet onely as bondmen. It is a straunge thyng to heare of the moother of this *Aquillaris*: For as soone as shee hearde that her sonne was fallen into the handes of the nations that eate mans fleshe, shee fell madde incontinent: so that whensoever after, shee sawe any meate roastyng at the fyre, or onely redy spytte to laye to the fyre, shee ceassed not to crye out in this maner, O mee most wretched moother, be- holde the members of my sonne. But to returne to our purpose. When *Aquillaris* had now receyued the gouernours letter, sent by the Cozumellane messengers, hee declared to the kyng his maister (whose name was *Taxmarus*) what was theyr errande thither, and wherefore they were sent: wylng in the meane tyme many large discourses, in exprestyng the great power and magnificence of theyr kyng, who had of late arryued in those coastes: also of theyr humanitie and gentlenesse towardes theyr friendes and such as submitted them selues to them, & againe their rigour and fiercenesse agaynst suche as stubberly epyther contemned them, or denyed their requestes. With these wordes he brought *Taxmarus* into such feare, that the maister was now fayne to desyre his seruauant so to handle the matter, that they myght quietly enter into his dominion as his friendes, and not as his enemies. *Aquillaris* promised in their behalfe y they should not onely come in peace, but also to ayde him against his enemies if neede should so require. Therupon he dismissed *Aquillaris*, & with him thre of his familiers and companions. Thus they sayled togeather from Cozumella to Iucatana, to the ryuer which they had founde before in the fyrst viage thither, by the gouernance of *Alaminus* the pilot. They founde the mouth of the ryuer stopped with sand, as we reade of the ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypte, when the wyndes (called *Etesi*) blow in summer, and especially in the canicular dayes. Therefore where as they could not enter into the ryuer with the biggest vesselles (although it be otherwyle apte to receyue great shypes) the gouernour caused two hundred men to bee set alande with the Brigantines and shyppe boates, wyllyng *Aquillaris* to offer peace to thynhabitauntes. They de-

maunded

maunded what our men requyred. *Aquillaris* answered, vittayles. There was a longe space of lande by the syde of the towne, whyther they wylled them to resort, promysyng to bryng them vittayles thither the day folowynge. Our men went, and they came, accordyng to theyr promysse, and brought with them eyght of theyr Henncs, beyng as bygge as Peacockes, of brownysh colour, and not inferiour to Peacockes in pleasaunt tast. They brought also as muche bread made of *Maizium* (whiche is a grayne not muche vnylike unto panyke) as woulde scarcely serue tenne hungry men, and herewith desyred them to depart. But when they perceyued that our men made no hast away, immediately there came a great company of armed men towardes them, demaundyng what they had to do thus to wander in other mens landes. Our men made answere by *Aquillaris*, that they desyred peace, vittayles, and golde, for exchange of other thynges. They answered againe, that they woulde nother peace nor warre with them, but threathened them to auoyde the land, except they would be destroyed euery man. Our men sayd that they woulde not depart, without sufficient vittayles to mayntayne their souldyers. They appoynted the day folowynge to bryng them more vittayles, but they broke promise: Yet perceyuing the seconde day that our men were encamped on the lande, and had reposed there that nyght, they brought them as much more vittayles, and commaunded them in the name of theyr kyng to departe. Our men sayde that they were desyrous to see the towne, and to haue yet more store of vittayles. The Barbarians denyed theyr request, and therewith departed, whisperyng and mutterynge among them selues. In the meane tyme our men were still so oppressed with hunger, that they were enforced to seeke for meate. The gouernour therefore sent his vnder captaynes to lande with a hundred and fiftie men. As they went disperfed in dyuers companyes about the villages of the countrey, the Barbarians met with one of theyr bandes, and put them to great distresse: But when theyr felowes, being not farre from them, hearde the noyse of theyr alarome, they came with al possible haste to theyr rescue. The gouernour on the other syde, placing his ordinaunce in the bygantines & shyppe boates, approached to the shore, with the

Kyng *Taxmarus*.

The mouth of a ryuer stopped with sande.

Turky Hens.

A conflicte.

the residue of his souldiers. The Barbarians lykelypse, beyng redy furnyshed to the battayle, came runnyng to the sea syde, to disturbe them, that they shoulde not come alande, and with theyr arrowes wounded many a farre of vnprepared. The gouernoure discharged about .xx. peeces of ordinaunce agaynst them: With the slaughter and terrible thunder wherof, and with the flame of the fyre, and smell of the brimstone, they were so astonied, and put to such feare, that they fled and disparclled lyke wyld beastes: whom our men pursuing, entred into the towne, which thynhabtantes forsoke in maner for feare of their owne men, who they sawe so dismaide. On the banke of this ryuer there is a towne of such portentous biggnes as I dare not speake, but *Alanimus* the pilot, sayth that it containeth in circuite syue hundred myles, and that it consisteth of .xxv. thousande houses: Some make it somewhat lesse, but they all agree that it is exceedyng great and notable. The houses are diuided with gardens, and are buylded of lime and stone, very artificiall, and of cunynge woorkemanship. To theyr haules, chambers, parlors, or other places of habitation, they ascend by tenne or twelue stayres, and haue certayne spaces betwene euery house: so that it is not lawfull for any to lade his neyghbours wales with rafters or beames. Theyr houses are separate one from an other by the space of thre houses, and are for the most parte couered with reede and thatche, and many also with slate or other stone. The Barbarians them selues confessed that they were that day fourtie thousande men at the battayle, which were vanquished of a fewe, by reason of the newe and vnknowne kynde of seyghth with gunnes and hoyses. For the gouernour had vnbarcked .xvi. hoyses, which were also at the battayle, and so fyerce ly assailed the Barbarians on the backehalfe, that they brake theyr array, and scattered them as it had ben flockes of sheepe, ouerthrowing, wounding, & killing them on euery syde: Which thing the seely wretches so imputed to a miracle, that they had not y power to occupie their weapones. For whereas before they had neuer seene any hoyses, they thought that y man on horsebacke and the horse had ben all one beaste, as the antiquitie dyd fable of the monster *Centaurus*. Our men possessed the towne .xxii. dayes, where they made good cheare vnder couert, whyle

The Barbarians are put to flight.

The great towne of Potanchana or Victoria. A towne of xxv. thousande houses.

Gunnes and hoyses.

The men and the horse, thought to be one beaste.

whyle the owners of the houses lay vnder the tymment, and durst not assaile our men, who had placed them selues in the stroughest part of the towne, where some kept contynual watch (lest the Barbarians shoulde sodenly inuade them) whyle other gaue them selues to rest and sleepe. The inhabitauntes call this towne *Potanchana*: but our men for the victorie which they obteyned here, named it *Victoria*. It is a maruelous thyng to consider, the greatnesse, magnificence, & finenesse of the building of certayne palaces they haue in the countrey, to the which they resort somtymes for theyr solace and pastyme. These are curiously builded with many pleasaunt diuises, as galleries, solars, turrets, portals, gutters, with chambers boorded after the maner of our waynescot, and well floored. Foure of our Spaniards went into one of them, of such greatnesse, that they wandred in the same for the space of foure houres before they coulde fynde the way out. At the length by the interpretours, and certayne captiues, our men sent for the kyng, and suche rulers as were next vnder hym in authoritie, wyllyng them to submyt them selues, and to come into the towne vnarmed: geuyng the messengers further in commaundement, to certifie them that in theyr so doyng, they woulde commune with them as concerning condicions of peace, and restore them theyr towne. They came gladly, and entred euery man into his owne house, vpon condition, that they shoulde euer thereafter absteyne from such ceremonies and horrible sacrifices of mans fleshe, to deuils, the mortal enemies to mankind, whose Images they honoured, & to direct the eyes of theyr myndes to Christ our God, y maker of heauen and earth, who was bozne into this worlde of a virgin, and suffered death on the crosse for the redemption of mankind, and finally to proteste them selues subiectes to the Christian kyng of Spayne. They promised both, and were instructed as farre as the shortnesse of tyme woulde permit. Beyng thus restored, they recompensed our men with many rewarde, supposyng suche men to be sent from heauen, whiche beyng so fewe in number, durst attempt battayle agaynst so great a multitude. They gaue our men also certayne golde, and twentie slaues. Departyng therfore from hence, and coasting styll along by the same shoze, they came agayne to the gulse whiche *Alanimus* the pilot

Palaces of maruelous bygnes and well buylded.

They receyue our religion.

A towne of a thousand and foure hundred houses.

pilot founde before vnder *Grisalua*. This they named *Bian Sancti Iohannis*, that is, *Saint Johns gulf*, for *Bian* in the Spanishe tongue signifieth a gulf. Heere the inhabitantes resorted to them peaceably. About a myle from the shore, was a towne of a thousand and foure hundred houses situate vpon a hill. They proffered our men halfe the towne, if they would dwel with them for euer. This perhaps they dyd the rather, eyther fearyng the example of the inhabitantes of *Potanchana*, the same whereof myght haue come to theyr eares, or els hoppyng that vnder the shadowe of suche valiaunt men, they myght obteyne ayde and succour agaynst theyr enemies and borderers. For (as I haue sayde before) they destroy one an other with contynuall warre, for the desire to enlarge theyr dominions. Our men refused perpetuall habitation, and accepted theyr frendly proffer for a tyme. As they came alande, the people folowed them on euery syde with bowes in theyr handes, whiche they helde ouer our mens heades, to defend them from the rayne, as though they had walked in a continuall arbour. Heere they encamped. And lest the residue left in the shypps shoulde in the meane tyme ware slouthfull with Idleness, the gouernour gaue commaundement to *Alaminus* the pilot, and *Francis Montegius*, to searche the West partes of that land, while he releued the weered souldiers, and healed such as were wounded. To them that went forward on this biage, he assigned two brigantines with fyfte men. Vnto this gulf, the course of the water was gentle enough and moderate: but when they had sailed a litle further toward the West, they founde the sea running with so swift a course, as if it were a great riuer falling from the toppes of hygh mountaynes, insomuch that in a short space of tyme it caried them fiftie myles from theyr felowes. When they were now entred into this violent streame of water, they saw on their left hande a large plaine sea, which met with the course of the other waters falling from the West. And lyke as two great riuers that runne contrarpye waies, make a vehement conflict where they meete: so seemed the waters comming from the South, to resyst these waters, as enemies that had entred into the ryght or possession of an other. On the contrary part, they sawe the lande reachyng farre both on the left hande and on the ryght. In this stryfe betweene

Another voyage of two brigantines and fyfte men.

Where the sea runneth swift from the East to the West.

A conflict betweene the waters comming from the West and from the South.

twene the waters, they were so tossed on both sydes, and entangled with whirleyoles, that they long wrestled without hope of lyfe. At the length, with muche difficultie turnyng the stemmes or forpartes of theyr shyppes agaynst the streame from whence they came, and labouryng all that they myght with theyr oares and sayles, they coulde scarcely ouercome the rage of the water, insomuche that where as they thought that they had in one nyght sayled two myles, they founde that they were dyuen backe foure myles: Yet at the length with gods helpe, they ouercame this daungerous constrycte. They spent xii. dayes in this litle space of sea: And when they were now returned to theyr felowes, declared vnto them that that ende was the lande of *Coluacana*, whiche they adiudged to be part of the supposed continent. The lande whiche they sawe a farre off before theyr face, they suppose eyther to be annexed to our continent, or to be ioyned to the large North regions called *Baccalaos*, whereof we haue made mention in our *Decades*, in the voyage of *Sebastian Cabote*. This matter is yet doubtfull: but we trust it shall once be better knowen. While *Alaminus* and *Montegius* searched these secretes, the kyng of the prouince (whose name was *Multoxumam*) sent our men, by one of his chiefe officers (beyng also his Lieutenannt of the sayde towne) many ryche and goodly presentes of golde, syluer, and precious stones, set and wrought after a marueylous straunge deuice, and with no lesse cunnynge woorkemanshype. Heere they determined to sende messengers to our newe Emperour, to knowe his pleasure, that they myght in this prouince plant a newe colonie or habitation: and this dyd they without the aduise of *Diegus Velasquez* the gouernour of the Island of *Cuba*, or *Fernandina*, who fyrst sent them forth, with commaundement to retorne agayne after they had searched these regions, and obtayned plenty of golde. While they consulted herof, they were of diuers opinions: but the most part alleaged that in this case it was not requisite to make the gouernour of theyr counsaile, forasmuch as y matter shoulde be referred to a higher Iudge, as to the king of Spaine hym self. When they were thus agreed, they receyued vittayles of the gentle king of the prouince, and assigned the place of the colonie twelue myles from the sayde towne, in a fruitfull & hollesome soile.

A dangerous and paynfull voyage.

The lande of Coluacana.

The lande of Baccalaos or Baccalarum.

Such presentes of golde and precious stones.

A newe colonie.

For

This Cortesius  
hath written a  
booke of these  
thynges.

They weare  
rpynges and  
plates at theyr  
lippes.

The dyuers  
phantasies of  
men.

Syluer.

For theyr generall gouernour, they elected *Cortesius* the gouernour of the nauie, agaynst his wyll as some saye. For other magistrates to gouerne the citie which they intended to builde, he chose *Portuacarius* and *Montegius*, of whom we haue made mention before: They chose also certayne messengers to sende to the kyng by the conduction of *Alaminus* the pilot: Furthermore, foure of the princes of this prouince, offered them selues wyllingly to go with our men into Spayne, to thintent to see our landes, and that kyng whole power is so great, and whose auctoritie reacheth so farre: They brought lykewyse two women with them, whiche serued and obeyed them in all thinges, after the maner of their countrey. The people of this nation is of browne or yelowyshe colour. Both the men and the women haue pendauntes of gold & pretious stones hanging at their eares: The men also boze theyr neather lippes full of holes, from the vppermost part of the lippe, euen vnto the neathermost part of the gumme. At these they hang certayne rpynges, and plates of golde and syluer, fastned to a smal and thynne plate, lying within betwene the lip & the gumme. At the biggest hole in the middell of the lippe, there hangeth a rounde plate of syluer, as bryde as the coyne called a *Carolynne*, & as thicke as a mans finger. I do not remember that euer I sawe any thyng that seemed more fylchy in myne eye: Yet do they thynke that there is nothyng more comly vnder the circle of the moone, whereby we may see howe vainely mankynde wandereth in his owne blyndnesse. The *Ethiopian* thincketh the blacke colour to be fayrer then the white, and the white man thinketh otherwise. They that are powled, thynke that more decent then to weare a bushe, and they that weare beardes, iudge it a deformitie to be shauen. As appetite therfore moueth, and not as reason perswadeth, men runne after vanities, and euery prouince is ruled by theyr owne sense, as writeth saint *Jerome*. From whence they haue their gold, we haue spoken sufficiently before. But as our men marcheled where they had theyr syluer, they shewed them certayne high mountaynes, which are continually couered w<sup>th</sup> snowe, saying that at certayne times of the yere the only toppes are scene bare, because the snow is there molten, by reason of y<sup>e</sup> thicke and warme cloudes. The plaines therfore, of milde, softe, & pleasaunt mountaynes,

talnes, seeme to bring forth golde, and the rough craggie mountaynes with theyr colde valleyes, are the places where syluer is engendred. They haue also Laton, whereof they make such Hales and Hammers as are vled in the warres, dygging Mattocks also, and Spades: for they haue neyther Iron nor Steele. But let vs nowe speake of the presentes sent into Spayne to the kyng: and fyrst of the bookes. These procuratours therfore of the newe colonie of the prouince of *Coluacana*, among other their presentes, brought also a great number of bookes, the leaues whereof are made of the inner ryndes or barks of trees, thinner then eyther that of the Elme or of y<sup>e</sup> Salowe: these they lineere or anoynt with the pitch of molten *Bitumen*, and whyle they be soft, extend them to what fourme them lysteth: When they bee cold and harde, they rubbe them ouer with a certayne playster. It is to be thought, that they beate the playster into fyne flour, and so temperyng it with some byndyng moysture, to make a crust therewith vppon the leaues, whereon they wyte with anye sharpe instrument, and blot the same agayne with a sponge or some suche other thyng, as marchaunt men and noble mens stewards are accustomed to do with their wytyng tables made of the woodde of figge trees. The leaues of theyr bookes are not set in order after the maner of ours, but are extended many cubittes in length. The matters whiche they wyte, are coneyned in square tables, not lose, but so bound together with the tough & flexible clay called *Bitumen*, that they seeme lyke woooden tables whiche had been vnder the handes of cumynyng Bookbynders. Which way so euer the booke lieth open, there are two leaues scene, and two sydes wytten, with as many lying vnder them, except the booke be vnfolded in length. For vnder one leafe there are many leaues toynd together. The fourmes of theyr letters are nothyng lyke vnto ours, but are muche more crooked and entangled, lyke vnto fysshhookes, knottes, snares, starres, syles, dyle, and suche other, muche lyke vnto the *Egyptian* letters, and wytten in lines lyke vnto ours. Heere and there betweene the lines, are pictured the shapen of men, and diuers beastes, and especialy the Images of kynges, and other noble men: Whereby it is to be thought, that in such bookes, the factes of theyr kinges are conteyned, as we see the lyke among vs, how our printers expresse the summe

Note where  
golde and syl  
uer are engend  
red.

I thinke this  
Laton to be  
some kynde of  
pure Copper,  
or els Copper  
that holdeth  
golde. For La  
ton is an artifi  
cial metall, and  
hath no natu  
ral myne.  
Theyr bookes.

Theyr letters.

What is con  
teyned in theyr  
bookes.

of

of histories in pictures, that men may thereby be the more assured to buye suche bookes. The coveringes of theyr bookes are also artificially wrought, and paynted. When they are shut, they seeme to differ nothing from ours in forme. In these bookes are furthermore comprehended theyr lawes, ryces of ceremonies and sacrifices, annotations of Astronomie, accomptes, computations of tymes, with the maner of graffynge, sowynge, and other thynges parteynyng to husbandry. They begyn the yeere from the goynge downe of the seauen starres, called *Vergilia*, or *Pleiades*, and count theyr monethes accordyng to the mones. They name a moneth, *Tona*, of the Moone, for in theyr language they call the Moone *Tona*. They reckon the dayes by the sonnes: therefore as many dayes as they name, they saye, so many sonnes, the Sonne in theyr tongue, is called *Tonatico*. They distribute the yeere (without any reason why) into twentie monethes, and the moneth into as many dayes. The temples whiche they frequent, they adourne with golden hangynges, and other ornaments of golde and syluer, with precious stones intermyxt. At the spyng of the day, they perfume theyr temples with frankensence, and make theyr prayers before they take in hand any other busynesse. But oh horrible crueltie: for the inhabitantes of al these tractes also, do sacrifice chyldren to their Idoles, in lyke maner as we haue sayde before. At suche tyme as the seedes lye in the ground, and when the corne begynneth to shewe forth the eare, they destinate to theyr *Zemes* suche bondmen as they haue bought, or such captiues as they haue taken in the warres, which they sacrifice after that they haue made them great cheare, and decked them in precious apparell. Also before they sacrifice these poore wretches, they leade them about the towne, whyle al the people salute them humbly and reuerently, affirmyng that in short space they shalbe receyued into the company of the gods. They honour theyr *Zemes*, with an other sharpe kynde of deuotion: for they let them selues blood, eyther in the tongue, lips, eares, legges, thyghes, or byest, which they take in theyr handes, and hurle it by towards heauen, so that with the fall thereof the pauement of the temple is all spattered with blood, whereby they thynke that theyr goddes are well pleased. From the newe colonie (called *Villa Rica*) niene

myles

Temples  
richely adour-  
ned,

Diaper.

They sacrifice  
chyldren and  
captiues.

in wong way  
to heauen.

Bloody gods.

Villa Rica.

miles distant, there is a towne of .xv. thousande houses, whiche the inhabitants call *Cemobal*, but our men named it *Siulla*. The kyng of this towne had syue men which he reserued to be sacrificed, whom when our men would haue deliuered, the kyng made humble request to them, saying that if they tooke away such men as hee had consecrated to bee offered to the goddes, they should bring vnto destruction to him and all his kyngdome: For if our sacrifices (sayde hee) doe cease, our *Zemes* will take such displeasure with vs, that they will suffer our corne, grasse, and fruites, to bee consumed of wormes, scorched with drought, destroyed with floodes, or blasted with lychtning. Our men perceyving his earnestnesse herein, thought it best to choose the least euill, perceyving that it was yet no tyme to disquiet theyr myndes, and therefore suffered them to exercise their accustomed ceremonies. And although theyr priestes promise them immortall glorie, eternall felicitie, and perpetuall conuersation with the goddes after the storny dayes of this lyfe, yet doe they with heauy countenaunces giue care to their promises, and had rather bee let at libertie. Their priestes are named *Quines*, in the plurall number, and *Quin* in the singular: they leade a pure and chaste lyfe, and are honoured of the people with feare and reuerence. They make faggottes of the bones of their enemies which they haue taken in the warres, and hang by the same at the feete of theyr *Zemes*, as tokens of the victories obteyned by their fauour. To these they adde certayne titles and superscriptions, as testimonies of the same. This is straunge and woorthy to be noted, that when their chyldren are a yeere olde, the priestes in their temples with deuout ceremonies and murmuring woordes, powre water in forme of a crosse vpon their heades with a cruet, whereby they seeme to baptise them: Neyther doe they, as the Jewes and Turkes, thinke their temples polluted if any of a straunge religion bee present at their sacrifices and other solemnities. We haue now spoken sufficiently of theyr bookes, temples, and superstitions: Let vs now therefore come to the other presentes whiche were brought to the kyng. Among these, there were two broad and rounde plates (whiche some haue named the Images of the Sunne and Moone) the one of syluer, and the other of golde,

*Siulla Nova.*

The force of an  
olderour.

Them priestes  
spue chaste.

Faggottes of  
bones.

A figure of  
baptisme.

The presentes  
sent into  
Spain to the  
kyng.  
Two Images  
of golde and  
siluer.



in largenesse and roundnesse muche lyke to the stones of hande-  
 mpyles: yet but thynne, and in maner both of one circumference,  
 that is. xxviii. spannes in circuite. That of golde is of the  
 weyght of thre thousande and viii. hundred Castellanes, where  
 as we haue sayd before þ a Castellane is a coyne of golde which  
 weygheth more then a Ducate by a trient, that is, the thyrde  
 parte of a pounce. In the center of this, was the Image of a  
 kyng of halfe a cubite long, sytting in a trone, and apparel-  
 led to the knee lyke vnto a mawmet, with suche countenance  
 as our paynters are wont to paynte fayries or sprites: about  
 the Image, were the shapen of trees and floures, so that it  
 seemed to sitte as though it had been in a felde. The other  
 of syluer, was made to the same similitude, beyng also in maner  
 of the same weyght, and both of pure mettall. They brought  
 lykewyse certayne graynes of rude golde (that is, suche as  
 was neuer molten) about the bygnesse of Fyches, or the  
 pulle called Linels, in token of plentie of natie golde: Also  
 two cheynes of golde, whereof the one conteyned. viii. lynkes,  
 in the which were set two hundred, threescore, and two sayre and  
 cleare redde stones, and yet no rubies, furthermore a hundred  
 fourescore and thre greene stones, and yet no emerodes: Ne-  
 uerthelesse, these are in lyke estimation with them, as the other  
 are with vs. At the edge of this cheyne, there hang. xxvii. gol-  
 den belles, haung betwene euery of them foure iewels of pre-  
 cious stones inclosed in golde, at euery of the which in lyke ma-  
 ner hang certayne spangles of golde. The other cheyne con-  
 steth onely of foure golden lynkes, beset rounde about with a  
 hundred and two redde stones, and a hundred threescore & twelue  
 greene stones, with. xvi. golden belles, curiously wrought and  
 placed in comely order. In the very myddest of the cheyne, are  
 ten great precious stones inclosed in gold, at the which also hang  
 a hundred golden pendants, of cunnyng woorkemanshype.  
 They brought furthermore twelue paire of lether buskynnes  
 of diuers colours, some imbrodered with golde, and some  
 with syluer, with plates and iewels of golde and precious stones  
 inclosed, and at euery of them certayne golden belles: Also cer-  
 tayne myters, beset with precious stones of diuers colours, a-  
 mong the whiche some are blew lyke vnto Saphires. Of  
 crestes

Two cheynes  
 of golde mar-  
 uelously beset  
 with precious  
 stones and  
 iewelles.

Buskyns.

Myters.

crestes, girdles, and fannes made of feathers, I wot not what I  
 should say: but surely, if euer the wyttes and inuentions of men  
 haue deserued honour or commendation in suche artes, these  
 seeme most woorthy to bee had in admiration. I doe not mar-  
 uelle at golde and precious stones, but am in maner astonysed  
 to see the woorkemanshype excell the substance: For I haue  
 with woonderyng eyes behelde a thousande fourmes and simili-  
 tudes, of the whiche I am not able to wyte, and in my iudge-  
 ment I neuer sawe any thyng whose beautie myght so allure  
 the eyes of men. As they marueyled at the naturall beautie of  
 the feathers of our peacokes and pheasantes, so dyd we no lesse  
 marueyle at the artificiall beautie of suche thynges as they make  
 of fetters and quilles, impaled with golde: For I sawe in many  
 of the wyorkes, all maner of natie colours, euen in the quilles,  
 whereof they make such instrumentes. They brought also two  
 helmettes, garnished with precious stones of a whittish blew  
 colour: One of these is edged with belles and plates of golde,  
 and vnder euery bell two knobbes of golde: the other, besyde  
 the stones wherewith it is couered, is lykewyse edged with. xxi.  
 golden belles and knobbes, and hath on the crest a greene bird,  
 with the feets, byll, and eyes, of golde: Also foure speares, much  
 lyke vnto troute speares, or peece speares, the wood whereof is  
 all couered with quilles of diuers colours, marueylously wea-  
 thed with golden wyers, and plates intermyxt: Euery of these  
 speares haue thre pikes, whose edges or teeth are all of precious  
 stones, made fast with wyers of golde. Of lyke woorkemanshype  
 they brought a great scepter, beset with precious stones & belles  
 of golde: also a brafet of golde, and shooes made of a hartes  
 skynne, sowd and imbrodered with golden wyers, with a whi-  
 sole beneath: Furthermore a glasse of a bygght blew stone, and  
 an other of white, both enclosed in golde: Lykewyse a precious  
 stone, of the kynde of them that are called Sphinges, inclosed in  
 gold: furthermore the head of a great Linc, two great belles,  
 two Duckes, the shapen of diuers other birds, fowles, and fyshes,  
 and all of maslie golde: Furthermore. xxi. rounde and square  
 targettes, shieldes, and buckelers of golde, and fyue of syluer: Al-  
 so a triple crowne of plates and wyers of golde, marueylously  
 weathred with quilles and feathers of diuers colours, haung

How can we  
 then call them  
 brastly or Bar-  
 barous?

If they had  
 changed their  
 golde for our  
 Iron. they had  
 not so soone  
 been subdued.

Quilles.

Helmetts.

A byrd.

Speares.

A scepter.

A brafet.

Shooes.

Glasse.

Byrds, fowles,  
 and fyshes, of  
 golde.  
 A crowne of  
 golde.

Of the west Indies

on the front a plate of golde, on the which is grauen the Image of the Idole *Zemes*. About this Image, hang foure other plates, lyke crosse of golde, in the which are grauen the heades of diuers beastes, as Lions, Tigers, Woolues, and suche other. They brought also the similitudes of certayne beastes, made some of rodde or twygges, and some of woodde, with the beastes owne skynnes thereon, and garnished with collers of laton belles: Lykewyse diuers sheetes, weaved of gossampyne cotton of sundry colours, whereof two are ryche lynged with golde and precious stones, and thre other with quilles and feathers intermyrte with gossampine cotton of sundry colours, and checkerred lyke the panes of a chest boorde: Some are on the one side, of blacke, white, and redde colours, and on the other syde plaine, without any varietie: Other some are wrought in lyke maner with variable colours, with a wheele or circle of blacke in the myddest, intermyrte with shyning feathers, and sparkes of golde lyke starres: They brought also cloth of Arras or Verdure, of marueylous workemanshpype: Lykewyse a souldiers cloake, such as their princes weare in the warres, with certayne priuie coates of fence, and sundry tirements partepnyng to their heads, with also many such other thinges, more beautiful to the eye then ryche or precious, whereof to entreate particulerly, it should be more tedious then profytable. I let passe heere also to speake of many particuler nauigations, and of the trauailes and daungers which they susteyned in the same, with the monsters and secretes of nature they sawe, which are all conteyned in the registers of our Senate of the affayres of India, out of the which I haue selected these fewe annotations, such as seemed to mee most meete to bee published. Notwithstanding these ryche and goodly presentes, yet were they that brought them, and also *Corisus* the gouernour of the nauie, and authour of erecting their newe colonie in those remote regions, adiudged by the Senate to haue done agaynst ryght and equitie, in that they attempted the same without the aduice of the gouernour of the Island of *Cuba*, who sent them forth by the kyngs auctoritie, whereas they dyd other thinges beside their commission, yea although they went to the kyng, not first knowing his pleasure whom the kyng had substitute his

Lieue-

Images of  
beastes.

Sheetes.

Cloth of Arras

A souldiers  
cloake.

Registers of  
the Affayres of  
India.

Chauethoritic  
of the Lieuten-  
nant.

Lieutenante in that Ilande: insomuch that by his procuratour, he acculed them before the Senate as fugitiue theeves and traytours. They on y other part alleaged, y they had done the kyng better seruice then he, & that they had shewed sufficient obedience, in appealyng to the kyng as the hygher Iudge. But the gouernour requyred by the vertue of his commission, & the kinges letters patents, y they myght be beheaded for their disobedience against him, whom they knewe to bee auctorized by the kyng. They agayne replied, that they had not offended the kyng, but rather deserved rewarde for their great daungers and trauailes. Both the reward and punishment were deferred, and a day appointed when both parties should be heard. Let vs nowe therefore come to the Spanyarden of *Dariena*, thynhabitours of the gulfe of *Vraba*, in the supposed continent. Wee haue sayde before, that *Dariena* is a ryuer runnyng towarde the West syde of the gulfe of *Vraba*: On the banke of this ryuer, the Spanyarden planted their first colonie or habitation, after they had vanquished kyng *Chemaccus*: this colonie they named *Santa Maria Antiqua*, by reason of a bowe which they made to the virgine *Marie* in the tyme of the battaile against *Chemaccus*. To these (as wee haue made mention in the ende of our Decades) was *Petrus Arias* sent with a thousand and two hundred men, at the request of *Vaschus Nunnez Balboa*, who was then the gouernour of *Dariena*, and the first that found and discovered the large South sea heretofore vnkowne. Wee haue also declared, how at the arriual of *Petrus Arias* the newe gouernour, hee diuided his armie into Centurions, that is, captaines ouer hundreds, whom hee sent forth dyuers wayes. What tragedies folowed heereof, I will absolue in fewe wordes, bycause all are horrible and vnpleasaunt: For since we synnyshed our Decades, there hath been none other then kyllyng, sleying, murderynge, and accusing. The kyng made *Vaschus* gouernour but durynge his pleasure. His courage was such, and his factes so notozious, that hee could not long abyde the haughtynesse of *Petrus Arias*. To bee bryefe, their falling out and discord, confounded all thinges. *Iohn Cacerus* the pulpit fryer of the order of saint Frances, dyd his vtermost endeuour to make them friendes, promysynge unto *Vaschus*, the daughter of *Petrus Arias* to wyfe: But no meanes could be founde how these

3.iii.

two,

The Spany-  
arden of *Da-  
riena*.

*Santa Maria  
Antiqua*.  
*Petrus Arias*  
whom the  
Spanyarden  
name *Pedia-  
rias*.  
This sea the  
Spanyarden  
call *Mar del Sur*.

Contention be-  
tweene *Vas-  
chus* and *Pes-  
trus Arias*.

Petrus Arias  
commaundeth  
that Vascbus  
be put to death.

Vascbus is  
accused.

Vascbus is put  
to death.

Petrus Arias.

Lupus Sosa.

two, whiche bore the chiefe rule, myght bee brought to agree-  
ment. At the length the matter grew to such extremitie, that *Petrus Arias* syndyng occasion of quarelling agaynst *Vascbus*, sent  
processe to the magistrates of the towne, whereby he commaun-  
ded them to strangle *Vascbus*, and fyue other which were chiefe  
captaines vnder him, alleagynge that they and their confederates  
conspired to rebell in the South sea, and that *Vascbus* him selfe  
for that intent had buydded and furnished foure shippes, to sear-  
ch the south coastes of the supposed continent: also, that to his three  
hundred souldiers and companions which hee had with him, he  
should speake wordes of this effecte as foloweth. My friends,  
and felowes of my long paynes and trauayles, howe long shall  
wee bee subiecte to the commaundement of other, syth we haue  
bydden the hunt, and ouercome thinterpryse for the whiche  
this newe gouernour was sent with so great a multitude? Who  
can any longer abyde his pryde and insolencie? Let vs there-  
fore folowe these coastes whyther so euer fortune shall dyue vs,  
and among these so many pleasaunt and fruitfull prouinces of  
this large lande, let vs choose one, in the whiche wee maye  
with libertie spende that portion of our lyues which yet remay-  
neth. Who can fynde vs, or shalbe able to profer vs violence?  
When these of the lyke wordes were declared to *Petrus Arias*,  
hee sent to the South partes for *Vascbus*, wplyng him by the  
vertue of his commission to repayre to him forthwith. *Vascbus*  
obeyed, and at his commynge was cast in pyson: yet constantly  
denying that euer hee intended any such thynge. Wittneses were  
brought agaynst him, and his wordes rehearsed from the begyn-  
nyng: To conclude, hee was iudged woorthie death, and was  
put to execution. And this is the rewarde wherewith the blynde  
goddesse oftentymes recompenseth such as haue susteyned great  
trauayles and daungers, to bee hyghly in her fauour. *Petrus*  
*Arias* leaung hys wyfe in *Dariena*, embarked him selfe in  
the shippes left of *Vascbus*, to thintent to searce those coastes:  
But whether hee bee returned or not, wee haue yet no certayne  
knowledge. He hath also his fortune. Yet is there an other go-  
uernour assigned, whose name is *Lupus Sosa*, the viceroye of  
the Ilandes of *Canarie*. What stomake *Petrus Arias* may haue  
if he returne, let good men iudge. There was nothing done vnder  
him

him woorthie glorie. Some thynke that hee was at the begin-  
nyng to slacke and negligent in his office, and not seuer in cor-  
rectyng errors and misorders. But we will leaue him, and re-  
hearse somewhat whereof we haue been lately infourmed, as tou-  
chyng the great and deepe ryuer of *Dabaiba*, the whiche for the  
greatnesse and largenesse thereof, our men named *Grandis*, that  
is, great, as we haue noted in our *Decades*. This ryuer falleth  
into the furthest corner of the gulfie of *Praba* by seven portes or  
mouthes, as doth the ryuer of *Nilus* into the Egyptian sea, whose  
large description you may also reade in our *Decades*. That the  
mountaynes on euery syde about this ryuer are ryche in golde,  
wee haue learned by thinformation of th inhabitants, of whom  
wee made diligent inquisition. *Vascbus*, and besyde him other  
gouernours and Lieutenantes, haue foure tymes entred into  
this ryuer with theyr armies in battayle array, and with dy-  
uers kyndes of shippes, fyrst for the space of fourtie myles, then  
fytie, and at the last fourescore, and at an other tyme also ouer-  
thwarte the ryuer. Oh shamefull chaunce, and detestable coward-  
nesse of our men. A naked nation encountring with them that  
had apparell, the armed against the vnarmed, had the ouerthrow  
in maner in all conflictes, and were either all slayne or wounded.  
They vse inuenedomed arrowes, and are such experte archers, that  
if they espy any place of theyr enimie bare or vnarmed, they will  
not lyghely sayle to stryke him there. They vse also many dartes,  
which in the tyme of the battayle they hurle so thicke a farre of,  
that they take the lycht of the sunne from theyr enemies as it  
were with a cloude. They haue lykewise brode & long swoordes,  
made of a heaup and harde kynde of wood, wherewith they fight  
fiercely neare at hand. *Vascbus* him selfe receiued many woundes  
in encountring with them. And thus by reason of the fierce-  
nesse of these Barbarians, the ryuer of *Dabaiba* is yet left vn-  
searched. Wee will nowe speake somewhat more of the Ilande  
of *Hispaniola* (which the Spanyardes call *Spagnuola*) the mo-  
ther and chiefe of all other landes or Ilands wherof we entended  
to write. In it the Senate is now restored, and fyue Iudges as-  
signed to giue lawes to all th inhabitants of those tractes. But  
in short tyme, they shall cease geathering of gold, although there  
bee great plentie, by reason they shall lacke labourers and my-  
ners,

The great ry-  
uer of *Dabaiba*  
ba or *Grandis*.

The gulfie of  
*Praba*.

The ryche  
mountaynes  
of *Dabaiba*.

Fierce & wa-  
rlike people.

Dartes.

Swoordes of  
heauy wood.

*Hispaniola*.  
*Quiedus* wy-  
teth that there  
are now fyue  
monasteries.

ners, so much as the inhabitants whose helpe they vled heere in, are brought to a small number, consumed partly by warre, and many more by famine that peere that they dygged by the rootes whereof they made theyr best bread, and lesse of sowynge their grayne of *Maisium*, which is their common foode, supposing hereby to haue dyuen our men out of the Ilande, who had visitayles sent them from Spayne. A great number of them also dyed of new and straunge diseases, which in the peere of Christ a thousande fyue hundred and eightiene, consumed them lyke rotten sheepe. And (to say the trueth) our mens vnfacible desyre of golde, so oppressed these poore wretches with extreme labour and toyle, where as before they lyued pleasauntly and at libertie, gyuen onely to playes and pastymes, as daunsyng, syllyng, fowlyng, and huntynge of little Cunnies, that many of them perished euen for very angurthe of mynde, the which (with theyr vnaccustomed labour) are thinges of them selues sufficient to engender many newe diseases. But the kyng and the Senate haue nowe determyned, that they bee reduced to a people, and to gyue them selues onely to increafe, and tyllage of the grounde: and that onely suche as are bought or taken out of other regions, be appoynted to labour in the gold mynes. But it shall suffice to haue sayde thus muche of the pestiferous hunger of golde: therfore I wil speake of other matters. It is a marueylous thyng to consider how all thinges increafe and prosper in this Ilande. There are nowe .xxviii. suger presses, where with great plentie of suger is made. The canes or reedes wherein the suger groweth, are bygger and hygher then in any other place, and are as bygge as a mans arme in the browne, and hygher then the stature of a man, by the halfe. This is more wonderfull, that where as in Valentia in Spayne (where a great quantitie of suger is made peerelely) where so euer they applye them selues to the great increafe thereof, yet doeth every roote byng footy not past fyue, or syxe, or at the most seuen of those reedes: whereas in Hispaniola, one roote beareth twentie, and oftentimes thirtie. Foure footed beastes and cattayle, are marueylously increased in this Ilande. And albeie that the rauenyng hunger of golde hath hitherto greatly hyndered our men from tyllage of the grounde, yet is there great plentie

newe and  
straunge disea-  
ses.

The suger of  
Hispaniola.

Suger of Va-  
lentia.

As token of  
marueylous  
fruitfulness.

tye of wheate, whiche prospereth so well, that it yeeldeth some tyme a hundred folde, and this especially on the hylls or rydges of the mountaynes prospectyng towarde the North: Vines doo also encrease here with no lesse fruitfulness. What shoulde I speake of the trees that beare *Cassia fistula*, brought fyrst into this Ilande from the other Ilandes neere vnto the supposed Continent, as we haue noted in our Decades: There is nowe suche plentie hereof, that after a fewe yeeres we shall haue a pounce of the pryce that we paye nowe for an ounce.

Of the Brasyle, and Piobalane trees, with other innumerable prerogatives and benefytes which nature hath plentifully geuen to this blessed Ilande, we haue spoken sufficiently in our Decades. Yet haue I thought good to reapeate parte of the same, because I thynke that the wittes of many readers haue diuerted from the weight of great affaires, to the recordation of such pleasaunt thynges: And yet do not such thynges as are sauerie, engender tediousnesse, so that a pretious matter beadiourned with a pretious besture.

Brasyle.  
Piobalanes.

(.)

(.)

1

# A breefe rehearsal of the contentes

of the bookes of the fyrst Decade, and so folowyng  
of all the other Decades.

Folio .8.

**I**n the fyrst booke is declared howe *Christophorus Colonus*, otherwyle called *Columbus*, perswaded *Fernando* and *Elizabeth* princes of *Spainye*, to further his attempt in searchyng newe and unknowne landes in the West Ocean. Also of the vii. Ilandes of *Canaria*, by whom they were found and conquered.

Howe *Colonus* founde the Ilandes of *Hispaniola*, and *Cuba*, and of the fierce people called *Canibales* or *Caribes*, which are accustomed to eate mans fleshe.

Of the rootes called *Ages*, *Iucca*, and the grayne *Maiyum*, whereof the people of the Ilandes made theyr bread.

Of the golde found in the landes of ryuers, & of the Serpents which are without hurt: also of turtle doues, ducks, & popingaies.

Of *Hastir*, and *Aloe*, with dyuers frutes and trees unknowne to vs, and of the fruitfulnessse of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, which the Spanyardes call *Spagnuola*.

Of the seconde viage of *Colonus* into these regions, and howe he was furnished with .xvii. shippes, and a thousande and two hundred souldiers, with all kynde of artillarie, artificers, and grayne to sowe: and of the tree from the which water droppeth continually into a trench made by mans hande.

*The contentes of the seconde booke, Fol. 12.*

**H**owe *Colonus* departing from the Ilandes of *Canarie*, sayled viii. hundred & twentie leaguys in .xxi. daies, & came to *Dominica* an Ilande of the *Canibales*: & of the fragrant sauoure of spices which proceeded from the Ilandes.

Of the Ilandes of *Galanta* or *Galana* and *Guadalupea*, and of the trees which beare that kynd of cotton which the Italians call *Bombasine*, and the Spanyardes *Algadon*.

Of dyuers kyndes of *Popingiayes*, and of the Ilande of *Matinino* or *Madanino*, beyng inhabited onely with women: also of dyuers other fruitfull Ilandes, and of a conflict which the Spanyardes had with the *Canibales*.

Of

In the fyrst Decade.

174

Of certayne Ilandes in the which are seene the mynes of metals and precious stones, and of the fruitfull and populous Ilande called *Buribena*, or *Boriquen*, or *Insula. S. Iohannis*.

Howe all the Admirals men which at his fyrst viage he left in *Hispaniola*, were slaine in his absence by the rebellion of *Guacacanarillus*, kyng of the region of *Xamana*: and of the free kynde of lyfe which they leade that haue not the vse of money.

Of the seuen maydens which swam thre miles in the sea, and of the maner of geathering of gold in the lands of riuers.

*The contentes of the thyrd booke, Fol. 17.*

**A** Particuler discription of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, which *Colonus* thynketh to be *Ophir*, from whence kyng *Salomon* had his great ryches of golde.

Of the marueylous fruitfulnessse of *Hispaniola*, and of the sugar canes growyng there.

Of the golden regions of *Cipanga* or *Cibana*, & of the ryuers in whose landes is founde great plentie of golde.

Of certayne graynes of gold of exceeding great quantitie.

Of wilde vines of plesaunt taste, and of grasse which in foure dayes groweth as hygh as wheate.

Of the Ilande of *Iohanna* or *Cuba*, being the end of the East and the West, and of the fruitfull & populous Ilande of *Iamaica*.

Howe the Admirall thought that he had sayled about the lowest Hemisphere or half circle of the earth, and of a secrete of *Astronomie* touching the same matter.

Howe the Admirall gaue names to seuen hundred Ilandes, and passed by thre thousand vnnamed.

Of certayne serpentes like vnto Crocodiles of eight foote long, whose flesh is delicate to be eaten, and of certayne trees which beare Gourdes.

Of the riuer whose water is very hott, and of the huntynge fythe which taketh other fythes.

Of great abundaunce of *Toxoyles* as bygge as targets, and of a fruitfull mountayne well inhabited.

Of dogges of deformed shape and dumbe, and of white and thicke water.

Of woods of Date trees, and *Ppyneapple* trees, and of certayne people apparelled lyke whyte fryers.

Of



Of certaine trees which beare spices, and of Cranes of exceeding bygnesse.

Of stocke doves of more pleasaunt taste then partriches.

An oration of a barbarous gouernour as touching the immortallitie of the soule: Also of the rewarde of vertue, and punishment of vice.

A similitude of the golden worlde, and of prouision without care.

Howe the Admirall fell sicke by reason of to muche watching, and of a sedition whiche rose among the Spaniards in the Ilande of Hispaniola.

*The Contentes of the fourth booke, Fol. 25.*

Howe the kynges of the Ilande of Hispaniola, were by the Spaniards misbehaviour prouoked to rebellion, and howe the Admirall sent for them.

Howe kyng *Counaboa* the Lorde of the house of gold, that is, of the mountaines of *Cibaua*, conspired the Admirals death, and how he with his familie were taken prisoners.

Of a great famine that chaunced in the Ilande of Hispaniola, and howe the Admirall builded certayne fortresses.

Of a peece of rude gold wapghing twentie vneces, and of the myne of the rich metall called *Elestrum*.

Of the mountayne in the whiche is founde great plentie of Amber and Orpement: and of the wooddes of Brasyle trees.

Howe the inhabitantes are put to theyr tribute, and how the nature of y<sup>e</sup> Region disposeth the maners of the people.

Howe the brother of kyng *Cannaboa* came agaynst the Admirall with an armie of syue thousand naked men, and howe he was taken, and his armie put to flight.

Of the fruitfull vale *Magona*, in the sandes of whose ryuers is founde great plentie of golde: and of certayne whirlewindes and tempests.

Howe the Admirall sent forth his brother *Bartholomeus Colonius* with an armie of men to searche the golde mynes, and of the fosses which he founde to haue been dygged in old tyme.

*The Contentes of the .v. booke. Fol. 27. for 29.*

Howe the Lieutenannt builded a fortress in the golde mines, and prepared instrumentes for the purging and fining

nyng of the golde.

Howe certayne shippes laden with vittayles, came from Spayne: And howe the Lieutenannt sent the kynges whiche rebelled, with thre hundred captiues into Spayne.

Howe the Lieutenannt remoued his habitation, and buylded a fortress whiche he called saint Dominickes towne, also howe he passed ouer the ryuer *Maiba*, and entred into the wooddes of Brasyle trees.

Howe the great kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, frendely entertained the Lieutenannt, and brought hym to his pallace, where the kynges wyues and concubines receyued hym honorably with pompes and triumphes.

Of the fortresses whiche were erected in Hispaniola, and howe the Lieutenannt exacted tribute of the kynges whiche rebelled agayne.

Howe the Lieutenannt set bypon the kynges bntwares in the nyght season, and tooke .xiii. of them prisoners.

Howe kyng *Guarionexius*, captayne of the conspiracie, was pardoned, and howe he perswaded the people to obedience.

Howe kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, sent messengers to the Lieutenannt to repayre to his pallace, where he founde .xxii. kyngs redy with theyr tributes: And howe the queene *Anacaona* entyled hym to eate of the Serpentes fleshe.

Howe the Serpentes fleshe is prepared to be eaten, and how delicate meate theyr egges are if they be sodden.

Howe queene *Anacauchoa*, sister to kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, entertained y<sup>e</sup> Lieutenannt, & gaue him much household stuffe, and many vessels of Hebene wodd artificially wrought & carued.

Howe kyng *Anacauchoa* and the queene his sister went aboard the Lieutenanntes shyppe, and howe greatly they were amased to beholde the furniture therof.

Howe *Roldanus Xeminus* a Spanyarde, rebelled in the Lieutenanntes absence, by whose mysdemeanour also kyng *Guarionexius* was prouoked to a newe conspiracie, and with hym *Maibonexius* the kyng of the mountaynes.

*The contentes of the sxt booke, Fol. 35.*

The thyrd viage of *Colonus*, & howe he diuerted from his accustomed rase by the Ilandes of Canarie to the Iland of *Mader*.

*Madera*, for feare of certayne frenche pirates and rousers.

Of the .xiii. Ilandes whiche in olde tyme were called *Hesperides*, and are now called the Ilandes of *Caput Viride*, or *Cabo uerde*. Also of the *Toxtopiles* of the Ilande of *Bonauiſta*, where with the leper is healed.

Howe the Admiral found contagious ayre and extreme heate neere the Equinoctial, where the north pole was eleuate onely fyue degrees, and howe ſaylyng from thence weſtwarde, he founde the ſtarres placed in other order, and the ſea rſyng as it were the backe of a mountayne.

Howe the Admiral ſaylyng weſtwarde, and neuer paſſyng out of the clyme or paralels of *Ethiope*, founde a temperate Region, and people of goodly corporature: and what difference is betwene the natures of Regions beyng vnder one paralele and one eleuation of the pole.

Of the Ilandes of *Putu* and *Margarita*, and of the ſwifte courſe or fall of the Ocean from the Eaſt to the Weſt.

Of the gulfe called *Os Draconis*, and of the conflict betwene the freſhe water and the ſalte.

Of a ſea of freſhe water, and a mountayne inhabited onely with *Honkpes* and *Harmasettes*.

Of the ſayre, ryche, and large region of *Paria*, and howe friendly thynhabitantes entreated the Admirall and his men.

Also of pleaſaunt wyne made of dyuers fruites, and of great abundaunce of pearles and golde.

Of the regions of *Cumana*, *Manacapana*, & *Curiana*, being regions of y large prouince of *Paria*, & of y ſea of hearbes or weeds.

A certayne ſecrete as touchyng the pole ſtarres, and the eleuation of the ſame, alſo of the roundneſſe of the earth.

Of the mountaynes of *Paria*, in the toppes wherof *Colonus* earneſtly affirmeth the earthly paradise to be ſituate, and whether *Paria* be parte of the firme land or continent of *India*.

*The contentes of the .vii. booke. Fol. 39.*

**H**owe *Tollanus Xeminus* with his confederates, accuſed the Admirall to the kyng, and howe he pourged hym ſelfe, and accuſed them.

Howe kyng *Guarionexius* rebelled agayne, and with hym kyng *Matobannexius*: alſo howe they with other kynges came

came agaynſt the Lieutenant with an armie of eyght thouſande naked and paynted *Ciguauians*: alſo two rare examples of frendſhyp and faythfulneſſe in barbarous princes.

Howe *Colonus* the Admirall and the Lieutenant his brother were ſent bound into *Spayne*, and newe officers appoynted in theſe places.

*The contentes of the eight booke. Fol. 43.*

**T**he nauigation of *Petrus Alphonus* from *Spayne* to *Paria*, where in the region of *Curiana*, he had in ſhort ſpace .xv. ounces of pearles, & great plenty of vicualls, for haukes belles, pinnes, lokyng glaſſes, and ſuch other tryſles.

Of certayne coniectures whereby *Paria* is thought to be part of the ſpyne land, & of the golden region of *Cauchietta*, where in the moneth of *November* the ayre is temperate and not colde.

How *Alphonus* had a conflict with the *Canibales*, and how they are accuſtomed to invade other countreys.

Of great abundaunce of ſalt in the region of *Hayaia*, and how the dead bodies of theſe princes are dyyed, reſerued, and religiouſly honoured.

Howe *Alphonus* at his returne to *Spayne* from *Curiana*, brought with him theſcope & ſixtene pounce weyght of pearles, whiche he bought for our tryſles, amountyng only to the value of fyue ſhillyngeſ.

*The contentes of the nienth booke. Fol. 47.*

**T**he nauigation of *Vincentius Pinzonus* and *Aries Pinzonus*, and howe they ſayled beyond the Equinoctiall line, loſt the ſyght of the north ſtarre, and founde the ſtarres in other order.

Howe *Vincentius* paſſing the Equinoctial toward the South pole, founde fierce and warlyke people of great ſtature, and of the ſea of freſhe water.

Howe *Vincentius* directing his courſe toward the North-weſt from the Equinoctiall, recouered the ſyght of the North-pole, and by the regions of *Mariatambal*, *Camomorus*, and *Pericora*, came to the ſayre and ryche prouince of *Paria*, and to the regions of *Os draconis*, *Cumana*, *Manacapana*, *Curiana*. &c.

A coniecture that *Paria* (wherby is ment that mayne lande nowe called *America*) ſhoulde be part of the ſpyne lande or continent

inent of India, beyonde the riuer of *Ganges* & no Island, and of the exceeding great riuer *Maragnonus* replenished with *Islandes*.

Of *Boriostomea* and *Spiriostomea*, the mouthes of the famous ryuer of *Dunabius* called in old tyme *Ister*. and of the commodities of the regions and *Islandes* about *Paria*: also of the woods of *Brasile* trees.

Of many fruitfull *Islandes* wasted and left desolate by reason of the *Canibales* crueltie, and of the trees of *Cassia Fistula*: also of other trees of exceeding bygnesse.

The discription of a certayne monstrous beast, and howe *Vincentius* lost two of his shypps by tempest.

Howe *Vincentius* at his returne to Spaine, brought with hym *Cinamome*, *Ginger*, and certayne precious stones called *Copases*: And of the nauigations of certayne other inhabitants of the towne of *Palos*.

Of the precious medicine called *Anima Album*, and of the diuers superstitions of the inhabitauntes of *Hispniola*: also of theyr *Idolatrie*, and howe they honour the Images of deuyles, whiche they call *Zemes*.

The Contentes of the tenth booke. Fol. 54.

Of great plentie of gold, pearles, and frankensence, founde in the regions of *Paria*, and of innumerable beastes in shape differing from ours.

Howe the Spaniardes proffered them selues to conquere the new founde landes, beyng in largenesse thysle as great as Europe, besyde the South landes parteynyng to the *Portingales*, and howe the nature of the place altereth the fourmes and qualities of thynges.

Of the *Islande* of *Cuba*, and of the golde mynes of the *Islande* of *Sancti Iohannis*, otherwyle called *Burichena*, or *Buchena*. Also of the ryche golde mynes of *Hispniola*, and of the order of workyng in the same.

Of the two chiefe golde mynes of *Hispniola*, and of a peece of golde weighing thre thousande thre hundred and ten pounde weyght.

Howe the gold is fined and distributed, and howe that only in the melting shops of the two golden mines of *Hispniola*, is molten peerele aboute thre hundred thousand pounde weight of gold.

Howe

Howe the enterpyles of the Spaniardes are not inferiour to chautes of *Saturnus* or *Hercules*, and howe the Admirall discovered the lande ouer agaynst the West corner of *Cuba*, and the *Islande* of *Guanassa*.

The Contentes of the bookes of the seconde Decade.

The contentes of the fyrst booke. Fol. 57.

How after the death of *Colonus* the Admirall, the kyng gaue free lycence to all such as would attempt any vyages, and of the nauigations of *Diego Nicuesa*, and *Alphonfus Fogeda*.

Of the *Islande* *Codego* and the region of *Caramairi*, and of certayne sweete apples which turne into woormes when they are eaten, whose trees are also contagious.

How *Alphonfus Fogeda*, the Lieuetaunant of *Vraba*, encounteryng with the Barbarians, had the ouerthrowe, and howe in this conflict syfte of his men were slayne, with *Iobannes de la Cossa* their captayne.

Howe *Fogeda*, and *Nicuesa* the Lieuetaunant of *Beragua*, reuenged the death of theyr companyons, and howe *Fogeda* came to the *Islande* *Fortis* and the region of *Caribana*, where he was repulled from the golde mynes by the fiercenesse of the Barbarians, vsyng arrowes infected with poyson.

Howe *Fogeda* was wounded in the thygh with a venemous arrowe, and his men almost consumed with fampyne.

Howe a *Brigantyne* was drowned with the stroke of a *Fyshe*: and of the nauigation of *Ancifus* from *Hispniola* to *Vraba*.

Of the lamentable shypwracke of *Ancifus*, and of the Date trees and wylde *Bozes* which he founde.

Of the fruites or apples of the trees called *Cedars* of *Libane*, which beare olde fruites and new all the peece.

Howe onely thre of the *Canibales* with their bowes and inuencioned arrowes assailed *Ancifus* with a hundred of his men, in which conflict they wounded and slue many also, of their swiftnesse of foote.

Aa. i.

Of

Of the great ryuer of *Dariena*, and howe *Ancifus* encountered with fyue hundred of thynhabitauntes of the gulfe of *Vraba*, and put them to flyght: also, how he founde great plentie of wrought golde and houtholde stuffe in a thicket of reedes.

*The contentes of the second booke. Fol. 63.*

Howe *Nicuesa* lost his felowes in the darke nyght, and went past the mouth of the ryuer *Beragua* which he sought, & howe the captaynes of the other *Shyppes* consulted howe to fynde him: also, of the ryuer *Lagartos* in the which great *Lisartes* are found, much lyke unto the *Crocodiles* of *Nilus*.

Howe the captaynes forsooke theyr *Shyppes*, that the soulyers myght bee without hope of departure, and of the miserable chaunce of *Petrus de Umbria* and his felowes.

By what chaunce *Nicuesa* was founde, and of the calamities which he and his company susteyned: also, of the region of *Gracia Dei* or *Cerabaro*, and of the ryuer of *Sancti Matthei*.

Howe *Nicuesa* caused them to remoue theyr habitation from *Beragua* to point *Marmor*, where he buylded a fortresse, and how his men by warre and sampne, were consumed from seuen hundred and odde, to scarcely one hundred.

Howe one *Vaschus Nunnez* vsurped chauchopitie of the *Lieutenanthyp* of *Vraba* in thabscence of *Fogeda*, and of the nauigation of *Rodericus Colmenaris* from *Hispaniola* to *Vraba*.

Of the ryuer *Baira* disceyding from the toppe of a high mountayne couered with snow, and how *Rodericus Colmenaris* in a conflict agaynst the *Barbarians*, lost xlii. of his men, by reason of theyr inuenomed arrowes.

Of the force of the poyson wherewith the *Barbarians* infecte theyr arrowes, and a remedie for the same: also, howe *Colmenaris* by gunshot and kyndlyng fyers on the high toppes of the rockes, came to the *Spanyarden*, left desolate in *Dariena*.

*The contentes of the thyrde booke. Fol. 67.*

Howe *Nicuesa* was sought forth to acquiet the contentions of *Vraba*, and howe he was agayne reiected.

Howe *Vaschus Nunnez* inuaded, tooke prysoners, and spoiled the kynges bordering about the region of *Vraba*, and howe

*Ancifus*

*Ancifus* *Lieutenant* for *Fogeda* was cast in prysen, and afterwarde set at libertie.

Howe *Ancifus* tooke his viage from *Vraba* to *Spainne*, to accuse *Vaschus*, who also at the same tyme sent *Valdiua*, aswell to speake in his defence, as also to certifie the kyng of their doyngs.

Howe kyng *Careta* conspired with the *Spanyarden* agaynst kyng *Poncha*, whom they put to flyght, and spoiled his village.

Howe kyng *Comogrus* friendly enterpyned the *Spanyarden*, and brought them to his pallace, where he shewed them the dyed carcases of his auncestours reserued, and sumptuously apparelled, and how the kynges elder sonne gaue *Vaschus* and *Colmenaris* foure thousande ounces of wrought golde, and fiftie slaues: also, a wyttie oration which he made to the *Spanyarden*, wherein he certified them of a countrey exceedyng ryche in golde, &c.

*The contentes of the fourth booke. Fol. 72.*

Of horryble thunder & lyghtnyng in the moneth of *November*, and of grayne which waxeth rypp thysle a peere: also, howe digestion is strengthened by outwarde colde.

Howe *Valdiua* is sent agayne into *Hispaniola*, to moue the gouernour and counsaile there to sende into *Spainne* to the kyng for a supplie of a thousande soulyers, to make way to the golden mountaynes, and howe he carped with him the kynges portion, that is, the fyft part of golde and other thinges.

Howe *Vaschus* inuaded the kynges inhabytyng the regions about the gulfe of *Vraba*, and howe he put kyng *Dabaila* to flyght, in whose village hee founde wrought golde, amountyng to the weyght of seuen thousande *Castellans*.

Of Battes as hyge as *Turtle doones*, which sometyme bite men in the nyght in theyr sleepe, whose byting is also venomous, but is healed with water of the sea, or by cauterization, as are also the woundes of venomous arrowes.

Of the *Ilande* of *Cannafistula*, and a towne of fyue hundred houses, whose kyng *Abenamachei* was taken, and his arme cutte of in the fyght.

Of trees of exceedyng bygnesse and heygth, and howe kyng *Abibeiba* had his pallace in the toppe of a tree, from the which he was inforced to disceend and entreate of peace.

*Aa. ii.*

*The*

*The contentes of the fyfth booke. Fol. 75.*

**H**owe kynge *Abraha* slue a captayne of the *Spanyarden*, and caused the kynge to rebell: also, how they were put to flight, and many of theyr men slayne.

Of fyue kynge which attempted a netwe conspiracie with a hundred great *Canoas*, and fyue thousande men, and howe theyr intent was bewrayed by a woman, and prevented: also, howe *Rodericus Colmenaris* sacked the village of *Tichiri*, & hung the kynge thereof, with foure of his chiefe rulers, and commaunded them to be shotte through with arrowes.

*The contentes of the sixt booke. Fol. 77.*

**H**owe *Vaschus* with his confederates, sent *Iohannes Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* from *Dariena* to *Hispaniola*, and from thence to *Spayne* to the kynge, for a thousand men to passe ouer the mountaynes to the golden regions, and what miseries they susteyned in that viage: also of the death of *Valdiuia*, *Zamudus*, and *Fogeda*.

Of the prosperous viage of *Ancisus*, and howe God wrought miracles by the simple sayth of a mariner: also, howe God respecteth thinsancie of sayth for zeales sake, and howe one religion turned into another, holdeth styll many thinges of the fyrst.

Howe many of the *Barbarians* were baptised by reason of the miracles, and howe they rewarded the priestes by whom they were baptised.

Howe *Ancisus* shortly after his arryual in *Spayne*, resorted to the court, and made his complaynt to the kynge of thinsolencie of *Vaschus*, wherevpon the kynge gaue sentence against him, and how apt the *Barbarous* nations are to embrace the *Christian* sayth.

*The contentes of the seuenth booke. Fol. 81.*

**H**owe *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* the procuratours of *Dariena*, were honourably enterteyned at the court, and brought to the kynge's presence, and howe theyr complexion was chaunged by alteration of the ayre.

Howe *Petrus Arias*, a noble man, was elected gouernour and Lieutenaut of *Dariena*, and howe other of the court laboured for the same office: also, howe the bishop of *Burges* spake to the kynge in his behalfe.

Howe *Petrus Arias* had a thousande and two hundred souldyers

souldyers appoynted him at the kynge's charges, and of the kynge's custome house in the citie of *Ciuite*, called the house of the contractes of *India*.

Howe a great number of *Spanyarden* profered them selues to goe at theyr owne charges, and of a restraint made that no straunger myght passe without the kynge's licence: also, how the aucthour repproueth *Aloisius Cadamustus*, a wyrtier of the *Portugales* viages.

Howe *Petrus Arias* shortly after his departure from *Ciuite*, lost two of his shippes, and was dyuen backe agayne by tempest, and howe beyng newly furnyshed, he passed the Ocean with more prosperous wyndes.

The thyrde viage of *Vincentius Pinzonus*, and howe he came to the regions of *Paria*, where encountring with thynhabitautes, he put them fyrst to flyght, but after saylling to intreatie of peace, they gaue him great plentie of golde, and abundaunce of masculine frankensence, with dyuers other princely presentes.

Of the great multitude of *Popingiapes* whiche are in the region of *Paria*, and howe thynhabitours are apparelled: also, of the fyue kynge that made a league of friendship with *Vincentius*.

Howe *Vincentius* sayled Eastwarde by the tracte of the region of *Paria*, vntyl he came to the poynt of that long lande, which the aucthour supposeth to be the great *Ilande Atlantike*, wherof the olde wyrtiers make mention.

Cap. 5. August.

*The contentes of the viii. booke. Fol. 86.*

**A** Contention betweene the *Castilians* and *Portugales*, as concerning the diuision of the new founde landes, and howe the controuerisie was fynished by the bishop of *Rome*.

Howe *Don Christopher* the gouernour of the *Ilande* of *Sancti Iohannis*, was slayne by the *Caniballes*, and the bishop put to flyght: also, of the other bishops of the *Ilandes*.

Howe the *Caniballes* of the *Ilande* of *Sancta Crux*, slue and ate a kynge, with certayne of his men, beyng friendes to the *Christians*, and made saggottes of theyr bones, and howe quarelling with our men, they put them to silence.

Aa. iiii.

The



## The contentes of the bookes

*The contentes of the .ix. booke. Fol. 87.*

**O**f the marueplous fruitfulness of the regions of *Beragua*, *Vraba*, and *Dariena*, and of the dyuers kyndes of trees and fruites: also, of the pleasaunt taste of swynes flethe, beyng fedde with the fruites of *Mirobalane* trees.

Of *Lions* and *Tyggers*, and other wyld beasts, and of a beast of straunge fourme.

Of the ryuers of the gulse of *Vraba*, as the ryuer of *Dariena* and *Rio Grandis*, and howe the great serpent called *Crocodiles*, are founde in other ryuers besyde *Nilus* in *Egypt*: also, howe chauchour of this booke was sent Ambassadour to the *Soldane* of *Alcayr* in *Egypt*.

Of the *Portugales* nauigations, and of the ryuer *Senega* found by them to bee a chanell of *Nilus*: also, of the multitude of byrds and foules being in the marshes of *Dariena*.

A physiolophicall discourse of thoriginall and generation of springes and ryuers, and of the breadth of the lande diuidyng the North and South Ocean.

Of the great ryuer *Maragnonus*, and of the earthly *Paradyse*, and how springes are engendred by couertion of ayre into water.

Of the often fall of rayne under the *Equinoctiall* line, and of the poyres of the sea opened by the South wyndes.

Of the great ryuers of *Tanais*, *Ganges*, *Danubius*, and *Eridanus*, famous to the olde wyters, and howe certayne ryuers runnyng through the caues of the earth, breake forth into springes a farre of.

*The contentes of the .x. booke. Fol. 91.*

**H**owe the newe founde landes discovered by the *Spaniards* in the West Ocean, are eyght tymes bigger then *Italie*, besyde that which the *Portugales* possesse, and of the cardes of the sea drawn by *Colonus* and *Americus Vesputius*.

The order of measurynge the lande, and howe a league containeth foure myles by sea, and but thre by lande.

The *Nauigation* of *Iohannes Dias*, and of the sundry eleuations of the pole starre.

Of the *Ilande* of *Boiua* or *Agnaneo*, and of the spring whose water being drunke, causeth olde men to looke young.

How *Nichesa* and his souldyers were so oppressed with taxmyne,

## In the thyrd Decade.

180

mine, that they were dyuen to eate mangie dogges, *Cones*, and dead men, and howe a broth made of a dogge skynne, was soide for many peeces of golde.

## The Contentes of the bookes of the thyrd Decade.

*The contentes of the fyrst booke. Fol. 94.*

**O**f the desperate aduenture and good fortune of *Vaschus*, and howe with a hundred fourescore and ten men, hee brought that to passe for the which *Petrus Arias* was sent with a thousand and two hundred freshe souldyers.

Howe *Iron* seructh for more necessary vles then golde, and howe superfluities hynder libertie.

Howe *Vaschus* in one conflict slue sixe hundred *Barbarians* with theyr kynges, and howe he founde the house of kyng *Quarequa* infected with vnmaturall lechery, commaundyng that the kyng and fourtie such as he kept for that purpose, should bee gyuen for a pray to his dogges which he used to serue in the warres agaynst these naked people.

Of a region of blacke *Doores*, and howe *Vaschus* came to the toppes of the mountaynes, where gyuyng thanks to God, hee behelde the newe South Ocean, neuer before seene nor knowne to men of our world.

Howe *Vaschus* put kyng *Chiapes* to flyght, and after made a league of friendship with him, and how the kyng gaue him, iiii. hundred poundes weyght of wrought golde.

Howe kyng *Coquera* was put to flyght, who also being receyued to friendship, gaue *Vaschus* sixe hundred and fyftie poundes weyght of wrought golde.

Of the gulse called *Sinus S. Michaelis*, beyng full of inhabited *Ilandes*, and of the manly courage and godly zeale of *Vaschus*: also, of the rysyng and fallynge of the South sea.

Howe kyng *Tumacchus* beyng dyuen to flyght and afterwarde reconciled, gaue *Vaschus* sixe hundred and fourtiene peeces of golde, and two hundred and fourtie of the greatest and fayrest pearles, and howe the kyng caused his men to fysh for pearles.

Aa. iiii.

Of

Of the Ilande called *Margaritea Dives*, and of the abundance of sayre and great pearles founde therein.

Of habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall line, and of the Portugales navigations to the *Antipodes*, inhabiting the syue and syfue degree of the South pole: also, a declaration of *Antipodes*, and of the starres about the South poie.

*The contentes of the seconde booke. Fol. 01.*

Of the maner of fyshyng for pearles, and of the three kyndes thereof; also, dyuers other questions concernyng pearles.

Of the multitude of the shell fythes wherein pearles are ingendred and founde in maner in all places in the South sea, and of abundance of golde founde almost in euery houle: also, howe the treasurie of nature is in those coastes, and of the golde mynes of *Dariena*.

Howe kynge *Teaocha* gaue *Vaschus*.xx. poundes weyght of wrought golde, and two hundred pearles: also, of desartes full of wylde beastes, and howe *Vaschus* was troubled with great heate in the moneth of November.

Howe a dogge Tyger was taken, and his whelpes tyed in cheynes and toyne in peeces: also, how *Vaschus* gaue.iii. kynges to his dogges to be deuoured.

Of the vse of dogges in theyr warres, and of the fiercenesse of the Caniballes.

How kynge *Bononiana* fauoured the Christians, & gaue *Vaschus* .xx. pound weyght of wrought golde: also, his oration to *Vaschus*.

A similitude prouyng great plentie of golde in the regions of the South sea, and of the trauayles which olde souloyers are able to susteyne.

*The contentes of the thyrde booke. Fol. 105.*

Howe kynge *Buchibuea* submitted hym selfe to *Vaschus*, & sent hym certayne vesselles of golde: also, how kynge *Chiorisus* sent hym. xxx. dythes of pure golde.

Howe Iron serueth for more necessary uses then golde: also, an example of the lyfe of our fyrst parentes.

Howe kynge *Pocchorrosa* submitted hym selfe, and gaue *Vaschus* fyftiene pounde weyght of wrought golde: also, how *Tumanama* the great kynge of the golden regions towarde the South sea, is taken pryloner: lykewyse howe he gaue *Vaschus*

*chus*. xxx. pounde weyght of pure and wrought golde, and his noble men .lx. pounds weyght of golde.

Of the cause of vehement wyndes neere vnto the Equinoctiall lyne, and of the coloure of the earth of the golden mynes.

Of the large and fruitefull playne of *Zauana*, and of the ryuer *Comogrus*: also howe kynge *Comogrus*, baptised by the name of *Charles*, gaue *Vaschus*. xx. pounde weyght of wrought golde.

Of the good fortune of *Vaschus*, and howe he was turned from *Goliath* to *Elizeus*, & from *Anteus* to *Hercules*, & with what facilitie the Spaniardes shall hereafter obtayne great plentie of golde and pearles.

Of the Spaniardes conquestes, and fiercenesse of the *Canibales*: also an exhortation to Christian princes to set forwarde Chrystes religion.

*The contentes of the fourth booke. Fol. 110.*

The fourth viage of *Colonus* the Admiral from Spayne to *Hispaniola*, and to the other Ilandes and coastes of the firme lande: also of the flopyshyng Ilande *Guanassa*.

Of the seuen kyndes of Date trees, wylde vines, and *Pirobalanes*: also of byrdes and foules.

Of people of goodly stature whiche vse to paynt theyr bodyes, and of the swyfte course of the sea from the east to the west: also of freshe water in the sea.

Of the large regions of *Paria*, *Os Draconis*, and *Quiriquetana*, and of great Toxoyles and reedes: also of the foure fruitefull Ilands called *Quatuor Tempora*, and .xii. Ilands called *Limonares*.

Of sweete sauoures and holtsome ayre, and of the region *Quiscuri*, and the hauen *Cariac* or *Mirobalanus*: also of certayne ciuill people.

Of trees growyng in the sea after a straunge sort, and of a straunge kynde of Donkyes, whiche inuade men, and sepyght with wylde Bores.

Of the great gulfe of *Ceyabaro* replenished with many fruitefull Ilandes, and of the people whiche weare cheynes of golde made of ouches, wrought to the similitude of dyuers wylde beastes and foules.

Of syue villages whose inhabitauntes geue them selues onely to geatheryng of golde, and are paynted, vsyng to weare garlandes

garlandes of Lions and Tygers clawes : also of seuen ryuers, in al the which is founde great plentie of golde, and where the plentie of gold ceaseth.

Of certayne people whiche paynt theyr bodyes, and couer theyr priue members with shelles, haupng also plates of gold hangyng at theyr nosegaylles.

Of certayne woozmes, whiche beyng engendred in the seas neere about the Equinoctial, eate holes in the shyppes, and howe the Admirals shyppes were destroyed by them.

Howe the king of *Beragua* entertayned the Lieutenaut, and of the great plentie of golde in the ryuer of *Duraba*, and in al the regions there about, also in rootes of trees and stones, and in maner in al ryuers.

Howe the Lieutenaut and his company woulde haue erected a colonic besyde the ryuer of *Beragua*, & was repulled by thimhabitautes.

Howe the Admiral fel into the handes of the Barbarians of the Iland of *Iamaica*, where he liued miserably the space of tenne monethes, and by what chaunce he was saued and came to the Ilande of *Hispaniola*.

Of holosome regions, temperate ayre, and continual spyng al the whole ycere : also of certayne people which honour golde religiously, buryng theyr golden haruest.

Of the mountaynes of *Beragua*, beyng fytie myles in length, and higher then the cloudes : also the discription of other mountaynes and regions thereabout, comparng the same to *Italy*.

*Colonus* his opinion as touchyng the supposed continent and ioynyng of the north and south Ocean : also of the breadth of the sayde continent or firme lande.

Of the regions of *Vraba* & *Beragua*, and the great ryuer *Maragnonus*, and the ryuer of *Dabaiba* or *Santi Iohannis* : also of certayne maryshes and desolate wayes, and of Dragons and Crocodiles engendred in the same.

Of .xx. golden ryuers about *Dariena*, and of certayne precious stones, especially a Diamonde of marueylous byggnesse bought in the prouince of *Paria*.

Of the heroical factes of the Spaniards, and howe they contemne effeminate pleasures : also a similitude prouing great plentie

plentie of golde and precious stones.

*The contentes of the fift booke. Fol. 119.*

The nauigation of *Petrus Arias* fro m *Spainne* to *Hispaniola* and *Dariena*, and of the Ilandes of *Canarie*: also of the Ilandes of *Madanino*, *Guadalupea*, and *Galanta*.

Of the sea of hearbes, & mountaynes couered with snow : also of the swyft course of the sea towards the West.

Of the ryuer *Gaira*, the region *Caramairi*, and the port *Carthago*, and *Santa Martha* : also of *Americus Vespurius*, and his expert cunnyng in the knowledge of the carde, compasse, and quadrant.

Howe the Canibales assailed *Petrus Arias* with his whole nauie, and shot of theyr venomous arrowes euen in the sea, also of theyr houses and housholde stuffe.

How *Gonsalus Ouiedus* founde a Saphire bygger then a goose egge : also *Emerodes*, *Calcibonies*, *Jaspers*, and *Amber* of the mountaynes.

Of woods of Brasyle trees, plentie of gold, and marchantes of metals, founde in the regions of *Caramairi*, *Gaira*, and *Saturma* : also of a straunge kynde of marchaundies exercised among the people of *Zuma*.

That the region of *Caramairi* is lyke to an earthy Paradise, & of the fruitfull mountaynes and pleasaunt gardens of the same.

Of many goodly countreis made desolate by the fiercenesse of the Canibales, and of diuers kyndes of bread made of rootes : also of the maner of plantyng the roote of *Iucca*, whose iuise is deadly poyson in the Ilandes, and without hurt in the continent or fyrre lande.

Of certayne golden ryuers, Hartes, wyld Boozes, foules, gossampine, whyte marble, and holosome ayre : also of the great ryuer *Maragnonus*, disceding from the mountaynes couered with snowe, called *Serra Neuata*.

How *Petrus Arias* wasted certayne Ilandes of the Canibales, & how by the swyft course of the sea, his shypps were caried in one night fourtie leagues beyonde the estimation of the best pilotes.

*The contentes of the sixt booke. Fol. 124.*

Of sundry opinions why the sea runneth with so swyft a course from the East to the West, and of the great gulfe of the

the North part of the fyne lande.

The viage of *Sebastian Cabot*, from England to the frozen sea, and howe beyng repulsd with Ice in the moneth of Iuly, he sayled farre Westwarde.

Of people appparelled with beastes skinner, and how Beares take fyshes in the sea, and eate them.

How *Sebastian Cabot*, after that he had discovered the lande of *Baccallaos* or *Baccallearum*, was called out of Englande into Spayne, where he was made one of the assistance of the counsaile of the affayres of India, and of his second viage.

Of the Islande *Fortis*, and howe a great foule as bygge as a Storke lyghted in the governours shipp: also howe he arryved at *Dariena* with the kinges nauie.

Howe *Vaschus* receyved the new governour, and of habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall.

How *Petrus Arias* the new governour distributed his armie to conquere the South regions ryche in golde, and to erect new colonies in the same.

Of the ryche golde mynes of *Dabaiba*, and of the expedition agaynst the kyng of that region.

Of the violent course of the sea from the East to the West, and of the difficult saylyng agaynst the same.

Of the pestiferous and unhollome ayre of *Sancta Maria Antiqua* in *Dariena*, and how the Spaniards were of necessitie enforced to plant theyr fyrst colonie and habitation there.

The cause of the varietie of regions lying all vnder one degree or paralel, and by what meanes the Sonne beames are cause of feruent heate.

Of toades and flees engendred of droppes of water, and of a house set on fyre with lyghtnyng.

Of a Dogge deuoured of a Crocodile, and of benemous bytyng of great Bats: also of Lions, Tigers, & other wilde beastes.

How in these regions all foure footed beastes growe to a bigger quantitie then they which were of y<sup>e</sup> fyrst broode: also of certayne trees of whose planckes if shypps be made, they are safe from the wormes called *Broma* or *Bissas*.

Of a tree whose wood is present popson yf it be only boorne about, and of an hearbe that is a preseruatiue agaynst the same.

Of

Of the ryche Islandes of the south sea, and of certayne expeditions agaynst the Canibales.

The contentes of the .vii. booke, Fol. 130.

The particuler description of the Islande of *Hispaniola*, and of the ryche Island called *Margaritea Diues*, lying in the South sea: also of the great abundaunce of bygge pearles founde in the same.

Howe the auctoure compareth *Hispaniola* to the earthly Paradise, and howe it farre excelleth Italy in fertilitie and temperate ayre.

Of the fyrst inhabitours of *Hispaniola*, and of the Islandes of *Canarie*.

Howe the inhabitants of *Hispaniola* in theyr songues and rhymes had certayne propheties that appparelled men shoulde come to theyr countrey, and byng them into seruitude, and of theyr familiaritie with spirites: also howe those spirites haue no more appeared to them since they were baptised.

Of theyr expertenesse in swymmyng, and of theyr delicate Serpentes, byrdes, foules, and Poppingays.

Of the fourme and situation of *Hispaniola* neere the Equinoctiall, and howe colde is in some place thereof accidentall, and not by the situation of the region.

Of the Oren and Swyne of exceedyng bygnesse, and of cares of wheat as bygge as a mans arme in the byawne: also howe the Swyne are fedde with *Mirobalanes*, &c.

Of plentie of golde, Brasyle, Mastix, Gossampyne, *Eletturum*, & of thincommodities of intemperate regions.

Of dyuers languages in the Islande, and howe the prouinces are diuided into regions.

Howe *Andreas Moralis* sayled into a daungerous and darke caue within the rocke of a mountayne, and of whole ryuers deuoured of suche caues: also of the conflict of the waters.

Of a standyng poole in the toppe of an hygh mountayne: & how fearne and hramble bushes growe onely in colde regions.

The Contentes of the .viii. booke, Fol. 135.

Of a great lake or standyng poole of sowre and salte water, and of the sea fyshes in the same in the myd lande of the Islande: also of deuouryng fyshes called *Tiburoni*.

Of

Of the ryuers fallng into the lakes, and of .CC. springes in the space of a furlong.

A marueylous hystorie of a kyng stryken dumbe and lame by a myracle, and of the Indian language.

Howe suche as are drowned in the lake, are neuer cast vp agayne, and of the Ilande *Guarizacca* in the myddest of a standing lake: also of a lake of freshe water, and an other of salte and freshe water.

Of a large playne of two hundred myles in length, and another of an hundred and twentie.

Of the marueilous fysh or monster of the sea, called *Manati*, or *Matum*, fedde with mans handes, and howe the carpeth men ouer the lake.

Of the mountaynes, vales, hylles, playnes, and ryuers of *Hispaniola*, and howe golde is founde in all mountaynes, and golde and fysh in all ryuers.

Of salte bayes, and howe the ryuers haue theyr increase from the caues of the mountaynes: also howe there is no hurtefull beast in the Ilande.

Of the pleasures of *Hispaniola*, and of the region of *Cotobi* wel inhabited, & situate in a plaine in the toppes of mountaynes reachyng to the cloudes.

Of moderate colde in the mountaynes, and of fearne of marueylous bygnesse.

Howe pure and massie golde is founde in the region of *Cotay* or *Cotobi*, and that the vaine of gold is a spynge tree: also of the rootes, branches, and floures of the same, and howe certayne caues are sustented with pyllers of golde.

What gold is brought yeerely from *Hispaniola* into Spaine, and of the salte of the mountaynes, being as hard as stones, and cleare as crystall: also springes of salte, freshe, & lowe water.

Of certayne wyld men, lyuing in caues and demes without any certayne language, and of their marueylous swiftnesse a foote.

Of pytche of the rocke, and two kyndes of trees, and of the leafe of a tree vsed in the steede of paper: also howe the inhabitants thynke that the Chyistians can make those leaues speake and disclose all secretes.

Of a strong coloure made of the iuice of a certayne apple, and

and of the hearbe whose smoke is poyson.

*The contentes of the nienth booke. Fol. 142.*

Of the kindes of frutes wherewith the inhabitauntes of *Hispaniola* lyued fyrst, and how they came to the knowledge of *Iucca*: also how *Ceres* fyrst founde Wheate and Barley in Egypt.

Why theyr kynges are called by diuers names, and by what names they salute the kynges chyldren when they are bozne.

How they make theyr testamentes, and how certayne of the kynges wyues and concubines are buried with them.

Of the variable motions of the elementes in *Hispaniola*, and where it rayneth but litle, and where muche.

Of the colonies and villages that the Spaniardes haue builded in *Hispaniola*, and of the other Ilandes about the same.

Of a spring, whiche runnyng vnder the sea from *Hispaniola*, breaketh forth in the Iland of *Arethusa*: also of the habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall, and of the ryche golde mynes of the Ilande of *Cuba*.

Of the Gumme called *Anima Album*, and of the *Canibales*, also wherby it was thought that there were Ilandes of women.

Of hony founde in trees and rockes, and of the generation of great Tortoyles, and of theyr egges.

*The contentes of the tenth booke. Fol. 146.*

Of the expedition agaynst the kyng of the Ilande *Dites*, in the South sea, and howe after foure conflictes, submittyng hym selfe, he gaue our men an hundred & ten pounce weyght of great pearles: also howe he agreed to paye yeerely a hundred pounce weyght of pearles for a tribute.

Howe axes and hatchettes are more esteemed then golde, or pearles, and of great plentie of Hartes and Cumnies: also howe the kyng of *Dites* and his familie were baptised.

Of pearles of great pyple, and howe *Paule* the Bishop of Rome bought a pearle for foure and fortie thousand ducades.

Diuers opinions of the generation of pearles, and of a hundred pearles founde in one shel fysh: also of the birth of pearles.

Of the regions of the East syde of the gulfe of *Yraba*, and of the originall of the *Canibales*.

Of



## The contentes of the bookes

Of certayne circumeised people which haue the knowelledge of letters and vse of bookes, and what chaunced of the captaynes which *Petrus Arias* sent forth diuers wayes : also howe *Iohn Solisius* was slayne of the *Canibales*, and of theyr fiercenesse.

Howe *Iohn Pontius* was repulled of the *Canibales*, and of the lewde behaiour of *Iohn Aiora*.

Of the variable fortune of *Gonzalus Badauiotius*, and howe after he had geathered great ryches of gold, he had the ouerthrow, and was spoyled of all.

Of the golden region of *Coiba Dites*, and how theyr slaues are marked in the face.

Of the Ilandes of the South sea, and of the regions from whence the *Portingales* fetch the spycies.

Of a straunge kynde of fowlyng, and of the trees that beare Gourdes.

Of the later opinions as touching the swift course of the Ocean towarde the West, and of the continent of fyre lande : also of the viage from the newe landes to Spayne.

Of the golde mynes of *Dariena*, and of the maner of geathering of golde in the same : also of the droopie of couetousnesse which is not satisfied with ryches.

For the contentes of the booke of the Ilandes of the West Indies seas, reade the margent notes of the same.

FINIS.

(:)

## *Gonzalus Ferdinandus Ouiedus*, 185 of the west Indies.

R. E. To the Reader.



Lthough among dyuers which haue written of the Ocean and VWest Indies, there is none to be compared to Peter Martyr of Angleria, in declaryng by philosophicall discourses the secrete causes of naturall affectes, both as touchyng the lande, the sea, the starres, and other straunge workes of nature: yet foras much as of later dayes those countreys haue been better knowne and searched, and dyuers such particuler and notable thinges founde, as are conteyned in the histories of later writers, among the number of whom, *Conzalus Ferdinandus Ouiedus* (whom learned *Cardanus* compareth to the ancient writers) is doubtlesse the chiefe, I haue therefore thought good to ioine to the Decades of Peter Martyr, certayne notable thinges which I haue geathered out of his booke, intituled the Summarie or abridgement of his generall hystorie of the west Indies, written in the firme lande of the same, in the citie of *Sancti Maria Antiqua* in *Dariena* (where he dwelt & was gouernor many yceres) and dedicated to Themperours maiestie, as may appeare by the Epistle folowyng.

Bb.i.

To

To the most hygh and myghtie prince Charles, the fyft of  
that name, Emperour of Rome, Kyng of Spaine, & of the two  
Sicilies, of both the sydes of the streyght of Faro, Kyng of  
Hierusalem and Hungarie, Duke of Burgonie, and Earle of  
Flanders, Lord and inheritour of the firme lande  
and Ilandes of the VVest Ocean. &c. Gon-

*Zalus Ferdinandus Ouiedus*, his most  
humble seruaunt, wyssheth  
health and perpetu-  
all felicitie.



he thinges which principally pre-  
serue and maputayne the workes of  
nature in the memoeries of men, are  
hystories and bookes composed of  
the same: among the whiche certes  
those are esteemed most true and au-  
tenthyke, which haue ben wyrtten by  
wyrtie and expert men, well trauey-  
led in the world, as saythfull witnes-  
ses of such thinges as they haue partly seene, and been partly in-  
formed by credible persons. Of this mynde and opinion was  
Ptoleme, who better then any other authour hath wyrtten in xxxvii.  
bookes all that pertaineth to the naturall hystorie, conteyned all  
in one volume, dedicated to *Vespasian* The Emperour: Wherin, as  
a prudent historiographer, he declareth such thinges as hee had  
heard, attributing the second authoritie to such as he had redde in  
authours that wrote before him: And thysdly ioyned to the same  
hystorie, such thinges as he him selfe had seene, as most certayne  
testimonie. Whose example I folowynge, will in this my breefe  
summarie, reduce and represent to your maiesties memorie such  
thinges as I haue seene in your Emperre of the West Indies,  
aswell in the Ilandes as in the firme lande of the Ocean sea,  
where I haue serued now moze then twelue yeeres in the place  
of surueyer of the golde mynes, by the commaundement of the  
Catholyke kyng *Don Fernando*, the fyft of that name, and graund-  
father vnto your maiestie, to whom God gaue great fame and  
gloire: Since whose death also I haue lykewyse serued, and  
trust

trust whyle the rest of my lyfe yet remaineth, to serue your ma-  
iestie, as shall please you to commaunde. As touchyng whiche  
thinges, and suche other lyke, I haue moze largely wyrtten in an  
hystorie begun asloone as my age was ripe to take such matters  
in hande: Wherin furthermoze I haue made mention of suche  
thinges as haue chaunced in Spayne, from the yeere 1494. vnto  
this tyme: addyng also therevnto suche thinges woortly me-  
mozie, as I haue obserued in other realmes and prouinces where  
I haue traueyled, and haue lykewyse particularly wyrtten the  
lyues and woortly actes of the catholyke Princes of famous me-  
mozie *Don Fernando*, and Lady *Elizabeth* his wyfe, to theyr  
last dayes. After whose fruition of heauenly Paradyse, I haue  
noted such thinges as haue chaunced in your most fortunate suc-  
cession: not omitting particularly to wyrtte a large booke of  
suche thinges as haue seemed most woortly to bee noted, as tou-  
chyng your maiesties Indies. But forasmuch as that volume  
remaineth in the cite of *San. Dominico*, in the Ilande of *His-  
paniola*, where I dwell, and am placed in householde, with wyfe,  
chyl dren, and famylie, I haue brought no moze with me of that  
my wyrtynge, then I beare in memorie, determining (notwith-  
standyng) for your maiesties recreation, to make a breefe rehear-  
sal of certayne notable thinges, wherof I haue moze largely en-  
treated in my sayd generall hystorie, and such as may seeme most  
woortly to be redde of your maiestie: Of the which, although a  
great parte haue been wyrtten by other, who haue also seene the  
same, yet perhappes they are not so exactly and particularly de-  
scribed as of mee, forasmuche as in maner all that traueyle into  
these Indies haue greater respect to luke and gaynee, then dili-  
gently to search the workes of nature, whervnto I haue ben eter-  
nally inclined, & haue therfore with all possible endeuour ap-  
plied myne eyes & intelligence to fynde the same. And this pre-  
sent Summarie shall not be contrary or dyuers from my larger  
hystorie, wherein (as I haue sayde) I haue moze amply declared  
these thinges: but shal onely moze breefely expresse the effect there-  
of, vntill such tyme as God shall restore me to myne owne house,  
where I may accompysh and fynyshe my sayde generall hysto-  
rie. Whervnto to gyue the fyrt principle, I say, that *Don Chri-  
stopher Colon* (as it is well knowen) being the fyrt Admirall of

this India, discovered the same in the dayes of the Catholyke kyng Don Ferdinando, and the lady Elizabeth his wyfe, graunde father and graundmother vnto your maiestie, in the yeeere. 1491. and came to Barzalona in the yeeere. 1492. with the fyrst Indians, and ocher shewes and prooves of the great ryches and notice of this west Empire: The which gyft and benefite was suche, that it is vnto this day one of the greatest that euer any subiecte or seruant hath done for his prince or countrey, as is manifest to the whole worlde. And to say the trueth, this shall doubtlesse bee so commodious and profytable vnto the whole realme of Spayne, that I repute him no good Castilian or Spanyarde that doeth not recognise the same. And (as I haue sayde before) forasmuche as in my sayde generall historie I haue more largely intreated of these thinges, I intende at this present only briezely to rehearse certayne especiall thinges, the whiche surely are very fewe in respecte of the thousandes that myght be sayde in this behalfe. Fyrst therefore I will speake somewhat of the nauigation into these parties, then of the generation of the nations which are founde in the same, with theyr rytes, customes, and ceremonies: also of beastes, foules, byrdes, woormes, fyshes, seas, ryuers, springes, trees, plantes, hearbes, and dyuers other thinges, whiche are engendered both on the lande and in the water. And forasmuche as I am one of thorder and company of them that are appoynted to returne into these regions to serue your maiestie, if therefore the thinges conteyned in this booke shall not be distincte in suche order as I promised to perfourme in my greater woork, I desyre your maiestie to haue no respect herevnto, but rather to consider the noueltie of such straunge thinges as I haue herein declared, whiche is the chiefe ende that moued mee to wyte: Protestyng, that in this Summarie I haue wrytten the trueth of suche thinges as came to my remembraunce, whereof not onely I my selfe can testifie, but also dyuers other worthy and credible men, which haue been in those regions, and are now present in your maiesties courte. And thus it shall suffice to haue sayde thus much vnto your maiestie, in maner of a prohemie vnto this present woork, whiche I most humbly desyre your maiestie as thankefully to accept, as I haue wrytten it faithfully.

Of

Of the ordinary nauigation from Spayne  
to the west Indies.



The nauigation which is commonly made from Spayne to the west India, is from Siuile, where your maiestie haue your house of contraction for those partes, with also your officers therevnto partepnyng, of whom the captaynes take theyr passeporte and lycence. The patrones of suche shippes as are appoynted to these viages, imbarke them selues at San Luca di Barameda, where the riuer Cuadalchiber entrech into the Ocean sea, and from hence they folow their course toward the Ilands of Canarie. Of these seuen Ilandes, they commonly touche two, that is, eyther *Grancanaria* or *Gomera*: and here the shippes are furnished with freshe water, fuell, cheefe, beefe, and suche other thinges, which may seeme requisite to bee added to suche as they byng with them out of Spayne. From Spayne to these Ilandes, is commonly eyght dayes sayling, or little more or lesse, and when they are arryued there, they haue sayled two hundred and fytie leagues, whiche make a thousand myles, accompting foure myles to a league, as is their maner to reckon by sea. Departing from the sayd Ilandes to folow their course, the shippes tary. xxv. dayes, or a little more or lesse, before they see the fyrst lande of the Ilandes that lye before that whiche they call *La Spagnuola* or *Hispaniola*, and the lande that is commonly fyrst seene, is one of these Ilandes which they call *Ogni sancti Marigalante* (or *Galanta*) *La Desseada* (otherwise called *Desiderata*) *Matanino*, *Dominica*, *Guadalupea*, *San Christoual*, or some other of the Ilandes, whereof there are a great multitude lying about these aforesayde. Yet it sometymes so chaunceth, that the shippes passe without the sight of any of the sayd Ilandes, or any other that are within that course, vntill they come to the Ilande of *Sancti Iohannis*, or *Hispaniola*, or *Iamaica*, or *Cuba*, which are before the other. It may also chaunce that they auerpasse all these lykewyse, vntyll they fall vppon the coastes

Bb.iii.

of

of the firme lande. But this chaunceth when the pilot is not well practised in this nauigation, or not perfect in the true carde. But making this viage with experte maryners (whereof there is nowe great plentie) one of the sayde fyrst Ilandes shall euer bee knowen. And from the Ilandes of Canarie to one of the fyrst of these, the distaunce is niene hundred leagues by sayling, or more, and from hence to the citie of saint Dominike, which is in the Island of Hispaniola, is a hundred and fytie leagues: so that from Spayne hitherto, is a thousand and three hundred leagues. Yet forasmuche as sometymes the nauigation proceedeth not so directly, but that it chaunceth to wander euer on the one syde or on the other, we may well say that they haue now sayled a thousand and fyue hundred leagues, and more. And if the nauigation bee slow, by reason of some hynderaunce, it commonly chaunceth to be fynished in xxxv. or xl. dayes: and this happeneth for the most parte, not accomptyng the extremes, that is, eyther of them that haue slowe passage, or of them that arryue in very short tyme: for we ought to consyder that which chaunceth most commonly. The returne from those partes to Spayne, is not fynished without longer tyme, as in the space of fiftie dayes, or a litle more or lesse. Neuerthelesse in this present yeere of. 1525. there came foure shippes from the Islande of San Dominico, to saint Luca in Spayne, in. xlv. dayes: But (as I haue sayde) we ought not to iudge of that which chaunceth seldome, but of that which happeneth most ordinarily. This nauigation is very safe, and much bled, euen vnto the sayde Island. And from this to the firme land, the shippes trauele diuers wayes for the space of fyue, sixe, or seuen dayes sayling, or more, accordyng to the partes or coastes whither they directe theyr viages, forasmuch as the sayde fyne lande is very great and large, and many nauigations and viages are directed to dyuers partes of the same: Yet to the firme land, which is nearest to this Island, and lyeth directly agaynst San Dominico, the passage is finished in the tyme aforesayde. But it shalbe much better to remit all this to the carde of these nauigations, and the new Cosmographie, of the whiche no parte was knowne to Ptolome, or any other of the olde wyrters.

Of

Of two notable thinges as touching the west Indies, and of the great rycheesse brought from thence into Spayne.



After my vniuersall discription of the historie of the Indies, there commeth to my remembraunce two thinges chiefly to be noted as touchyng The empire of these West Indies, pertaining to the dominion of your maiestie: and these, besyde the other particulars whereof I haue sufficiently spoken, are to be considered as thinges of great importance. Whereof, the one is the shortnesse of the way, & with what expedition your maiesties shippes may passe beyonde the mayne firme lande of these Indies, into the new South sea, called *Mare del Sur*, lying beyond the same, & this to thintent to come to the Ilandes where the spices grow, beside the other innumerable rycheesse of y kingdoms & seignories which confine with the said sea, where are so many people & nations of dyuers tongues & maners. The other thing, is to consider howe innumerable treasures are entred into Spayne by these Indies, as well that which commeth dayly from thence, as also that is continually to be looked for, both of gold & pearle, & other marchaundies, which are first brought into this your realme of Spayne before they are scene of other nations, or traded into other realmes: Whereby not onely this your realme is greatly enriched, but also the benefite thereof reboundeth to the great profite of other countreys which are neare thereunto. A testimonie of this, are the double ducades which your maiestie haue caused to bee coyned, and are dispearsed throughout the whole worlde: But after they are once passed out of this your realme, they neuer returne againe, because they are the best currant money of the worlde. And therefore, if after they haue been in the handes of straungers, they chaunce to bee returned agayne into Spayne, they come disguised in an other habite, and are diminished of the goodnesse of theyr golde, with the stampe of your maiestie chaunged: So that if it were not for theyr suche defacynge in other realmes for the cause aforesayde, there should not bee founde so great quantitie of fyne golde of the coyne

Bb.iii.

of

of any prince in the world as of your maiesties : and the cause of all this, are your Indies.

Of the mynes of golde, and the manner of working in them.



This particuler of the mynes of gold, is a thing greatly to bee noted, and I may much better speake hereof the any other man, forasmuch as there are now, xii. yeeres past since I serued in the place of the surueier of y<sup>e</sup> melting shops parteyning to the gold mynes of y<sup>e</sup> firme land, and was the gouernour of the mynes of the Catholike kyng *Don Fernando*, after whose departure from this lyfe, I serued long in the same roome in the name of your maiestie : By reason wherof, I haue had great occasion to know how gold is found and wrought out of the mynes, and doe know ryght well y<sup>e</sup> this land is exceeding ryche, hauing by my accompt, and by the labour of my Indians & slaues, geathered and syned a great portion of the same, & may therfore the better affyrme this by testimony of sight. For I am well assured, that in no part of *Castilia del oro*, that is, golden Castile (otherwise called *Beragua*) no man coulde aske mee of the mynes of golde, but that I durst haue bounde my selfe to haue discovered them in the space of ten leagues of the countrey where it should haue been demaunded me, and the same to be very ryche: for I was allowed all manner of charges to make search for the same. And although gold be found in maner euery where in these regions of golden Castile, yet ought we not in euery place to bestow the trauel & charge to great it out, because it is of lesse quantitie and goodnesse in some place then in some. And the myne or beyne which ought to be folowed, ought to be in a place which may stand to saue much of y<sup>e</sup> charges of the labourers, and for the administration of other necessary thinges, that the charges may be recompenced with gaynes: for there is no doubt but that gold shalbe found more or lesse in euery place. And the golde which is founde in golden Castile, is very good, & of xxii. carates or better in fynesse. Furthermore, besyde this great quantitie of gold, which I haue sayd to be found in the mynes,

mynes, there is also from day to day found, or otherwyle gotten, great treasure of such wrought gold as hath ben in y<sup>e</sup> custodie of the subdued Indians & theyr kynges, aswel of such as they haue geuen for theyr fyne and raurfome, or otherwyle, as frendes to the Christians, besyde that which hath ben violently taken from the rebelles: but the greatest parte of the wrought golde which the Indians haue, is base, and holdeth somewhat of copper, of this they make brassettes and chaynes, and in the same they close theyr iewels which theyr women are accustomed to weare, & esteemed more then al the riches of the worlde. The maner howe golde is geathered, is this, eyther of suche as is founde in *Zauana*, that is to saye in the playnes and ryuers of the champion countrey beyng without trees, whether the earth be with grasse or without, or of suche as is sometymes founde on the land without the ryuers in places where trees growe, so that to come by the same, it shalbe requisite to cut downe many and great trees. But after which so euer of these two maners it be founde, eyther in the ryuers or breaches of waters, or els in the earth, I wyl shewe howe it is founde in both these places, and howe it is separate and purged. Therefore when the myne or beyne is discovered, this chaunceth by searchoyng and prouyng in such places as by certayne signes and tokens do appeare to skylful men apte for the generation of golde, and to holde golde: and when they haue found it, they folowe the myne, and labour it, whether it be in the ryuer, or in the playne, as I haue sayde. And if it be founde on the playne, fyrst they make the place very cleane where they entende to dygge, then they dygge eyght or tenne foote in length, and as muche in breadth: but they goe no deeper then a spanne or two, or more, as shal seme best to the maister of the myne, dyggyng equally, then they washe all the earth which they haue taken out of the sayde space, and if herein they fynde any golde, they folowe it, and if not, they dygge a spanne deeper, and washe the earth as they dyd before: and if then also they fynde nothyng, they continue in diggyng and washyng y<sup>e</sup> earth as before, vntyl they come to the harde rocke or stone: and if in fine they fynde no golde there, they folowe no further to seeke golde in that place, but goe to an other part. And it is to be understood, that when they haue founde



founde the myne, they folowe it in dyggyng, in the same measure in leuell and deapth, vntyll they haue made an ende of all the myne whiche that place conteyneth, if it appeare to be riche. This myne ought to consist of certayne feete or pales in length or breadth, accordyng to certayne orders determined, and within that compasse of earth, it is not lawfull for any other to digge for golde: And where as endeth the myne of hym that fyrste founde the golde, immediatly it is lawfull for any other man that wyll, with a staffe to assigne hym selfe a place by the syde of the same, inclosing it with stakes or pales as his owne. These mines of *Zauana* (that is, such as are found in the plaines) ought euer to be sought neare to some ryuer or brooke, or spring of water, or dyke, or standyng poole, to thende that the golde may be washed, for the which purpose they vse the labour of certayne Indians, as they do other in dyggyng of the myne. And when they haue dygged out the myne, they fyl certayne trapes with that earth, whiche other Indians haue the charge immediatly to receyue at theyr handes, and to cary those trapes of earth to the water, where it may bee washed: Yet do not they that byng it, washe it, but deliuer it to other, puttyng it out of theyr owne trapes into theyrs, whiche they haue redy in theyr handes to receyue it. These washers for the most part are the Indian women, because this woozke is of lesse paine and traueyle then any other. These women when they washe, are accustomed to sit by the water syde, with theyr legges in the water euen vp to the knees, or lesse, as the place serueth theyr purpose: and thus holdyng the trapes with earth in theyr handes by h handles thereof, and puttyng the same into the water, they moue them rounde about, after the maner of syftyng, with a certayne aptnesse, in suche sorte that there entreth no more water into the traps then serueth theyr turne, and with the selfe same apte mouyng of theyr traps in the water, they euer auoyde the foule water with the earth out of the one syde of the vessel, and receyue in cleane water on the other syde thereof, so that by this meanes by litle and litle, the water washeth the earth as the lyghter substance of the traps, and the golde as the heauyer matter resteth in the bottome of the same, beyng rounde and holowe in the myddest lyke vnto a barbars basen: And when  
all

all the earth is auoyded, and the gold geathered together in the bottome of the tray, they put it a part, and returne to take more earth, whiche they washe continually as before. And thus they that labour in this woozke, do geather dailye suche portion of golde as shall please God to graunt to the Patrones of these Indians, and suche other as traueyle in the same. Furthermore it is to be noted, that for euery two Indians that washe, it is requisite that two other serue them to byng earth from the myne, and other two to breake the same small, and fyl theyr trapes therewith. Also helpde these labourers, it is necessarye that there be other people in the place where they woozke & rest in the night: these are suche as make theyr bread, and prouide for victuals, and other necessaries. So that to conclude, there are in all, salue persons ordinarilie assigned to euery tray of washers. There is an other manner of workyng the mines, in ryuers or brookes of runnyng waters: and this is, that in auoydyng the water of his course, after that the beddes of the ryuers are drye and utterly emptied, they fynde golde among the breaches, clystes, and crystes of stones, and among all that is in the bottome of the chanell, and where naturally the ryuer runneth of greatest force: So that it chaunceth sometyme, that when the bedde of the ryuer is good and ryche, they fynde in it great quantitie of gold. And therfore your Maiestie ought to vnderstand for a general rule, as it appeareth in fact, that all golde is engendred in the toppes and hyghest places of the mountaynes, and in continuance of tyme is by litle and litle brought downe to the vales and playnes by shewres of rayne, and the falles of spraynges, ryuers, and brookes, hauyng theyr originall in the mountaynes, and descending from the same, notwithstanding it is oftentimes founde in the playnes farre from the mountaynes. But when it chaunceth to be founde in great quantitie, it is for the most part among the mountaynes, and in the ryuers, or theyr branches, more then in any other part of the playne: and in these two maners it is commonly founde most abundantly. And for the better prooofe that golde is engendred on hygh, and is brought downe into the lowe places, I haue one great token therof, whiche causeth me to beleue it for certayne: and this is, to consyder that coles neuer putrefie nor  
corrupte

corrupt vnder the grounde, if they be made of strong woodde. Wherby it chaunceth, that dyggynge the earth by the fouldes or indented places of the mountaynes, or on the spydes, & breakynge a myne in the earth where it had been broken before, and hauing now dygged one or two or three holes in measure, the myners founde certayne coles of wood vnder the same leuel where they founde golde, and this I say in the earth whiche was taken for a Virgin, that is to saye, such as had not before been opened for any myne: the whiche coles coulde not naturally be engendred there, or enter in by any meanes, but when the superficial part of the earth was equal with the leuel where the coles were founde, it is like that the coles were left there by some occasion of fyre, and that they fastened there in tyme, and that afterwards in long continuance of tyme, they were by litle and litle couered with the earth, whiche the often shewes of rayne washed from the mountaynes, so that by the course of yeres the earth ouergrewe the coles vnto the sayd leuell & measure, which had before tyme been the superficial part of the earth, where the coles and golde were found togeather: whereby it may appeare that the golde was no more engendred there then were the coles, but brought thither from the mountaynes by the falles of waters as we haue sayd, forasmuch as the mountaynes are the Matrices and bowels of all ryche metals. Further and besyde this, I say that in howe muche more the golde is gone farre from the naturall place of his generation to the place where it is founde, it is so much the more purified and fined, and of a better caract, and the nearer that it is founde to his proper myne or veyne where it is engendred, it is so much the baser, fouler, and more crude, and of a baser alay and caract, and doth wast so muche the more in meltynge, and remayneth more brickle. Sometymes there are founde graines of golde of great quantitie, and of great weyght aboue the earth, and sometymes also vnder the earth: And the greatest of all other that was founde to this day in the Indies, was that whiche was lost in the sea about the Ilande Beata, whiche weyghed three thousande and two hundred Castellans of golde, whiche are in value foure thousand a hundred thyrtye and eight ducades of golde, whiche weigh one Arona and seven pounde, or thyrtye and two pounde, after twelue ounces

res to the pounde, whiche make threescore and foure markes of golde. And I sawe in the yere .1515. in the handes of Michel Passamonte treasurer to your maiestie, two graines, of the whiche one wayed seuen pounde, whiche are .xiii. markes, and are in value about threescore and fyue ducades of golde every marke: the other was of .x. markes, whiche are fyue pounde of lyke value, and of very good golde of .xxii. caractes, and better: There are also founde many other great graynes, although not equall vnto these in bygnesse. And forasmuch as I haue spoken of gold, I haue thought good to declare somewhat howe the Indians can very excellently gyfte suche vesselles of copper and base golde as they make: for they can geue them so fayre and doryshyng a coloure, that al the masse which they gyft, appeareth as though it were golde of .xxii. caractes, and better. This colour they geue with a certayne hearbe, as though it were wrought by the art of any goldsmith of Spayne or Italie, and woulde of them bee esteemed as a thyng of great ryches, and a secrete maner of gyltynge. And for as muche as I haue spoken sufficiently of the mynes of golde, I wyl now speake somewhat of copper, because I haue made mention thereof. This metal is founde in many of the Ilandes of the Indies, and also in the firme lande, and is founde dayly in great quantitie, holdyng somewhat of golde. But for the desyre that our men haue to golde, they nothyng esteeme the copper, although there myght great commoditie and profyt be had thereby, and also by other metals, whiche they nothyng regarde, except syluer, which is founde abundantly in that parte of the firme lande whiche is called newe Spaine. But of this it shal suffice to haue saide thus muche, because I haue more particularly entreated of these thynges in my generall history of India.

A marke is a pounde of viii. ounces summa .xvi. li. weyght .viii. ounces, after xii. ounces to the li.

## Of the maner of fyshyng for pearles.



The Indians exercise this kynde of fyshyng for the most part in the coastes of the North in Cubagua and Cumana, and many of them which dwell in the houses of certayne particular lordes in the Ilandes of San Dominico and Sancti Iohannis, resort to the Ilande of Cubagua

*Cubagua*, for this purpose. Theyr custome is to go fyre, fyre, or seuen, or more in one of theyr *Canooas* or barkes, earely in the mornynge to some place in the sea thereabout, where it appeareth vnto them that there should be great plentie of those shell fyshes (which some call *Bulcles*, and some *Dysters*) wherein pearles are engendred, & there they plunge them selues vnder the water, euen vnto the bottome, sayng one that remaineth in the *Canooa* or boate, which he keepeth styll in one place as neare as he can, lookyng for theyr returne out of the water: And when one of them hath ben a good whyle vnder the water, he ryseth vp, and commeth swymmyng to the boate, entryng into the same, and leaping there al the *Dysters* which he hath taken and brought with hym (for in these are the pearles found) and when he hath there rested hym selfe a whyle, and eaten part of the *Dysters*, he returneth agayne to the water, where he remaineth as long as he can endure, and then ryseth agayne, and swymmeth to the boate with his pray, where he resteth hym as before, and thus continueth course by course, as do all the other in lyke maner, being al most expert swimmers and dyuers: and when the night draweth neare, they returne to the *Ilande* to theyr houses, and present all the *Dysters* to the maister or steward of the house of theyr lord, who hath the charge of the sayde *Indians*, and when he hath geuen them somewhat to eate, he layeth vp the *Dysters* in safe custodie, vntill he haue a great quantitie therof, then he causeth the same fysher men to open them, and they fynd in euery of them pearles, other great or small, two, or three, or foure, and sometymes fyue or fyre, and many small graines, accordyng to the liberalitie of nature. They saue the pearles both smal and great whiche they haue founde, and eyther eate the *Dysters* if they wyl, or cast them away, hauyng so great quantitie thereof, that they in maner abhorre them. These *Dysters* are of harde fleshe, and not so pleasaunt in eatyng as are ours of *Spayne*. This *Iland* of *Cubagua* where this maner of fyshing is exercised, is in the North coaste, and is no bygger then the *Ilande* of *Zeland*. Oftentimes the sea increaseth greatly, and much more then y fishers for pearles would, because where as the place is very deepe, a man can not naturally rest at the bottome,

by

by reason of the abundaunce of ayyr substance whiche is in hym, as I haue oftentimes proued. For although he may by violence and force discende to the bottome, yet are his feete lyfted vp agayne, so that he can contynue no tyme there: and therefore where the sea is very deepe, these *Indian* fyshers vse to tye two great stones about them with a cord, on euery syde one, by the weyght whereof they discende to the bottome, and remaine there vntill they lyseth to ryse agayne, at whiche tyme they bulose the stones, and ryse by at theyr pleasure. But this theyr aptenelle and agilitie in swymmyng, is not the thyng that causeth men most to marueyle: but rather to consyder howe many of them can stande in the botome of the water for the space of one whole houre, and some more or lesse, accordyng as one is more apt heereunto then another. An other thyng there is whiche seemeth to me very straunge: and this is, that where as I haue oftentimes demaunded of some of these *Lordes* of the *Indians*, yf the place where they are accustomed to fysh for pearles, being but litle and narrowe, wyl not in short tyme be utterly without *Dysters*, yf they consume them so fast. They all answered me, that although they be consumed in one part, yet if they goe a fyshyng in an other part, or an other coaste of the *Ilande*, or at an other contrary wynde, and contynue fyshyng there also vntill the *Dysters* be lyke wyse consumed, and then returne agayne to the first place, or any other place where they fished before, and emptied the same in lyke maner, they fynde them agayne as full of *Dysters* as though they had neuer been fyshed. Wherby we may iudge, that these *Dysters* eyther remoue from one place to an other, as do other fishes, or els that they are engendred and encrease in certayne ordinarie places. This *Iland* of *Cumana* & *Cubagua*, where they fysh for these pearles, is in the twelue degree of the part of the said coaste which inclineth toward the North. Likewise pearles are founde and geathered in the South sea, called *Mare del Sur*, & the pearles of this sea are very big, yet not so big as they of the *Iland* of pearles, called *de las perlas*, or *Margaritea*, which the *Indians* call *Terarequi*, lying in the gulfe of *Sainct Michael*, where greater pearles are founde, and of greater pyce, then in any other coaste of the North sea.

in

Of this reade  
more largely in  
the Decades.

By the compu-  
tation of Des-  
nice, foure  
granes make a  
Caract.

in *Cumana*, or any other part. I speake this as a trewe testima-  
nie of syght, hauing been long in that South sea, and makynge  
curious inquisition to be certaynely enfourmed of al that pertaineth  
to the fyshyng of pearles. From this Ilande of *Terarequi*,  
there was brought a pearle of the fashyon of a *Peare*, weighing  
thrytie and one *Caractes*, which *Petrus Arias* had among a thou-  
sand and so many poundes weyght of other pearles, whiche he  
had when captayne *Gaspar Morales* (before *Petrus Arias*) pas-  
sed to the sayde Ilande in the yere .1515. whiche pearle was  
of great pryce. From the sayde Ilande also, came a great and  
very rounde pearle, which I brought out of the sea, this was as  
hygge as a smal pellet of a *Stonebowe*, and of the weyght  
of twentie and syx *Caractes*: I bought it in the citie of *Panama*,  
in the sea of *Sur*, and payde for it syx hundred and sytie tymes the  
weyght therof of good golde, and had it thre yeres in my custo-  
die, and after my returne into *Spayne*, sold it to the Earle of  
*Nansao Marquesse* of *Zenete*, great Chamberlayne to your Ma-  
iestie, who gaue it to the Marquesse his wyfe, the Lady *Mentia*  
of *Mendozza*. I thynke verily that this pearle was the greatest,  
fayrest, and roundest that hath been seene in those partes. For  
your maiestie ought to vnderstand, that in the coaste of the sea of  
*Sur*, there are founde a hundred great pearles rounde after the fa-  
shyon of a *Peare*, to one that is perfectly rounde and great.  
This Ilande of *Terarequi*, which the Christians call the Ilande  
of pearles, and other call it the Ilande of *Floures*, is founde in  
the eight degree on the South syde of the fyne land, in the pro-  
uince of golden Castyle, or *Beragua*, and these are the coastes  
of the fyne lande, where pearles are founde euen vnto this day:  
I vnderstande also that there are pearles founde in the prouince  
and Ilandes of *Cartagenia*. And since your maiestie appoynted  
me a gouernour and captayne, I haue made further searche, and  
am aduertysed that pearles are founde in diuers other places, as  
about the Ilande of *Codego*, whiche lyeth agaynst the mouth of  
that port of the Ilande of *Cartagenia*, which the Indians call *Coro*,  
the which Ilande and port are on the North syde, in the tenth  
degree of the coastes of the fyne lande.

Of

Of the familiaritie which certayne of the Indians  
haue with the deuyll, and howe they receyue  
answere of him of thinges to come.



When the Indians begyn theyr battayle, or  
goe to any combat, or attempt any other  
great matter, they haue certayne elect men,  
whom they reuerently esteeme, & call them  
*Tequinas*, which in theyr tounge is as much  
to say as maisters: notwithstanding that  
they call euery man, that is cunnyng in any  
science, by the same name, as fyshers, fowlers, hunters, or ma-  
kers of nettes. These *Tequinas* therefore, they call the maisters  
of theyr aunsweres, because they speake with *Tuyra*, that is, the  
deuyll, and byng them aunswere what he sayeth, eyther as tou-  
chyng such thinges as they haue to doe, or shall chaunce to them  
the day folowynge, or many dayes to come. For the deuyll, beyng  
so auncient an Astronomer, knoweth the tymes of thinges, and  
seeth howe they are naturally directed and inclyned, and ma-  
keth them beleue that they come so to passe by his ordinaunce,  
as though he were the Lorde and mouer of all that is and shalbe,  
and that hee gyueth the daylyght, and rayne, causeth tempest,  
and ruleth the stations of tymes, gyuyng lyfe, or takynge away  
lyfe, at his pleasure: By reason whereof, the Indians be-  
yng deceyued of hym, and seeynge also suche effectes to come  
certaynely to passe as hee hath tolde them before, beleue hym  
in all other thinges, and honour him in many places with sa-  
crifyses of the blood and lyues of men, and odoriferous spices:  
And when God disposeth the contrary to that whiche the deuyll  
hath spoken in oracle, whereby he is proued a lyer, he causeth the  
*Tequinas* to perswade the people that hee hath chaunged his  
mynd and sentence for some of their synnes, or deuileth some such  
lye as lyketh him best, beyng a skilful maister in such subtille and  
craftie deuises, to deceyue the simple and ignorant people, which  
hath small defence agaynst so mightie and craftie an aduersarie.  
And as they call the deuyll *Tuyra*, so doe they in many places  
call the Christians by the same name, thynkyng that they great-  
ly honour them thereby, as in deede it is a name very fite and  
agreeable

Cc.i.

agreeable to many of them, hauyng layde aparte all honestie and vertue, lyuyng more lyke Dragons then men, among these symple people.

Before thynhabitauntes of the Ilande of *Hispaniola* had receiued the Christian fapth, there was among them a secte of men, whiche liued solitarily in the desartes and woods, & led theyr lyfe in silence and abstinence, more straightly then euer dyd the philosophers of *Pythagoras* secte, absteynyng in lyke maner from the eatyng of all thinges that lyue by blood, contented onely with such fruites, hearbes, and rootes, as the desartes and woods mynistred vnto them to cate: The professours of this secte were called *Piaces*. They gaue them selues to the knowledge of naturall thinges, and vled certayne secrete magicall operations and superstitions, whereby they had familiaritie with spirites, which they allured into theyr owne bodies at such tymes as they would take vppon them to tell of thinges to come, whiche they dyd in maner as foloweth. When any of the kynges had occasion to call any of them out of the desartes for this purpose, theyr custome was to sende them a portion of theyr fyne bread of *Cazabbi* or *Maiyum*, and with humble request and suite to desyre them to tell them of suche thinges as they woulde demaunde. After the request granted, and the place and day appoynted, the *Piaces* commeth, with two of his disciples waytyng on hym, whereof the one byngeth with him a vessell of a secrete water, and the other a litle syluer bell. When he commeth to the place, he sitteth downe on a rounde seate made for hym of purpose, where hauyng his disciples, the one standyng on the one hande, and the other on the other, euen in the presence of the kyng and certayne of his nobles (for the common people are not admitted to these mysteries) and turnyng his face toward the desarte, he begynneth his inchauntment, and calleth the spirite with loude voyce by certayne names, whiche no man vnderstandeth but hee and his disciples. After he hath done thus a whyle, if the spirite yet deferre his comyng, hee bynkethe of the layde water, and therewith wareth hotte and furious, and inuerteth and turneth his inchauntment, and letteth him selfe blood with a thorne, maruelously turmoylyng him selfe, as wee reade of the furious *Symbiles*, not ceassyng vntyl the spirit be come: who at his comyng entreteth

entreteth into him, and ouerthroweth him, as it were a grehound should ouerturne a Squerrell, then for a space, hee seemeth to lye as though hee were in great payne, or in a rapte, woonderfully tormentyng him selfe, duryng whiche agonie, the other disciple shaketh the siluer bell continually. Thus when the agonie is past, and he lyeth quietly (yet without any sense or feelyng) the kyng, or some other in his stead, demaundeth of him what he desirith to know: and the spirit answereth by the mouth of the rapte *Piaces*, with a directe and perfecte answer to all poyntes: Insomuche that on a tyme certayne Spanyarden beyng present at these mysteries with one of the kynges, and in the Spanyshe tounge demaunding the *Piaces* of their shyppes which they looked for out of Spayne, the spirit answered in the Indian tounge, and tolde them what day and houre the shyppes departed from Spayne, how many they were, and what they brought, without sayling in any poynte. If he be also demaunded of the eclipse of the Sunne or Moone (whiche they greatly feare and abhorre) he giueth a perfect answer, and the lyke of tempestes, famine, plentie, warre or peace, and such other thinges. When all the demaundes are finished, his disciples call him aloude, ryngyng the siluer bell at his eare, and blowyng a certayne powder into his nosegaylles, whereby he is raysed as it were from a dead sleape, beyng yet somewhat heauy headed and saynte a good whyle after. Thus beyng agayne rewarded of the kyng with more bread, hee departeth agayne to the desartes with his disciples. But since the Christian fapth hath been dispeared throughout the Ilande, these deuylls the practises haue ceased, and they of the members of the deuyll, are made the members of Christ by baptisme, forsakyng the deuyll and his workes, with the vayne curiositie of desyre of knowledge of thinges to come, whereof for the most parte it is better to be ignorant, then with veraxion to know that which can not be auoyded.

Furthermore, in many places of the firme lande, when any of the kynges dye, all his houlsholde seruantes, as well women as men whiche haue continually serued him, kyll them selues, beleeyng as they are taught by the deuyll *Tyrra*, that they whiche kyll them selues when the kyng dyeth, goe with him to heauen, and serue him in the same place and offyce as they



they dyd befoze on the earth whyle hee lyued : and that all that refuse so to doe, when after they dye by theyr naturall death or otherwyle, theyr soules to dye with theyr bodyes, and to bee dissolued into ayre, and become nothyng, as doe the soules of Haggys, Byrdes, Fyshe, or other brute beastes : and that only the other may enioy the priuiledge of immortalitie for euer, to serue the kyng in heauen . And of this false opinion cometh it, that they which sowe cozne, or set rootes for the kynges bread, and geather the same, are accustomed to kyll them selues, that they may enioy this priuiledge in heauen, and for the same purpose, cause a porzion of the graine of *Maizium*, and a bundle of *Iucca* (whereof theyr bread is made) to be buried with them in their graues, that the same may serue them in heauen, if perhappes there shoulde lacke seedes to sowe, and therefore they take this with them, to begyn withall, until *Tuyra* (who maketh them all these fayre promises) proude them of greater quantitie. This haue I my selfe seene in the toppe of the mountaynes of *Guaturo*, where hauing in ppyson the kyng of that prouince (who rebelled from the obedience of your maiestie) and demaunding of him to whom perteyned those sepulchres or graues which I sawe in his house : hee answered, that they were of certayne Indians which slue them selues at the death of his father . And because they are oftentimes accustomed to bury great quantities of wrought gold with them, I caused twoo graues to be opened, wherein was nothyng founde but a vessel full of the graine of *Maizium*, & a bundle of *Iucca*, as I haue sayde . And demaunding the cause hereof, of the kyng and the other Indians : they answered, that they that were buried there, were the labourers of the ground, and men skylfull in sowynge of seedes, and makynge of bread, and seruantes to the kynges father, and to the ende that their soules shoulde not dye with theyr bodyes, they slue them selues at the death of the kyng theyr maister, to lyue with hym in heauen, and to the intent that they myght serue him there in the same offyce, they reserued that *Maizium* and *Iucca*, to sowe it in heauen . Wherevnto I answered them in this maner, Beholde howe your *Tuyra* deceyueth you, and howe all that hee teacheth you is false. You see howe in so long a tyme since they are dead, they haue not yet taken away this *Maizium* and *Iucca*, which

which is nowe putrified and woozth nothyng, and not lyke to bee sowne in heauen. To this the kyng replied, saying, in that they haue not taken it away, nor sowne it in heauen, the cause is, that they chaunced to fynde enough there, by reason whereof they had no neede of this. To this errour many thinges were sayd, which seemed of litle force to remoue him from his false opinion, and especially any such as at that age are occupped of the deuyl, whom they paynt of the selfe same fourme and colour, as hee appeareth vnto them in dyuers shapen and fourmes. They make also Images of golde, copper, and wood, to the same similitudes, in terrible shapen, and so variable, as the paynters are accustomed to paynt them at the feete of saint Michaell tharchangell, or in any other place, where they paynte them of most horrible portiture. Likewyse when the deuyl greatly intendeth to feare them, hee threatheneth to sende them great tempestes, whiche they call *Furacanas*, or *Haurachanas*, and are so vehement, that they ouerthrow many houses, and great trees. And I haue seene in mountaynes, full of many and great trees, that for the space of thre quarters of a league the mountayne hath been subuerted, and the trees ouerthrowen, and plucked out of the earth with the rootes: a thing doubtesse so fearefull and terrible to behold, that it may verily appeare to bee done by the hande of the deuyl . And in this case the Chyristian men ought to consider with good reason, that in all places where the holy sacrament is reserued, the sayde tempestes are no more so outrageous, or so perillous as they were wont to bee.

Doctrine not  
worthy for a  
chistian man.

Of the temperature of the regions vnder or neare to the burnt lyne, called *Torrida Zona*, or the Equinoctiall, and of the dyuers seasons of the yeere.



The landes and regions that are neare about the clymes of the Equinoctiall lyne, are naturally hot, although they be otherwise temperate by the diuine prouidence : & therefore such fleshe or fysh as is taken and kylled in these regions, can not be preserued from putrification, except it be rosted, sodden, or perboyled, the same day that it is kylld. And wheras I haue sayd, that

such régions are naturally hotte, and yet temperate by the prouidence of God, it is so in deede: and therefore not without cause the auncient aucthours were of opinion, that the burnt lyne, or *Torrída Zona*, where passeth the lyne of the Equinoctiall, shoulde be vnhabitable, by reason the Sun hath greater dominion in that place, then in any other of the sphere, reynaynyng continually betwene the two troppes of Cancer and Capricorne: For when in these regions the earth is opened or dygged from the superficiall parte thereof to the deapth of a mans heygth, it is founde temperate, and within this space the trees and plants fasten and spread their rootes, and no deeper, extendyng the same as farre in breadth in the ground as doe theye branches in the ayre, and enter no deeper into the ground then I haue sayde, because that beneath the deapth of the sayde space of a mans heygth the earth is very hotte, the vpper part beyng temperate and very moyst, as well by reason of the abundaunce of water whiche falleth from heauen vpon that earth at certayne ordinarie seasons of the yeece, as also for the multitude of great ryuers, brookes, springes, and maryshes, whereby the myghtie and supreme Lord which made these landes, hath most prudenly provided for the preservation of the same.

There are also many rough and hygh mountaynes, with temperate ayre, and pleasaunt, cleare, and moderate nyghtes: of the whiche particularitie the auncient wyters hauing no certayne knowledge, affirmed the said burnt line or *Torrída Zona*, or Equinoctiall, to be naturally vnhabitable. As touching which thing I am able to witnesse the contrary by testimonie of syght and feeling, as by most certayne senses, hauing lyued many yeeres in these regions, by reason whereof better credite ought to be giuen to me, then to such as haue grounded their opinion onely vpon coniectures. And to speake further of the situation of these régions, you shall vnderstand that the coaste of the North sea, beyng in the gulfe of *Vraba*, and in the porte of *Dariena*, where the shypps arriue whiche come out of Spayne, is in the sixte degree and a halfe, and in the seuenth, and from sixe and a halfe, vnto eyght, except a small poynt which enureth into the sea toward the North. That poynt which of this lande and new parte of the worlde lyeth moyst toward the East, is the cape of sainct Augustine, which

is

is in the eyght degree: So that the sayd gulfe of *Vraba*, is distant from the Equinoctiall lyne, from a hundred & twentie, to a hundred and thirtie leagues, and three quarters of a league, after that accompte of xvii. leagues and a halfe for euery degree from pole to pole: and thus for a litle more or lesse, goeth all the coaste. By reason whereof, in the citie of *Santa Maria Antiqua* in *Dariena*, and in all that course of the foresayde gulfe of *Vraba*, at all tymes of the yeece the dayes and nyghtes are in maner of equall length: and if there bee any difference betwene them by reason of this small distance from the Equinoctiall, it is so litle, that in xliiii. houres, makyng a naturall day, it can not bee perceyued but by the iudgement of speculatiue men, and such as vnderstande the sphere: From hence the North starre is seene very lowe. And when the starres, whiche are called the guardens of the North starre, are vnder the Chariot, it can not be seene, because it is vnder the horizontall. And whereas I haue sayde before that it rayneth in these regions at certayne ordinarie tymes, it is so in deed: For it is wynter and summer there at contrary tymes to that which is in Spayne, where the greatest colde of frost and rayne is in December and Ianuary, and the greatest heate of summer about saint Iohns day at Hydsommer, or in the moneth of Iuly: But in golden Castile or *Beragua*, it is contrary, for the sommer and tyme of greatest drought & without rayne, is at Christmas, and a moneth before, and a moneth after, & the tyme when it rayneth most, is about Hydsommer, and a moneth before, and a moneth after. And this season which they call wynter, is not for that it is any colder then, then at any other tyme of the yeece, or hotter at Christmas then at other seasons, the tyme in these regions being euery after one maner: but for that, that, in this tyme whiche they call wynter, the Sunne is hydde from theyr sightes, by reason of cloudes and rayne, more then at other times. Yet forasmuche as for the most part of the yeece they lyue in a cleare, open, and temperate ayre, they somewhat shynke and feele a litle colde duryng the tyme of the sayde moyst and cloudy ayre, although it be not colde in deede, or at the least such colde as hath any sensible sharpenesse.

Of dyuers particuler thinges, as woormes, serpentes, beastes, foules, trees, &c.



Any other thinges might be sayd, and much differing from these wherof I haue spoken. But to lette passe the multitude of thinges whiche are as variable as the power of nature is infinite, and to speake of such thinges as come chiefly to my remembraunce, as most worthy to be noted, I will first speake of certayne litle and troublous beastes, which may seeme to bee engendred of nature to molest & vexe men, to shewe them & giue them to vnderstand, how small and vyle a thing may offende and disquiet them, to thende that they may remember the principall end for the which they were created, that is, to know their maker and procurer of their saluation by the way whiche is open to all Christian men, and all other which will open the eyes of theyr vnderstandyng. And although the thinges wherof wee entende nowe to speake, may seeme vyle and litle to be esteemed, yet are they worthy to bee noted and considered, to vnderstande the difference and variable workes of nature. So it is therefore, that whereas in many partes of the firme lande, by the whiche as well the Christians as Indians doe trauaile, there are suche marshes and waters in the way, that they are fayne to go with out breeches among the hearbes and weedes, by reason whereof, certayne smal beasts or woormes (which they cal *Garapates*) much lyke vnto tykes, cleaue fast to their legges. These woormes are as litle as the powder of beaten salt, and cleaue so fast, that they can by no meanes bee taken away, except the place bee noynted with oyle: and after that the legges be noynted a whyle with oyle, or the other partes where these litle tykes are fastened, they scrape the place with a knyfe, and so take them away. But the Indians whiche haue no oyle, smoke them, and burne them with fyre, and abyde great paynes in takyng them away by this meanes. Of other litle beastes whiche trouble men, and are engendred in theyr heades or other partes of theyr bodyes, I say that the Christian men which trauaile into these partes, haue them but seldeome tymes, and that not past one or two, & this al-

so

so very seldeome: For passyng by the lyne of the Diameter where the compasse maketh difference of saylyng by the wynde called *Greco*, (that is, North-east) and *Magistral* (that is, south-west) whiche is in the course of the Ilandes of *Azori*, they sayle but a litle way solowynge our viage by the west, but that all the tyme whiche the Christians cary with them, or are engendred in theyr heades, or other places of theyr bodyes, dye and vterly consume by litle and litle, and are not engendred in India, except in the heades of litle chyldren in those partes, as well among the chyldren of the Christians whiche are bozne there, as also among the naturall Indians, who haue them commonly in theyr heades, and sometymes in other partes of theyr bodyes, and especially they of the prouince of *Cuenca*, whiche is a region containyng more then a hundred leagues in length, and embraceth the one and the other coast of the North sea, and of the East. When these Indians are infected with this fylthynesse, they dresse and cleanse one an other: And they that exercise this, are for the most part women, who eate all that they take, and haue herein suche dexteritie by reason of theyr exercise, that our men can not lyghtly attayne therunto. There is also another thyng greatly to be considered: and this is, howe the Christian men, beyng there cleane from this fylthynesse of India, as well in theyr heades as the rest of theyr bodyes, yet when they retorne to come agayne into Europe, and begyn to arryue in that place of the Ocean sea where we sayde before that these tyme dyed and forsoke them, sodenly in theyr re-passyng by the same clyme (as though these tyme had tarped for them in that place) they can by no meanes auoyde them for the space of certayne dayes, although they change theyr shertes two or three times in a day: These lile are at first as litle as nittes, and growe by litle and litle, vntyl they be of the byggnesse that they are in Spayne. This haue I oftentimes prooued, hauyng nowe foure tymes passed the Ocean sea by this viage. Besyde these woormes and vermy which we haue spoken, there is another litle myschyuous woyme, whiche we may number among the kynnes of fleas, this pestilence the Indians call *Nigua*, and is muche lesse then a flea: it pearseth the fleshe of a man, and so launche or cutteth the same (whyle in

Wipers.

Adders.

In the meane tyme it can neyther be scene nor taken) that from some it hath cut of theyr handes, and from other theyr feete, vntyll the remedy was founde to annoynt the place with oyle, and scrape it with a rasor. In the firme lande in golden Castyle or *Beragua*, there are many vipers lyke vnto them of Spayne: they that are bytten of them, dye in short space, for fewe lyue to the fourth day, except present remedy. Of these, some are of lesse kynde then other, and haue theyr tayle somewhat rounde, and leape in the ayre to assaile men, and for this cause, some call this kynde of vipers *Tyro*: theyr bytting is most venomous, and for the most parte incurable. One of them chaunced to bite an Indian mayde whiche serued me in my house, to whom I caused the Surgians to mynister theyr ordinary cure, but they coulde do her no good, nor yet geat one droppe of blood out of her, but onely a yelow water, so that she dyed the thyrde day for lacke of remedy, as the lyke hath chaunced to dyuers other: This mayde was of the age of .xiii. yeres, and spake the Spanysh tongue as if she had been borne in Castyle: she sayde that the viper whiche byt her on the foote, was two spannes long, or litle lesse, and that to bite her, she lept in the ayre for the space of moze then syxe pases, as I haue hearde the lyke of other credible persons. I haue also scene in the firme lande a kynde of adders, very small, and of seuen or eyght foote long: these are so redde, that in the nyght they appeare lyke burnyng cooles, and in the day seeme as redde as bloodde, these are also venomous, but not so muche as the vipers. There are other muche lesse, and shorter, and blacker: these come out of the ryuers, and wander sometymes farre on the lande, and are lykewyse venomous. There are also other adders of a russet colour: these are somewhat bygger then the viper, and are hurtful and venomous. There are lykewyse an other sort of many colours, and very long: of these I sawe one in the yere of Christ .1515. in the Iland of *Hispaniola*, neere vnto the sea coastes, at the foote of the mountaynes called *Feder-nales*, when this adder was slayne, I measure her, and founde her to be moze then .xx. foote long, & somewhat moze then a mans fyst in byggnesse: and although she had thre or foure deadly woundes with a swoorde, yet dyed she not, nor stonke the same

Dragons.

Spiders

same daye, insomuche that her blood continued warme all that tyme. There are also in the *Maryshes* and *desartes* of the fyne lande many other kyndes of *Lpartes*, *Dragons*, and other diuers kyndes of *Serpentes*, whereof I entende not heere to speake muche, because I haue moze particularly entreated of these thynges in my generall historie of the West Indies. There are also *Spyders* of marueylous byggnesse, and I haue scene some with the bodye and legges bygger then a mans hande extended euery waye, and I once sawe one of suche byggnesse, that only her bodye was as bygge as a Sparrowe, and full of that Laine whereof they make theyr webbes: this was of a darke russet coloure, with eyes greater then the eyes of a Sparowe, they are venomous, and of terrible shape to beholde. There are also *Scorpions*, and dyuers other such venomous woymes. Whereby we may see, that where as naturall causes and influence of the planettes are of strongest actiuitie, they ceasse not to engender and byng forth both good and badde, accordyng to the disposition of the matter, whiche they also doo partly dispose, as the philosphers affyrme. Furthermoze in the fyne lande, there are many *Toades*, beyng very noyous and hurtfull by reason of theyr great multitude, they are not venomous, they are scene in great abundaunce in *Darien*, where they are so bygge that when they dye in the tyme of drouth, the bones of some of them (and especialy the rybbes) are of suche greatnesse, that they appeare to be the bones of Carter, or of some other beastes of the same byggnesse. But as the waters diminishe, and the moysture consumeth in the tyme of drouth (as I haue sayde) they also consume therewith, vntyl the yere next folowynge when the rayne and moysture encrease, at whiche tyme they are scene agayne. Neuerthelesse, at this present there is no such quantitie of them, as was wont to be, by reason that as the lande is better cultured by the Christians, as well by the fellyng of wooddes and shrubbes, as also by the pasture of Kynne, Horses, and other beastes, so is it apparent that this popson diminissheth daylye, whereby that region becommeth moze hollosome and pleasaunt: these *Toades* lyng after thre or foure sortes, for some of them lyng pleasauntly, other lyke ours of Spayne, some also whysle, and other some make an other

Crabbes.

Serpentes cal-  
led Juanni.

other maner of noyle: they are lyke wyse of diuers coloures, as some greene, some russet or gray, and some almost blacke, but of all sortes they are great and fylthy, and noyous by reason of theyr great multitude, yet are they not venemous as I haue sayde. There are also a straunge kynde of Crabbes, whiche come forth of certayne holes of the earth, that they them selues make: the head and bodie of these make one rounde thynge, muche lyke vnto the hood of a Faulkon, hauing foure feete commyng out of the one syde, & as many out of the other: they haue also two mouthes, like vnto a payre of small piners, the one bygger then the other, wherewith they byte, but doo no great hurt, because they are not venemous: theyr skynne and bodie is smooth, and thynne, as is the skynne of a man, sayng that it is somewhat harder, theyr coloure is russet, or whyte, or blew, and walke sydelong, they are very good to be eaten, insomuche that the Christians traauelyng by the fyre lande, haue been greatly nourysed by them, because they are founde in maner euery where: in shap and fourme they are muche like vnto the Crabbe whiche we payne for the signe Cancer, and like vnto those whiche are founde in Spayne in *Andalusia* in the ryuer *Guadalchiber*, where it entreth into the sea, and in the sea coastes there about, sayng that these are of the water, and the other of the lande: they are sometymes hurtfull, so that they that eate of them dye, but this chaunceth only when they haue eaten any venemous thyng, or of the venemous apples wherewith the Canible archers poyson theyr arrowes, whereof I wyll speake hereafter, and for this cause the Christians take heede how they eate of these Crabbes, yf they fynde them neare vnto the sayd apple trees. Further more in these Indies, as wel in the fyre lande, as in the Ilandes, there is founde a kynde of Serpentes, whiche they call *X. V. anas*, whiche some cal *Iuanas*, these are terrible and feareful to syght, and yet not hurtful, they are very delicate to be eaten, and it is not yet knowen whether they be bestes of the lande, or fyshes, because they lyue in the water, and wander in the wooddes, and on the lande: they haue foure feete, and are commonly bygger then Connies, and in some places bygger then Otters, with tayles lyke *Lysaries* or *Cutes*: theyr skynne is spotted, and of the same kynd

kynde of smoothnesse or barennesse, although of dyuers colours: vpon the rydge of theyr backes, they haue many long prickes, theyr teeth are very sharpe, and especially theyr fanges or dogge teeth, theyr throttes are long and large, reachyng from theyr beardes to theyr breastes, of the lyke skynne to the resydue of theyr bodyes: they are dumbe, and haue no voyce, or make any noyle, or crye, although they bee kept tyed to the foote of a chesse, or any other thyng, for the space of .xx. or .xxv. dayes, without any thyng to eate or drynke, except they geue them now and then a litle of the bread of *Cazabbi*, or some suche other thyng: they haue foure feete, and theyr fore feete as long as a mans synger, with clawes lyke the clawes of a byrde, but weaker, and suche as can not graspe or take holde of any thyng: they are muche better to bee eaten then to beholde, for fewe that see them, wyll haue desyre to eate of them, by reason of theyr horrible shap, except suche as haue ben accustomed to the bestes of these regions, whiche are more horrible and feareful, as this is not, but onely in apparence: theyr fleshe is of muche better tast then the fleshe of Connies, and more holosome, for it hurteth none but onely suche as haue had the frenche poxe, insomuche that if they haue been touched of that infirmitie, although they haue ben whole of long tyme, neuerthelesse they feele hurte, and complayne of the earyng of these *Iuanas*, as hath been oftentimes prooued by experience. There are founde in the fyre lande certayne byrdes, so litle, that the whole body of one of them is no bygger then the toppe of the bygge finger of a mans hande, and yet is the bare body without the feathers not halfe so bygge: This byrde, belyde her lictlenesse, is of suche velocitie and swyftnesse in fleeyng, that who so seeth her fleeyng in the ayre, can not see her flap or beate her winges after any other sort then do the Doyres, or humble bees, or Beetles: so that there is no man that seeth her flee, that would thynke her to be any other then a Doyre: they make their nestes accordyng to the proportion of their bygnes, and I haue seene that one of these byrdes with her nest put in a payre of golde weights, altogether hath waide no more then .2. *Tomini*, which are in poise .24. graines, with the feathers, without the which she shoulde haue wayed somewhat lesse. And doubtlesse when I con-

sider



sider the fynenesse of the clawes & feete of these byrdes, I knowe not whereunto I may better lyken them, then to the litle byrdes whiche the lymmers of bookes are accustomed to paynte on the margent of church bookes, and other bookes of diuine seruice. Theyr feathers are of many fayre colours, as golden, yelow, and greene, besyde other variable colours, theyr beake is very long for the proportion of theyr bodies, and as fyne and subtile as a sowynge nedle: they are very hardy, so that when they see a man clime y tree where they haue their nests, they flee at his face, & stryke hym in the eyes, commyng, goyng, and returnyng with such swyftnes, that no man woulde lyghtly beleue it, that hath not seene it: and certaynly these byrdes are so litle, that I durst not haue made mention hereof, if it were not that diuers other which haue seene them as wel as I can beare wytnes of my say- ing: they make their nestes of flockes and heare of cotton, wherof there is great plentie in these regions, and seruetly wel for theyr purpose. But as touchyng the byrdes, foules, and beastes of these Indies, because they are innumerable, both litle and great, I intende not to speake muche heere, because I haue spoken moze largely hereof in my generall hytzoie of the Indies. There is an other kynde of beastes seene in the firme lande, whiche seemeth very strange and marueylous to the Chyrtian men to beholde, and much differyng from al other beastes whiche haue ben seene in other partes of the worlde: these beastes are called *Bardati*, and are foure footed, hauyng their tayle and al the rest of theyr bodies couered onely with a skynne lyke the coperture of a barbed hoise, or the checkered skinne of a Lysart or Crocodile, of coloure betwene white and russet, inclynyng somewhat moze to whyte. This beast is of fourme and shape muche lyke to a barbed hoise, with his barbes and flankets in al poynts, and from vnder that which is the barbe and coperture, the taile cometh forth, and the feete in theyr place, the necke also & the eares in theyr partes, and in fyne al thynges in lyke sorte as in a barbed courser: they are of the bygnesse of one of these common dogges, they are not hurtfull, they are fytly, and haue theyr habitation in certayne hilleckes of earth, where dogging with their feete, they make theyr dens very deepe, & the holes thereof, in likemaner as do Conies, they are very excellent to be eaten, & are

are taken with nettes, and some also kylled with Crosbowes: they are likewise taken oftentymes when the husbandmen burne the stubble in sowynge tyme, or to renue the herbage for Kyne and other beastes. I haue oftentymes eaten of theyr fleshe, which seemeth to me of better tast then Kyndes fleshe, and hollome to be eaten. And if these beastes had euer been seene in these partes of the worlde, where the fyrst barbed hoises had theyr originall, no man woulde iudge but that the fourme and fashyon of the coperture of hoises furnyshed for the warres, was fyrst deuised by the syght of these beastes. There is also in the fyne lande another beast, called *Orso Formigaro*, that is, the Ante beare. This beast in heare and coloure, is muche lyke to the Beare of Spaine, <sup>254 res.</sup> and in maner of the same makynge, saue that he hath a muche longer snout, and is of euyl syght: they are oftentymes taken onely with stauzes, without any other weapon, and are not hurtful, they are also taken with dogges, because they are not naturally armed, although they bite somewhat, they are founde for the most part about and neare to the hyllockes where are great abundaunce of Antes. For in these regions is engendred a certayne kynde of Antes, very litle and blacke, in the feedes and <sup>Antes.</sup> playnes where as growe no trees, where by the instinct of nature these Antes separate them selues to engender farre from the wooddes for feare of these Beares, the which because they are fearefull, vyle, and unarmed (as I haue sayde) they keepe euer in places full of trees, vntyll very famine and necessite, or the great desire that they haue to feede on these Antes, cause them to come out of the wooddes to hunt for them: these Antes make a hyllocke of earth to the heyghe of a man, or somewhat moze or lesse, and as hye as a great chest, & sometymes as hye as a Butte or a Doghead, & as hard as a stone, so that they seeme as though they were stones, set vp to limit the endes & confines of certayne lands. Within these hyllocks, made of most harde earth, are innumerable and infinite litle Antes, the whiche may be geathered by bushelles when the hyllocke is broken: the whiche when it is sometymes moysted by rayne, and then dreyed agayne by the heate of the Sonne, it breaketh, and hath certayne small ryftes, as litle and subtile as the edge of a knyfe, and it seemeth that nature hath geuen sense to these Antes to fynde

suche a matter of earth, wherewith they may make the sayde hyllocke of suche hardnesse, that it may seeme a strong pauement made of lyme and stone: and whereas I haue proued and caused some of them to be broken, I haue founde them of such hardnesse, as yf I had not seene I could not haue beleueed, insomuch that they coulde scarcely be broken with pykes of Iron, so strong fortresses doo these litle beastes make for theyr sauegard against theyr aduersarie the Beare, who is chiefly nourysed by them, and geuen them as an enimie, accordyng to the common prouerbe whiche sayeth, *Non e alcuna persona si libera, a chimanchi il suo Bargello*, that is, there is no man so free, that hath not his persecutor or priuie enimie. And here when I consyder the marueilous prouidence whiche nature hath geuen to these litle bodies, I cal to remembrance the wittie sentence of Plinie, where speakyng of such litle beastes, he sayeth thus, Why do we marueille at the Towrebearyng shoulders of Elephantes, and not rather where nature hath placed so many senses & such industry in such litle bodies? Where is hearing, smelling, seeing, and feeling, yea, where are the baynes and arteries (without which no beast can lyue or moue) in these so litle bodies, whereof some are so small that theyr whole bodies can scarcely be seene of our eyes: What shall we then saye of the partes of the same? Yet euen among these there are many of such sagacity and industry, as the like is not seene in beastes of greater quantitie, no nor yet in man, &c. But to returne to the history. This enimie whiche nature hath geuen to these litle beastes, doeth this maner to assaile them: When he resorteth to the hyllocke where the Antes lie hid as in theyr fortress, he putteth his tongue to one of the ryftes whereof we haue spoken, being as subtil as the edge of a sword, and therewith continuall lickyng, maketh the place moyst, the some and froth of his mouth being of suche propertie, that by continuall lickyng the place, it enlargeth the ryft in such sort by litle and litle, that at the length he easely putteth in his tongue, whiche he hath very long and thynne, and muche disproportionate to his bodie, and when he hath thus made free passage for his tongue into the hyllocke, to put it easely in and out at his pleasure, then he thrusteth it into the hole as farre as he can reach, and so letteth it rest a good space, untill a great quantitie

title of the Antes (whose nature reioyareth in leate and moyster) haue laden his tongue, and as many as he can conteyne in the hollownesse thereof, at which tyme hee sodenly draweth it into his mouth, and eateth them, and returneth agayne to the same practise immediatly, untill he haue eaten as many as him lysteth, or as long as he can reach any with his tongue. The fleshe of this beast, is filthy and unsauery, but by reason of the extreme shyftes and necessitie that the Christian men were put to at theyr fyrst commyng into these partes, they were enforced to proue all thinges, and so fell to the eatyng of these beastes: but when they had found more delycate meates, they fel into hatred with this. These Antes haue thappearance of the place of theyr entraunce into the hyllocke, under the grounde, and this at so litle a hole, that it coulde hardely be founde, if certayne of them were not seene to passe in and out: but by this way the Beares could haue no suche power to hurte them as aboue at the sayde ryftes, as I haue sayde. There is an other strange beast, whiche by a name of contrary effecte, the Spanyardes call *Cagnuolo leggiero*, that is, the lyght dogge, whereas it is one of the slowest beastes in the world, and so heauy and dull in mouyng, that it can scarcely goe fyfte pases in a whole day: these beastes are in the firme lande, and are very strange to beholde for the disproportion that they haue to all other beastes, they are about two spannes in length when they are growne to theyr full byggenesse, but when they are very young, they are somewhat more grosse then long: they haue foure subtil feete, and in euery of them foure clawes lyke vnto byrdes, and ioynded togeather, yet are nother theyr clawes or their feete able to susteyne theyr bodies from the grounde, by reason whereof, and by the heauynesse of theyr bodies, they drawe theyr bellies on the grounde: theyr neckes are hygh and streyght, and allequall lyke the pebble of a mortar, which is altogether equall euen vnto the toppe, without making any proportion or similitude of a head, or any dyfference except in the noddle, and in the toppes of theyr neckes: they haue very rounde faces muche lyke vnto Owles, and haue a marke of theyr owne heare after the maner of a cyrcle, which maketh theyr faces seeme somewhat more long then large: they haue small eyes and rounde, and nostrylles lyke vnto Bunkeys:

Dd.i.

they

A strange  
beast which  
seemeth a kind  
of Camelion.

they haue litle mouthes, and moue theyr neckes from one syde to an other, as though they were astounded: theyr chiefe desyre and delyghte is to cleaue and sticke fast vnto trees, or some other thyng whereby they may clyme aloft, and therefore for the most parte, these beastes are founde vpon trees, wherevnto cleauyng fast, they mount by by litle and litle, staying them selues by theyr long clawes: the colour of theyr heare, is betwene russet and whyte, and of the proper colour of the heare of a Cuckell: they haue no tayles, and theyr voyce is much differing from other beastes, for they syng onely in the nyght, and that continually from tyme to tyme, syngyng euer syre notes one hygher then an other, so fallyng with the same, that the first note is the hyghest, and the other in a baser tune, as if a man shoulde say *La, sol, fa, mi, re, vt*, so this beast sayeth, *Ha, ha, ha, ha, ha, ha*. And doubtlesse, it seemeth vnto mee, that as I haue sayde in the Chapter of the beast called *Bardati*, that those beastes myght bee the original and document to imbarbe hozles: euen so, the fyrst inuention of musycke myght seeme by the hearyng of this beast, to haue the fyrst principles of that science, rather then by any other thyng in the worlde. But now to retorne to the hystorie. I say that in a shorte space after this beast hath song, and hath paused a whyle, shee returneth agayne to the selfe same song, and doeth this onely in the nyght, and not in the day: By reason whereof, and also because of her euill sight, I thynke her to bee a nyght beast, and the friende of darkenesse. Sometymes the Christian men fynde these beastes, and byyng them home to theyr houses, where also they creepe all about with theyr naturall slownesse, insomuch that nother for threating or pryckyng they will moue any faster then theyr naturall and accustomed pace. And if they fynde any trees, they creepe thither immediatly, and mount to the toppe of the hyghest bryanche thereof, where they remaine continually for the space of eyght, or tenne, or twentie dayes, without eatyng of any thyng, as farre as any man can iudge. And whereas I my selfe haue kept them in my house, I coulde neuer perceyue other but that they lyue onely of ayre, and of the same opinion are in maner all men of those regions, because they haue neuer seene them eate any thyng, but euer turne theyr heades and mouthes toward

that

that parte where the wynde bloweth most, whereby may be considered that they take most pleasure in the ayre. They byte not, nor yet can byte, haupyng very litle mouthes: they are not venomous or noxious any way, but altogether brutyshe, and utterly vnprofitable, and without commoditie yet knowen to men, sayyng onely to moue theyr myndes to contemplate the infinite power of God, who delygteth in the varietie of creatures, whereby appeareth the power of his incomprehensible wysedome and maiestie, so farre to exceede the capacitie of mans vnderstanding. In these regions there are lykewyse founde certayne foules or byrdes, which the Indians call *Alcatraz*: these are muche bigger then Geese, the greatest parte of theyr feathers are of russet colour, and in some partes pelowe, theyr bylles or beakes are of two spannes in length, and very large neare to the head, and growyng small toward the poynte, they haue great and large thotes, and are muche lyke to a foule which I sawe in Flaunders in Brusselles in your maiesties pallace, whiche the Flemynges call *Haina*: And I remember that when your maiestie dyed one day in your great hall, there was brought to your maiesties presence a Cauderne of water with certayne fyshes alpye, whiche the sayde foule dyd eate by whole, and I thynke verily that that foule was a foule of the sea, because shee had feete lyke foules of the water, as haue also these *Alcatraz*, which are lykewyse foules of the sea, and of such greatnesse, that I haue seene a whole coate of a man put into the throates of one of them in *Panama*, in the yere. 1521. And for as muche as in that coast of *Panama*, there passeth and fleeth a great multitude of these *Alcatraz*, beyng a thyng very notable, I wyll declare the maner heereof, as not onely I, but also dyuers other nowre present in your maiesties courte haue often tymes seene. Your maiestie shall therefore vnderstande, that in this place (as I haue sayde before) the sea of *Sur ryseth* and falleth two leagues and more from syre houres to syre houres: so that when it increaseth, the water of the sea arryueh so neare to the houses of *Panama*, as doeth our sea (called *Mare Mediterraneum*) in *Barzalona*, or in *Naples*: and when the sayd increasynge of the sea commeth, there commeth also therewith such a multitude of the smal fyshes called *Sardines*, that it is so marueilous a thing to

Dd.ii,

behold,

foules, and  
byrdes.  
*Alcatraz*

*Panama*

beholde, that no man would beleue it that hath not seene it. In-  
 somuch that the *Cacique* (that is) the kyng of that lande, at such  
 tyme as I dwelt there, was bounde dayly, as he was commaun-  
 ded by your maiesties gouernour, to byng ordinarily thre ca-  
 noas or barks full of the sayde *Sardynes*, and to vnlade the  
 same in the market place, whiche were afterwarde by the ru-  
 ler of the citie diuided among the Christian men, without any  
 coſte or charge to any of them : Inſomuche that if the people  
 had been a much greater multitude then they were, and as ma-  
 ny as are at this preſent in *Toledo*, or more, and had none other  
 thyng to lyue by, they myght haue been ſufficiently ſuſtyned  
 by theſe *Sardynes*, beſyde the ouerplus which ſhould haue re-  
 mayned . But to returne to the foules, wherof we haue ſpo-  
 ken . As the ſea commeth, and the *Sardynes* with the ſame,  
 euen ſo lyke wyſe come the ſayde *Alcatrazzi* therewith, and flee  
 continually ouer it, in ſuch a multitude, that they appeare to co-  
 uer the vpper parte or floore of the water, and thus continue in  
 mountyng and fallyng from the ayre to the water, and from the  
 water to the ayre, during all the tyme of their fiſhing: and aſſoone  
 as they haue taken any of theſe *Sardines*, they flee aboue the wa-  
 ters, and eate them incontinently, and ſodeynly returne agayne  
 to the water for more, continuing thus courſe by courſe without  
 ceaſyng: in lyke maner when the ſea falleth, they folowe theyr ſy-  
 ſhyng as I haue ſayde . There goeth alſo in the company of theſe  
 foules, an other kynde of foules, called *Coda inforcata*, (that is)  
 the forked taylor, wherof I haue made mention before, & aſſoone  
 as the *Alcatraz* mounteth from the water with her pray of the  
*Sardynes*, ſodeynly this *Coda inforcata* gyueth her ſo many  
 ſtrokes, and ſo perfeſteth her, that ſhee cauſeth her to let fall the  
*Sardynes* which ſhee hath in her mouth : the which aſſoone as  
 they are falne, and before they yet touche the water, the *Coda*  
*inforcata* catcheth them euen in the fall, in ſuche ſorte, that it is  
 a great pleaſure to beholde the combat betweene them all the  
 day long . The number of theſe *Alcatrazzi* is ſuche, that the  
 Christian men are accuſtomed to ſende to certayne Ilandes and  
 rockes which are neare about *Panama*, with theyr boates or bar-  
 kes to take theſe *Alcatrazzi*, whyle they are yet young, and can  
 not flee, and kill as many of them with ſtaues as they will, vntyll  
 they

they haue therewith laden theyr Barks or Canoas : theſe young  
 ones are ſo fat and well fedde, that they can not bee eaten, and  
 are taken for none other intent, but onely to make greaſe for  
 candles to burne in the nyght, for the whiche purpoſe it ſerueth  
 very well, and gyueth a cleare lycht, and burneth eaſily . After  
 this maner, and for this purpoſe, innumerable of them are kylde:  
 & yet it ſeemeth that the number of them that ſyſhe for *Sardynes*  
 doe dayly increaſe . There are other foules called *Paſſere ſem-*  
*pie*, that is, ſimple ſparowes : theſe are ſomewhat leſſe then *Paſſere ſem-*  
*pie*.  
*Seamewes*, and haue theyr ſeete lyke vnto great *Malardes*,  
 and ſtande in the water ſometymes, and when the ſhyppes ſayle  
 ſyſtie or a hundred leagues about the Ilandes, theſe foules be-  
 holdyng the ſhyppes commyng toward them, breake theyr  
 flyght, and fall downe vpon the ſayle yarde, maſtes, and ca-  
 bles thereof, and are ſo ſimple and ſolpyſhe, that they tary vn-  
 tyll they may eaſily bee taken with mens handes, and were ther-  
 fore called of the maryners ſimple ſparowes : they are blacke,  
 and vpon theyr blacke, haue theyr head and ſhoulders of  
 feathers of a darke ruſſet colour : they are not good to bee eaten,  
 although the maryners haue ſometymes been inforced to eate  
 them. There is an other kynde of byrdes in the firme land, which  
 the Christians call *Picuti*, becauſe they haue very great beakes,  
 in reſpecte of the litleneſſe of theyr bodies, for theyr beakes  
 are very heauy, and weye more then theyr whole bodies be-  
 ſyde : theſe byrdes are no bygger then *Quayles*, but haue a  
 muche greater buſhment of feathers, inſomuche that theyr fea-  
 thers are more then theyr bodies : theyr feathers are very ſayre,  
 and of many variable colours, theyr beakes are a quarter of a  
 yarde in length or more, and benbygng downe toward the earth,  
 and thre ſyngers bryde neare vnto the head : theyr tongues are  
 very quylles, wherewith they make a great hyſſyng : they make  
 holes in trees with theyr beakes, in the which they make their  
 neſtes . And ſorely theſe byrdes are marueylous to beholde,  
 for the great difference whiche they haue from all other byrdes  
 that I haue ſeene, as well for theyr tongues (which are quylles  
 as I haue ſayd) as alſo for the ſtrangenelle of their ſight, & diſpro-  
 portion of their great beakes, in reſpect of the reſt of their bodies.  
 There are no byrdes found that prouide better for the ſafegard of  
 their

Folpe Spar-  
rowes.

theyr young in the tyme of theyr breedynge, to be without daunger of wyld cattles, that they enter not into theyr neastes to destroy their eggges or young, and this as well by the strange maner of buyldynge their nestes, as also by theyr owne defence: and therefore when they perceyue that the cattles appoche toward them, they enter into theyr nestes, and holdynge theyr beakes toward the entraunce of the same, stande at theyr defence, and so bere the cattles, that they cause them to leaue their enterpryse. There are also other byrdes or sparowes, which the Christians by contrary effecte call *Matti*, that is foolles: Whereas neuerthelesse there is no byrde that sheweth more wyt and crafte in defendynge her young from perill. These byrdes are litle, & in maner blacke, and somewhat bygger then our Thrushes, they haue certayne whyte feathers in theyr neckes, and the lyke sagallie or sharpenesse of fensle as haue the byrdes or Javes called *Gazzuole*, they sildometymes lyght vppon the earth: they make theyr nestes in trees separated from other, because the wyld cattles (called *Manmoni*) are accustomed to leape from tree to tree, not descendynge to the grounde for feare of other beastes, except when they are enforced by thirst to come downe to drinke, at such times as they are sure not to bee molested, and for this cause doe not these byrdes make theyr nestes but in trees farre diuided from other, they make them of a cubite in length, or more, after the maner of bagges or litle sakes, large at the bottome, and growynge narrower and narrower toward the mouth, whereby they are fastened; hauyng the hole wherewith they enter into the sacke, of suche byggnesse as may onely suffice to receyue them. And to the ende that the cattles may not deuour theyr young, if they chaunce to mount vppon the trees where they haue theyr nestes, they vse an other craft, which is, to make theyr nestes in thicke braunches of trees, and to defende the same with sharpe and strong thornes, implicate and set in suche order, that no man is able to make the lyke, so that the cattles can by no means put theyr legges into the hole of the neaste to take out the young byrdes, as well for the sharpenesse of the thornes, as also for the deapth of the nestes, in the bottome wherof, the young birds rest without daunger of their enimie: for some of theyr nestes beynge

three or foure spannes in length, the legges of the cattie can not reache to the bottome thereof. They vse also an other policie, which is, to make many of theyr neastes in one tree, the which they doe for one of these two causes: that is, that eyther of theyr owne naturall disposition they are accustomed to goe in great multitudes, and reioyce in the company of theyr owne generation, as doe the byrdes which wee call *Stares*, or els to the intent that if it should so chaunce that the cattles shoulde clyme the trees where they make theyr nestes, they myght bee a greater company to resist and molest the cattles, at whose appoche they make a fearefull and terrible crye, whereby the cattles are put to flight. Furthermore, in the same lande, and in the Ilandes, there are certayne byrdes called *Piche*, or *Gazzuole*, somewhat lyke *Cazzuole*. vnto those which we call *Woodwalles*, or *Woodpeckes*, beynge lesse then ours of Spayne: these are altogether blacke, and goe hoppynge and leappynge, theyr beakes are also blacke, and of the same fashon as are the *Hoppingtays* beakes, they haue long tayles, and are somewhat bygger then *Stares*. There are other byrdes called *Pintadelli*, which are lyke vnto certayne greene byrdes, which the Italians call *Fringuelli*, and are of seuen colours: these byrdes for feare of the cattles, are euer wont to make theyr nestes ouer the bankes of ryuers, or the sea, where the braunches of trees so reache ouer the water that with a litle weyght they may bowe downe to the water: theyr nestes are made so neare the toppes of the braunches, that when the cattles come thereon, the braunches bende toward the water, and the cattles turne backe agayne for feare of fallynge: for although no beast in the worlde bee more malicious then this, yet whereas the most parte of beastes are naturally inclyned to swymme, this cattie hath no maner of aprenesse therevnto, and is therefore soone drowned or strangled in the water, and by a priuie sense of nature feareth the danger which he can not escape. These byrdes make their nestes in such sort, that although they be witte and filled with water, yet doe they so sodenly ryse vppon agayne, that the young byrdes are not thereby hurt or drowned. There are also many *Nyghtyngales*, and other byrdes which syng marueylouslye with great melodie and dyfference in

Do, iiii.

syng-



spynnyng: these byrdes are of manieplous dyuers coloures the one from the other, some are altogether yelow, and some other of so excellent, delectable, and hygh a colour, as it were a Rubye, other are also of dyuers and variable coloures, some of fewe coloures, and other some all of one colour, beyng all so fayre and beautifull, that in byghynesse and shynnyng they excell all that are seene in Spayne, or Italy, or other prouinces of Europe: Many of these are taken with nettes, lyme twygges, and spynnynges of dyuers sortes. Dyuers other sortes of great fowles lyke vnto Eagles, and suche other as lyue of pray, are founde in the firme lande, of suche diuersitie, that it is in maner impossible to describe them all particularly: and forasmuche as I haue moze largely intreated hereof in my generall hystorie of the Indies, I thynke it not requysite heere to make anye further mention of the same.

Great fowles.

## Of trees, fruites, and plantes.

Cacus.



Here is both in the firme lande and the Ilands, a certayne tree called *Cocus*, beyng a kynde of Date trees, & hauing their leaues of the selfe same greatnesse as haue the date trees which beare dates, but dyffer much in their growing, for the leaues of this *Cocus* growe out of the trunks of the tree, as doe the fingers out of the hand, wreathing them selues one within an other, & so spreading abroad: these trees are hygh, & are founde in great plentie in the coast of the sea of *Sur*, in the prouince of *Cacique Chimán*. These date trees byng forth a fruit after this sorte: being altogether vnite as it groweth on the tree, it is of greater circumference then the head of a man, & from the superficial part to y<sup>e</sup> myddest, which is the fruit, it is inuolued & couered with many webs much lyke vnto those hyrds of tow which they vse in *Andalusia*. Of this tow or web, the East Indians make a certayne kynd of cloth, of thre or foure sortes, and cordes for the sayles of shippes: but in these Indies of your maiestie, they passe not for these cordes, or this cloth that may be made of the fruite of *Cocus*, by reason of the great plentie that they haue of the bombage

or

or cotton of the gossampine trees. The fruite which is in the myddest of the sayde tow, is (as I haue sayde) as bygge as a mans fyft, and sometymes twyse as bygge, and moze: It is in fourme lyke vnto a walnutte, or some other rounde thyng, somewhat moze long then large, and very harde, the rynde or barke hereof, is as thicke as the cyrle of letters of a ryall of plate, and within, there cleaueth fast to the rynde of the nutte a carnositie or substance of coornel, of the thickenesse of halfe a synger, or of the least synger of the hande, and is very whyte, lyke vnto a fayre Almonde, and of better taste and moze pleasaunt. When this fruite is chewed, there remaine certayne crummes, as do the lyke of Almondes: Yet if it be swallowed downe, it is not vnpleasaunt. For although that after the iuice or moysture be gone downe the throte before the saide crummes be swallowed, the rest which is eaten, seeme somewhat sharpe or sower, yet doth it not so greatly offende y<sup>e</sup> tast, as to be cast away. Whyle this *Cocus* is yet freshe and newly taken from the tree, they vse not to eate of the said carnositie & fruite, but fyrt beating it very muche, and then straynyng it, they drawe a mylke thereof, much better and sweeter then is the mylke of beastes, and of much substance, the whiche the Christian men of those regions put in the tostes or cakes which they make of the graine of *Mai-zum* wherof they make theyr bread, or in other bread as we put bread in porrage: so that by reason of the sayde mylke of *Cocus*, the tostes are moze excellent to be eaten without offence to the stomake: they are so pleasaunt to the taste, and leaue it aswell satisfyed as though it had been delyted with many delycate dyshes. But to procede further, your maiestie shal vnderstande, that in the place of the stone or coornell, there is in the myddest of the sayde carnositie a voyde place, which neuerthelesse is full of a most cleare and excellent water, in suche quantitie as may fyll a great egge shell, or moze, or lesse, accordyng to the byggenesse of the *Cacus*, the whiche water suerly, is the most substantiall, excellent, and precious to be drunke, that may be founde in the worlde: insomuch that in the moment when it passeth the palate of the mouth, and begynneth to go downe the throte, it seemeth that from the sole of the foote, to the crowne of the head, there is no parte of the bodye but that feelleth great comfozt

I haue seene  
one of these  
fruites opened,  
the whiche  
when it was  
whole, if it  
were shaken  
the water was  
harde toge  
therin as it  
were in a bot-  
tle, but in tyme  
it consumed  
and was parte  
ly congeled in  
to a sa te sub-  
stance.

comforte thereby : as it is doubtlesse one of the most excellent thynges that may be tasted vpon the earth, and suche as I am not able by wytyng or tongue to expresse . And to proceede yet further, I say that when the meate of this fruite is taken from the vessell thereof, the vessell remaineth as sayre and neate as though it were pullyshed, and is without of colour inclynnyng toward blacke, and thyneth or glystereth very sayre, and is within of no lesse delicatenesse . Suche as haue accustomed to drynke in these vesselles, and haue been troubled with the disease called the frettyng of the guttes, say that they haue by experyence founde it a marueylous remedie agaynst that disease, and that it braketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine. This fruite was called *Cocus*, for this cause, that when it is taken from the place where it cleaueth fast to the tree, there are seene two holes, and aboue them two other natural holes, whiche altogether do represent the gesture and figure of the cattes called *Mammoni*, that is, *Dunkeys*, when they crye, which crye the Indians call *Coca*, but in very deede, this tree is a kinde of Date trees, and hath the same effecte to heale frettyng of the guttes, that *Plinie* describeth all kynds of Date trees to haue . There are furthermoze in the firme lande, trees of suche byggenesse that I dare not speake therof, but in place where I haue so many wytnesses whiche haue seene the same as well as I . I saye therefore, that a league from *Dariena* or the citie of *Santa Maria Antiqua*, there passeth a ryuer very large and deepe, which is called *Cuti*, ouer the which the Indians had layde a great tree, so trauesing the same, that it was in the steade of a brydge, the whiche I my selfe with dyuers other that are at this present in your maiesties court, haue oftentimes passed ouer . And forasmuche as the said tree had line long there, and by y great weight therof was so shynke downewarde, and partly couered with water, that none coulde passe ouer it, but were wette to the knee, I beyng then in the yere .1522. the official or Iustice in that citie at your maiesties appoyntment, caused an other great tree to be layde in that place, whiche in lyke maner trauesed the ryuer, and reached moze then fyfte scote ouer the further syde : This tree was exceeding great, and rested aboue the water moze then two cubytes, in the fall, it cast downe all such other trees as were

Great trees.

were within the reache thereof, and discouered certayne bynes, whiche were so laden with blacke grapes of pleasaunt taste, that they satysfied moze then fyfte persons whiche ate theyr fyl thereof. This tree in the thickest part therof, was moze then fyteene spannes thicke, and was neuerthelesse but litle in respect of many other trees whiche are founde in this prouince. For the Indians of the coaste and prouince of *Cartagenia*, make barkes or boates thereof (whiche they call *Canoas*,) of suche byggenesse, beyng all one whole tree, that some conteyne a hundred men, some a hundred and thirtie, and some moze, hauyng neuerthelesse such boyde space within the same, that there is left sufficient roomme to passe to and fro throughout all the *Canoas* . Some of these are so large, besyde the length, that they conteyne moze then ten or twelue spannes in breadyth, and sayle with two sayles, as with the maister sayle and the tryncket, whiche they make of very good cotton . The greatest trees that I haue seene in these partes, or in any other regions, was in the prouince of *Guaturo*, the kyng wherof rebellyng from the obedience of your maiestie, was pursued by me, and taken prisoner : at whiche tyme I with my companie, passed ouer a very hygh mountayne, full of great trees, in the top whereof, we founde one tree, whiche had three rootes, or rather diuisions of the roote aboue the earth, in fourme of a tryangle, or treuet, so that betweene euery foote of this tryangle or thre feete, there was a space of twentie foote betweene euery foote, and this of such heygth aboue the earth, that a laden Card of those wherewith they are accustomed to byng home comie withoute of harness in the kyngdome of *Toledo* in Spayne, myght easily haue passed through euery of those partitions or wyndowes which were betweene the thre feete of the sayd tree . From the earth upward to the trunke of the tree, the open plates of the diuisions betweene these thre feete, were of suche heygth from the ground, that a footman with a *Jauelin* was not able to reache the place where the sayde feete ioyned together in the trunke or bodye of the tree, whiche grewe of great heygth in one peece, and one whole bodie, or euer it spread in braunches, whiche it did not before it exceeded in heygth the *Colonne* of *Saint Romane* in the citie of *Toledo* : from whiche heygth and byward, it spread very great and strong braunches.

Among

A marueylous tree.

Among certayne Spaniards whiche clymed this tree, I my selfe was one, and when I was ascended to the place where it begonne to sprede the braunches, it was a marvellous thyng to beholde a great countrey of suche trees towarde the prouince of Abayme. This tree was easy to clyme, by reason of certayne *Besuchi*, (whereof I haue spoken before) which grew wreathed about the tree, in suche sort that they seemed to make a scalpyng Ladder. Euery of the forsayd three feete whiche bore the bodie of the tree, was twentie spannes in thickenesse, and where they ioyned all togeather aboute the Trunke or bodie of the tree, the principall Trunke was more then fourtie and syue spannes in circuite. I named the mountayne where these trees growe, the mountayne of three footed trees. And this whiche I haue now declared, was seene of all the companie that was there with me when (as I haue sayde before) I tooke kyng *Guaturo* prisoner in the yeere . 1 5 2 2. Many thynges more myght here be spoken as touching this matter, as also howe there are many other excellent trees founde of diuers sortes and difference, as sweete Cedar trees, blacke Date trees, and many other, of the whiche some are so heauye that they cannot floote aboute the water, but syncke immediatly to the bottome, and other agayne as lyght as a Cozke. As touchyng all which thynges I haue written more largely in my generall historie of the Indies. And forasmuche as at this present I haue entred to entreat of trees, before I passe any further to other thynges, I will declare the manner howe the Indians kinde fyre, only with wood and without fire, the manner wherof is this. They take a peece of wood, of two spannes in length, as bygge as the least fynger of a mans hand, or as an arrowe well pullyshed, and of a strong kynde of wood which they keepe only for this purpose: and where they entend to kinde any fyre, they take two other peeces of wood, of the dyest and lyghtest that they can fynde, and bynde them fast togeather one with an other, as close as two fyngers ioyned: in the myddest or betweene these, they put the point of the fyrst litle staffe made of harde and strong woodde, whiche they hold in theyr handes by the toppe thereof, and turne or rubbe it rounde about continually in one place betweene the two peeces of woodde which lye bounde togeather vpon the earth, whiche

Kindling of  
fyre without  
fyre.

whiche by that incessant rubbing and chafyng, are in shorte space kyndeled, and take fyre. I haue also thought good to heare to speake somewhat of suche thynges as come to my remembraunce of certayne trees whiche are founde in this lande, and sometyme also the lyke haue been seene in Spayne. These are certayne putrified trunks, whiche haue lye so long rottyng on the earth, that they are very whyte, and shyne in the nyght lyke burnyng fyrebrandes, and when the Spaniards fynde any of this woodde, and intende priuily in the nyght to make warre and inuade any prouince; when case so requyeth that it shalbe necessary to goe in the nyght, in such places where they knowe not the way, the foremost Christian man whiche guydeth the way, associate with an Indian to directe hym therein, taketh a litle starre of the sayde woodde, whiche he putteth in his cappe, hangyng behynde on his shoul- ders, by the lyght whereof he that foloweth next to hym, directeth his iourney, who also in lyke maner beareth an other starre behynde hym, by the shynyng whereof the thyrd foloweth the same way, and in lyke maner do al the rest, so that by this meanes none are losse or stragle out of the way. And forasmuch as this lyght is not seene very farre, it is the better policie for the Christians, because they are not thereby disclosed before they inuade theyr enemies. Furthermore as touchyng the natures of trees, one particuler thyng seemeth woorthie to be noted, *Plinie*. whereof *Plinie* maketh mention in his naturall historie, where he sayth that there are certayne trees whiche continue euergreene, and neuer lose theyr leaues, as the Bay tree, the Cedar, the Orange tree, & the Oliue tree, with such other, of the whiche in altogether he nameth not past fyue or syue. To this purpose, I say, that in the Ilandes of these Indies, and also in the same lande, it is a thyng of muche difficultie to fynde two trees that lose or cast theyr leaues at any tyme: For although I haue diligently searched to knowe the truth hercof, yet haue I not seene any that lose theyr leaues, eyther of them whiche we haue brought out of Spayne into these regions, as Orange trees, Limons, Cedars, Palmes, or Date trees, and Pomegranate trees, or of any other in these regions, except onely *Cassia*, whiche loseth his leaues, and hath a greater thyng

Putrified  
woodde shyn-  
yng in the  
nyght.

Trees whiche  
continue euergreene.

*Cassia*.

thyng appropriate to it selfe onely: whiche is, that whereas all other trees and plantes of India spreade theyr rootes no deeper in the earth then the deapth of a mans heygth, or somewhat more, not descendyng any further into the grounde, by reason of the great heate whiche is founde beneath that deapth, yee dooth *Cassia* pearle further into the ground, vntill it fynd water: whiche by the Philosophers opinion shoulde be the cause of a thynne and watery radicall moylture to suche thynges as drawe theyr nourishment thereof, as fat and vinctuous groundes with temperate heate, yelde a fast and firme moylture to suche thynges as growe in them, whiche is the cause that suche trees lose not theyr leaues, as the sayde thynne and watery moylture is cause of the contrarie, as appeareth by the sayde effecte whiche is seene onely in *Cassia*, and none other tree or plant in all these parties.

A secrete  
thyng.Radycall  
moylture.

## Of Reedes or Canes.



Haue not thought it comenient in the cha- picture before, to speake of that wherof I intend nowe to intreate, of reedes or canes, to thintent that I woulde not myngle them with plantes or trees, being thinges of them selues woorthy to be particularly obserued. So it is therfore, that in the firme land there are many sorts of reedes, so that in many places they make their houses thereof, coueryng them with the toppes of the same, and makynge theyr walles of them in lyke maner, as I haue sayde before: and among these kyndes of reedes, there is one so great, that the canes therof are as bigge as a mans legge in y knee, and three spanns in length from ioynt to ioynt, or more, insomuch that euery of them is of capacitie to contayne a litle bucket of water. In this kynde, there are founde some greater, and some lesse, of the whiche some they vse to make quyuers for arrowes. There is founde an other kynde, whiche suerly is marueylous, beyng litle bygger then a flauelyn, the canes whereof are longer then two spannes: these reedes growe one farre from an other, as some tymes twentie or thirtie paces, and sometymes also two or three leagues: they growe in maner in all prouynces in the Indies,

Indies, and growe neere to very hygge trees, whereunto they leane, and creepe by to the toppes of theyr braunches, whiche they imbrase, and discende agayne downe to the earth. Theyr canes are full of most cleare water, without any maner of salt or sauour, eyther of the canes, or of any other thyng, and suche as yf it were taken out of the freshest spring in the world, nor yet is it knowen that euer it hurt any that drunke therof. For it hath oftentimes so chaunced, that as the Christian men haue tra- uayled in these regions in desolate wayes, where for lacke of water they haue been in great daunger to die for thirst, they haue escaped that perill by reason that they founde the sayd reedes, of the water of whose canes they haue drunke a great quantitie, without any hurt thereof ensuing. Therfore when they fynde these in any place, they make water vessels of the canes thereof, and carry as many of them full of water as may suffice for one dayes iorney: and sometime they carry so many, that they take for euery man two or three quartes of water, which may serue them for many dayes, because it doth not corrupt, but remaineth styll freshe and good.

There are also certayne plantes, whiche the Christians call *Platani*. These are as hygh as trees, and become as byg in the trunk as the knee of a man, or more. From the foote to the toppe, they beare certayne long and large leaues, beyng more then three spannes in largenesse, & about ten or twelue in length: the whiche when they are broken of the wynde, the stalke remaineth whole in the myddest: In the myddest of this plant, in the highest part therof, there groweth a cluster with fourtie or fyftie platans about it, euery of them beyng a spanne and a halfe in length, and as byg as a mans arme in the small, or more, or lesse, accordyng to the goodnesse of the soyle where they growe: they haue a rynde not very thicke, and easie to be broken, beyng within altogether full of a substance lyke vnto the mary of the bone of an Oxe, as it appeareth when y rinde or barke is taken from the same. This cluster ought to be taken from the plant, when any one of the platans begin to appeare yelow, at which tyme they take it, and hang it in theyr houses: where all the cluster wareth rypp, with all his platans. This cluster is a very good fruite, and when it is opened, and the rynde taken

Platani.

of.

Figges.

of, there are founde within it many good dye *Figges*. whiche beyng rolled, or stewed in an *Ouen*, in a close pot, or some suche other thyng, are of pleasant tast, much lyke to the conserue of *Hony*: they putrifie not on the sea so soone as some other fruites do, but conserue fyftene dayes and more, yf they be geathered somewhat greene: they seeme more delicate on the sea then on the land, not for that they any thing encrease in goodnesse on the sea, but because that whereas on the sea other thynges are lacking, whereof is plentie on the land, those meates seeme of best tast, whiche satisfie present necessitie. This trunke or *spygge* which byngeth forth the sayd cluster, is a whole yeere in growing and bynging forth fruite, in which tyme it hath put forth rounde about it ten or twelue *spygges*, as bygge as the fyrst or principall, and multiplieth no lesse then the principall in bynging forth of clusters, with fruites lykewyse at theyr tyme, and also in byngyng forth other and many *spygges*, as is sayde before. From the whiche *spygges* or trunks, as soone as the cluster of the fruite is taken away, the plant beginneth to dye and wyther, whiche then they take out of the grounde, because it doth none other then occupie it in bayne, and without profyte. They are so many, and do so marueylously encrease and multiplie, that it is a thyng in maner incredible. They are exceeding moyst, insomuch that when they are plucked up from the place where they grow, there isshueth forth a great quantitie of water, aswel out of the plant, as out of the place where it grewe, in suche sort, that at the moysture of the earth farre about, myght seeme to be geathered togeather about the truncke or blocke of the sayd plant, with the fruites whereof. The *Antes* are so farre in loue, that they are seene in great multitudes in the branches of the plantes: so that for the multitude thereof, it sometyme so chaunceth, that men are enforced to take away the plantes from theyr possession: these fruites are founde at all tymes of the yeere. There is also an other kinde of wilde plantes that groweth in the feeldes, whiche I haue not seene but in the *Ilande of Hispaniola*, although they be founde in other *Ilandes* of the *Indies*: these they call *Tunas*. They growe of a Thistle full of thornes, and byng forth a fruite muche lyke vnto great *Figges*: whiche haue a crowne lyke *Bedlers*, and are within

Tunas.

within of a hygh colour, with graynes and the rynde lyke vnto a *spygge*: they are of good taste, and grow abundantly in the feeldes in many places: They worke a strange effecte in suche as eate them, for if a man eate two, or three, or more, they cause his vyne to bee of the very colour of blood, which thyng chaunced once to my selfe. For on a tyme as I made water, and sawe the colour of my vyne, I entred into a great suspition of my lyfe, beyng so astonysed for feare, that I thought the same had chaunced to mee vpon some other cause, insomuche that surely my imagination myght haue done mee hurte, but that they which were with mee dyd comforte mee immediatly, declaryng the cause thereof, as they knew by experience, beyng auncient inhabitours in those regions. There groweth also an other plant, which the people of the countrey call *Bibaos*: this putteth forth certayne streight branches, and very brode leaues, which the *Indians* vse for dyuers purposes: For in some places they couer theyr houses with the leaues thereof, couched and layde after the maner of thetche, wherevnto it serueth very well: Sometymes also when it rapneth, they cast these ouer theyr heades, to descende them from the water. They make also certayne chestes, which they call *Hamas*, weaved after a strange sorte, and intermyxt with the leaues of this *Bibaos*. These chestes are wrought in such sorte, that although it rapne vpon them, or they chaunce to fall into the water, yet are not suche thinges wet as are within them: they are made of the branches of the sayde *Bibaos*, with the leaues weaved togeather therewith: In these they keepe salte, and other subtile thinges. They vse them also for an other purpose, which is this: that spynnyng them in the feeldes at such tyme as they haue scarcenelle of vittayles, they dyg vnder the rootes of these plantes while they are yet young, or eate the plant it selfe, in that parte where it is most tender, which is from a foote vnder the grounde, where it is as tender and whyte as a reede or bulrush. And forasmuche as wee are nowe come to the ende of this narration, it commeth to my remembraunce to make mention of an other thyng, which is not farre from my purpose: and this is, howe the *Indians* doe stayne or dye cloath of bombage cotton, or any other thyng whiche they intende to dye, of dyuers colours, as blacke, tawny, greene, blew, yelow, and redde, which they doe with the barkes,

Bibaos.

Hamas.

Dying of cotton.



of ryndes, and leaues of certayne trees, which they know by experience to be good for this practise: and by this arte they make colours in suche perfection and excellencie, that no better can be deuyled. But this seemeth a strange thyng, that they doe all this in one selfe same vessell: So that when they haue caused the sayde ryndes and leaues to boyle togeather, they make in the same vessell without any chaunge (as I haue sayde) as many colours as them lysteth: Whiche thing I suppose to come to passe, by the disposition of the colour which they haue first gyuen to the thyng that they intende to dye of colour, whether it be theed, webbe, or cloth, or any thing that they intende to colour.

A strange  
syng.

Of venomous Apples, wherewith they  
poyson theyr arrowes.



The Apples wherewith the Indian Caniballes inuenome theyr arrowes, growe on certayne trees couered with many branches and leaues, being very greene, and growing thicke. They are laden with abundance of these euill fruites, and haue their leaues lyke the leaues of a peare tree, but that they are lesse and rounder: the fruit is much lyke the muscadel peares of the Islande of Sicilie or Naples in fourme and bygnesse, and are in some partes steyned with redde spottes, and of very sweet sauour: these trees for the most parte, growe euer by the sea coastes, and neere vnto the water, and are so fayre and of pleasant sauour, that there is no man that seeth them, but will desyre to eate thereof, insomuche that if it may be spoken of any fruit yet growyng on the earth, I woulde say that this was the unhappy fruit whereof our first parentes Adam and Eue tasted, whereby they both lost theyr felicitie, and procured death to them and theyr posteritie. Of these fruites, and of the great Antes whose byring causeth swellynge, (whereof I haue spoken elsewhere) and of the Gutes, or Aylartes, and bypers, and such other venomous thynges, the Canibals which are the cheefe archers

Note.

Caniballes are  
chers.

archers among the Indians, are accustomed to poyson theyr arrowes, wherewith they kyll all that they wounde: These venomes they mingle togeather, and make thereof a blacke masse of composition, whiche appeareth lyke vnto very blacke pitch. Of this poyson I caused a great quantitie to be burnt, in *Sancta Maria Antiqua*, in a place two leagues and moze within the lande, with a great multitude of theyr inuenomed arrowes and other munition, with also the house wherein they were reserued: This was in the yere. 1514. at suche tyme as the army arrayned there with captayne *Pedrarías da villa*, at the commaundement of the Catholike kyng *Don Ferdinando*. But to returne to the history. These Apples (as I haue sayde) growe neare vnto the sea. And whereas the Christians whiche serue your maiestie in these partes, suppose that there is no remedy so profitable for such as are wounded with these arrowes, as is the water of the sea, if the wound be much washed therewith, by which meanes some haue escaped, although but fewe: yet to say the trueth, albeit the water of the sea haue a certaine caustike quality against poyson, it is not a sufficient remedy in this case, nor yet to this day haue the Christians perceyued that of fiftie that haue been wounded, thre haue recovered. But that your maiestie may the better consider the force of the venome of these trees, you shal further vnderstand, that if a man doe but repose him selfe to sleepe a litle whyle vnder the shadow of the same, he hath his head & eyes so swolne when he wakeneth, that the eye lyddes are ioyned with the cheekes, and if it chaunce one droppe or moze of the dewe of the sayde tree to fall into the eye, it utterly destroyeth the syght. The pestilent nature of this tree is suche, that it can not be declared in fewe wordes. Of these, there groweth great plentie in the gulfe of *Praba*, toward the North coast, on the West and East syde. The wood of these trees when it burneth, maketh so great a smoke, that no man is able to abyde it, by reason it causeth so great a payne in the head.

Among other trees whiche are in these Indies, as well in the Islandes, as in the firme lande, there is an other kynde whiche they call *Xagua*, whereof there is great plentie: they are very hygh, and streyght, and fayre to beholde. Of these they vse to make pykes, and Hauelyns of dyuers lengths and

Ge.ii.

byg.

Wherewith  
they inuenome  
theyr arrowes.

*Petrus Arias.*

The water of  
the sea.

The gulfe of  
*Praba*.

*Xagua*.

bygnesse: they are of a fayre colour, betwene russet and whyte: this tree byngeth forth a great fruit as bygge as Papauer or Poppie, and muche lyke thereunto, it is very good to bee eaten when it is ripe. Out of this they get a very cleare water, wherewith they washe their legges, and sometymes all theyr bodies, when they feele theyr fleshe weery, saynt, or loose: the which water, besyde that it hath a byndyng qualite, it hath also this propertie, that whatsoeuer it toucheth, it steyneth it blacke by litle and litle, vntill it bee as blacke as gete, which colour can not bee taken away in lesse space then tenn or twelue dayes: And if the nape bee but touched therewith, it is so steyned that it can by no meanes bee taken away, vntill it eyther fall of, or grow out, and bee clipped away by litle & litle, as I my selfe haue oftentimes seene by experience.

**Hobi.**  
Some thinke  
these to be m  
sobalanes.

There is an other kynde of trees which they call *Hobi*: these are very great and fayre, and cause holesome aye where they growe, and a pleasant shadowe, and are founde in great abundance: theyr fruit is very good, and of good tast and sauour, and much lyke vnto certayne damsons or prunes beyng litle and yelow, but theyr stone is very great, by reason whereof they haue but litle meate: theyr barke or rinde boyled in water, maketh a holesome bathe for the legges, because it byndeth and stayeth the loosenesse of the fleshe, so sensibly that it is a marueyle to consider. It is surely a holesome and excellent bathe agaynst suche sayntnesse, and is the best tree that may be founde in those parties to sleepe vnder: For it causeth no heauinesse of the head, as doe dyuers other trees, which thynge I speake, because the Christians are muche accustomed in those regions to lye in the fieldes. It is therefore a common practise among them, that wheresoeuer they fynde these trees, there they spreade theyr mattresses and beddes wherein they sleepe.

**Date trees.**

There are also a kynde of hygh Date trees, and full of thornes: the woodde of these is most excellent, beyng very blacke, and thynnyng, and so heauye that no parte thereof can swimme aboue the water, but synketh immediately to the bottoome. Of this woodde they make theyr arrowes and darts, also Hauelyns, speares, and pykes: and I say pykes, because that in the coastes of the sea of Sur, beyonde *Esquegua* and

**Chinhabis**  
sautes of the  
sea of Sur.

and *Vracha*, the Indians vse great and long pykes, made of the wood of these Date trees. Of the same lyke wyse they make clubs, and swoordes, and dyuers other weapons: Also vessels and household stuffe of dyuers sortes, very fayre and commodious. Furthermoze of this wood the Christians vse to make dyuers muscalle instrumentes, as Claricymballes, Lutes, Gitterns, and suche other, the which besyde theyr fayre thynnyng colour lyke vnto gete, are also of a good sounde, and very durable, by reason of the hardnesse of the wood.

After that I haue sayde thus much of trees and plants, I haue thought good also to speake somewhat of hearbes. You shal therefore vnderstand, that in these Indies there is an hearbe much like vnto a yelow Lillie, about whose leaues there growe and creepe certayne cordes or lases, as the lyke is partly seene in the hearbe which we call tased sauery, but these of the Indies are much bigger, and longer, and so strong that they tye theyr hangyng bedes thereby, whiche they call *Hamacas*, whereof we haue spoken elsewhere: these cordes they call *Cabuia*, and *Henequen*, whiche are all one thyng, sayng that *Henequen* is lesse and of a finer substance, as it were line, and the other is grosser, lyke the weeke or twyst of hempe, and is imperfect in comparison to the other: they are of colour betwene whyte and yelow, lyke vnto abarne, and some also whyte. With *Henequen*, whiche is the most subtile and fyne threed, the Indians sawe in sunder fetters, cheynes, or barres of Iron, in this maner: They moue the threed of *Henequen* vpon the Iron which they intende to sawe or cutte, drawyng the one hande after the other as doe they that sawe, puttynge euer nowe and then a portion of fyne sande vpon the threed, or on the place or parte of the Iron, where they continue rubbyng the sayde threed, so that if the threed be woyn, they take an other, and continue in theyr worke as before, vntill they haue cutte in sunder the Iron, although it be neuer so bygge, and cut it as if it were a tender thyng, and easie to be sawne.

And forasmuche as the leaues of trees may bee counted among hearbes, I will heere speake somewhat of the qualite of the leaues of certayne trees whiche are founde in the Ilande of *Hispaniola*. These trees are so full of thornes, that there is no tree or plant that seemeth moze wyld and deformed: so that

Ge.iii.

I can

An hearbe that  
beareth cordes.

*Cabuia* and  
*Henequen*.

A strange  
thyng.

Leaves.

I can not well determyne whether they be trees, or plantes: they haue certayne branches full of large and deformed leaues, which branches were fyrst leaues lyke vnto the other. As the branches made of these leaues grow forth in length, there cometh other leaues of them: so that in fine it is a difficult thing to describe the fourme of these trees, except the same should be done by a paynter, wherby the eye might conceiue that wherein the tongue sayeth in this behalfe. The leaues of this tree are of such vertue, that being well beaten and spread vpon a cloth, after the maner of a playster, and so layde to a legge or arme that is broken in many peeces, it healeth it in fyftene dayes, & maketh it as whole as though it had neuer been broken: Durynge the tyme of this operation, it cleaueth so fast to the fleshe, that it can not without much difficultie be taken away, but as soone as it hath healed the soie, and wrought his operation, it looseth it selfe from the place where it was layde, as I my selfe, and dyuers other which haue proued it, know by experience.

A leafe of great  
Vertue.

Of fyshes, and of the maner  
of fyshyng.



In the sea coastes of the firme lande, there are dyuers & sundry kyndes of fishes, muche differing in shap & fourme. And although it be impossible to speake of all, yet will I make mention of some. And first to begin at Sardines, you shall vnderstand that there is found a kinde of these fishes very large and with red taples, being a very delicate fysh. The best kyndes of other fishes are these, *Moxarre*, *Diabace*, *Bettes*, *Dabaos*, *Thornebackes*, & *Salmons*: All these, and dyuers other which I doe not now remember, are taken in great quantitie in ryuers. There are likewise taken very good *Creuphes*. There are also found in the sea, certayne other fishes, as *Soles*, *Hackerels*, *Turbuts*, *Palamite*, *Lizze*, *Polpi*, *Chieppe*, *Xaibas*, *Locustes*, *Dysters*, exceeding great *Toxopfes*, & *Tiburoni* of marueilous bygnesse: also *Manates*, and *Murene*, and many other fishes, which haue no names in our language, and these of such diuersitie and quantitie, as can not

*Tiburons.*  
*Manates.*

not be expessed without large wyptyng and long tyme. But to let passe to intreate particularly of the multitude of fishes, I intende to speake chiefly, and somewhat largely, of three sortes of most notable fishes: whereof the fyrst is, the great *Toxopfes*, the seconde is called *Tiburon*, and the thyrde *Manate*. And to begin at the fyrst, I say that in the Ilande of *Cuba*, are found great *Toxopfes* (which are certayne shell fishes) of such bygnesse that tenne or fyftene men are scarcely able to lyfte one of them out of the water, as I haue been informed of credible persons dwelling in the same Iland. But of that which I my selfe haue seene, I can testifie, that in the fyne lande, in the village of *Acla*, there are of this sort some taken and kylled of such bygnesse, that fyre men with muche difficultie coulde scarcely drawe them out of the water, and commonly the least sort of them are as much as two men may carry at a burden: that whiche I sawe lyfted vpon by fyre men, had her shell a yerde and a quarter in length, and in breadth more then fyue yardes. The maner of takynge them, is this: At sometymes chaunceth that in theyr great nettes (whiche they call shoote nettes) there are founde certayne *Toxopfes* of the common sort, in great quantities, and when they come out of the sea, and byng forth theyr egges, and goe together by companyes from the sea, to feede on the lande, the Christians or Indians folowe theyr steppes which they fynde in the lande, and soone ouertake them, because they are very heauy and slowe in gopng, although they make all the hast they can to returne to the sea, as soone as they espye any bodie. When they that pursue them haue ouertaken them, they put a stake or staffe vnder theyr legges, and ouerturne them on theyr backes as they are yet runnyng, so that they can goe no further, nor yet rylle a gayne or turne, and thus they suffer them to lye styll whyle they folowe after the rest, which they ouerturne in lyke maner: and by this meanes take very many, at such tymes as they come forth of the sea as I haue sayde: This fysh is very excellent and holysome to be eaten, and of good tast. The seconde of the three fishes wherof I haue spoken, is the *Tiburon*: this is a very great fysh, and very quicke and swyft in the water, and a cruell deuourer: these are oftentimes taken, as well when the shippes are vnder sayle in the Ocean, as also when they lye at anker, or at

Great *Toxopfes*.

*Tiburons.*

Ce. lii.

any

any other tyme, and especially the leaste kynde of these fyshes. When the shypes are vnder sayle, the byggest sorte are taken after this maner. When the *Tiburon* seeth the shyppe saylyng, he foloweth it swymmyng behynde, the whiche thinges the mariners seepng, cast forth all the fylth of the shyppe into the sea for the fysh to eate, who neuerthelesse foloweth them with equall pafe, although they make neuer suche haste with full wynde and sayles, and waloweth on euery syde and about the shyp, and thus foloweth it sometyme for the space of a hundred & fyftie leagues, and more, and when the mariners are disposed to take them, they cast downe by the sterne of the shyppe a hooke of Iron, as bygge as the byggest fynger of a mans hande, of thre spannes in length, and crooked lyke a fyshhook, with bearded accor- dyng to the bygnesse thereof, and fastened to an Iron cheyne of fyue or syxe lynkes neare vnto the ende, and from thence tyed with a great rope, fastnyng also on the hooke for a bayte, a peece of some fysh, or hogges flethe, or some other fleshy, or the bowels and intralles of an other *Tiburon* which they haue taken before, whiche may easily be done, for I haue seene niene taken in one day, and if they would haue taken more, they myght also. Thus when the *Tiburon* hath pleasauntly folowed the shyppe a long viage, at the length he waloweth the bayte with the hooke, and al well by his stryuyng to flice or escape, as also by the swyft passage of the shyppe, the hooke ouerthwarteth and catcheth holde of his chappes: the whiche fysh when it is taken, it is of such huge byggenesse, that twelue or fyftee men are scarcely able to drawe it out of the water, and lyft it into the shyppe, where one of the mariners gyueth it many knockes on the head with a club or beetle, vntyll hee haue slayne it: they are sometymes founde of tenne or twelue foote long, and of fyue, syxe, or seuen spannes in breadth, where they are broadest: they haue very great and wyde mouthes, to the proportion of the rest of theyr bodies, and haue two rowes of teeth, the one somewhat separate from the other, of cruell shape, and standyng very thicke. When they haue slayne this fysh, they cut the body thereof in small peeces, and put it to drye, hangyng it thre or foure dayes at the cordes of the sayle clothes to drye in the wynde, and then eate it: It is doubtesse a good fysh, and of great commoditie to serue the

the shypes for vitalles for many dayes: the leaste of these fyshes are most holesome and tender, it hath a skynne muche lyke to the skynne of a Sole whereunto the sayd *Tiburon* is like in shape: Whiche I saye, because *Plinie* hath made mention of none of these thre fyshes, among the number of them wher- of he writeth in his natural hystorie. These *Tiburons* come forth of the sea, and enter into the ryuers, where they are no lesse perclous then great *Lisartes* or *Crocodyles*, wherof I haue spoken largely before: For they deuoure men, kyne, and hoxles, euen as do the *Crocodyles*: they are very dangerous in cer- tayne washyng places or pooles by the ryuers sydes, and where they haue deuoured at other tymes. Dyuers other fyshes both great and small, of sundry sortes and kyndes, are accustomed to folowe the shypes goyng vnder sayle, of the whiche I wyll speake somewhat when I haue written of *Manate*, whiche is the thyrde of the thre wherof I haue promised to entreate. *Manate* therefore, is a fysh of the sea, of the byggest sorte, and muche greater then the *Tiburon* in length and breadth, and is very brutyshe and vyle, so that it appeareth in fourme lyke vnto one of those great vesselles made of goates skynnes, wherin they vse to cary newe wyne in *Medina de Campo*, or in *Arenalo*: the head of this beast is lyke the head of an Ox, with also like eyes, and hath in the place of armes, two great stumpes wherwith he swymmeth: It is a very gentle and tame beast, and commeth of- tentimes out of the water to the next shore, where if he fynd any hearbes or grasse, he feedeth therof. Our men are accustomed to kyl many of these, and diuers other good fyshes, with their crof- bowes, pursuing them in barkes or Canoas, because they swim in maner about the water: the which thyng when they see, they drawe them with a hooke tyed at a small corde, but somewhat strong: As the fysh fleeth away, the archer letteth go, and pro- longeth the corde by litle and litle, vntyll he haue let it go many fathams: at the ende of the corde, there is tyed a corke, or a peece of lyght woodde, and when the fysh is gone a litle way, and hath coloured the water with his blood, and feelth hym selfe to faynt and drawe towarde the ende of his lyfe, he resorteth to the shore, and the archer foloweth, geatheryng vp his corde, wherof whyle there yet remaine syxe or eyght fathams, or some

Somewhat more or lesse, he draweth it towarde the lande, and draweth the fyshe therewith by litle and litle, as the waues of the sea helpe hym to do it the more easly: then, with the helpe of the rest of his companie, he lyfteth this great beaste out of the water to the lande, beyng of suche byggenesse, that to conuey it from thence to the citie, it shalbe requisite to haue a carte with a good poke of Oxen, and sometymes more, accordyng as these fyshes are of byggenesse, some being much greater then other some in the same kinde, as is seene of other beastes: Sometymes they lyft these fyshes into the Canoe or barke, without drawyng them to the lande as before, for as soone as they are slayne, they flote aboue the water: And I beleue verily that this fyshe is one of the best in the worlde to the tast, and the lykest vnto fleshe, especially so lyke vnto beefe, that who so hath not seene it whole, can iudge it to be none other when he seeth it in peeces then very beefe or veale, and is certaynly so lyke vnto fleshe, that all the men in the worlde may herein be deceyued: the tast likewise, is like vnto the tast of very good veale, and lasteth long, yf it be powdred: so that in fine, the Vase of these parts, is by no meanes lyke vnto this. This *Manate* hath a certayne stone, or rather bone in his head within the brayne, whiche is of qualitie greatly appropriate agaynst the disease of the stone, if it be burnt and grounde into small powder, and taken fastyng in the morning when the paine is felte, in such quantitie as may lye vpon a peny, with a draught of good whyte wyne: For being thus taken thre or foure mornings, it acquieteth the greefe, as dyuers haue tolde me whiche haue proued it true, and I my selfe by testimonie of syght, do wytnesse that I haue seene this stone sought of dyuers for this effecte.

There are also dyuers other fyshes as bygge as this *Manate*, among the whiche there is one called *Vibuella*. This fyshe beareth in the toppe of his head a swoorde, beyng on euery syde full of many sharpe teeth, this swoorde is naturally very harde and strong, of foure or fyue spannes in length, and of proportion accordyng to the same byggenesse: and for this cause is this fyshe called *Spada*, that is, the swoorde fyshe. Of this kynde some are founde as litle as Sardines, and other so great, that two pokes of Oxen are scarcely able to drawe them

The fyshe  
Manate.

A remedy as  
gaynst the  
stone.

The swoorde  
fyshe.

them on a Cart. But whereas before I haue promised to speake of other fyshes, whiche are taken in these seas whyle the shippes are vnder sayle, I wyll not forgeat to speake of the *Tunnye*, whiche is a great and good fyshe, and is oftentimes taken and kylde with trout speares, and hookes, cast in the water, when they play and swim about the shippes. In lyke maner also are taken many *Turbuts*, whiche are very good fyshes as are lyghtly in all the sea. And here is to be noted, that in the great Ocean sea, there is a strange thyng to be consydered, whiche all that haue been in the Indies affirme to be true: And this is, that lyke as on the lande there are some prouinces fertile and fruitfull, and some barren, euen so doth the lyke chaunce in the sea: So that at some wyndes the shippes sayle fytie, or a hundred, or two hundred leagues and more, without takyng or sleepyng of one fyshe: and agayne, in the selfe same Ocean in some places, all the water is seene tremble by the mouyng of the fyshes, where they are taken abundantly. It commeth further to my remembraunce to speake somewhat of the sleepyng of fyshes, whiche is doubtlesse a strange thyng to beholde, and is after this maner. When the shippes sayle by the great Ocean, folowyng theyr viage, there ryseth sometymes on the one syde or on the other, many companies of certayne litle fyshes, of the whiche the byggest is no greater then a *Sardyne*, and so diminishe lesse and lesse from that quantitie, that some of them are very litle: these are called *Volatori*, that is, sleepyng fyshes: they ryse by great companies and flockes, in suche multitudes that it is an astonysment to behold them: Sometimes they ryse but litle from the water, & (as it chaunceth) continue one syght for the space of an hundred paces, and sometymes more, or lesse, before they fall agayne into the sea, sometymes also they fall into the shippes. And I remember, that on an euening when al the company in the shipp were on theyr knees, syngyng *Salve regina* in the hyghest part of the Castell of the poupe, and sayled with a full wynde, there passed by vs a flocke of these sleepyng fyshes, and came so neare vs, that many of them fell into the shippe, among the whiche, two or thre fel hard by me, whiche I tooke alyue in my hand, so that I myght well perceyue that they were as bygge as Sardines, and of the same quantitie,

Tunnye.

Turbut.

Note.

sleepyng  
fyshes.



quantitie, hauing two wynges or quilles growing out of theyr synnes, lyke vnto those wherewith all fyshes swim in ryuers: these wynges are as long as the fyshes them selues. As long as they wynges are moyst, they beare them vp in the ayre, but assoone as they are drye, they can contynue theyr flyght no further then as I haue sayde before, but fall immediatly into the sea, and so ryle agayne, and flee as before from place to place. In the yere a thousand, fyue hundred, and fyftee, when I came fyrst to enfourme your Maiestie of the state of the thynges in India, and was the yere folowynge in Flaunders in the tyme of your most fortunate successe in these your kyngdomes of Aragonie and Castyle, whereas at that viage I sayled about the Ilande *Bermuda*, otherwyle called *Garza*, beyng the furthest of all the Ilandes that are founde at this daye in the worlde, and arryuyng there at the deapth of eyght yardes of water, and distaunt from the lande as farre as the shotte of a peece of Ordnance, I determyned to sende some of the shyp to lande, aswell to make searche of suche thynges as were there, as also to leaue in the Iland certayne Dogges for encrease. But the tyme not seruing my purpose by reason of contrary wynde, I coulde byng my shippes no nearer the Ilande, beyng twelue leagues in length, and syxe in breadth, and about thyrtye in circuite, lying in the thre and thyrtyeth degree of the North syde. Whyle I remayned heere, I saw a stryfe and combat betweene these fleeing fyshes, and the fyshes named Gyle heades, & the foules called Seamewes, and Cormorantes, which surely seemed vnto me a thyng of as great pleasure and solace as coulde be deuised, while the Gyle heades swam on the hymme of the water, and sometymes lyfted theyr shoulders about the same, to raple the sleeping fyshes out of the water to drye them to flyght, and folowe them swimmyng to the place where they fall, to take and eate them sodenly. Againe on the other side, the Seamewes and Cormorantes, take many of these sleeping fyshes, so that by this meanes they are neyther safe in the ayre, nor in the water. In the selfe same peryll and danger doo men lyue in this mortall lyfe, wherein is no certayne securitie, neyther in hygge estate, nor in lowe. Which thyng surely ought to put vs in remembraunce of that blessed and safe resting place

The Iland of  
*Bermuda*

Not to blye for  
the drye, nor to  
lowe for the  
crowe.

place whiche God hath prepared for suche as loue hym, who shall acquiete and synthe the trauails of this troublous worlde, wherein are so many dangers, and byng them to that eternal lyfe where they shall fynde eternall securitie and rest. But to returne to the hystorye: these byrdes and foules whiche I sawe, were of the Ilande of *Bermuda*, neere vnto the whiche I sawe these sleeping fyshes: for they coulde be of no other lande, forasmuche as they are not accustomed to wander farre from the coastes where they are byrde.

Of thyncrease and decrease (that is) rysyng  
and fallyng of our Ocean sea, and  
South sea, called the sea of *Sur*.



Will nowe speake of certayne thynges whiche are seene in the prouince, or at the least in the citie of golden Castyle, otherwyle called *Beragua*, and in the coastes of the North sea, & of the South sea, called the sea of *Sur*, not omitting to note one syngher and marueylous thyng whiche I haue considered of the Ocean sea; wherof hitherto no Cosmographer, Pilot, or Mariner, or any other, haue satisfied me. I say theretoze, as it is well knownen to your maiestie, and all such as haue knowledge of the Ocean sea, that this great Ocean casteth from it selfe the sea *Mediterraneum* by the mouth of the straght of *Gibilterra*, in the which the water, from thend & furthest part of that sea, euen vnto the mouth of the sayde straght, eyther in the East toward the coaste commonly called *Leuante*, or in any other part of the sayde sea *Mediterraneum*, the sea doth not so fall nor increase, as reason wolde iudge for so great a sea, but increaseth very litle, and a small space: Neuerthelesse, without the mouth of the straght in the myne Ocean, it increaseth and falleth very muche, and a great space of grounde, from syxe houres to syxe houres, as in all the coastes of Spayne, Britanie, Flaunders, Garmanie, and England. The selfe same Ocean sea in the firme lande newly founde, in the coastes of the same lying toward the North, doth neyther ryle nor fall, nor lykwyle in the Ilandes of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, and at the other

The west  
Ocean.  
The sea *Mes-  
diterraneum*.

*Hispaniola*,  
*Cuba*.

ther Ilandes of the same lying toward the north, for the space of thre thousand leagues, but onely in lyke maner as dooth the sea *Mediterraneum* in Italy, which is in maner nothyng, in respecte to that increase and decrease whiche the sayde Ocean hath in the coastes of Spayne and Flaunders. But this is yet a greater thyng, that also the selfe same Ocean in the coastes of the sayde fyne lande lying toward the South, in the cite of *Panama*, and also in the coast of that lande whiche lyeth toward the East and West from that cite, as in the Ilande of pearles or *Margaritea*, whiche the Indians call *Tarrarequi*, and also in *Taboga* and *Otoque*, and in all other Ilandes of the south sea of *Sur*, the water ryseth and falleth so muche, that when it falleth, it goeth in maner out of syght, whiche thyng I my selfe haue seene oftentimes. And here your maiestie may note an other thing, that from the north sea to the south sea, being of such difference the one from the other in rysing and falling, yet is the lande that deuiderth them not past eyghtene or twentie leagues in breadyth from coaste to coaste: So that both the sayde seas, beyng all one Ocean, this strange effecte is a thyng worchy greatly to be consydered of all suche as haue inclination and desyre to knowe the secrese woorkes of nature, wherein the infinite power and wysedome of God is seene to be suche, as may allure al good natures to reuerence and loue so diuine a maiestie. And wheras by demonstration of learned men I am not satisfied of the naturall cause hereof, I content my selfe to knowe and beleue, that he whiche hath made these thynges, dooth knowe this and many other, which he hath not graunted to the reason of man to comprehend, muche lesse to so bale a wyt as myne is. They therefore that are of greater vnderstandyng, shall search the cause hereof for them and for me, forasmuch as I haue onely put the matter in question, as a wytnesse that haue seene the experience of the thyng.

The South sea.

The power and wysedome of God is seene in his creatures.

Of

Of the strayght or narrowe passage of the land lying betweene the North and South sea, by the which spyces may much sooner and easyer be brought from the Ilandes of *Molucca* into Spaine by the VVest Ocean, then by that way whereby the Portugales sayle into the East India.



I hath been an opinion among the Cosmographers and Pilottes of late tyme, and other whiche haue had practyse in thynges touchyng the sea, that there shoulde be a strayght of water passing from the North sea of the fyne, into the South sea of *Sur*, which neuerthelesse hath not been seene nor founde to this day. And surely yf there be any such strayght, we that inhabite those partes do thynke the same shoulde be rather of land then of water. If of the fyne land in some partes thereof is so strayght and narrowe, that the Indians say that from the mountaynes of the prouince of *Esquegua* or *Vrraca* (which are betweene the one sea and the other) if a man ascend to the top of the mountaines, and looke toward the North, he may see the water of the North sea of the prouince of *Beragua*: & againe looking the contrary way, may on the other syde (towards the South) see the sea of *Sur*, and the prouinces which confine with it, as do the territories of the two Lordes or kynges of the sayde prouinces of *Vrraca* and *Esquegua*. And I beleue, that yf it be as the Indians say, of all that is hytherto knowne, this is the narrowest strayght of the fyne land, whiche some affirme to be full of rough mountaynes. Yet do I take it for a better way, or so short as is that whiche is made from the port called *Nomen Dei* (whiche is in the North sea) vnto the new cite of *Panama*, beyng in the coast and on the bancke of the sea of *Sur*, whiche way is lykewys very rough, full of dyfferent wooddes, mountaynes, ryuers, halleyes, and very difficult to passe through, and can not be done without great labour & trauaile. Some measure this way in this part, to be from sea to sea eightene leagues, whiche I suppose to be rather twentie, not for that it is any more by measure, but because it is rough and difficult, as I haue sayde,

Esquegua and Vrraca.

Nomen Dei, Panama.

The ryuer of  
Chagre.

The Ilande  
Bastimento.

The maruei-  
lous bypge.

sayde, and as I haue founde it by experience, haupng now twisse  
passed that way by foote, countpng from the port and village of  
*Nomen Dei*, vnto the dominion of the *Cacique* of *Iuanaga*, other-  
wyse called *Capira*, eyght leagues, and from thence to the ryuer  
of *Chagre*, other eyght leagues. So that at this ryuer, beyng six-  
teene leagues from the sayde port, endeth the roughnesse of the  
way: then from hence to the marueilous bypge are two leagues,  
and beyonde that, other two, vnto the port of *Panama*. So that  
altogether, in my iudgement, make twentie leagues. And yf  
therfore this nauigation may be founde in the South sea for the  
trade of spyes (as we trust in God) to be brought from thence  
to the sayde port of *Panama* (as is possible enough) they maye  
afterwarde safely passe to the North sea, notwithstanding the  
difficultie of the way of the twentie leagues aforesayde. Which  
thyng I affirme, as a man wel trauayled in these regions, ha-  
upng twisse on my feete passed ouer this straght in the yeere  
1521, as I haue said. It is furthermore to be vnderstoode, that it  
is a marueilous facilitie to bypng spices by this way which I will  
now declare. From *Panama* to the ryuer of *Chagre*, are foure  
leagues of good and sayre way, by the which cartes may passe at  
pleasure, by reason that the mountaynes are but few and litle, and  
that the greatest part of these foure leagues is a playne grounde  
boyde of trees: and when the cartes are come to the sayde ryuer,  
the spyes may be caried in Barkes and pynnesses. For this  
ryuer entreth into the North sea spue or syre leagues lower then  
the port of *Nomen Dei*, and emptieth it selfe in the sea neere vnto  
an Ilande called *Bastimento*, where is a verie good and safe port.  
Your maiestie may now therfore consyder, howe great a thyng,  
and what commoditie it may be to conuey spices this way, foras-  
much as the ryuer of *Chagre*, hauing his originall only two leagues  
from the South sea, continueth his course, and emptieth it selfe  
into the other North sea. This ryuer runneth fast, and is verie  
great, and so commodious for this purpose as may be thought  
or desired: the marueilous bypge made by the worke of nature,  
beyng two leagues beyond the sayde ryuer, & other two leagues  
on this syde the port of *Panama*, so lying in the mydde waye be-  
tweene them both, as framed naturally in suche sort, that none  
which passe by this viage doth see any such bypge, or thinke that  
there

there is any such bypdyng in that place, vntyll they be in the top  
thereof, in the way toward *Panama*: But assoone as they are  
on the bypge, lookyng toward the ryght hande, they see a litle  
ryuer vnder them, whiche hath his chanel distant from the feete  
of them that walke ouer it, the space of two speares length or  
more. The water of this ryuer is verie shalowe, not passyng the  
deapth of a mans legge to the knee, and is in breadth betweene  
thyrtye and fourtye pases, and falleth into the ryuer of *Chagre*. To-  
ward the ryght hand, standyng on this bypge, there is nothing  
seene but great trees. The largenesse of the bypge concepneth  
fifteene pases, and the length thereof about threescore or foure-  
score pases: The arche is so made of most harde stone, that no  
man can beholde it without admiration, beyng made by the hygh  
and omnipotent creatour of all thinges. But to returne to speake  
somewhat more of the conueying of spices, I say, that when it  
shall please almyghtie God that this nauigation aforesayde shall  
be founde by the good fortune of your maiestie, and that the spy-  
ces of the Ilandes of the South sea (whiche may also be other-  
wyse called the Ocean of the East India, in the which are the I-  
landes of *Molucca*) shalbe brought to the sayd coast and the port  
of *Panama*, and be conueyed from thence (as we haue sayde) by  
the syrne lande with cartes vnto the ryuer of *Chagre*, and from  
thence into this our other sea of the North, from whence they  
may afterwarde be brought into Spayne, I say that by this mea-  
nes the viage shalbe shortned more then seven thousand leagues,  
with muche lesse daunger then is by the viage now vsed by the  
way of *Commendator* of *Aysa*, captayne vnder your maiestie,  
who this present yeere attempted a viage to the place of the sayd  
spices: and not only the way is thus muche shortned, but also a  
thyrd parte of the tyme is abbreviate. To conclude therefore, if a-  
ny had hitherto attempted this viage by the sea of *Sar*, to seeke  
the Ilandes of spices, I am of firme opinion, that they shoulde  
haue been founde long since, as doubtesse they may bee by the  
reasons of *Cosmographie*.

The Ilandes  
of Molucca.

The commodi-  
tie of this  
viage.

ff. l.

Howe

Howe thinges that are of one kynde, dyffer in fourme  
and qualitie, accordyng to the nature of the place  
where they are engendred or grow, and of the  
beastes called Tygers.

Tigers.



**N** the firme lande are founde many terrible  
beastes, which some thinke to bee Tygers.  
Whiche thing neuerthelesse I dare not as-  
sirme, considering what aucthours do wyte  
of the lychtnesse and agilitie of the Tyger,  
wheras this beast, being otherwyle in shape  
bery like unto a Tiger, is notwithstanding  
bery slowe. Yet true it is, that according to the marueilles of the  
worlde, and differences which naturall thinges haue in dyuers  
regions vnder heauen, and dyuers constellations of the same,  
vnder the which they are created, we see that some suche plantes  
and hearbes as are hurtfull in one countrey, are harmelesse and  
holsome in oher regions. And byrdes whiche in one prouince  
are of good taste, are in other so vnlaury that they may not bee  
eaten. Men lykwyle whiche in some countreys are blacke, are  
in other places whyte: and yet are both these and they men.  
Euen so may it bee, that Tygers are lyght in some region, as  
they wyte, and may neuerthelesse be slow and heauy in these In-  
dies of your maiestie, wherof we speake. The sheepe of Arabie  
draue their tayles long and bigge on the ground, and the Bulles  
of Egypt haue theyr heare growyng towards theyr heades: yet  
are those sheepe, and these bulles. Men in some countreys are  
hardy and of good courage, and in other naturallly fearefull and  
brutylthe. All these thinges, and many more, whiche may bee  
sayde to this purpose, are easie to bee proued, and woorthy to bee  
beleued, of suche as haue read of the lyke in aucthours, or tra-  
ueyled the worlde, whereby theyr owne sight may teache them  
the experiance of these thinges wherof I speake. It is also ma-  
nifest that Iucca, wherof they make theyr bread in the Ilande of  
Hispaniola, is deadly popson if it bee eaten greene with the iuse:  
and yet hath it no such propertie in the firme lande, where I haue  
eaten it many times, and found it to be a good fruit. The Bats of  
Spaine, although they bite, yet are they not venomous: but in the  
firme

Plantes and  
hearbes.

Byrdes.

Men.

Sheepe.

Bulles.

Iucca.

Battes.

firme land, many dye that are bytten of them. And in this fourme  
may so many thinges be sayd, that tyme shall not suffice to wyte,  
wherwas my intent is only to prouue that this beast may bee  
a Tyger, or of þe kynd of Tygers, although it be not of such light-  
nesse and swiftnesse as are they wherof Plinie & other aucthours Plinie.  
speake, discrybyng it to bee one of the swyftest beastes of the  
lande, and that the ryuer of Tigris for the swyft course thereof  
was called by that name. The fyrst Spanyardes whiche sawe The Tiger.  
this Tyger in the firme lande, dyd so name it. Of the kynde of  
these was that which Don Diego Columbo the Admirall sent your  
maiestie out of newe Spayne to Toledo. Theyr heades are  
lyke to the heades of Lions, or Lionesses, but greater: the rest  
of all theyr bodyes, and theyr legges, are full of blacke spottes  
one neere vnto an other, and diuided with a circumference or  
fryndge of redde colour, shewyng as it were a fayre woozke  
and correspondent picture, about their croopes or hynder partes,  
they haue these spottes byggest, and lesse and lesse towarde theyr  
bellies, legges, and heades. That which was brought to Toledo,  
was young, and but litle, and by my estimation of the age of  
thre peeres: but in the firme lande there are many founde of  
greater quantitie, for I haue scene some of thre spans in height,  
and more then fure in length. They are beastes of great force,  
with strong legges, and well armed with nayles and fanges,  
which wee call dogge teeth: they are so fierce, that in my iudge-  
ment no reall Lion of the byggest for is so strong or fierce. Of  
these, there are many found in the firme lande, which deuour ma-  
ny of the Indians, & doe much hurt otherwyle: but since the com-  
ming of the Chyistians, many haue been kild with Crossebowes  
after this maner. As soone as the archer hath knowledge of the  
haunt of any of these Tigers, he goeth searching their trale, with The hunting  
of Tigers.  
his crossebow & with a litle hound or begle, and not with a grey-  
hounde, because this beast would soone kyll any dog that would  
venter on him: When the hounde hath founde the Tyger, he  
runneth about him bayng continually, and approcheth so neare  
him, snappng and grymyng, with so quicke sicepng and re-  
turnyng, that he heereby so molesteth this fierce beast, that hee  
bynueth him to take the next tree, at the foote wherof he remaineth  
ff. ii. kyll

still bayng, and the Tyger grymmyng and shewing his teethe, whyle in the meane tyme the archer commeth neare, and .xii. or .xiii. pases of, stryketh him with the querell of his crossebowe in the brest, and fleeth incontinent, leauyng the Tyger in his tra- uaple for lyfe and death, bytyng the tree and eatyng earth for fiercenesse: then within the space of two or thre houres, or the day folowynge, the archer returneth thither, and with his dogge fyndeth the place where he lyeth dead. In the yere. 1522. I with the other rulers and magistrates of the cite of *Sancta Maria Antiqua in Dariena*, tooke order in our counsaile, a rewarde of foure or fyue peeces of golde to bee giuen to euery man that kylld any of these Tygers: by reason whereof many were kylld in shorte space, both with crossebowes, and also with dyuers snares and ingens. But to conclude, I will not obstinately stand in opynion whether these beastes be Tygers or Panthers, or of the number of any other suche beastes of spotted heare, or also peradventure some other newe beast vnknewen to the olde wy- ters, as were many other whereof I haue spoken in this booke: Of whiche thyng I doe not greatly marueyle, forasmuche as vnto our tyme this great part of the worlde was vnknewen to the antiquitie, insomuche that none of the wyters of that age, nor yet *Pytolome* in his *Cosinographie*, or any other since him, haue made any mention hereof, vntyll the fyrst Admyrall *Don Christopher Colonius* discouered the same: A thing doubtesse with- out comparyson muche greater then that which is sayde of *Hercules*, that he fyrst gaue the entrance of the sea *Mediterraneum* into the Ocean, whiche the Grekes coulde neuer doe before him. And heereof clyeth the fable that the mountaynes of *Cal- pe* and *Abila* (whiche are directly one agaynst an other in the straght of *Gibilterra*, the one beyng in Spayne, and the other in Affryke) were ioyned together before they were opened by *Hercules*, who erected those his pillers which your maiestie giue in token of prehemynence and lyke enterpryses, with likewise these his wordes *Plus Vltra*, wordes doubtesse woorthy for so great and vnyuersall an Emperour, and not conuenient for any other Prynce: forasmuche as your holy Catholyke ma- iestie haue spredde them in so strange and remote regions, so many thousand leagues further then euer dyd *Hercules*. And cer- teynly

A rewarde for  
kyllyng of Ty-  
gers.

*Colonius* com-  
pared to *Her-  
cules*.

The pillers of  
*Hercules*.  
The straghtes  
of *Gibilterra*.

Note.

• *Plus Vltra*.  
Howe farre the  
Emperours  
maiestie ex-  
cels-  
lety *Hercules*.

teynly ly, if there had been an Image of gold made in the praile and fame of *Colonus*, he had as well deserued it, as any of those men to whom for theyr noble enterpryse the antiquitie gaue di- uine honour, if he had been in theyr tyme. But to returne to the matter whereof I began to speake: I neede say no more of the fourme of this beast, forasmuch as your Maiestie haue scene that whiche is yet alpye in *Toledo*. And surely the keeper of your ma- iesties Lions, who hath taken vpon him the charge to tame this beast, myght better haue bestowed his paynes in an other thing that myght haue been more profytable for the safegarde of his lyfe, because this Tyger beyng yet but young, will dayly be stronger and fiercer, and increase in malyce. The Indians (and especially they of the firme lande in the prouince whiche the Ca- tholyke Kyng *Don Fernando* commaunded to be called golden Castyle) call this beast *Ochi*. This thing is strange that chaunced of late: that whereas the Tiger whereof we haue made menti- on before, would haue kylld his keeper that then kept him in a cage, was in fewe dayes after made so tame, that he ledde her ty- ed only with a small corde, and playde with her so familiarly, that I marueyled greatly to see it, yet not without certayne beleefe that this friendship wil not last long, without danger of life to the keeper, forasmuche as surely these beastes are not meete to bee among men, for theyr fiercenesse and cruell nature that can not bee tamed.

A Tyger made  
tame.

Of the maners and customes of the Indians of  
the firme lande, and of theyr women.



The maners & customes of these Indians, are dyuers in diuers prouinces. Some of them take as many wyues as them list, and other lyue with one wyfe, whom they for- sake not without consent of both parties, which chaunceth especially when they haue no chyldren. The nobilitie of well men as women, repute it infamous to ioyne with any of base parétagé or strangers, except Christians, whom they count noble men, by reason of their valiantnesse, although they put a difference be- twene the common sort & the other to whom they shewe obedi- ence, counting it for a great matter & an honorable thyng, if they

The Indian  
women.



bee beloued of any of them: insomuche that if they knowe any Chyistian man carnally, they keepe their sayth to him, so that hee bee not long absent farre from them, for they intent is not to be widowes, or to liue chaste lyke religious women. Many of them haue this custome, that when they perceyue that they are with chyld, they take an heate wherewith they destroy that is conceiued: for they say that only well aged women should beare chyldren, and that they wil not forbear their pleasures, and defourme their bodies with bearyng of chyldren, whereby they teates become loose & hanging, which thing they greatly dispraise. When they are deliuered of theyr chyldren, they goe to the ryuer & washe them, whiche done, theyr blood and purgation ceaseth immediately: And when after this they haue a fewe dayes absteyned from the company of men, they become so straght, as they say which haue had carnall familiaritie with them, that such as vse them, can not without much difficultie satisfie theyr appetite: They also whiche neuer had chyldren, are euer as virgins. In some partes they weare certayne litle apernes rounde about them before and behynde, as low as to theyr knees and hammes, wherewith they couer theyr priuie partes, and are naked all their bodie besyde. The principall men beare theyr priuities in a hollow pye of golde, but the common sorte haue them inclosed in the shelles of certayne great welkes, and are besyde bitterly naked: For they thinke it no more shame to haue theyr coddies seene, then any other parte of theyr bodies: and in many prouinces both the men and women go bitterly naked, without any such couerture at all. In the prouince of *Cuenca* they call a man *Chuy*, and a woman *Ira*, whiche name is not greatly disagreeable to many both of theyr women and of ours. These Indians gyue great honour and reuerence to theyr *Cacique* (that is) theyr kynges and rulers. The principall *Cacique* hath twelue of his most strong Indians appointed to beare him, when he remoueth to any place, or goeth ahynde for his pleasure. Two of them cary him sitting vppon a long peece of wood, which is naturally as lyght as they can fynde, the other tenne folow next vnto him as footemen: they keepe continually a trottyng pace with him on their shoulders. When the two that cary him are weery, other two come in their places, without any disturbance or staye. And thus

The men of  
India.

The kyng is  
borne on mens  
backes.

thus if the way bee playne, they cary him in this maner for the space of xv or xx leagues in one day. The Indians that are assigned to this office, are for the most parte slaues, or *Naboriti*, that is, suche as are bounde to continuall seruice. I haue also noted that when the Indians perceyue them selues to be troubled with to much blood, they let them selues blood in the calves of theyr legges, and brawnes of theyr armes: this doe they with a very sharpe stone, and sometymes with the final tooth of a *Uiper*, or with a sharpe reede or thorne. All the Indians are commonly without beardes, insomuch that it is in maner a marueile to see any of them eyther men or women to haue any downe or heare on theyr faces, or other partes of theyr bodies: Albeit I sawe the *Cacique* of the prouince of *Catarapa*, who had heare on his face and other partes of his bodie, as had also his wyfe in such places as women are accustomed to haue. This *Cacique* had a great part of his body paynted with a blacke colour, which neuer fadeth, and is much lyke vnto that wherewith the *Hoxes* paynt them selues in *Barbarie* in token of nobilitie. But the *Hoxes* are paynted specially on their visage and throte, and certayne other partes. Lykewyse the principall Indians vse these payntynge on theyr armes and brestes, but not on theyr visages, because among them the slaues are so marked. When the Indians of certayne prouinces goe to the battayle (especially the *Caniball* archers) they cary certayne shelles of great welkes of the sea, which they blow, and make therewith great sound, much lyke the noyse of hornes: they cary also certayne *Cymbels*, which they vse in the stead of *Drummes*: also very fayre plumes of feathers, and certayne armure of golde, especially great and rounde peeces on theyr brestes, and splintes on their armes. Lykewyse other peeces, which they put on theyr heades and other partes of theyr bodies: For they esteeme nothyng so muche as to appeare galant in the warres, and to goe in most comely order that they can deuise, glysteryng with precious stones, Jewels, golde, and feathers. Of the least of these welkes or perewinkles, they make certayne litle heades, of dyuers sortes and colours: they make also litle bracelets, which they myngle with gaudies of golde, these they rowle about theyr armes from the elbowe to the wiest of the hande. The lyke also doe they on theyr legges

ff.iii.

from

Lettyng of  
blood.

They haue no  
beardes.

They paynte  
their bodies.

The *Canibals*.

Armure of  
golde.

Their galant  
nesse in the  
warres.

Theyr Jewelles.

from the knee to the soles of theyr feete, in token of nobilitie, especially theyr noble women in diuers prouinces are accustomed to weare suche Jewelles, and haue theyr neckes in maner laden therewith: these beades and Jewelles, and suche other trynkets, they call *Caquiras*. Besyde these also, they weare certayne rynges of golde at theyr eares and nostrilles, whiche they boze full of holes on both sydes, so that the rynges hang bypon theyr lippes. Some of these Indians are poulde and rounded: albeit commonly both the men and women take it for a decent thyng to weare long heare, whiche the women weare to the myddest of theyr shoulders, & cut it equally, especially about their browes: this doe they with certayne harde stones, whiche they keepe for the same purpose. The pryncipall women, when theyr teates fall, or become loose, beare them by with barres of golde, of the length of a spanne and a halfe, well wrought, and of suche byggenesse that some of them weygh more then two hundred Castellans or Ducades of golde: these barres haue holes at both the endes, whereat they tye two small cordes made of cotton at euery ende of the barres: One of these cordes goeth ouer the shoulder, and the other vnder the arme holes, where they tye both togeather, so that by this meanes the barre beareth by theyr teates. Some of these chiefe women goe to the battayle with theyr husbandes, or when theyr selues are regentes in any prouinces, in the whiche they haue all thinges at commaundement, and execute the office of generall captaines, and cause them selues to bee caried on mens backs, in lyke maner as doe the Caciques of whom I haue spoken before.

These Indians of the firme lande are muche of the same stature and colour as are they of the Ilands: they are for the most part of the colour of an olyue, if there be any other difference, it is more in bignesse then otherwise, & especially they that are called *Coronati*, are stronger and bygger then any other that I haue seene in these parties, except those of the Ilande of *Giantes*, which are on the South side of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, neare vnto the coastes of the firme land, and likewise certayne other which they call *Iucatos*, which are on the North syde. All which chiefly, although they bee no *Giantes*, yet are they doubtlesse the byggest of the Indians that are knowen to this day, & commonly bygger then the

Howe the women beare by theyr teates, with barres of golde.

The stature & colour of the Indians. The Indians called *Coronati*.

The Ilande of *Giantes*.

*Iucatos*.

the *Flemynges*: and especially many of them, aswell women as men, are of very hygh stature, and are all archers both men and women. These *Coronati* inhabite thyrte leagues in length by these coastes, from the poynt of *Canoa* to the great ryuer which they call *Guadalchiber*, neere vnto *Sancta Maria de gratia*. As I trauesed by those coastes, I fylled a butte of freshe water of that ryuer, fyre leagues in the sea from the mouth thereof where it falleth into the sea. They are called *Coronati* (that is crowned) because theyr heare is cutte rounde by theyr eares, and poulde lower a great compasse about the crowne, much lyke the fryers of saint Augustines order. And because I haue spoken of theyr maner of wearyng theyr heare, heere cometh to my remembraunce a thyng which I haue oftentimes noted in these Indians: and this is, that they haue the bones of the sculles of theyr heades foure tymes thicker, and much stronger then ours, so that in commyng to handstrokes with them, it shalbe requisite not to strike them on the heads with swoordes, for so haue many swoordes been broken on theyr heades, with litle hurte doone. And to haue sayde thus much of theyr customes and maners, it shall suffice for this tyme, because I haue more largely intreated herof in my general historie of the Indies: Yet haue I neyther there nor here spoken muche of that part of the firme lande whiche is called *Noua Hispania* (that is, newe Spayne, whereof the Ilande of *Iucatana* is part) forasmuch as *Ferdinando Cortesie* hath written a large booke therof. Of the houses of these Indies, I haue spoken sufficiently els where: Yet haue I thought good to infourme your maiestie of y<sup>e</sup> building and houses which the Christians haue made in diuers places in the firme lande. They buylde them nowe therefore with two solars or loftes, and with loopes and wyndowes to open and shutte: also with strong tymber, and very sayre boordes, in suche sorte, that any noble man may well and pleasauntly be lodged in some of them. And among other, I my selfe caused one to be builded in the citie of *Sancta Maria Antiqua* in *Dariena*, which cost me more then a thousand and five hundred Castellans, beyng of such sort that I may well entertayne and commodiously lodge any Lord or noble man, reseruing also part for my selfe and my familie: for in this may many householdes be kept, both aboue and

The sculles of the Indians heades.

Newe Spaine.

The houses of the Christians in India.

*Dariena*.

Gardens.

and beneath. It hath also a fayre garden, with many Orange trees, both sweete and sowre: Cedars also, and Limons, of the which there is nowe great plentie in the houses of the Christians. On one syde of the garden, there runneth a fayre riuer. The situation is very pleasaunt, with a good and holsome ayre, and a fayre prospecte about the ryuer. In fine, our trust is that in fewe yeeres al thinges in these regions shal growe to a better state, accorpyng to the holy intention of your maiestie.

Of the chiefe Ilandes *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*.

The Indians which at this present inhabite the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, are but fewe in number, and the Christians not so many as they ought to be, forasmuche as many of them that were in this Iland, are gone to other Ilandes, and to the fyne lande. For beyng for the most parte young men vnmarried, and desirous daily to see newe things, wherin mans nature deliecth, they were not willing to continue long in one place, especially seeing daily other newe landes discouered, where they thought they might sooner fill their purses, by being present at the fyrst spoyles: Wherin neuerthelesse their hope deceiued many of them, and especially such as had houses & habitations in this Ilande: For I certainly beleue, confyrming my selfe herein with the iudgement of many other, that if any one Prince had no more seignories then only this Ilande, it shoulde in short tyme be such, as not to geue place either to *Sicilie* or *England*, wheras euen at this present there is nothynge wherefore it shoulde malice they prosperitie, not beyng inferiour to them in any felicitie, that in maner the heauens can graunt to any lande: beyng furthermore suche as mynryche many prouinces and kyngdomes, by reason of many ryche golde mynes that are in it, of the beste golde that is founde to this day in the worlde, and in greatest quantitie. In this Iland, nature of her selfe byngeth forth suche abundance of cotton, that if it were wrought and mapytayned, there shoulde be more and better then in any part of the worlde. There is so great plentie of excellent *Cassia*, that a great quantitie is brought from thence into *Spayne*, from whence it is carped

Men are desirous of newe thynges.

The commodities of *Hispaniola*, *England*, and *Sicilie*.

Golde mynes.

Cotton.

*Cassia*.

caried to diuers partes of the worlde. It encreasech so muche, that it is a marueylous thyng to consider. In this are many ryche shoppes where Sugar is wrought, and that of suche perfectnesse and goodnesse, and in such quantitie, that they come laden therewith peerele into *Spayne*. All such seedes, settes, or plantes, as are brought out of *Spayne* and planted in this Ilande, become muche better, bygger, and of greater encrease then they are in any part of our *Europe*. And yf it chaunce otherwyle that sometymes they prosper not so well, the cause is that they which shoulde tyl and husband the ground, & sowe and plant in due seasons, haue no respect heereunto, beyng impatient whyle the wheat and vines waxe rypp, beyng geuen to wanderyng and other assayes of present gaynes (as I haue sayde) as searchoyng the golde mynes, fylling for pearles, and occupying marchaundies, with suche other trades, for the greedy following whereof, they neglect and contempne both sowyng and plantyng. Suche frutes as are brought out of *Spayne*, into this Iland, prosper marueylously, and waxe rypp all tymes of the yeere, as hearbes of al sortes very good and pleasaunt to be eaten. Also many *Pomegranates* of the best kynde, and *Oranges* both swerte and sowre: Lykewyle many fayre *Limons* and *Cedars*, and a great quantitie of all such as are of sharpe, sowre, and bytter tast. There are also many *Fygge* trees, which byng forth they fruite all the whole yeere. Lykewyle those kynde of *Date* trees that beare *Dates*, and diuers other trees and plantes, which were brought out of *Spayne* thither. Beastes do also encrease in lyke abundaunce, & especially the herdes of *Kyne* are so augmented both in quantitie and number, that there are now many patrons of cattaille that haue more then two thousand heades of *Meate*, and some three or foure thousande, and some more. Besyde these, there are very many that haue herdes of foure or fyue hundred. And trueth it is, that this Iland hath better pasture for suche cattayle then any other countrey in the worlde: also holsome and cleare water, and temperate ayre, by reason whereof the herdes of such beastes are much bygger, fatter, and also of better tast then ours in *Spayne*, because of the ranke pasture, whose moisture is better digested in the hearbe or grasse by the continuall & temperate heate of the *Sonne*, wherby beyng

Sugar.

Plantes and hearbes.

Great thynges bynded by respect of present gaynes.

Oranges, Pomegranates.

Fygges all the yeere, Dates.

Beastes.

Great herdes of cattayle.

Good pasture.

The effect of continuall and moderate heate.

The cause of  
fat nourish-  
ment.

Beastes of long  
lyfe in regions  
about the E-  
quinocctial line.  
Trees whose  
leaves do not  
wyther.

The canker of  
the tree.

Long lyued  
men in India.

Paradise neare  
the Equinoc-  
tial line.

Sheepe and  
Dogges.

Dogges and  
Catties become  
wythe.

theyng made more fat and vinctuous, it is of better and more stedfast nourishment. For contynual and temperate heate, doth not only drayne much moysture out of the earth, to the nourishment of such thynges as growe and are engendred in that clime, but doth also by moderation preferue the same from resolution and putrifaction, digesting also and condensatynge or thynkynge the sayde moyst nourishment into a gummie and vinctuous substance, as is seene in all suche thynges as growe in those regions: and this is the only naturall cause aswell that certayne great beastes and of long lyfe (as the Elephant & Rhinoceros, with suche other) are engendred only in the regions neare vnto the Equinocctiall, as also that the leaues of suche trees as growe there, do not wyther or fall, vntyll they be thrust out by other, accordyng to the verse of the poet whiche sayeth, *Et nata pira pira, et ficus in fratribus extant*, this is in effect, Peares growing vpon Peares, and Fygges vpon Fygges. Plinie also wytteth, that suche trees are neuer infected with the disease of trees that the Latines call *Caries*, whiche we may call the worne or canker, theyng but a certayne putrifaction, by reason of a watrishe nourishment not well consolidate. The same thyng hath bern the cause that certayne Philosophers, considering aswell that man is the hottest and moystest beast that is (whiche is the best complexion) as also that men lyue longest in certayne partes of India neare the Equinocctiall (where yet to this day some liue to the age of an hundred and fyfte yeeres) were of opinion that yf mankynde had any beginning on the earth, that place ought by good reason to be vnder or not farre from y<sup>e</sup> Equinocctial line, for the causes aforesayde. Some of the Diuines also vpon lyke consideration, haue thought it agreable that they<sup>r</sup> Paradise shoulde be about the same, within y<sup>e</sup> precinct of those riuers which are named in the booke of Genesis. But to let passe these thynges, & to returne to the historie. In this Island furthermore are manye Sheepe, and a great number of Dogges, of the whiche (as also of the Wyne) many are become wythe, and lykewyse manny Dogges and Catties, of those whiche were brought out of Spayne: These (and especially the Dogges) do much hurt among the cattayle, by reason of the negligence of the heardmen.

There

There are also many Horses, Mares, and Mules, and such other beastes as serue the vse of men in Spayne, and are muche greater then they of the fyrr broode brought thither out of Spayne. Some places of the Islande are inhabited, although not so many as were requisite: Of the whiche I wyl say no more, but that al the regions of the Islande are so well situate, that in the course of tyme all thynges shall come to greater perfection, by reason of the rychnesse & pleasauntnesse of the countrey, and fertilitie of the soyle. But nowe to speake somewhat of the principall and chiefe place of the Islande, whiche is the cite of *San Domenico*: I saye, that as touchyng the buildinges, there is no cite in Spayne, so much for so much (no not *Barsalona*, which I haue oftentimes seene) that is to be preferred before this, generally: For the houses of *San Domenico*, are for the most parte of stone, as are they of *Barsalona*, or of so strong & wel wrought earth, that it maketh a singuler and strong bynding. The situation is much better then that of *Barsalona*, by reason that the streates are much larger and plainer, and (without comparison) more directe and streyght forth: For being builded nowe in our tyme, besyde the commoditie of the place of the fundation, the streates were also directed with corde, compase, and measure, wherein it excelleth al the cities that I haue seene. It hath the sea so neere, that of one syde there is no more space betwene the sea and the cite then the walles, and this is about fiftie pases, where it is furthest of. On this syde, the waters of the sea beate vpon the natural stones and saye coast: On the other part, hard by the side and at the foote of the houses, passeth the riuer *Ozema*, which is a marueilous port, wherein laden shippes rise very neere to the land, and in maner vnder the house windowes, and no further from the mouth of the riuer where it entreth into y<sup>e</sup> sea, then is from the foote of the hil of *Monynia*, to the monastery of saint *Fraunces*, or to the lodge of *Barsalona*. In the myddest of this space in the cite, is the fortreffe and castle, vnder the which, and twentie pases distant from the same, passe the shippes to aryle somewhat further in the same riuer. From the entraunce of the shippes vntyl they cast anker, they sayle no further from the houses of the cite then thyrtye or fourtie pases, because of this side of the cite the habitation is nere to the riuer. The port of *hauen* al-

The situation  
of Hispaniola.

The citi of San  
Domenico.

The ryuer  
Ozama.

The Hauent.

lo

so is so fayre and commodious to defraight or unlade shippes, as the like is founde but in fewe places of the worlde. The chymneis that are in this citie, are about syre hundred in number, and such houses as I haue spoken of before: Of the which some are so fayre & large, that they may well receiue and lodge any lord or noble man of Spaine with his traine & familie, and especially that which Don Diego Colon, viceroy vnder your maiestie, hath in this citie, is such that I knowe no man in Spayne that hath the lyke by a quarter in goodnesse, consydering all the commodities of the same. Lykewylse the situation thereof, as beyng aboue the sayde porthe, and altogether of stone, and hauing many fayre and large roomes, with as goodly a prospect of the lande and sea as may be deuised, seemeth vnto me so magnificall and princelyke, that your maiestie may be as well lodged therein, as in any of the most exquisite buylded houses of Spayne. There is also a Cathedral church builded of late, where aswel þ Bishop accordyng to his dignitie, as also the Canons are wel endewed. This church is wel builded of stone and lime, and of good woorkmanshipp. There are furthermore thre monasteries, bearyng the name of saint Dominike, saint Fraunces, and saint Marie of Perceues, the which are all well buylded, although not so curiously as they of Spaine. But speakyng without prejudice of any other religious monasterie, your maiestie may be wel assured, that in these thre monasteries god is as wel serued, as in any other religious house, with men of holy lyuynge & vertuous example. There is also a very good hospitall for the ayde and succour of pooze people, which was founde by Michael Passamont, treasurer to your maiestie. To conclude, this citie from day to day increaseth in wealth and good order, aswel for that the saide Admiral & viceroy, with the lord Chauncelour and counsaile appointed there by your maiestie, haue they continuall abyding heere, as also that the ryche men of the Islande resort hyther for they most commodious habitation, and trade of suche marchaundies as are eyther brought out of Spayne, or sent thither from this Islande, whiche now so aboundeth in many thynges, that it serueth Spayne with many commodities, as it were with vsury requityng suche benefytes as it fyrst receyued from thence. The people of this Islande are commonly of somewhat lesse

A cathedrall  
churche and  
monasteris in  
Hispaniola.

An Hospitall

lesse stature then are the Spaniards, and of a thynnyng or cleare browne colour: they haue wyues of theyr owne, and absteyne from theyr daughters, sisters, and mothers: they haue large foreheads, long blacke heare, and no beardes or heare in anye other partes of theyr bodies, aswell men as women, except very fewe, as perhaps scarcely one among a thousand. They goe as naked as they were borne, except that on the partes whiche may not with honestie be seene, they weare a certayne lease as brode as a mans hande, which neuertheless is not kept close with such diligence, but that sometymes a man may see that they thynke sufficiently hyd. In this Islande are certayne Glowormes, that thynne in the nyght as do ours, but are much bygger, and geue a greater lyght: Insomuch that when the men of the Islande goe any sojneys in the night, they beare some of these wormes made fast about theyr feete and head, in such sort that he that should see them a farre, & ignorant of the thing, would be greatly astonished thereat. By the lyght of these also, the women worke in theyr houses in the nyght. These wormes they cal Cienas. Their light lasteth for the space of thre dayes, and diminisheth as they begin to dye vp. There is also a kynde of Crowes, whose breath stynketh in the mornyng, and is swete in the after noone: the excrement which they aucyde, is a lyuing worme. As touching other thynges of this Island, whereof Peter Martyr hath more largely intreated in his Decades, I haue thought it superfluous to reapeate the same agayne out of this historie of Gonzalus Ferdinandus, but haue heere gathered only such thynges as eyther are not touched of Peter Martyr, or not so largely declared, as I haue done the lyke in all other notable thynges, which I haue collected out of this Summarie of Gonzalus.

The people.

Glowormes.

Crowes stynke  
in the mornyng  
& swete.

Of the lande of Cuba, and other.



If the Islande of Cuba, and other, as the Islands of Sancti Iohannis, and Iamaica, the same may be sayde in maner in all thynges as before of Hispaniola, although not so largely. Yet in lesse quantitie do they bring forth the lyke thynges, as golde, copper, cattayle, trees, plantes, fyshes, and suche other, of the whiche we haue spoken there.

Saint Iohn  
his Islande,  
Iamaica.

In



Partriches.

In *Cuba*, is a certayne kynde of Partriches, beyng verpe litle, with theyr feathers muche of the coloure of Turtle Doones, but are of muche better tast to be eaten: they are taken in great number, and beyng brought wylde into the houses, they become as tame within the space of thye or foure dayes as though they had been hatched there: they become exceeding fat in thort space, and are doubtlesse the most delicate and pleasaunt meate that euer I haue eaten. But to let passe many other thynges that myght be heere sayd, and to speake of two marueplous thynges whiche are in this Ilande of *Cuba*: whereof the one is, that a valley conteynnyng two or thye leagues in length betweene two mountaynes, is full of a kynde of verpe harde stones, of suche perfect roundenesse, and lyke vnto Pelletes of Gunnes, that no art can make better or more exactly pulished. Of these, some are as small as Pelletes for Handgunnes, and other so encreasnyng bygger and bygger from that quantitie, that they maye serue for all sortes of Artyllarie, although they bee of byggenesse to receyue one or two or more Quintales of powder, euery Qyntale conteynnyng one hundred weyght, or of what other quantitie so euer they be. These Pelletes are founde throughout al the valley within the earth, as in a mine, whiche they dygge, and take out suche as they neede of al sortes. The other marueplous thyng of this Ilande is this: That farre from the sea, there ishueth out of a mountayne a certayne lycour, muche lyke the Cley of Babylon, called *Bitumen*, or lyke vnto pytche, in great quantitie, and suche as is very commodious for the calkynyng of shypes: this falleth continually from the rocke, and runneth into sea, in suche aboundaunce that it is seene flotynge aboue the water on euery syde of the sea there about, as it is dyuen from place to place by the wynde or course of the water. *Quintus Cursus* wyrteth in his historie, that great Alexander came to the cite of *Memi*, where is a great Caue or Denne, in the whiche is a spyng or fountayne that contynually auoydeth a great quantitie of *Bitumen*, in suche sort, that it is an easy thyng to beleue that the stones of the walles of Babylon might be laid therewith, accordyng as the said auctour wyrteth. I haue seene this myne of *Bitumen*, not only in the Ilande of *Cuba*, but also such an other in new Spaine, whiche was founde

Pelletes for  
Gunnes  
brought by nature.A fountayne of  
the pytche of  
*Bitumen**Quintus Cursus*.*Bitumen* of  
Babylon.

founde of late in the prouince of *Panuco*, where it is much better then the other of *Cuba*, as I haue seene by experience in calkynyng *Panuco* of shypes.

Of the lande of *Baccalaos*, called *Terra Baccalarum*, situate on the North syde of the firme lande.



Shortly after that your maiestie came to the cite of *Toledo*, there arriued in the moneth of Nouember, *Steuens Comes* the pilor, who the yere before of .1524. by the commaundement of your maiestie, sailed to y North partes, and founde a great part of lande continuat from that which is called *Baccalaos*, discourlyng toward the West to the .xl. and .xli. degree, *Baccalaos*, from whence he brought certayne Indians (for so call we all the nations of the newe found landes) of the which he brought some Indians. With him from thence, who are yet in *Toledo* at this present, and of greater stature then other of the firme lande, as they are commonly: theyr coloure is muche lyke the other of the firme lande: they are great archers, and go couered with the skynnes of diuers beastes, both wylde and tame. In this lande are many excellent fures, as *Hartens*, *Sables*, and such other ryche fures, of the which the sayd pilor brought some with him into Spayne: they haue syluer, and copper, & certayne other metals: they are *Idolaters*, and honour the Sonne and Moone, and are seduced with such superstition and errours as are they of the firme. And to haue wyrtten thus much it may suffice, of suche thynges as haue seemed to me most woorthy to be noted in the Summarie of *Gonzalus Ferdinandus*, wyrtten to *Chempereours* maiestie.

Ryche fures  
and syluer,

Idolaters.

Particularly of newe Spayne, called  
*Noua Hispania*, or *Mexico*.



Nowe Spayne, is that part of the continent or firme lande that lyeth West and South from the land of *Florida*: this was subdued to the myre of *Castile* by the ryght noble gentelman *Ferdinando Cortes*, & y marquisse of the vale of *Quaraca*. In this lande are many prouinces, conteynnyng in them in

Gi maner

The cite of  
Mexico, or  
Mexititan.

Golde and  
siluer.

Silke.  
Cotton.  
Woad.  
Sugar.

Shelles for  
mony.

Corn.  
Beastes.

Haukyng and  
hunting.

Dapnyng.

Womans  
mouldy appa-  
reled.

A warlike na-  
tion.

Captives sa-  
crificed to  
Idoles.

maner innumerable cities, among which, that is the chiefe whiche the Indians cal *Mexico*, or *Temixtitlan*, consistyng of more then fye hundred thousand inhabitauntes: It standeth in the myddest of a lake of salte water, as doth *Tenece* in the sea, the lake conteyneth fourtie Persian miles, called *Parasange*, euery one consistyng of .xxx. furlonges, and more, as some say. In these regions is found great plentie of gold, siluer, & pretious stones, with innumerable other thynges, both necessary for the lyfe of man, & pleasant, as Silke, Bombyaline cotton, Alaine, Safferne, Woad, with diuers other thynges, wherewith cloth and Silke is dyed. There is also such abundaunce of suger, that certayne Spanishe shippes are yeerely freighted therewith, and bring the same into Spaine, from whence it is carped in maner to al partes of Christendome. The inhabitauntes of *Mexico* are subtil people, and vse much craft in theyr bargaining: they haue not the vse of gold and siluer mony, but vse in the steade thereof the halfe shelles of Almonds, which kind of Barbarous mony they cal *Cocoa*, or *Cacanguate*. In maner al kinds of corne are there very good cheape, especially barley and wheate. They haue great plentie of Hartes, wyld Bores, Lions, Leopardes, and Tigers, whiche beastes wander in maner in euery place. The region is most commodious for haukyng and hunting, for the great abundaunce it hath of beastes and foules: But the people exercise al theyr cunnyng in makyng the images of their idolatry, and in painting. Theyr women are valiant, and sumptuous in theyr apparell, and other typpementes: for they so richely frynge and beset the same with pearles, pprecious stones, and golde, that nothyng can be more excellent: they haue a kynde of paper greatly differyng from ours, in this they expresse their mindes by certayne figures, for they haue not otherwysse thuse of letters. The nation is desirous of warre, and doth not long keepe the conditions of peace vniuolated: but delyteth rather in ciuile and most cruell battayle among them selues, then to liue in peace and quietnesse. Such as in the warres fall by any meanes into the handes of theyr enemies, eyther by submyssion or otherwysse, are partly sacrificed to the Idoles, and the resydue geuen to the souldiers to be eaten, in lyke maner as we rewarde dogges and haukes with part of theyr pray. They haue innumerable Idoles, whiche euery one

maketh

maketh for his particuler god, after the phantasie of his owne brayne, and geueth therto diuine honour, albeit at this day they do by litle and litle leaue of theyr barbarous fyercesesse, & with our religion imbrace better maners: For they nowe professe the fapth of Christ, and in his name pray vnto God the Father.

## Of Peru.



The prouince called *Peru*, was also named *Noua Castilia*, by them that fyrst founde it. This region is the West part of *America*, and is situate in the longitude of .290. degrees, proceeding from the West to the East, and Southward begynneth fye degrees beyonde the Equinoctiall line, and is extended very farre into the South. This is taken to be the richest land in golde, siluer, pearles, pprecious stones, and spices, that euer was founde yet to this day. For gold is there in such plentie that they make pyssots therof, and other vessels applied to fylthy uses. But this is more to be marueyled at, that in a citie called *Colla* was founde a house al couered with massie plates of gold. In theyr warres also theyr harnesse is of gold and siluer. Theyr weapons are bowes, arrowes, flyngs, darters, and pykes. The inhabitauntes are warrellyke people, and of great agilitie. They haue cities defended with lawes and armes. The region is exceeding fruitfull, and yeldeth corne twyse in the yeere. It is so flozpyng with many fayre woods, mountaynes, ryuers, and other both pleasaunt & necessarie commodities, that it seemeth in a maner an earthly Paradise: it hath diuers kynds of beastes, and yet none hurtful, or of rauenyng kynde. Theyr sheepe are of such heygth, that they vse them in steede of Horses: some write that they are as bygge as the young Foles of Camelles, and that theyr wooll is verpe softe and fyne: also that the Swes byng fourth Lambes twyse a yeere. The people are wyttie, and of gentle behauiour, cunnyng also in artes, fapthfull of promise, and of maners not greatly to be discommended, saue only that they are ignorant of Christ, who neuerthelesse is now known vnto them in many places, as our hope is he shalbe daylie

Gg ii

more

Peru is the  
richest land  
that is know-  
en.

A house coue-  
red with golde.

Harnesse of  
golde.

A fruitfull  
region.

Great sheepe.

The dutie of  
Christians  
Princes.

## Notable thynges

more and more, yf all Princes wyl here in put thei helpynge handes to the plowe of our Lorde, and send labourers into his vineyard.

Of the great ryuer called *Rio de la Plata*  
(that is) the ryuer of siluer.



Paraue.

John Dias  
Solis.  
The Island  
Martinus  
Gratias.

This ryuer reacheth very farre in length & breadth, and is called *Vruai*, in the Indian tongue. Into this falleth an other riuer named *Paraue*. The first that sayled into the riuer of *Plata*, was *Iohn Dias Solis*, whom the ryght noble kyng of Spaine *Ferdinandus* made Admirall of these seas. In the ryuer lyeth an Islande whiche *Iohn Dias* named *Martinus Gratias*, because a pilot of his, so called, was buried there. This Islande is situate in the myddest of the ryuer, and is distant from the mouth of the same about fourtie leagues. As the sayde Admirall attempted to expugne the Islande, he was sodenly oppressed and slayne of the Indians that pryncely assailed hym. Therewith neuerthelesse thei barbarous crueltie was not satisfied vntill they had torne hym in peeces, and deuoured hym: But many yeeres after, the Emperours Maestie, and Kyng of Spayne *Charles* the syxte, sent forth *Sebastian Cabot* (a man of great courage & skylful in Cosmographie, and of no lesse experience as concerning the Starres of the sea) with commaundement to discover and subdue the Indians of *Tharsis*, *Ophir*, *Cipango*, and *Coi Cathai*. Receyving therefore his commission, and proceeding forwardes on his viage, he arrived by chaunce at this Islande: the cause whereof was, that the principall vessell was lost by shypwacke, and the men that saved thei lyues by swimming were receyued into our shippes. Perceyving therefore that by reason of this chaunce he coulde by no meanes perfourme his viage attempted, he entended to expugne the sayde Islande, and thereupon to conueygh his vicuals to land, to prepare his souldiers to the inuasion, to plant colonies, & to erect fortresses by the riuers side, wherby the Spaniards might be defended from the violence of the Barbarians. But before he attempted this, he was aduertised that the Islande was rich in gold & siluer. Which thing did so encoage him, that without

The viage of  
Sebastian Ca-  
bot to the riuer  
of Plata.  
Charles.  
Ophir.  
Cipango.  
Cathay.

## as touchyng the Indies.

227

without respecte of peryl he thought best to expugne it by one meanes or other, wherein his boldnesse tooke good effecte, as often tymes chaunceth in great assayes. Furthermore as touchyng the ryuer, *Sebastian Cabot* made relation, that he neuer sawe any comparable vnto this in breadth and deapth: For whereas it falleth into the sea, it conteyneth .xxv. leagues in breadth. From the mouth of the ryuer, *Cabot* sailed by the same into the lande for the space of thre hundred and fiftie leagues, as he wytteth in his owne carde. That it is of great deapth, may hereby be considered, that many great ryuers fall into it, so that the chanell can not be shalowe that conteyneth such aboundance of water, and suche plentie of good and great fshes: For there is in maner no fsh in the sea, that is not founde in this ryuer. Assoone as the Spaniards were set alande, they made a prooffe if the soyle were fruitefull to beare corne. Takynge therefore fytte graynes of wheate, and committynge the same to the earth in the moneth of September, they geathered thereof two thousand and fiftie at December next folowynge: (wherin some being deceyued and mistakynge the thyng, haue wrytten in the steade of two thousand and fiftie, fiftie thousand and two:) the lyke fertilitye is there of all other grayne and pulse. Furthermore chinhabitantes declared, that not farre from that place, there are great and hygh mountaynes, in the which is founde great plentie of golde: and no great distance from the same, to be other mountaynes no lesse fruitefull of syluer, and many other thinges, long to rehearse. Chinhabitantes are paynesfull men, and tyll the grounde diligently, wherein they take great pleasure, and haue therefore great plentie of bread of *Maizium*. There are sheepe of such byrgenesse, that they compare them to young Camels or Asses, as some say: thei wooll is very fine, and nearest vnto the fynnesse of sylke. There are also beastes of diuers kyndes. Among men there is this difference, that such as lue in the mountaynes, are whyte, and for the most part lyke vnto the men of our regions: but they that dwell aboute the ryuer (as though they tooke thei colour thereof) are blackyshe, or purple, of the colour of fine Iron or Steele. This also chaunceth to many of them, that thei feete and legges are lyke the legges and feete of the foule called the *Dystreche*.

The ryuer of  
Plata.

Marusplons  
fruitefulness.

Mountaynes  
conteyning  
golde and  
syluer.

Great herpe.

Thei colour.

Men with de-  
formed legges.

Of the landes of *Laborador* and *Baccallaos*, lying west and northwest from England, and being part of the firme lande of the West Indies.



Any haue traueyled to search the coaste of the lande of *Laborador*, as well to thintent to knowe howe farre or whyther it reacheth, as also whether there be any passage by sea through the same into the sea of *Sur* and the *Islandes* of *Molucca*, whiche are vnder the Equinoctiall lyne, thynkynge that the way whyther should greatly be shortened by this viage. The *Spany* ardes, as to whole ryght the sayde *Islandes* of spices parteyne, dyd fyrst seeke to fynde the same by this way. The *Portugales* also hauynge the trade of spices in theyr handes, dyd traueyle to fynde the same, although hitherto neyther any suche passage is founde, or the ende of that lande. In the yere a thousande and fyne hundredeth, *Gasper Cortesreales*, made a viage thither with two *Carauelles*, but found not the streight or passage he sought. At his being there, he named the *Islands* that lye in the mouth of the gulf *Quadrado*, after his name *Cortesreales*, lying in the fiftie degree, and more, & brought from that land about threescore men for slaues: He greatly marueyled to behold the huge quantitie of snowe & Ice, for the sea is there frozen exceedingly. The inhabitants are men of good corporature, although tawny lyke the *Indies*, and laborious: They paynt theyr bodies, and weare haselettes and heapes of syluer and copper: theyr apparell is made of the skynnes of *Barternes*, & dyuers other beastes, whiche they weare with the heare inwarde in winter, and outwarde in sommer. This apparell they gyrd to theyr bodies with gyrdels made of cotton, or the synewes of fyshes and beastes. They eate fysh more then any other thyng, and especially *Salmons*, although they haue foules and fruite. They make theyr houses of tymber, whereof they haue great plentie: and in the heade of tiles, couer them with the skynnes of fyshes and beastes. It is sayde also that there are *Gryfes* in this lande, and that the *Beares* and many other beastes and foules are whyte. To this

and

The way to the *Islandes* of *Molucca* by the north sea.

The *Spany* ardes.

*Gasper Cortesreales*.

*Insula Cortesreales*.  
Snowe and Ice.

*Furres*.

*Fyshes*.

*Gryfes*.  
*Beares*.

And the *Islandes* about the same, the *Britons* are accustomed to resort, as men of nature agreeable vnto them, and boyme vnder the same altitude and temperature. The *Portugales* also sayled thither with the pilot called *Lohn Scoluo*, and the *Englyshe* men with *Sebastian Cabot*.

The *Britons*.  
*Sebastian Cabot*.

The coaste of the lande of *Baccallaos*, is a great tract, and the greatest altitude thereof is .xlviii. degrees and a halfe. *Sebastian Cabot* was the first that brought any knowlodge of this land. For being in England in the dayes of kynge *Henry the seuenth*, he furnished two shypes at his owne charges, or (as some say) at the kynges, whom he perswaded that a passage myght be founde to *Cathay* by the North seas, and that spices myght be brought from thence sooner by that way then by the viage the *Portugales* use by the sea of *Sur*. He went also to knowe what maner of landes those *Indies* were to inhabite. He had with hym three hundred men, and directed his course by the tract of *Islande*, vpon the Cape of *Laborador* at fiftie and eight degrees, affirming that in the moneth of *July* there was such cold, & heapes of Ice, that he durst passe no further: also that the daies were very long, and in maner without nyght, and the nyghtes very cleare. Certayne it is, that at the threescore degrees, the longest day is of eighteene houres. But considering the cold, and the strangenesse of the vnknewen lande, he turned his course from thence to the West, folowing the coaste of the land of *Baccallaos* vnto the thirtie & eight degrees, from whence he returned to Englande. To conclude, the *Britons* and *Danes*, haue sayled to the *Baccallaos*, and *Iaques Cartier* a french man was there twise with three *Galeons*: as one in the yere .xxiiii. and the other in the .xxv. and chose the land to inhabite from the .xlv. degrees to the .li. being as good a land as *Fraunce*, and all thynges therin commune to suche as fyrst possesse the same. Of these landes, *Iacobus Gastaldus* wyrteth thus. The new land of *Baccallaos*, is a colde region, whose inhabitants are *Idolators*, and praye to the *Sonne* and *Moone*, and dyuers *Idoles*: they are whyte people, and be-rye rusticall, for they eate fleshe and fysh and all other thynges rawe. Sometymes also they eate mans fleshe priuillie, so that theyr *Cacique* haue no knoweledge thereof. The apparrell of both the men and women, is made of *Beares* skynnes, although they

The lande of *Baccallaos*.

The viage of *Cabot* in the dayes of king *Henry the seuenth*.

Ice in *July*.

*Baccallaos*.

*Britons*.  
*Danes*.  
*Iaques Cartier*.

The people of *Baccallaos*.

## Notable thynges.

haue Sables and Martenes, not greatly esteemed, because they are litle. Some of them go naked in sommer, and weare apparrell only in winter. The Britons and Frenchmen are accustomed to take fysh in the coastes of these landes, whete is founde great plentie of Tunnies, which the inhabitants call Baccallaos, wherof the land was so named. Northward from the region of Baccallaos, is the lande of Laborador, all full of mountaynes and great woods, in which are many Beares & wild Boies. The inhabitants are Idolatours, and warlike people, apparelled as are they of Baccallaos. In al this new land, is neyther cite or castell, but they lyue in companies like herdes of beastes.

Fishing for  
Tunnies.  
Baboajados.

## The discovering of the land of Florida.



John Ponce.  
Water of great  
vertue, of this  
reade in the  
Decades.

He gouernour of the Ilande of Boriquena. John Ponce of Leon, beyng discharged of his office, and very ryche, furnished & sent forth two Carauels to seeke the Ilands of Boiuca, in the which the Indians affirmed to be a fountayne or spring whose water is of vertue to make old men young. Whyle he traualled fyre monethes, with outrageous desire among many Ilandes to fynde that he sought, and coulde fynde no token of any suche fountayne, he entred into Bemini, and discovered the lande of Florida, in the yeere 1512. on Easter day, whiche the Spaniards call the day of Pascha, wherby they named that lande Florida. And supposyng that great ryches myght be brought from thence, he returned into Spayne, and couenanted with king Ferdinando, as touchyng the trade: and by the intercession of Nicolas de Ouando, and Peter Nunnez de Gusman, the kyng dyd not only make hym gouernour of Bemini and Florida, but also sent forth with hym three shippes from Sciuito towards his second viage, in the yeere 1515. He touched in the Ilande of Guaccana, otherwyle called Guadalupea, and sent to lande certayne of his men with the Laundresses of the shippes: whom the Canibales (lying in ambushe) assailed with theyr venomous arrowes, and slaying the most part, caried away the women. With this euill beginning, John Ponce departed from hence to Boriquen, and from thence to Florida, where he went

Bemini.

Guaccana.

The Canibales.

Boriquen.

alande with his souldyers, to espye a place most commodious to inhabite and plant a colonie: But the Indians commyng forth agaynst him to defende the entrance, assailed the Spaniards fiercely, and slue and wounded many of them. At whiche conflict hee himselfe, beyng wounded with an arrowe, dyed shortly after in the Ilande of Cuba: and so endyng his lyfe, consumed a great parte of the ryche hee had before gotten at saint Iohans de Boriquen. This John Ponce had before sayled with Christopher Coln to the Ilande of Hispaniola in the yeere 1493. Hee was a gentle souldyer in the warres of this Ilande, and captayne of the prouince of Higuer for Nicolas de Ouando that conquered the same. The region of Florida is a poynt or cape of lande reachyng into the sea lyke vnto a tongue, beyng a famous and notorious place among the Indians, by reason of many Spaniards that haue been slayne there. But whereas by fame this Florida was esteemed a ryche lande, many valiant and noble men desired the conquest thereof, among whom Ferdinando de Soto (who had before been a captayne in Peru, and greatly inryched by the imprisonment of kyng Atabaliba) attempted a viage thither with a good bande of men, and spent fyue yeeres in seekyng of golde mynes, supposyng that this land had been lyke vnto Peru. In fine, hee dyed there, and was the destruction and vndoing of all that went with him, without inhabytyng that lande, in the whiche the conquestours had hitherto neuer good successe, forasmuche as these Indians are valiant archers, and strong & hardy men. But the valiant myndes of the Spaniards not discouraged by these misadventures, after the death of Ferdinando Soto, many woorthie gentlemen desired this conquest in the yeere 1544. among whom was Iulian Samano, and Peter de Abumada, beyng bretherne, and men of sufficient abilitie for such an enterpryse. But neyther the Emperour beyng then in Germanie, neyther the prince Don Philip his son, who gouerned all the kyngdomes of Castile and Aragonie, neyther yet the counsaile of the Indies, would in any case agree to the conquest. Neuerthelesse, not utterly contemnyng the matter, which they were partly perswaded myght otherwyle be brought to passe, they sent thither Fryer Luyz, Cancell of Baluasiro, with other Fryers of the order of saint Dominike, who offered them

The death of  
John Ponce.

The lande of  
Florida.

Ferdinando  
de Soto.

The valiant  
myndes of the  
Spaniards.

The thyrde at-  
tempt of the  
conquest of  
Florida.

Certayne Fryers  
attempt the  
conquest onely  
with wordes,  
but with euill  
successe.

solues



The Fryers  
are slayne and  
eaten.

At newe kynde  
of disgradyng.

selues to conuert the nations of that lande from theyr gentilitie to the fayth of Christ, and obedience to the Emperour, onely with wordes. The Fryer therefore going forward on his biage at the Fryers charges, in the yere 1519. went a land with foure other Fryers which he tooke with him, and certayne maryners, without harnelle or weapons: vnto whom as he began his preaching, many of the Indians of the sayde Florida resorted to the sea syde, where without gpyng audience to his wordes, they carryed him away, with three other of his companyons, and dyd eate them, whereby they suffred martyrdom for the fayth of Christ: the residue that escaped, made hast to the shyppe, and kept them selues for confessours, as some say. Many that fauour the intent of the Fryers, doe nowe consider that by that meanes the Indians could not be brought to our friendship and religion: neuerthelesse, that if it could so haue been brought to passe, it had been better. There came of late from that shyppe, one that had been the page of Ferdinando de Soto, who declared that the Indians hanged up the skynnes, with the heades and crownes of the sayd Fryers in one of theyr Temples.

# FOR. M. CAP. FVR BY- SHERS PASSAGE BY THE NORTHVEST.

OF CHINA IN CATHAYO, SITVATED  
IN THE EAST SYDE OF  
GREAT ASI.  
OF THE ILAND GIAPAN, AND OTHER  
LITTLE ILES IN THE EAST OCEAN, BY  
THE VVAY FROM CATHAYO  
TO THE MOLVCCAES.

BY RICHARDE WILLES.

For. M. Captayne Furbishers passage by the Northwest.  
To the ryght honourable and vertuous Ladie, the  
Lady Anne, Countesse of VVarwyke.

**F**oure famous wayes there be spoken of to  
those fruytfull and wealthie Ilandes, we doe  
usually call *Moluccaes*, continually haunted  
for gayne, and daily stauelyed for ryches  
therin growyng. These Ilandes although  
they stand East from our Meridian, distant  
almost halfe the length of the world, in ex-

treame heate, vnder the Equinoctial lynes, possessed of *Indelles*  
and *Barbares*; yet by our neyghbours great aboundance of  
wealth there is paynfully sought, in respect of the voyage deere-  
ly bought, and from thence daungerously brought home vnto vs.  
Our neyghbours I call the *Portugalles* in comparison of the  
*Moluccbians* for neerenesse vnto vs, for lyke situation west-  
warde as we haue, for theyr vsuall trade with vs, for that the farre  
South, after lynes doo know this parte of Europe by no other  
name then *Portugall*, not greatly acquainted as yet with the o-  
ther nations thereof. Theyr voyage is well vnderstoode of all  
men, and the southeasterne way rounde about Affrike by the  
cape of Good hope, more spoken of, better knowne & trayed  
than that it may seeme needefull to discourse theres of any further.

The seconde way lyeth South west, betwixt the West In-  
die or South America, and the South continent, through that  
narrow streite where *Magellanus* first of all men that euer wee  
doe reade of, passed these later peeres, leauyng therevnto therfore  
his name. This way no doubt the *Spaniards* would commo-  
diously take, for that it lyeth neare vnto their dominions there,  
could the Easterne currant and leuant wyndes as easily suffer  
them to returne, as speedily therewith they may be carryed th-  
ther: for the which difficultie or rather impossibilitie of striuing  
agaynst the force both of wynde and streame, this passage is li-  
tle or nothyng vled, although it be very well knowne.

The thyrde way by the Northeast, beyonde all Europe and  
*Asie*, that woorthie and renowned knight sir *Hugh Willoughby*  
sought

sought to his perill, enforced there to ende his lyfe for colde, con-  
gealed and frozen to death. And truely this way consisteth rather  
in the imagination of Geographers, than allowable either in rea-  
son, or approued by experience, as wel it may appeare by the dan-  
gerous trending of the *Scythish Cape* set by *Ortelius* vnder the  
eight degree North, by the vnykely saylyng in that Northerne  
sea alwayes cladde with Ice and Snow, or at the least continu-  
ally pestred therewith, if happely it be at any tyme dissolued: be-  
sydes bayes & shelves, the water waxyng more shallow towardes  
the East, that we say nothyng of the foule mystes and darke fogs  
in the colde clime, of the litle power of the Sunne to cleare the  
ayre, of the vncomfortable nyghtes, so neare the Pole, syue mo-  
nethes long.

A fourth way to goe vnto these aforesayde happy Ilandes  
*Moluccae*, Syr *Humfrey Gilberte*, a learned and valiant Knyght,  
discourseth of at large in his new passage to *Cathayo*, and was at-  
tempted the last yeere by your Ho. seruant. M. Cap. *Furbisher*,  
presently takyng vpon him with his company fully to discouer  
the same, and is now, if I be not deceyued, ready for his voyage.  
The enterpryse of it selfe beyng vertuous, the facte must doubt-  
lesse deserue hygh prayse, and whanloeuver it shall be finished, the  
fruites thereof can not be small: where vertue is guyde, there is  
fame a follower, and fortune a Companion. But the way is dan-  
gerous, the passage doubtfull, the voyage not thoroughly knowen,  
and therfore gaynesayde by many, after this maner.

First, who can assure vs of any passage rather by the North-  
west, than by the Northeast? doe not both wayes lye in equall  
distance from the North pole? stande not the North capes of  
eyther continent vnder lyke eleuation? Is not the Ocean sea be-  
yonde America farther distant from our Meridian by 30. or 40.  
degrees West, than the extreme pointes of *Cathayo* Eastward,  
if *Ortelius* generall Carde of the world be true? In the Northeast  
that noble Knyght sir *Hugh Willoughby* perished for colde: and  
can you than promyse a passenger any better hap by the North-  
west? who hath gone for triall sake, at any tyme, this way out of  
Europe to *Cathayo*?

If you seeke the aduysle heerein of such as make profession in  
*Cosmographie*, *Pytolome*, the father of *Geographie*, and his el-  
dest

*Ortel. tab.*  
*Asia. 3.*

4. 23p the  
Northwest.

Ob. 1.

In Theatro.

Ob. 2.

1. 23p the south  
east.

2. 23p the south  
west.

3. 23p the north  
east.

best children, will answer by theyr Happes with a negative, concluding moste of the sea within the land, and making an end of the world northward, neare the 36. degree. The same opinion, when learning chiefly florished, was receiued in the Romanes tyme, as by their Poetes wyrrynges it may appeare: *Et te colet vltima Thule*, sayd *Virgile*, being of opinion, that Iseland was the extreme parte of the world habitable toward the North. *Ioseph Moletius* an Italian, and *Mercator* a Germane, for knowledge men able to be compared with the best Geographers of our time, the one in his halfe Syphares of the whole worlde, the other in some of his great Globes, haue continued the West Indische lande, euen to the North Pole, and consequently, cut of all passage by sea that way.

The same Doctors, *Mercator* in other of his Globes and Happes, *Moletius* in his sea carde, neuertheless doubting of so great continuance of the former continent, haue opened a goulph betwixt the West Indies and the extreme northerne lande: but suche a one, that ether is not to be traueyled for the causes in the first Obiection alleaged, or cleane shut by from vs in Europe by Groenland: the South ende whereof *Moletius* maketh firme lande with America, the north parte continent with Laponlande and Norway.

Thyrdly, the greatest fauourers of this voyage, can not deny but that if any such passage be, it lyeth subiect vnto Ice and snow for the most parte of the yere, whereas it standeth in the edge of the frostie Zone. Before the Sunne hath warmed the ayre, and dissolued the Ice, eche one well knoweth that there can bee no sayling: the Ice once broken through the continuall abode, the Sunne maketh a certayne season in those partes: how shall it be possible for so weake a vessel as a shyppe is, to holde out amyd whole Landes, as it were, of Ice continually beating on eche syde, and at the mouth of that goulphe, issuing downe furiously from the North, safely to passe, when whole mountaynes of Ice and snow shalbe combled downe vpon her.

Wel, graunt the west Indies not to continue continent vnto the Pole, graunt there be a passage betwixt these two landes, let the goulph lye neare vs than commonly in cardes we fynde it set, namely, betwixt the 61. & 64. degrees north, as *Gemma Frisius* in his

his Happes and Globes imagineth it, and so left by our countryman *Sebastian Cabote*, in his table, the which my good Lorde your father hath at Cheynies, and so tryed this last yere by your Honours seruauant as hee reported, and his carde and compasse doe witnesse. Let the way bee voyde of all difficulties, yet doeth it not folowe that we haue free passage to Cathayo. For examples sake. You may trende all Norway, Finmarke, and Laponlande, and than bow Southwarde to saint Nicolas in Moscouia: you may lykewyse in the Mediterranean sea fetch Constantinople, and the mouth of Tanais: yet is there no passage by sea through Moscouia, into Pont Euxine, now called *Mare Maggiore*. Agayne, in the aforesayde Mediterranean sea, we sayle to Alexandria in Egypt, the Barbares bying theyr pearle and spices from the Moluccaes by the read sea and Arabian goulph to Sues, scarcely thre dayes iourney from the aforesayde haue: yet haue we no way by sea, from Alexandria to the Moluccaes, for that Istmos or litle streite of lande betwixt the two seas. In lyke maner, although the northerne passage bee free at 61. degrees latitude, and the West Ocean beyonde America, usually called *Mar del Zur*, knowne to be open at 40. degrees eleuation, for the Islande Giapan, yea, 300. leagues northerly aboute Giapan: yet may there bee lande to hynder the through passage that way by sea, as in the examples aforesayde it falleth out, Asia and America there being ioyned together in one continent. We can this opinion seeme altogether frivulous vnto any one that diligently peruseth our Cosinographers doynges. *Iosephus Moletius* is of that mynde, not onely in his playne hemispheres of the worlde, but also in his sea carde. The French Geographers in lyke maner, bee of the same opinion, as by their Happe cut out in foume of a harte you may perceiue: as though the West Indies were parte of Asia. Whiche sentence well agreeth with that olde conclusion in the scholes. *Quidquid præter Africam et Europam est, Asia est*. Whatsoeuer land doeth neyther appertayne vnto Afrike nor to Europe, is parte of Asia.

Further.

Ob. 3.

Ob. 4.

Furthermore it were to small purpose to make so long, so paynesfull, so doubtfull a voyage by such a new founde way, if in Cathayo you should neyther be suffered to lande for silkes and siluer, nor able to fetch the Molucca spices and pearle for piracye in those seas. Of a lawe denying all Aliens to enter into China, and forbidding all the inhabiteurs under a great penaltie to let in any stranger into that countreys, shall you reade in the report of Galeotto Perera there imprisoned with other Portugallies: as also in the Giapponische letters, howe for that cause the woorthie trauepler *Xauierus* bargayned with a Barbarian Marchaunt for a great sum of Pepper to be brought into *Cantan*, a porte in *Cathayo*. The great and dangerous piracie vsed in that seas, no man can be ignorant of, that listeth to reade the Giapponische and East Indian historie.

Finally, all this great labour would bee lost, all these charges spent in vayne, if in the ende our traueplers myght not be able to retorne agayne, and bying safely home into theyr owne natyue countrey, that wealth and ryches, they in forreyn regions with aduenture of goodes, and daunger of theyr lyues, haue sought for. By the Northeast there is no way, the Southeast passage the Portugallies doe hold, as Lordes of that seas. At the Southwest *Magellanus* experience hath partly taught vs, and partly we are perswaded by reason, howe the Easterne currant stryketh so furiously on that streight, and falleth with such force into that narrow goulphe, that hardely any shyppe can retorne that way, into our West Ocean, out of *Mar del Zur*. The which, if it be true, as truly it is, than may we say, that the aforesayde Easterne currant or leuant course of waters continually folowynge after the heauenty motions, looseth not altogether his force, but is doubled rather by an other currant from out the Northeast, in the passage betwixt America and the North lande, whycher it is of necessitie carryed: hauing none other way to maintaine it selfe in circular motion, and consequently the force and fury thereof to be no lesse in the streit of *Anian*, where it striketh South into *Mar del Zur*, beyond America (if any such streite of sea there be) than in *Magellane* fretz both streites being of lyke breadth: as in *Belog-nine Zalterius* table of new France, and in *Don Diego Hermano di Toledo* his carde for nauigation in that region we doe fynde precisely

exactly set downe.

Neuerthelesse to approue that there lyeth a way to Cathayo at the Northwest, from out of Europe, we haue experience, namely of three brethren that went that iourney, as *Gemma Frisus* recordeth, and left a name vnto that streite, whereby now it is called *Fretum trium Fratrum*. We do reade againe of a Portugall that passed this streite, of whom *D. Furbisher* speaketh, that was imprisoned therfore many yeeres in *Lesbona*, to verifie the olde Spanyshe prouerbe, I suffer for doing wel. Likewise *An. Vrdaneta* a fryer of Mexico came out of *Mar del Zur* this way into Germanie: his Carde, for he was a great discoverer, made by his owne experience and traualle in that voyage, hath been scene by gentlemen of good credite.

Now yt the obseruation and remembrance of thyngs breedeth experience, and of experience proceedeth art, and the certeine knowledge we haue in al faculties, as y best Philosophers that euer were do affyrme: truly the voyage of these aforesayd trauallers that haue gone out of Europe into *Mar del Zur*, and returned thence at the Northwest, doo moste evidently conclude that way to be nauigable, and that passage free. So much the more we are so to thynke, for that the fyrste principle and chiefe grounde in all Geographie, as great *Ptolome* sayth, is the historie of trauel, that is, reportes made by trauallers skilfull in Geometrie & Astronomie, of al suche thynges in their iourney as to Geographie do belong. It only then remaineth, that we now asswaie to those argumentes that seemed to make against this former conclusion.

The fyrste obiection is of no force, that generall table of the worlde set forth by *Ortelius* or *Mercator*, for it greatly skilleth not, being vnskilfully drawen for that point: as manifestly it may appeare vnto any one that conferreth the same with *Gemma Frisus* vniuersal mappe, with his round quartered carde, with his globe, with *Sobastian Cabota* his table, and *Ortelius* generall Mappe alone, worthily preferred in this case before all *Mercator* and *Ortelius* other doinges: for that *Cabota* was not only a skilful sea man, but a long traualler, & such a one as entred personally that streite, sent by king Henry the seuen to make this aforesayd discovery, as in his owne discourse of nauigation

Cic. i. de orat.  
Arist. pri.  
Metaph.

Lib. i. Geog.  
Cap. 2.

Sol. i.

Thy i you

you may reade in his carde drawen with his owne hande, the mouth of the northwestern streit lieth neare the 318. Meridian, betwixt .61. and .64. degrees in eleuation, continuing the same breadth about .10 degrees west, where it openeth southerly more and more, untill it come under the tropike of Cancer, and so runneth into *Mar del Zur*, at the least .18. degrees more in breadth there, then it was where it first began: otherwise I coulde as well imagine this passage to be more unlikely then the voyage to *Mosconia*, and more impossible then it for the farre situation and continuance thereof in y<sup>e</sup> frosty climate: as nowe I can asseure it to be very possible and most likely in comparison thereof, for that it nether coasteth so farre north as the *Mosconian* passage doth, nether is this streite so long as that, before it bowe downe southerly towardes the Sonne agayne.

The seconde argument concludeth nothing. *Ptoleme* knewe not what was about .16. degrees south beyonde the equinoctiall lyne, he was ignorant of all passages northwarde from the eleuation of .63. he knewe no Ocean sea beyonde *Asia*, yet haue the *Portugalles* trended y<sup>e</sup> Cape of good hope at the south poynte of *Afrika*, and traueled to *Giapan* an Ilande in the east Ocean, betwixt *Asia* & *America*: our marchants in y<sup>e</sup> time of king Edward the first discovered the *Mosconian* passage farther north then *Thule*, and shewed *Groenlande* not to be continent with *Lapponlande*, and *Norway*: the lyke our northwestern traueplers haue done, declaring, by theyr nauigation that way, the ignorance of all Cosmographers that ether do ioyne *Groenlande* with *America*, or continue the west Indies with that frosty region under the north pole. As for *Virgil* he sauge accordingly to y<sup>e</sup> knowledge of men in his time, as an other Poete dyd of the hotte Zone.

*Quarum quae media est, non est habitabilis aestu.* Imaginyng, as most men then dyd, *Zonam torridam*, the hot Zone, to be altogether inhabited for heat, though presently we knowe many famous and worthy kingdomes and cities in that part of the earth, and the Iland of saint Thomas neare *Aethiopia*, and the welthy Ilands for the which chiefly al these voyages are taken in hande, to be inhabited euen under the equinoctiall lyne.

To answer the third obiection, besides *Cabota* & al other traueplers nauigations, y<sup>e</sup> only credit of *M. Furbisher* may suffice, who lately

lately throug<sup>h</sup> al these Ilands of Ise, and mountaines of snowe, passed that way, euen beyond the gulphe that tumbleth downe from the North, and in some places though he dyete one ynche thick Ise, as he returning in August dyd, came home safely agayne.

The fourth argument is altogether frivolous & vayne, for neyther is there any isthmus or streit of land betwixt *America* and *Asia*, ne can these two landes ioyntly be one continent. The first part of my answer is manifestly allowed of by *Homer*, whom that excellent Geographer *Strabo* foloweth, peldyng hym in this facultie the prais. The authour of that booke likewise *περικουμου* to Alexander, attributed vnto *Aristotle*, is of y<sup>e</sup> same opinion, that *Homer* and *Strabo* be of, in two or three places. *Dionysius* in *οικουμενης περιηγησι* hath this verse. *ὡς ὡκεανὸς περιέσπασσε γαίαν ἅπασαν*. So dooth the Ocean sea runne rounde about the worlde: speaking only of Europe, *Africke*, and *Asie*, as then *Asie* was traueled & knowne. With these Doctours may you ioyne *Pomponius Mela*, Cap. 2. lib. 1. *Plinius* lib. 2. Cap. 67. and *Pius*. 2. Cap. 2. in his description of *Asie*. All the whiche writers do no lesse confirme the whole Easterne side of *Asie* to be compassed about with sea, then *Plato* doth affirme in *Timæo*, under the name *Atlantide*, the West Indies to be an Ilande, as in a speciall discourse thereof. *R. Eden* writeth agreeable vnto the sentence of *Proclus*, *Marsilius Ficinus*, and others. Out of *Plato* it is gathered that *America* is an Iland. *Homer*, *Strabo*, *Aristotle*, *Dionysius*, *Mela*, *Plinie*, *Pius* 2. affirme the continent of *Asie*, *Afrika*, and Europe, to be enuironned with the Ocean. I may therefore boldly say, though later intelligences therof had we none at all, that *Asie* and the West Indies, be not tied together by any isthmus or streit of land, contrary to the opinion of some new Cosmographers, by whom doubtfully this matter hath been brought in controuersie. And thus muche for the first part of my answer vnto the fourth obiection.

The second part, namely that *America* & *Asie* cannot be one continent, may thus be proued, *κατὰ τὴν τῆς γῆς κοιλότητά* *Met. or.* *ῥεῖ καὶ τῶν ποταμῶν τὸ πλῆθος*. The most riuers take downe that way their course, where the earth is most holow & deepe, *Ph. ii.* *writeth*

Sol. 2.

Qued. 1. Mcta.

Sol. 3.



myteth Aristotle: and the sea, sayth he in the same place, as it goeth farther, so is it founde deeper. Into what goulphe do the Polcouian ryuers *Onega, Duina, Oby,* and *Rha*, powre out their streames? Northwarde out of *Moscovia* into the sea. Whiche way dooth that sea stryke? The South is mayne lande, the Easterne coast waxeth moze and moze shalowe: from the North, ether naturally, because that part of the earth is higher *Aristot. 2. met. c. 1.* of necessitie, for that the forcible influence of some Northerne Starres causeth the earth there to shake of the sea, as some Philolophers do thynke: or finally for the great store of waters engendred in that frostie and cold clyme, that the bankes are not able to holde them. *Alber. in 2. Metro. Cap. 6.* From the North I say, continually falleth downe great abundance of water. So that this Northeasterne currant must at the length abruptly bowe toward vs South on the West syde of *Fynmarke* and *Norwaye*: or els stryke downe Southwest aboute *Groneland*, or betwixt *Groneland* and *Iseland*, into the Northwest streict we speake of, as of congruence it doth, if you marke the situation of that region, and by the report of M. Furbisher, experience teacheth vs. And M. Furbisher the further he traauailed in the former passage, as he tolde me, the deeper alwayes he founde sea. Lay you now the sum hereof togeather. The riuers runne where the Channels are most hollow, the sea in taking his course waxeth deeper, the sea waters fall continually from the North Southward, the Northeasterne currant striketh downe into the streict we speake of, & is there augmented with whole mountains of ice & snow, falling downe furiously out from y<sup>e</sup> land vnder y<sup>e</sup> North Pole. Where store of water is, there is it a thing impossible to want sea, where sea not only doth not want, but waxeth deeper, ther can be discovered no land. Finally, whence I pray you came the contrary tyde, that M. Furbisher met withal after that he had sayled no small way in that passage, if there be any isthmus or streict of land betwixt the aforesaid Northwesterne gulfes and *Mar del Zur*, to ioyn *Asia* and *America* togeather? That conclusion frequented in scholes *Quidquid preter &c.* was ment of the partes of the worlde then knowen, and so is it of ryght to be vnderstoode.

The fiftie obiection requirerth for answer, wysedome, and pollicie,

licie, in the traualier. to wynn the Barbares fauour by some good meanes: and so to arme & strengthen him selfe, that when he shal haue the renulle in one coast, he may safely trauaile to another, commodiously taking his conuenient times, & discretely making choyse of them with whom he wyl thoroughly deale. To force a violent entrie, would for vs Englishe men be very hard, considering the strength and valeour of so great a nation, farre distant from vs, and the attempt thereof myght bee most perilous vnto the doers, vntill they part were verie good. Touchyng theyr lawes agaynst strangers, you shall reade neuerthelesse in the same relations of *Galeotto Berara*, that the *Cathayan* kyng is wont to graunt free accesse vnto all forreiners that trade into his countrey for marchandise, and a place of libertie for them to remaine in: as the *Mozes* had, vntill such time as they had brought the *Loutea* or *Leutenant* of that coast to be a circumcised *Saracene*: wherfore some of them were put to the sword, the rest were scattered abroad: at *Fuquien*, a great citie in *China*, certayne of them are yet this day to be seen. As for the *Giapans*, they be most desirous to be acquainted with strangers. The *Portugals* though they were straightly handled there at the first, yet in the ende they founde great fauoure at the prince his hands, insomuch that the *Loutea* or president that misused them, was therfore put to death. The rude *Indish Cannoa* halleth that seas, the *Portugalles*, the *Saracenes*, & *Mozes* traueil continually vp & downe that reache from *Giapan* to *China*, from *China* to *Malacca*, from *Malacca* to the *Moluccaes*: and shal an Englishman, better appointed then any of them al (that I say no moze of our name) feare to saile in that Ocean? What seas at al doo want piracie? what nauigation is there voyde of perill? To the last argument. Our traueylers neede not to seeke their returne by the northeast, ne shall they be constrained, except they lyst, ether to attempte *Magellane* streict at the Southwest, or to be in daunger of the *Portugalles* for the Southeast: they may returne by the northwest, that same way they do go forth, as experience hath shewed. The reason alleaged for proote of the contrary, may be disproued after this maner. And first, it may be called in controuersie, whether any currant continually be forced by the motion of *Primum mobile*, rounde about

Plin. lib. 2.  
Cap. 67.

Sol. 5.

Sol. 6.

Ph iij the

Luc. lib. 1.  
Phar. al.

What the  
easterne cur-  
rant is.

the worlde, or no: for learned men do diuersely handle that question. The naturall course of all waters is downewarde, wherefore of congruence they fall that way where they synde the earth most to we and cepe: in respecte whereof, it was erst sayde, the seas to strike from the Northen landes Southerly. Violently the seas are tossed and troubled diuerse wayes with the wyndes, encreased and diminished by the course of the Moone, hopped up and downe through the sundry operations of the Sonne and the Starres: finally some be of opinion, that the seas be carried in part violently about y<sup>e</sup> world after the daily motion of the highest mouable heauen, in lyke maner as y<sup>e</sup> elementes of ayre and fyre, with the rest of the heauenty spheres are, from the east vnto the west. And this they do call they<sup>r</sup> easterne currant, or leuant streame. Some suche currant may not be denied to be of great force in the hote Zone, for the nearenes thereof vnto the centre of the Sonne and blustryng easterne wyndes violently dryuing the seas westwarde: howbeit in the temperate climes, the Sonne beyng farther of, and the wyndes more diuerse, blowyng as muche from the north, the west, and south, as from the east, this rule doth not effectually withholde vs from traue-lyng eastwarde, ne be we kepte euer backe by the aforesayde Leuante wyndes and streame. But in *Magellane* streit we are violently dryuen backe westwarde: Ergo through the North-*western* streite or *Anian* fret shall we not be able to returne eastward: it foloweth not. The fyist, for that the northwestern streit hath more sea rome at the least by one hundred Englyshe myles, then *Magellane* fret hath, the onely want wherof causeth all narrow passages generally to be most violent. So woulde I say in *Anian* gulse, if it were so narrowe as *Don Diego* and *Zalerius* haue paynted it out, any returne that way to be full of difficulties, in respect of such streitnes therof, not for the nearenes of the Sonne, or easterne wyndes, violently forcing that way any leuant streame. But in that place there is more sea rome by many degrees, if the cardes of *Cabota*, and *Gemma Frisius*, and that whiche *Tramezine* imprinted, be true.

And hitherto reason see I none at all, but that I may as well geue credyt vnto they<sup>r</sup> doynges, as to any of the rest. It must be *Peregrinationis historia*, that is, true repoytes of skilful traualers,

as

Lib. 1. Geog.  
Cap. 2.

as *Proleme* writeth, that in suche controuersies of Geographie must put vs out of doubte. *Ortelius* in his vniuersall tables, in his particuler Mappes of the west Indies, of all *Asia*, of the northen kyngdomes, of the easse Indies, *Mercator* in some of his globes, and generall mappes of the worlde, *Molitus* in his vniuersall table of the Globe diuided, in his sea carde, and particuler tables of the East Indies, *Zalerius*, and *Don Diego*, with *Fernando Bertely*, and others, do so much differ both from *Gemma Frisius* and *Cabota*, among them selues, & in diuers places from them selues, concerning the diuers situation and sundry limites of *America*, that one may not so rashly, as truely surmise, these men either to be ignorant in those pointes touching the aforesayd region, or that the mappes they haue geuen out vnto the world, were collected only by them, & neuer of their owne drawyng. *M. Furbishers* prosperous voyage, and happy returne, wyl absolutely decide these controuersies, and certaynely determine where the whole passage lieth, how long it is, what breadth it carrieth, how perilous, how prosperous the toyney is, and what commodities the paynfull traualer can reape thereby. What gaine the venterous marchant may looke for, what wealth, what honour, what fame wyl to our Englyshe nation thereof ensue.

Thus muche, right honorable, my verie good Lady, of your question concernyng your seruantes voyage. If not so skilfully as I would, and was desirous fully to do, at the least as I could, & leasure suffered me, for the litle knowledge God hath lent me, yf it be any at all, in Cosmographie and Philosophie, and the small experience I haue in trauaile. Chosing rather in the cleare

iudgement of your Ho. mynde to appeare rude and ignorant, and so to be seene vnto the multitude, then to be sounde vnthankfull and carelesse in any thing

your Ho. shoulde commaunde me. God preserve your Honour. At the Court  
the .xx. of Marche.

Your Ho. most humbly at  
commaundement.

Richard Willes.

(.)

Wh. iiii.

To the

# To the right wor- shipfull, my singuler good

Mystres, M. Elizabeth  
Morisyn.



**O**ur Indian readings, our Asian lectures, our Geographical description of the whole world, will I end with certayne reportes of the prouince China in Cathayo, and some intelligences of the worthy Ilands lying therby in the East Ocean. The relation whereof, though at the first myght seeme briefly to be passed ouer, and in a fewe substantiall poyntes only to be touched, as in the rest of our discourses concerning this facultie we haue done: Yet the worthynesse of matter herein conteyned, the order of ciuile gouernment, the maners & fashions of the inhabitants, the description of that countrey, so wel gathered the noueltie thereof in our language, haue effectually moued me to doo the whole discourse into Englysh. Needleffe I graunt the labour is for you, that perfectly in so fewe Monethes, so fewe weekes, so fewe dayes, learned the Italian tongue, out of the whiche language this translation is made. The singular care you euer haue had of my well dooing, and the speciall fauour I haue founde among your Honorable frendes for your sake, yvoulde not only not let me to play the negligent Poete in the fift Act, but compelled me to handle euen the last Scene more abundantly: as wel to acknowledge your good skill both in Cosmographie and in forreine languages, as also to testifie vnto the world, the great benefites the which I haue receyued for vschering, as it were herein, so good, so wyse, so vertuous, so worshipfull a mystres. Nowe after all these learned exercises of your younger yeeres, God

Almyghtie send you great good succeffe in your present affaires.  
with encrease of prosperitie and mucbe honour,  
as you dayly shall grow elder.

At London the 21. of Feburary. 1576.

Your seruaunt euer.

R. Willes.

Certayne reportes of the prouince China, learned through the Portugalles there imprisoned, and chiefly by the relation of Galeotto Perera, a gentleman of good credit, that lay prisoner in that countrey many yeeres. Done out of Italian into Englyshe, by

R. W.



**T**his land of China is parted into, 13. shpyres, the which sometymes were eche one a kyngdome by it selfe, but these many yeeres they haue been all subiect vnto one Kyng. *Fuquien* *Fuquien*. is made by the Portugalles the first shpyre, bycause there their troubles began, and had occasion thereby to know the rest. In this shpyre be viii. cities, but one principally more famous than others, called *Fuquieo*, the other seuen are reasonably great, the best known wherof vnto the Portugalles is *Cinceo*, in respect of a certayne haueu *Cinceo*. ioyning therunto, whpyther in tyme past they were wont for merchandise to resort.

*Cantan* is the second shpyre, not so great in quantitie, as well *Cantan*. accounted of, both by the Kyng thereof, and also by the Portugalles, for that it lyeth nearer vnto *Malacca* than any other part of China, and was first discryed by the Portugalles before any other shpyre in that prouince: this shpyre hath in it seuen cities.

*Chequeam* is the third shpyre, the chiefeest citie therein is *Don- Chequeam*. *chion*, therein also standeth *Liampo*, with other thirtiene or fourtiene Boroughes: countrey townes therein to many to be spoken of.

The fourth shpyre is called *Xutiamfu*, the principall citie ther- *Xutiamfu*. of is great *Pachin*, where the Kyng is alwayes resident. In it are fyftiene other very great cities: of other townes therein, and Boroughes well walled and trenched about, I will say nothing.

The fyft shpyre hath name *Chelim*: the great citie *Nanquin*, *Chelim*. chiefe of other fyftiene cities was herein of auncient tyme, the royal

royall seate of the *Chinisch* kynges-. From this *hyre*, and from that aforesayde *Chequeam* forwarde, bare rule the other kynges, vntyll the whole region became one kyngdome.

*Quianci.*

rather *Quinzi*

The first *hyre* beareth name *Quianci*, as also the principall citie thereof, wherein the fine claye to make vessels is wrought. The *Portugalles* beyng ignorant of this countrey, and fyndyng great aboundaunce of that fine claye to be solde at *Liampo*, and that very good cheape, thought at the first that it had been made there, howbeit in fine, they perceiued that the standing of *Quinzi* more neare vnto *Liampo* than to *Cinceo* or *Cantan*, was the cause of so much fine claye at *Liampo*: within the compasse of *Quinci* *hyre* be other. 12. cities.

The seuench *hyre* is *Quicin*, the eight *Quansi*, the nienth *Confu*, the tenth *Vrnan*, the eleuenth *Sichua*. In the first hereof there be. 16. cities, in the next fyfytene: howe many townes the other thre haue, we are ignorant as yet, as also of the proper names of the. 12. and. 13. *hyres*, and the townes therein.

This finally may be generally sayde heereof, that the greater *hyres* in *China* prouince, may be compared with mightie kyngdomes.

In eche one of these *hyres* be set *Ponchiassini* and *Anchiasini*, before whom are handled the matters of other cities. There is also placed in eche one a *Tutan*, as you would say a gouernor, and a *Chian*, that is a visiter, as it were: whose office is to goe in circuit, and to see iustice exactly done. By these meanes so vprightly thinges are ordered there, that it may bee worthely accounted one of the best gouerned prouinces in all the world.

*Pachin.al.*

*Pochang.*

The Kyng maketh alwayes his abode in the great citie *Pachin*, as muche to say in our language as by the name thereof I am aduertised, the towne of the kyngdome. This kyngdome is so large, that vnder fyue monethes you are not able to traueyle from the townes by the sea syde to the Court and backe agayne, no not vnder thre monethes in poste at your vrgent busynesse. The *Posthouses* in this countrey are litle of bodie, but swifte of foote. Many doe traueyle the greater parte of this iourney by water in certayne lycht barks, for the multitude of ryuers commodious for passage from one citie to an other.

The

*They monethes.*

The kyng, notwithstanding the hugeness of his kyngdome, hath such a care thereof, that euery Moone (by the Moones they reckon their monethes) he is aduertised fully of whatsoeuer thing happeneth therein, by these meanes folowynge.

The whole prouince beyng diuided into *hyres*, and eche *hyre* haunyng in it one chiefe and principall citie, whereunto the matters of all the other cities, townes, and Boroughes, are brought: there are drawen, in euery chiefe citie aforesayde, intelligences of suche thinges as doe monethly fall out, and be sent in writing to the Court. It happeth in one moneth euery post is not able to goe so long a way, yet doeth there notwithstanding once euery moneth arryue one poste out of the *hyre*. Who so cometh before the newe Moone, stayeth for the deliery of his letters vntyll the Moone be chaunged. Then *lyketypse* are dispatched other postes, backe into all the. 13. *hyres* agayne.

Before that we doe come to *Cinceo* we haue to passe through many places, and some of great importance. For this countrey is so well inhabited neare the sea syde, that you can not go one myle but you shall see some towne, Borough, or *Postry*, the which are so abundantly prouided of all thinges, that in the cities & townes they liue ciuilly. Neuertheles such as dwel abrode are very poore, for the multitude of them euery where so great, that out of a tree you shal see many tymes swarme a number of chyldren, where a man would not haue thought to haue founde any one at all.

From these places in number infinite, you shall come vnto two cities very populous, and beyng compared with *Cinceo*, not possibly to be discerned which is the greater of them. These cities are as well walled as any cities in all the worlde. As you come in to eyther of them, standeth so great and mightie a bydge, that the lyke thereof I haue neuer scene in *Portugall* nor els where. I heard one of my felowes say, that he told in one bydge. 40. arches. The occasion wherfore these bydges are made so great, is for that the countrey is toward the sea very plaine and low, & ouerwhelmed euery as y sea water encreaseth. The breadth of the bydges, although it bee well proportioned vnto the length thereof, yet are they equally buylt, no higher in the middle than at eyther end, in such wyse that you may directly see from y one end to the other, the sydes are wonderfully well engraued after the manner

maner of Rome workes. But that wee did most marueyle at, was therewithall the hugeness of þe stones, the lyke wherof as we came in to the cite, we dyd see many set vp in places dishabited by the way, to no small charges of theys, howbeit to litle purpose, whereas no body seeth them but such as doe come bye. The arches are not made after our fashion, vaulted with sundry stones set together: but paued, as it were, whole stones reaching from one pillar to an other, in suche wyse that they lye both for the arches heades, and galantly serue also for the hygh waye. I haue been assumed to beholde the hugeness of these aforesayde stones, some of them are .xii. pases long and vpwarde, the least a .xi. good pases long, and an halfe.

The wayes echewhere are galantly paued with fouresquare stone, except it be where for want of stone they vse to laye bricke: in this voyage wee traueyled ouer certayne hilles, where the wayes were pitched, and in many places no worse paued than in the playne grounde. This causeth vs to thinke, that in all the worlde there be no better workemen for buildinges, than the inhabitants of *China*.

The countrey is so well inhabited, that no one foote of ground is left vntilled: small stoe of cattell haue we seene this way, we sawe onely certayne Oxen wherewithall the countrymen doe plough theyr grounde. One Oxe draweth the plough alone, not onely in this shyre, but in other places also, wherein is greater stoe of cattell. These countrymen by arte doe that in tyllage, which we are constrained to doe by force. Here be solde the voydinges of close stooles, although there wanteth not the dunge of beastes: & the excrementes of man are good marchandise throughtout all *China*. The dungfermers seeke in euery streete by exchange to buye this durtie ware for hearbes and wood. The custome is very good for keepyng the cite cleane. There is great aboundance of Hennes, Geese, Duckes, Swyne, and Goates, Mether haue they none: the Hennes are solde by weight, and so are all other thinges. Two pounce of Hennes fleshe, Goose, or Ducke, is woorth two *Florins* of their money, that is, d. ob. sterling. Swines fleshe is solde at a peny the pounce. Beefe beareth the same pryce, for the scarcitie thereof, howbeit Northwarde from *Fuquio*, & farther off from the sea coast, there is Beefe more plenty,

tie and sove better cheape, Beefe onely excepted, great aboundance of all these viandes we haue had in all the cities we passed throught. And if this countrey were lyke vnto *India*, the inhabitants wherof eate neyther Henne, beefe, nor porke, but keepe that onely for the Portugalles and Moores, they would be solde here for nothyng. But it so fallynge out, that the *Chineans* are the greatest eaters in all the worlde, they doe feede vppon all thinges, specially on porke, the fatter that is, vnto them the lesse lothsome. The highest pryce of these thinges aforesayde, I haue set downe, better cheape shall you sometymes buye them for the great plenty thereof in this countrey. Froggas are solde at the same pryce that is made of Hennes, and are good meate amongst them, as also Dogges, Catres, Rattes, Snakes, and all other vncleane meates.

The cities be very gallant, specially neare vnto the gates, the which are marueylously great, & couered with Iron. The gatehouses buylt on hygh with Towers, the lower parte thereof, is made of bricke and stone, proportionally with the walles, from the walles vpwarde, the buyldyng is of tymber, and many stories in it one aboue the other. The strength of theyr townes is in the mightie walles and ditches, artillerie haue they none.

The streetes in *Cinco*, and in all the rest of the cities we haue seene are very sayre, so large and so streight, that it is wonderfull to beholde. Theyr houses are buylt with tymber, the foundations onely excepted, the which are layde with stone, in eche syde of the streetes are paynteles or continuall porches for the marchantes to walke vnder: the breadth of the streete is neuertheless such, that in them .xv. men may ryde commodiously syde by syde. As they ryde they must needes passe vnder many hygh arches of triumph that crosse ouer the streetes made of tymber, and carued diuersely, couered with tyle of fine claye: vnder these arches the Mercers doe vter theyr smaller wares, and such as lyst to stande there, are defended from rayne and the heate of the Sunne. The greater gentlemen haue these arches at their doores: although some of them be not so myghtyly buylt as the rest.

I shall haue occasion to speake of a certayne order of gentlemen that are called *Loutea*, I will first therefore expounde what this worde signifieth. *Loutea* is as muche to say in our language as

*Loutea.*



as *Szy*, and whan any of them calleth his name, he answereth *Szy*: and as we doe say, that the kyng hath made some gentleman, so say they, that there is made a *Loutea*. And for that amongst them the degrees are diuers both in name and office, I will tell you onely of some principalles, beyng not able to aduertise you of all.

The maner howe gentlemen are created *Louteas*, and doe come to that honour and title, is by the gpyng of a broad gyrdle not like to the rest, & a cap, at the commaundement of the kyng. The name *Loutea* is more generall and common vnto moe, than equalitie of honour therby signified, agreeth withall. Such *Louteas* that doe serue their prince in weightie matters for iustice, are created after triall made of their learning: but the other whiche serue in smaller affayres, as Capitaynes, Constables, Sergeantes by lande and sea, Recepuers, and such lyke, wherof there be in euery cite, as also in this, very many, are made for fauour: the chiefe *Louteas* are serued kneelyng.

The whole prouince *China* is diuided, as I haue sayde, into thirtiene *shyes*, in euery *shye* at the least is one gouernour called there *Tutan*, in some *shyes* there be two.

Chiefe in office nexte vnto them be certayne other named *Chians*, that is, bygh Commissioners as you would say, or visitors, with full aucthoritie in suche wyse, that they doe call vnto an accompt the *Tutans* them selues, but their aucthoritie lasteth not in any *shye* longer than one peere. Neuerthelesse in euery *shye* beyng at the least seuen cities, yea, in some of them fyftiene or sixtiene, beside other Boroughes & townes not well to be numbred, these visitors, where they come, are so honoured and feared, as though they were some great princes. At the peeres ende their circuit done, they come vnto that cite which is chiefe of others in the *shye*, to doe iustice there: finally busying them selues in the searching out of such as are to receyue the order of *Louteas*, wherof more shall be sayde in an other place.

Duer and besydes these officers, in the chiefe cite of eche one of these aforesayde thirtiene prouinces, is resident one *Ponchiaffi*, Capitayne thereof, and Treasurer of all the kynges reuenues. This Magistrate makeih his abode in one of the foure greatest

test houses that be in all these head cities. And although the principall parte of his function be, to be Capitayne, to be Treasurer of the reuenues in that prouince, to sende these reuenues at appoynted tymes to the Court: yet hath he notwithstanding by his office also to meddle with matters apperteynyng vnto iustyce.

In the seconde great house dwelleth an other Magistrate called *Anchiaffi*, a great offyicer also, for he hath dealynges in all matters of iustice. Who although hee bee somewhat inferior in dignitie vnto the *Ponchiaffi*, yet for his great dealynges and generall charge of iustice, whosoever seeth the assayres of the one house and the other, myght iudge this *Anchiaffi* to be the greater.

*Tuzi*, an other officer so called, lyeth in the thyrde house, a magistrate of importance, specially in thinges belongyng vnto warfare, for thereof hath he charge.

There is resident in the fourth house a fourth officer, bearyng name *Taiifu*. In this house is the principall pyson of all the cite. Eche one of these Magistrates aforesayde may both laye & upll doers in pyson, and deliuer them out agayne, except the facte be heynous and of importance: in suche a case they can doe nothing, except they doe meete altogether. And if the dede deserue death, all they together can not determine thereof, without recourse made vnto the *Chian* wheresoeuer he bee, or to the *Tutan*: and eftsones it falleth out, that the case be referred vnto hygher power. In all cities, not onely chiefe in eche *shye*, but in the rest also, are meanes founde to make *Louteas*. Many of them doe studie at the prince his charges, wherfore at the peeres ende they resort vnto the head cities, whither the *Chians* doe come, as it hath been earlt sayde, as well to gyue these degrees, as to sit in iudgement ouer the pysoners.

The *Chians* goe in circuit euery peere, but suche as are to be chosen to the greatest offices, meete not but from thre peeres to thre peeres, and that in certayne large halles appoynted for them to be examined in. Many thynges are asked them, wherunto if they doe aunswere accordingly, and be found sufficient to take their degree, the *Chian* by and by graunteth it them: but the Cappe & gyrdle wherby they are knowen to be *Louteas*, they weare

*Chian, al.  
Chien.*

*Ponchiaffi.*

*Anchiaffi.  
al. Hexafi.*

*Tuzi.*

*Taiifu.*

*Licentiates.*

Doctors.

Dutch lpe.

weare not before that they be confirmed by the kyng. They examina-  
tion done, and tryall made of them, such as haue taken their  
degree wont to be giuen them with all cerimonies, vse to banquet  
and feast many dayes together (as the *Chineans* fashion is to end  
all their pleasures with eatyng and drynkynge) and so remayne  
chosen to doe the kyng seruice in matters of learnyng. The o-  
ther examinares founde insufficient to proceede, are sent backe to  
their studie againe. Whose ignorance is perceiued to come of  
negligence & default, such a one is whipped, and sometymes sent  
to prysen, where wee lyeing that yere whan this kynde of acte  
was, we found many thus punished, and demaunding the cause  
therof, they sayde it was for that they knew not howe to answere  
vnto certayne thinges asked them. It is a worlde to see howe  
these *Louteas* are serued and feared, in suche wise, that in publyke  
assemblies at one tyme they gyue, all the seruitors belongyng  
vnto iustice, tremble thereat. At their being in these places, whan  
they lyst to moue, be it but euen to the gate, these seruitors do take  
them by, and carry them in seates of beaten golde. After this sort  
are they borne whan they goe in the cite, eyther for their owne  
busynesse abrode, or to see eche other at home. For the dignitie  
they haue, and office they doe beare, they be al accompanied: the  
very meanest of them all that goeth in these seates is vshered by  
two men at the least, that cry vnto the people to gyue place, howe-  
beit, they neede it not, for that reuerence the common people hath  
vnto them. They haue also in theyr company certayne Serge-  
antes, with their *Haces* eyther siluered, or altogether siluer,  
some two, some foure, other six, other eight, conueniently for eche  
one his degree. The more principall and chiefe *Louteas* haue go-  
ing orderly before these Sergeantes, many other with staues,  
and a great many catchpoules with roddes of Indische canes,  
dragged on the ground, so that the streetes beyng paued, you  
may heare a farre of as well the noyse of the roddes, as the voyce  
of the cryers. These felowes serue also to apprehende others, and  
the better to be knownen they weare liuery redde girdles, and in  
their cappes peacockes feathers. Behynde these *Louteas* come  
such as doe beare certayne tables hanged at staues endes, where-  
in is written in siluer letters the name, degree, and office of that  
*Loutea*, whom they folowe. In lyke maner they haue borne after  
them

them hattes agreeable vnto theyr tytles: if the *Loutea* be meane,  
then hath he brought after hym but one hatte, and that may not  
be yealow: but if he be of the better sorte, then may he haue  
two, thre, or foure: the principall and chiefe *Louteas*, may haue  
all theyr hattes yealow, the which among them is accounted  
great honour. The *Loutea* for warres, although he be but meane,  
may notwithstanding haue yealow hattes. The *Tutanes*  
and *Chians*, whan they goe abrode, haue besydes all this before  
them ledde .3. or .4. horses with theyr garde in armor. Further-  
more the *Louteas*, yea and all the people of *China*, are woonte to  
eate theyr meat spytting on stooles at hygh tables as we do, and  
that very cleanly, although they vse neither table clothes nor nap-  
kins. Whatsoeuer is set downe vpon the boorde, is fyrst  
carued, before that it be brought in: they feede with two styckes,  
refraynyng from touchyng theyr meate with theyr handes, euen  
as we do with forks, for y<sup>e</sup> which respect, they lesse do neede any  
table clothes. He is the nation onely ciuil at meate, but also in  
conuersation, and in courtesie they seeme to exceede all other.  
Likewise in theyr dealynges, after their maner, they are so ready,  
that they farre passe all other Gentyles and *Moones*: the grea-  
ter states are so bayne, that they lyne theyr clothes with the best  
fylke that may be founde. The *Louteas*, are an idle generation,  
without all maner of exercises and pastymes, excepte it be  
eatyng and drynkynge. Sometymes they walke abrode in the  
feldes, to make the souldyars shoot at pyckes with theyr bowes,  
but theyr eatyng passeth: they wyll stande eatyng euen whan the  
other do drawe to shooote. The pycke is a great blanket spread  
on certayne long poles, he that strykerh it, hath of the best man  
there standyng a peece of crymson taffata, the whiche is knyt  
about his head: in this sorte the wynters honoured, and the *Lou-  
teas* with theyr bellies full, retorne home agayne. The inha-  
bitantes of *China*, be very great Idolaters, all generally do  
worshyppe the heauens: and as we are woont to saye, God  
knoweth it: so saye they at euery worde, *Tien Tantee*, that is  
to saye, The heauens do knowe it. Some do worshyp  
the Sonne, and some the Moone, as they thynke good, for none  
are bounde more to one then to an other. In their temples, the  
which they do cal *Meani*, they haue a great altar in y<sup>e</sup> same place

we, that is  
the Italians  
and Spanis-  
ardes.

Ji .i.

as

After the  
Dutch nation.

Pichigorian  
Iphc.

as we haue, true it is that one may goe rounde about it. There  
set they by the Image of a certayne *Loutea* of that countrey,  
whom they haue in great reuerence for certayne notable thinges  
he dyd. At the ryght hande standeth the deuyl, muche more vglye  
paynted then we do vse to set hym out, whereunto great homage  
is done by suche as come into the temple to aske counsell, or to  
drawe lottes: this opinion they haue of hym, that he is malicious  
and able to do euyl. If you aske them what they do thynke of the  
soules departed, they wil answere, that they be immortall, and  
that as soone as any one departeth out of this life, he becommeth  
a deuyl if he haue liued well in this worlde, if otherwyle, that  
the same deuyl chaungeth hym into a busse, ore, or dogge. Where-  
fore to this deuyl do they muche honour, to hym do they sacrifice,  
praying hym that he wyll make them lyke vnto hym selfe, and  
not lyke other beastes. They haue mozeouer an other sorte of  
temples, wherein both vpon the altars and also on the walles  
do stande many Idoles well proportioned, but bare headed:  
These beare name *Omitbofon*, accompted of them spirites, but  
suche as in heauen do nether good nor euyl, thought to be  
suche men and women, as haue chastlye lyued in this worlde  
in abstinence from fythe and fleshe, fedde only with ryse & salates.  
Of that deuyl they make some accompte, for these spirites they  
care litle or nothyng at all. Agayne they holde opinion that if  
a man do well in this lyfe, the heauens wyll geue hym many  
temporall blessinges, but if he do euyl, then shall he haue infirmi-  
ties, diseases, troubles, and penurie, and all this without  
any knowledge of God. Finally, this people knoweth no other  
thing then to liue & die, yet because they be reasonable creatures,  
al seemed good vnto them we speake in our language, though it  
were not very sufficient: our maner of praying especially pleased  
them, and truly they are wel ynough disposed to receiue the  
knowledge of the trueth. Our lord graunte for his mercie all  
thynges so to be disposed, that it may some tyme be brought to  
passe, that so great a nation as this is, peryshe not for want of  
helpe.

Our maner of praying so well lyked them, that in  
pysson importunately they besought vs to wyte for them  
some.

somewhat as concernyng heauen, the whiche we dyd to theyr  
contentation with suche reasons as we knewe, howbeit not very  
cunnyngly. As they do theyr Idolatry they laugh at them selues.  
If at any tyme this countrey myght be ioined in league with the  
kyngdome of Portugale, in such wyle that free accesle were had  
to deale with the people there, they might al be soone conuerted.  
The greatest fault we do fynd in them is Sodomie, a vice very  
common in the meaner sort, & nothing strange amongst the best.  
This sinne were it lest of them, in all other thynges so well dis-  
posed they be, that a good interpretour in a short space myght  
do there great good, yf, as I sayde, the countrey were ioyned  
in league with vs.

Furthermore the *Louteas*, with al the people of China, are wont  
to solemnize the dayes of the newe and full Moones in visiting  
one eache other, and makyng great bankettes, for to that end,  
as I earst sayd, do tend all theyr pastimes, and spendyng theyr  
daies in pleasure. They are wont also to solemnize eache one  
his byrth daye, whereunto theyr kyndred and frendes do resorte  
of custome, with presentes of Fuelles or money, receyuyng a  
gayne for theyr rewarde good cheare. They keepe in lyke ma-  
ner a general feast with great bankets that day theyr kyng was  
borne. But theyr most principall and greatest feast of al, and best  
cheare, is the fyrst day of theyr newe yeere, namely the fyrst day  
of the newe Moone of Februarie, so that theyr fyrst moneth  
is Marche, and they reckon the tymes accordynglye, respect  
beyng had vnto the reigne of theyr Prynces: as when anye  
deede is wytten, they date it thus, Made suche a daye of suche  
a Moone, and such a yeere of the reigne of suche a Kyng. And  
theyr auncient wytynges beare date of the yeeres of this or that  
Kyng.

Nowe wyll I speake of the maner the whiche the Chi-  
neans doo obserue in dooyng Justice, that it maye be knowne  
how farre these Gentyles doo herein exceede manye Christi-  
ans, that be moze bounden then they to deale iustly and in trueth.  
Because the Chynise Kyng maketh his abode continually in  
the Citie *Pachyn*, his kyngdome so great, the shyres so many,  
as tofore it hath been sayde: in it therefore the Gouernours  
and Rulers, muche lyke vnto our Shyppys, be so appoynted

II. ii.

lodeny,

soberly and speedely discharged agayne, that they haue no tyme to growe naught. Furthermore to keepe the state in moze securitie, the *Louteas* that gouerne one shyre, are chosen out of some other shyre distant farre of, where they must leaue theyr wyues, chyldren, and goodes, carryng nothyng with them but them selues. True it is, that at theyr commyng thither they do fynde in a redinesse all thynges necessarie, theyr house, furniture, seruantes, and all other thynges in suche perfection and plentie, that they want nothyng. Thus the kyng is well serued without all feare of treason.

In the principall cities of the shyres be foure cheefe *Louteas*, before whom are brought all matters of the inferiour townes, throughout the whole realme. Diuers other *Louteas* haue the maneagynge of iustice, and recepyng of rentes, bounde to peeld an accompte thereof vnto the greater officers. Other doo see that there be no euill rule kept in the cite: each one as it behoueth hym. Generally al these do impprison malefactours, cause them to be whypped & racked, hopling them by & downe by the armes with a corde, a thyng very vsuall there, and accompted no shame. These *Louteas* do vse great diligence in apprehending of theeues, so that it is a wonder to see a theefe escape away in any towne, cite, or village. Upon the sea neere vnto the shyre many are taken, and looke euen as they are taken, so be they spyt whypped, and afterward layd in prison, where shortly after they all dye for hunger and colde. At that tyme, when we were in prysen, there died of them aboute threescore and ten. If happely any one, hauyng the meanes to geat foode, do escape, he is set with the condemned persones, and prouided for as they be by the kyng, in such wyse as hereafter it shalbe sayde.

Theyr whypps be certayne pecces of canes, cleft in the middle, in such sort that they seeme rather playne then sharpe. He that is to be whipped lieth grouel long on the ground. Upon his thighes the Hangman layeth on blowes myghtely with these canes, that the Hangmen by tremble at theyr crueltye. Ten stryppes drawe a great deale of blood, twentie or thyrtye spyle the fleshe altogether, fyfte or threescore wyll require long tyme to be healed, and yf they come to the number of one hundred, then are they incurable.

The

The *Louteas* obserue mozeouer this: when any man is brought before them to be examined, they aske hym openly in the hearing of as many as be present, be y offence neuer so great. Thus did they also behaue them selues with vs. For this cause amongst them can there be no false witnes, as dayly amongst vs it falleth out. This good commeth therof, that many being alwaies about the iudge to heare the euidence, and beare witness, the processe can not be falsified, as it happeneth sometymes with vs. The *Mozes*, *Gentiles*, & *Jewes*, haue al their sundry othes, y *Mozes* doo sweare by theyr *Mosafos*, the *Brachmans* by theyr *Fili*, the rest likewise by the thynges they do worshippe. The *Chineans* though they be wonte to sweare by heauen, by the *Moone*, by the *Sunne*, and by all theyr *Idolles*, in iudgement neuertheless they sweare not at all. If for some offence an othe be used of any one, by and by with the least euidence he is tormented, so be the wytnesses he byngeth, if they tell not the truth, or do in any poynt disagree, except they be men of worshippe and credyte, who are beleued without any farther matter: the rest are made to confesse the trueth by force of tormentes and whyppes. Besides this order obserued of them in examinations, they do feare so muche theyr kyng, and he where he maketh his abode keepeth them so lowe, that they dare not once styre. Agayne, these *Louteas* as great as they be, notwithstanding the multitude of *Notaries* they haue, not trusting any others, do wyte al great processe and matters of importance them selues. Mozeouer one vertue they haue worthy of great prayse, and that is, being men so well regarded and accompted of as though they were princes, they be patient aboute measure in geuyng audience. The poore straungers brought before them myght saye what we woulde, as all to be lyes and falaces that they dyd wyte, ne dyd we stande before them with the vsuall ceremonies of that countrey, yet dyd they beare with vs so patiently, that they caused vs to wonder, knowyng specially howe litle any aduocate or iudge is wonte in our countrey to beare with vs. For where so euer in any towne of *Christendome* shoulde be accused unknownen men as we were, I knowe not what ende the very innocentes cause woulde haue: but we in a *Heathen* countrey, hauyng our great ennemies two of the chiefest men in a whole towne,

Ti.iii.

towne,

The Italians  
call it the *Stras-  
pado*.

toloue, wantyng an interpreter, ignorant of that countrey language, dyd in the ende see our great aduersaryes cast into pryson for our sake, and deprived of theyr offices and honoure for not doyng iustice, yea not to escape death, for as the rumor goeth, they shalbe beheaded. Somewhat is nowe to be sayde of the lawes that I haue been hable to knowe in this countrey, and fyrst, no thefte or murder, is at any tyme pardoned: adulterers are put in pryson, and the facte once proued, condemned to dye, the womans husbände must accuse them: this order is kept with men and women found in that fault, but theues and murderers are imprisoned as I haue sayd, where they shortly dye for hunger and colde. If any one happely escape by bypnyng the gayler to geue hym meate, his processe goeth farther, and cometh to the courte where he is condemned to dye. Sentence beyng geuen, the prysoner is brought in publyke with a terrible bande of men that laye hym in Irons hande and foote, with a boorde at his necke one handefull broade, in length reachyng downe to his knees, cleft in two partes, and with a hole one handefull downewarde in the table fyt for his necke, the whiche they enclose by therein, naylyng the boorde fast together. one handefull of the boorde standeth by behynde in the necke: the sentence and cause wherefore the felon was condemned to dye, is wypten in that parte of the table that standeth before.

This cerimonie ended, he is laid in a great pryson in the companie of some other condemned persons, the which are found by the king as long as they do liue. The boord aforesaid so made, tormenteth the prysoners very much, keeping them both from rest, & eke lettynge them to eate commodiously, theyr handes beyng manecled in Irons vnder that boord, so y<sup>e</sup> in fine there is no remedy but death. In y<sup>e</sup> chiefe cities of eueryshire, as we haue erst said, there be foure principal houses, in ech of them a pryson: but in one of them where the *Taisi* maketh his abode, there is a greater & a more principal pryson the in any of y<sup>e</sup> rest: & although in euery cite there be many, neuerthelesse in thre of them remaine onely such as be condemned to die. Their death is much prolonged, for that ordinarily there is no execution doone but once a yere, though many die for hunger and colde, as we haue seene in this pryson. Execution is done in this maner. The *Chian*, to w<sup>th</sup> the

hygh commissioner or Lord cheefe Iustice, at the peeres ende goeth to the head citie, where he heareth agayne the causes of suche as be condemned. Many tymes he depuereth some of them, declaring that boord to haue been wrongfully put about theyr neckes: the visitation ended, he chooseth out seuen or .viii. not many more or lesse, of the greatest malefactours, the whiche, to feare and keepe in awe the people, are brought into a great market place, where al the great *Louteas* meete together, and after many cerimonies and superstitions, as the vse of the countrey is, are beheaded. This is done once a yere: who so escapeth that day, may be sure that he shal not be put to death al that yere so long, & so remayneth at the kynges charges in the greater pryson. In that pryson where we lay were al waies one hundred & moe of these condemned persons, besides them that lay in other prysons.

These prysons wherin the condemned captiues do remayne are so strong, that it hath not been hard, that any prisoner in al *China* hath escaped out of pryson, for in deed it is a thyng impossible. The prysons are thus builded. Fyrt al the place is myghtely walled about, the walles be very strong and hygh, the gate of no lesse force: within it thre other gates, before you come where the prysoners do lye, there many great lodgings are to be seene of the *Louteas*, *Notaries*, *Parthions*, that is, such as do there kepe watch and ward day and nyght, the court large and paved, on the one syde wherof standeth a pryson, with two myghtie gates, wherin are kept such prisoners as haue committed enormous offences. This pryson is so great, that in it are *streates* and *Market places* wherein al thyngs necessarie are sold. Yea some prysoners liue by that kynde of trade, buyeng and selling, and letteng out beds to hyre: some are dayly sent to pryson, some dayly deliuered, wherfore this place is neuer voyde of seuen or eyght hundred men that go at libertie.

Into one other pryson of condemned persons shall you goo at thre yron gates, the court paved and vaulted rounde about, & open aboue as it were a cloister. In this cloister be eight roomes with yron doores, and in eache of them a large Gallerie, wherein euery night the prisoners do lie at length, their feete in the stocks, theyr bodies hampered in huge wooden grates that kepe them fro sitting, so that they lie as it were in a cage, sleepe if they can: in the moyning they are loosed againe, that they may go into y<sup>e</sup> court.

II. iiii.

Not.



Notwithstanding the strength of this pylson, it is ke pt with a garrison of men, part whereof watche within the house, part of them in the Court, some keepe about the pylson with lanterns and watchebelles answering one an other fyue tymes euerye nyght, and geuing warning so lowde, that the *Loutea* resting in a chamber not neare thereunto, may heere them. In these pylsons of condemned persons remayne some .15. other 20. peeres imprisoned, not executed, for the loue of theyr honorable frendes that seeke to prolong theyr lyues. Many of these pylsoners be thomakers, and haue from the king a certayne allowance of rise: some of them worke for the keeper, who suffereth them to goe at libertie without fetters and boordes, the better to worke. Howbeit when the *Loutea* calleth his checke rolle, & with the keeper bieweth them, they al weare theyr lyueres, that is, boordes at theyr neckes, yronned hand and foote. When any of these pylsoners dieth, he is to be scene of the *Loutea* and Notaries, brought out at a gate so narrow, that there can but one be drawen out there at once. The pylsoner beyng brought forth, one of the aforesayde *Parthians* stryketh hym thysle on the head with an yron sledge, that doone, he is deliuered vnto his frendes, yf he haue any, otherwysle the kyng byreth men to cary hym to his buriall in the fieldes.

Thus adulterers and theeuers are vsed. Such as be imprisoned for debt once knowen, lye there vntyl it be payed. The *Taissu* or *Loutea* calleth them many tymes before him by the vertue of his office, who vnderstanding the cause wherefore they doo not pay theyr debtes, appointeth them a certayne tyme to doe it, whin the compasse wherof if they discharge not theyr debtes beyng debtors in deede, then they be whipped & condemned to perpetual imprisonment: yf the creditours be many, & one is to be payd before an other, they do, contrary to our maner, pay him fyrst, of whom they last borrowed, and so ordinarily the rest, in suche sort that the fyrst lender be the last receyuer. The same order is kept in paying legacies: the last named, receyueth his portion first. They accompt it nothyng to thew fauour to such a one as can doo the lyke agayne: but to doo good to them that haue litle or nothing, that is worth thanks, therfore pay they the last before the first, for that their entent seemeth rather to be vertuous then gainful.

When

When I sayde that suche as bee committed to pylson for theft & murder, were iudged by the Court, I ment not them that were apprehended in the deed doyng, for they need no tryall, but are brought immediatly before the *Tutan*, who out of hand giueth sentence. Other not taken so openly, and doe neede tryall, are the malefactorz put to execution once a yeere in the chiefe cities, to keepe in awe the people: or condemned, doe remayne in prison, lokyng for theyr day. Theeuers being taken, are carryed to prison from one place to an other in a chest vpon mens shoulders, hyred therfore by the kyng, the Chest is sixe handfulls hygh, the prisoner sitteth therein vpon a benche, the couer of the chest is two boordes, amyd them both a pillerlyke hole, for the prisoner his necke, there sitteth he with his head without the chest, & the rest of his body within, not able to moue or turne his head this way or that way, nor to plucke it in: the necessities of nature he voydeth at a hole in the bottome of the chest, the meat hee cateth is put into his mouth by others. There abydeyth he day and nyght duryng his whole iourney: if happely his porters stumble, or the chest doe iogge, or be set downe carelesly, it turneth to his great paynes that sitteth therein, all such motions beyng vnto him hanging as it were. Thus were our companyons carryed from *Cincco*, seuen dayes iourney, neuer taking any rest as afterward they told vs, & theyr greatest grieve was to stape by the way: as soone as they came, beyng taken out of the chests, they were not able to stande on theyr feete, and two of them dyed shortly after.

When we laye in prison at *Fuquico*, we came many tymes a byode, and were brought to the pallsaces of noble men, to be secne of them and theyr wyues, for that they had neuer scene any *Portugall* before. Many thinges they asked vs of our countrey, and our fashions, and dyd wyte euery thyng, for they be curious in nouelties aboue measure. The gentlemen shewe great curtesie vnto straungers, and so dyd we finde at their handes, and bycause that many tymes we were brought a byode into the citie, somewhat will I say of such thinges as I dyd see therein, beyng a gailant citie, and chiefe in one of the thirtiene thynges aforesayde.

The citie *Fuquico*, is very great, and mightily walled with square stone both within and without, and as it may seeme by the breadth thereof, filled vp in the middle with earth, layde ouer

Of like the first  
lenders be the  
more welthier.

*Fuquico.*

Hereof to fore.

with bricke and couered with tyle, after the maner of porches or galeries, that one myght dwell therein. The steyers they vse, are so easly made, that one may go them by and down a horsebacke, as eftsoones they doe: the streetes are paved, as already it hath been sayde: there be a great number of Merchantes, euery one hath wrytten in a great table at his doore such thinges as he hath to sell. In lyke maner euery artifane paynteth out his craft: the market places be large, great aboundance of all thinges there be to be solde. The citie standeth vppon water, many streames run through it, the bankes pitched, and so broad that they serue for streetes to the cities vse. Ouer the streames are sundry byddges both of tymber & stone, that beyng made leuell with the streetes, hynder not the passage of the Barges to and fro, the chanelles are so deepe. Where the streames come in and goe out of the citie, bee certayne arches in the wall, there goe in and out theyr *Parai*, that is a kynde of Barges they haue, and this onely the day tyme: at nyght these arches are closed vp with gates, so doe they shut by all the gates of the citie. These streames and Barges doe ennoble the very muche the citie, and make it as it were to seeme an other Venice. The buyldinges are euen, well made, hygh, not lofted, except it be some wherein merchandise is layde. It is a worlde to see howe great these cities are, and the cause is, for that the houses are buylt euen, as I haue sayde, and doe take a great deale of roome. One thyng we sawe in this citie that made vs all to wonder, and is woorthy to bee noted: Namely, ouer a porche at the commyng in to one of the aforesayde foure houses, the whiche the kyng hath in euery shyre for his gouernours as I haue erst sayde, standeth a Colonne buylt vppon fourtie pylers, eche one whereof is but one stone, eche one fourtie handfulls or spames long: in breadth or compasse twelue, as many of vs byd measure them. Besydes this, theyr greatnesse suche in one peece, that it myght seeme impossible to worke them: they bee moreouer cornerde, and in colour, length, and breadth so lyke, that the one nothyng dyffereth from the other. This thyng made vs all to wonder verie muche.

Wee

Wee are wont to call this countrey *China*, and the people *Chineans*, but as long as we were prisoners, not hearing amongst them at any tyme that name, I determined to learne howe they were called: and asked sometymes by them thereof, for that they vnderstoode vs not whan wee called them *Chineans*, I answered them that all the inhabitantes of India named them *Chineans*, wherefore I prayed them that they would tell mee, for what occasion they are so called, whether peraduenture any citie of theys bare that name. Wherevnto they alwayes answered mee, to haue no suche name, nor euer to haue had. Than byd I aske them what name the whole countrey beareth, and what they would answer beyng asked of other nations what countrymen they were: It was tolde me that of auncient tyme in this countrey had been many kynges, and though presently it were all vnder one, eche kyngdome neuerthelesse enioyed that name it fyrst had, these kyngdomes are the prouinces I spake of before. In conclusion they sayde, that the whole countrey is called *Tamen*, and the inhabitantes *Tamegines*, so that this name *China* or *Chineans*, is not hearde of in that countrey. I doe thinke that the nearenesse of an other prouince thereabout called *Cochinchina*, and the inhabitantes thereof *Cochineffes*, fyrst discouered before that *China* was, lying not farre from *Malacca*, byd gyue occasion both to the one nation and to the other of that name *Chineans*, as also the whole countrey to be named *China*. But their proper name is that aforesayde.

*Tamen* the  
proper name of  
*China*.

I haue hearde moreouer that in the citie *Nanquin* remaineth a table of golde, and in it wrytten a kyng his name, as a memory of that residence the kyngs were wont to keepe there. This table standeth in a great pallace, couered alwayes, except it bee in some of theyr festiuall dayes, at what tyme they are wont to let it be seene: couered neuerthelesse as it is, all the nobilitie of the citie goeth of duetie to doe it euery day reuerence. The lyke is done in the head cities of all the other shyres in the pallaces of the *Ponchiafimi*, wherein these aforesayde tables doe stande with the kyng his name wrytten in them, although no reuerence be done therunto but in solempne feastes.

I haue

Pochang . al.

I haue lykewyse vnderstoode that the citie *Pachin*, where the kyng maketh his abode, is so great, that to goe from one syde to the other, besydes the *Subarbes*, the which are greater than the citie it selfe, it requyret one whole day a horsebacke, going backe ny pafe. In the *Subarbes* be many wealthy marchantes of all sortes. They tolde me furthermore that it was *Noted* about, and in the *Notes* great store of fyshe, wherof the kyng maketh great gaynes.

They enemies

It was also tolde mee that the kyng of *China* had no kyng to wage battayle withall, besides the *Tartares*, with whom he had concluded a peace more than fourescore yeeres agoe. Neuerthelesse theyr friendship was not so great, that the one nation might marry with the other. And demaunding with whom they married, they sayde, that in olde tyme the *Chinisch* kynges, whan they would marry theyr daughters, accustomed to make a solempne feast, wherunto came all sortes of men. The daughter that was to be married, stode in a place where shee myght see them all, and looke whom shee lyked best, him did shee chuse to husbnde, and if happely he were of a base condition, hee became by and by a gentleman: but this custome hath been left long since. Nowe a dayes the kyng marryeth his daughters at his owne pleasure, with great men of the same kyngdome: the lyke order he obserueth in the maryage of his sonnes.

Maryage of  
the kynges  
children.

They haue moreover one thing very good, and that whiche made vs all to marueyle at them beyng Gentiles: namely, that there be hospitalles in all theyr cities, alwayes full of people, we neuer sawe any poore body begge. We therefore asked the cause of this: and wered it was, that in euery citie there is a great circuit, wherein be many houses for poore people, for blinde, lame, old folke, not able to traueyle for age, nor haupng any other meanes to lyue. These folke haue in the aforesayde houses, euery plentie of rice durpng theyr lyues, but nothpng els. Such as be receyued into these houses, come in after this maner. Whan one is sicke, blinde, or lame, he maketh a supplication to the *Ponchiafsi*, and prouyng that to be true he wyrteth, he remayneth in the aforesayde great lodgpng as long as he lyueth: besides this they keepe in these places *Swyne* and *Hennes*, whereby the poore be releued without goyng a beggpng.

I sayde

I sayd before that *China* was full of ryuers, but now I mynd to confyrme the same anewe: for the farther we went into the countrey, the greater we found the ryuers. Sometymes we were so farre of from the sea, that where we came no sea fyshe had been seene, and salt was there very deere, of freshe water fyshe yet was there great aboundance, & that fyshe very good: they keepe it good after this maner. Where the ryuers doe meete, and so passe into the sea, there lyeth great store of Boates, specially where no salte water commeth, and that in *Marche* and *Apryll*. These Boates are so many that it seemeth wonderfull, ne serue they for other than to take small fyshe. By the ryuers sydes they make leynes of fine and strong nettes, that lye thre handfulls vnder water, and one aboue, to keepe and nouryshe their fyshe in, vntyll suche tyme as other fyshe do come with Boates, byngng for that purpose certayne great chestes lnyed with paper, able to holde water, wherein they carry theyr fyshe vp and downe the ryuer, euery day renuyng the chest with freshe water, and sellpng theyr fyshe in euery citie, towne, and village, where they passe, vnto the people as they neede it: most of them haue nette leynes to keepe fyshe in alwayes for theyr prouision. Where the greater Boates can not passe any farther forwarde, they take lesser, and bycause the whole countrey is very well watted, there is so great plentie of dyuers sortes of fyshe, that it is wonderfull to see: assuredly we were amazed to beholde the maner of their prouision. Theyr fyshe is chiefly nourished with the dung of *Buffles* and *Oren*, that greatly fattereth it. Although I sayde theyr fyshe to be in *March* and *Aprill* at what tyme we sawe them doe it, neuerthelesse they tolde vs that they fished at all tymes, for that usually they doe feede on fyshe, wherfore it behoueth them to make theyr prouision continually. Whan we had passed *Fuquien*, wee went into *Quicin* hyre, where the fine claye vessell is made, as I sayde before: and we came to a citie, the one syde whereof is built bypon the foote of a hyll, wherby passeth a ryuer nauigable: there we tooke Boate, and went by water towarde the sea: on ech syde of the ryuer we found many cities, townes, and villages, wherein we sawe great store of marchandise, but specially of fine clay: there dyd wee lande by the way to buye victualles and other necessaries. Goyng downe this ryuer Southwarde, we were glad that

He speaketh of  
Fuquien hyre.He speaketh  
not here of all  
China, but of  
the cities, for in  
other places  
there be beg-  
gers, as you  
haue scene al-  
ready, swar-  
mpng out of  
trees.

that we dwelwe neare vnto a warmer countrey, from whence wee had been farre distant: this countrey we passed through in eyght dayes, for our iourney laye downe the streame. Before that I doe say any thyng of that shyre we came into, I will fyrst speake of the great citie of *Quicin*, wherein alwayes remaineth a *Tutan*, that is a gouernour, as you haue seene, though some *Tutans* doe gouerne two or thre shyres.

That *Tutan* that was condemned for our cause, of whom I spake before, was bozne in this countrey, but he gouerned *Foquien* shyre: nothing it auayled him to bee so great an officer. This countrey is so great, that in many places where we went, there had ben as yet no talke of his death, although he were executed a whole yeere before. At the citie *Quanche* whyther we came, the riuer was so great that it seemed a sea, though it were so litle where we tooke water, that we needed smal boates. One day about ix. of y<sup>e</sup> clocke, beginning to row neare the walles with the streame, we came at noone to a brydge made of many barges, ouerlinked all togeather with two mighty cheyns. There staped we until it was late, but we saw not one go either by theron or downe, except two *Louteas* y<sup>e</sup> about the going downe of y<sup>e</sup> sun, came & set them downe there, the one in one side, the other in the other side. Than was the brydge opened in many places, & barges both great & smal to the number of 600. began to passe: those that went up the streame, at one place, such as came downe, at an other. Whā al had thus shot the brydge, than was it shut vp againe. We heare say that euery day they take this order in all principall places of merchandysse, for paying of y<sup>e</sup> custome vnto the king, specially for salt, wherof the greatest reuenews are made that the king hath in this countrey. The passages of the brydge where it is opened, bee so neare the shore, that nothing can passe without touching the same. To stay the barges at their pleasure, that they go no farther forward, are pld certayne yron instrumentes. The brydge consisteth of 112. barges, there staped wee vntill the euening that they were opened, lothesomely oppressed by the multitude of people that came to see vs, so many in number, that we were enforced to goe asyde from the banke vntill such tyme as the brydge was opened: howbeit we were neuertheless thronged about w<sup>th</sup> many boates full of people. And though in other cities and places where wee went,

*Aliis Cenchi.*

The kynges  
reuenues.

went, the people came so importunate vpon vs, that it was needfull to withdraw our selues: yet were we heere much more molested for the number of people, and this brydge, the principal way out of the citie vnto an other place so well inhabited, that were it walled about, it myght bee compared to the citie. Whā we had shot the brydge, we kept along the citie vntill that it was nyght, than met we with an other ryuer that ioynd with this, we rowed by that by the walles vntill we came to an other brydge gallantly made of barges, but lesser a great deale than that other brydge ouer the greater streame: heere staped we that nyght, and other two dayes with more quiet, being out of the ptease of the people. These riuers do meet without at one corner point of the citie. In either of them were so many barges great and small, that we all thought them at the least to be aboue thre thousande: the greater number therof was in the lesser ryuer, where we were. Amongst the rest here lay certayne greater vessels, called in their language *Parai*, that serue for the *Tutan*. whā he taketh his voyage by other ryuers that ioyne with this, towards *Pachin*, where the king maketh his abode. For, as many tymes I haue erst sayd, all this countrey is full of riuers. Desirous to see those *Parai* we got into some of them, where we found some chambers set forth with gilded beds very richly, other furnished with tables and seates, & all other thinges so neate and in perfection, that it was wonderfull. *Quicim* shyre, as farre as I can perceiue, lyeth vpon the south. On that syde we kept at our first entry thereinto, trauepling not far from the high mountaynes we saw there. A king what people dwelleth beyond those mountaynes, it was told me that they be theues, & men of a strange language. And bycause that vnto sundry places neare this riuer, y<sup>e</sup> mountaynes do approach, whence the people issuing downe do many tymes great harme, this order is taken at y<sup>e</sup> entry into *Quicim* shyre. To gard this riuer wheron continually go to & fro *Parai* great & small fraught with salt, fish poudred with pepper, and other necessities for that countrey: they do lay in diuers places certain *Parai*, & great barges armed, wherin watch & warde is kept day & night in both sides of the riuer, for the safetie of the passage, & securitie of suche *Parai* as doe remayne there, though the traueplers neuer go but many in company. In euery rode there be at the least thirtie, in some two hundred men, as the passage requyeth.

This

This garde is kept usually vntyll you come to the citie *Onchio*, where continually the *Tutan* of this hye, and eke of *Cantan*, maketh his abode. From that citie vpwarde, where the ryuer wareth moze narrow, and the passage moze daungerous, there be alwayes armed one hundred and fiftie *Parai*, to accompany other vesselles fraught with marchandise, and all this at the king his charges. This seemed vnto me one of the strangest thinges I dyd see in this countrey.

When we laye at *Fuquien*, we dyd see certayne *Doozes*, who knewe so litle of theyr secte, that they could say nothyng els but that *Dachomet* was a *Dooze*, my father was a *Dooze*, and I am a *Dooze*, with some other wordes of theyr *Alcorane*, wherewithall, in abstinence from *Swynes* fleshe, they lyue vntyll the deuyll take them all. This whan I sawe, & beyng sure that in many *Chinise* citie the reliques of *Dachomet* are kept, as soone as we came to the citie where these felowes be, I enquired my selfe of them, and learned the truth.

These *Doozes*, as they tolde me, in tymes past came in great shippes fraught with marchandise from *Pachin* ward, to a *Porte* graunted vnto them by the kyng, as hee is wont to all them that traffike into this countrey, where they beyng arriued at a litle towne standing in the hauens mouth, in tyme conuerted vnto their secte the greatest *Loutea* there. When that *Loutea* with all his family was become *Doozish*, the rest began lykewyse to doe the same. In this part of *China* the people be at libertie, euery one to worshyp and folow what him lyketh best. Wherefore no body tooke heede thereto, vntyll such tyme as the *Doozes* perceyving that many folowed them in superstition, and that the *Loutea* fauoured them, they began to forbidd wholly the eatyng of *Swynes* fleshe. But all this countrymen and women, chosing rather to forsake father and mother, than to leaue of eatyng of porke, by no meanes would yelde to that proclamation. For besides the great desyre they all haue to eat that kynde of meate, many of them doe lyue thereby: and therefore the people complayned vnto the *Magistrates*, accusing the *Doozes* of a conspiracy pretended betwixt them and the *Loutea* agaynst theyr kyng. In this countrey, as no suspicion, no nor one trayterous worde is long borne withall: so was the kyng speedily aduertised thereof, who gaue com-

maun-

commaundement out of hande that the aforesayde *Loutea* shoulde be put to death, and with hym the *Doozes* of most importance: the other to be layde first in pylson, and afterwarde to be sent abrode into certayne citie, where they remayned perpetuall slaues vnto the kyng. To this citie came by happe men and women threescore and odde, who at this day are brought to fine men and foure women, for it is nowe twentie yeeres agoe this happened. Theyr offsprynge passeth the number of 200. and they in this citie, as the rest in other citie, whyther they were sent, haue theyr *Moscheas*, wherunto they al resorte euery fryday to kepe theyr holydaye. But, as I thynke, that wyll no longer endure, then whiles they do lyue, that came from thence, for theyr posteritie is so confused, that they haue nothing of a *Dooze* in them but abstinence from *Swynes* fleshe, and yet many of them do eate thereof pynitie. They tell me that theyr native countrey hath name *Camarian*, a fyme lande, whereto be many kynges, and the *Indische* countrey well knowne vnto them. It may so be: for as sone as they dyd see our seruantes (our seruantes were *Preuzaretas*) they iudged them to be *Indians*: many of theyr wordes sounded vpon the *Persike* tongue, but none of vs coulde vnderstand them. I asked them whether they conuerted any of the *Chinise* nation vnto theyr secte: they answered me, that with much a do they conuerted the women with whom they do marry, yeldyng me no other cause thereof, but the difficultie they find in them to be brought from eating *Swines* fleshe and drynking of wine. I am perswaded therfore, that if this countrey were in league with vs, forbyddyng them neyther of both, it would be an easy matter to draw them to our religion, from theyr superstition, whereto theyr selues do laugh when they do their *Idolatrie*. I haue learned mozeouer that the sea wherby these *Doozes* that came to *China*, were wont to trauaile, is a very great gulfe, that falleth into this countrey out from *Tartaria* and *Persia*, leauing on the other syde all the countrey of *China*, and lande of the *Mogorites*, drynking alwayes toward the south: and of all lykelyhood it is euen so, because that these *Doozes*, the whiche we haue seene, be rather browne then white, wherby they shewe them selues to come from some warmer countrey then *China* is, neere to *Pachin*, where the

Rk. i.

ryuers

That is there  
temples.It shoulde  
seeme by their  
voyage to be  
*Cardandan* in  
*Ortelius*.It seemeth they  
came by the ris-  
uer from the  
*Caspian* sea.

At caran.



ryuers are frozen in the wynter for colde, and many of them so vehemently, that cartes may passe ouer them.

Ali. Auoins  
Tartares.

We dyd see in this citie many *Tartares*, *Mogorites*, *Bremes*, and *Laoynes*, both men & women. The *Tartares* are men very white, good horsemen and archers, confynng with *China* on that side where *Pachin* standeth, separated from thence by great mountaines that are betwixt these kingdomes. Ouer them be certaine wayes to passe, and for both sydes, Castelles continually keapte with souldiers: in tyme past the *Tartares* were woont alwayes to haue warrs with the *Chineans*, but these fourescore yeeres past they were quiete, vntyll the seconde yeere of our imprisonment. The *Mogorites* be in lyke maner whyte, and heathen, we are aduertised that of one syde they border vppon these *Tartares*, and confine with the *Persike Tartares* on the other syde, whereof we sawe in them some tokens, as theyr maner of clothes, and that kynde of hat the *Saracenes* do weare. The *Doores* affirmed, that where the kyng lyeth, there be many *Tartares* and *Mogorites*, that brought into *China* certayne blewes of great valewe: al we thought it to be *Vanil* of *Cambaia* woont to be sold at *Ormus*. So that this is the true situation of that countrey, not in the Northpartes, as many tymes I haue harde saye, confynng with *Germanie*.

Bremes.

As for the *Bremes* we haue seene in this citie *Chenchi* certaine men & women, amongst whom there was one that came not long since, haupng as yet her heare tyed vp after the *Pegues* fashio: this woman, and other moe with whom a blacke *Dooze* damsell in our companye had conference, and dyd vnderstande them well ynough, had dwelte in *Peghu*. This newe come woman, imaginynge that we ment to make our abode in that citie, byd vs to be of good comfozte, for that her countrey was not distant from thence aboute fye dages iourney, and that out of her countrey there laye a hygh way for vs home into our owne. Bepng asked the way, she answered that the fyft thre dages the way lyeth ouer certayne great mountaynes and wyldernesse, afterwarde people to be mette withall agayne. Thence two dages

dages iorney more to the *Breames* countrey. Wherefore I doo conclude, that *Chenchi* is one of the confynes of this kyngdome, Southwarde from *Chenchi* to the sea, seperated by certayne huge mountaynes, as it hath been already sayd, that lye out towardes the South. In the residue of these mountaynes standeth the prouince *Sian*, the *Laoyns* countrey, *Auoins*, *Cambaia*, *Chinapa*, and *Cochinchina*.

This citie, cheefe of other sytteene, is situated in a pleasaunt playne, aboundynge in thynges necessarie, sea fysh only excepted, for it standeth farre from the sea: offreshe fysh so muche store, that the market places are neuer emptie. The walles of this citie are very strong and hygh: one day dyd I see the *Louteas* thereof go vpon the walles, to take the viewe thereof, bozne in theyr seates I spake of before, accompanied with a troupe of horsemen, that went two and two: It was tolde me they myght haue gone thre and thre. We haue seene mozeouer, that within this aforesayde citie the kyng hath moe than a thousand of his kynne lodged in great pallaces, in diuers partes of the citie: theyr gates be redde, and the entrie into theyr houses, that they may be knowen, for that is the kyng his colour. These gentlemen, accordyng to theyr nearenesse in blood vnto the kyng, as soone as they be married, receiue theyr place in honour: this place neither encreaseyth nor diminisheth in any respect, as long as the kyng lyueth, the kyng appoynteth them theyr wyues and familie, allowyng them by the *Dooze* al thynges necessarie abundantly, as he doth to his gouernours of thynges and cities, howbeit, not one of these hath as long as he lyueth, any charge or gouernment at al. They geue them selues to eatyng and drynkyng, and be for the most part burly men of bodie, inlomuche that espyng any one of them, whom we had not seene before, we myght knowe hym to be the kyng his cosyn. They be neuertheless very pleasaunt, courteous, and fayre conditioned: ne dyd we finde, al the time we were in that citie, so much honour and good entertaynement any where, as at theyr handes. They byd vs to theyr houses, to eate and drynke, and when they founde vs not, or were not wyllynge to go with them, they byd our seruantes, & slaues, causing them to lye down with the first. Notwithstanding the good lodging these gentlemen haue so commodious that they want

want nothyng, yet are they in this bondage, that during lyfe they neuer goe abroad. The cause, as I dyd vnderstand, wherefore the kyng so bleth his consynes, is that none of them at anye tyme may rebell agaynst hym: and thus he shutteth them vp in thre or foure other citie. Most of them can play on the Lute: and to make that kynde of pastyme peculiar vnto them only, all other in the citie where they do lyue be forbydden that instrument, the Curtisians and blynde folke only excepted, who be mutations, and can play.

This king furthermoze for the greater securitie of his realme, and the auoyding of tumultes, letteth not one in al his countrey to be called Lord, except he be of his blood. Many great estates and gouernours there be, that during theyr office are lodged Lordlyke, and do beare the port of nyghtie Princes: but they be so many tymes displaced, and other placed a newe, that they haue not the whyle to become corrupt. True it is that during theyr office they be well prouided for, as afterwarde also lodged at the kynges charges, and in pension as long as they liue, payde them Monethly in the citie where they dwel by certaine officers appoynted for that purpose. The kyng then is a Lorde only, not one helpe hym as you haue seene, except it be suche as be of his blood. A Nephewe by the kyng, the kyng his sisters sonne, lyeth continually within the walles of the citie, in a strong pallace built Castellwyse, euen as his other coulsins do, remainyng alwayes within doores, serued by Eunuches, neuer dealyng with any matters. Their festiuall dayes, newe Moones, and full Moones the magistrates make great bankets, & so do such as be of the king his blood. The king his Nephewe hath name *Vanfuli*, his pallace is walled about, the wall is not high, but foure square, and in circuit nothing inferiour to the walles of Goa, the outside is painted red in euery square a gate, & ouer each gate a tower, made of timber excellently wel wrought: before the principal gate of the foure, that openeth into the high street, no Loutea, be he neuer so great, may passe on horsebacke, or carried in his seat. Anywyse this quadrangle standeth the pallace where that gentleman lieth, doubtlesse worthy the sight, although we came not in to see it. By report the roofes of the towers and house, are gilded greene, the greater part of the quadrangle

Quadrangle set with sauage trees, as Okes, Chestnuttes, Cypres, Pineapples, Cedars, and other suche lyke that we do wante, after the maner of a wood, wherein are kept Stagges, Oxen, and other beastes, for that Lorde his recreation neuer goyng abroad, as I haue sayde. One prehemynence this citie hath aboue the reste where we haue been, and it of ryght as we do thynke, that besydes the multitude of market places, wherein all thynges are to be solde, throughe euery streete continually are cryed all thynges necessarie, as fleshe of all sortes, fresh fish, hearbes, oyle, vineger, meale, rife, in summa, al thinges so plentifully, that many houses neede no scruauntes, euery thing beyng brought to theyr doores. Most part of the merchantes remaine in the suburbes, for that y cities are shut vp euery night as I haue sayde. The merchantes therefore the better to attende theyr businesse, do chuse rather to make theyr abode without in the suburbes, then within the citie. I haue seene in this ryuer a pretie kynde of fyshyng, not to be omitted in my opinion, and therefore wyll I set it downe. The kyng hath in many ryuers good store of barges full of sea crows, that breede, are fedde, and do dye therein, in certayne cages, allowed monethly a certayne prouision of ryse. These barges the kyng bestoweth vpon his greatest magistrates, geuyng to some two, to some thre of them, as he thynketh good, to fysh therewithall after this maner. At the houre appoynted to fysh, all the barges are brought togeather in a circle, where the ryuer is shalowe, and the crows, tyed togeather vnder the wynges, are let leape downe into the water, some vnder, some aboue, worth the lookyng vpon: eche one as he hath filled his bagge, goeth to his owne barge and emptyeth it, whiche done, he retourneth to fysh agayne. Thus hauyng taken good store of fysh, they set the crows at libertie, and do suffer them to fysh for theyr owne pleasure. There were in that citie, where I was, twentie barges at the least of these aforesayde crows: I wente almost euery day to see them, yet coude I neuer be throughe satisfied to see so straunge a kynde of fyshyng.

Rk. iii.

Of

Finis.

Goa is a citie  
of the Portu-  
gales in East  
Indies.

# ¶ Of the Ilande Giapan, and

other litle Isles in the East Ocean.

By R. Wyllcs.



**T**he extreme part of the known worlde bnto vs, is the noble Ilande *Giapan*, written otherwylse *Iapon* and *Iapan*. This Iland standeth in the East Ocean, beyonde all *Asie*, betwixte *Cathayo* & the *West Indies* 36. degrees Northwarde from the equinoctial line, in the same cline with the South part of *Spayne* and *Portugall*, distant from thence by sea. 6000. leagues: the trauayle thither, both for ciuile discord, great piracie, and often shipwrackes, very dangerous. This countrey is hylly, and pestred with snowe, wherefore it is nether so warme as *Portugall*, & yet very pooze, as farre as we can learne, wantyng oyle, butter, cheese, mylke, egges, suger, honny, by neger, saffarne, cynamome, and pepper. Barly byanne the Islanders do vse in steede of salte: medicinable thinges holssome for the body haue they none at al. Neuerthelesse in that Iland sundry frutes do grow, not much vnlike the frutes of *Spayne*: a great store of *Syluer mynes* are therin to be seene. The people tractable, ciuile, wyttie, courteous, without decepte, in vertue and honest conuersation exceedyng all other nations lately discovered, but so muche standyng bypon theyr reputation, that theyr chiefe *Idole* may be thought honour. The contempte therof causeth among them much discord and debate, manslaughter and murther: euen for theyr reputation they do honour theyr parentes, keepe theyr promises, absteyne from adultery and robberyes, pumything by death the least robbery done, holdyng for a pynnciple, that whosoever stealeth a tryfle, wyll if he see occasion steale a greater thing. It may be theste is so seuerely punished of them, for that the nation is oppressed with scarcitie of al thynges necessarye, and so pooze, that euen for miserie they strangle theyr owne chyldren, preferring death before want. These felowes do nether eate nor kyll any foule. They lyue chiefly by fythe, hearbes, and frutes, so healthfully, that they dye very olde. Of Ryce and Wheate there is no great store.

¶ 20

*Giapan*.

252

No man is ashamed there of his pouertie, ne be theyr gentlemen therfore lesse honored of the meaner people, ne wyl the poorest gentleman there. matche his chyld with the baser sort for any gayne. so muche they do make more accompt of gentry then of wealth. The greatest delyght they haue, is in armorie, each boy at fourteene yeeres of age, be he borne gentle or otherwylse, hath his swoorde and dagger: very good archers they be, contempnyng all other nations in comparison of theyr manhood and prowesse, puttyng not vp one iniurie, be it neuer so small in worde or deede, among them selues. They feede moderately, but theyr dynke largely. The vse of vines they knowe not, theyr dynke they make of Ryce, vterly they do abhoyre dysle, and all games, accompyng nothyng more vyle in a man, then to geue hym selfe vnto those thynges, that make vs greedie and desirous to get other mens goodes. If at any time they do sweare, for that seldome they are wont to do, they sweare by the Sunne: many of them are taught good letters, wherfore they may so much the sooner be brought vnto *Christianitie*. Eche one is contented with one wyse: they be all desirous to learne, and naturally enclined vnto honestie and curtesie: godly talke they lyssen vnto wyllinglye, especially when they vnderstand it throughe. Theyr gouernment consisteth of thre estates. The fyrst place is due vnto the hygh priest, by whose lawes and decrees, al publique and priuate matters, apparteynyng vnto religion, are decided. The sectes of theyr cleargie men, whom they do call *Bonzi*, be of no estimation or aucthoritie, except the hygh priest by letters patent do confyrme the same: he confyrmeth and alloweth of theyr *Tundi*, who be as it were Bishops, although in many places they are nominated by sundry Princes. These *Tundi*, are greatly honoured of all sortes: they do geue benefices vnto inferiour ministers, and doo graunt licences for many thynges, as to eate fleshe bypon those daies they go in Pilgrimage to theyr Idoles, with suche lyke priuileges. Finailye, this hygh priest, wont to be chosen in *China*, for his wisdome and learning: made in *Giapan*, for his gentry and byrth: hath so large a Dominion, and reuenewes so great, that estones he beareth the petry Kinges, and Princes there.

Theyr gouernement.

*Tundi*.

Rk. iiii.

Theyr

Theyr seconde principall Magistrate, in theyr language *Vo*, is the cheefe Herehaught, made by succession and byrth, honored as a God. This gentleman neuer toucheth the ground with his foote without forsaytyng of his office, he neuer goeth abrode out of his house, nor is at all tymes to be seene. At home he is eyther carried about in a lytter, or els he goeth in wooden Choppines a foote hygh from the ground: commonly he sitteth in his Chaype with a sword in one syde, and a bowe and arrowes in the other, next his body he weareth blacke, his outward garment is redde, all shadowed ouer with Cipresse, at his cap hang certayne Lambear: much lyke vnto a Bishops Mytter, his forehead is paynted whyte and red, he eateth his meate in earthen Dishes. This Herehaught determineth in all *Giapan* the diuers tytles of honour, whereof in that Iland is great plentie, eache one perticularly known by his badge, commonly seene in saylyng by theyr letters, and dayly altered accordyng to theyr degrees. About this *Vo* euery noble man hath his Soliciter, for the nation is so desirous of prayse and honour, that they stryue among them selues who may byrth hym best. By these meanes the Herehaught groweth so ryche, that although he haue neyther lande nor any reuenues otherwyle, yet may he be accompted the wealthpest man in al *Giapan*. For thre causes this great Magistrate may loose his office: first, if he touch the ground with his foote, as it hath been already sayd: next, if he kyl anye body: thyrde, yf he be founde an enemy vnto peace and quietnesse, howbeit neyther of these aforesayde causes is sufficient to put hym to death.

Theyr thyrde cheefe officer is a Iudge, his office is to take by & to end matters in controuersie, to determine of warres & peace, that which he thynketh ryght, to punyssh the rebelles, wherein he may commaunde the noble men to assist hym vpon paine of forssetting theyr goodes: neuerthelesse at all tymes he is not obeyed, for that many matters are ended rather by might and armes, than determined by law. Other controuersies are decided either in the Temporal Court, as it seemeth good vnto the Princes, or in the Spiritual consistorie before the *Tundi*.

Rebelles are executed in this maner, especially yf they be noble men, or officers. The kyng, looke what daye he geueth sentence

sentence agaynst any one, the same day the partie, wherefoer he be, is aduertised thereof, and the day tolde him of his execution. The condemned person asketh of the messenger where that it may be lawfull for him to kyl him selfe: the which thing whan the kyng doeth graunt, the partie takyng it for an honour, putteth on his best apparell, and launcyng his body a crosse from the bestt downe all the belly, murthereth him selfe. This kynde of death they take to be without infamy, ne doe their chyldren, for theyr fathers crime so punished, lose theyr goods. But if the king reserue them to be executed by the Hangman, than flocketh hee togeather his chyldren, his seruantes, and friends home to his house, to preserue his lyfe by force. The kyng committeth the setting of him out vnto his chiefe Iudge, who first setteth vpon him with bow and arrowes, & afterward with pykes & swordes, vntyll the rebell and all his family be slayne, so theyr perpetuall ignominie and shame.

The Indythe wyrters make mention of sundry great cities in this Iland, as *Cangoxima* a Hauen towne in the South parte thereof, and *Meaco* distant from thence 300 leagues northward, the royall seat of the kyng, and most wealthy of all other townes in that Ilande. The people thereabout is very noble, and theyr language the best *Iaponishe*. In *Meaco* are sayde to be nienetie thousande houses inhabited and vppwarde, a famous Vniuersitie, and in it fyue principall Colledges, besydes closes and cloysters of *Bonzi*, *Leguixil*, and *Hamacata*, that is, Priestes, Monkes, and Nunnes. Other fyue notable Vniuersities there be in *Giapan*, namely, *Coia*, *Negru*, *Homi*, *Frenoi*, and *Bandu*. The fyft foure haue in them at the least, 3500. schollers: in the fyft are many moe. For *Bandu* prouince is very great, and possessed by fyve princes, fyue whereof are vassalles vnto the sixt, yet he hym selfe subiecte vnto the *Iaponishe* kyng, usually called the great king of *Meaco*: lesser scholes there be many in diuers places of this Ilande. And thus muche specially concernyng this glorious Ilande, among so many barbarous nations and rude regions, haue I gathered together in one summe, out of sundry letters wrytten from thence into *Europe*, by no lesse faithfull reporters than famous traueylers. For confirmation whereof, as also for the knowledge of other thinges not conteyned in the premisses, the curious rea-

ders may peruse these foure volumes of Indische matters written long agoe in Italian, and of late compendiously made latin, by *Petrus Maffei* my olde acquainted friend, entitulyng the same, *De rebus Iaponicis*. One whole letter out of the fyft booke thereof, specially entreatyng of that countrey, haue I done into Englyshe word for word, in suche wyle as foloweth.

*Aloisius Froes*, to his companyons in Iesus Christ,  
that remayne in China and Indie.

The last yere, deare brethren, I wrote vnto you from *Firando*, howe *Cosmus Turrianus* had appoynted me to traueyle to *Meaco*, to help *Gaspar Vilela*, for that there the haruest was great, the labourers fewe, and that I should haue for my companyon in that tourney *Aloisius Almeida*. It seemeth now my parte, hauing by the helpe of God ended so long a voyage, to signifie vnto you by letter suche thinges specially as I myght thinke you woulde most delyght to knowe. And because at the begynnyng *Almeida* and I so parted the whole labour of wrytyng letters betwixt vs, that he should speake of our voyage, and suche thinges as happened therein, I should make relation of the *Meachians* estate, and wryte what I could well learne of the *Giapans* maners and conditions: setting asyde all discourses of our voyage, that whiche standeth me vppon I wil discharge in this Epistle, that you considering howe artificially, how cunningly, vnder the pretexte of religion that craftie aduersary of mankynde, leadeth and draweth vnto perdition the *Giaponish* myndes, blynded with many superstitions and ceremonies, may the more pitie this nation.

The inhabiteurs of *Giapan*, as men that neuer had greatly to doe with other nations, in their Geography diuided the whole world into thre partes, *Giapan*, *Sian*, and *China*. And albeit the *Giapans* receyued out of *Sian*, and *China*, their superstitions and ceremonies, yet doe they neuerthelesse contemne all other nations in comparision of them selues, & standyng in their owne conceite doe far preferre them selues before all other sortes of people in wisdom and policie.

Touching the situation of the countrey, & nature of the soyle, vnto the thinges elsowes erst written, this one thing wil I adde: in these Ilandes the sommer to be most hot, the winter extreame colde. In the kyngdome of *Canga*, as we call it, falleth so muche snow,

now, that the houses being buried in it, the inhabiteurs keepe with in doores certaine moneths of the yere, hauing no way to come forth except they breake by the tiles. Whirlewyndes most vehement, Earthquakes so common, that the *Giapans* dreade suche kinde of feares litle or nothing at all. The countrey is full of siluer mines, otherwyle barren, not so much by fault of nature, as through the slouthfulnes of the inhabiteurs: howbeit Oren they keepe, & that for tillage sake onely. The ayre is wholsome, the waters good, the people very fayre & well bodied: bare headed commonly they go, proctiring baldnes with sorow & teares, elsowes rooting vp in pins at the heate of their heads as it groweth, except it be a litle behind, the which they knot and keepe with al diligence. Euen from their chyldhood they weare daggers and swoords, the which they vse to lay vnder their pillows whan they goe to bedde: in shew curteous and affable: in deede haughty and proude. They delight most in warlike affayres, and their greatest studie is armes. Menes apparell dyuersly coloured, is worne downe halfe the legges, and to the elbowes: womens attyre made handsomely, lyke vnto a bayle, is somewhat longer: all maner of dysyng and theft they doe eschue. The merchant, although he bee wealthy, is not accompted of. Gentlemen, be they neuer so poore, retayne theyr place: most precelsely they stande vppon theyr honour and woorthynesse, ceremoniously stryuyng among them selues in curtesies and fayre speeches. Wherein if any one happely bee lesse carefull than hee should bee, euen for a trifle many tymes hee getteth cupil will. Want, though it trouble most of them, so muche they doe deteste, that poore men cruelly takyng pietie of theyr infantes newly borne, especially gyrls, doe many tymes with theyr owne feete strangle them. Noble men, and other lykwyle of meaner calling, generally haue but one wyfe a peece, by whom although they haue issue, yet for a trifle they diuorfe themselves from their wiues, and the wiues also sometimes from their husbonds, to marry with others. After the seconde degree, coosins may ther lawfully marry. Adoption of other mens chyldren is much used among them. In great townes most men and women can write and reade.

This nation feedeth sparsely, theyr vsuall meate is ryse and salattes, and neare the sea fyde fysh. They feast one an other



other many tymes, wherein they vse great diligence, especially in drinckynge one to an other, insomuch that the better sorte, least they myght rudely commit some fault therein, doe vse to reade certaine bookes witten of dueties and cerimonies apperteynyng vnto bankettes. To be delicate and fine, they put theyr meat into these mouthes with litle forkes, accompting it great rudenes to touch it with theyr fingers: wynter and sommer they drynke water as hot as they may possible abyde it. Theyr houses are in daunger of fyre, but finely made, and cleane, layde all ouer with straw pallettes, wherevpon they doe both sit in steede of stooles, and lye in theyr clothes, with billets vnder theyr heades. For feare of defilyng these pallettes, they goe eyther barefoote within doores, or weare strawe pantofles on theyr buskynnes whan they come abroad, the which they laye asyde at theyr retorne home agayne. Gentlemen for the most parte doe passe the nyght in banketting, mulike, and bayne discourtes, they sleepe the day tyme. In *Meaco* and *Sacais* there is good store of beddes, but they be very litle, and may be compared vnto our puses.

In byngyng vp theyr children they vse wordes onely to rebuke them, admonishyng as diligently and aduisedly boyes of six or seuen peeres age, as though they were olde men. They are giuen very much to entertayne strangers, of whom most curiously they loue to aske euen in trifles what forreyn nations doe, and theyr fashions. Suche argumentes and reasons as be manifest, and are made playne with examples, doe greatly persuaide them. They detest all kynde of theft, whosoever is taken in that fault may be slayne freely of any body. No publike prisons, no common gyles, no ordinary Iusticers: priuately eche householder hath the hearyng of matters at home in his owne house, and the punishyng of greater crimes that deserue death without delaye. Thus vsually the people is kept in awe and feare.

About foure hundred peeres agoe (as in theyr olde recordes we fynde) all *Giapan* was subiecte vnto one *Emperor*, whose royall seate was *Meaco*, in the *Giaponishe* language called *Cubucama*. But the nobilitie rebellyng agaynst him, by litle and litle haue taken away the greatest parte of his dominion, howbeit his title continually remaineth, and the residue in some respect doe make great accompt of him stil, acknowledging him for theyr superior.

Thus

Thus the Emperre of *Giapan*, in tymes past but one alone, is now diuided into sixtie sixe kyngdomes, the onely cause of ciuile warres continually in that Iland, to no small hynderaunce of the Gospell, whylest the kynges that dwell neare togeather inuade one an other, eche one couetyng to make his kyngdome greater. Furthermoze in the citie *Meaco* is the pallace of the high priest, whom that nation honoureth as a God, he hath in his house 366. Idolles, one whereof by course is euery nyght set by his syde for a watchman. He is thought of the common people so holy, that it may not be lawfull for him to goe vppon the earth: if happely he doe set one foote to the grounde, he loseth his office. He is not serued very sumptuously, he is mainteined by almes. The heads and beards of his ministers are shauen, they haue name *Cangues*, and theyr auctoritie is great throughtout all *Giapan*. The *Cubucama* bleseth them for Embassadors to decide controuersies betwixte princes, and to ende theyr warres, whereof they are wont to make very great gayne. It is now two peeres since, or there about, that one of them came to *Bungo*, to entreat of peace betwixt the kyng thereof, and the kyng of *Amaniguzzo*. This Agent fauouring the kyng of *Bungo* his cause more than the other, brought to passe that the foresayde kyng of *Bungo* should keepe two kyngdomes, the which he had taken in warres from the kyng of *Amaniguzzo*. Wherefore he had for his rewarde of the kyng of *Bungo* aboue thirtie thousande Ducattes. And thus farre heereof.

I come now to other superstitions and ceremonies, that you may see, deare brethren, that whiche I sayde in the begynnyng, howe surely the deuyl hath deceyued the *Giaponishe* nation, and howe diligent and ready they be to obey and worshyp him. And howe diligent and ready they be to obey and worshyp him. And first, all remembrance and knowledge not onely of Christ our redeemer, but also of that one God the maker of all thynges, is cleane extinguisht, & utterly abolished out of the *Giapans* hartes. Whercoze theyr superstitious sectes are many, whereas it is lawfull for eche one to follow that which lyketh him best: but the principall sectes are two, namely the *Amidans* and *Xacaia*ns. Wherfore in this countrey shall you see many monasteries, not onely of *Bonzii* men, but also of *Bonzie* women diuersly attyred, for some doe weare whyte vnder, and blacke vpper garments, other goe apparelled in albe colour, & theyr Idole hath name *Denichi*:  
from

But his almes  
are very good.

from these the *Amidanes* differ very muche. Agayne the men *Bonzii* for the most parte dwell in sumptuous houses, and haue great reuenues. These felowes are chaste by commaundement, marry they may not vnder payne of death. In the myddst of theyr Temple is erected an Altar, whereon standeth a wodden Idole of *Amida*, naked from the gyrdle vpwarde, with holes in his eares, after the maner of Italian Gentlewomen, sitting on a wooden rose, goodly to beholde. They haue great libraries, and halles for them all to dyne and suppe together, and belles wherewith they are certayne houres called to prayers. In the euenyng the Superintendent gyueth eche one a theame for meditation. After mydnyght before the Altar in theyr Temple they doe say Mattens as it were out of *Xaca* his last booke, one quier one verse, the other quier an other. Early in the mornyng eche one gyueth him selfe to meditation one houre: they haue theyr heades and beards. Theyr Cloysters be very large, and within the precincte thereof, Chappelles of the *Fotoquiens*, for by that name some of the *Giapanish* Sainctes are called: theyr holydayes peerele be very many. Most of these *Bonzii* be Gentlemen, for that the *Giaponish* nobilitie, charged with many children, vse to make most of them *Bonzii*, not being able to leaue for eche one a patrimony good ynough. The *Bonzii* most couetously bent, know all the wayes howe to come by money. They sell vnto the people many scroles of paper, by the helpe whereof the common people thinketh it selfe warranted from all power of the deuylles. They borrowe lyke wyse money to bee repayde with great vsury in an other world, gyuyng by Obligation vnto the lender an assuraunce thereof, the whiche departyng out of this lyfe hee may carry with him to hell.

Inambuxu,

There is an other great company of suche as are called *Inambuxu*, with curde and staryng heare. They make profession to fynde out agayne thinges either lost or stolen, after this sorte. They set before them a chyld, whom the deuyl inuadeth, called vpon thither by charmes: of that chyld than doe they aske that which they are desirous to know.

These mens prayers both good and bad are thought greatly to preuaile, insomuch that both their blessings and theyr curses they

they sell vnto the people. The Nouices of this order, before they be admitted, goe together two or thre thousande in a company, vpon a certayne high mountayne to do penance there, threescore dayes voluntarily punishing them selues. In this tyme the deuyl sheweth him selfe vnto them in sundry shapes: and they, lyke young graduates, admitted as it were felowes into some certayne company, are set forth with whyte casselles hanging about theyr neckes, and blacke Bonettes that scarcely couer any more than the crowne of theyr heades. Thus attyred they range abroad in all *Giapan*, to set out them selues and their cunnynge to sale, eche one beating his basen hee carryeth alwayes about with him, to gyue notice of theyr commyng in all towne where they passe.

There is also an other sorte called *Genguis*, that make profession to shewe by southsaying where stolen thinges are, and who were the theeves. These dwell in the toppe of an high mountayne, blacke in face for the continuall heate of the sunne, for the colde, wyndes, and raynes they doe continually endure. They marry but in theyr owne tribe and lyne: the reporte goeth that they bee horned beastes. They clyme vpon most hygh rockes and hylles, and goe ouer very great ryuers by the onely arte of the deuyl, who to byrnyng those wretches the more into errour, byddeth them to goe vpon a certayne hygh mountayne, where they stande miserably gazing and earnestly lookyng for him as long as the deuyl appoynteth them. At the length at noonetyde, or in the euenyng, cometh that deuyl, whom they call *Amida*, among them to shewe him selfe vnto them: this shew breedeth in the braynes and hartes of men suche a kynde of superstition, that it can by no meanes be rooted out of them afterwarde.

The deuyl was wont also in an other mountaine to shewe him selfe vnto the *Giaponish* nation. Who so was more desirous than other, to go to heauen and to enioy *Paradyse*, thither went he to see that syght, and hauyng seene the deuyl, folowed hym, so by the deuyl persuaed, into a denne vntyll hee came to a deepe pytte. Into this pytte the deuyl was wont to leape, & to take with him his worthypper whom he there murdered. This deceit was thus perceyued. An olde man blynded with this superstition, was by his sonne dissuaded from thence, but all in vayne.

Wherfore

Wherefore his sonne folowed him priuely into that denne with his bowe and arrowes, where the deuyl gallantly appeared vnto him in the shape of a man. Whilist the olde man falleth downe to worshyp the deuyl, his sonne speedily shootyng an arrow at the spirite so appearyng, stroke a fore in steede of a man, so so deonly was that shape altered. This old man his sonne trackyng the fore so runnyng away, came to that pit wherof I spake, and in the bottome thereof he founde many bones of dead men, deceyued by the deuyl after that sorte in tyme past. Thus deliuered hee his father from present death, and all other from so pestilent an opinion.

There is furthermore a place bearyng name *Coia*, very famous for the multitude of Abbeyes the *Bonzii* haue therein. The beginner and founder whereof is thought to be one *Combendaxis* a subtle craftie felowe, that gotte the name of holynesse by cunnyng speache, although the lawes and ordinances he made were altogether deuillish: he is sayde to haue founde out the *Giapanishe* letters vled at this day. In his later yeeres this *Sim* subtle buryed him selfe in a fouresquare graue, foure cubites deepe, seuerely forbyddyng it to be opened, for that than he dyed not, but rested his body, wearyed with continuall busynesse, vntyll many thousande thousandes of yeeres were passed, after the whiche tyme a great learned man named *Mirozu* should come into *Giapan*, and than would he ryle vp out of his graue agayne. About his tumbes many lampes are lyghted, sent thither out of dyuers prouinces, for that the people is perswaded, that whosoever is liberall and beneficiall towards the beautifying of that monument, shall not onely encrease in wealth in this worlde, but in the lyfe to come be safe through *Combendaxis* helpe. Suche as gyue them selues to worshyp him, liue in those Monasteries or Abbeyes, with shauen heads, as though they had forsaken all secular matters, wheras in deede they wallow in all sortes of wickednesse and lust. In these houses, the which are many (as I sayde) in number, doe remaine 6000. *Bonzii*, or thereabout, besydes the multitude of laye men: women be restrayned from thence vppon payne of death. An other company of *Bonzii* dwelleth at *Fatonochaiti*. They teache a great multitude of chyldren all trickes and sleightes of guyle and theft: whom they doe synde to be of great towardnesse, those

doe

doe they instruct in all the petigrues of princes, and fashions of the nobilitie, in chivalry, & eloquence, and so send them abroad into other prouinces, attyred lyke young princes, to this ende, that saynyng them selues to be nobly borne, they may with great summes of money, borrowed vnder the colour and pretence of nobilitie, retorne agayne. Wherefore this place is so infamous in all *Giapan*, that if any schollar of that order bee happely taken abroad, hee incontynently dyeth for it. Neuerthelesse these counsyners leaue not dayly to vse theyr wonted wickednesse and knauery.

North from *Giapan*, three hundred leagues out of *Meaco*, lyeth a great countrey of sauage men, clothed in beastes skynnes, rough bodied, with huge beardes, and monstrous muchaches, the which they hold vp with litle forks as they dlynke. These people are great dlynkers of wyne, fierce in warres, and much feared of the *Giapans*: beyng hurte in fight, they washe theyr woundes with salte water, other surgery haue they none. In theyr bestes they are sayde to carry lookyng glasses: their swordes they tye to theyr heades, in suche wyse, that the handle doe rest vppon their shoulvers. Seruice and ceremonies haue they none at all, onely they are wont to worshyppe heauen. To *Aquita*, a great towne in that *Giapanishe* kyngdome, we call *Guano*, they muche resort for merchandysse, and the *Aquitans* lyke wyse doe traueyle into theyr countrey, howbeit not often, for that there many of them are slayne by the inhabitants.

Muche more concernyng this matter I had to wyte, but to auoyde tediousnesse, I will come to speake of the *Giapans* maner of buryalles agayne, who most desirous of vayne glory, doe thynke than specially to geat immortall fame, whan they procure them selues to bee most sumptuously and solempnely buried, theyr buryalles and obsequies in the cite *Meaco*, are done after this maner. About one houre before the dead body be brought forth, a great multitude of his friends, apparelled in theyr best aray, go before vnto the fyre, with them goe theyr kyn women, and such as bee of theyr acquaintance, clothed in whyte (for that is the mournyng colour there) with a chaungeable coloured bayle on theyr heades. Eche woman hath with her also, accordyng to her abilitie, all her familye crymmed by in whyte like mac-

L.i.

cado:

The Giapans  
nith Funerals.

rado: the better sorte and wealthier women goe in litters of Cedar, artificially wrought, and richly dyed. In the seconde place marcheth a great company of footemen sumptuously apparelled. Than a far of cometh one of these *Bonzii*, maister of the ceremonies for that superstition, brauely clad in silkes & golde, in a large & high lytter, excellently wel wrought, accompanied with 30. other *Bonzii*, or therabout, wearing hattes, linnen albes, and fyne blacke vpper garments. Than attired in ashe colour (for this colour also is mourning) with a long torch of pineaple, sheweth the dead body the way vnto the fyre, least it either stumble, or ignorandy goe out of the way. Melneare. 200. *Bonzii* folow him singing the name of that deuill the which the partie deceased chiefly did woozship by his life tynie, and therewithall a very great baten is beaten, euen to the place of fire, in steed of a bel. Than folow two great paper baskets hanged open at staues endes, full of paper roses diuersly coloured: such as beare them, doe march but slowly, shaking euer now & than their staues, that the aforesaid floures may fall downe by litle & litle, as it were droppes of rayne, and be whirled about with the wynd. This shoure say they is an argument that the soule of the dead man is gone to Paradyse. After all this, eight bearded *Bonzii* orderly two and two dragge after them on the ground long speares, the pointes backward, with flagges of one cubite a peece, wherein the name also of that Idole is written. Than be there carried ten Lanternes trimmed with the former inscription, ouercast with a fine bayle, and candelles burning in them. Besides this, two young men clothed in ashe colour, beare pineaple torches, not lighted, of thre foote length, the which torches serue to kindle the fyre wherein the dead corpes is to be burnt. In the same colour folow many other that weare on the crownes of their heades sayre, litle, thre square, blacke linnen caps, tied fast vnder their chins (for y is honorable amongst them) with papers on their heads, wherein the name of y deuill, I spake of, is written. And to make it the more solemne, after cometh a man with a table one cubite long, ene foote broad, couered with a very fine whyte bayle, in both sides wherof is written in golden letters the aforesaid name. At the length by foure men is brought forth the corpes sitting in a gorgeous lytter, clothed in whyte, hanging downe his head, and holding his handes together lyke one

one that prayeth: to the rest of his apparell may you adde an vpper gowne of paper, written full of that booke the which his God is sayd to haue made, when he liued in the world, by whose helpe and merites commonly they doe thinke to bee saued. The dead man his chyldren come next after him most gallantly set forth, the yongest wherof carrieth lykewyse a pineaple torch to kindle the fyre. Last of all foloweth a great number of people in suche manner as I haue spake of.

When they are all come to the place appointed for the obsequie, all the *Bonzii* with the whole multitude, for the space of one hour, beating pannes & basens with great clamors, cal vpon the name of that deuill, the which being ended, the obsequie is done in this manner. In the midst of a great quadrangle, rayled about, hanged with course linnen, and agreeably vnto the foure partes of the world, made with foure gates to goe in and out at, is digged a hole: in the hole is layde good store of wood, whereon is rayled gallantly a waued rooffe, before that stande two tables furnished with diuers kyndes of meates, especially dry figges, *Pomegranates*, and tartes good store, but neyther fysh nor fleshe: vpon one of them standeth also a chaffre with coles, and in it sweete wood to make perfumes. When all this is ready, the corpe wherewith the lytter was carried, is throwen by a long rope into the fyre: as many as are present stryue to take the rope in their handes, vsing theyr aforesaid clamors, which done, they goe in procession as it were rounde about the quadrangle thysle. Than setting the lytter on the wood bupte vp ready for the fyre, that *Bonzii* who than is maister of the ceremonies, sayeth a verse, that no bodie there vnderstandeth, whysling thysle about ouer his head a torch lighted, to signifie thereby that the soule of the dead man had neyther any begynnynge, ne shall haue at any tyme an ende, and throweth away the torch. Two of the dead man his chyldren, or of his neare kynne, take it up agayne, and standynge one at the East syde of the lytter, the other at the West, doe for honour and reuerence, reache it to eche other thysle ouer the dead corpes, and so cast it into the pyle of wood: by and by they throwe in oyle, sweete wood, and other perfumes, accordynge as they haue plentie, and so with a great flame byng the corpes to ashes: his chyldren in the meane

they putting sweete wood into the Chaffin at the table, with  
 doyes, doe solemnely and religiously woozshyp their father as  
 a Sainct: which being done, the *Bonzii* are payde eche one in  
 his degree. The maister of the cerimonies hath for his part fyue  
 ducates, sometimes ten, sometimes .xx. the rest haue ten *Julies* a  
 peece, or els a certayne number of other presentes called *Caxa*.  
 The meate that was ordeyned, as soone as the dead corpes  
 friendes and all the *Bonzii* are gone, is left for such as serued at  
 the obsequie, for the poore, and impotent lazares.

The next day returne to the place of obsequie the dead man  
 his chyldren, his kynred, and friendes, who geatheryng by his  
 ashes, bones, and teeth, doe put them in a gylded pottle, and so  
 carry them home, to be set by in the same pot couered with cloth,  
 in the myddst of theyr houses. Many *Bonzii* returne lyke wise  
 to these priuate funeralles, and so doe they agayne the seuenth  
 day. Then carry they out the ashes to bee buryed in a place ap-  
 poynted, laying therevpon a fouresquare stone, wherein is  
 written in great letters, drawen all the length of the stone ouer,  
 the name of that deuyl the which the dead man woozshypped by  
 his lyfe tyme. Euerie day afterwarde his chyldren resorte vnto  
 that graue, with roses and warme water, that the deade corpes  
 thurst not. Nor the seuenth day onely, but the seuenth moneth,  
 and yere, within theyr owne houses they renue this obsequie,  
 to no small commodities and gayne of the *Bonzii*: great ryche  
 men doe spende in these theyr funeralles, 3000. ducates, or there  
 about, the meane sorte two or thre hundred. Suche as for  
 pouertie be not able to go to that charges, are in the nyght time,  
 baskel long without all pompe & ceremonies, buryed in a dunghil.

They haue an other kynde of buriall, especially neare the  
 sea syde, for them that bee not yet deade. These felowes  
 are such, as haupng religiously with much deuotion worshipped  
*Amida*, now desirous to see him, doe slaye them selues. And  
 first they go certayne dayes begging almes, the which they thrust  
 into theyr sleeves, than preache they in publyke a sermon vnto  
 the people, declaring what they mynd to doe, with the great good  
 lykng of all suche as doe heare them: for euerie body wondreth  
 at such a kynd of holynesse. Then take they hookes to cut downe  
 bypers

bypers and thornes that myght hinder them in theyr way to hea-  
 uen, and so imbarke them selues in a newe vessell, tyeing great  
 stones about their neckes, armes, loynes, thighes, and feete: thus  
 they launchyng out into the mayne sea, be eyther drowned there,  
 theyr shyppe bouged for that purpose, or els doe cast them selues  
 ouer boorde headlong into the sea. The emptye barke is out  
 of hande set a fyre, for honour sake, by theyr friendes that solowe  
 them in an other boate of their owne, thynkyng it blasphemie  
 that any mortal creature should afterwarde once touche the barke  
 that had been so religiously halowed.

Truely whan we went to *Meaco*, eyght dayes before we came  
 to the Isle of *Hiu*, at *Fore* towne, sixe men and two women so dy-  
 ed. To all suche as dye so, the people erecteth a Chappell, and to  
 eche of them a pyllar and a pole made of pinaple, for a perpetu-  
 all monument: hangyng by many sheddies of paper in stickes  
 all the rooffe ouer, with many verses set downe in the walles, in  
 commendation of that blessed company. Wherefore vnto this  
 place both day and nyght many come very superstitiously in pyl-  
 grimage. It happened euen then as *Aloisius Almeida* & I went  
 to *Christen* a chyld, we traueyled that way, at what time foure or  
 fife olde women came forth out of the aforesaide Chappel with  
 beades in theyr handes (for in this pointe also the deuyl counter-  
 fayteth *Christianitie*) who partly scorned at vs for folly, partly  
 frowned and taunted at our small deuotion, for passing by that  
 holy monument, without any reuerence or woozshyp done there-  
 vnto at all.

It remayneth nowe we speake two or thre woozdes of those  
 Sermons the *Bonzii* are wont to make, not so many as ours in  
 number, but assuredly very wel prouided for. The Pulpit is erec-  
 ted in a great Temple with a silke Canapie ouer it, therein stan-  
 deth a costly seate, before the seate a table with a bel & a booke. At  
 the houre of sermon, eche secte of the *Giapans* resorteth to theyr  
 owne doctores in diuers Temples. Up goeth the doctor into the  
 Pulpit, and beyng set downe, after that he hath Lordlye looked  
 him about, signifyeth silence with his bell, and so readeth a fewe  
 woozdes out of that booke we spake of, the which he expoundeth  
 afterwarde moze at large. These preachers be for the most parte  
 eloquent, and apte to drawe with their speach the myndes of their



hearers. Wherefore to this ende chiefly, suche is theyr greedy-  
nesse, tendeth all theyr talke, that the people be brought vnder the  
colour of godlinesse to enryche theyr monasteries, promysing to  
eche one so much the more happinesse in the lyfe to come, howe  
much the greater costes & charges they be at in church matters &  
obsequies: notwithstanding this multitude of superstitious sects  
and companyes, and the diuersities therof amongst them selues:  
yet in this principally all theyr superintendentes doe traueyle, so  
to perswade theyr Nouices in their owne tales and lyes, that they  
thinke nothing els trueth, nothing els sure to come by euerlasting  
saluation, nothing els woorth the hearyng. Wherunto they adde  
other subtilties, as in going, grauitie: in countenance, apparel,  
and in all other outward shewe, comelynesse. Wherby the *Gia-*  
*panes* myndes are so nouelled in wicked opinions, and doe con-  
cepue thereby such trust and hope of euerlasting saluation, that  
not onely at home, but also abrode in euery corner of the towne,  
continually almost they runne ouer their beades, humbly asking  
of *Amida* and *Xaca* wealth, honour, good health, and euerlastyng  
ioyes. Thus than, deare brethzen, may you thinke howe greatly  
they neede the helpe of God, that eyther doe bring the Gospel in-  
to this countrey, or receiuing it brought vnto them, do forsake *Id-*  
*olatry*, & toyne them selues with Christ, being assailed by so ma-  
ny snares of the deuil, troubled with the dayly dissuasions of their  
*Bonzii*, and finally so iniuriously, so hardely, so sharpely vexed of  
their kindred and friends, that except the grace of God obtey-  
ned by the sacrifices and prayers of the Catholike church do help  
vs, it can not be chosen, but that the fayth and constancie of many,  
if not of all, in these first beginninges of our churches, will great-  
ly be put in iopardie. So much the more it standeth you vppon,  
that so earnestly long for the health of soules, to commend specially  
these *Giaponish* flockes vnto our Lorde.

We came to *Saciao*. the. xxviii. of January. *Aloy-*  
*sus Almeida* first for businesse, but afterwarde let by sicknesse,  
stayed there some whyle, but I parting the next day from thence,  
came thirtiene leagues of, to *Meaco* the last of January. Of my  
comynge all the Christians tooke great comfort, but specially  
*Gasper Vilela*, who in six peeres had seene none of our company at  
*Meaco*: his peeres are not yet fourtie, but his gray beares shewe  
him

him to bee seuentie, so behemently is his litle body afflicted and  
woyne with extreme colde. He speaketh *Giapanish* so skillfully af-  
ter the phrase of *Meaco* (the which for the renoune of this peo-  
ple, and royall seat of the kyng is best accompted of) that he doth  
both confesse & preach in that language. Certayne godly bookes  
also he hath done into that speech, not omitting to translate other  
as leasure suffreth him. To make an end, our Lord for his good-  
nesse vouchsafe to preferue vs all continually, and to giue vs ayde  
both ryghly to interpret his wil, and well to do the same. From  
*Meaco* the. xix. of February. 1565.

Other suche lyke matter is handled both in other his letters,  
and also in the Epistles written by his companyons, to be seene  
at large in the aforesayde volume. Amongst the rest this seemed  
in my iudgement one of the principall, and therefore the rather  
I tooke vppon me to doe it into Englyshe.

Of the Isles beyond Giapan, in the way from  
China to the Moluccaes.



Amongst other Isles in the Asian sea, be-  
twixt *Cantan* a *Chinishe* haven in *Cathayo*,  
and the *Moluccaes*, muche spoken of in the  
Indish histories, & paynted out in *Happes*,  
*Ainan* and *Santliamum*, are very famous.

*Ainan* standeth nienetiens degrees on *Ainan*.  
this syde of the Equinoctial lyne neare *Chi-*  
*na*, from whence the *Chinishe* nation haue theyr prouision for  
shyping and other necessaryes requisite for theyr *India*. There  
stayed *Balbazar Gagus*, a great traueyler, fise monethes, who de-  
scribeth that place after this maner. *Ainan* is a goodly countrey,  
full of Indish frutes, and all kynde of victualles, besydes  
great store of Iuelles and pearle, well inhabited, the townes  
buylt of stone, the people rude in conditions, apparelled in  
diuersly coloured rugges, with two Ox hornes, as it were,  
made of fyne cypres hangyng downe about theyr eares.

and a payre of sharpe cyzers at theyr foreheades.

The cause wherefore they goe in suche attyre, I could not vnderstande, except it be for that they doe counterfaite the deuyll in the fourme of a brute beast, offering to him vp them selues.

*Santianum.*

*Santianum*, is an Ile neare vnto the hauen *Cantan*, in the confines lykewyse of *China*, famous for the death of that woorthie trauepler, and godly professour, and paynfull doctor of the Indythe nation, in matters concernyng religion, *Francis Xavier*, who after great labours, many iniuries, and calamities infinite suffred with much patience, singular ioye and gladnesse of mynde, departed in a cabben made of bowes and rushes vppon a desarte mountayne, no lesse boyde of all worldly commodities, than endued with all spirituall blessings, out of this lyfe, the seconde day of December, the yeere of our Lorde. 1552. after that many thousandes of these Easterlynges were brought by him to the knowledge of Christ. Of this holy man, his perticular vertues, and specially traueyle, and wonderfull woorkes in that region, of other many litle Isles, yet not so little but that they may ryght well be written of at leasure, all the later histories of the Indythe regions are full.

FINIS.

# Of the Northeast frostie Seas, and

kyngdoms lying that way, declared by the Duke of Moscouia his ambassadour, to a learned Gentleman of Italie, named Galeatius Butrigarius: likewise of the viages of that worthie old man Sebastian Cabote, sometymes gouernour of the companie of the Merchantes of Cathay, in the Citie of London.



It is doubtesse a marueilous thyng to consider what changes and alterations were caused in all the Romane Emppre by the Gothes and Vandales, and other Barbarians into Italy. For by their inuasions were extinguyshed all artes and sciences, and all trades of Merchandies that were vsed in

*The Romane Emppre.*

dyuers partes of the worlde. The desolation and ignoraunce whiche ensued hereof, continued as it were a cloude of perpetuall darkenesse among men for the space of foure hundred yeeres and moze, insomuche that none durst aduenture to goe any whither out of theyr owne native countreys: whereas before the incursions of the sayde Barbarians, when the Romane Emppre flourished, they myght safely passe the seas to all partes of East India, whiche was at that tyme as well known and frequented, as it is now by the nauigations of the Portugales. And that this is true, it is manifest by that whiche Strabo writteth, who was in the tyme of Augustus and Tiberius. For speakyng of the greatnesse and ryches of the citie of Alexandria in Egypt (gouerned then as a prouince of the Romanes) he writteth thus. This onely place of Egypt, is apte to receyue all thynges that come by sea, by reason of the commoditie of the hauen, and lykewyse all suche thynges as are brought by lande, by reason of the ryuer of Nilus, whereby they may bee easely conueyed to Alexandria, beyng by

*4. hundred yeeres of ignoraunce.*

*East India well known in olde tyme.*

*Strabo.*

*The great ryche of Egypt.*

*The citie of Alexandria.*

# Of the Northeast frosty sea

Marueplous  
rycheffe.

The gouer-  
naunce and  
reuenues of the  
Romanes.  
Troglobitica.  
and India.  
The gulfe of  
Arabia.

Ethiope.

Ryche customs.

The rycheffe  
whiche were  
brought in  
olde tyme from  
India and the  
redde sea.

The romini-  
on of Thempe-  
rours Marcus  
and Comod-  
us.

by these commodities the rycheffest citie of merchauntes that is  
in the worlde. The reuenues of Egypt are so great, that  
Marcus Tullius sayth in one of his orations, that kynge Ptole-  
meus, surnamed *Anleta*, the father of queene *Cleopatra*, had of  
reuenues twelue thousande and fyue hundred talentes, whiche  
are seuen millions and a halfe of golde. If therefore this  
kynge had so great reuenues when Egypt was gouerned of so  
fewe and so negligently, what myght it then be woorth to the  
Romanes, by whom it was gouerned with great diligence, and  
theyr trade of merchandies greatly increased by the traffike of  
*Troglobitica* and *India*; whereas in tyme past there coulde hard-  
ly be founde. xx. shippes togeather that durst enter into the gulfe  
of *Arabie*, or shewe theyr prowesse without the mouth of the same.  
But at this present, great nauies sayle togeather into *India*, and  
to the furthest partes of *Ethiope*, from whence are brought many  
rich and precious merchandies into Egypt, and are caried from  
thence into other countreys. And by this meanes are the cus-  
tomes redoubled, aswel by such thynges as are brought thither,  
as also by suche as are carped from thence, forasmuche as great  
customes aryse of thinges of great value. And that by this voy-  
age infinite and precious merchandies were brought from the  
redde sea and *India*, and those of dyuers other sortes then are  
knownen in our tyme, it appeareth by the fourth volume of the  
ciuile lawe, wherein is described the commission of *Thempe-*  
*rours*, *Marcus* and *Commodus*, with the rehearfall of al such stuf-  
fe and merchandies, wherof custome shoulde be payde in the redde  
sea, by suche as had the same in fee farme, as were payde the  
customes of all other prouinces partaynyng to the *Romane*  
*Empyre*: and they are these folowynge.

Cinamome.  
Long pepper.  
Whye pepper.  
Cloues.  
Costus.  
Cancomo.  
Spikenarde.  
Cassia.  
Sweete perfumes

Filocassia.  
Myr.  
Amome.  
Ginger.  
Malabattrum.  
Ammoniac.  
Galbane.  
Lasser.  
Agarike.

Gumme

and kyngdomes lying that way.

254

Gumme of Arabie.

Cardamome.

Filocinamome.

Carpelio.

Spikes of diuers sortes.

Lynnen cloth.

Skynnes and Furres of Par-  
thia and Babylon.

Iuorie.

Wood of Heben.

Precious stones.

Pearles.

Jeweltes of Sardonica.

Ceraunia.

Calamus Aromaticus.

Also that iuyce or lyquour whiche is gathered of wooll, and of  
the heare of the Indians.

By these wordes it doeth appeare, that in olde tyme the said  
nauigation by the way of the red sea, was wel knownen, & muche  
frequented, & perhaps more then it is at this present: Insomuch  
that the ancient kynges of Egypt, consydering the great profite  
of the customes they had by the viages of the red sea, and wylling  
to make the same more easie & commodious, attempted to make  
a fosse or chanel, which shoulde begin in the last part of the said sea,  
where was a citie named *Asinoe* (which perhappes is that that  
is now called *Sues*) and shoulde haue reached to a branch of the  
riuer of *Nilus*, named *Peluso*, whiche emptieth it selfe in our sea  
toward the East, about the citie of *Damiata*. They determined  
also to make three causeys or hygh wayes by land, which shoulde  
passe from the sayd branch to the citie of *Asinoe*: but they founde  
this too difficult to byng to passe. In fine, king *Ptolomeus* surna-  
named *Philadelphus*, ordeyned another way, as to sayle bypon  
*Nilus*, agaynst the course of the riuer, vnto the citie of *Copto*,  
and from thence to passe by a desert countrey, vntyl they come a-  
boue the red sea, to a citie named *Berenice*, or *Mioformo*, where  
they imbarcked al their merchandise and wares for *India*, *Ethiope*,  
and *Arabie*, as appeareth by the wytyng first of *Strabo* (who  
wyrteth that he was in Egypt) and then by *Plinie*, who was in  
the

Berille.

Cilindro.

Slaues.

Cloth of Sarmattia.

The sylke called *Metara*.

Vestures of sylke.

Died cloth, and sylke.

Carbalei.

Sylke threede.

Gilded men.

Hopingayes.

Lions of India.

Leopardes.

Panthers.

Purple.

The great ri-  
ches the kings  
of Egypt had  
by customes.

The noble en-  
terprises of the  
kings of Egypt  
*Asinae*.  
*Damiata*.  
*Peluso*.

*Nilus*.  
*Copto*.

*Berenice*.

# Of the Northeast frosty sea

A nautigable  
trenche made  
from Egypt to  
the red sea.  
*Lacus amari.*

the tyme of Domitian. Strabo also, speaking of the saide fosse or  
trenche whiche was made toward the redde sea, wyrteth thus,  
There is a trenche that goeth toward the red sea, & the gulf of  
Arabie, and to the citie of *Arfinoe*, whiche some call *Cleopatrida*,  
and passeth by the lakes named *Amari* (that is) bytter, because  
in deede they were fyrste bytter: but after that this trenche was  
made, and the ryuer entred in, they became sweete, and are at  
this present ful of foules of the water, by reason of their pleasant-  
nesse. This trenche was fyrste begunne by king *Sesostre*, before  
the battaile of *Troy*. Some say that it was begunne by king  
*Psammiticus*, while he was a childe, and that by reason of his  
death it was left imperfect: also, that afterwarde, king *Darius*  
succeeded in the same enterpryse, who woulde haue finished it, but  
yet brought it not to the ende, because he was enfourmed that the  
redde sea was higher then Egypt, and that if this lande (diui-  
ding both the seas) were opened, all Egypt shoulde be drow-  
ned thereby. King *Ptolomeus* woulde in deede haue finished it,  
but yet left it shut at the head, that he myght, when he woulde,  
sayle to the other sea, and returne without peryll. Here is the citie  
of *Arfinoe*, and neare vnto that, the citie called *Heroum*, in the vt-  
termoost parte of the gulf of *Arabie*, toward Egypt, with many  
portes and habitations. *Plinie* likewise, speaking of this trenche,  
sayth, In the furthest part of the gulf of *Arabie*, is a porte called  
*Danco*, from whence they determined to bypne a nautigable  
trenche vnto the riuer of *Nilus*, whereas is the fyrste *Delta*. Be-  
tweene the saide sea and *Nilus*, there is a streict of lande of the  
length of lxii. miles. The fyrste that attempted this thing, was  
*Sesostre* king of Egypt, & after him *Darius* king of the *Persians*,  
whom *Ptolomeus* folowed, who made a trenche a hundred  
foote large, and thirtie foote deepe, being CCC. miles in  
length, vnto the lakes named *Amari*, and durst pceede no fur-  
ther for feare of inundation, hauing knowledge that the red sea  
was higher by thre cubites then all the countrey of Egypt.  
Other say that this was not the cause: but, that he doubted  
that yf he shoulde haue let the sea come any further, all the wa-  
ter of *Nilus* shoulde haue been thereby corrupted, whiche onely  
ministrerh drynke to all Egypt. But notwithstanding, all  
these thinges aforesayde, all this viage is frequented by lande  
from

King Sesostre.

King Psammi-  
ticus.  
King Darius.

King Ptolomeus.

The citie  
Heroum.

What Plinie  
wyrteth of the  
nautigable  
trenche.

The largenesse  
and length of  
the trenche.

and kingdomes lying that way.

263

from Egypt to the redde sea, in whiche passage are thre *Cau-  
sepes* or hygh wayes. The fyrst begynneth at the mouth of  
*Nilus*, named *Pelutio*: All whiche way is by the sandes, inso-  
muche that if there were not certayne hygh Reedes fyr in the  
earth, to shew the ryght way, the Causey could not be found, by  
reason the wynde euer couereth it with sand. The seconde Cau-  
sey is two myles from the mountayne *Cassius*: And this also in  
the ende of threescore myles, commeth vpon the way or Causey  
of *Pelusius*, inhabited with certayne *Arabians*, called *Antei*. The  
thyrde begynneth at *Gerro*, named *Adipson*: and passeth by the  
same *Arabians*, for the space of threescore miles, somewhat thort-  
ter, but full of rough mountaynes, and great scarcenesse of wa-  
ter. All these Causepes, leade the way to the citie of *Arfinoe*, built  
by *Ptolomeus Philadelphus* in the gulf *Carandra* by the redde  
sea. This *Ptolomeus* was the fyrst that searched all that part of  
the red sea, whiche is called *Trogloeditica*. Of this trench, descri-  
bed of *Strabo* and *Plinie*, there are seene certeyne tokens remay-  
nyng at this present, as they do affyrme whiche haue been at  
*Sues* beyonde the citie of *Alcayr*, otherwyle called *Babylon* in  
Egypt. But the merchautes that of later dayes traunple  
this viage by lande, ryde through the drye and barren desartes,  
on *Camels*, both by day and by nyght, directyng theyr waye by  
the starrs and compasse, as do mariners on the sea, and caryng  
with them water sufficient for many dayes iorneyes. The places  
of *Arabie*, and *India*, named of *Strabo* and *Plinie*, are the seife  
same where the *Portugales* practyse theyr trade at this day, as  
the maners and customes of the *Indians* doo yet declare: for  
euen at this present their women vse to burne them selues alpye  
with the dead bodyes of their hus bandes. Whiche thyng (as  
wyrteth *Strabo* in his xv. booke) they dyd in olde tyme by a lawe,  
for this consyderation, that sometyme being in loue with other,  
they forsooke or poysoned their hus bandes. And for as muche as  
accorpyng to this custome, the olde Poet *Propertius* (who ly-  
ued about an hundred yeres before the incarnation of *Christ*)  
hath in his booke made mention of the contention that was a-  
mong the *Indian* women, whiche of them shoulde be burned a-  
liue with theyr hus bandes, I haue thought good to subscribe his  
verses, whiche are these.

The viage by  
land from  
Egypt to the  
red sea.

What kynge  
*Ptolomeus*  
discouered.

Alcayre.

The viage to  
East India fre-  
quented in olde  
tyme.  
The customes  
and maners of  
the *Indians*.

Felix

Of the northeft frosty sea.

*Felix Fois lex funeris vna maritis,  
Quos aurora suis rubra colorat equis.  
Namque vbi mortifero iacta est fax vltima lecto,  
Vxorum fufis stat pia turba comis.  
Et certamen habent lethi, quæ vna fequatur  
Coniugium, pudor est non licuisse mori.  
Ardent victrices, & flammæ pectora præbent.  
Imponuntque suis ora perusta viris.*

The voyaget to  
Cathay.

Archarde  
Chaunceler.

A learned des-  
cender of dy-  
uers voyages.

The voyages  
of the Portu-  
gales.  
The worlde  
hangng in  
the ayre.  
What is kno-  
wen of the lo-  
wer hemisphe-  
re.  
The lande of  
Brafille.  
Peru.  
The charge and  
dutie of Chris-  
tian princes.  
Note.

As touchyng these viages both by sea and by lande to East India and Cathay, many thinges are wyrtten very largely by diuers autours, which I omit, because they parteyne not so much vnto vs as doth the viage attempted to Cathay by the north seas, and the coastes of Mosconia, discovered in our tyme by the viage of that excellent young man Rycharde Chaunceler, no lesse learned in al mathematicall sciences, then an expert pilotte, in the yeere of our Lorde .1554. As concernyng this viage, I haue thought good to declare by communication which was betweene the sayd learned man Galeatius Butrigarius, and that great philosopher and noble gentleman of Italie named Hieronimus Fracastor, as I fynd wyrtten in the Italian histories of navigations. As they were therefore conferrynge in matters of learnyng, and reasoning of the science of Cosmographie, the saide learned man, hanng in his hand an instrument of Astronomie, declared with a large oration howe much the worlde was bound to the kinges of Portugale, rehearsing the noble factes done by them in India, and what landes and Ilandes they had discovered, and howe by theyr navigations they made the whole worlde to hang in the ayre. He further declared of what partes of the ball, the earth remayned yet vndiscovered: and sayde, that of the landes of the inferior hemispherie, or halfe compasse of the ball toward the pole Antartike, there was nothyng knowen but that litle of the coaste of Brasilia, vnto the streight of Magellanus: also a part of Peru: also a litle about Affrike toward the cape of Bona Speranza. Also that he marueyled without measure, that this thyng was no better consydered of Christian Princes, to whom God hath deputed this charge, haunyng euer on theyr counsaile men of great learning, which may informe them of this thyng, being so marueplous and noble, wherby they may obtayne glorie

and kingdomes lying that way.

264

glory and fame by vertue, and be imputed among men as gods, by better demerites then euer were Hercules & great Alexander, who traueyled onely into India: and that by makynge the men of this our Hemispherie knowen to them of the other halfe compasse of the ball beneathe vs, they myght by the tytle of this enterpryse, without comparifon, farre excell all the noble factes that euer were doone by Iulius Cesar, or any other of the Roman Emperours. Whiche thyng they myght easily byng to passe, by assignyng colonies to inhabite diuers places of that Hemispherie, in lyke maner as dyd the Romanes in prouinces newly subdued: wherby they myght not onely attayne great riches, but also enlarge the Christian fayth and Empire, to the glory of God, and confusion of infidels. After this, he spake of the Ilande of Saint Laurence, called in olde tyme Madagasear, whiche is greater then the realme of Castile and Portugale, and reacheth from the .xii. degree toward the Pole Antartike, vnto the .xxvi. degree and a halfe, lying Northeast from the cape of Bona Speranza, and partly vnder the lyne of Tropicus Capricorni, beyng wel inhabited, and of temperate ayre, with abundance of all thynges necessary for the lyfe of man, and one of the moste excellent Ilandes that is founde this day in the worlde: And that neuerthelesse there is nothing knowen thereof, except onely a fewe small Hauens by the sea syde, as the lyke ignorance remayneth of the greatest part of the Ilandes of Taprobana, Giauia, the more and the lesse, and infinite other. Then begynnynge to speake of the partes of our Pole, he caused the booke of Plinie to be brought hym, where diligently ponderynge the .xxii. Chapter of the seconde booke, he founde where he rehearsed the historie of Cornelius Nepos, by these woordes: That in his tyme one Eudorus escappynge the handes of kynge Lathyro, departed from the gulfe of Arabie, and came by sea to the Ilande of Calese: Declaryng further, that whereas this narration was manye yeeres reputed for a fable, was nowe in our tyme, by the vertue of the Portugales, knowne to be true: And that lykewyse the same Cornelius Nepos reciteth, that at the tyme when Quintus Metellus Celer was Proconsul of Lieutenant for the Romanes in Fraunce, the kynge of Suecia gaue hym certayne Indians, whiche saylyng out of India for merchan-

Hercules and  
Alexander.

The colonies of  
the Romanes  
in regions sub-  
dued.

The great Is-  
lande of Sapient  
Laurence of  
Madagasear.

The Ilands of  
Taprobana or  
Giauia.  
Plinie.

The historie of  
Cornelius Ne-  
pos.

Shypps of In-  
dia diuyn into  
the sea of Ger-  
manie.



dies, were by tempest driven to the coastes of Germanie. When he had redde these wordes, he proceeded, saying that the same thyng myght be verified now in our tyme, if the princes which confyne vppon that sea would endeuoure theyr industry and diligence to bypnyng it to passe : and that there coulde not any nauigation be imagined so commodious and profitable to all Christendom as this way might be, if by this voyage should be found open to India, to come to the ryche countrey of Cathay, whiche was discovered nowe two hundred yeres since by Marcus Paulus. Then takyng the globe in his hande, he made demonstration that this voyage should be very shorte, in respect of that which the Portugales nowe folowe, and also of that which the Spanyardes may attempt, to the Ilandes of Molucca. He declared furthermore, that the citie of Lubyke, beyng ryche and of great power, and situate vppon the sea of Germanie, and also accustomed with continual nauigations to traueyle the sea of Norway and Gotthlande, and lykewyse the ryght noble kynge of Polonie, whose dominions, with his realme of Lituania, extend to the saide sea, should be apte to discover this secreete. But that aboue al other, the Duke of Moscouia, should performe the same, with greater commoditie, & more facilitie then any other Prince. And here stayng a while, he began to speake againe, and said. Nowe, forasmuch as we are come to this passe, me thinke it should seeme a great discourtesie if I should not shew you al that I knowe as touching this biage, whereof I greatly mused with my selfe many yeres by occasion of the wordes of Polinie. Whereas therfore, beyng a young man, I was in Germanie in the citie of Augusta, it so chaunced that in those dayes there came thither an ambassadour of the Duke of Moscouia, a man singularly learned both in the Greeke tongue & the Latine, and of good experience in worldly thynges, hauing been sent to dyuers places by the sayde Prince, and one of his counsaile. Of whose learnyng beyng aduertised, I sought his acquaintance, and talkyng with hym one daye of these Indians, driven by fortune to the coastes of Germanie, and of the biage that myght be discovered by the North sea to the Ilandes of spices, I perceiued that at the first he manuepled exceedingly, as at a thyng that he coulde neuer haue imagined. But resting a

An enterpryse  
wherby Princes  
may ob-  
taine true  
fame and  
glory.  
Cathay disco-  
uered by Mar-  
cus Paulus.

The citie of  
Lubyke.

The kynge of  
Polonie.

The Duke of  
Moscouia.

An ambassa-  
dour from the  
Duke of Mos-  
couia.

whyle

whyle in maner astonysht in his secreete phantasie, he tooke great pleasure therein, and sayde: forasmuch as the Portugales haue now compassed about all the South partes, supposed in old tyme to be inaccessible by reason of great heate, why should we not certaynely thinke that the lyke may be done about this parte of the North, without feare of colde, especially to men borne and brought up in that climate: Yet proceeding further, he sayde, that if his Prince and maister had men that would animate him to discover this vyage, there was no Prince in Christendome that myght doe it with more facilitie. Then calling for a Mappe, in which was the description of Moscouia, and the prouinces subiect to the same, he declared that from the citie of Moscouia or Polca, goyng toward the Northeast for the space of .ix. myles, they come to the ryuer of Volochda, and afterwarde by that, and folowyng the course thereof, to the citie of Vsting, so called, because the ryuer of Ing falleth into the ryuer of Succana, where they lose theyr owne names, and make the great ryuer Quina, and by that, leauyng on the ryght hande the citie of Colmogor, they sayle vnto the North Ocean. The which way, although it be a long tracte, as more then .800. myles, neuerthelesse he sayd that in sommer it myght commodiously be sayled. And that whereas it falleth into the sea, there are infinite woods of goodly trees, apte to make shyppes, and the place so conuenient for this purpose, that shypwrightes and other skilfull workemen for all thynges heereunto apperteynyng, may easily come out of Germanie: also, that the men which are vsed to traueyle the sea of Germanie about the coastes of Gotthlande, should be best and most apte to attempt this enterpryse, because they are indurate to abyde colde, hunger, and labour. He sayde furthermore, that in the court of his Prince, they haue much knowledge of the great Cam of Cathay, by reason of the continuall warres they haue with the Tartars, of whom the greatest parte gyue obedience to the sayd great Cam, as to theyr chiefe Emperour. He made also demonstration in the sayde carde by the Northeast, that being past the prouince of Permia, and the ryuer Pescora (which falleth into the North sea) & certeine mountaines named Catena Mundi, there is the entrance into the prouince of Obdora, whereas is Vecchiadoro, and the ryuer Obo, whiche also

The wordes  
of the Amba-  
sadour of  
Moscouia.

The way from  
Moscouia to  
the North O-  
cean & Cathay

Volochda,  
Vsting,  
Ing.  
Succana.  
Quina.  
Colmogor.  
The North  
Ocean.

Great woods.

Gotthlande.

The Moscos-  
uites haue  
knowledge of  
the great Cam  
of Cathay.  
Permia.  
Pescora.  
Catena mundi  
Obdora,  
Vecchiadoro,  
Obo.

Permia.

falleth

Of the Northeast frostie sea.

falleth into the sayde sea, and it is the furthest border of Thempyre of the Prince of Moscouia. The sayde ryuer hath his originall in a great lake called *Chetbai*, which is the fyrst habitation of the *Tartars*, that paye tribute to the great Cane. And from this lake for the space of two moneths vyage (as they were credibly informed by certayne *Tartares* taken in the warres) is the most noble citie of *Cambalu*, beyng one of the chiefest in the dominion of the great Cane, whom some call the great Cham. He also affirmed, that if shippes should be made on the coastes of the sayde sea, and sayle on the backe halfe of the coast thereof (which he knew by many relations made to his Prince, to reach infinitely towarde the Northeast) they should doubtlesse in following the same, easily discover that countrey. Unto these wordes he added, that although there were great difficultie in Moscouia, by reason that the way to the sayde sea is full of thicke woods and waters, whiche in the sommer make great maryshes, and impossible to be traueyled, as well for lacke of victuals, whiche can not there be founde, not for certayne dayes, but for the space of certayne monethes, the place beyng desolate without inhabitauntes: neuerthelesse he sayde, that if there were with his Prince, onely two Spanyardes or Portugales, to whom the charge of this viage should be committed, he no wayes doubted but that they would folowe it, and fynde it, forasmuch as with great ingeniousnesse and inestimable patience, these nations haue overcome much greater difficulties then are these, whiche are but litle in comparison to those that they haue ouerpassed, and doe ouerpasse in all their viages to India. He proceeded, declaring that not many yeeres since, there came to the courte of his Prince, an Ambassadour from pope Leo. named maister *Paulo Centurione*, a Genuese, under dyuers pretenses. But the principall occasion of his commyng, was, because hee had conceived great indignation and hatred agaynst the Portugales: And therefore intended to proue if he could open any vyage by land, whereby shippes myght be brought from India by the lande of *Tartaria*, or by the sea *Caspium* (otherwys called *Hircanum*) to *Moscouia*, and from thence to be brought in shippes by the ryuer *Riga*, which runnyng by the countrey of *Linonia*, falleth into the sea of Germanie: And that his Prince gaue eare vnto him, and caused

The lake Chetbai  
The Tartars.

The citie of  
Cambalu.

Note this  
create.

Difficultie  
travelling in  
Moscouia.

Commendation  
of the Spaniards  
and Portugales.

The historie of  
Paulus Centurione.  
This reader  
maye at large  
in the booke of  
Paulus Jos  
vius.  
Malice map  
doe more with  
some then  
veritie.  
The Caspian  
sea.  
Riga.

and kyngdomes lying that way.

266

caused the sayde vyage to be attempted by certayne noble men of Lorde, of the *Tartars* conuynng next vnto him. But the warres which were then betweene them, and the great desertes which they should of necessitie ouerpasse, made them leaue of theyr enterpryse: whiche if it had ben purposed by the coastes of this our North sea, it might haue been easily synghed. The sayde Ambassadour continued his narration, saying that no man ought to doubt of that sea, but that it may be sayled sixe monethes in the yeere, forasmuche as the dayes are then very long in that clime, and hot, by reason of continuall reuerberation of the beames of the Sunne, and shorthe nyghtes: And that this thing were as well woorthie to bee proued, as anye other nauigation, whereby many partes of the worlde, heretofore unknowen, haue been discovered and brought to ciuilitie. And heere making an ende of this talke, he sayde: Let vs now omitt this parte of Moscouia with his colde, and speake somewhat of that parte of the newe worlde, in whiche is the lande of *Egyptons*, called *Terra Britonum*, and *Baccalos*, or *Terra Baccalarum*, where in the yeere. 1534. and. 1535. *Iaques Cartier*, in two vyages made with three great French Gallies, founde the great and large countreys named *Canada*, *Ochelaga*, and *Sanguenai*: which reach from the xlv. to the .51. degree, beyng well inhabited, and pleasaunt countreys, and named by him *Noua Francia*. And here staying a while, and lyfing by his handes, he sayde, Oh what doe the Christian princes meane, that in suche landes discovered, they doe not assigne certayne colonies to inhabite the same, to bying those people (whom God hath so blessed with naturall giftes) to better ciuilitie, and to embzase our religion, then the whiche, nothing can bee more acceptable to God: The sayd regions also, beyng so fayre and fruitfull, with plentie of all sortes of corne, hearbes, frutes, wood, fyshes, beastes, metals, and ryuers of suche greatnesse that shippes may sayle more then. 180. myles vpon one of them, beyng on both sydes infinitely inhabited: And to cause the gouernours of the sayde colonies to searche whether that lande towarde the North, named *Terra de Laborador*, doe toyne as one firme lande with Norway: Or whether there bee any streight or open place of sea, as is most lyke there should be, forasmuch as it is to bee thought that the sayde Indians, dyuen by fortune

The Tartars  
of Lido,

Desartes.  
The vyage by  
the North sea.

The woorthie  
nesse of this  
vyage.

The vyages of  
the French  
men to the  
lande of *Baccalos*.

Pleasaunt  
countreys.  
New France.  
Apotrophe to  
the Christian  
Princes.

Great ryuers.

As they woorthie  
to be searche.

¶ In.ii.

about

The way to Cathay and the Ilandes of Molucca by the North-west. A notable enterpryse. The noble enterpryse of Antonie di Mendosa, viceroy of Mexico.

The discovery of the North-west partes.

Shippes sailing from Cathay by the North Hyperborean sea, to the coastes of the North-west parte of the lande of Sacraleos. Cathay.

The sea from newe Fraunce or Terra Brittonia to Cathay.

A notable booke.

about the coastes of Norway, came by that streight of sea, to the coastes of Germanie, and by the sayde streight to sayle north-west, to discover the landes and countreys of Cathay, and from thence to sayle to the Ilandes of Molucca, and these surely should bee enterpryses able to make men immortall. The which thing, that ryght woorthie Gentleman maister Antony di Mendosa considering, by the singular vertue and magnanimitie that is in him, attempted to put this thyng in practyse. For being viceroy of the countrey of Mexico (so named of the great citie Mexico, otherwyle called *Temistitan*, now called new Spayne, beyng in the .xx. degree aboute the Equinoctiall, and parte of the sayde firme lande) he sent certeyne of his Captaines by lande, and also a nauie of shippes by sea, to search this secreete. And I remember that when I was in Flaunders in the Emperours court, I saw his letter wyrtten in the yere. 1541. and dated from Mexico: wherein was declared howe toward the North-west, he had founde the kyngdome of *Sette Citia* (that is) seven Cities, whereas is that, called *Ciuola*, by the reuerende father *Marco da Niza*: and howe beyonde the sayde kyngdome yet further toward the North-west, Captayne *Francesco Vascos* of Coronado, hauing ouerpasse great desertes, came to the sea syde, where he founde certayne shippes which sayled by that sea with merchandies, and had in theyr banner bypon the pwoes of theyr shippes, certayne foules made of golde and siluer, which they of Mexico call *Alcatraz*, and that theyr mariners shewed by signes that they were xxx. dayes saylyng, in comyng to that hauen: whereby he understood that these shippes could be of none other countrey then of Cathay, forasmuch as it is situate on the contrary parte of the sayde lande discovered. The sayd maister Antonie wrote furthermore, that by the opinion of men well practised, there was discovered so great a space of that countrey unto the sayde sea, that it passed 950. leagues, whiche make 2850. myles. And doubtlesse if the Frenche men, in this theyr newe Fraunce, would haue passed by lande toward the sayd North-west and by North, they should also haue founde the sea whereby they myght haue sayled to Cathay. But aboute all thynges, this seemed unto me most woorthie of commendation, that the sayde maister Antonie wrote in his letter, that he had made a booke of al the naturall

and marueylous thinges whiche they founde in searchyng those countreys, with also the measures of landes, and altitudes of degrees: A worke doublelesse which sheweth a princely and magnificall mynd, whereby we may conceiue that if God had giuen him the charge of the other hemispherie, he would or now haue made it better knowne to vs. The which thing I suppose no man doth greatly esteeme at this tyme: beyng neuertheless the greatest and most gloriois enterpryse that may be imagined.

And heere makyng a certayne pause, and turnyng him selfe toward vs, hee sayde, Doe you not vnderstande to this purpose, howe to passe to India toward the North-west wynde, as dyd of late a citizen of Venece, so valiant a man, and so well practised in all thinges pertainyng to nauigations, and the science of Cosmographie, that at this present hee hath not his lyke in Spayne, insomuche that for his vertues hee is preferred aboute all other pylottes that sayle to the West Indies, who may not passe thither without his lycence, and is therefore called *Piloto Maggiore* (that is) the graunde pylote. And when we sayde that wee knewe him not, hee proceeded, sayng, that beyng certayne yeres in the citie of Siuile, and desirous to haue some knowledge of the nauigations of the Spanyardes, it was tolde him that there was in the citie a valiant man, a Veneccian borne, named *Sebastian Cabote*, who had the charge of those thinges, beyng an expert man in that science, and one that could make cardes for the sea with his owne hande: and that by this reporte, seekyng his acquaintance, hee founde him a very gentle person, who entercepted him friendly, and shewed him many thinges, and among other a large Mappe of the worlde, with certayne perticular nauigations, as well of the Portugales as of the Spanyardes: and that hee spake further vnto him, in this effecte. When my father departed from Venece, many yeres since, to dwell in Englande, to folowe the trade of merchandyses, hee tooke mee with him to the citie of London, whyle I was very young, yet hauing neuertheless some knowledge of letters of humanitie, and of the sphere. And when my father dyed, in that tyme when newes were brought that *Don Christopher Colon* Genuese, had discovered the coastes of India, wherof was great talke in all the court of kyng Henry the seventh,

A great and gloriois enterpryse.

Sebastian Cabote the grand pilot of the West Indies.

Commendation of Sebastian Cabote. Sebastian Cabote tolde me that he was borne in Wyndesore, that at .iii. yeres olde he was carryed with his father to Venice, and so returned againe into England with his father after certayne yeres: wherby he was thought to haue ben borne in Venice.

Am iii.

who

Of the Northeast frostie sea,

who then reigned: insomuche that all men with great admiration affirmed it to be a thing more diuine then humane, to sayle by the West into the East where spyes growe, by a way that was neuer knowen before. By which fame and report, there increased in my hartie a great flame of desyre to attempte some notable thyng. And vnderstandyng by reason of the sphere, that if I should sayle by the way of the Northwest wynde, I should by a shorter tracte come to India, I therevppon caused the kyng to bee aduertised of my diuise: who immediately commaunded two Carauels to be furnyshed with all thinges apperteynyng to the vyage, which was as farre as I remember, in the yere. 1496. in the begynnyng of sommer. Beginning therefore to sayle toward Northwest, not thinking to fynde any other lande then that of *Cathay*, and from thence to turne toward India. But after certayne dayes, I founde that the lande ranne toward the North, which was to me a great displeasure. Neuerthelesse, saylyng along by the coast, to see if I could fynde any gulfie that turned, I founde the lande styll continet to the 56. degree vnder our pole: And seeyng that there the coast turned toward the East, dyspaynyng to fynde the passage, I turned backe agayne, and sayled downe by the coast of that lande toward the Equinoctiall (euery with intent to fynde the sayde passage to India) and came to that parte of this firme lande whiche is now called *Florida*. Where, my victualles saylyng, I departed from thence, and returned into Englande, where I founde great tumultes among the people, and preparance for warres in Scotlande: by reason whereof, there was no more consideration had to this vyage. Wherevppon I went into Spayne, to the Catholyke kyng, and queene Elizabeth: who beyng aduertised what I had done, enterteyned mee, and at theyr charges furnyshed certayne shippes wherewith they caused mee to sayle to discover the coastes of Brasile, where I founde an exceedyng great and large ryuer, named at this present *Rio della Plata* (that is) the ryuer of siluer, into the whiche I sayled, and folowed it into the firme lande more then sixe hundred leagues, fyndyng it euery where very fayre and inhabited with infinite people, whiche with admiration came runnyng dayly to our shippes. Into this ryuer, runne somany other riuers, that it is in maner incredible.

After

The first vyage of Sebastian Cabote.

The lande of Florida.

The seconde vyage of Cabote to the land of Brasile, and Rio della Plata,

Cabote tolde me that in a region within this ryuer he founde 50. grapes of

and kyngdomes lying that way.

268

After this, I made many other vyages, whiche I now permyt. And wepyng olde, I gyue my selfe to rest from suche traueyles, bycause there are now many young and lusty pylotes and mariners of good experience, by whole forwardnesse I doe reioyce in the frutes of my labours, and rest with the charge of this office as you see. And this is as muche as I haue vnderstoode of maister *Sebastian Cabote*, as I haue geathered out of dyuers nauigations wrytten in the Italian tongue.

And whereas I haue before made mention howe *Moscovia* was in our tyme discovered by *Richard Chancellor* in his vyage toward *Cathay*, by the direction and information of the sayd maister *Sebastian*, who long before had this secreete in his mynde, I shall not neede heere to describe that vyage, forasmuche as the same is largely and faythfully wrytten in the Latine tongue by that learned young man *Clement Adams*, scholemaster to the *Queenes Henshemmen*, as he receyued it at the mouth of the sayd *Richard Chancellor*. Neuerthelesse, I haue thought good heere to speake somewhat of *Moscovia*, as I haue redde in the booke of *John Faber*, wrytten in the Latine tongue, to the ryght noble *Prince Ferdinando*, Archduke of *Austria*, and Infant of *Spaine*, of the maners and religion of the *Moscovites*, as he was partly instructed by the Ambassadors of the Duke of *Moscovia*, sent into *Spayne* to the Emperours maiestie, in the yere. 1525. He wryteth therefore as foloweth.

I thinke it first conuenient to speake somewhat of the name of this region whereby it is called at this day, and howe it was called in olde tyme. Conferryng therefore the moste auncient of the Greeke and Latine monumentes with the histories of later tyme, I perceyue it to bee a thyng whiche requirith no small iudgement of wytte and learnyng. For we see in howe shorte tyme the names of thinges are chaunged, as are also the maners of men. I fynde therefore that those people whom at this day wee commonly call *Moscovites*, were in tyme past (as wynteth *Plinie*) called *Roxolani*, whom neuerthelesse by chaungyng one letter, *Ptolome* in his epyghtable of Europe, calleth *Rosolanos*, as doeth also *Strabo*. They were also many yeres called *Rutheni*, and are that people whiche sometyme fought manfully agaynst the Captaynes of

wheate in September, and geathered thereof 50. thousande in December, as wryteth also *Francisco Lopez*.

The vyage to Moscovia.

The history of Moscovia.

The dyuers names of Moscovia.

Roxolani, Rosolani, Rutheni.

# Of the Northeast frostie sea,

The ryuer  
Mosca.

The ryuer Bo-  
rysthenes.

The myperour  
of Cathay.

The frosen sea.

Lacus Cro-  
nicus.  
Saturnus.

Amalteum.

The dominion  
of the Duke of  
Moscouia.

The cite of  
Moscouia.  
The chiefe ci-  
ties of Mos-  
couia.

of *Metbridates*, as *Strabo* writeth. They were called *Moscouites*, of the chiefe cite of all the prouince, named *Moscouia* or *Mosca*: or (as *Volaterane* sayeth) of the ryuer *Mosco*. They were sometime gouerned by Duke *John*, whose wyfe was *Helena*, of the lynage of *Themperours* of *Constantinople*, of the noble familie of the *Palcologi*. Beyond these *Roxolanos*, *Strabo* sayeth there is no lande inhabited. These *Ruthenians* therfore or *Moscouites*, are people of the Northeast parte of the worlde from vs, and are determined with the limites of the great ryuer *Boristhenes* of *Scythia*: on the one syde with the *Lituanians* and *Polonians*, and on the other syde with the *Tartars*, who ceasse not to bepe them with continuall warres and incursions: Especially the great Emperour *Cham* of *Cathay*, the chiefe Prince of the *Tartars*, resydent by the sea syde in *Taurico Chersoneso*, molesteth them with sore warres. They are towarde the North syde inclosed with the frosen sea, the lande of whose coastes beyng very large, perteyneth in maner all to the dominion of the Duke of *Moscouie*. The sea is it whiche the olde wyters call *Lacus Cronicus*, so named of the Greeke woord *Cronos*, which the Latines call *Saturnus*, whom they sayne to be an olde man, of complexion coide and slowe, and thereby name all suche thinges as are coide and slowe, *Cronica*, as by lyke reason they dyd this North sea, which beyng in maner euer frosen, is slow and cold, and in maner immoueable. And for lyke consideration (as sayth *Plinie*) *Deathens* nameth it in the *Scythian* tongue, *Amalteum*, which woord signifieth as much as congealed or frosen. But that I wander not farre from my purpose: The mypyre and dominion of the Duke of *Moscouie*, reacheth so farre, that it comprehendeth certayne partes of *Asia*, and also of *Europe*. The cite of *Moscouia* or *Mosco*, is counted twyse as byg as *Colonia Agrippina*, as they saythfully reporte which know both. Unto this they haue also an other, not vnequall in bygnesse, called *Fladimer*. Also *Blescouia*, *Nonogradia*, *Smolne*, and *Otifer*, all which, theyr Ambassadors affyrme to be of princely and magnificall buylpynges, and strongly defended with walles both of byicke and square stone. Of these, *Blescouia* is strongest, and enuironed with thre walles. Other whiche they haue innumerable, are not so famous as are these wherof this Duke of *Moscouie* and

and kyngdomes lying that way.

269

and Emperoure of *Russia* taketh thiscription of his title. For euen at this present, when so euer, eyther by his ambassadours or his letters, he doth signifie hym selfe to be Emperour of *Moscouie*, he is accustomed to vse this title, *Basilus* by the grace of God Emperour of al *Russia*, and great Duke of *Fladimer*, *Moscouie*, *Nonigrade*, *Blescouia*, *Smolne*, and *Otifer*. &c. And this is the tytle wherby the sayde ambassadours saluted your maiestie in the name of great *Basilus* when they began theyr oration. This prince of *Moscouie*, hath vnder hym prynces of many prouinces, and those of great power: Of the whiche, that olde whyte bearded man, whom this Emperour of the *Ruthians*, sent for his ambassadeure to *Themperours* maiestie into *Spaine*, is not one of the least. For euen he, when necessitie of warre requireth, is accustomed to make for his Emperour a bande of .xxx. thousand horsemen. But this is to their singular commendation, that they are so obedient to theyr prince in all thynges, that beyng sommoned by hym by neuer so meane an heralde, they obey incontinent, as if it were to god, thynging nothing more glorious then to die in y squarel of theyr prince. By reason of which obedience, they are able, in short tyme, to assemble an army of two or thre hundred thousand men against theyr enemies, eyther the *Tartares*, or the great *Cham*: And haue hereby obtayned great victories and triumphes, as well agaynst the *Turks*, as the *Tartars*, by the exceeding multitude of theyr horsemen, and continual experience in warres. At such time as *Themperour Maximilian* made a league with them, they kept warre against the kyng of *Polonie*. They vse not onely bowes and darteres, after the maner of the *Parthians*, but haue also the vse of gunnes as we haue. And to be bryefe, only the *Moscouites* may seeme that nation which hath not felte the commodities of peace: Insomuch that if theyr region were not strongly defended by the nature of the place, beyng impregnable, it had or now been oftentimes conquered. Theyr language agreeth much with the tongue of y *Bohemians*, *Croatians*, and *Sclauons*: so that the *Sclauon* both playnely vnderstande the *Moscouite*, although the *Moscouian* tongue be a more rude and hard phrased of speech. The historigraphers wyte that the *Sclauons* tongue tooke the name of the confusion whiche was in *Babel* in the tyme

The Duke of  
Moscouia &  
Emperour of  
Russia.  
The Duke of  
Moscouia his  
tytle.

Duke Basilus.

Their power.

Their obedien-  
ce to theyr  
prince.

Their warres  
& conquestes.

Summe.  
Only the *Mos-*  
*couites* haue  
not felt the  
commodities  
of peace.

Their lan-  
guage.

of



**Dalmatia.** of that stoute hunter *Nemroth*, of whom mention is made in the *Genesis*. But I can not enough marueyle at this thyng, that whereas betwene *Dalmatia* (nowe called *Sclauonia*) and *Moscouia*, both the *Pannonies* are situate, yet this notwithstanding, the *Hungarians* tongue nothyng agreeth with the *Moscouites*. Whereby we may coniecture that these nations were sometymes diuided by legions, and that they came out of *Dalmatia* thither: whiche thyng also *Volateranus* affirmeth, saying that the language of the *Ruthenians* (whiche are the *Moscouites*) is *Semidalmatica* (that is, halfe *Sclauone*) Howe so euer it be, this is certaine, that the *Bohemians*, *Croatians*, *Sclauons*, & *Moscouites*, agree in language, as we perceiued by thurinterpretours whiche your maiestie had then in your court. For whereas the sayd interpretours were borne among the *Croatians* & *Sclauons*, and none of them had euer been in *Moscouia*, or before that tyme had any conuersation with them, yet dyd they well vnderstande the ambassadours wordes. There are in *Moscouia*, wooddes of exceedyng byggenesse, in the whiche blacke woolues and whyte beares are hunted. The cause whereof may bee the extreme colde of the North, whiche doth greatly alter the complexions of beastes, and is the mother of whitenesse, as the *Philosophers* affirme. They haue also great plentie of Bees, wherby they haue such abundaunce of honny and waxe, that it is with them of small price. When the commoditie of theyr countrey is neglected by reason of long warres, their chiefe aduantage wherby they haue all thynges necessarie toward the bypyng, is the gaynes whiche they haue by theyr ryche furies, as *Sables*, *Barternes*, *Luzernes*, most white *Armins*, and such other, whiche they sell to merchauntes of diuers countreys. They bye and sell with simple sayde of wordes, exchaungyng ware for ware, without any curious bondes or cautels. And albeit they haue the vse of both golde and syluer mynes, yet do they for the moste part exchaunge theyr furies for frutes, and other thyngs necessarie to mainteine their life. There are also some people vnder the dominion of this Emperour, whiche haue neither wyne nor wheate, but lyue only by fleshe and mylke, as do the wilde *Tartars* theyr borderers, whiche dwell in wodes by the coastes of the frozen sea. These people are bytytche, and

and lyue in maner lyke wilde beastes. But they of the cite of *Mosca* and *Novigrade*, and other cities, are ciuile people, and agree with vs in eatyng of fysh and fleshe, although theyr maner of coquerie is in many thynges differyng from ours. *Volateranus* wyrteth that the *Ruthenians* vse money vncoynd. And enquiryng further, I was informed that the money of *Hungary* is much currant with them. But this is cheefly to be considered, that they embrace the *Christian* faith, whiche they affirme to haue been preached to them fyrst by *Sainct Andrew* the Apostle, and brother to *Simon Peter*. Suche doctrine also as vnder *Constantine* the great, in the yere. CCC. xlii. was concluded in the fyrst generall counsaile holden in the cite of *Nicene* in *Bythynia*, and there determined by. CCC. xlii. Bysshops, and also suche as hath been wyrtten and taught by the Greeke Doctors *Basilus Magnus* and *Chrysostomus*, they beleue to be so holy, fyne, and pure, that they thynke it no more lawfull one heare to transgresse or go backe from the same, then from the Gospel of *Christ*. For theyr constancie and modestie is suche, that no man dare call those thynges into question whiche haue once been decided by holy fathers in theyr general counsailes. They do therfore with a more constant mynde perseuer in theyr first faith, whiche they receiued of *Sainct Andrew* thapostle, and his successours and holy fathers; then do many of vs, being diuided into scismes and sectes, whiche thing neuer chaunceth among them. But if any difficultie chaunce to rise as touching the faith or custome of religion, all is referred to the Archebysshop and other byshops, as to be defined by theyr iudgement: not permittyng any iudgement to the inconstant and ignorant people. Their Archebysshop is resident in the cite of *Mosca*, where also the Emperour keepeth his court. They haue likewise diuers other Bysshops: as one in *Novigradia*, where also *Iodorus* was Bysshop vnder pope *Eugebius*. They haue an other in *Roscina*, another in *Sustali*, another in *Oliferi*, also in *Smolna*, in *Resan*, in *Colmun*, and in *Volub*, all whiche haue theyr Dioces. They acknowledge theyr Archebysshop as the cheefe. Before the patriarke of *Constantinople* was oppressed by the tyranny of the *Turkes*, this Archebysshop recognised hym as his superiour: Insomuche that this Duke of *Moscouia*, and Empe-

Ciuile people in cities.

Theyr money.

They embrace the Christian faith which they receiued of the Apostles.

The counsaile of Nicene. Basilus Magnus. Chrysostomus.

Their constancie in theyr religion.

The byshops define controuersies in religion.

There byshops.

The Archebysshop. The patriarke of constantinople.

rous

perour of *Russia*, not vnmyndful hereof, but a diligent obseruer of his accustomed religion, doth at this daye peerelely sende a certayne stypend, in maner of almes, to the Patriarche of *Constantinople*, that he may with moze quiet mynde looke for the ende of this his *Egyptian* seruitude, vntyl it shal please almighty God to restore hym to his forner churche and auctoritie. For he iudgeth it much impietie, if he shoulde nowe forsake hym whose predecessors haue ruled and gouerned so many churches, and of whom the fayth and religion of so many regions and prouinces haue depended.

**Theyr religion.** But to speake briesly of theyr religion, they agree in many thynges with vs, and in some thynges folow the *Greekes*. They haue *Munkes* and religious men. Not farre from the citie of *Mosca*, they haue a great Monasterie, in the whiche are three hundred *Munkes*, lypung vnder the rule of *Basilus Magnus*, in the which is also the sepulchre of *S. Sergius* the Abbot. They obserue theyr vowe of chastitie, whiche none may breake that haue once professed. Yet such as haue married *Virgins* of good fame, may be admitted to thorder of priesthood, but may neuer be a *Munke*. The priestes and Bishops whiche are admitted to orders vnmarried, may neuer after be married: nor yet such as haue wiues, marry agayne when they are dead, but liue in perpetual chastitie. Such as commit adulterie or fornication, are greuoufly punished by the Bishops, and deprived of the benefices. They celebrate masse after the maner of the *Greekes*, whiche differeth from ours in diuers thyngs, as in fermented bread, after the maner of the *Greekes*. They put in the Chalice as much water as red wine, which water they vse to heate, because (not without a great mysterie) there issued forth of the syde of our Lord, both blood and water, which we ought by good reason to thynke was not without heat: for els shoulde it scarcely haue been iudged for a miracle. In fine, they affirme that al theyr customes and rites are accordyng to the institutions of the primitive church, and the doctrine of *Basilus Magnus*, and *Chrysostomus*. In this thyng they differ greatly from vs, that they minister the communion to young chyldren of three yeeres of age, which they do with fermented bread dypt in a sponefull of wine, and geue it to them for the bodye and blood of *Christ*.

A brieft

A brieft description of *Moscouia*, after the later writers, as *Sebastian Munster*, and *Iacobus Gastaldus*.



The prouince of *Moscouia*, is so named of the ryuer *Mosco*, whiche passeth by the metropolitane citie of *Moscouia*, called *Mosca* by the name of the ryuer *Mosco*. This prouince was called of the olde wyrters, *Sarmatia Asiatica*. The borderers or confines to the *Moscouians* on the one syde towarde the East, are the *Tartars*, called *Nogai*, and the *Scianbanians*, with the *Zagatians*. Towarde the West, the prouinces of *Linonia* and *Lituania*. Towarde the South, the ryuer of *Tanais*, and the people confining with the riuer of *Volga*, called of the olde wyrters *Rha*. And towarde the North, the Ocean sea, called the *Scythian* sea, and the region of *Lapponia*. *Moscouia* is in maner all playne, and full of maryshes, wooddes, and many very great ryuers, whereof the ryuer of *Volga* is the principall. Some call this *Ledil*, as the olde authours named it *Rha*. It begynneth at the great lake called *Lacus Albus* (that is) the white lake, and runneth into the sea of *Bachan*, named of the auncient wyrters, the sea *Caspium* or *Hircanum*. Under the dominion of *Moscouia*, are certayne regions and *Duke-domes*: as *Alba Russia* (that is) whyte *Russia*. Also *Colmogora*, *Plescouia*, *Basrida*, *Nouogradia*, with also manie places of the *Tartars*, whiche are subiecte to the Duke of *Moscouia*. The chiefe cities of *Moscouia*, are *Mosca*, *Plescouia*, *Nouogradia*, *Colmogora*, *Otogeria*, *Viatra*, *Smolenser*, *Percaflauia*, *Cologna*, *Volodemaria*, *Roslauia*, and *Cassam*. The people of *Moscouia* are *Christians*, and haue great abundaunce of hony and waxe: also ryche furies, as *Sables*, *Harternes*, *Foynes*, and dyuers other. All the *Tartars* whiche inhabite towarde the East beyonde the ryuer of *Volga*, haue no dwelling places, nor yet cities or Castles, but cary about with them certayne carres or wagens covered with beastes hydes, vnder the whiche they rest, as we do in our houses.

Theyr

**Hordas.** They remoue togeather in great compaynes, whiche they call *Hordas*. They are warlyke people, and good horsemen, and are all *Macometistes*.

**The bygnes of the citie of Moscouia.** *Sebastian Munster* in his booke of *Uniuerfall Cosmographie*, wyrteth that the citie of *Mosca* or *Moscouia* conteyneth in circuite .xliii. myles, and that it is twyse as bygge as the citie of *Praga* in *Bohemie*. Of the countrey of *Moscouia*, besyde other prouinces subiecte to the same, he wyrteth thus: It extendeth in largenesse foure hundred myles, and is ryche in syluer. It is lawfull for no man to go out of the realme, or come in, without the Dukes letters. It is playne without mountaynes, and full of wooddes and marishes. The beastes there, by reason of the colde, are lesse then in other countreys more southwarde. In the midst of the citie of *Mosca*, beyng situate in a playne, there is a Castell with .xvii. towres, and thre bulwarkes, so strong & fayne, that the lyke are scarcely seene in any other place. There are also in the Castell .xvi. churches, and three very large courtes, in the whiche the noble men of the court haue theyr lodgynges. The Dukes pallaice is buylded after the maner of the Italian buyldyng, and very fayne, but not great. Theyr drynke is mede and beere, as is the maner of the most part of the people that inhabite the North partes of the woorld. They are exceedingly geuen to dronkenesse. Yet (as some saye) the princes of the lande are prohibite on payne of death to absteyne from suche strong drynkes as are of force to inebriate, except at certayne times when licence is graunted them, as twise or thise in the peere. They plowe the ground with horses, and plowes of wood. Theyr corne and other grayne, by reason of long colde, do seldome waxe ripe on the ground, by reason wherof they are sometimes inforced to ripe & drye them in their stooues and hot houses, and then grynd them. They lacke wyne and oyle. *Moscouia* is extended vnto *Iurham* and *Corelia* which are in *Scythia*. The famous ryuer of *Tanais*, the *Moscouites* call *Don*, hauyng his springes and originall in *Moscouia* in the Dukedome of *Rezense*. It ryseth out of a ground that is playne, baren, muddy, full of marishes and wooddes. And where it procedeth toward the East to the mountaynes of *Scythia* and *Tartarie*, it bendeth to the south: and commyng to the marishes of *Meotis*.

**Syluer.** The region of *Moscouia*.

**Beastes.**

**A fayne and stronge castell in the citie of Mosca.**

**The Dukes pallaice.** Theyr drynke.

**They are geuen to dronkenesse.**

**Corne and grapne.**

**Stones.**

**The famous ryuer of Tanais.**

and kingdomes lying that way.

it falleth into them. The riuer of *Volga* (sometyme called *Rha*, and now called of the *Tartars* *Edell*) runneth towards the North certaine myles, to whom is ioyned the riuer *Occa* or *Ocha*, flowyng out of *Moscouia*, and then bendyng into the South, and encreased with many other riuers, falleth into the sea *Euxinum*, which diuideth *Europe* and *Asia*.

The wood or forest called *Hircania silua*, occupieth a small portion of *Moscouia*: Yet is it somewhere inhabited, and by the long labour of men, made thynner and barer of trees. In that part that lieth toward *Prusia*, is a kinde of great & fierce Bulles, called *Vri* or *Bilontes*, as writeth *Paulus Iouius*. There are also *Alces*, much lyke vnto *Hartes*, with long snowtes of flesh, and long legges without any bowyng of theyr hox or pasternes. These beastes the *Moscouites* call *Lozzi*, and the *Almaines*, *Heleues*. The iorney that is betwene *Vlna* of *Lituania* by *Smolence* to *Mosca*, is trauallyd in winter on sleades, by the snow congeled by long frost, and made very slipperie and compact lyke Ice, by reason of much wearyng and treadyng, by meanes wherof this viage is perfourmed with incredible celeritie. But in the Sommer, the playne countreys can not be overcome without difficult labour: For when the snow beginneth to be disolued by contynuall heate, it causeth marishes and quampyes inextricable and dangerous both for horse and man, were it not for certaine Causeys made of timber with in maner infinite labour. The region of *Moscouia* (as I haue said) beareth neither Vines nor Oliue trees, nor yet any other trees that beare any apples or fruites of very pleasant and sweete sauour or tast, except Cherry trees, forasmuch as al tender fruites and trees, are burnt of the cold blasts of the North wynde. Yet do the fieldes beare al kyndes of corne, as wheate, and the grayne called *Siligo*, whereof the fynest kynde of breade is made: also *Oyle*, and *Panycke*, whiche the *Italians* call *Melica*: Lykewyse al kyndes of pulse, as *Beanes*, *Peason*, *Tares*, and such other. But theyr cheefe haruest consisteth of *Honye* and *Waxe*, forasmuch as the whole region is replenished with fruitfull Bees, which make most sweete Hony, not in the husband mens hyues, but euen in hollow trees. And hereby commeth it to passe, that both in the wooddes and shadowed launes, are seene many swarmes of Bees hangyng on the

The marishes of *Meotis*. *Volga*. *Ocha*.

The sea *Euxinum*.

The forest of *Hircania*.

*Vri*. *Alces*.

They trauallyd in winter on sleades.

Causeys of timber.

Trees and fruites.

Corne and grapnes.

Hony in woodes and trees.

Of the northeft frosty sea.

the bowes of trees, so that it shall not be necessarie to call them together, or charme them with the sound of Balsens. There are oftentimes founde great masses of Honey combes, conserued in trees of the olde Honey forsaken of bees, forasmuche as the husbandmen can not seeke euery tree in so great and large woods: Insomuche that in the stockes or bodie of exceedyng great and hollowe trees, are sometymes founde great pooles or lakes of Honey. Demetrius thamballadour of the Duke of Moscouia, whom he sent to the Bishop of Rome not many yeeres since, made relation that a husbandman of the countrey, not farre from the place where he remayned, seeking in the woods for Honey, descended into a great hollowe tree full of Honey, into the which he slypt up to the brest, and lyued there only with Honey for the space of two dayes, calling in vaine for helpe in that desart of woodds: and that in fine dyspaynyng of helpe, he escaped by a marueylous chaunce, beyng drawen out by a great Beare that descended into the tree, with her lopnes downewarde after the maner of men. For when the man (as present necessitie and oportunitie serued) perceyued the Beare to be within his reach, he suddenly clasped her about the lopnes with his armes, and with a terrible crye prouoked the beast to enforce her strength to leape out of the tree, and therewith to drawe hym out, as it chaunced in deede. These regions abounde with Beares, whiche euerywhere seeke both Honey and Bees, not only herewith to fylle theyr bellies, but also to helpe theyr syght: For theyr eyes are oftentimes dulled, and theyr mouthes wounded of the Bees: both which greeses are ealed by eatyng of Honey. They haue weakest heades, as Lions haue strongest: Insomuche that when (beyng thereto enforced) they cast them selues downe headlong from any rockes, they couer theyr heades with theyr feete, and lye for a tyme astonysed, and halfe deade with knockes. They walke sometymes on two feete, and spyle trees, backward. Sometyme also they invade Bulles, and so hang on them with all theyr feete, that they weeye them with weight. The Beare (as sayeth Plinie) bringeth forth her byrth the thirtie day, and often tymes two. Theyr birth is a certayne white masse of flesh without fourme, and litle bigger then a moule, without eyes, and without heare, with only the Naples or clawes

Lakes or pooles of Honey.

A man almost drowned in Honey.

A merueylous chaunce.

Beares feede of Honey & bees.

Beares invade Bulles.

The Beares byrth.

and kyngdomes lying that way.

273

clawes commyng forth: but the damme with continuall lye-kyng, by litle and litle figureth the informe byrth. When she entred into the denne which she hath chosen, she creepeth thither with her belly upward, least the place should be founde by the steppes of her feete. And beyng there deliuered of her byrth, remaineth in the same place for the space of xiiii. dayes, immouable as wyteyth Aristotle. They lyue without meat, xl. dayes, and for that tyme susteyne them selues only by lye-kyng and sucking theyr ryght foote. At the length chauncing to finde meate, they fylle them selues so full, that they remedy that surfeite by vomyte, which they prouoke by eatyng of Antes. Theyr byrth is oppressed with so heauy a sleepe for the space of xiiii. dayes, that it can not be raysed eyther with prickyng or woundes, and in the meane tyme growe exceedyng fatte. After fourtiene dayes they wake from sleepe, and begyn to lycke and sucke the soles of theyr fore feete, and lyue thereby for a space: Nor yet is it apparent that they lyue by any other meate, vntyll the spring tyme of the yeere. At whiche tyme begynnyng to runne abroad, they feede of the tender buddes and young sprygges or branches of trees, and other hearbes correspondent to theyr types.

The Beares denne.

Beares lyue without meate xl. dayes.

The sleape of Beares.

Before five hundred yeeres, the Moscouites honoured the Goddesses of the Gentyles: And then fyrst receyued the Christian fayth when the Bishoppes of Grecia began to discent from the church of the Latines: and therefore receyued the rites of the Greckes. They minister the sacrament with fermented breade vnder both kyndes: And thinke that the soules of dead men are not helped with the suffragies of priestes, nor yet by the deuotion of theyr friends or kynfolke: Also that the place of Purgatorie is a fable. In the tyme of the diuine seruice, the hystorie of the myracles of Christ, and the Epistles of saint Paule are rehearsed out of the Pulpitte. Beyond Moscouia, are many people which they call Scythians, and are partly subiecte to the Prince of Moscouia. These are they which Duke Iuan subdued, as are the people of Term, Bas Kir, Cezyremisfa, Iubra, Corela, and Permska. These people were Idolatours before the Duke compelled them to baptisme, & appointed a bishop ouer them named Steuen, whom the Barbarians after the

The religion of the Moscouites.

The Scythians subiect to the Duke of Moscouia.

Ani.

departure

departure of the Duke, flayed alpye, and flue. But the Duke retournyng shortly after, afflicted them sore, and assigned them a newe byshop.

It is here also to be noted, that the olde Cosmographers sayned, that in these regions toward the North pole, there should be certayne great mountaynes, which they called *Ripheos* and *Hyperboreos*, which neuerthelesse are not founde in nature. It is also a fable, that the ryuers of *Tanais* & *Volham* doe spring out of hygh mountaynes, whereas it is apparent that both these ryuers, and many other, haue theyr originall in the playnes.

Next to *Doscouia*, is the fruitfull region of *Colmogora*, through the whiche runneth the ryuer of *Diuidna*, beyng the greatest that is knowen in the North partes of the worlde. This ryuer increaseth at certayne tymes of the yeere, as doeth the ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypt, ouerfloweth the fieldes rounde about, and with aboundaunce of fatte moysture, resisteth the coldnesse of the ayre. Wheate sowne in the grounde, groweth aboundantly without ploughyng: and fearyng the newe iniurie of the proude ryuer, springeth, groweth, and rypeth, with wonderfull celeritie of hastyng nature.

Into the ryuer of *Diuidna* runneth the ryuer of *Iuga*: And in the very angle or corner where they meete, is a famous marte towne named *Vsinga*, beyng a hundred and fytie myles distant from the chiefe citie of *Dosca*. To this marte towne, from the higher countreys, are sent the precious fures of *Parternes*, *Sables*, *Moolues*, & such other, which are exchanged for dyuers other kyndes of wares & marchandies. Whitherto *Munsterus*.

And forasmuche as many doe marueyle that such plenty of hony should bee in so coole a countrey, I haue thought good to declare the reason and naturall cause hereof. It is therefore to be considered, that lyke as spices, gums, and odoriferous fruites are engendred in hotte regions, by continuall heate burning all the whole yeere, without impression of the mortifying qualitie of colde, whereby all thynges are contrayned as they are dilated by heate, euen so in colde and moyst regions (whose moysture is thynner and more waterye then in hot regions) are floures engendred more aboundantly, as caused by impression of lesse and sower heate, woorkyng in thynne matter of

wateryshe

wateryshe moysture, lesse concocted then the matter of gummes and spyes, and other vnicuous fruites and trees growyng in hot regions. For although (as *Munster* sayeth here before) the region of *Doscouia* beareth neyther vine or Oliues, or any other fruites of sweete sauour, by reason of the coldnesse thereof, neuerthelesse, forasmuch as floures (whereof hony is chiefly gathered) may in summer season growe abundantly in the playnes, many trees, & woodes, not onely on the ground, but also on trees in colde regions, it is agreeable to good reason, that great plenty of hony should be in suche regions as abounde with floures, which are brought forth with the fyrst degree of heate, and fyrst approach of the sunne, as appeareth in the spring tyme, not only by the springyng of floures in fieldes and Gardeynes, but also of blossomes of trees springyng before the leaues or fruites, as the lyghter and thynner matter fyrst drawne out with the lowest and least degree of heate: as the lyke is seene in the arte of distilling, whereby all thynne and lyght moystures are lyfted up by the fyrst degree of the fyre: and the heauyest and thickest moystures are drawne out with more vehement fyre. As we may therefore in this case compare the generation of floures to the heat of May, the generation of gummes to the heat of June, and spyes to the heate of July: Euen so, in suche colde regions whose summer agreeth rather with the temperate heate & moysture of May, then with the extreme heate of the other monethes, that heate is more apte to bring forth aboundance of floures, as thynges caused by moderate heate, as playnly appeareth by their tast and sauour, in which is no sharpe qualitie of heate, eyther byting the tongue, or offendyng the head, as is in spices, gums, and fruites of hotte regions. And as in colde and playne regions, moderate heate, with aboundance of moisture, are causes of the generation of floures (as I haue sayde) so lykwys the length of the dayes and shortnesse and warminesse of the nyghtes in summer season, in such colde regions, is a great helpe hereunto. *Cardanus* writeth in his booke *De Plantis*, that brymble & fearne growe not but in colde regions, as doeth wheate in temperate regions: and that spices and hot seedes, can not growe in colde regions, forasmuch as beyng of thynne substance, they should soone bee mortified & extinct by excessive colde. For (as he sayeth) nothing

can.

Floures of trees.

Blossomes of trees.

An example of the degrees of heate.

The generation of floures by moderate heate.

Long dayes and short nyghtes.

Brymble and fearne.

Spices.

It was then an opinion that all ryuers spring out of mountaynes. The fruitfull region of *Colmogora*. The great ryuer *Diuidna*.

Wheate without ploughing.

The ryuer of *Iuga*. *Vsinga*.

Fures.

The naturall cause of much hony in colde regions. Gummes and spyes in hotte countreys.

Floures in colde regions.



can concocte, rype, and attenuate the substance of fruites without the helpe of ayre, agreeable to the natures of such thinges as are brought forth in the same, although it may doe this in rootes. But in maner all floures are of sweete sauour, forasmuch as the moisture that is in them, being thynne and but litle, is by meane heate soone and easily concocte or made rype. Suche also as are soone rype, are soone rotten, accordyng to the prouerbe.

The sauour of floures.

What Plinie wyrteth of honp.

Plinie, although in the .xi. booke of his naturall hystorie. Cap. viii. he wyrteth that honp is geathered of the floures of all trees and settes or plantes, except foxell and the hearbe called *Chenopode* (which some call Goose foote) yet he affirmeth that it descendeth from the ayre: for in the .xii. Chapter of the same booke, he wyrteth thus.

Sirius is o<sup>r</sup> therwyle called Canicula, that is, the Dogge, of whom the canicular dayes haue thep<sup>r</sup> name.

This cometh from the ayre at the rysing of certayne starres, and especially at the rysing of *Sirius*, and not before the rysing of *Vergilie* (which are the seven starres called *Pleades*) in the spryng of the day. For then at the moonyng spryng, the leaues of trees are founde moist with a fatte dewe: Inso- muche that suche as haue been abroad under the firmament at that tyme, haue thep<sup>r</sup> apparell annoynted with lyquour, and the heare of thep<sup>r</sup> head clamyng. And whether this bee the swette of heauen, or as it were a certayne spettyll of the starres, eyther the iuile of the ayre purgynge it selfe, I woulde it were pure, liquide, & simple of his owne nature, as it first falleth from aboue. But now descendyng so farre, and infected, not only with suche vncleane vapours and exhalations, as it meeteth with by the way, but afterwarde also corrupted by the leaues of trees, hearbes, and floures of sundry tastes and qualities, and lykwyle as well in stomackes of the bees (for they vomite it at their mouthes) as also by long reseruyng the same in Hines, it neuerthelesse reteyneth a great partie of the heavenly nature &c. Agayne in the .xiii. Chapter of the same booke he wyrteth, that in certayne regions toward the North, as in some places of Germanie, honp is founde in suche quantitie, that there haue been seene honp combs of eyght foote long, and blacke in the hollow parte. By the which wordes of Plinie, and by the principles of naturall philosophie, it doeth appeare that aboundaunce of honp should chiefly be engendred in suche regions, where the heate of sommer

Howe honp is corrupted.

Honp of great quantitie in North regions

Sommer is temperate and continuall, as well by nyght as by day, as it is not in hot regions, where the nyghtes be long and colde, as is declared in the Decades. For lyke as suche thinges as are syned by continuall heate, moynyng, and circulation, are hyndered by refrigeration or colde (as appeareth in the arte of kyllyng and hatchyng of egges) euen so by the action of temperate and continuall heate, without interposition of contrarie and mortify- ing qualite, crude thinges are in shorte tyme made rype, sower made sweete, thicke made thinne, heauie made lyght, grosse made subtile, harde made softe, dead made lyuyng, and in fine, bodyes made spirites, as manifestly appeareth in the marue- lous woozke of dygestion of lyuyng beastes, whereby the finest parte of thep<sup>r</sup> nourishment is turned into blood, and the finest of that blood conuerted into spirites, as the lyke is also scene in the nourishment of trees, plantes, and hearbes, & all other thinges that growe on the grounde, all which are moued, digested, sub- tiliate, attenuate, ryped, and made sweete by the action of this continuall heate whereof I haue spoken. To conclude therefore, if honp be eyther the swette of the starres, or the iuile of the ayre purgynge it selfe (as Plinie wyrteth) or otherwyle engendred of subtile and fine vapours rysing from the earth, and concocte or digested in the ayre by the sayde continuall and moderate heate, it may seeme by good reason that the same should be engendred in sommer season more abundantly in colde regions then in hot, for the causes aforesayde. And that it may by aucthoritie and rea- son more manifestly appeare, both that the heate of sommer in colde regions is continuall (as I haue sayde) and also that the colde in wynter is not there so intollerable to inhabitants of those regions as other doe thynke, I haue thought good for the better declaration hereof, to adde hereunto what I haue geathe- red out of the booke of *Ziglerus*, wyrtten of the North regi- ons.

Hot nyghtes in colde regions. A similitude.

Natural heat doeth subtile and digest all thinges.

Subtile vapours digested by heate.

Colde regions.

An.iii.

Of

## Of the Northeast frostie sea;

Of the North regions, and of the moderate and continual heate in colde regions, as well in the nyght as in the day in sommer season: Also howe thole regions are habitable to thinhabitauntes of the same, contrary to the opinion of the olde wryters.

Ziglerus.



If this matter, Ziglerus in his booke of the North regions in the description of Scandia, wryteth as foloweth.

We will intreate of this matter, not as putting the same in question as did the olde wryters, nor geathering iudgement deducted of reasons in way of argument, forasmuch as we are already more certayne by hystorie that these cold regions are inhabited. We will first therfore shew by natural reason, and by consideration of the sphere, declare howe by the helpe of man and arte, colde regions are inhabited without damage or destruction of luyng beastes: And will first speake of the qualitie of sommer, declaring howe it is there augmented. Yet intend I not to comprehend all that may be sayde in this matter, but only rehearse suche reasons and similitudes as are most apparent and easie to be vnderstoode.

The qualitie of sommer in colde regions.

The course of the Sunne.

Vapours.

Short and warme nyghts

Gothlande.

In such regions therfore, as are extended from the burnt lyne or Equinoctiall toward the North, as much as the sunne ryleth higher ouer them, so much are they the more burnt with heat, as Affrica, bycause it ryleth highest ouer them, as they are nearest to the Equinoctiall: & tarryng with them so much the shorter tyme, causeth shorter dayes, with longer & colder nyghtes, to restore the damage of the day past, by reason of the moisture consumed by vapour. But in such regions ouer the which the sun ryleth lower (as in Sarmatia) it remaineth there the longer in the day, and causeth so much the shorter and warmer nyghtes, as recepyng warme vapours of the day past, which vapours helpe the woork of the day. I speake as I haue founde by experience, sayth Ptolemy: For I haue felte the sommer nyghtes scarcely tollerable for heate in Gothlande, whereas I felte them colde in Rome. This benefite of the increafe of the day doeth augment so much the more in colde regions, as they are nearer the poles: and ceaseth

and kyngdomes ly'ng that way.

276

ceaseth not vntyll it come directly ouer the center or poynte of the ares or arceltree of the worlde, where the sunne beyng, at the hyghest in sommer, is eleuate about. xxiii. degrees: In which regions, one continuall day consisteth of. vi. monethes from the luyng tyme, by the standyng of the sunne (called Solstitium) in the signe of Cancer, to Autumne. The Sunne therfore, without any offence of the nyght, gyueh his influence vpon those landes with heate that neuer ceaseth duryng that tyme, which maketh to the great increafe of sommer, by reason of continuance. We haue now therfore thought good to geather, by a certayne coniecture, howe greatly we thynke the sommer to be increased heereby.

One day of. vi. monethes.

Howe the sommer is increased in colde regions.

We haue before declared howe hygh the sunne is eleuate ouer the regions that are vnder the poles at the staye of the sunne: And so many partes is it eleuate in Rome at the staye of the sunne in wynter (that is) at the shortest day in the yeere. But here, in the myd wynter, the sunne at noonetyde is beneficiall, and byngeth forth floures, Roses, and Iell floures. I haue geathered some in winter in the moneth of December, not procured at home by humane arte, but growyng in open Gardens in maner in euery bed vnder the bare heauen, brought forth only by the sunne. But this benignitie of the sunne, continueth not past fyue houres in the naturall day, forasmuch as the operation thereof is extinct by the coldenesse of the nyght folowynge. But if this benefite myght be receyued without hinderaunce of the nyght, as it is vnder the poles, and so continue many monethes in hot regions vnto wynter, it should surely bring forth many wonderful thinges, if nature sayled not. And by this condition thus propounded, we may well conceyue that the Romane wynter, although it be not hotte, yet to be equall in heate to the full luyng tyme in the same citie, during the tyme of the sayd fyue houres. And thus by a similitude of the height of the sunne vnder both places, and of the known qualitie of the Romane heauen, and by the access of the sunne to such places where the longest day continueth certayne monethes, we may geather that sommer, in places vnder the pole, is lyke vnto and equall with the full Romane luyng.

Some.

Colde nyghtes in hot regions.

The Romane wynter.

But the more difficult question, is of the tyme of the. vi. monethes in the whiche the Sunne leaueth those regions,

One night of. vi. monethes.

An. iii.

and

Objections.

and goeth by the contrary or ouerthwarte circle toward the south in wynter. For they say that at that tyme, those regions are deformed with horrible darkenesse, and nyghtes not increased, whiche may be the cause that beastes can not seeke theyr foode: And that also the colde should then bee intollerable. By which double euyls all thynges constrayned should dye, so that no beast were able to abyde the iniuries of wynter and famyne insuyng thereof: but that all beastes should perishe before the sommer folowynge, when they should byynge forth theyr broode or succession: and that for these causes, the sayde colde clyme should bee perpetuallie desolate and uninhabitable. To all which objections, we answered in this maner.

The twynghtes.

The lyght of the Moone.

The nyght under the pole.

A demonstra-  
tion.

As touchyng the nyghtes not increased, I say, that it was not conuenient to assume that for any reason. For not as the Sunne falleth, so suddenly cometh the darke nyght: but that the euening doeth substitute and prolong the day long after, as also the day spyng or dawnyng of the day, gyueth a certayne lyght before the rysing of the Sunne: After the which, the residue of the nyght that receyueth no lyght by the sayde euening and moynyng twilightes, is accomplished by the lyght of the Moone, so that the nyghtes are seldome vnaugmented. Let this bee an example procured by our temperate regions, whereby we may vnderstande the condition of the nyght under the pole: Therefore euen there also the twilightes helpe the nyght a long tyme, as we will more presently demonstrate. It is approued by the Astronomers, that the Sunne descendyng from the highest halfe sphere by eightiue paralels of the vnder horizon, maketh an ende of the twilight, so that at the length the darke night succeedeth: And that the Sunne appoehyng, and rysing aboue the hyghest halfe sphere by as many paralels, doeth diminish the nyght and increase the twylyght. Agayne, by the position or placynge of the sphere under the pole, the same is the horizontall that is the Equinoctiall. Those paralelles therefore that are paralelles to the horizontall lyne, are also paralelles to the Equinoctiall. So that the Sunne descendyng there vnder the horizon, doeth not byynge darke nyghtes to those regions, vntyll it come to the paralels distant. xliii. partes from the Equinoctiall.

Durynge

Durynge the tyme of these sayde syxe monethes of darkenesse vnder the pole, the nyght is destitute of the benefite of the Sunne and the sayde twylyghtes, onely for the space of thre monethes, in the whiche the Sunne goeth and returneth by the portion of the ouerthwarte circle. But yet neyther this tyme of thre monethes is without remedy from heauen. For the Moone with her full globe increased in lyght, hath accesse at that tyme, and illuminateth the monethes lackyng lyght, euery one by them selues, halfe the course of the moneth: by whose benefite it cometh to passe that the nyght, named as vnaugmented, possesseth those regions no longer then one moneth and a halfe, neyther that continually or all at one tyme: but this also diuided into thre sortes of shorter nyghtes, of the whiche euery one endureth for the space of two weekes, and are illuminate of the Moone accordyngly. And this is the reason conceyued of the power of the sphere, whereby we testifie that the sommers and nyghtes vnder the pole are tollerable to lyuyng beastes. But we will nowe declare by other remedies of nature and arte, that this colde so greatly feared, is more remisse and tollerable then our opinion: so that, compared to the nature of suche beastes as lyue there, it may be abydden. And there is no doubt but there are antours of more antiquitie then that age in the whiche any thyng was exactly known or discouered of the North regions. The olde wynters therefore perswaded onely by naked coniecture, dyd geather what they myght determine of those places: Or rather, by the estimation of heauen, the whiche, because they felte it to bee hardely tollerable to them selues, and lesse to men borne in the clyme of Egypt and Grecia, tooke thereby an argument of the whole habitable earth. The hystorie of Strabo is knowen, that a pottle of brasse, whiche was broken in sunder with frosten water, was brought from Pontus, and shewed in Delphis in token of a greuous wynter. Here therefore, they that so greatly feared the wynter (suche as chaunceth to the earth vnder the xliiii. paralele) and therefore consecrated that broken pottle to the temple of Appollo: what coulde suche men truly define vpon regions so farre without that paralele, whether they were

The Moone.

Remedies of  
nature & art.

The olde  
wynters pers-  
waded by con-  
iecture.

A brasse pottle  
broken with  
frost.

## Of the Northeast frosty sea.

were inhabited or not? But such as followed these, being contented with continuations of the olde auncours, and borne in manner under the same qualitie of heauen, persysted wyllyngly in the same opinion, with more confidence then consideration of the thynges whereof we now intreate: so lyghtly was that opinion receyued as touchyng the inhabitable clime under the poles. But we with better confidence and faith (forasmuche as we are not instructed with coniectures) intend to stande against the sentence of the olde auncours, affirmyng the North regions within the colde clime to be inhabited with herringes, coddies, haddockes, and byettes, tunnyes, and other great fshes, with thynfinite number whereof, tables are furnished through a great parte of Europe: All whiche are taken in the North sea extended beyonde our knowledge. This sea at certayne tymes of the peere, poureth forth his plentifulnes, or rather dyueth forth his increafe to seeke newe mansions, and are here taken in theyr passage. Furthermore also, euen the mouthes of the riuer of Tyber receiued a fsh as a newe guest sent from the north sea: this swamme twise through Fraunce, and twise through Spayne, ouerpassed the *Ligurian* and *Tuscan* sea, to communicate herselfe to the cite of Rome. The lakes also and ryuers of those regions are replenished with fsh: insomuch that no power of colde is able to extingwsh the thyncrease of the peere following, and the succession reparable so many hundred peeres. And I plainly thinke, that if it should of necessitie folowe, that one of these two elementes, the earth and the water, should be destructive to luyng creatures, the water should chieflly haue wrought this effecie. But this is founde so tractable, that in the depe wynter, both that increafe is brought forth, and fshing is also exercised. The lande is lykewise inhabited with like plentifulnesse. But that we wander not so farre, let the sayth hercof rest in the position following, wherein we intend to declare howe by the power of nature and industry of man, this commoditie may come to passe. Therefore as touchyng nature, we suppose that the diuine prouidence hath made nothyng uncommunicable, but to haue geuen suche order to all thynges, whereby euery thyng may be tollerable to the next. The extremities of the elementes consent with theyr next. The ayre is grosse about the earth and water:

Fishes of the North seas.

The North sea.

The qualitie of water.

The land.

The diuine prouidence in moderatynge the elementes.

and kyngdomes lying that way.

278

water: but thynne and hot about the fyre. By this prouidence of nature, the uttermost sea is very salt. And salt (as witnesseth *Plinie*) yeldeth the saltnesse of Dyle. But Dyle, by a certayne natyue heate, is of propertie agreeable to fyre. The sea then, being al of such qualitie, powreth forth it selfe farre vpon the extreme landes, whereby by reason of the saltnesse thereof, it moueth and stirreth by generatiue heate, as by saltnesse it noiseth the fecunditie of thynges generate. It geueth this fruitfulnessse to the earth at certayne floods, although the earth also it selfe haue in his inner bowels the same lyuely and noysing heate, wherby not only the Denues, Caues, and hollow places, but also springes of water are made warme: & this so much the more, in how much the wynter is more vehement. This thyng doth more appeare by this example, that the mountaines of *Norway* and *Swetblende* are fruitfull of metales, in the which, siluer and copper are concoct and molten into beimes, which can scarcely be done in fornaes. By this reason also, the vapours and hot exhalations pearcyng the earth and the waters, and through both those natures breathyng forth into the ayre, temperate the qualitie of heauen, & maketh it tollerable to beasts, as witnesseth the huge bygnesse of the *Whales* in those seas, with the strength of body, and long lyfe of such beastes as lyue on the land: which thyng coulde not be, except all thyngs were there commodiously noysed by the benefite of the heauen and the ayre. For nothyng that in the tyme of encrease is hyndred by any iniurie, or that is cypfedde at the tyme it lyueth, can prosper wel. Neyther are such thynges as liue there, offended with theyr natural wynter, as though an *Egyptian* or *Ethiopian* were suddenly conueighed into those cold regions. For they were in long tyme, by litle and litle, brought fyrst acquainted with the nature of that heauen, as maye be proued both by the lyfe of man, and by the hystorie of holy scripture. They that were led from *Mesopotamia*, and that famous Tower of *Babilon* towards the North partes of the world, in the fyrst dispercion of nations, did not immediately passe to the extreme boundes, but planted theyr habitations first under a myddle heauen, between both, as in *Thracia*, and *Pontus*, where theyr posteritie was accustomed the better to susteyne the rigour of *Scythia* and *Tanais*.

The nature of the sea.

Salt.

Generatiue heate.

Outward colds is cause of inward heate.

Metals.

Vapours and exhalations.

Whales.

Beastes.

Wherby maye be considered the cause of the death of our men that saile directly to Sumra.

No passage from one extreme, to another, but by a meane.

# Of the Northeast frosty sea.

nais, as he that commeth from winter to summer, may the better after abyde yse and snow, beyng fyrst hardened thereto by the frostes of Autumne. In lyke maner mortal men, accustomed to beare the hardnesse of places next vnto them, were thereby at the length more confirmed to sustayne the extremities. And here also, if any sharpnesse remaine that may seeme intollerable, nature hath so prouided for the same, with other remedies. For the land and sea, hath geuen vnto beastes, deepe and large Caves, Denes, and other hollowe places, and secreete corners in mountaynes and rockes, both on the land and by sea bankes, in the which are euer conteyned warme vapoures, so muche the more intent and vehement, in how much they are the more constrained by extreme cold. Nature hath also geuen valleyes, diuered and defended from the North windes. She hath lykewyse couered beastes with haire, so muche the thicker, in how much the vehemencie of cold is greater: by reason wherof the best and richest furies are brought from those regions, as Sables, whose pyece is growne to great excesse, next vnto gold and precious stones, and are esteemed princely ornementes. The beastes that beare these furies, are hunted cheefely in winter (whiche thyng is more strange) because their haire is then thicker and cleaueth faster to the skin. How greuous then shal we thinke the wynter to be there, where this litle beast liueth so wel, and where the hunters may search the Denes and hauntes of such beastes through the woods and snow? But such beastes, the condition of whose bodies is so tender that they are not able to abide thiniurie of the cold, either lye hyd in winter, or change their habitacion, as do certayne beastes also in our climate. Nature hath furthermore geuen remedie to man, both by art and industry to defende him selfe both abrode and at home. Abrode with a thicke vesture, and the same well dowbeled. At home, with large spers on Harthes, Chymneyes, and in Stooues for the daye, with close Chambers, and Couches, soft and warme Beddes for the nyght: by whiche remedies they mitigate the wynters, which seeme rigorous to straungers, although they are to inhabitan-tes more tollerable then our opinion, as in dede by the fyrst naturall mixture or composition of theyr bodies, such thyngs are agreeable to them, as seeme very hard to other. The Lion in Affrik

Caves and  
Denes.

Valleys.

The best  
furies.  
Sables.

Beastes that  
lye hyd in  
wynter.

All beastes haue  
the nature of  
the place where  
they are engen-  
dred.

and

and kingdomes lying that way.

279

and the beare in *Sarmatia*, are fierce, as in theyr present strength and vigoure: but translated into a contrary heauen, are of lesse strength and courage. The foule called *Ciconia* (which some thynke to be the *Storke*) doth not tary the wynter: yet do the Cranes come at that tyme. The *Scythian* wyll accuse the *Roman* heauen as inducyng feuers, whereas neuerthelesse there is none more holosome. Such as haue been tenderly brought vp, if they come suddely into the campe, can not away with hunger, watchyng, heate, passages through ryuers, battayles, sieges, and assautes: But the olde souldier, exercised in the warres, vseth these as meditations of the fildes, as hardened therto by long experience. He that hath been accustomed to the shadowe of the citie, and wyll attempte the sayng of the poet *Virgil*, *Nudus ara, sero nudus*, that is, naked and bare, without house and home, shal to his peryl make an end of the verse, *Habebis frigora febram* (that is) he shal haue the colde ague. Suche thynges therfore as seeme hard vnto vs, beyng accustomed by litle and litle, become more tollerable: Insomuch that this exercise of sufferance by such degrees, doth oftentimes growe to prodigious effectes, farre beyond our expectation. And thus we seeme to haue made sufficient demonstration, by heauen, nature, and art, wherby it may appeare, that no part of the land or sea is denied to liuing creatures. The reader may also perceiue howe large matter of reasons and examples may be opened for the declaring of our opinion, wherein we rest. Let therfore thauctoritie of the auncient auctours geue place, and the consent of the newe wryters agree to this history, not as now we at the length comprehended (wheras before many hundred yeeres *Germanie* and *Scandia* had entercoure of merchandies not seuered by the large gulfe of *Gothia*) but as now we by our commentaries brought to lyght: and hauyng sayde thus muche in maner of a preeface, we wyll now procede to wryte of the North regions.

What exercise  
may do.

Use maketh  
masteries.

*Scandia.*

*Schondia.*

**S**condia, *Schondania*, or *Schondenmarchia*, is as muche to saye as sayre *Dania*, or sayre *Denmarke*. *Plinie* in one place, nameth it *Scandia*, and in an other *Scandinania*, if there be no faute in the examples.

Stone is  
sayre in the  
duch tongue.

It



## Of the northeft frosty sea.

The fertilitie of  
Schondia.

It was named *Schondia*, by reason of the fayrenesse and fruit-  
fulnesse thereof. And this aswell for that in beneficiall heau-  
n, fertilitie of grounde, commoditie of hauens and marie townes,  
abundaunce of ryuers and fyshe, plentie of beastes, great quan-  
tity of metall, as golde, syluer, copper, and leade, diligent cul-  
turyng the grounde, with townes and cities well inhabited and  
gouerned by ciuile lawes, it geueth place to none other fortunate  
region. This was in maner vnknewen to the olde Greekes  
and Latins, as may appeare by this argument, that with one  
consent they affirmed, that in these north regions the colde zone  
or climate, was condemned to perpetuall snowe, intolerable to al  
lyuyng creatures. For fewe of them haue made mention here-  
of as to be inhabited. Among whom *Plinie*, as one of the chiefe,  
saith in his fourth booke, that *Schondania* is of vnknewen bigge-  
nesse: and onely that portion thereof to be knowen, which is in-  
habited with the nation of the *Hilleuiones* in fiftie villages: *Pli-*  
*ner* yet is *Eningia* lesse in opinion. Other moxe auncient then  
*Plinie*, haue placed most fortunate regions, with men of long  
lyfe (which the Greekes call *Macrobios*) and of most innocent  
behauour vnder the tracte of those landes: and that there came  
from thence to *Delphos*, certayne religious virgines, with votres  
and gistes consecrated to *Apollo*: And furthermore, that that na-  
tion obserued this institution, vntyll the saide virgins were viola-  
ted of them, of whom they were receiued as straungers. These  
are most cleare testimonies of Antiquitie, both of the greatnesse  
of *Schondia*, and the people that inhabite the same, although they  
were since vnknewen: as lykewyle the *Gorbes* departyng from  
these North landes, although they obteyned the Empire of the  
regions about the marshes of *Meotis*, and the coastes of the sea  
*Euxinus*, with the realme of *Denmarke* (wherof that is thought  
to be a portion whiche is now called *Transluania*) and the  
bankes of the ryuer of *Danubius*, and in fine, inuaded the Ro-  
mane Empire, yet were not the regions well knowen from  
whence they tooke theyr originall. Therefore lyke as part of  
the olde wyters are vnsufficient witnesses, to testifie of our nar-  
rations as touchyng these landes vnknewen to them: Euen so  
the other parte whiche excluded the same as uninhabitable, are  
to be conuincid, leaste theyr authoritie, beyng admitted, shoulde  
engender

He meaneth  
*Diodorus*  
*Siculus*

Continuations  
of the *Gorbes*.

*Transluania*.

and kingdomes lying that way.

280

engender opinions not agreeable or conuenient to the nature of  
places. *Sigismundus Liberus*, in his commentaries of *Moscovia*,  
writeth thus. *Scandia* or *Scondia*, is no Islande (as some haue  
thought) but part of the continent or firme land of *Suetia*, which  
by a long tract reacheth to *Cotbland*: and that now the kyng  
of *Dermaike* possesseth a great part thereof. But whereas the  
wyters of these thynges haue made *Scondia* greater then  
*Suetia*, and that the *Gorbes* and *Lumbardes* came from thence,  
they seeme in my opinion to comprehend these three kyngdomes  
as it were in one bodie, only vnder the name of *Scondia*, foras-  
much as then, that part of land that lyeth betweene the sea *Bal-*  
*theum* (which floweth by the coastes of *Finlandia*) and the frozen  
sea, was vnknewen: and that by reason of so manie marshes,  
innumerable riuers, and intemperatenesse of heauen, it is yet  
rude, vncultured, and litle knowen. Which thyng hath been the  
cause that some iudged al that was called by the name of *Scondia*,  
to be one great Island.

The *Gorbes* &  
*Lumbardes*.

Gronelande.



*Gronelande* is interpreted greene land, so cal-  
led for the great encrease and fruitfulness  
of pasture. By reason wherof, what great  
plentie of cattail there is, it may herby  
appere, that at such time as shippes may  
passe thither, they set forth great heapes of  
Cheese and Butter to be sold, wherby we  
coniecture that the lande is not rough with barren mountaynes.  
It hath two Cathedrall Churches vnder the Ordination of *Ni-*  
*drofia*. To one of these, was of late peeres a Bishop appoynted,  
only by the title of a Suffragane, in consideration that while the  
Metropolitane doth neglect the direction of religion for the di-  
stance of the place, and difficult navigation, the people is in ma-  
neraine to gentilitie, being of them felices of moueable wittes, &  
geuen to magicall artes. For it is sayd that they (as also the peo-  
ple of *Laponia*) do rayse tempestes on the sea with magicall in-  
chauntements, and byng such shypes into daunger as they en-  
tend to spoyle. They vse litle shippes made of leather, and safe a-  
gains the brusing of the sea and rockes, and with them assaile o-  
ther shypes. *Peter Martir* of *Angleria*, writeth in his *Decades*  
of

Fruitfull  
pasture.

Religion neg-  
lected.

Enchauntes.

The blage of  
Sebastian Cabot  
to the fro-  
zen sea.

Gronelande.

Wardhus.

Lapponia and  
Gronelande.

Schoeni.

Cabot tolde me  
that this ise is  
of fresh water &  
not of the sea.

A commixtion  
of salt water &  
fresh.

The sea be-  
tween Norway  
and Island.

Terra Viridis.

of the Spanysh nauigations that *Sebastian Cabot* sayyng from England continually towarde the North, folowed that course so farre, that he chaunced vpon great flakes of yse in the Moneth of July: and that diuerting from thence, he folowed the coast by the shore bendyng toward the South, vntill he came to the clyme of the Island of *Hispaniola*, aboue *Cuba*, an Islande of the *Cambales*. Which narration hath geuen me occasion to extende *Groneland* beyond the promontorie or cape of *Huitfarch*, to the contyneut or fyne lande of *Lapponia*, aboue the castell of *Wardhus*: whiche thyng I dyd the rather, for that the reuerende Archebysshop of *Nidrosia*, constantly affirmed that the sea bendeth there into the fourme of a crooked Elbowe. It agreeth herewith also, that the *Lapones* consent with them in the lyke Magicall practises, and do n epyther embrace the Christian religion, nor refuse it: wherby I haue thought this lykenesse of customes to be betweene them, because they ioyned together in one continent. The distance lykewyse, seemeth not to disagree. For betweene both these people, the distance is not full two hundred *Schoeni*, every one beyng a space of ground conteyning thre score furlonges, which make seauen myles, & a halfe. It furthermore agreeth with this coniecture that *Cabot* chaunced into such yse. And albeit, as touching the Moneth of July, I wyll contend it is not well rehearsed, no although he had sailed vnder the poole, for such reasons as we haue declared before to the contrary: neuertheless, that at some tyme he sailed by yse, this testifieth in that he sayled not by the mayne sea, but in places neare vnto the land, comprehending & embracing the sea in fourme of a gulfe, whereas for the same cause the gulfe of *Gothland* is frozen, because it is streyght and narrow: in the which also the litle quantitie of salte water is overcome by the abundance of fresh water of many and great ryuers that fall into the gulfe. But betweene *Norway* and *Island*, the sea is not frozen, for the contrary cause, forasmuch as the power of freshe water is there overcome of the abundance of the salte water. There is a fame (but of vncertayne auctoritie) that the Spaniards sayle at this present to *Gronelande*, and to an other lande, whiche they call *Terra Viridis*, that is, the greene lande, bringyng from thence suche wares as are founde in *Gronelande*. Towards the North, it reacheth to the

unknown land vnder the pole, from whence also the theues and robbers of the *Pigmei* come into this lande. Which is an argument that the regions vnder the pole are inhabited, & almost enuironed with the sea, as are they whiche the Cosinographers call *Chersonnesi*, or *Peninsula* (that is) almost *Islandes*.

The description of *Gronelande*.

The description of the East syde, which lyeth towarde *Norway*.

Wardhus Castle.	54.	70.	30.
Towarde the North.	53.	30.	71.
The first extention.	40.	71.	40.
The second extention.	28.	72.	
Huitfarch promont.	22.	67.	
The extention.	5.	61.	45.

It is continued from thence by the coastes of the lande of *Baccallaos*.

Towarde the West and North, it is terminated with an unknown ende of landes and seas.

Islande.

**I**slande is interpreted the land of *Ile*, and is called of the olde wyters *Thyle*. It is extended betweene the South and the North, almost two hundred *Schoenes* in longitude. It is for the most parte full of mountaynes, and uncultured. But in the playnes it hath such fruitfull pastures, that they are sayne sometimes to dyue the beastes from theyr feedyng, least they should be suffocate with too much fatnesse. This Islande is famous by the strange myracles of nature, of the whiche *Saxo Grammaticus* in his hystorie of *Denmarke*, and *Olaus Gothus*, in his description of the North landes, doe make mention. There are in it three mountaynes of marueylous height, the toppes whereof are covered with perpetuall snowe: but the nether partes of them, are of lyke nature to the mountayne *Etna*, in the Islande of *Sicilie*, boyleng with continuall flames of fyre, and castyng forth byrmstone. One of these is named *Helga*, and the other *Mons Crucis* (that is) the mounte of the crosse. The thyrde is named *Hecla*, whose flames neyther consume flaxe or tow, matters most apte to take fyre, nor yet are quenched with water. And with

*Pigmei*.

*Baccallaos*.

Islande called *Thyle*.

*Schoene* is  
12 furlonges.

Myracles of  
nature in  
Islandes.

Three marueylous  
mountaynes.

*Helga*.

*Hecla*.

Do. i.

lyke

lyke force as the shot of great artillerie is giuen forth by violence of fyre, euen so by the commixtion and repugnance of fyre, colde, and bymestone, great stones are heere thowne into the ayre. Neare vnto these mountaynes are thre chynkes or open places in the earth, of huge bygnesse, and such depth (especially at the mount *Hecla*) that no light can attayne thereto. But to such as looke into them, there first appeare men as though they were drowned, and yet breathyng forth theyr soules: who beyng exhorted by theyr friendes to resorte to theyr owne, they and were with mournyng voyce and greeuous sighes, that they must departe from thence to the mount *Hecla*, and therewith sodaynely vanyshe out of sight. The floweth about the Ilande for the space of seuen or eight monethes, makyng by runnyng togeather a certayne miserable waylyng and gromyng noyse, not vnylyke the voyce of man. Thinhabitauntes thynke, that in this Isle and the mount *Hecla*, are the places where the euill soules of theyr people are tormented. If any man take a great portion of this Isle, and keepe it as diligently as may be in a close vessel or cofer, the same doeth so vanyshe at the tyme when the other Isle about the Ilande dissolueth, that not so much as one droppe of water or Isle can thereof be founde.

Not farre from these mountaynes reachyng towarde the sea coastes, are foure springes of water, of most dyuers and contrary nature. The fyrst, by reason of his perpetuall and feruent heate, sodaynely turneth all bodyes, that are cast therein, into stones, reseruyng neuerthelesse theyr fyrst forme and shape. The seconde, is of intollerable colde,nesse. The thyrde, is sweeter then hony, and most pleasaunt to quench thyrst. The fourth, is playne payson, pestilent, and deadly. There is furthermore in these springes suche aboundaunce of bymestone, that a thousande pounce weight thereof is bought for litle, as for the tenth parte of a ducate. Theyr chiefe wares, are dyed fysh, as Soles, Haddens, Helayces, Salpas, Stockefishes, and such other, whiche they exchange for wheat, and such other thinges as are brought thither from Lubecke, Hamborowe, and Amsterdam. For they haue oftentymes such scarfenesse of corne, that they vse dyed fysh in the steade of bread, although in sommer the Ilande so floppeth with greene and fruitfull meadowes, that they are sayne sometimes

Strange visions.

Ice.

A strange thynge.

Foure springes of contrary nature.

Aboundaunce of bymestone.

Dyed fysh.

Scarfenesse of corne.

to dyue theyr beastes from pasture, least they should suffocate for to much fainesse, as I haue sayde before. They make very good butter, and apte to be vsed in matters of phisicke. There are found diuers kindes of good Haukes, as Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, Lan-ners, and Sperhaukes: Also Hauens, Crowes, Beares, Hares, and Foxes, both white and blacke. They haue most swift hores, and such as run xxx. miles continually without rest or baite. They haue many churches: & houses builded of the bones of Whales and other great fyshes. The nauigation is not open to this Ilande but in sommer season: and that only for the space of foure monethes, by reason of the colde and Ice whereby the passage is stopped. If any stryfe or debate aryse on the sea among the mariners for the commoditie of the haue, the gouernour of the place, although he haue knowledge thereof, yet doeth he not punyssh them, forasmuche as it apperteyneth not to his office to decerne such thinges as are done on the sea, but only on the lande. Shippes are there oftentymes in great peryll, by reason of Whales, & such other monsters of the sea, except the Mariners take good heed, and keepe them far from the shypes with the noyse of Drummes, and emptie barreles cast into the sea. There are many Bynstrels and other that play on instruments, with the sweete noyse whereof, they vse to allure foules and fyshes to their nettes and snares. Many also, lye lurkyng in caues and denues, to auoyd the sharpnesse of cold, as the Affricanes doe the lyke to defend them selues from the heate. On the top of a certayne mountayne called *Weyzarch*, (lying betweene Ilande and Gruntland, or Greonland) is erected a shypmans quadrant of marueylous bygnesse, made by two Pirates, named Wynnigt and Wothorst, in fauour of suche as sayle by those coastes, that they may thereby auoyde the daungerous places lying towarde Greonland.

The myddest of the Ilande.	7	0	65	30.
The citie Harfol. &c.	7	40	60	42.

Laponia.

The region of *Laponia*, was so named of the people that inhabite it. For the Germanes call all suche Laponies, as are simple or vnayte to thinges. This people

Haukes.

White Hauens.

Houses of Whales bones  
The nauigation on to Ilande.

Whales.

One thynge seruyng for contrary uses.

A shypmans quadrant.

People of  
great agilitie.

A strange ap-  
parell.

The cause of  
an olde error.

So doe the  
Tartars.

Plentie of  
wylde beastes.

people is of small stature, and of suche agilitie of bodie, that haupng they quyuers of arrowes gerie to them, and they bowes in they handes, they can with a leape cast them selues through a circle or hope of the diameter of a cubite. They fight on foote, armed with bowes and arrowes after the manner of the *Tartars*. They are exercised in hurlyng the darre, and shootyng, from they youth: insomuche that they gyue they chyldren no meate vntyll they hit the marke they shoote at, as byd in olde tyme thynhabitauntes of the *Islandes called Baleares*. They vse to make they apparell streight and close to they bodyes, that it hynder not they woork. They wynter vestures are made of the whole skynnes of Seales or Beares, artificially wrought, and made supple. These they tye with a knotte aboue they heads, leauyng onely two holes open to looke through, and haue all the residue of they bodyes couered, as though they were sowed in sackes, but that this beyng adopted to all partes of they bodyes, is so made for commoditie, and not for a punishment, as the Romanes were accustomed to sow partridges in sackes of leather with a Cocke, an Ape, and a Serpent, and so to hurle them alpyue altogether into the ryuer of *Tyber*. And heereby I thynke it came to passe, that in olde tyme it was rashly belceued, that in these regions there were men with rough & heary bodyes like wylde beastes, as parte made relation through ignorance, parte also takyng pleasure in rehearsall of suche thinges as are straunge to the hearers. The *Lapones* defended by this arte and industry, goe abrode and withstand the sharpenesse of wynter and the North wyndes, with all the iniuries of heauen. They haue no houses, but certayne Cabernacles lyke tentes or hales, wherewith they passe from place to place, and chaunge their manfions. Some of them lyue after the manner of the people of *Sarmatia*, called in olde tyme *Amazobii*, which used waynes in the steade of houses. They are much giuen to huntynge, and haue suche plentie of wylde beastes, that they kyl them in maner in euery place. It is not lawfull for a woman to goe forth of the tent, at that doore by the which her husbände went out on huntynge the same day, nor yet to touche with her hande any parte of the beaust that is taken, vntyll

till her husbände reache her on the spytte suche a portion of fleshe as he thynketh good. They tye not the grounde. The region nouryeth no kynde of Serpentes: yet are there great and noysome Gnattes. They take fysh in great plentie: by the commoditie whereof, they lyue after the maner of the *Ethiopiens*, called *Ichthiophagi*. For as these dye they fysh with feruent heate, so doe they dye them with colde, and grynde or stampe them to powder as small as meale or flour. They haue suche aboundaunce of these fyshes, that they hound great plentie thereof in certeyne store houses, to carry them vnto other landes neare about them, as *Northboothia*, and whyte *Rusia*. They shypes are not made with nayles, but are tye together and made fast with cordes and wythes. With these they sayle by the swyfte ryuers betweene the mountaynes of *Laponia*, beyng naked in sommer that they may the better swimme in the tyme of perill, and geather together such wares as are in daunger to be lost by shypwracke. Parte of them exercise handie craftes, as imboderyng and weauyng of cloth, interlaced with golde and syluer. Suche as haue deuised any necessary Arte, or doe increase and amende the inuenti- ons of other, are openly honoured, and rewarded with a besture, in the which is imbodered an argument or token of the thyng they deuised. And this remayneth to the posteritie of they famelie, in token of they desartes. They frame shypes, buyde houses, and make dyuers sortes of houshold stuffe artificially, and transpote them to other places neare about. They buye and sell both for exchaunge of wares, and for money. And this only by consent of both parties, without communication: yet not for lacke of wytte, or for rudenesse of maners, but because they haue a peculiar language vnknewen to they borderers. It is a valiant nation, and lyued long free, and susteyned the warres of *Norway* and *Suetia*, vntyll at the length they submytted them selues, and payde tye fures for they tribute. They chose them selues a gouernour, whom they cal a kyng: But the kyng of *Suetia*, gyueth him aucthoritie and administration. Neuer thelesse, the people in they suites and doubtful causes, resorte to *Suetia* to haue they matters decised.

No Serpents.

Great Gnats.

A boundaunce  
of fysh.

Shypes with-  
out nayles.

Science ho-  
noured.

Large com-  
munitie  
without  
warres.

No horses.  
In beast of mar-  
ueplous  
strength and  
swiftnesse.

What Schoe-  
nus is, looke in  
Gronlande.

The chaunge  
of the horizon.

The olde auc-  
thours called  
all the North  
people Scy-  
thians.

Quintus las-  
peth this  
in his sayd  
booke de ratis-  
ne contionan-  
ti. where he  
speakech of  
the people, cal-  
led Dilapit.

In theyr iourneys, they goe not to any Inne, nor yet enter in-  
to any house, but lye all nyght vnder the firmament. They haue  
no horses, but in the steade of them, they tame certayne wyld  
beastes which they call Keen, beyng of the iust bygnesse of a  
Hale, with rough heare lyke an Ass, clouen feete, and bran-  
ched hoynes lyke a Harte, but lower and with fewer antlettes.  
They will not abyde to be rydden. But when theyr peytrels  
or drawyng collers are put on them, and they so ioyned to the  
Chariotte or sleade, they runne in the space of .xxiii. houres, a  
hundred and fyfte myles, or .xxx. Schanos, the whiche space  
they asseigne to chaunge the horizon thysle, that is, thysle to  
come to the furthest signe or marke that they see a far of. Which  
doubtlesse is a token both of the marueplous swiftnesse & great  
strength of these beastes, beyng able to continue runnyng for so  
great a space, in the meane whyle also spendyng some tyme in  
feedyng. I suppose that this thyng was somewhat knowen  
to the olde wyters, although recepued in maner by an obscure  
and doubtfull fame: For they also wyte that certayne Scythians  
doe ryde on Hartes.

They nether folow the Christian religion, nor yet refuse it,  
or are offended therewith as are the Jewes: but doe sometymes  
receyue it fauourably, to gratifie the princes to whom they obey.  
And that no more of them imbrace the Christian sayth, the faulte  
is somewhat to be imputed to the Byschoppes and Prelates that  
haue epyther reiected this cure & charge of instructyng the nation,  
or suffered the sayth of Christ to bee suffocate, euen in the fyrst  
spryng. For vnder the pretence of religion, they would haue  
aduaunced theyr owne reuenues, and ouerburdened the people  
by an intollerable example, none otherwysse here then in all Chri-  
stendome, which thyng is doubtlesse the cause of most greuous  
defections. I heard John, a byshop of Gothlande, say thus: We  
that gouerne the churche of Vpsalia, and haue vnder our dio-  
cesse a great parte of that nation, lyke as it is not conuenient  
to declare many thinges of our vigilance and attendaunce o-  
uer the flocke committed to our charge, euen so absteynyng  
from myscheuous couetousnesse, whereby religion is abused  
for laker, we doe in all places our diligent endeouour, that wee  
minister none occasion, whereby this nation, as offended by our  
sinnes

sinnes, may be the lesse wyllyng to embrace the Christian sayth.  
This is the state of the religion among the Laponers: although  
of theyr owne institution and custome recepued of theyr predi-  
cessours, they are Idolatours, honouryng that lpyng thyng  
that they meete fyrst in the mornynge, for the God of that day,  
and diuinyng thereby theyr good lucke or euill. They also  
erecte Images of stone vppon the mountaynes, whiche they e-  
steeme as Goddesses, attributyng to them diuine honour. They  
solemne marriages, and begyn the same with fyre and flynt, as  
with a mysterie so aptely applyed to the Image of stone, as if  
it had been recepued from the myddest of Grecia. For in that  
they adhibite a mysterie to fyre, as they doe not this alone (foras-  
much as the Romanes obserued the same custome) euen so are  
they hercin partly to be commended, in that they vse the cerem-  
onies of so noble a people. The mysterie of the fynte is no lesse  
to be praysed, both forasmuch as this is domesticall philosophie,  
and hath also a neare affinitie and signification to these solemniti-  
es. For as the flynt hath in it fyre lying hyd, whiche appeareth  
not but by mowynge & force: so is there a secreete lyfe in both kynds  
of man and woman, which by mutuall coniunction cometh  
foorth to a lpyng byrth. They are furthermore experte in-  
chaunters. They tye three knottes on a stryng hangyng at a  
whyp. When they lose one of these, they rayse tollerable wynds:  
When they lose an other, the wynde is more vehement: but by  
losyng the thyrde, they rayse playne tempestes, as in olde tyme  
they were accustomed to rayse thunder and lpyghtnyng. This  
arte doe they vse agaynst such as sayle by theyr coastes, and staye  
or moue the ryuers and seas more or lesse, as they lyst to shew  
fauour or displeasure. They make also of leade certayne shorte  
magicall dartes of the quantitie and length of a synger. These  
they throwe agaynst such, of whom they desyre to bee reuenged,  
to places neuer so farre distant. They are sometymes so vexed  
with the canker on theyr armes or legges, that in the space of  
three dayes they dye through the vehemencie of the payne. The  
Sunne falleth very lowe in these regions: and prolongeth one  
continuall nyght for the space of thre monethes in wynter, du-  
ryng whiche tyme they haue none other lpyght but lyke vnto the  
twilight of euentinges & morninges. This is very cleare, but con-  
tinueth

Idolatrie.

A mysterie of  
marriage in  
fyre and flynt.

Experte in-  
chaunters.

Magicall  
dartes.

The canker.

One nyght of  
thre monethes.



tinueth but fewe houres, and is lyke the bygght shynnyng of the Moone. Therefore that day that the Sunne returneth to the hemispherie, they keepe holy day, and make great myrth with solemne festiuitie. And these are the maners of this nation, not so brutish or saluage, as woorthie therfore to be called Laponers for theyr brutishnesse or simplicitie, as when they lyued vnder theyr owne Emperre, and vsed no familiaritie or entercourse with other nations, & knew not the commoditie of their owne thinges, neyther the pryce and estimation of theyr fures in our regions, by reason whereof, they solde great plentie of them for some of our wares of small value.

Rich fures.

The boundes or limittes of Laponia (beyng the extreme land of Scandia knowen towarde the North pole) are extended towarde this parte of the North, to the world yet vnknown to vs: And furthmore towarde the same parte of the uttermost sea, according to this description.

The first coast.	70	72.
The coast folowynge.	80	7.
That that yet foloweth.	90	70.

Plentie of sea  
fysh.

From the fyshyng places and store houses of this sea, they carry forth to Nordbothnia, and whyte Russia, landes confinyng to them, great plentie of fysh. Whereby we may coniecture that this sea is extended on euery syde towarde the North. Towarde the West, it is limited with the most inwarde gulf at the Cape of Wardhus, at the degree.

Wardhus.

	54	70	30.
Towarde the South, it is limited by a lyne drawen from thence vnto the degree.	90	69.	

Norwegia, or Norway.

Norway, is as muche to say, as the Northway. This was sometyme a flopyshyng kyngdome, whose dominion comprehended Denmarke, Friselande, and the Ilandes farre about, vntill the domesticall Emperre was gouerned by the succession of inheritance. In the meane tyme whyle this gouernance ceased for lacke of due issue, it was instituted by consent of the nobilitie, that the kynges should be admitted by election: supposing that they would with more equitie execute that office, forasmuche as they were placed in the

the same by suche auctoritie, and not by obteynyng the kyngdome by fortune and newe aduancement. But it came so to passe, that as euery of them excelleth in rychesse, ambition, and fauoure by consanguinitie, so were they in greater hope to obtaine the kyngdome: and were by this meanes diuided into factions, attemptyng also occasions to inuade foraigne realmes, whereby they myght strenghten theyr parties. It is therefore at this present vnder the dominion of the Danes, who do not onely exact intolerable tributes, but also bypyng al theyr ryches and commodities into Denmarke, constitutyng the continuance of theyr gouernance in thinfirmitie and pouertie of the subiectes: whiche exemple, some other princes do folowe at this day in the Christean Emperre. For after that the princes had forsaken such vertues as should haue shyned in them, as to be *Patres patrie* (that is) the fathers of their countreys, and that in the place hereof, onely the proude countenance of dominion remayned, whiche opened licentiousnesse to thiniurie of the subiectes: this folowed thereof, that whereas the Danes by this occasion had no further trust or ayde in the loue of the people, they prouided, for thindempnitie of theyr owne estate, by forcible extenuatyng the goods and power of them whom they desired to keepe in subiection. This is the fortune of Norway, whose edifices, towne, and cities can not defende theyr auncient amplitude and dignitie: neyther is there any hope of repayryng theyr state. For there are no consultations admitted for the redresse of the common welth: No man dare shewe his aduice, or attempte any thyng, vncertaine of the myndes and consent of other. To this difficultie is added the qualitie of the place: For the Danes haue in theyr power al the nauigations of Norway, whereby it may exercise no trade by sea, neyther carry forth wares to other places: So that in fine it may seeme most vnforsunate, as lackyng the fauoure of heauen, the sea, and the lande. From hence is brought into all Europe a fysh of the kyndes of them whiche we call haddockes or hakes, indurate and dyed with cold, and beaten with clubbes or stockes, by reason whereof the Germans call them stockefysh. The takyng of these, is most commended in Ianuarie, that they may be sufficiently dyed and hardened with colde: For suche as are taken in the more temperate monethes, do corrupt and putrifie,

Kyngdomes  
destroyed by  
factions.

The Danes.

The default of  
princes.

An example of  
tyrannie.

The miserable  
state of  
Norway.

Stockefysh.

putrifie, and are not meete to be carped forth.

The description of the west coaste, with the part thereof lying most towarde the north.

Wardhus (that is) the watche house, or watche towre  
54. 70. 30.  
It is a stronge Castell or fortresse appoynted to the Lapones.  
The coaste folowynge, 48. 50. 70  
Mattbkur. &c.

The Lapones.

Shyppes in  
daunger by  
reason of  
whales.

Castoreum.

The roynge of  
whales.

Whales salted  
and reserved.

The citie of  
Nidrosia.

All the coast from hence, and the places neere about vnto the degree. 45. 69. beyng sometye lesse desolate by the sedition and destruction of Norway, the Lapones chose for their habitations, as comming to amoye beneficial heauen. From y castel of Wardhus, vnto the degree. 40. 30. 64. 10. al the coast in the spring tyme is daungerous to passe, by reason of whales, of such huge byggenesse, that some of them growe to an hundred cubites: for these fyshes at that tyme of the yere resort together for generation. Such shyppes as chaunce to fall eyther vppon theyr bodies, or into suche whylepooles as they make by theyr vehement motions, are in great peryll. The remedie to auoyde this daunger, is to powder into the sea Castoreum (that is) oyle made of the stones of the beaste called the Beuor, myngeled with water: For with this, the whole hearde of whales vanysheth suddely to the bottome of the sea: They make a terrible roynge, and haue two bzeathyng places in the hyghest part of theyr forheads, standyng forth ryght a cubite in length, and are brode at the endes, beyng couered with a skynne, throughe the whiche they blowe waters lyke showers or stormes of raine. The prickes of theyr backs, are founde conteynnyng thre els in circuite, and euery knotte betwene them of one ell. They are at the leaste of. 12. cubites in length, and are salted and kept in store houses. The greatest are vnprofitable to bee eaten, by reason of theyr ranke and vnauery taste, whiche can not be qualified.

Nidrosia standyng vppon the south syde of the sea banke, was the chiefe citie and Metropolitane churche througheout all Norway, Iselande, Gronlande, and the Ilandes there about. This citie was noble at the fyrst vnder the stoylyng Empire of Norway, conteynnyng in circuite. xiiii. paryshes, but

but it is now brought in maner to a village, and is called in the Germane tongue Truthaim, as the house of the Dryides. There remayneth at this day a Cathedrall churche in token of the auncient felicitie, beyng such that in byggenesse and workmanship of wrought stone, the lyke is not in all Christendome. The greeles or compasse about the Altar, was destroyed by fyre, and repared at the same time that we wrote this historie. The charge of the reparation, was esteemed to be seven thousand crownes: by which small portyon, an estimate may be made of the excellencie of the whole Churche.

The tract of all the sea coastes of Norway is very quiet and meeke, the sea is not frozen, the snowes endure not long. This lande hath also a peculiar pestilence, which they call Leem or Lemmer. This is a litle foure footed beaste, about the byggenesse of a Ratte, with a spotted skynne: these fall vppon the grounde at certayne tempestes and soddeyne showres, not yet knowne from whence they come, as whether they are brought by the wyndes from remote Ilandes, or otherwyle engendred of thicke and seculent cloudes. But this is well knowne, that as soone as they fall downe, greene grasse and hearbes are found in theyr bowels not yet digested. They consume al greene thyngs, as do Locustes: and such as they only byte, wyther and dye. This pestilence lyuech as long as it doth not tast of the grasse newly sproong. They come together by flockes, as do Swalows: and at an ordinarie time, either die by heapes, with great infection of the land (as by whole corruption y aire is made pestiferous, and molesteth the Norwegians with swymmyng in the head and the Jaundies) or are consumed of other beastes named Lefrat. Towards the East, it is included within the lyne that is drawen by the mountaynes, whose endes or vttermoile boundes, they are, that lye toward the South, about the mouthes of the riuer Trolbeta: but that part that lieth toward the North, passeth by the castel of Wardhus, and is extended to the vnkowen lande of the Lapones.

The Lake called Mos, and the Ilande of Hoffuen in the myddest therof, is in the degree. 45 30 61.

In this Lake appeareth a straunge monster: whiche is, a serpent of huge byggenesse. And as to all other places of the

A magnificent churche

As some beastes of vnkowen generation.

Wardhus. The vnkowen land of the Lapones.

A serpent of huge bignesse.

Of the Northeast frosty sea,

the worlde, blasing starres do portend thalutation and chaunge of thynges; so doth this to Norway. It was seene of late (in the peere of Christ. 1522. appearyng farre about the water, rowlyng lyke a great pyller, and was, by coniecture farre of, esteemed to be of spacie cubites in length. Shortly after folowed the reiectyng of Christiernus kyng of Denmarke. Suche other monstrous thyngs are sayd to be seene in diuers places of the worlde. And doubtlesse except we should thynke that the diuine prouidence, haupng mercy vpon mortall men, and hereby warnyng them of theyr offences, doth send such strange thynges (as also blasing starres, and armies fyghtyng in the ayre, with suche other portentous monsters, whereof no causes can be founde by naturall thynges) we myght els suspect that such syghtes were but imaginations of the sense of man deceptued.

On the East syde, are exceedyng rough mountaynes, which admit no passage to Suetia. The sea betweene Norway and the Ilandes, is called *Tialleslund*, *Euripus*, or the streyghtes. The Island of *Lofoth*, whose middelt. 42 67 100.  
*Langanas*, whose middelt. 41 67  
*Vastrall*, whose middelt. 41 30 67 30.

The sea betweene these three Ilands, is called *Muscotrom* (that is) boplyng. At the flowing of the sea, it is swallowed into the Caues, and is blowne out agayne at the reflowing, with no lesse violence then the streames of ryuers fall from mountaines. This sea is nauigable, untill it be lower then the mouthes of the rockes. Such as chaunce into it out of due time, are caried headlong into Whyrpooles. The fragmentes of the lost shypes, are seldome cast vp agayne. But when they are cast vp, they are so brused and fretted against the rockes, that they seeme to be overgrowne with hoare. This is the power of nature, passing the fabilous *Simpleiades* & the fearful *Malea*, with the dangerous places of *Silla* and *Caribdis*, and all other miracles that nature hath wrought in any other sea hytherto known to man.

The Ilands about Norway, are of such fruitful pasture, that they byng not theyr beastes into the stables before the moneth of Nouember, and do in many places wynter them abrode.

Suetia

and kingdomes lying that way.

287

Suecia, or Suethlande.

**S**uecia, is a kyngdome ryche in Golde, Syluer, Copper, Leade, Iron, fruite, cattaple, and exceedyng increale of fythe, of the ryuers, lakes, and the sea, and hath no lesse plentie of such wyld beastes as are taken with huntynge.

Towarde the West, it is ended with the mountaynes of Norway from the Castell of *Wardbus* vnto thende. 51. 63. 40

Towarde the South, with the line from this ende vnto the degrees 53. 30. 61. And from thence vnto the degrees. 61. 60. 30.

Above the gulse of Suecia, towarde the north, with the south end of *Lapponia* from the castell of *Wardbus* vnto the ende. 62. 70.

Towarde the East, it is ended with the line from this ende vnto the degree. 63. 67. &c. *Stokholme* the chiefe cite. 64. 61.

This is the chiefe mart towne of Suecia, and is strongly defended by art and nature. It is situate in marshes, after the maner of Venice: and was therfore called *Stokholme*, forasmuch as being placed in the water, the fundacion is fortified with stockes or piles. The sea entreth ino it with two armes or branches, of such largenesse and depth, that shypes of great burden and with maine sayes may enter by the same with theyr full freight. This suffered of late peeres greuous spoile and destruction, to the singular exemple of cruel hostilitie: and such, as the lyke hath not been lyghly shewed to any other cite, receiued by league and composition. In al the tract from *Stokholme* to the lake above the ryuer of *Dalekarle*, whiche is in the degree. 56 30 63 50. are mountaynes fruitful of good syluer, copper, and lead. They get great ryches by the salmons and plentie of other fythes whiche they take in certayne great lakes.

The dukedome of *Agermannia* occupieth the north syde to the confines of *Laponia*. This tract is full of wodes, in the which they hunt the beastes called *Vros* or *Bisontes*, which in theyr tongue they call *Elg*, (that is) wyld Ales. These are of such byghth, that the hyghest part of theyr backes are equal with the measure of a man, holdyng by his armes as hygh as he may reach &c. *Vpsalia* the chiefe cite. 62. 62. 30. here is buryed the body of saint *Henricus* kyng and martyr.

*Copperdalia* (that is) the copper valley, is a Dukedome south.

Golde and syluer.

Wardbus castell.

The gulse of Suecia.

The cite of Stokholme.

Golde in colde regions, fruite.

The beaste called Vros or Elg.

Vpsalia.

Copperdalia.

God warneth vs by signes of thyngs to come.

The streightes of boplyng sea.

Dangerous places in the sea.

Fruitfull Ilands about Norway.

Of the northeft frosty sea.

Southwarde from the Dukedom of Iemptia. Under this, is the valyant nation of the people called *Dalekarly*.

Oplandia.

*Oplandia*, is a Dukedome and the nauil or myddest of *Scondla*.

The citie of *Pircho*, on the North syde of the lake of *Meler*, was once a great citie, and able to arme .xiiii. thousande men to the warres: but is nowe brought to a bylage.

All the tracte of *Oplandia*, hath mynes of *Syluer*, *Copper*, and *Steele*.

Of the Ilandes and rockes that lye about *Suecia*, the myddest is. 67. 30. 61. 30.

Byrdes.

These were called of the olde wyters *Done*, the reason of which name remayneth vnto this daye: For there are in these innumerable multitudes of byrdes, insomuch that inhabitauntes of the next coast, sayle thither in the moneth of May, whyle the byrdes lye on theyr egges: which they steale, and reserue them in salt for a long tyme.

Egges reserved in salte.

Bothnia.

**B**othnia is so named of the pretious fures of all sortes that are carped from thence into foraigne regions: For by these and theyr spynnyng, they haue great commoditie. *Salmons* of the best sort are taken in these seas, & are great riches among these nations. *Bothnia* is diuided into two partes, as *Northbothnia*, & *South Bothnia*, called *Ostrobothnia*. *Northbothnia*, is terminated with the South ende of the *Lapones*, vnto the ende. 78. 30. 69

Precious fures.

Byrdes.

Towarde the East, it is terminated with this ende, and vnto the degree. 78. 30. 68. 20.

Towarde the West, with the line terminyng the East syde of *Suecia*. And towarde the South, with the residue of the gulfie of *Suecia*, from thence that hath degrees. 63. 69.

*Ostrobothnia*, towarde the East is terminated from the sayde ende of the most East coast. And towarde the South, with a line extended by the mountaynes from this ende vnto the degree. 71. 66

Towarde the North and West, with part of the gulfie of *Suecia*, &c.

Gothia

and kingdomes lying that way.

288

Gothia or Gothlande.

**G**othia, is by interpretation good. For the holy name of God, is in the Germane tongue *Goth* (that is) *Good*.

At what tyme the *Gothes* vpon a generall consent sent forth theyr offsprynge of succession to seeke new seates of countreys to inhabite, and when they possessed the coastes of *Meotis* and *Asia*, none of the olde wyters haue made mention as farre as I know. But they haue been knowne since the tyme that the *Romanes* dilated theyr Empire by *Illirium* (now called *Slauonie*) vnto the ryuer of *Danubius*, and were also famous from the tyme of *Cesar Dictator*, and *Octavianus Augustus*, by reason of their great warres at *Danubius*, being the vtermoost bound of the Empire. Neuerthelesse, in that renoume what *Gothia* was, vnder what part of heauen it was situate, or of whom the *Gothes* tooke their original, it hath been unknowen almost to this age. This is termined toward the North, with the South ende of *Suetia*, and towarde the West, with the other mountaynes of *Norway*, whiche continue from the boundes of *Suetia*, to the mouthes of the ryuers of *Trolbeta*, &c.

Thinuatiens of the Gothes.

The warre of the gothes against the Romanes.

The boundes of Gothland.

It hath many goodly Townes, Cities, Castles, Pines, &c. The citie of *Visba*, being in the degree. 61. 30. 54. 15. was an ancient and famous mart Towne, as is *Genua* in *Italie* at this day: but afterward being afflicted by incursions of the Pirates of the *Danes* and *Moscovites*, it was left desolate. There remayne to this day certayne ruines, whiche testifie the auncient nobilitie. In this place were the firste stations of the *Gothes* that possessed *Meotis*. It is at this day of fruitfull soyle, and famous by many goodly and strong Castles & Monasteries. There is (among other) a Monasterie of the order of *Saint Benedict*, in the whiche is a librarie of about two thousande bookes of old auctors.

The citie of Visba.

Danes and Moscovites.

A librarie of two thousand bookes.

About the yere of Christe fourescore and eght, the *Gothes*, vnto whom resorted a great multitude of other people of these North partes of the worlde, as from *Linonia*, *Prussia*, *Russia*, and *Tartaria*, with diuers other countreys, making them diuers kynnes and Captaynes, by depopulate and byng in subjection the more part of *Europe*, inuaded *Italie*, destroyed *Rome*, inhabited that partie of *Italie* nowe called *Lumbardie*, and likewise subdued the Realmes of *Castile* and *Aragonie*. Their warres continued aboue thre hundred yeres.

The gothes invaded Europe, and destroyed Rome.

Finland,

**F**inlandia, is as much to saye as a saye land, or syne lande, so named for the fertilitie of the ground. Plinie seemeth to call it *Finnonia*: for he saith, that about the coastes of Finland, are many Islands without names, of the which there lyeth one before *Scythia* called *Pannonia*. The gulfe called *Sinus Finnicus*, is so named at this day of the land of *Finncnia*. *Linnoia* connecteth with *Scythia*, and runneth without all *Tanis*, (that is to say) without the lymittes of *Europe* to the confines of *Asia*. But that the name of *Finlande* seemeth not to agree herunto, the cause is, that this place of *Plinie* is corrupted, as are many other in this aucthour. So that from the name of *Finnonia*, or *Phinnonia*, it was a lykely error to call it *Pannonia*, forasmuche as these wordes doo not greatly differ in wytyng and sounde: so that the counterfect name was soone put in the place of the true name, by hym that knew *Pannonia* and read that name before, being also ignorant of *Phinnonia*.

*Eningia* had in olde tyme the tyle of a kyngdome, it is of such largenesse, but hath now only the tite of an inferiour gouernour, being vnder the dominion of the *Slauons*, and vsyng the same tongue. In religion, it obserued the rytes of the *Greekes* of late peeres, when it was vnder the gouernance of the *Moscouites*: But it is at this present vnder the kyng of *Suecia*, & obserueth thinstitutions of the Occidentall church. Spanishe wyndes are brought thither in great plentie, which the people vse merly and cheerefully. It is terminated on the North side by the South lye of *Ostrobothnia*, and is extended by the mountaynes. Toward the West, it is terminated with the sea of *Finnonia*, according to this description, and hath degrees. 71 66. &c.

Of the difference of regions, and causes of great cities, after the description of Hieronimus.

Cardanus. Liber. xi. De Subtilitate.

**T**here is an other difference of regions: caused of cold and heate. If of suche as are neare vnto the poles, are vexed with to muche colde: and suche as are vnder the line where the Summe is of greatest force, are oppressed with heate. Suche as are in the middelt betweene both, are nearest vnto temperatenesse. Under the pole, it is impossible

that there should be populous cities, bycause the lande is barren, and the carpage or conueyaunce of frutes, victualles, and other necessaries, is incommodious. By reason whereof, it is necessarie that the inhabitants of such regions lyue ever in continuall wandering from place to place, or els in small byllages. Suche as inhabite temperate regions, haue meane cities, as well for that they haue more commodious conueyaunce for necessaries, as also that they may dwell better and more safely together then in byllages, by reason of fortifying their towncs with walles, and exercising of artes and occupations, whereby the one may the better helpe the other. Yet that olde Rome (being in a temperate region) was of such incredible bygnesse, the cause was, that it obeyned the Emperre of the worlde, by reason whereof, all nations had confluence thither, and not the greatnesse of the walles. But it is necessarie that the greatest cities be in hotte regions: first, for that in such regions, part of the soile is either barren if it lacke water, or els most fruitfull if it abounde with water. And for this inequalitye, when they fynde any place meete to susteyne a multitude, it foloweth of necessitie that great cities be builded in such places, by reason of great concourse of people resortyng to the same. An other great cause is, that whereas in such regions, marchauntes come very farre to such commodious places, they passe through many desarte and perillous regions: So that it shalbe necessary for theyr better securitie, to come in great companyes, as it were great armies. And therefore whereas such a societie is once knyt together in a commodious place, it should bee great hynderance as well to the inhabitants as to marchauntes, if they should wander in incommodious places. And by this confluence, both of such as dwell neare to such places, and also of strangers and such as dwell farre off, it is necessary that in continuance of tyme, small towncs become great cities, as are these: *Quinsai*, *Singui*, *Cambalu*, *Memphis*, *Cairus*, or *Alcayr*, otherwyle called *Babylon* in Egypt. But if here any will obiecte *Constantinople* (in olde tyme called *Bizantium*) being in a temperate region, although it be not to be compared to such cities as are more then *ix. myles* in circuite, yet doe we answer herunto, that the *Turkes* Emperre is the cause of the greatnesse hercof, as we sayde before of Rome.

Pannonia  
fallin taken for  
Finnonia.

Eningia.

Spanishe  
wyndes.



Of the Northeast frostie sea,

The historie written in the latine tongue by *Paulus Ionijs*,  
byshop of *Nuceria* in Italie, of the legation or ambassade  
of great *Basilus* Prince of *Moscouia*, to Pope Clement  
the .vij. of that name: In which is conteyned the de-  
scription of *Moscouia*, with the regions con-  
finyng about the same, euen vnto  
the great and rych Empire  
of *Cathay*.



Intend first bryefly to describe the situation  
of the region which we plainly see to haue  
ben litle knowne to *Strabo* & *Ptoleme*, & then  
to proceede in rehearsing the maners, cu-  
stomes, & religion of the people: and this in  
maner in the like simple stile and phrase of  
speech, as the same was declared vnto vs by

*Demetrius* the Ambassadour, a man not ignozant in the latin ton-  
gue, as from his youth brought vp in *Liunia*, where he learned  
the first rudiments of letters, and being growne to mans age, ex-  
ecuted thoffice of an Ambassadour into diuers Christian provin-  
ces. For whereas by reason of his approued faithfulness & indu-  
strie, he had before ben sent as Oratour to the kynges of *Succia*  
and *Denmarke*: & the great master of *Prussia*, hee was at the last  
sent to *The* Emperour *Maximilian*, in whose court (being repleny-  
shed with all sortes of men) while he was contentant, if any thing  
of barbarous maners yet remayned in so docible & quiet a nature,  
the same was put away by teaching him selfe to better ciuillitie.  
The cause of his legacie or ambassade, was given by *Paulus Cen-  
turio* a *Genuese*, who when he had receiued letters commendatory  
of pope *Leo* the tenth, & came to *Moscouia* for the trade of mar-  
chandies, of his owne mynde conferred with the familiars of  
*Duke Basilus*, as touching the conformation of the rites of both  
churches. He furthermore of great magnanimitie, and in maner  
outrageous desire, sought out by a new and incredible viage, spi-  
ces might be brought from *India*. For while before hee had exer-  
cised the trade of marchandies in *Syria*, *Egypt*, & *Pontus*, he knewe  
by fame that spices myght be conueighed from the further *India*  
by the river *Indus*, against the course of the same, and from thence  
by

*Demetrius*  
the ambassa-  
dour of *Mos-  
couia*,

*Paulus Cen-  
turio*,

Spices  
brought from  
*India* to  
*Moscouia*.

The ryuer  
*Indus*,

and kyngdomes lying that way.

290

by a small byage by land passing ouer the mountaines of *Parop-  
amisus*, to be caried to the ryuer *Oxus* in *Bactria*, which hauing his  
originall a most from the same mountaynes from whence *Indus*  
doth spring, and violently carrying with it many other ryuers,  
fallerh into the sea *Hircanum* or *Caspium*, at the porte called *Sira-  
ua*. And he earnestly affirmed that from *Siraua*, is an easie & safe  
navigation vnto the marie towne of *Citrachan* or *Asirachan*, and  
the mouth of the ryuer *Volga*, and from thence euer against the  
course of the ryuers, as *Volga*, *Occha*, and *Mescho*, vnto the ciue  
*Moscha*, and from thence by lande to *Riga*, and into the sea of  
*Sarmatia*, and all the West regions. For he was vehement-  
ly, and more then of equitie, accented and prouoked by the iniuries  
of the *Portugales*, who hauing by force of armes subdued a  
great parte of *India*, and possessed all the marie townes, ta-  
kyng wholly into theyr handes all the trade of spices to byng  
the same into *Spayne*, and neuerthelesse to sell them at a more  
greuous and intollerable ppxe to the people of *Europe* then e-  
uer was heard of before: And furthermore kepte the coastes of  
the *Indian* sea so straightly with continuall nauies, that those  
trades are thereby left of, which were before exercised by the  
gulse of *Persia*, and towarde the ryuer of *Euphrates*, and also  
by the streightes of the sea of *Arabia*, and the ryuer *Nilus*, and in  
fin. by our sea: by which trade all *Asia* and *Europe* was aboun-  
dantly satisfied, and better cheape then hath been since the *Por-  
tugales* had the trade in theyr handes, with so many incommodi-  
ties of such long viages, whereby the spices are so corrupted by  
thinfaction of the pompe and other filthinesse of the shoppes, that  
theyr naturall saueur, taste, and qualittie, as well heereby, as by  
theyr long reseruyng in the shoppes, sellers, and warehouses  
in *Lusheburne*, *banlybeth* and *resolueith*, so that reseruyng euer  
the freshest and newest, they sell only the wooxt and most cor-  
rupted. But *Paulus*, although in all places he earnestly and behe-  
mently argued of these thinges, and expressed great malice and ha-  
tred agaynst the *Portugales*, affirmyng that not only thereby  
the customes and reuenues of princes shoulde be much greater, if  
that byage might be discovered, but also that spices myght bee  
better cheape bought at the handes of the *Mosconites*: yet could  
be nothpyng auayle in this suite, forasmuch as *Duke Basilus*  
pp. ii. thought

Orue of *Portu-  
ga*, a ryuer of  
*Asia*, runneth  
through the des-  
tartes of *Sy-  
ria*. The sea *Hirca-  
num* is now  
called *mare A-  
baticke*, or *ma-  
re de S. Ila*.  
*Citrachan* or  
*Asirachan*.  
*Sarmatia* is  
that great  
countrie where  
in is conueyned  
*India*, *Unio-  
nia*, and *Tara-  
ria*, and the  
North and  
East parte of  
*Polonia*.  
Agaynst the  
*Portugales*.  
The trade of  
spices in olde  
tyme.

Spices corrup-  
ted.

The Caspian  
sea.Basilus wrote  
to Pope Adrian.Warre be-  
tweene the  
Polones and  
Moscouites.The seconde  
viage of Paulus  
his to Moscouia.The Pope  
yeth wrote  
Basilus to ac-  
knowledge the  
Romane  
churche.

thought it not good to make open, or disclose unto a straunger and unknowen man, those regions which gyue enterance to the sea *Caspium*, and the kyngdomes of *Persia*. Paulus therefore excludyng all hope of further traueyle, and become nowe of a marchaunte an Ambassadour, brought *Basilus* letters (Pope Leo beyng now departed) to Adrian his succellour, in the which he declared, with honourable and reuerende wordes, his good will and fauourable mynde toward the Bysshoppe of Rome. For a fewe yeeres before, *Basilus* (then keepyng warres agaynst the Polones, at suche tyme as the generall counsaile was celebraite at *Laterane*) requyred by John, Kyng of Denmarke (the father of *Christierne*, who was of late expelled from his kyngdome) that safe passage myght be graunted to the Ambassadours of *Moscouia*, to goe to Rome. But wherreas it so chaunced, that kyng John and Pope Julius dyed both in one day, whereby he lacked a conuenient sequester or solicitour, he omitted his consultation as touchyng that legacie. After this, the warre waxed hotte betweene him and *Sigismunde* the kyng of *Polonie*: who obteynyng the victorie agaynst the *Moscouites* at *Boristhene*, supplications were decreed in Rome for the ouerthrowe and banquyshyng the enemyes of the Christian faith, whiche thyng greatly alienated both kyng *Basilus* him selfe, and all that nation from the Bysshoppe of Rome. But when Adrian the vi. departed from this lyfe, and lefte Paulus now readie to his seconde vyage, his succellour *Clement* the vii. perceyuyng that Paulus styll furiously reuolued and tossed in his vnquyet mynde that vyage toward the East, sent him agayne with letters to *Moscouia*, by the whiche with propense and friendly persuations, he exhorted *Basilus* to acknowledge the maiestie of the Romane churche, and to make a perpetuall league and agreement in matters of religion, which thyng should bee not only for the health of his soule, but also greatly to the increase of his honour: And further promysed, that by the holy auctorite of his office, he would make him a kyng, and gyue him kyngly ornaments, if receyuyng the doctrine of the Greeke, hee would conserue himselfe to the auctoritie of the Romane churche.

But

But Paulus, who with more prosperous iourneyes then great bauntage, had from his youth traueyled a great parte of the worlde, although hee were nowe aged, and sore vexed with the strangurie, came with a prosperous and speedy iourney to *Moscouia*, where he was gently receyued of *Basilus*, and remayned in his Courte for the space of twoo monethes. But in fine, mistrustyng his owne strength, and deterred by the difficultie of so great a iourney, when he had utterly put away all his imaginations and hope of this trade to *India*, returned to Rome with *Demetrius* the Ambassadour of *Basilus*, before we yet thought that he had been in *Moscouia*. The Bysshoppe commaunded that *Demetrius* should bee lodged in the most magnificent and princely parte of the houses of *Vaticane*, the rooffes of whose edifies are gylted and embowed, and the chambers richly furnyshed with silken beddes and cloth of Arresse: Wyllyng furthermore that he should be honourably receyued, and vested with silke. He also assigned *Franciscus Cheregatus*, the Bysshoppe of *Aprutium* (a man that had often tymes been Ambassadour to dyuers regions) to accompany him, and shewe him the order and rites of our religion, with the monumentes and maners of the citie. Furthermore, when *Demetrius* had certayne dayes rested and recreated him selfe, washing away the fylth he had gathered by reason of the long viage, then apparelled with a fayre vesture, after the maner of his countrey, he was brought to the byshops presence, whom he honoured kneelyng, with great humilitie and reuerence (as is the maner) and therewith presented unto his holinesse certeyne fures of *Sables* in his owne name, and in the name of his prince, and also deliuered the letters of *Basilus*, which they before, and then the *Illyrian* or *Slauon* interpretour, *Nicolaus Siccensis*, translated into the Latine tongue, in this effecte as foloweth.

Demetrius in  
tertainment  
at Rome.Demetrius is  
brought to the  
Popes pre-  
sence.

pp.iii.

To

Of the Northeast frostie sea,

Basilus letters to Pope Clement.

To Pope Clement, shepard and teacher of the Romane church, great *Basilus* by the grace of God, lord, Emperour, and dominatour of all *Russia*, and great Duke of *Volodemia*, *Moscouia*, *Nouogradia*, *Plescouia*, *Smolenta*, *Ifferia*, *Iugoria*, *Periunia*, *Vetcha*, *Bolgaria*, &c. Dominator & great prince of *Nouogradia*, in the lower countrey: also of *Cernigouia*, *Razania*, *Volotchbia*, *Rzeuia*, *Belchia*, *Rostouia*, *Iarostauia*, *Belozeria*, *Vdoria*, *Obdoria*, & *Condiui*, &c. You sent vnto vs *Paulus Centurio*, a citizen of *Genua*, with letters, whereby you doe exhort vs to ioyne in power & counsaile with you, & other Princes of Christendome, against the enemies of the christian fayth: & that a free passage & redy way may bee opened for both your Ambassadours & ours, to come & go to & fro, whereby by mutual dutie and indeuour on both parties, we may haue knowledge of the state of thinges parteyning to the wealth of vs both. VVe certes, as we haue hytherto happily by the ayde and helpe of almightie God constantly and earnestly resisted the cruell & wicked enemies of the christian faith, so are we determined to doe hereafter: and are likewise redy to consent with other christian princes, & to graunt free passage into our dominions. In consideration wherof, we haue sent vnto you our faithful seruant *Demetrius Erasmus*, with these our letters: & with him haue remitted *Paulus Centurio*, desiring you also shortly to dismisse *Demetrius*, with safegard and indemnitie vnto the borders of our dominions. And we wil likewise do the same, if you send your Ambassadour with *Demetrius*, whereby both by communication and letters, we may be better certified of thorder and administration of such things as you require: so that being aduertised of the mindes and intent of all other christian princes, we may also consult what is best to be done herein. Thus fare ye wel. Giuen in our dominiō in our citie of *Moscouia*, in the yeere from the creation of the world. vii. thousand and. 300. the third day of Aprill.

But *Demetrius*, as he is experte in diuine and humane thinges, and especially of holy scripture, seemed to haue secrete commaundement of greater matters, whiche we thinke he will shortly declare to the senate in priuate consultations. If he is now deliue-

red

and kyngdomes lying that way.

292

red of the feuer, into the which he fell by change of ayre, and hath so recouered his strength & natiue colour, that being a man of. 17. peeres of age, he was not only present at the Popes masse, celebrated with great solemnitie in the honour of *S. Cosmus & Damian*, but came also into the Senate, at such tyme as *Cardinal Campegius*, commyng first from the legacie of *Pannonia*, was receiued of the Pope & all the nobilitie of the court: And furthermore also viewed the Temples of the holy citie, with the ruines of the Romane magnificence, and with woondring eyes beheld the lamentable decay of the auncient buildinges. So that we thinke that shortly after he hath declared his message, he shal return to *Moscouia*, with the byshop of *Scarense* the Popes legate, not unrecompensed with iust rewardes at the handes of his holinesse.

The name of the *Moscouites* is nowe newe, although the Poete *Lucane* maketh mention of the *Moschos* conspyning with the *Sarmatians*: and *Plinie* also placeth the *Moschos* at the springes of the great ryuer of *Phasis*, in the region of *Colchos*, aboue the sea *Euxinus*, towarde the East. Their region hath very large boundes, and is extended from the Aultars of great *Alexander* about the springes of *Tanais*, to the extreme landes and North Ocean, in maner vnder the North starres, called *charles wayne*, or the great Beare, beyng for the most parte playne, & of fruitfull pasture, but in sommer in many places full of marishes. For whereas all that lande is replenished with many and great ryuers, which are greatly increased by the wynter, snowe, and Ice, resolved by the heate of the sunne, the playnes and fieldes are thereby overflowen with marishes, and all iourneys incombred with continuall waters and myrie slabbynesse, vntill by the benefite of the newe wynter the ryuers and marishes be frozen agayne, and giue safe passage to the sheades that are accustomed to iourney by the same. The wood or forest of *Hercynia* (and not *Hyrkania*, as is red in some false copies) occuppeth a great parte of *Moscouia*, and is heere and there inhabited, with houses builded therein, and so made thinner by the long labour of men, that it doeth not now shewe that hor- rour of thicke & impenetrable woods and landes, as many thinke it to haue. But beyng replenished with many wyld beasts, is so far extended throughe *Moscouia*, with a continuall tract betweene

Cardinal. Campegius.

The ruines of Rome.

The description of Moscouia.

The Aultars of great Alexander.

Marishes in sommer.

The forest of Hercynia.

Wyld beasts.

pp. iiii.

the

The Scythian Ocean.

The beastes called Vri, or Bisontes.

Helenes.

Of the Scythians and Tartars. Amayouii.

Horda.

The large dominion of the Tartars. Cathay.

The Tartars of Europe.

The Tartars of Asia are subiecte to the Duke of Moscouia.

the East and the North, towarde the Scythian Ocean, that by the infinite greatnesse thereof, it hath deluded the hope of sucie as haue curiously searched the ende of the same. In that parte that reacheth towarde Prussia, are founde the great and fierce beastes called Vri, or Bisontes, of the kynde of Buides: Also, Alces lyke unto Hartes, which the Moscouites call Lozzi, and are called of the Germaines Helenes.

On the East syde of Moscouia are the Scythians, which are at this day called Tartars, a wandryng nation, and at all ages famous in warres. In the stead of houses they vse wagons, couered with beastes hydes, whereby they were in olde tyme called Amayouii. For cities and townes, they vse great tentes and pavilions, not defended with trenches or walles of tymber or stone, but inclosed with an innumerable multitude of archers on horse backe. The Tartars are diuided by companyes, which they call Hordas, which worde in theyr tongue signifieth a consentyng company of people, geathered together in forme of a citie. Euery Horda is gouerned by an Emperour, whom eyther his parentage or warlike prowes hath promoted to that dignitie. For they oftentimes keepe warre with theyr borderers, and contende ambiciouly and fiercely for dominion. It doeth hereby appeare, that they consist of innumerable Hordas, in that the Tartars possesse the most large desartes, euen vnto the famous citie of Cathay, in the furthest Ocean in the East. They also that are nearest to the Moscouites, are knowen by theyr trade of marchaundies, and often incurSIONS. In Europe, neare vnto the place called Dromon Achillis, in Taurica Chersoneso, are the Tartars called Precopites, the daughter of whose prince, Selymus the Emperour of the Turkes tooke to wyfe. These are most infect to the Polones, and waste the regions on euery syde, betweene the ryuers of Boristhenes and Tanais. They that in the same Taurica possesse Cassam, a colonie of the Ligurians (called in olde tyme Theodosia) doe both in religion and all other thinges agree with the Turkes. But the Tartars that inhabite the regions of Asia, betweene Tanais and Volga, are subiect to Basilius the kyng of the Moscouites, and chooseth them a gouernour at his assignement. Among these, the Cremii afflicted with ciuile seditions, where as heeretofore they were ryche and of great power, haue of late yeeres lost theyr domi-

dominion and dignitie. The Tartars that are beyonde the riuer of Volga, do religiously obserue the frendship of the Moscouites, and professe them selues to be theyr subiectes. Beyond the Caspianes, towarde the North, are the Sciambani, ryche in heardes of cattayle, and consistyng of a great multitude of men. After these, are Nogai, whiche obteyne at this day the chiefe fame of ryches and warly affayres. Theyr Horda, although it be most ample, yet hath it no Emperour, but is gouerned by the wysdome and vertue of the most auncient & valiant men, after the maner of the common wealth of Venece. Beyond the Nogais, somewhat towarde the South & the Caspian sea, the noblest nation of the Tartars, called Zagathai, inhabite townes buylded of stone, and haue an excedyng great and fayre citie, called Samarcanda, whiche Iaxartes, the great ryuer of Sogdiana, runneth through, and passyng from thence about a hundred myles, falleth into the Caspian sea. With these people in our dayes, Ismael the Sophi and kyng of Persia, hath oftentimes kepte warre, with doubtfull successe. Insomuche that fearyng the greatnesse of theyr power, whiche he resysted with all that he myght, he lefte Armenia and Taurisum the chiefe citie of the kyngdome, for a praye to Selimus the victourer of one wyng of the battayle. From the citie of Samarcanda, descended Tamburlanes the myghty Emperour of the Tartars, whom some call Tanberlanis: But Demetrius sayth that he shoulde be called Themircutblu. This is he that about the yere of Christ M. CCC. xcviij. subdued almost all the East partes of the worlde: And lastly, with an innumerable multitude of men, inuaded the Turkes dominions, with whom Baiafetes Ottomanus theyr kyng, (and father to the great grandfather of this Solymen that nowe lyueth) meetyng at Ancira in the confines or marches of Galatia and Bythinia, gaue hym a sore battayle, in the whiche fell on the Turkes part. 20000 men, and Baiafetes hym selfe was taken prisoner, whom Tamburlanes caused to be locked in an Iron cage, and so carped hym about with hym throughe all Asia, which he also conquered with a terryble army. He conquered all the landes betweene Tanais and Nilus, and in fine vanquished in battayle the great Soltane of Egypte, whom he chased beyonde Nilus, and tooke also the citie of Damascus.

The Tartars beyonde the riuer of Volga.

Nogai. Sigismundus calleth them Nogayiti.

The noblest nation of the Tartars. The ryuer Iaxartes.

Ismael the Sophi kyng of Persia.

The citie of Samarcanda.

Tamburlanes, the myghty Emperour of the Tartars. The conquestes of Tamburlanes.

Baiafetes.

From the region of these *Tartars* called *Zagathei*, is brought great plenty of sylken apparell to the *Moscouites*. But the *Tartares* that inhabite the mydlande or inner regions, byng none other wares then trucks or droues of swift runnyng hoxles, and clokes made of whyte feltes: also haies or tentes, to withstande the iniuries of colde and rayne. These they make very artificially, & apt for the purpose. They receiue againe of the *Moscouites*, coates of cloth, and Syluer monie, contempnyng all other bodily ornaments, and the furnytur of superfluous household stuffe. For beyng defended agaynst the violence of weather and tempestes, onely with such apparel and couerture wherof we haue spoken, they trust onely to theyr arrowes, which they shoote aswell backwarde flying, as when they assaile theyr enemies face to face: Albeit, when they determined to inuade Europe, theyr princes and captaynes had helmets, coates of fence, and hooked swoordes, whiche they bought of the *Persians*. Toward the South, the boundes of *Moscouia* are termined by the same *Tartars* whiche possesse the playne regions nere vnto the *Caspian* sea, about the marshes of *Meotis* in *Asia*, and about the ryuers of *Boristhenes* and *Tanais* in part of Europe. The people called *Roxolani*, *Gete*, and *Bastarne*, inhabited these regions in olde tyme, of whom I thynke the name of *Russia* tooke originall. For they call part of *Lituania*, *Russia* the lower, wheras *Moscouia* it selfe is called whyte *Russia*. *Lituania* therefore, lyeth on the Northwest syde of *Moscouia*. But toward the full West, the mayne landes of *Prussia* and *Liuania* are ioynd to the confines or marches of *Moscouia*, wher the *Sarmatian* sea breaking forth of the streightes of *Cimbrica Chersonesus* (nowe called *Denmarke*) is bended with a crooked gulfe toward the North. But in the furthest bankes of that Ocean, where the large kyngdomes of *Norway* and *Suecia* are ioynd to the continent, and almost enuironed with the sea, are the people called *Lapones*: a nation exceedyng rude, suspitious, and fearefull, flying and astonysed at the syght of all straungers and shyppes. They knowe nether frutes nor apples, nor yet any benignitie eyther of heauen or earth. They prouide them meate onely with shootyng, and are appareled with skynnes of wyld beasts. They dwell in caues fylled with dye leaues, and in holowe

This apparell they haue of the *Persians*.

The *Tartars* trafficke with the *Moscouites*.

The *Tartars* of the South syde of *Moscouia*.

*Gete* and *Roxolani*. *Russia*.

*Moscouia* called whyte *Russia*. *Lituania*. *Prussia*. *Liuania*. *Denmarke*. *Norway*. *Suecia*. The people of *Laponia*.

holow trees, consumed within eyther by fyre, or rotten for age. Such as dwell neare the sea syde, fynd the more luckely then cunnyngly, and in the stead of frutes, reserue in store fyshes dyed with smoke. They are of small stature of bodie, with flat visage, pale and wannie coloure, and very swyft of foote. Theyr wyttes or dispositions, are not knowen to the *Moscouites* theyr borderers, who thynke it therefore a madnesse to assaile them with a smal power, and iudge it nether profitable nor glorious, with great armies to inuade a poore & beggerly nation. They exchange the most white fures, which we call *Armelines*, for other wares, of diuers sortes: Yet so, that they flye the syght and companie of all merchantes. For comparng and layng theyr wares togeather, and leauyng theyr fures in a mydde place, they bargayne with simple sayth, with absent and vnknown men. Some men of great credite and auctoritie, do testifie that in a region beyond the *Lapones*, betwene the West and the North, oppressed with perpetuall darknesse, is the nation of the people called *Pigmei*, who being growen to theyr full grought, do scarcely exceede the stature of our chyldren of ten yeeres of age. It is a fearefull kynde of men, and expresse theyr wordes in suche chattering sort, that they seeme to be so muche the more lyke vnto Apes, in howe muche they differ in sense and stature from men of iust heghth.

Toward the North, innumerable people are subiect to the Empire of the *Moscouites*. Theyr regions extend to the *Scythian* Ocean for the space of almost thre monethes iorney.

Next vnto *Moscouia*, is the region of *Cohnogora*, aboundyng with frutes. Through this runneth the ryuer of *Diuidna*, beyng one of the greatest that is knowen in the North partes, and gaue the name to an other lesse ryuer, which breaketh forth into the sea *Balthicum*. This encreasynge at certayne tymes of the yeere, as dooth the ryuer *Nilus*, ouerfloweth the feeldes and playnes, and with his fatte and nourishyng moysture, doth marueylously resist the iniuries of heauen, and the sharp blastes of the North wynde. When it riseth by reason of molten snow, and great showres of rayne, it falleth into the Ocean by vnknown nations, and with so large a trench, lyke vnto a great sea, that it can not be sayled ouer

*Armeline* fures.

Bargayning without wordes.

The dark region by this dark region and *Pigmei*, is the way to *Chathap* by the North sea.

The *Scythian* Ocean.

The region of *Cohnogora*. The ryuer of *Diuidna*.



## Of the Northeast frosty sea.

in one day with a prosperous wynde. But when the waters are fallen, they leaue here and there large and fruitfull Islands: For coyne there cast on the ground, groweth without anye helpe of the Plowe, and with meruaylous celeritie of hasting nature, searpyng the newe iniurie of the proude ryuer, doth both spryng and rype in short space.

Into the riuer *Diuidna*, runneth the ryuer *Iuga*: and in the corner where they ioyne togeather, is the famous Parte Towne called *Vstuga*, distant from the cheefe citie *Mosca*, vi. hundred myles.

Note that whereas *Paulus Iouius* wyrteth here that the ryuer of *Diuidna*, othertwyle called *Diina*, runneth through the region of *Colmogor*, it is to bee vnderstood that there are two ryuers of that name, the one on the Northeast side of *Moscouia*, toward the frozen sea, & the other on the Southwest syde, falling into the sea *Balthem*, or the gulfes of *Fumonia*, by the citie of *Riga* in *Liuania*. And forasmuche as the true knowledge of these and certayne other is very necessarie for all such as shal trade into *Moscouia*, or other regions in those coastes by the North sea, I haue thought good to make further declaration hereof, as I haue founde in the historie of *Moscouia*, most faythfully and largely wyrtten by *Sigismundus Libernus*, who was twyle sent Embassadour into *Moscouia*, as fyrst by *Maximilian* the Emperour, and then agayne by *Ferdinando* kyng of *Hungarie* and *Boheme*. This haue I done the rather, for that in all the mappes that I haue seene of *Moscouia*, there is no mention made of the riuer of *Diina*, that runneth through the region of *Colmogor*, and by the citie of the same name, although the prouince of *Diina*, be in all cardes placed Northwarde from the ryuer of *Vstuga* or *Succana*, which is the same *Diina*, wherof we now speake, and wherof *Paulus Iouius* wyrteth, although it be not so named but from the angle or corner, where ioyning with the ryuer of *Iuga* and *Succana*, it runneth Northwarde towards the citie of *Colmogor*: and from thence fallerh into the North or frozen sea, as shall hereafter more playnely appeare by the wordes of *Sigismundus*, that the one of these be not taken for the other, beyng so farre distant, that great errour myght ensue by mistaking the same, especially because this wherof *Paulus Iouius* wyrteth, is not by name expressed in the cardes, but only in the other, wherby the errour myght be the greater. Of that therfore that runneth by the confines of *Liuania*, and the citie of *Riga*, *Sigismundus* wyrteth in this maner.

The Lake of *Diina*, is distant from the springes of *Borishenes*, almost ten myles, and as many from the marishe of *Fronovuo*. From it a ryuer of the same name toward the West, distant from *Vilna* twentie myles, runneth from thence toward the North, where by *Riga*, the cheefe citie of *Liuania*, it fallerh into the Germane sea, whiche the *Moscouites* call *Vuareczkoie morie*. It runneth by *Vutepso*, *Polotzo*, and *Dunenburgh*, and not by *Plescomia*, as one hath wyrtten. This riuer, beyng for the moste part nauigable, the *Liuanis* call *Duna*.

Of the other *Diina*, wherof *Paulus Iouius* speakerh, he wyrteth as foloweth.

and kingdomes lying that way.

295

The prouince of *Diina* and the ryuer of the same name, is so named from the place where the ryuers of *Suchana* and *Iuga* meetyng togeather, make one ryuer so called. For *Diina* in the *Moscouites* tongue, signifieth two. This ryuer by the space of two hundred myles, entreteth into the North Ocean, on that part where the sayde sea runneth by the coastes of *Succia* and *Norway*, and diuideth *Engreoland* from the vnkowen lande. This prouince situate in the full North, pertyeyned in tyme past to the legnizie of *Novogorode*. From *Moscouia* to the mouthes of *Diina*, are numbred .CCC. myles: Albeit as I haue sayde, in the regions that are beyonde *Volga*, the account of the iourney can not be wel obserued, by reason of many marshes, ryuers, and very great wooddes that lye in the way. Yet are we led by coniecture to thynke it to be scarcely two hundred myles: forasmuch as from *Moscouia* to *Vuolochda*, from *Vuolochda* to *Vstuga* somewhat into the East, and laste of al, from *Vstuga* by the ryuer *Diina*, is the ryght passage to the North sea. This region, belyde the Castell of *Colmogor* and the citie of *Duna*, situate almost in the mydde way betwene the springes and mouthes of the ryuer, and the Castell of *Pienega* standyng in the very mouthes of *Duna*, is vnterly without townes and Castells: Yet hath it many villages which are farre in sunder, by reason of the barenesse of the soyle, &c.

In an other place he wyrteth, that *Suchana* and *Iuga*, after they are ioyned togeather in one, looke theyr fyrst names, and make the ryuer *Duna*, &c. But let vs now returne to the historie of *Paulus Iouius*.

Unto *Vstuga*, from the *Permians*, *Pecerrians*, *Inugrians*, *Vgolicans*, and *Imnegians*, people inhabytyng the North and Northeast prouinces, are brought the precious furrres of *Partens* and *Sables*, also the calles of *Woolfes* and *Fores* both whyte and blacke: And lykewyle the skynnes of the beastes called *Cervari*, *Lupi* (that is) harte *Woolfes*, beyng engendred eyther of a *Woolfe* and a *Wynde*, or a *Hart* and a bitch *Woolfe*. These furrres and skynnes, they exchange for dyuers other wares. The best kynde of *Sables*, and of the finest heare, wherewith nowe the vestures of princes are lyned, and the tender neckes of delicate dames are couered, with the expresse similitude of the luyng beast, are brought by the *Permians* and *Pecerrians*, whiche they them selues also receyue at the handes of other that inhabite the regions neere vnto the North Ocean. The *Permians* and *Pecerrians*, a litle before our tyme, dyd sacrifice to *Iools*, after the maner of the *Gentyles*: but do nowe acknowledge *Christe* theyr God. The passage to the *Inugrians*, and *Vgolicans*, is by certayne rough mountaynes, whiche perhappes are they that in olde tyme were called

*Hyperborei*.

*Diina* and *Suchana*.

*Greonlande* or *Engreoland*.

*Underlande* myles of *Succia* many, that is leagues.

*Arch furrres*.

*Lupi Cervarii*.

*Sables*.

The mountaynes called *Hyperborei*.

The ryuer of *Iuga* or *Iug*. *Vstuga*.

The riuer of *Diuidna* or *Diina*.

The riuer of *Suchana*.

The frozen sea.

The

Bankes of di-  
uers kyndes.

*Hiperborei*. In the toppes of these, are founde the best kyndes of *Falcons*: whereof one kynde (called *Herodium*) is white, with spotted fethers.

There are also *Ferfalcons*, *Sakers*, and *Peregrines*, whiche were unknowen to the ancient princes in theyr excessure and nise pleasures.

The passage  
from *Mosco-*  
uia to *Cathay*.

Beyonde those people whom I last named (beyng all trybutaries to the kynges of *Mosconia*) are other nations, the last of men, not known by any voyages of the *Moscouites*, forasmuche as none of them haue passed to the Ocean, and are therefore knowne onely by the fabulous narrations of merchants. But it is apparante that the ryuer *Daidas* or *Luna*, drawyng with it innumerable other ryuers, runneth with a vehement course toward the North, and that the sea is there exceeding large: so that saylyng by the coaste of the ryght hande, shippes may haue passage from thence to *Cathay*, as it is thought by most lykely coniecture, except there lye some lande in the way. For the region of *Cathay* pertyneth to the extreme and furthest partes of the East, situate almost in the paralel of *Thracia*, and knowne to the *Portugales* in *India* when they sayled neere thereunto by the regions of *Sinara* and *Malacca* to *Aurea Chersonesus*, and brought from thence certayne bestures made of *Sables* skynnes, by whiche onely argument it is apparante that the cite of *Cathay* is not farre from the coastes of *Scythia*.

The *Gothes*  
subverted  
the romane  
Empire.

But when *Demetrius* was demaunded whether eyther by the monuments of letters, or by fame lesse them of theyr predecessors, they had any knowledge of the *Gothes*, who nowe more then a thousande yeeres since, subverted the empire of the *Romane* Emperours, and defaced the cite of *Rome*: He answered, that both the nation of the *Gothes* of the name of king *Totilas* theyr chiefe captayne, was of famous memorie among them: And that dyuers nations of the North regions conspired to that expedition, and especially the *Moscouites*: Also that that armie increased of the confluence of the *Barbarous* *Liouns* and wanderyng *Tartars*: But that they were all called *Gothes*, forasmuche as the *Gothes* that inhabited *Scondania* and *Iselande*, were the auctours of that inuasion.

And

*Mosconia*.

and kingdomes lying that way.

And with these boundes are the *Moscouites* inclosed on euery syde, whom we thynke to be those people that *Ptolome* called *Modocas*: but haue doubtlesse at this day theyr name of the ryuer *Mosco*, which runneth through the cheefe cite *Mosca*, named also after the same. This is the most famous cite in *Mosconia*, aswell for the situation thereof, beyng in maner in the myddest of the region, as also for the commodious oportunitie of riuers, multitude of houses, and strong fence of so saype and goodly a Castell. For the cite is extended with a long tract of buildynges by the bankes of the ryuer for the space of fyue myles. The houses are made all of timber, and are diuided into *Hallours*, *Chambers*, and *Kytchyns*, of large roomes: yet neyther of vnseemely heyght, or so lowe, but of decent measure and proportion. For they haue great trees apt for the purpose brought from the forest of *Hercinia*: Of the which, made perfectly round lyke y<sup>e</sup> masses of shypes, and so layd one vpon another, that they soyne at the endes in ryght angles, where beyng made very fast and sure, they frame theyr houses therof, of meruaylous strength with smal charges, and in verpe short tyme. In maner all the houses haue pyuate gardens, aswell for pleasure as commoditie of hearbes, wherby the circuite of the dispersed cite appeareth very great. All the wardes or quarters of the cite, haue their peculiar Chappels. But in the cheefest and highest place therof, is the Church of our Lady, of ample and goodly workemanshippe, whiche *Aristoteles* of *Bononie*, a man of singular knowledge and experience in Architecture, builded more then threescore yeeres since. At the very head of the cite, a litle ryuer, called *Neglinia* which tyueth many coyne myles, entereth into the ryuer *Mosca*, and maketh almost an *Ilande*, in whose end is the Castell, with many strong towers and bulwarkes, builded very saype by the deuice of Italian Architects that are the maisters of the kynges woorkes. In the fieldes about the cite, is an incredible multitude of *Hares*, and *Roe Buckes*, the which, it is lawfull for no man to chase or pursue with dogges or nettes, except only certayne of the kyngs familiars, and straunge Ambassadors, to whom he geueth licence by speciall commaundement. Almost threepartes of the cite is inuironed with two riuers, and the residue with a large *Pote*, that receiveth plentie of water from the sayde

The cite of  
*Mosca*.

Richard  
Chaunceler tolde  
me that these  
masses are smoo  
what hollow  
on the one syde,  
that the whole  
syde of the next  
entereth into y<sup>e</sup>  
same, wherby  
they lye very  
close.

The castell of  
*Mosca*.

White Hares  
and Roe bucs  
kes.

Of the northeft frosty sea.

The ryuer  
Ocha.

Volga.  
Nouogrodia.

Rha.

The white  
Lakes.

The Ryphean  
& Hyperborean  
mountaynes.

Tanais and  
Boristhenes.

The sea, Euxi-  
nus.

The Caspian  
sea.  
Astrachan.  
Media.  
Armenia.  
Persia.  
Casan.

sayde ryuers. The citie is also defended on the other syde with an other ryuer named *Iausa*, whiche falleth also into *Moscos* a litle beneath the citie. Furthermore, *Moscos* runnyng towards the South, falleth into the ryuer *Ocha* or *Occa*, muche greater then it selfe at the towne *Columna*; and not very farre from thence, *Ocha* it selfe, encreased with other ryuers, belabourh his streames in the famous ryuer *Volga*, where at the place where they ioyn, is situate the citie of *Nouogrodia* the lesse, so named in respect of the greater citie of that name, from whence was brought the fyrst colonie of the lesse citie. *Volga*, called in olde tyme *Rha*, hath his originall of the great mirtthes, named the whype Lakes. These are aboute *Moscouia*, betwene the North and the West, and send forth from them almost all the ryuers that are disperfed into diuers regions on euery syde, as we see of the Alpes, from whose toppes and springes descend the waters, of whose concourse the ryuers of *Rhene*, *Po*, and *Rodanum*, haue they encrease. For these maryshes, in the steade of mountaines full of springes, minister abundant moisture, forasmuche as no mountaynes are yet founde in that region by the long traueyles of men, insomuche that many that haue been studious of the old Cosmographie, suppose the *Riphean* and *Hiperborean*, mountaynes so often mentioned of the auncient wyters, to be fabulous. From these maryshes therfore, the riuers of *Duina*, *Ocha*, *Moscos*, *Volga*, *Tanais*, and *Boristhenes*, haue they originall. The *Tartares* call *Volga* *Edel*: *Tanais* they call *Don*: And *Boristhenes*, is at this tyme called *Neper*. This, a litle beneath *Taurica*, runneth into the sea *Euxinus*. *Tanais* is receyued of the maryshes of *Meotis* at the noble Partie Towne *Azoum*, But *Volga*, leauyng the citie of *Mosca* towardes the South, and runnyng with a large circuite, and great wyndynges, and Creekes fyrst towardes the East, then to the West, and lastlye to the South, falleth with a full streamie into the *Caspian* or *Hircan* sea. A boue the mouth of this, is a citie of the *Tartars* called *Citrachan*, whiche some call *Astrachan*, where *Partes* are kept by the Merchantes of *Media*, *Armenia*, and *Persia*. On the further bancke of *Volga*, there is a towne of the *Tartars* called *Casan*, of the whiche the *Horda* of the *Casanite Tartars* tooke they name. It is distant from the mouth of *Volga* and

and kyngdomes lying that way.

297

and the *Caspian* sea. 500. myles. Aboute *Casan*. 150. myles, at the entraunce of the ryuer *Sura*, *Basilus* that now reigneth, buyded a towne called *Surcium*, to thintent that in those deserttes, the marchantes and traueylers which certifie the gouernours of the marches of the doinges of the *Tartars*, and the maners of that vniuersal nation, may haue a safe mansion among theyr customers.

The Emperours of *Moscouia* at dyuers tymes, eyther moued thereto by occasion of thinges present, or for the desyre they had to nobilitate newe and obscure places, haue kepte the seat of theyr court and Emppre in dyuers cities. For *Nouogrodia*, which lyeth toward the West, and the *Lyon* sea, not many peeres past, was the head citie of *Moscouia*, and obteyned euer the chiefe dignitie, by reason of the incredible number of houses and ediffes, with the oportunitie of the large lake replenyshed with fysh, and also for the same of the most auncient & venerable Temple, which more then foure hundred peeres since, was dedicated to *Santa Sophia*, Christ the sonne of God, accordyng to the custome of the Emperours of *Bizantium*, nowe called *Constantinople*. *Nouogrodia*, is oppressed in maner with continuall wynter, and darkenesse of long nyghtes. For it hath the pole Arctike cleuate aboute the Horizon threescorpe and foure degrees: and is further from the Equinoctiall then *Moscouia*, by almost six degrees. By which dyfference of heauen, it is sayde, that at the sommer stepe of the Sunne, it is burnt with continuall heate, by reason of the thorte nyghtes.

The citie also of *Volodemaria*, beyng more then two hundred myles distant from *Mosca* towardes the East, had the name of the chiefe citie and kynges towne, whyther the seate of the Emppre was translated by the valiaunt Emperours for necessarie considerations, that suche ayde, furniture, and requisites, as appertayne to the warres, myght be neare at hande, at suche tyme as they keepe continuall warre agaynst the *Tartars* theyr borderers. For it is situate without *Volga*, on the bankes of the ryuer *Clesma*, whiche falleth into *Volga*. But *Moscha*, as well for those gyftes and commodities whereof we haue spoken, as also that it is situate in the myddest of the most frequented place of all the region and Emppre, and defended with the ryuer and Castell, hath in company.

*Sura*.  
*Surcium*.

*Nouogrodia*.

The Temple  
of *Santa*  
*Sophia*.

The elenation  
of the pole at  
*Nouogrodia*,  
& *Moscouia*,  
heate by reason  
of thorte  
nyghtes.

The citie of *Vol-*  
*odemaria*.

The citie of  
*Moscha*.

Dq.i.

riston

ryson to other cities been thought most woorthie to be esteemed for the chiefe. *Moscha* is distant from *Novogrodia* fyue hundred myles: and almost in the myd way is the citie of *Ottoferia* (otherwyle called *Otwer*, or *Tuwer*) vppon the ryuer of *Volga*. This ryuer, neare vnto the fountaynes and springes of the same, not yet increased by receyving so many other ryuers, runneth but slowly and gentelly, and passeth from thence to *Novogrodia*, through many woods and desolate playnes. Furthermoze from *Novogrodia* to *Riga*, the nexte porte of the *Sarmatian* sea, is the iourney of a thousande myles, litle more or lesse. This tract is thought to be more commodious then the other, because it hath many townes, and the citie of *Plescouia* in the way, beyng imbraced with two ryuers. From *Riga* (perteynyng to the dominion of the great maister of the warres of the *Linons*) to the citie of *Lubecke*, a porte of *Germanie*, in the gulse of *Cymbrica Chersonesus* (now called *Denmarke*) are numbred about a thousande myles of daungerous saylpyng.

From *Rome* to the citie of *Moscha*, the distance is known to bee two thousande and sixe hundred myles, by the nearest way, passyng by *Rauenna*, *Taruisum*, the *Alpes* of *Carnica*: Also *Villacum*, *Noricum*, and *Vienna* of *Pannonie*: and from thence (passyng ouer the ryuer of *Danubius*) to *Olmuthum* of the *Maronians*, and to *Cracouia* the chiefe citie of *Polonie*, are compted. xi. hundred myles. From *Cracouia* to *Vilna*, the head citie of *Lithuania*, are compted fyue hundred myles: and as many from that citie to *Smolenzko*, situate beyonde *Borisphenes*, from whence to *Moscha*, are compted sixe hundred myles. The iourney from *Vilna* by *Smolenzko* to *Moscha*, is traueyled in wynter with expeditie sleades, and incredible celeritie vppon the snowes, hardened with long frost, and compacte lyke *Ile*, by reason of muche wearyng. But in sommer, the playnes can not bee ouerpassef but by difficulte and laborious traauyle. For when the snowes by the continuall heate of the *Sunne* begyn to melte and dissolue, they cause great maryshes and quampyes, able to intangle both hoxle and man, were it not that wayes are made through the same, with bypoges and causes of wood, and almost infinite labour.

In all the region of *Mosconia*, there is no bayne or mine

of golde or syluer, or any other common metall, except *Iron*, neyther yet is there any token of precious stones: and therefore they buye all those thinges of straungers. Neuerthelesse, this iniurie of nature is recompensed with abundance of rich furies, whose price, by the wanton yfenesse of men, is growen to suche excesse, that the furies parteynyng to one sorte of apparell, are now solde for a thousande crownes. But the tyme hath been that these haue been bought better cheape, when the furthest nations of the North, being ignorant of our nyle fincnesse, and breathyng desyre towarde effeminate and superfluous pleasures, exchaunged the same with muche simplicitie, of entymes for trifles and thinges of small value: Insomuche that commonly the *Permians* and *Pecerrians*, were accustomed to giue so many skinnies of *Sables* for an *Iron* Axe or *Hatchet*, as being tyed harde together, the marchantes of *Moscouia* could drawe through the hole where the harte or handle entereth into the same. But the *Moscouites* sende into all partes of *Europe* the best kynde of flaxe to make linnen cloth, and hempe for ropes: Also many *Drehydes*, and exceedyng great masses of ware.

They proudly deny, that the *Romane* churche obteyneth the principate and preeminent aucthoritie of all other.

They so abhorre the nation of the *Iewes*, that they detest the memorie of them, and will in no condition admyt them to dwell within theyr dominions: esteemyng them as wycked and mischituous people, that haue of late taught the *Turkes* to make gunnes. Beside the bookes that they haue of the ancient *Greeke* doctours, they haue also the commentaries and homelies of saint *Ambrose*, *Augustine*, *Ierome*, & *Gregorie*, translated into the *Illyrian* or *Slauon* tongue, which agreeth with theyr: For they vse both the *Slauon* tongue and letters, as doe also the *Sclauons*, *Dalmates*, *Bohemes*, *Pollones*, and *Lithuanes*. This tongue is spredde further then any other at this day: For it is familiar at *Constantinople*, in the court of the Emperours of the *Turks*, and was of late hearde in *Egypte* among the *Malukes*, in the court of the *Soltane* of *Alcayre*, otherwyle called *Memphis*, or *Babilon* in *Egypt*. A great number of bookes of holy scripture are translated into this tongue by the industrie of *Sainct Ierome* and *Cyrillus*. Furthermoze, besyde the hystories of

Dg.ii.

theyr

Arch furies.

The price of furies.

How many Sables skinnies for an Axe.

Flaxe. Drehydes. Ware.

But truly.

They abhorre the Iewes.

Their bookes and religion.

The Slauon tongue spred further then any other.

Ottoferia. Volga.

Riga.

The citie of Plescouia.

The citie of Lubecke.

From Rome to Moscouia.

Wynter traauyle by Ice and snow.

Maryshes in sommer.

Other writers deny this.

Saint Jerome  
was borne in  
Dalmatia, now  
called Sclavonia.

Howe they  
number the  
yeeres.

Fewer and simpler  
lawes.

The exercise  
of youth.

Shooting.

The corpora-  
ture of the  
Moscouites.

Their fare.

their owne countreys, they haue also booke, conteynynge the facts of great Alexander, and the Romane Emperours, and lyke wyse of *Marcus Antonius*, & *Cleopatra*. They haue no maner of knowledge of philosophie, Astronomie, or speculative phisicke, with other liberal sciences: But such are taken for Philosophers, as professeth that they haue oftentimes obserued the vertue and qualitie of some vnknewen hearbe.

They number the yeeres, not from the byrth of Christ, but from the begynnynge of the worlde. And this they begin to accompt, not from the moneth of January, but from September.

They haue fewe and simple lawes througout all the kyngdome, made by the equitie and conscience of theyr pynces, and approued by the consent of wyse and good men, and are therfore greatly for the wealth and quyetnesse of the people, forasmuche as it is not lawfull to peruerter them with any interpretations or cauillations of lawyers or Attorneys. They punyssh theues, robbers, priuie pyckers, and murderers. When they examyne malefactor, they powre a great quantitie of cold water vpon such as they suspecte, whiche they say to be an intollerable kynde of torment. But sometymes they manacle suche as are stubborne, and will not confesse apparent crimes.

Their youth is exercised in dyuers kyndes of games and playes, resembling the warres, whereby they both practise policie, and increase theyr strength. They vse runnyng both on horsebacke and a foote. Also runnyng at the rylt, wrestlyng, and especially shootyng. For they geue rewardes to such as excell therein.

The *Moscouites* are vniuersally of meane stature, yet very square set, and myghtyly brawned. They haue all grey eyes, long beardes, shorte legges, and bygge bellies. They ryde very shorte, and shoote backwarde very cunnynghly, even as they flye. At home in theyr houses, theyr fare is rather plentifull then depntie: For theyr tables are furnished for a small pryce, with all suche kyndes of meates as may be desired of suche as are gyuen to most excessive gluttony. Hennes and Duckes are bought for litle syluer pence the peece. There is incredible plentie of beastes and cattayle, both great and small. The fleshe of beefe that is kylled in the myddest of wynter,

wynter, is so consealed and frozen, that it putrifieth not for the space of two monethes. They best and most delicate dyshes, are gotten by huntynge and haukyng, as with vs: For they take all sortes of wyld beastes with Houndes, and dyuers kyndes of nettes. And with Faulcons and Crens, or Eagles, of a marueylous kynde, whiche the region of *Pecerra* byngeth forth vnto them, they take not onely Felantes and wyld Duckes, but also Cranes and wyld Swannes. They take also a foule of darke colour, about the bygnesse of a Goose, with redde overbrowes, whose fleshe in taste passeth the pleasauntnesse of *She-sautes*: These in the *Moscouites* tongue are called *Tetrao*, whiche I suppose to be the same that *Plinie* calleth *Erythratao*, knowne to the people of the Alpes, and especially to the *Rhetians* which inhabite the landes about the springes of the ryuer *Abdua*. The ryuer of *Volga* ministrerth vnto them great fishes, and of pleasaunt taste, especially *Sturgions*, or rather a kynde of fysh lyke vnto *Sturgions*: which in the wynter season being inclosed in Ice, are long reserved freshe and vncorrupte. Of other kyndes of fishes, they take in maner an incredible multitude in the whyte lakes whereof we haue spoken before. And whereas they bitterly lacke natyue wyne, they vse such as are brought from other places. And this only in certeyne feastes and holy mysteryes, especially the pleasaunt *Maluasties* of the *Ilande of Creta*, now called *Candy*, are had in most honour: and vsed eyther as medicines, or for a shewe of excessive abundance, forasmuch as it is in maner a miracle that wines brought from *Candy* by the streightes of *Hercules* pylers, and the *Ilandes of Gades*, and tolled with such fluddes of the inclosed Ocean, should be dyoonke among the *Scythian* snowes in theyr natyue puritie and pleasauntnesse.

The common people drinke meade, made of honny & hoppes sodden togeather, whiche they keepe long in pitched barrells, where the goodnesse increaseth with age. They vse also beere and ale, as doe the *Germanes* and *Polones*. They are accustomed for delicatenesse in sommer, to coole theyr beere and meade with putting Ice therein, whiche the noble men reserve in theyr sellars in great quantitie for the same purpose. Some there are that delight greatly in the iuse that is pressed out of *Cherries* before they

Dq.iii.

fleshe preserued long, by reason of colde. Haukyng and huntynge.

Plentie of fishes.

Fishes long reserved in Ice.

Wine.

Maluasties.

All the North parte of the fyne lande was called *Scythia*, and the people *Scythians*.

Drinke cooled with Ice.

Wine of Cherries.



they be full rype, which they affyrme to haue the colour of cleare and ruddy wyne, with a very pleasaunt taste.

**They women.** They wyues & women, are not with them in such honour as they are in other nations: for they vse them in maner in the place of seruants. The noble women & gentelwomen, do diligently obserue their walkes, and haue an eye to their chastitie. They are sildome bydden forth to any feastes: neyther are permitted to resort to churches farre of, or to walke abroad without some great consideration. But the common sorte of women, are easily and for a small pryce allured to lechery, euen of straungers: by reason whereof, the Gentlemen doe litle or nothyng esteeme them.

**Thomas Paleologus.** John the father of kynge *Basilus*, dyed more then .xx. yeeres since. He maryed *Sophia*, the daughter of *Thomas Paleologus*, who reigned far in *Peloponnesus* (now called *Morea*) & was brother to the Emperour of *Constantinople*: She was then at Rome when *Thomas* her father was dyuen out of *Grecia* by the *Turks*. Of her were five children borne, as *Basilus* him selfe, *George*, *Demetrius*, *Symeon*, and *Andreas*. *Basilus* tooke to wife *Salomon*, the daughter of *George Soboromius*, a man of singuler fidelitie & wisdom, and one of his counsaile: the excellent vertues of whiche woman, only barennesse obscured.

**Howe the princes choose theyr wyues.** When the Princes of *Moscouia* deliberate to marry, their custome is to haue choyse of all the byrgins in the realme, and to cause suche as are of most fayre and beautifull bysage and personage, with maners and vertues accordyng, to bee brought before them: Whiche afterwarde they comyt to certayne faythfull men, and graue matrones to be further viewed, inso-muche that they leaue no parte of them vnsearched. Of these, the whom the Prince most lyketh, is pronounced woorthie to bee his wyfe, not without great and carefull expectation of theyr parentes, luyng for that tyme betwene hope and feare. The other virgins also whiche stood in election, and contented in beautie and integritie of maners, are ostentymies the same day, to gratifie the Prince, maryed to his noble men, Gentlemen, and Captaynes: wherby it sometymes cometh to passe, that whyle the Princes contemne the lynage of royall descent, suche as are borne of humble parentage, are exalted to the degree of princely estate, in lyke maner as the Emperours of the **Turkes**

**Turkes** were accustomed to be chosen, by comelynesse of personage, and warly prowesse.

*Basilus* was vnder the age of fourtie and seven yeeres, of comely personage, singular vertue, & princely qualities, by all meanes studious for the prosperitie & commodities of his subiectes: furthermoze, in beneuolence, liberalitie, and good successe in his do- ings, to be preferred before his progenitours. For when he had vi. yeeres kepte warre with the *Lyons*, that moued .lxxii. confederate cities to the cause of that warre, he obteyned the victorie, & departed w<sup>th</sup> few conditions of peace, rather giuen then accepted. Also at the beginning of his reigne, he put the *Polones* to flight, and tooke prisoner *Constantine*, the Captayne of the *Ruthens*, whom he brought to *Moscouia* tyed in chaynes: But shortly after, at the ryuer of *Boristhenes*, aboute the cite of *Orsa*, he him selfe was overcome in a great battayle, by the same *Constantine* whom he had dismissed: Yet so, that the towne of *Smolenzko*, which the *Moscouites* possessed before, and was newe woon by the *Polones*, should styll partheyne to the dominions of *Basilus*. But agaynst the *Tartars*, and especially the *Tartars* of Europe, called the *Precopites*, the *Moscouites* haue ostentymies kepte warre with good successe, in reuenge of the iniuries done to them by theyr incursions.

*Basilus* is accustomed to bypnyng to the fildes more then a hundred and fiftie thousande horsemen, deuided into thre bandes, and folowynge the banners or ensignes of theyr Captaynes in order of battayle. On the banner of the kynges wyng, is figured the Image of *Iosue* the Captayne of the *Hebrues*, at whose prayer the Sunne prolonged the day, and stayed his course, as witnesse the hystories of holy scripture. Armies of foote men are in maner to no vse in those great wyldernes, as well for theyr apparel being loose and long, as also for the custome of theyr enemies, who in their warres trust rather to the swyftnesse of their light hoxles, then to trye the matter in a pyght fildes.

Theyr hoxles are of lesse then meane stature: but very strong and swyfte. Theyr horsemen are armed with pykes, Ruyettes, Dales of yron, and arrowes. Fewe haue hooked swoordes. Theyr bodies are defended with rounde Targets, after the maner of the *Turkes* of *Asia*, or with bendyng and

Duke Basilus.

War betwene the Polones and Moscouites.

War betwene the Moscouites and Tartars.

The Moscouites army.

Their banner.

Their hoxles and horsemen.

Their armure.

Hargabusters.

Gunnes.

The Prince dy-  
neth openly.

Sigismundus  
sayth that  
much of this  
is golde.

The custodie of  
the citie.

The Dukes  
courte.

Souldyers wa-  
ges of the com-  
mon treasure.

cornarde Targettes after the maner of the Greekes: Also with coates of mayle, Bygantines, and sharpe Helmes. Basilius dyd furthermore instytute a bande of Hargabusters on horsebacke, and caused many great brasse peeces to be made by the worke-  
manshipp of certayne Italians: and the same with theyr stockes and wheelles to be placed in the Castle of Mosca.

The kyng him selfe with princely magnificence and singular familiaritie (wherewith neuerthelesse no parte of the maiestie of a kyng is violate) is accustomed to dyne openly with his noble men, & strange Ambassadors in his owne chamber of presence, where is seene a marueylous quantitie of siluer & gylt plate, standyng vpon two great and high cubbardes in the same chamber. He hath not about him any other garde for the custodie of his person, sauing only his accustomed familie. For watch and warde is diligently kept of the faithful multitude of the citizens: Insomuch that euery warde or quarter of the citie is inclosed with gates, rayles, and barres: neyther is it lawfull for any man rashely to walke in the citie in the nyght, or without lyght. All the courte consisteth of noble men, Gentlemen, and choyle souldyers, which are called out of euery region by theyr townes and byllages, and commaunded to wayte course by course at certayne monethes appoynted. Furthermore when warre is proclaymed, all the armie is collected both of the olde souldyers, and by musteryng of newe in all prouinces. For the Licutenantes and Captaynes of the army, are accustomed in al cities to muster the yowth, & to admyt to the order of souldyers such as they thinke able to serue the turne. Theyr wages is payde them of the common treasure of euery prouince, whiche is geathered, and partly payde also, in the tyme of peace, although it be but litle. But such as are assigned to the warres, are free from all tributes, and inioye certayne other priuilegies, whereby they may the more gladly and cheerfully serue theyr kyng, and defende theyr countrey. For in the tyme of warre, occasion is mynistred to shewe true vertue and manhood, where in so great and necessarie an institution, euery man accordyng to his approued actiuitie and ingenious forwarde-  
nesse, may obtayne the fortune eyther of perpetuall honour, or ignominie.

Vix

*Vix olim vlla fides referrentibus horrida regna  
Moschorum, & Ponti, res glacialis erat.  
Nunc Iouio autore, illa oculis lustramus, et vrbes,  
Et nemora, et montes cernimus et fluuios,  
Moschoi iam, monumenta Ioui, tua culta reuoluens,  
Capi alios mundos credere Democriti,*

Other notable thinges as concernyng Moscouia,  
geathered out of the bookes of Sigismundus  
Liberus. Note that when he sayth  
myles, he meaneth leagues.



From whence Russia had the name, there are diuers opinions. Some thynke that it was so named of one *Russus* the sonne or newiew of *Lech* the kyng of the Polons. Other affirme that it was so called of a certayne olde towne, named *Russus*, not farre from *Novogoroda* or *Novogradia* the more. Some also thynke that it was so called of the browne coloure of the nation. But the *Moscouians* confute all these opinions as vntrue, affirmyng that this nation was in olde tyme called *Rosseia*, as a nation disperfed, as the name it selfe doth declare. For *Rosseia* in the *Ruthens* tongue, doth signifie disperfed, or scattered. The whiche thyng to be true, diuers other people commyrt with thynhabitauntes, and diuers prouinces lying here and there betwene diuers parts of *Russia* do plainly declare. But whence soeuer they tooke theyr name, doubtesse all the people that vse the *Slauon* tongue, and professe the fayth of *Christ*, after the maner of the Greekes (called in theyr common language *Russi*, and in the Latin tongue *Rutheni*) are increased to such a multitude, that they haue eyther expulled all the nations that lye betwene them, or drawne them to theyr maner of lyuing, in somuche that they are nowe called all *Rutheni*, by one common name.

Furthermore the *Slauon* tongue (whiche at this daye is somewhat corruptly called *Sclauon*) runneth exceedyng farre, as vfed of the *Dalmates*, *Bosnuenser*, *Croatians*, *Istrians*,  
and

*Russia.*

The browne  
coloure of the  
*Russes.*

*Rosseia.*

The *Slauon*  
tongue by  
both sayre.

and by a long tracte of the sea *Adriatike* vnto *Forum Iulij* : Of the *Carnians* also, whom the *Venetians* call *Charfos* : and *Ipkewyle* of the *Carniolans* and *Carinthians*, vnto the ryuer *Drauu* : Furthermore of the *Stirians* within *Gretziun*, and by *Muera* vnto *Danubius*, and from thence of the *Misians*, *Seruians*, *Bulgarians*, and other inhabitynge, euen vnto *Constantinople* : Furthermore of the *Bohemians*, *Lusacians*, *Silesians*, *Morauians*, and thynhabitauntes neere vnto the ryuer *Vagus* in the kyngdome of *Hungarie* : The *Polones* also, and the *Ruthenians*, whose Empire reacheth very farre : *Ipkewyle* the *Circasians* and *Quinquemontanians*, vnto *Pontus* : and is from thence vnto the North partes of *Germanie*, among the remnant of the *Vandales* inhabitynge here and there . All whiche nations, although they acknowledge them selues to bee *Sclauons*, yet the Germans takynge the denomination onely of the *Vandales*, call all them that vse the *Slauon* tongue, *Vuenden*, or *Vuinden*, or *Vuindysh*.

Of the Princes that now reigne in *Russia*, the chiefe is the great Duke of *Moscouia*, who possesseth the greatest part thereof . The seconde is the great Duke of *Lithuania* : and the thyrde the kyng of *Polonie*, who now obteyneth the dominion of *Polonie* and *Lithuania*.

In auctoritie and dominion ouer his subiectes, the prince of *Moscouie* passeth all the monarkes of the worlde : For he deprieth all his noble men and gentelmen of all theyr holdes and munitions at his pleasure . He trusteth not his owne brethren, but oppresseth all with lyke seruitude : Insomuch that whom so euer he commaundeth either to remaine with him in the courte, or to go to the warres, or sendeth on ambassage, they are compelled to be at theyr owne charges, except the young gentelmen the sonnes of the *Boiarons*, that is, the noble men of the lowest degree . He vsurpeth this auctoritie aswell ouer the spiritualtie as the temporaltie, constituting what him listeth of the goods and lyfe of all men . Of his counsellors there is not one that dare dissent from hym in any thyng . They openly confesse, that the wyl of theyr prince is the will of God : and therefore call hym the key bearer and chamberlen of God, & beleue hym to be the executor of Gods will . By reason wherof, the prince hym selfe, when any petition is made to hym for the deliuerie of any captiue, is accustomed

accustomed to answer, when God commaundeth, he shalbe deliuered . *Ipkewyle* when any asketh a question of an vncertaine or doubtful thyng, theyr custome is to answer thus : God knoweth, and the great Prince . It is vncertaine whether the crueltie and tyrcenelle of the nation do require so tyrannous a Prince, or whether by the tyranny of the Prince, the nation is made so fierce and cruell.

*Basilus* the Sonne of *John*, was the fyrst that tooke vpon hym the name and title of a kyng, in this maner . The great lord *Basilus*, by the grace of God, kyng and lord of all *Russia*, and the great Duke of *Vuolodimaria*, *Moscouia*, *Novogradia*, &c.

Furthermore, wheras now this Prince is called *Emperour*, I haue thought good to shewe the title and cause of this errour . Note therefore that *Czar* in the *Ruthens* tongue, signifieth a kyng, whereas in the language of the *Slauons*, *Pollons*, *Bohemes*, and other, the same worde *Czar*, signifieth *Cesar*, by whiche name the Emperours haue been commonly called . For both they, and the *Slauons* that are vnder the kyngdome of *Hungarie*, call a kyng by an other name : as some *Cvall*, other *Kyrall*, and some *Korall* : but thynke that only an Emperour is called *Czar* . Whereby it came to passe that the *Ruthens* or *Moscouite* interpreters, hearyng theyr Prince to be so called of strange nations, began them selues also to name hym an Emperour, & thynke the name of *Czar* to be more worthy then the name of a kyng, although they signifie all one thyng . But who so wyl reade all theyr histories and bookes of holy scripture, shall fynde that a kyng is called *Czar*, and an Emperour *Kessar*. By the lyke errour the Emperour of the *Turkes* is called *Czar*, who neuertheless of antiquitie vnto no hygher tyme then the name of a kyng, expressed by this worde *Czar*. And hereof the *Turkes* of *Europe* that vse the *Slauon* tongue, call the cite of *Constantinople* *Czargard*, (that is) the kyngs cite.

Some call the Prince of *Moscouie* the whyte kyng, which I thynke to procede of the whyte Cappes, or other tymentes they weare on theyr heades . Ipe as they call the kyng of *Pertia* *Kisilpassa* (that is) redde head . He vseth the tyele of a kyng when he wyrteth or sendeth to *Rome*, the Emperour, the Pope, the Kyng of *Suetia* and *Dennmarke*, the great

Why the Duke of Moscouia was called an Emperour.

The great Turk.

The whyte kyng.

The Duke of Moscouia has tyele.

Vandales.

The princes of Russia.

The Duke of Moscouia.

great maister of *Prusia* and *Liuania*, and also to the great *Turke*; as I haue been credibly enfourmed: but he is not called kyng of any of them, except perhaps of the *Liuous*. Yet by reason of his later conquestes, some haue thought hym worthy the name of a kyng, or rather of an Emperour, because he hath kyngs vnder his Empire.

To the kyng of *Polone*, he vseth this title: The great lord *Basilius* by the grace of God, lord of al *Russia*, and great Duke of *Vuolodimeria*, *Moscouia*, *Nouogradia*. &c. leauyng out the title of a kyng. For none of them vouchsafeth to receiue the letters of the other augmented with any newe title, as I knewe by experience at my beyng in *Moscouia*, at which time *Sigismundus* the kyng of *Polone* sent hym his letters augmented with the title of the Duke of *Moscouia*, wherwith he was not a litle offended.

They glory in theyr histories that before *Vuolodimeria* and *Olba*, the land of *Russia* was baptised and blessed of Saint Andrew the Apostle of Christ, affirmyng that he came from *Grecia* to the mouthes of the ryuer *Boristhenes*: and that he sayled by the ryuer to the mountaynes where as is now *Chionia*: and that there he blessed all the lande and placed his crosse, prophesyng also that the grace of God shoulde be great there, and that there shoulde be many churches of Christian men: *Lyketwse*, that he afterward came to the springes of *Boristhenes*, vnto the great Lake *Vuolok*, and by the ryuer *Louat* descended into the Lake *Ilmer*: from whence by the ryuer *Vuolcon*, whiche runneth out of the same Lake, he came to *Nouogradia*: and passed from thence by the same ryuer to the Lake *Ladoga*, and the ryuer *Heua*, and so vnto the sea whiche they call *Vuarezkoia*, beyng the same that we call the *Germane* sea, betweene *Vuinlandia* or *Finlandia* and *Liuania*, by the whiche he sayled to *Rome*, and was at the last crucified for Christ his Gospell in *Peloponnesus* by the tirranie of *Agus Antipater*, as they cronacles make mention.

The Prince every seconde or thyrde yere causeth a muster to bee taken of the Sonnes of the *Boiorons*, and taketh an accompte booth of theyr number, and howe manye Horses and men every of them is able to make: and then appoynteth

a certayne

a certayne stypende to suche as are able further to beare theyr owne charges in the warres. They haue seldome any rest or quietnesse: For they eyther keepe warre with the *Lithuanians*, *Liuanians*, *Suelians*, or *Tartars* of *Casan*. Or if it so chaunce that the prince keepe no warre, yet doth he prerely appoynte garrisons of .xx. thousande men in places about *Tanaïs* and *Occa*, to repress the incursions and robberyes of the *European Tartars*, called *Precopites*.

As in other matters, euen so in the order of warrefare there is great diuersitie among men. For the *Moscouian* as soone as he beginneth to sleepe, thinketh of none other succoure, but putteth all his confidence therein. Beyng pursued or taken of his enimie, he neyther defendeth hym selfe, nor desireth pardon.

The *Tartar* cast off from his horse, spoyled of all his armure and weapones, and also soze wounded, defendeth hym selfe with handes, feete, and teethe, and by all meanes he may, vntyll his strength and spirite fayle hym.

The *Turke*, when he seeth hym selfe destitute of all helpe and hope to escape, doth humbly desyre pardon, castyng away his weapons and armure, and reaching forth to the victourer his handes ioyned together to be bounde, hoppyng by captiuitie to saue his lyfe.

The *Moscouites* in placeyng theyr armie, chuse them a large playne, where the best of them pitch theyr tentes, and the other make them certayne arbours of bowes fyt in the grounde, bemyng together the toppes thereof, which they couer with theyr clokes to defende them selues, theyr bowes, arrowes, saddles, and other theyr necessaries from rayne. They put forth theyr horses to pasture, and for that cause haue theyr tentes so farre in lunder, which they fortifie neither with cartes or trenches, or any other impedymment, except perhappes the place be defended by nature, as with wooddes, ryuers, and maryshes.

It may perhappes seeme straunge, howe he mayntayneth hym and his so longe with so small an armie as I haue sayde. I wyll nowe therefore briesely declare theyr sparyng and frugalitie. He that hath syxe or sometymes more horses, vseth one of them as a packe horse to beare all theyr necessaries,

Dyers manners of dyuers people in the warres.

The Moscouites armie.

Howe he mayntayneth his armie.

Russia baptised by Saint Andrew the Apostle.

The Moscouites warres.

ryes. He hath also in a bagge of two or three spannes long, the flower or meale of the graine called mille, and viii. or x. pounds weyght of Swines flethe poudred. He hath lykewyse a bagge of salte, myxt with pepper, if he be rysh. Furthermore euery man carryeth with hym a hatchet, a fyre bope, and a brasen pott: so that if they chauce to come to any place where they can fynde no frutes, Garlyke, Onyons, or fleshe, they kynde a fyre, and fyll theyr pottes with water, whereunto they put a spoonefull of meale, with a quantitie of salt, and make pottage therof, wherewith the maister and all his seruantes lyue contented. But if the maister bee very hungrye, he eateth all alone, and the seruantes are sometymes enforced to fast for the space of two or three dayes. And if the maister intende to fare somewhat more delicately, then he addeth thereto a litle portion of Swynes flethe. I speake not this of the best of them, but of such as are of the meane sort. The gouernours and captaynes of the armie, do sometymes hydde the poozer sorte to theyr tables: where they feede themselves so well, that they fast two or three dayes after. When they haue frutes, Garlyke, and Onyons, they can well forbear all other meates. Proceedyng forwarde to the battayle, they put more confidence in theyr multitude, and with what great armies they assaile theyr enemies, then epyther in the strength and valyauntnesse of theyr souldiers, or in well instructyng theyr armie, and fight better a farre of, then at hand: and therfore study howe to circumuent or inclose theyr enemies, and to assaile them on the backe halfe. They haue many trumpetters, the which while they blow al at once, after theyr maner, make a maruelous straunge noyse. They haue also another kynde of instrumentes which they call Szurna: these they blow without ceassyng for the space of an houre together, so temperyng the same, and holdyng in the wynde whyle they drawe more, that the noyse seemeth continually without intermission.

They vse all one maner of apparell: as longe coates without pleyghthes, and with narrowe sleeues, after the maner of the Hungarians. These the Christians vse to button on the ryght syde: and the Tartars (vseing the lyke) button them on the lefte syde. They weare redde and shott buskyns that reache not to theyr knees, and haue the soles thereof defended

sended with plates of Iron. In maner all theyr thynges are wrought with diuers coloures about the necke, and haue the Collars and Ruffes beset with litle round Baules like Beades, of Syluer, or gylted Copper, and some tyme Pearles also. They gyrd them selues beneath the bellie, euen as low as theyr pryue members, that they may seeme more burlpe, which they greatly esteeme, as doo at this daye the Spanyardes, Italians, and Almanes.

The prouince of *Mosconia* is neyther very large nor fruitfull, forasmuch as the fertilitie is hindred with sandye ground, which either with to much drynesse or moysture killeth the corne. Furthermore immoderate and sharpe vntemperatenesse of the ayre, whyle the colde of the wynter overcommeth the heate of the Sunne, sometymes doth not suffer the corne to rypp. For the colde is there sometymes so extreame, that lyke as with vs in sommer by reason of heate, euen so there by extreame cold, the earth hath many great chynkes or breaches. Water also cast into the ayre, and spytte fallyng from ones mouth, are frosen before they touche the grounde. In my selfe, when I came thither in the yere 1526, sawe the bzaunches of fruitfull trees wythered by the colde of the wynter be fore, whiche was so extreame, that many of theyr wagoners and carriers (whom they call *Gonecz*) were found frosen to death in theyr sleades. There were some that at the same tyme leadyng and deryng theyr cattayle from the next villages to *Mosconia*, died by the way with their beastes, through the extremitie of the colde. Furthermore the same yere many players that were accustomed to wander about the countrey with daunling Beares, were found dead in the high wayes. Wilde Beares also, enforced therto by famine, left the woodes, and ran here and there into diuers villages and houses: at whose commyng whyle the men of the countrey forsooke theyr houses and fledde into the fieldes, many of them perished through the behemencie of the cold. Agayne it sometymes so chaunceth that in Sommer the heate is as extreame: as in the yere 1525, in the whiche almost all kyndes of pulle and grayne were scorched and burnt, and such a dearth of corne folowed that drought, that that which before was bought for thre Dengas, was afterward solde for twentie or thyrtye. Furthermore also, ma-

The prouince  
of *Mosconia*.

Extreame  
colde.

Extreame  
heate in cold  
regions.

Instrumentes  
of warre.

The *Moscos*  
uites and  
Tartars ap-  
parell.



ny villages, woods, and stacks of corne, were set on fyre by the extreame heate: the smoke wherof so spyled the region, that the eyes of many were sore hurt therby. There arose also as it were a darke and thicke myst without smoke, whiche so molested the eyes, that many lost theyr syght therby. They sow and nouryshe the seedes of Melons with great diligence in certayne rayled beddes myxt with dounge, wherby they fynde a remedie both agaynst extreame cold and heat. For if the heat excede, they make certayne ryftes in the beds, as it were bzeathyng places, lest the seedes shoulde be suffocate with to much heate. And if the cold be extreame, it is tempered with the heate of the mucke or dounge.

Theyr beastes are much lesse then ours, yet not all without hornes, as one hath wyrtten: For I haue there seene Oxen, Kine, Goates, and Rammes, al with hornes.

Not farre from the citie of Mosca, are certayne monasteries, whiche a farre of, seeme lyke vnto a citie. They say that in this citie is an incredible number of houses: and that the fyrst peere befoze my commyng thither, the prince caused them to be numbred, and found them to be more then one and fourtie thousand & fyue hundred houses. The citie is very large and wyde, and also very flabby and myrre: by reason wherof, it hath many bridges and causeyes.

The ayre of the region is so holtsome, that beyond the springes of Tanais, especially towards the North, and a great part also towards the East, the pestilence hath not been heard of synce the memozye of man: Yet haue they sometymes a dilease in theyr bowelles and heades, not much vnlyke vnto the pestilence. This dilease they call a heate: wherwith such as are taken, dye within fewe dayes.

Some write that John the Duke of Moscouia, and Sonne of Basilius, vnder the pretence of religion, lacked & spoyled the citie of Nouogradia, and caried with hym from thence to Moscouia three hundred sleades laden with gold, syluer, and precious stones, of the gooddes of the Archbishop, the merchauntes, citisins, and strangers. Solowki is an Ilande situate in the North sea, eyght leagues from the continent betweene Duina and the prouince of Corela. Howe farre it is distaunt from Moscouia, can not be well knowen, by reason of many Fenmes, Woods,

Wooddes, and desolate places lying in the way. Albeit, some say that it is not three hundred leagues from Moscouia, and two hundred from Bieloiesero. In this Ilande is made great plentie of salte: and it hath in it a monasterie, into the which it is not lawfull for any woman or virgin to enter. There is also great fyshyng for herryng. They say that heere the Sunne at the souner Equinoctiall, shyneth continually except two houres.

Demetriowe, is a citie with a Castell, distaunt from Moscouia xii. leagues, declining from the West somewhat towards the north. By this runneth the riuer Lachroma, that runneth into the ryuer of Sest. Sest also receyueth the ryuer Dubna, which vnladeth it selfe in Volga. And by the commoditie of thus many ryuers, many ryche marchaundies are brought without great labour or difficultie from the Caspian sea, by the ryuer Volga to Moscouia, and dyuers other prouinces and cities about the same.

Bieloiesero, a citie with a Castell, is situate at a lake of the same name. For Bieloiesero in the Moscouites tongue, signifieth a whyte lake. The citie standeth not in the lake, as some haue sayde. Yet is it so enuironed with maryshes, that it may seeme to be inerpugnable: In consideration wherof, the princes of Moscouia are accustomed to keepe theyr treasure there. Bieloiesero is from Moscouia, a hundred leagues, and as much from Nouogradia the great. The lake it selfe, is xii. leagues in length, and as much in bzeadth, and hath (as they say) three hundred ryuers falling into it. The inhabitauntes of this place, haue a peculiar language, although now in maner all speake the Moscouites tongue. The longest day here in the sommer Equinoctiall, is sayd to consist of xix. houres. A man of great name and credit tolde mee, that at the begynnyng of the spring, when the trees began nowe to bee greene, he went in poste from Moscouia to Bieloiesero: and passyng ouer the ryuer Volga, founde the region there so couered with Ice and snow, that hee was fayne to dispatche the residue of his iourney on sleades. And although the wynter be longer there, yet doe the frutes waxe ripe and are geathered euen at the same tyme that they are in Moscouia. Within an arrowe shotte of the lake, there is an other lake that byngeth forth byrnstone: which a certayne riuer running out of

Rr.i.

A lake of byrnstone.

The trade from Moscouia to the Caspian sea.

Bieloiesero of the whyte lakes.

Distaunt of temperamēt in small distaunt.

A lake of byrnstone.

Of the Northeast frostie sea,

the same, carrieth with it in great quantitie, flotying aboue the water lyke a scumme, yet through the ignozaunce of the people, they haue no commoditie thereby.

Exchange of  
fures for other  
ware,

The people that inhabite the regions, lying farre North, and East from Moscouia, exchange their fures for apparel, Knives, needles, Spooones, Hatchets, and suche other necessary wares: for they haue not the vse of golde and syluer.

The description of the regions, people, and riuers, lying North and East from Moscouia: as the way from Moscouia to the riuer Petzora, and the prouince Iugaria, or Iuhra, and from thence to the riuer Obi. Likewyse the description of other countreys and regions, euen vnto thempire of the great Cham of Cathay.

The dominion  
of the duke of  
Moscouia.



The dominion of the prince of Moscouia, reacheth farre toward the East & North, vnto the places whiche we wyll nowe describe. As concernyng whiche thyng, I translated a booke that was presented vnto me in the Mosconites tongue, & haue here made a byeeffe rehearsal of the same, I wyl first therfore describe the iourney from Moscouia to Petzora, and so to Iugaria and Obi. From Moscouia to the citie of Vuolochda, are numbred fyfte werstes, one werst contenyng alinoste the space of an Italian myle. From Vuolochda to Vsiug, toward the ryght hande, descending with the course of the riuer of Vuolochda and Suchana with whom it ioyne, are compted fyue hundred werstes, where within two werstes of the towne called Strelze, and hard by the citie of Vsiug, Suchana ioyne: Iug which runneth from the South, from whose mouth, vnto the springes of the same, are numbred fyue hundred werstes.

Note that wheras here before the authoz numbryeth but fyfte werstes from Moscouia to Vuolochda, it seemeth that the place is corrupted by the Printers mistakyng one woorde for an other, as, Quinquaginta, whiche is fyfte, for Quingenta, whiche is fyue hundred. For the distance is no lesse from Moscouia to Vuolochda, then is from Vuolochda to Vsiug, whiche is fyue hundred werstes.

But

and kyngdomes lying that way.

306

But Suchana and Iug. after they ioyne togeather, lose their first names, and make both one riuer, named Dwina, by the which, the passage to the citie of Colmogor containeth fyue hundred werstes, from whence in the space of fyve dayes iourney, Dwina entreteth into the North Ocean at fyve mouthes: and the greatest parte of this iourney consysteth by Nauigation: for by lande from Vuolochda vnto Colmogor, passyng ouer the ryuer Vuaga, are a thousand werstes. Not farre from Colmogor, the riuer Piene, running from the East on the ryght hand, for the space of seuen hundred werstes, falleth into Dwina. From Dwina by the riuer Piene, by the space of two hundred werstes, they come to a place called Nicolai, from whence within halfe a werst, they passe into the riuer Kuluio, whiche hath his originall from a lake of the same name toward the North, from whose springes is eight dayes viage to the mouth of the same, where it entreteth into the Ocean.

Suchana.  
Iug. So called of his swift  
and pleasant  
stream.

1000

Piene.

Nicolai.

Kuluio.

The regions by  
the North sea.

Sayling by the coastes of the ryght hande of the sea, they passe by the regions of Stanuwische, Calunczsch, and Apnu: And sayling about the promontorie or cape of Chorogowski, Nosz, Stanuwische, Camenckb, and Tolstickb, they come at the length into the riuer Mezen, and from thence in the space of fyve dayes, to a village of the same name, standing in the mouth of the riuer Pieza, by the whiche agayne ascendyng toward the left hande and Sommer East, they come to the riuer Piescoia: from whence sayling for the space of fyue werstes, they come into two lakes, in the whiche are seene two wayes: whereof one on the ryght syde, goeth to the riuer Rubicho, by the whiche they passe to the riuer Czircho. Other, by an other and shorter way, byng their shippes from the lake directly into Czircho: from whence, excepte they be hyndered by tempest, they come in the space of thre weekes to the riuer and mouth of Czilma, flowyng into the great riuer Petzora, whiche in that place is two werstes in breadth. Sayling from hence, they come in the space of fyve dayes to the Towne & castle of Pustoofero, neare vnto the which, Petzora entreteth into the North Ocean at fyve mouthes. The inhabitants of this place, are men of simple wyl: they receyued the fayth of Christ, and were baptised in the yerre. M. D. xviii.

Pieza.

Piescoia.

Rubicho.

Czircho.

Czilma.

Petzora.

Pustoofero.

Rr.ii.

From

From the mouth of *Czima* unto the mouth of the ryuer *Vssa*,  
 goyng by *Petzora*, is one moneths vyage. *Vssa* hath his springes  
 in the mountaine *Poyas Semnoi*, being on the left hand toward the  
 sommer East, & springeth out of a great stone of the same moun-  
 tayne, called *Camen Bolschoi*. From the springes of *Vssa* to the  
 mouthes of the same, are numbered more then a thousande  
*Wierkes*. Furthermore, *Petzora* runneth from this south winter  
 parte, from whence ascending from the mouthes of *Vssa*, unto the  
 mouthes of the ryuer *Stzuchogora*, is three weekes vyage. They  
 that described this vyage, sayde that they rested betweene the  
 mouthes of the ryuers of *Stzuchogora* and *Potzscheriema*, and  
 leste they victualles there whiche they brought with them from  
*Russia*. Beyond the ryuers of *Petzora* and *Stzuchogora* towarde  
 the mountayne *Camenipoias*, and the sea with the Ilandes there  
 about, and the Castell of *Pustoofero*, are dyuers and innumerable  
 nations, whiche by one comon name are called *Samoged* (that is)  
 such as eate them selues. They haue great increafe of foules,  
 byrdes, and dyuers kyndes of beastes: as *Sables*, *Barternes*,  
*Beuers*, *Otters*, *Hermelines*, *Squirrels*; and in the Ocean the  
 beast called *Mors*: Also *Wesse*, whyte *Beares*, *Waloues*, *Hares*,  
*Equiwoduani*, great *Whales*, and fsh called *Semfi*, with dyuers  
 other. The people of these nations come not to *Moscouia*: For  
 they are wynde, and flee the company and societie of other men.  
 From the mouthes of *Stzuchogora*, saylpyng by the ryuer  
 unto *Poiassa*, *Artawische*, *Cameni*, and *Poiassa* the greater,  
 is three weekes vyage. Furthermore, the ascendyng to the  
 mounte *Camen*, is three dayes iourney: from the which, des-  
 cendyng, they come to the ryuer *Artawische*, and from thence  
 to the ryuer *Sibut*, from whence they passe to the Castell of  
*Lepin*, and from *Lepin* to the ryuer *Sossa*. The people that  
 inhabite the region by this ryuer, are called *Vuogolici*. Lea-  
 uyng *Sossa* on the ryght hande, they come to the great ry-  
 uer *Obi*, that springeth out of the lake *Kitaisko*, the whiche  
 with all the haste they coulde make, they coulde scarcelye  
 passe ouer in one day, the ryuer being of suche breadth that it  
 reacheth forrethore *Wierkes*. The people also that dwell a-  
 bout this ryuer, are called *Vuogolici* and *Vgritzski*. From the

the Castle of *Obca*, ascendyng by the ryuer of *Oby*, unto the ryuer  
*Irtische*, into the which *Sossa* entereth, is three monethes iourney.  
 In these places are two Castles named *Ierom* and *Tumen*, kepte  
 by certayne Lordes called *Knesi Iuhor/ski*, being tributaries to the  
 great Duke of *Moscouia*, as they say. There are dyuers kyndes  
 of beastes and fures.

From the mouth of the ryuer *Irtische* to the Castle of *Grusti-*  
*na*, is two monethes iourney: from whence to the lake *Kitai*, by  
 the ryuer *Oby* (which I sayde to haue his springes in this lake)  
 is more then three monethes iourney. From this lake come ma-  
 ny blacke men, lackyng the vse of common speech. They byyng  
 with them dyuers wares, and especially pearles and precious  
 stones, which they sell to the people called *Grustintzi* and *Serpo-*  
*nowtzi*. These haue theyr name of the Castle *Serponow*, situate  
 in the mountaynes of *Lucomorya*, beyonde the ryuer *Obi*. They say  
 that to the men of *Lucomorya*, chaunceth a marueylous thing and  
 incredible: For they affyrme, that they dye peerely at the .xxvii.  
 day of November, being the feast of *Saint George* among the  
*Moscouites*: and that at the nexte spring about the .xxiii. day of  
 Aprill, they reuyue agayne as doe *frogges*.

With these also, the people of *Grustintzi* and *Serponowtzi*, exer-  
 cise a newe and straunge kynde of trade: For when the accusto-  
 med tyme of theyr dyng, or rather of sleapyng, approacheth, they  
 leaue theyr wares in certayne places appoynted, which the *Gru-*  
*stintzi* and *Serponowtzi* carry away, leauyng other wares of e-  
 quall value in theyr places: which if the dead men at the tyme of  
 theyr reuyuyng perceyue to be of vnequall pryce, they requyre  
 theyr owne agayne: by reason whereof, much stryfe and fighting  
 is betwene them.

From the ryuer of *Obi* descendyng towarde the leste hande,  
 are the people called *Calami*, whiche came thither from *Obiowa*  
 and *Pogosa*. Beneath *Obi*, about *Aurea Anus* (that is, the golden  
 olde wyfe) are the ryuers *Sossa*, *Beres*, *Vua*, & *Danadim*, all which  
 spring out of the mountaynes *Camen*, *Bolschega*, *Poiassa*, and the  
 rockes ioyning to the same. All the nations that inhabite  
 from these ryuers to *Aurea Anus*, are subiecte to the prince  
 of *Moscouia*.

1 moff  
 mma.

Cingulus  
 mundi.

1000  
 Wmff

Stzuchogora.  
 Potzscheri-  
 ma.

Camenipoias.

Samoged.  
 Foules and  
 beastes.

Wynde people.

Poiassa.  
 3  
 Camen.  
 Artawische.  
 Sibut.  
 Lepin.

Sossa.  
 Obi.  
 Kitaisko.

Vuogolici.

Irtische.  
 Ierom.  
 Tumen.

Grustina.  
 Kitai.

Blacke men  
 without speech.

Serponow.  
 Lucomorya.

Men that  
 peerely dye and  
 reuyue.

A straunge  
 trade of mar-  
 chaundies.

Obi.  
 Calami.

Ryuers.

## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

*Aurea Anus.*  
*Obdora.*

*Aurea Anus.* called in the *Moscouites* tongue, *Slatá Baba*, is an idol, at the mouthes of *Obi* in the prouince of *Obdora*, standyng on the furthest banke toward the sea. Along by the bankes of *Obi*, and the riuers neare there about, are here and there many castles and fortresses: all the lordes whereof, are subiect to the prince of *Moscouia*, as they say. They say also, or rather fable, that the idoll called *Aurea Anus*, is an image lyke vnto an olde wyfe, hauyng a chyld in her lappe, and that there is now seene another infant, whiche they say to be her nephew: Also, that there are certayne instrumentes that make a continuall sounde lyke the noyse of *Trumpettes*, the whiche, if it so be, I thynke it to be by reason of the wynde, blowing continually into the holowe places of those instrumentes.

*Cosm.*

*Cassima.*

*Tachnin.*

*People of mō-  
strous shape.*

*A fische lyke  
a man.  
Whiche smytheth  
of the lyke fische.*

The riuer *Cosm* falleth out of the mountaynes into *Lucomoria*: In the mouth of this is a castle, whither from the springes of the great riuer *Cosm*, is two monethes viage. Furthermore, from the springes of the same riuer, the riuer *Cassima* hath his original, whiche runnyng through *Lucomoria*, falleth into the great riuer *Tachuin*, beyonde the whiche (as is sayde) dwel men of prodigious shape, of whom, some are ouergrown with heare lyke wilde beastes, other haue heades lyke dogges, and their faces in their bestes, without neckes, and with long handes also, and without feete. There is lyke wyse in the ryuer *Tachnin*, a certayne fische, with head, eyes, nose, mouth, handes, feete, and other members vnto of humane shape, and yet without anye voyce, and pleasant to be eaten, as are other fishes.

All that I haue hitherto rehearsed, I haue translated out of the sayde iourney whiche was deliuered me in the *Moscouites* tongue: In the whiche, perhappes some thynges may seeme fabulous, and in maner incredible, as of the dōmbe men, and the dead, reuiuyng, the *Aurea Anus* also, and the monstrous shapes of men, with the fische of humane fourme: whereof, although I haue made diligent inquisition, yet coulde I knowe nothyng certayne of anye that had seene the same with their eyes: neuerthelesse, to geue further occasion to other to searche the truth of these thynges, I haue thought good to make mention hereof.

Now in the *Moscouites* tongue signifieth a Nose, and therefore they cal all capes or poyntes, that reache into the sea, by the same

same name.

The mountaynes about the riuer of *Petzora*, are called *Sem-  
noi Poyas*, or *Cingulus mundi*, that is, the gyrdle of the worlde, or of the earth.

*Kitbai* is a lake, of whom the great Cane of Cathay, whom the *Moscouians* call *Ezar Kitbaiki*, had his name: For Chan in the *Tartars* language signifieth, A Kyng.

The places of *Lucomoria*, neare vnto the sea, are saluage, full of woods, and inhabited without anye houses. And albeit, that the aucthor of this iourney, sayde, that manye nations of *Lucomoria* are subiecte to the prince of *Moscouia*, yet for as muche as the kyngdome of *Tumen* is neare therevnto, whose prince is a *Tar-  
tar*, and named in their tongue, *Tumenski Czar*, that is, a king in *Tumen*, and hath of late doone great damage to the prince of *Moscouia*: it is moste lyke that these nations shoulde rather be subiect vnto hym.

Neare vnto the riuer *Petzora* (whereof mention is made in this iourney) is the citie and castle of *Papin*, or *Papinowgorod*, whose inhabitantes are named *Papini*, and haue a priuate language, differing from the *Moscouites*. Beyonde this ryuer are exceedyng hygh mountaynes, reachyng euen vnto the bankes, whose rydges or toppes, by reason of continuall wyndes, are in maner vnto barren without grasse or frutes. And although in diuers places they haue diuers names, yet are they commonly called *Cingulus mundi*, that is, the worlde. In these mountaynes doo *Ferfalcons* breede, whereof I haue spoken before. There growe also Cedar trees, among the whiche are founde the best and blackest kynde of *Sables*: and onely these mountaynes are seene in all the dominions of the prince of *Moscouia*, whiche perhappes are the same that the olde wyters call *Rhipheos*, or *Hyperboreos*, so named of the Greeke woordes, *Hyper*, that is, Under, and *Boreas*, that is, the North: for by reason they are couered with continual snowe and frost, they can not without great difficultie be trauelyed, and reache so farre into the North, that they make the vnkownen land of *Engreeland*. The Duke of *Moscouia*, *Basilus* the sonne of *John*, sent on a tyme two of his capytaynes, named *Simeon Theodorowit* *Kurb-  
ski*, and *Knes Peter Vschatoi*, to searche the places beyonde

R.iiii.

these

these mountaynes, and to subdue the nations thereabout. *Kurb ski* was yet alyue at my beyng in *Moscouia*, and declared vnto mee that he spent .xvii. dayes in ascending the mountayne, and yet could not come to the toppe therof, which in theyr tongue is called *Stolp* (that is) a pyller. This mountayne is extended into the Ocean vnto the mouthes of the ryuers of *Dvina* and *Petzora*. But now hauyng spoken thus much of the sayde iourney, I will returne to the dominions of *Moscouia*, with other regions lying Eastwarde and South from the same, toward the myghtie Emperre of *Cathay*. But I will fyrst speake somewhat bryefly of the prouince of *Rezan*, and the famous ryuer of *Tanais*.

The prouince of *Rezan*, situate betweene the ryuers of *Occa* and *Tanais*, hath a citie buylded of wood, not far from the banke of *Occa*: there was in it a Castle named *Iaroslau*, whereof there now remaineth nothing but tokens of the olde ruine. Not farre from that citie, the ryuer *Occa* maketh an Ilande named *Strub*, which was somtyme a great Dukedome, whose prync was subiecte to none other. This prouince of *Rezan*, is more fruitfull then any other of the prouinces of *Moscouia*: Insomuche that in this (as they say) every grayne of wheate bringeth forth twoo, and sometymes more eares: whose stalkes or strawes grow so thicke that horses can scarcely goe through them, or Quayles flee out of them. There is great plentie of hony, fyshes, foules, byrdes, and wyld beastes. The frutes also doe farre exceede the frutes of *Moscouia*. The people are bolde and warlyke men.

Of the famous ryuer of *Tanais*.



From *Moscouia* vnto the Castle of *Iaroslau*, and beyonde for the space of almost .xliiii. leagues, runneth the ryuer of *Tanais*, at a place called *Donco*, where the marchantes that trade to *Asoph*, *Capha*, and *Constantinople*, freight theyr shippes: and this for the most parte in Autumpe, beyng a rayney tyme of the peere. For *Tanais* heere at other tymes of the peere, doeth not so abounde with water, as to beare shippes

Donco.  
Asoph.  
Capha.  
Constantinople.

shippes of any burden. This famous ryuer of *Tanais*, dyu-  
yrdeth Europe from *Asia*, and hath his oryggynall or sprynges  
almost .viii. leagues from the citie of *Tulla*, toward the South,  
inclynnyng somewhat toward the East, and not out of the *Ri-  
phean* mountaynes, as some haue writen: But out of a great  
lake named *Iwanxosero* (that is) the lake of *John*, beyng in  
length and bredth about .1500. Myles, in a wood which some  
call *Okonitzkilles*, and other name it *Iepiphanoulies*. And out of  
this lake, spryng the two great ryuers of *Schat* and *Tanais*.  
*Schat* toward the West receyuyng into it the ryuer of *Vppa*,  
runneth into the riuer of *Occa* betweene the West and the North:  
But *Tanais* at the fyrst runneth directly East, and continueth  
his course betweene the kyngdomes of *Casan* and *Astrachan* with-  
in fyre or leuen leagues of *Volga*, and from thence bendyng  
toward the South, maketh the fennes or marshes of *Meotis*.  
Furthermore, nerte vnto his sprynges, is the citie of *Tulla*:  
and bypon the banke of the ryuer, almost thre leagues aboue  
the mouthes of the same, is the citie of *Asoph*, whiche was  
fyrst called *Tanais*. Foure dayes iorney aboue this, is a towne  
called *Achas*, situate harde by the same ryuer, whiche the *Mos-  
couites* call *Don*. I can not sufficiently prayse this ryuer for  
the exceedyng abundaunce of good fyshes, and fayrenesse of the  
regions on both sydes the bankes, with plentie of holsome  
hearbes and sweete rootes, belyde dyuers and many fruitfull  
trees, growyng in suche comly order as though they had been  
set of purpose in gardens or orchardes. There is also in maner  
euery where such plentie of wyld beastes, that they may casly  
be slayne with arrowes: Insomuch that such as traualle by thole  
regions, shall stande in neede of none other thyng to mayntayne  
theyr lyfe, but only fyre and salte. In these partes, is no obserua-  
tion of myles, but of dayes iorneys. But as farre as I coude  
coniecture, from the fountaynes or sprynges of *Tanais*, vnto the  
mouthes of the same, iorneyng by lande, are almost fourescore  
leagues. And sayling from *Donco* (from whence I sayde that  
*Tanais* was fyrst nauigable) in scarcely .xx. dayes voyage, they  
come to the citie of *Asoph*, tributarie to the Turkes: which is (as  
they say) fyue dayes iorney from the streight of *Taurica*, other-  
wyse called *Precop*. In this citie is a famous marre towne,  
vnto

*Tanais* diuis-  
deth Europe  
from Asia.  
The sprynges  
of Tanais.

A great lake.

The ryuer  
*Schat*.

*Casan*.  
*Astrachan*.

*Meotis*.  
*Tulla*.

*Achas*.  
Fruitfull regis-  
ons about  
*Tanais*.

Plentie of  
wyld beastes.

Fyre and salt.

Where *Tanais*  
is fyrst nauiga-  
ble.

*Asoph*.



The matter of  
Asoph.

Libertie allu-  
reth straungers.

The alters of  
Alexander and  
Cesar.

The holy  
mountaynes.  
Tanais the  
lesse.

From Moscouia  
via to Asoph.

Moscouia in  
Asia and not in  
Europe.

The prouince of  
Permia.

Marphes in  
sommer.

unto the whiche resort many merchauntes of dyuers nations,  
and from dyuers partes of the worlde. For, that all nations  
may the gladly haue recourse thither, free libertie of bying  
and selleng is graunted vnto all: and that without the cite every  
man may freely vse his owne and accustomed maner of lpyng,  
without punishment.

Of the alters of great Alexander and Julius Cesar, whiche  
many wyters make mention of in this place, or of theyr ruines,  
I coulde haue no certayne knoweledge of thynhabitauntes or  
any other that had oftentimes trayuayled these places. Fur-  
thermore, the souldyers whiche the prince of Moscouia mayn-  
tayneth there peerely to oppresse thynursions of the Tartars, be-  
ing of me demaunded herof, answered y they neuer sawe or heard  
of any such thing. Neuerthelesse they said, that about y monthes  
of Tanais the lesse, foure dayes iorney from Asoph, neere vnto a  
place called Sewerski, by the holy mountaynes, they sawe cer-  
tayne images of stone and marble. Tanais the lesse, hath his  
springes in the Dukedome of Sewerski, whereof it is called  
Donetz Sewerski, and falleth into Tanais, three dayes iorney a-  
boue Asoph. But such as iorney from Moscouia to Asoph by  
lande, they, passyng ouer Tanais about the olde and ruinate  
towne of Donco, do somewhat turne from the South to the East:  
In the which place, if a ryght line be drawne from the mouthes  
of Tanais to the springes of the same, Moscouia shalbe founde to  
be in Asia, and not in Europe.

More directly from Moscouia to Cathay.



The great and large prouince of Permia, is  
distant from Moscouia two hundred and fye-  
tie, or (as some say) three hundred leagues, di-  
rectly betwene the East and North: and  
hath a cite of the same name by the ryuer  
Vischora, which runneth .x. leagues beneth  
Camam. The iorney by land can scarcely be  
trauelled thither but in winter, by reaso of many riuers, marshes,  
and fens. But in sommer, this iorney is dispatched with moze fa-  
cilitie in boates or smal ships by Volochda Vsting, and the ryuer  
Vitzebda

and kyngdomesly ingthat way.

Vitzebda, which runneth into Duina. xii. leagues from Vsting.  
But they that go from Permia to Vsting, must sayle by the ryuer  
Vischora agaynst the course of the streame: and passyng ouer  
certayne ryuers, sometymes also conueying theyr boates into  
other ryuers by land, they come at the length to Vsting, three  
hundred leagues distant from the cite of Permia.

There is smal vse of bread in this prouince. For theyr peerely  
tribute, they pay to the Prince fures and horses. They haue a  
pruiate language, and letters of theyr owne, which one Stephen  
a Bysshop (who confirmed them yet waueryng in the sayth) did  
inuent. For before, beyng yet infantes in the faith of Christ, they  
slewe and slepe an other Bysshop that was appoynted to in-  
struct them. This Stephen afterward when Demetrius the sonne  
of Iohn reygned, was taken for a Sainct among the Rubens.  
Of these people there yet remayne many Idolatours here and  
there in the woods, whom the Bunkes and Heremites that go  
thither, do not cease to conuert from theyr baine errour. In the  
winter they iorney to Artach, as they do in many places of Rus-  
sia. Artach, are certayne long patentes of wood of almost six hand-  
fulles in length, which they make fast to theyr feete with Lat-  
chets, and therewith perfourme theyr iorneis with great celeritie.  
They vse for this purpose great Dogges in the steade of other  
beastes, with the which they carry theyr fardels on sleades, as o-  
ther do with Hartes in other places, as we wyl further declare  
hereafter. They say that the prouinee toward the East confineth  
with the prouince called Tumen, partaining to the Tartars.

The situation of the prouince of Iugaria, is apparent by that  
which we haue sayd before. The Moscouites call it Iubra with  
an aspiration: and call the people Iubrici.

This is that Iugaria from whence the Hungarians came in  
tyme past, possessed Pannonia, and under the conduct of At-  
tila, subdued many prouinces of Europe: wherein the Mos-  
couites doo greatly gloze. that a nation subiect to them, inua-  
ded and wasted a great part of Europe. Georgius Paruus,  
a Greeke bozne, and a man of reputation with the Prince of  
Moscouia, wyllyng to ascribe to the ryght of his Prince the  
great Dukedome of Lithuania, and the kyngdome of Polo-  
nie, with certayne other Dominions, tolde me that the Iubga-  
rici or

Duina.  
Vsting.

Tribute  
fures and  
horses.

Bunkes and  
Heremites.

Patentes.

Marcus Pano-  
lus wyrteth  
that these dogges  
are almost as  
bpy as Altes: &  
that they vse six  
to one sleade.

Iugaria.

Hungaria.  
Pannonia.  
Attila.

Of the Northeaft frosty sea,

rici of *Iuhgarie*, beyng subiects to the great Duke of *Mosconia*, came south of theyr owne countrey, and fyrst inhabited the regions about the Fennes of *Meotis*, and then *Pannonie*. which was afterward called *Hungarie*, by the ryuer of *Danubius*: Also that in fine they possessed the region of *Morania*, so named of the ryuer: and lykewyse *Pollonie*, so called of *Polle*, whiche signifieth a playne. Furthermoze that *Buda* was so called after the name of the brother of *Attila*. They say also that the *Iuhgarie* vse the same tongue that do the *Hungarians*: the whiche whether it be true or not, I do not know. For although I haue made diligent inquisition to knowe the trueth hereof, yet could I fynde no man of that region with whom my seruauant, beyng expert in the *Hungarian* tongue, might speake. They also pay furies for theyr tributes to the Prince of *Mosconia*. And albeit that pearles and precious stones, are brought from thence to *Mosconia*, yet are they not geathered in theyr Ocean, but in other places: especially about the coast of the Ocean, neare vnto the mouthes of *Quina*.

The prouince of *Sibier*, confineth with *Permia*, and *Vuiathka*: the whiche, whether it haue anye castles or cities, I do not yet certapnely knowe: In this, the ryuer *Iack* hath his originall, and falleth into the *Caspian* sea. They say that this region is desart, because it lyeth so neare the *Tartars*: or that yf it be in any part inhabited, the same to be possessed of the *Tartar Schichmai*. Thinhabitantes haue a peculiar language: and haue theyr cheefe gaynes by the furies of *Barternes*, whiche in fairnesse and greatnesse, excel al the furies of that kynd that are found in any other prouinces. Yet could I haue no greate plentie of them in *Mosconia* at my beyng there.

Note that long after the wytyng of this hystorie, at *Richard Chaunceler* his fyrst beyng in *Mosconia*, Duke *John Vasiluiche* that now reygneeth, subdued all the *Tartars* with theyr regions and prouinces, euen vnto the great citie and mart towne of *Astrachan* & the *Caspian* sea. At the same tyme also, there was in the Dukes Court an ambassadour that came from this prouince of *Sibier*, who declared that his father had been sent Ambassadour to the great *Chan* of *Cathay*, and that the great citie of *Cambalu*, where the great *Chan* kepeth his Court in wynter, was in maner destroyed by *Digromancie* and *Magickall Artes*, wherein the *Cathayans* are very expert as wyreth *Marcus Paulus Venetius*.

There was also at the same tyme thambassadour of the kyng of *Pertia* called the great *Sophie*. This Ambassadour was apparellled al in *Scarlet*, and spake muche to the Duke in the behalfe of our men, of whose kyngdome and trade he was not ignorant.

The

and kingdomes lying that way.

311

The people called *Czeremisse*, dwell in the wooddes beneath *Novogradia* the lower. They haue a peculiar language, and are of the secte of *Machumet*. They were sometyme subiecte to the kyng of *Casan*: but the greater part of them are nowe subiecte to the prince of *Mosconia*. Many of them at my beyng there, were brought to *Mosconia*, as suspected of rebellion. This nation doth inhabite a large region without houses from *Vuiathka* and *Vuolochda*, to the ryuer of *Rama*. All the nation, aswell women as men, are very swifte of foote, and expert archers: wherein they so delyght, that theyr bowes are in maner neuer out of their handes: and geue theyr chyldren no meate vntyll they hve the marke they shoote at. Two leagues distant from *Novogradia* the lower, were many houses to the similitud of a citie or towne, where they were accustomed to make salte. These a fewe peeres since beyng burnt of the *Tartars*, were restored by the commaundement of the prince.

*Mordwa*, are people inhabytyng by the ryuer of *Volga* on the south banke beneath *Novogradia* the lower, and are in al thinges lyke vnto the *Czeremisses*, but that they haue more houses. And here endeth *Chempire* of the *Moscouites*.

Note here that *Matthias* of *Michon*, in his booke of *Sarmatia Asatica*, wyreth that the dominion of the Duke of *Mosconia* reacheth from the northweest to the southeast fyue hundred myles of *Germanie*, whiche are more then leagues: For they affirme that a *German* myle is more then thre *Englishe* myles.

Of the *Tartars*.

WE will nowe adde hereunto somewhat of the people consynng with the *Moscouites* toward the East: of the which the *Tartars* of *Casan* are the fyrst. But before we speake of them peticularly, we will fyrst rehearse somewhat of theyr maners and customes in general.

The *Tartars* are diuided into companies, which they cal *Hordas*, of the whiche the *Horda* of the *Sauolbenses* is the chiefe in fame and multitude: For it is sayde that the other *Hordas* had theyr offspryng and originall of this. And albeit that euery *Horda* hath his peculiar name, as the *Sauolbenses*, *Precropenses*, and *Nabais*, with dyuers other, beyng all *Machumetans*, yet do they take it euyl, and count it reproche to be called *Turkes*: but wyl them selues to be called *Besfermani*, by the which name also the *Turkes* delyre to be called.

And

The hughes of  
the countrey  
called  
Mortia.  
Polonie.

Buda.

Furies.  
Pearles, & pre-  
cious stones.

Sibier.

Aspreolos.  
I thinke to bee  
Barternes: yet  
some thinke  
them to be  
Squirrels, &c.  
nerus wyreth  
that the kinges  
of the *Tartars*,  
haue their  
tentens covered  
without with  
the skynes of  
Lions: & with  
in, with the  
skynnes of  
Sables and  
Ermines.

Habitatton  
without hou-  
ses.

Salts.

The *Tartars*  
of *Casan*.

Horda.

Besfermani.

And as the *Tartares* inhabite many prouinces reachyng far on euery syde, euen so in maners and order of lyuyng do they not agree in all thynges. They are men of meane stature, with brode and fatte faces, holowe eyde, with rough and thynke beardes, and poude heades. Onely the noble men haue long beate, and that exceedyng blacke, whiche they weach on both sydes they eares. They are strong of body, and stoute of mind, prone to leacherie, and that vnnaturall. They eate the fleshe of Hoxles, Camelles, and other beastes, except Hogges, from whiche they absteyne by a lawe. They can so abyde fasting and hunger, that they sometyme forbear meate and sleepe for the space of foure dayes, occupied neuerthelesse about their necessary affayres. Agayne, when they get any thyng to deuoure, they ingorge them selues beyonde measure, and with that surfeit in maner recompence they former abstinence. And beyng thus oppressed with labour and meate, they sleepe continually for the space of thre or foure dayes, without doyng any manner of worke or labour: duryng which tyme the *Liuns* and *Moscouites*, into whose dominions they are accustomed to make their incursions, assaile them vnwares, thus oppressed with meate and sleepe, lying scattered here and there out of order without watch or ward. Also if when they ryde, they be molested with hunger and thyrst, they vse to lette theyr hoxles blood, and with drynkyng the same, satisfie theyr present necessitie, and affirme theyr hoxles to be the better thereby. And because they all wander in vnkownen places, they vse to direct theyr iourneys by thaspect of the starres, and especially of the pole starre, which in theyr tongue they call *Selesnikoll*, (that is) an Iron nayle. They greatly delyght in Hares mylke, and beleue that it maketh men strong and fatte. They eate hearbes very much, and especyally such as growe about *Tanis*. Fewe of them vse salt. When theyr kynges distribute any vntayles among them, they are accustomed to geue one hoxse or cowe to fourtie men. Of the slayne beaste, the bowells and tripes are reserued for the chiefe men and captains. These they beate at the fyre, vntill they may shake out the doong, and then deuoure them gredyly. They sucke and lycke, not only theyr fingers imbued with fat, but also theyr kniues, & styckes wherwith they scrape the doong from the guttes.

The

The heades of hoxles are counted delicate dyshes with them, as are Boozes heades with vs, and are reserued only for the cheef men. Theyr hoxles (whereof they haue great aboundance) are but small, and with short necks: but very strong, and such as can well away with labour and hunger. These they feede with the bzaunches and barks or ryndes of trees, and the rootes of herbes and weedes, wherby they accustom them to hard feedyng, and exercise them to continuall labour: by reason whereof (as say the *Moscouites*) theyr hoxles are swifter and more durable then any other: these kynde of hoxles, they call *Pachmat*. They haue none other saddels and styrops then of wood, except such as they eyther bye of the Christians, or take from them by violence. Lest theyr hoxle backs shoulde be hurt with theyr saddelles, they vnderlay them with grasse and leaues of trees. They also passe ouer riuers on hoxl backe. But yf when they flee, they feare the pursuyng of theyr enemies, then castyng away theyr saddels, apparrell, and all other impedimentes, reseruyng only theyr armour and weapons, they flee amayne, and with great celeritie.

Their women vse the same kinde of apparrell that do the men, without any difference, except that they couer theyr heades with linnen bayles, & vse linnen hose much like vnto mariners slops. When theyr queenes come a brode, they are accustomed to couer theyr faces. The other multitude of the common sort that lyueth here and there in the fieldes, haue theyr apparrell made of sheepes skynnes, which they change not vntill they be woyn & toyn in fyters. They tarrye not long in one place, iudgyng it a great miserie so to do: Insomuch that when they are angry with their chyldren, the greatest curse that they can geue them, is that they may remaine perpetually in one place, & drawe the styntch of theyr owne fylchynesse as do the Christians. When they haue consumed the pasture in one place, they go to another with their hoxues of cattaille, and theyr wyues and chyldren, whom they euer carry about with them in Wagons: albeit the *Tartars* that dwell in cities and townes, vse an other order of lyuyng.

If they be inclosed with any dangerous warre, they place theyr wyues, chyldren, and olde folkes, in the safest places. There is no Iustice among them. For yf any man stande in

Hoxle heades  
deyntie meates  
The Tartars  
hoxles.

Saddels and  
styrops of  
wood.

The Tartars  
women.

The Tartars  
curse.

No iustice  
among the  
Tartars.

neede

The stature of  
the Tartars.

They absteyne  
from hogges  
fleshe.  
Abstinence.

Woracitie.

So do the  
Turkes.

Directyng by the  
pole starre.

Hares milke.

Hoxle fleshe  
eaten.

Clenly.

## Of the Northeft frosty sea.

neade of any thyng, he may without punishment take it a waie from an other. If any complayne to the Iudge of the violence, and wrong doone vnto hym, the offender denieth not the crime, but sayeth that he coude not lacke that thyng. Then the Iudge is wont to geue this sentence: If thou also shalt haue neade of any thyng, do the lyke to other. Some say they do not steale: But whether they steale or not, let other iudge. They are surely a theerup the kynde of people, and very poore, lyving on ly by robbing of other, and stealyng away other mens cattayle, and violently also carrying away the men them selues, whom epyther they sell to the Turkes, or proffer them to be redeemed by ransome, reseruyng only the young wenches. They seldom assault cities or castels, but burne and waste townes and villages: Insomuch that they so please them selues herein, that they thynke they haue so muche the more enlarged theyr Empire, in howe muche they haue wasted and made desolate many prouinces. And although they be most impatient of rest and quietnesse, yet do they not kyll or destroy one an other, except theyr kynges be at dissention betweene them selues. If any man be slayne in any fray or quarrell, and the autchours of the mischefe be taken, only theyr hoxle, harnesse, weapons, and apparrell, are taken from them, and they dismissed. So that the murderer by the losse of a vyle Hoxle or a Bowe, is discharged of the Iudge with these wordes: Get thee hence, and goe about thy busynesse. They haue no vse of gold and syluer, except only a few merchauntes: but exercise exchaunge of ware for ware. And yf it so chaunce that by sell yng of suche thynges as they haue stolne, they get anye money of theyr borderers, they bye therewith certayne apparrell and other necessities of the Moscouites. The regions of theyr habitations (the felde Tartars I meane) are not lyimited with any boundes or borders. There was on a tyme a certayne fatte Tarter taken prysoner of the Moscouites: to whom, when the Prince sayde, howe art thou so fat thou dogge, sayth thou hast not to eate: the Tarter answered, Why should I haue to eate, sayth I possesse so large a lande from the East to the West, whereby I may be abundantly nourished: But thou mayest rather seeme to lacke, sayth thou inhabyttest so small a portion of the woorld, and dooest

The Tartars  
are theues  
and poore.

They reioyce  
in spoiling.

The felde  
Tartars.

A meery tale.

and kyngdomes lying that way.

313

dayly stryue for the same.

Casan is a kyngdome, also a citie and a castle of the same name, situate by the riuer Volga, on the further banke, almoste threescore and tenne leagues beneath Nouogradia the lower. Along by the course of Volga towarde the East and South, it is terminated with desert felde: towarde the Sommer East, it conuincth with the Tartars, called Schibanski, and Kosatzki. The kyng of this prouince is able to make an armie of thyrtye thousande men, especially footmen, of the which, the Czeremisse and Czubaschi are moste expert Archers. The Czubaschi are also cunningg Mariners. The citie of Casan is threescore leagues distant from the principall castle Viatbka. Furthermore, Casan in the Tartars language, signifieth a brassen pot boylyng. These Tartars are more ciuill then the other, for they dwell in houses, tye the grounde, and exercise the trade of marchandies: They were of late subdued by Basilus the great Duke of Moscouia, and had their Kyng assigned them at his arbitrement: But shortly after they rebelled agayne, and associate with other Tartars, inuaded the region of Moscouia, spoiled and wasted many cities and townes, and ledde away innumerable captiues, even from the citie of Moscouia, which they possessed for a tyme, and had utterly destroyed the same, yf it had not been for the valauntnesse of the Almaine Gunners, whiche kept the castle with great ordinaunce. They also put Duke Basilus to flight, and caused hym to make a letter of his owne hand to Machmetgirei theyr Kyng, to acknowledge hym selfe for a perpetuall tributarie to them: whereupon they dissolued the siege, and gaue the Moscouites free libertie to redeme their captiues & goods, and so departed. But Basilus not long able to abyde this contumelie and dishonour, after that he had put to death suche as by flying at the first encountring were the cause of this ouerthrow: assembled an armie of an hundred and fourescore thousande men shortly after, in the yeere. 1523. and sent forwarde his armie, vnder the conduct of his Lieutenant, and therewith an Herald at armes to hydde battell to Machmetgirei the Kyng of Casan, with wordes in this effectie. The last yeere, lyke a theefe and robber, without bydd yng of battell, thou dydest pryncely oppresse

Casan.

The kyng  
of Casan.

Archers.  
Warriers.

The towne  
Tartars.

Moscouia in-  
uaded by the  
Tartars.

The prince of  
Moscouia  
tributary to  
the Tartars.

Duke Basilus  
arise agaynst  
the Tartars.

Sa. i.

me,

mee, wherefore I nowe chalenge thee, once agayne to proue the fortune of warre, if thou mistruste not thyne owne power. To this the Kyng answered, that there were manye wayes open for him to inuade *Moscouia*: and that the warres haue no lesse respecte to the commoditie of tyme and place, then of armure or strength: and that hee would take the aduantage thereof, when and where it should seeme best to him, and not to other. With whiche wordes *Basilus* beyng greatly accensed, and burnyng with desyre of reuenge, inuaded the kingdome of *Casan*: whose Kyng beyng stryken with sodayne feare at the appoche of so terrible an army, assigned the gouernance of his kyngdome to the yong Kyng of *Taurica* his Nephew, whyle he him selfe went to requyre ayde of the Emperour of the *Turkes*. But in tyme, the Kyng of *Casan* submitted him selfe vpon certayne conditions of peace, which the *Moscouites* dyd the gladlyer accept for that tyme, because their victualles fayled them to maynteyne so great a multitude. But whereas Duke *Basilus* him selfe was not present at this last expedition, hee greatly suspected *Palitzki* the Lieutenant of the army to bee corrupted with bysses, to proceede no further. In this meane tyme, the Kyng of *Casan* sent Ambassadors to *Basilus* to intreate of peace, whom I sawe in the Dukes court at my beyng there: but I coulde perceyue no hope of peace to be betweene them. For euen then, *Basilus* to endamage the *Casans*, translated the marte to *Nouogradia*, whiche before was accustomed to be kepte in the Ilande of marchauntes, neare vnto the citie of *Casan*: Commaunding also vnder payne of greuous punishment, that none of his subiectes shoulde resorte to the Ilande of marchauntes: thynkyng that this translation of the marte shoulde greatly haue endamaged the *Casans*: and that only by takyng away their trade of salte (which they were accustomed to buye of the *Moscouites* at that marte) they shoulde haue been compelled to submission. But the *Moscouites* them selues felte no lesse inconvenience heereby then dyd the *Casans*, by reason of the dearily and scarfenesse that folowed heereof, of all suche thinges as the *Tartars* were accustomed to buyng thither by the ryuer of *Volga*.

The kyng of  
Casan submit-  
teth hym  
selfe.

The Ilande of  
marchauntes

*Volga*, from the *Caspian* sea, the kyngdomes of *Persia* and *Armenia*, and the marte towne of *Astrachan*: especially the great number of most excellent fyshes that are taken in *Volga*, both on the hyther and further syde of *Casan*.

The *Caspian*  
sea.  
*Persia*.  
*Armenia*.  
*Astrachan*.

But hauyng sayde thus muche of the warres betweene the prince of *Moscouia* and the *Tartars* of *Casan*, we will nowe proceede to speake somewhat of the other *Tartars*, inhabiting the regions toward the Southeast, and the *Caspian* sea.

Next beyond the *Tartars* of *Casan*, are the *Tartars* called *Nogai* or *Nogai*, which inhabite the regions beyonde *Volga*, about the *Caspian* sea at the ryuer *Laick*, runnyng out of the prouince of *Sibier*. These haue no kynges but Dukes. In our tyme, three brethren deuydyng the prouinces equally betweene them, possessed those Dukedomes. The first of them named *Schidack*, possesseth the citie of *Scharaitzick*, beyonde the ryuer of *Rha* or *Volga*, toward the East, with the region consynnyng with the ryuer *Laick*. The seconde called *Cossum*, enioyeth all the lande that lyeth betweene the ryuers of *Kaman*, *Laick*, and *Volga*. The third brother named *Schichmamai*, possesseth parte of the prouince of *Sibier*, and all the region about the same. *Schichmamai* is as much to say by interpretation, as holy or myghtie. And in maner all these regions are full of woods, except that that lieth toward *Scharaitz*, which consisteth of playnes and fieldes.

The *Tartars*  
neare to the  
*Caspian* sea.  
*Nogai*.

The posses-  
sion of three  
bretherne.

Betweene the ryuers of *Volga* and *Laick*, about the *Caspian* sea, there sometimes inhabited the kinges called *Sawolhenfes*. *Demetrius Danielis* (a man among these Barbarians of singular faith & grauitie) tolde vs of a marueylous & in maner incredible thing, that is scene among these *Tartars*. And that his father being sent by the prince of *Moscouia* to the kyng of *Sawolhenfe*, saw while he was in that legacie, a certaine seede in that Ilande somewhat lesse & rounder then the seeds of *Melones*: Of the which being hyd in the ground, there groweth a fruite or plante very lyke a *Lambe*, of the height of foure spannes: and is therefore called in theyr tongue *BoraietZ*, whiche signifieth a litle *Lambe*. For it hath the head, eyes, eares, and all other partes like vnto a *Lambe* newly yned: with also a very thyn skyn, wherewith dyuers of the inhabitants of those regions are accustomed to lyne theyr cappes and hattes, and other apperayments for theyr heades.

The kynges  
called *Sawol-*  
*henfes*.

A maruelous  
fruite lyke a  
*Lambe*.



Many also confirmed in our presence, that they had seene these skynnes. He saide furthermore, that that plant (yf it may be called a plant) hath blood, and no fleshe, but hath in the steade of fleshe, a certayne substance lyke vnto the fleshe of Creuishes. The hooffes also are not of horne, as are the Lambes, but couered with heare in the same fourme. The roote cleaueth to the nauyl or myddest of the belly: the plant or fruite lyueth vntil al the grasse & hearbes growing about it, being eaten, the roote wythcreth for lacke of nourishment. They say that it is very sweete to be eaten, and is therfore greatly desired, and sought for of the Mooles, and other rauenyng beastles. And albeit I esteeme all that is sayde of this plant to be fabulous, yet forasmuche as it hath been tolde me of credible persons, I haue thought good to make mention hereof.

Mandeuile.

Of this strange fruite *Mandeuile* maketh mention, where in the xxxiii. Chapter of his Booke, he wyrteth thus: Howe shal I say of some landes, countreys, and Isles that are beyonde the lande of *Cathay*: therfore whoso goeth from *Cathay* to *India* the hygh and the lowe, he shal goe through a Kyngdome that men call *Cadissen*, and is a great lande. There groweth a manner of fruite, as it were Gourdes, and when it is ripe, men cut it asunder, and fynde therein a beast, as it were of fleshe, bone, and blood, as it were a litle Lambe, without wooll, and men eate that beast, and the fruite also, whiche is a great marueyle: neuerthelesse, I sayde vnto them, that I helde that for no marueyle, for I sayde, that in my countrey are trees that beare fruite, that become byrdes fleeing, which are good to be eaten, and that that falleth into the water, lyueth, and that that falleth on the earth, dyeth: And they had great marueyle of this. &c.

Maruailes of the Dykeneps.

Barack Soltan.  
Cathay.

From the prince of *Schidacke*, proceeding twentye dayes iourney towards the East, are the people which the *Moscouites* call *Iurgenci*, whose prince is *Barack Soltan*, brother to the great *Chan* of *Cathay*. In tenne dayes iourney from *Barack Soltan*, they come to *Bebeid Chan*. And this is that great *Chan* of *Cathay*.

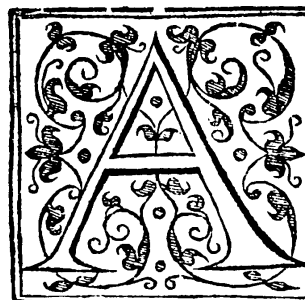
Names

Names of dignities among the *Tartars*, are these, *Chan*, signifieth a Kyng: *Soltan*, the sonne of a Kyng: *Bij*, a Duke: *Mursa*, the sonne of a Duke: *Olbound*, a noble man, or counsellor: *Olboadulu*, the sonne of a noble man: *Seid*, the hygh priest: *Ksi*, a priuate person.

The names of offices, are these, *Vlan*, the seconde dignitie to the Kyng: for the Kynges of the *Tartars* haue foure principal men, whose counsell they vse in all their weyghtie affayres: Of these, the firste is called *Schirni*: the seconde, *Barni*: the thyrde, *Gargni*: the fourth, *Tzipsan*. And to haue sayde thus muche of the *Tartars*, it shal suffice.

*Marcus Paulus* wyrteth, that the great *Chan* is called *Chan Cublai*, that is, the great Kyng of Kynges, as the great Turcke wyrteth hym selfe in lyke manner, as I sawe in a letter wyrtten by hym of late in the cite of *Ragusa*, in the whiche he vseth this subscription. *Soltan Soliman deselim Cham Signore de Signori in sempiterno.*

### The Nauigation by the frozen Sea.



At my beyng in *Mosconia*, when I was sent thither by king *Ferdinando*, my lord and maister, it so chaunced, that *Georgius Istoma*, the Duke of *Mosconia* his Interpreter, a man of great experience, who had before learned the latine tongue in the court of *Iohn* king of *Denmarke*, was there present at the same tyme. He, in the yeere of *Christe*. 1496. beyng sent of his prince with maister *Dauid*, a Scotte boyme, and then Ambassadour for the kyng of *Denmarke* (whom also I knewe there at my firste legacie) made me a breefe information of al the order of his iourney: the which,

Es. iii.

for

Of the Northeast frostie sea,

forasmuch as it may seeme difficult and laborious, as wel for the distance as dangerous places, I haue thought good to describe the same as I receyued it at his mouth.

First, he sayde that beyng sent of his prince with the sayde David, they came first to *Novogradia* the great. And whereas at that tyme the kyngdome of *Suecia* revolted from the Kyng of Denmarke, & also the Duke of *Moscouia* was at disencion with the *Suetians*, by reason whereof they could not passe by the most accustomed way, for the tumultes of warre, they attempted theyr iourney by an other way, longer, but safer, and came first from *Novogradia* to the mouthes of the ryuer of *Dwina* and *Potiwlo*, by a very diff. cult and paynfull iourney: For hee sayd that this iourney, which can not be to muche detested for such labours and traueples, continueth for the space of three hundred leagues. In fine, takyng foure small shippes or barkes at the mouthes of *Dwina*, they sayled by the coast on the right hand of the Ocean, where they sawe certayne hygh and rough mountaynes: and at the length saylyng. xvi. leagues, and passyng a great gulfe, folowed the coast on the lefte hande: and leapyng on the right hande the large sea whiche hath the name of the ryuer *PetZora* (as haue also the mountaynes adiacent to the same) they came to the people of *Finlappia*: who, although they dwell here & there in low cottages by the sea syde, and leade in maner a beastly lyfe, yet are they more iweeke and tractable then the wylde *Lappians*. He sayde that these also are tributaries to the prince of *Moscouia*. Then leauing the lande of the *Lappians*, and saylyng fourescore leagues, they came to the region of *Nortpoden*, vnder the dominion of the kyng of *Suecia*. This the *Moscouites* call *Kaienska Semla*, and the people *Kaieni*. Departyng from hence, and saylyng along by the coast of a wyndyng and bendyng shoie reachyng toward the ryght hande, they came to a promontorie or cape, called the Holy nose, being a great stone reachyng farre into the sea, to the similitude of a nose: vnder the which is seene a caue with a whyllepoole, which swaloweth the sea euery syre houres: and castyng forth the same agayne with terryble roaryng and violence, causeth the sayde whyllepoole. Some call this the *Naue*ll of the sea: and other name it *Charibdis*. He assyrmeth that

*Novogradia*.  
*Suecia* vnder  
the kyng of  
Denmarke.

*Dwina*.  
*Potiwlo*.

Hygh moun-  
taines neare  
the north  
Ocean.

*Finlappia*.

The wylde  
*Lappians*.

The region  
of *Nortpoden*

The cape  
called the holy  
nose.  
A whyllepoole  
or swallowing  
goulfe.

and kyngdomes lyng that way.

316

the violence of this swallowing gulfe is such, that it draweth into it, inuolueh, and swalloweth vp shippes, & all other thinges that come neare it, and that they were neuer in greater danger. For the whyllepoole so sodenly and violently dwe vnto it the shipp or barke wherein they were carryed, that with the helpe of Ores and great labour they hardly escaped. When they had thus ouerpassed the holy nose, they came to a certayne stony mountaine, which they should needes compasse about: but being there stayed with contrary windes for the space of certayne dayes, the pylot of the shipp spake vnto them in this effect: This stone (sayeth he) that you see, is called *Semes*: the whiche except we please with some gyfte, we shall not passe by without great danger. But the pylot beyng repproued of *Istoma* for his bayne superstition, helde his peacc. And when they had ben deteined there by tempest for the space of foure dayes, at the length the tempest ceased, and they went forward on theyr viage with a prosperous wynde. Then the pylot spake vnto them agayne, sayyng: You despised my admonition of pleasing the *Semes*, and scorned the same as bayne and superstitious: but if I had not priuile in the night ascended a rocke and pleased the *Semes*, we should surely haue had no passage. Being demaunded what he offered to the *Semes*, hee sayde that he poured butter myxt with otemeale vpon the stone which we sawe reach forth into the sea. As they sayled further, they came to an other cape named *Morka*, whiche was almost enuironed with the sea, lyke an Islande, in whole extreme pointe, is situate the Castell of *Barthus*, which some call *Wardhus*, (that is) a house of defence or fortresse: For the kynges of *Norway* haue there a garrison of men to defend theyr marches. He sayde furthermore, that that cape reacheth so farre into the sea, that they could scarcely compasse it in eyght dayes. By which taryng leaste they should be hyndered, they carryed on theyr shoulders with great labour, theyr barkes and fardelles ouer a streyght of lande conteynyng halfe a league in breadth. From hence they sayled to the region of the wylde *Lappones*, called *Dikilappones*, to a place named *Dront*, beyng. 200. leagues distant from *Dwina*, toward the North. And thus far as he sayth, toth the prince of *Moscouia* exacte tribute. Furthermore, leauing

Such whylle  
pooles are  
caused by pers

The stone  
called *Semes*.

Superstition

Sacrifice to the  
stone *Semes*.  
The cape  
*Morka*.  
The castell of  
*wardhus*.

The region  
of the wylde  
*Lappones*.  
*Dront*.

Es. iiii.

theyr

Of the Northeast frostie sea,

their Barkes here, they furnyshed the residue of their iourney on Sleades. He further declared, that there were heardes of Hartes, as are with vs of Dren, which in the Norwegians tongue are called *Rhen*, beyng somewhat bygger then our Hartes. These the Lappones vse in this maner: They ioyne them to Sleades made lyke syther Boates, as we put horses to the Cart, the man in the Sleade is tyed fast by the fecte, lest he fal out by the swift course of the Hartes. In his leaft hande he holdeth a collar or reigne, wherewith he moderateth the course of the Hartes: and in the ryght hand a pyked staffe, wherewith he may susteyne the Sleade from fallpug, yf it chaunce to decline too muche on anye parte. And he tolde me, that by this meanes he trauayled. xi. leagues in one day, and then dismyssed the Hart, who by hym selfe returned to his owne maister and accustomed stable. This iourney thus finished, they came to *Berges* a citie of *Noruegia*, or *Norway*, situate directyve toward the North, betweene the mountaynes, and went from thence to *Denmarke* on horsebacke. At *Drontheim* and *Berges* the day is sayde to be. xxi. houres long in the Sommer Equinoctial. *Blasius*, an other of the prince of *Mosconia* his Interpreters, who a fewe yeres before was sent of his prynce into *Spayne* to the Emperour, declared vnto vs an other and shorter way of his iourney: for he sayde, that when he was sent from *Moscouia* to *Iohn* the kyng of *Denmarke*, he came firste on foote vnto *Kostowe*, and takyng shyppe there, came to *Pereaslau*: and from *Pereaslau*, by the riuer *Volga*, to *Castronow*; and that from thence, goyng seuen werstes by lande, he came to a litle ryuer, saylyng by the which, when firste he came to *Vuolochda*, then to *Suchana*, and *Dwina*, and in fine, to the citie of *Berges* in *Norway*, ouerpasyng in this viage all the perylls and labours that *Istoma* rehearled before, he came at length to *Hafnia* the cheefe citie of *Denmarke*, whiche the Germanes call *Koppenhagen*: but in their returnyng home, they both confesse that they came to *Mosconia* by *Liunia*, and that they were a yere in this viage: albeit *Georgius Istoma* sayde, that halfe the parte of that tyme he was hyndered by tempestes, and inforced to tarrye long in manye places by the way, yet they both lykewyse constantly affyrme, that in this iourney eyther of them trauayled a thousande, threescore, and ten werstes, that

Journeying on Sleades.

How the Harts draw Sleades.

Twentye leagues in one day

The citie of Berges in Norway.

A shorter iourney. Kostowe. Dwina. Castronow.

Vuolochda. Suchana. Dwina. Hafnia. Koppenhagen.

Liunia.

Worst is almost an Italian style.

and kyngdomes lying that way.

317

(that is) three hundred and fourtie leagues. Furthermore also *Demetrius*, who of late was sent ambassadour from the prynce of *Mosconia* to the Bysshop of Rome, (by whose relation also *Paulus Iouius* wrote his description of *Mosconia*) confirmed all these thynges to be true. All they beyng demaunded of me of the congeled or frosen sea, made none other answer, but that in places neere vnto that sea, they sawe many and great ryuers, by whose vehemente course and abundant flowyng, the seas are dryuen farre from the shore: and that the layde water of the ryuers is frosen with the sea a good space from the lande, as in *Liunia* and other partes of *Suecia*. For although by the vehemencie of the wyndes, the Isle is broken in the sea, yet doth this chaunce seldome or neuer in ryuers, except by some inundation or floude the Isle gathered together be lyfted by and broken. For the flakes or pieces of Isle carped into the sea by force of the ryuers, do flote aboue the water in maner all the whole yere, and are agayne so vehemently frosen together, that a man may there sometymes see great heapes of the Isle of manie yeres, as doth appeare by suche pieces as are dryuen to the shore by the wynde. I haue also been credibly informed by faithfull men, that the sea *Balticum* (otherwyle called the gulfe of *Liunia*) is oftentymes frosen in many places. They say furthermore, that in that region whiche is inhabited of the wyld *Lappones*, the Sunne in the sommer Equinoctiall doth not fall for the space of .xl. dayes: yet that the body thereof is so hydden with a darke myste or cloude three houres, that the beames do not appeare: neuertheless to geue such light during that time, that the darkness hyndereth not theyr woorkes. The *Moscouites* make theyr boote that these wyld *Lappones* are tributaries to theyr prynce. Wherat I do not greatly marueyle, forasmuch as they haue none other neere vnto them, that may demaund tribute of them. Theyr tribute is onely furs and fyre, hauyng in maner none other thyng greatly commodious. And albeit they lacke bread, salte, and other inplementes of gluttony, and lyue onely with fyre and wyld beastes, yet are they exceedingly prone to lechery. They are suche expert archers, that if in theyr huntynge they espye any beastes, whose skynnes they desyre to saue vnpershed, they wyll not lyghtly mysse to hytte hym in

*Paulus Iouius*.

Ryuers falling into the frosen sea.

wynde. Isle.

Isle of manie yeres.

The sea *Balticum*.

Where the Sunne falleth not in .xl. days.

The wyld *Lappones* are tributaries to the *Moscouites*. Furs and fyre.

Expert archers

in the noſethylls. When they go ſooth on huntynge, they are accuſtomed to leaue at home with theyr wyues ſuche merchauntes or ſtraungers as they haue receyued into theyr houſes: So that if at theyr retorne, they perceyue theyr wyues through the companie of the ſtraungers to be merier and more iocunde then they were woonte to be, they geue the ſtraungers ſome preſent. But if they fynde it otherwyſe, they thruſt them ſooth of the doores with woordes of reproche. But nowe by the companie they haue with ſtraungers that reſort thither for gaynes, they begyn to leaue theyr native barbarouſneſſe. They gladly admytte merchauntes, becauſe they bypnyng them apparell of groſe cloth: alſo hatchettes, needels, ſpones, knyues, dynkynge cuppes, earthen and braſen pottes, with ſuch other neceſſarie wares: So that they uſe now to eate ſodden and roſted meate, and do embrace more ciuile maners. Their owne apparell is made of the ſkinnes of diuers beaſtes ſowed together. And in this apparel they ſometimes come to *Moscouia*. Yet fewe of them haue cappes or hoſen, which they uſe to make of hartes ſkynnes. They haue not the uſe of golde or ſyluer mony: but uſe only barterynge of ware for ware. And being ignorant of other languages beſyde theyr owne, they ſeeme among ſtraungers to be in maner dombe. Theyr cotages are couered onely with the barkes of trees. They haue no certayne reſting habitation: But when they haue conſumed the fiſhe and wild beaſtes in one place, they remoue to an other. Furthermoze alſo the ſaide ambadaours of the prince of *Moscouia* declared, that in the ſame partes they ſawe certayne hygh mountaynes, continually caſting ſooth flames of fyre, as doth the mountayne of *Etna* in the Iſlande of *Sicilia*: and that euen in *Norway* many mountaynes are fallen downe and burnt in maner to aſhes with ſuch continuall flames. Which thynge ſome conſiderynge, ſayne the fyre of purgatorie to be there. And as concernynge theſe mountaynes of *Norway*, when I was ſent ambadaour to *Chriſtierne* king of *Denmarke*, I was enſourmed the lyke by the gouernours of *Norway*, who chaunced at that tyme to be preſent there.

About the mouthes of the ryuer *PetZora* that are towarde the ryght hande from the mouthes of *Duina*, are ſayde to be ryuers and great beaſtes in the Ocean: and among other, a certayne

certayne great beaſt as byge as an Oxe, which the inhabitauntes call *Boys*. This beaſt hath ſhort feete lyke a *Beuer* or an Otter, with a breaſt ſomewhat hygh and brode, for the proportion of the reſidue of his body, and two long and great teeth growynge out of the vpper iawe. Theſe beaſtes for reſt and encreaſe, do ſometimes leaue the Ocean, and by great herdes aſcend the mountaynes: where, before they geue them ſelues to profounde ſleepe (whereunto they are naturally enclined) they appoynt one of theyr number as it were a watch man, as do *Cranes* for the ſecuritie of the reſt. Which yf he chaunce to ſleepe, or to be ſlaine of the hunters, the reſidue may eaſily be taken. But yf the watchman geue warnynge with roynge (as the maner is) immediately the whole herde awakened thereby, ſodaynely put theyr hinder feete to theyr teeth, and ſo fallynge from the mountaine with great celeritie as it were on a ſleade, they caſt them ſelues headlong into the Ocean: where alſo they reſt and ſleepe for a while vpon the heapes of yſe. The hunters purſue theſe beaſtes onely for theyr teeth: Of the whiche the *Moscouites*, *Tartars*, and eſpecially the *Turkes*, make haſtes for ſwordes and daggers very artificially: and uſe theſe rather for ornament, then to geue the greater ſtroke for the weyght or heauynneſſe thereof, as ſome ſay. Alſo among the *Turkes*, *Moscouites*, and *Tartars*, theſe teeth are ſolde by weyght, and are called the teeth of ſythes.

The froſen ſea reacheth farre and wyde beyonde *Duina*, to *PetZora*, and vnto the mouthes of the great ryuer *Obi*: beyonde the whiche they ſay to be the region of *Engreonland*, unknown and ſeperate from the trade and conuerſation of our men, by reaſon of hygh mountaynes couered, and colde with perpetuall ſnow, and the ſea no leſſe incumbred with continuall yſe, which hindereth nauigations, and maketh them daungerous, as they ſay.

The beaſt called Boys.

The prouidence of nature.

The froſen ſea.

Engreonland or greonland.

(.)

Exemplar

Good felowes  
they.

Necceſſarie  
wares.

No uſe of  
mony.

Theyr cotages.

Mountaynes  
continually  
burnynge.

The ryuer  
PetZora.

Of the Northeaft frofty sea,

## Exemplar Epistolę seu Literarum

Missiuarum, quas illustrissimus Princeps Eduardus, eius nominis Sextus, Anglię, Francię, et Hibernię Rex, misit ad Principes Septentrionalem, ac Orientalem, mundi plagam inhabitantes iuxta mare glaciale, nec non Indiam Orientalem. Anno Domini. 1553.

Regni sui Anno septimo, et ultimo.

**E**duardus sextus, Anglię, Francię, & Hibernię Rex. &c.  
Omnibus Regibus et principibus ac Dominis, et cunctis Iudicibus terrę, et Ducibus eius, quibuscunque est excellens aliqua dignitas in ea, cunctis in locis quę sunt sub vniuerso cęlo: Pax, tranquillitas, & honor vobis, terris, et regionibus vestris quę imperio vestro subiacent, cuiquę vestrum quemadmodum conuenit ei. Propterea quod indidit Deus Opt. Max. hominibus prę cunctis alijs viuentibus, cor & desiderium tale, vt appetat quisquę cum alijs societatem inire, amare, et vicissim amari, beneficijs afficere, et mutua accipere beneficia studeat, ideo cuiquę pro facultate sua hoc desiderium in omnibus quidem hominibus beneficijs fouere et conseruare conuenit, in illis autem maxime, qui hoc desiderio adducti, a remotis etiam regionibus ad eos veniunt. Quo enim longius iter, eius rei gratia ingressi sunt, eo ardentius in eis hoc desiderium fuisse declararunt. Insuper etiam ad hoc, nos patrum maiorumq; nostrorum exempla inuitant, qui semper humanissime susceperunt et benignissime tractauerunt illos, qui tum a locis propinquis, tum a remotis, eos amice adibant, eorum se protectioni commendantes. Quod si omnibus id prestare æquum est, certe mercatoribus imprimis prestari debet, qui per vniuersum orbem discurrunt, mare circumlustrantes et aridam, vt res bonas et vtilis quę Dei beneficio in regione eorum inueniuntur, ad remotissimas regiones et regna adferant, atquę inde viuissim referant, quod suę regioni vtile ibi repererint: vt et populi ad quos eunt, non destituantur commodis, quę non profert illis terra eorum, & ipsi sint participes rerum, quibus illi abundant. Nam Deus cęli et terrę, humano generi maxime consulens, noluit vt omnia in quauis regione inuenirentur, quo regio ope alterius regionis indigeret, et gens ab alio gente commodum aliquod expectaret, ac ita stabiliretur amicitia

and kingdomes lying that way.

319

amicitia inter omnes, singulique omnibus benefacere quererent. Hoc itaque incundę ac stabiliendę amicitie desiderio moti viri quidam regni nostri, iter in remotas maritimas regiones instituerunt, vt inter nostros et illos populos, viam mercibus inferendis et eferendis aperirent, nosq; rogauerunt vt id illis concederemus. Qui petitioni illorum annuentes, concessimus viro honorabili et forti, Hugoni Wilibero, et alijs qui com co sunt seruis nostris fidis et charis, vt pro sua voluntate, in regiones eis prius incognitas eant, quesituri ea quibus nos caremus, et adducant illis ex nostris terris, id quod illi carent. Atque ita illis et nobis commodum inde accedat, sitq; amicitia perpetua, et fœdus indissolubile inter illos et nos, dum permittent illi nos accipere de rebus, quibus superabundant in regnis suis, et nos concedemus illis ex regnis nostris res, quibus destituuntur. Rogamus itaque vos Reges et principes, & omnes quibus aliqua est potestas in terra, vt viris istis nostris, transitum permittatis per regiones vestras. Non enim tangent quicquam ex rebus vestris inuitis vobis. Cogitate quoddam homines ei ipsi sunt. Et si qua re caruerint, oramus pro vestra beneficentia, eam vos illis tribuatis, accipientes vicissim ab eis, quod poterunt rependere vobis. Ita vos gerite erga eos, quemadmodum cuperitis vt nos, et subditi nostri, nos gereremus erga seruos vestros, si quando transferint per regiones nostras. Atque promittimus vobis per Deum omnium quę cęlo, terra et mari continentur, perque vitam nostrum, et tranquillitatem regnorum nostrorum, nos pari benignitate seruos vestros accepturos, si ad regna nostra aliquando venerint. Atq; a nobis et subditis nostris, ac si nati fuisset in regnis nostris ita benignę tractabuntur, vt rependamus vobis benignitatem, quam nostris exhibueritis. Postquam vos Reges, Principes, &c. rogauimus vt humanitate et beneficentia orni prosequamini seruos nostros nobis charos, oramus omnipotentem Deum nostrum, vt vobis diuturnam vitam largiatur, et pacem quę nullam habeat finem. Scriptum Londini, quę ciuitas est regni nostri. Anno .5515. a creato mundo, mense Iiar, xiiii. die mensis, anno septimo regni nostri.

The



## Of the Northeft frosty sea.

The copy of the letters missiue whiche the ryght noble prince Edward the .vi. sent to the Kynges, Princes, and other potentates inhabityng the Northeft partes of the worlde towarde the myghty Empire of Cathay, at such tyme as syr Hugh V Villoby knyght and Richard Chaunceler, with theyr company, attempted theyr voyage thither in the yeere of Christ .1553. and the .vii. and last yeere of his reigne.



Edward the syxt by the grace of God, king of England, Fraunce and Ireland. &c. To all Kynges, Princes, Rulers, Judges, and Gouvernours of the earth, and all other haupng any excellent dignitie on the same in all places vnder the vniuersall heauen: Peace, tranquillitie, and honour, be vnto you, and your landes and regions whiche are vnder your dominions, and to euery of you, as is conuenient.

Forasmuche as the great and almyghtie God hath geuen vnto mankynde, aboue all other lyuing creatures, such a hart and desyre, that euery man desyeth to ioyne frendeshyp with other, to loue and be loued, also to geue and receyue mutuall benefites: it is therefore the duetie of all men, accordyng to theyr power, to mayntayne and increase this desyre in euery man, with well deseruing to all men, and especially to shewe this good affection to such, as beyng moued with this desyre, come vnto them from farre countreis. For in howe much the longer voyage they haue attempted for this intent, so much the more do they thereby declare that this desyre hath ben ardent in them. Furthermore also, the examples of our fathers and predecessours do inuite vs herevnto, forasmuch as they haue euer gently and louyngly increated such as of frendely mynde came to them, aswell from countreys neere hand, as far remote, commending them selues to their protection. And if it be ryght and equitie to shewe such humanitie towarde all men, doubtesse the same ought chiefly to be shewed to merchautes, who wanderyng about the worlde, search both the lande and the sea, to cary suche good and profitable thynges as are founde in theyr countreys, to remote regions and kyng-

domes.

and kingdomes lying that way.

400

domes, and agayne to bypnyng from the same, suche thynges as they fynde there commodious for theyr owne countreys: both aswell that the people, to whom they goe, may not be destitute of suche commodities as theyr countreys bypnyng not soothe to them, as that also they may be partakers of suche thynges wherof they abounde. For god of heauen and earth, greatly proupyng for mankynde, would not that al thynges should bee founde in one region, to thende that one should haue neede of an other, that by this meanes frendshyp myght be establisshed among all men, and euery one seeke to gratifie all. For the establisshing and furtheraunce of whiche vniuersall amitie, certayne men of our realme, moued hereunto by the sayde desire, haue instituted and taken vpon them a viage by sea into farre countreys, to the intent that betweene our people and them, a way be opened to bypnyng in, and carry out merchandizes, desiring vs to further theyr enterpryse. Who assentpnyng to theyr petition, haue licensed the ryght valiaunt and worthy sir Hugh Villoby knyght, and other our trusty and saythful seruantes which are with him, accordyng to theyr desire, to go to countreys to them heretofore vnknewen, aswell to seeke suche thynges as we lacke, as also to carry vnto them from our regions, suche thynges as they lacke. So that hereby not only commoditie may ensue both to them and to vs, but also an indissoluble and perpetuall league of frendshyp be establisshed betweene vs both, whyle they permit vs to take of theyr thyngs, such whercof they haue aboundaunce in theyr regions, and we agayne graunt them suche thynges of ours whercof they are destitute. We therefore desire you Kynges and Princes, and all other to whom there is any power on the earth, to permit vnto these our seruantes, free passage by your regions and dominions: for they shall not touche any thyng of yours vniwilling vnto you. Consider you that they also are men. If therefore they shall stande in neede of any thyng, we desire you of all humanitie, and for the nobilitie whiche is in you, to ayde and helpe them with suche thynges as they lacke, receyuyng agayne of them suche thynges as they shalbe able to geue you in recompence. Shew your selues so towards them, as you would that we and our subiectes should shew our selues towards your seruantes, if at any tyme they shall passe by our regions.

Thus

Thus doyng, we promise you by the God of all thyngs that are contepned in heauen, earth, and the sea, and by the lyfe and tranquillitie of our kyngdomes, that we wyl with lyke humanitie accept your seruantes if at any tyme they shall come to our kyngdomes, where they shall as frendly and gently be entertayned, as if they were bozne in our dominions, that we may hereby recompence the fauour and benignitie which you haue shewed to our men. Thus after we haue desired you Kynges and Princes. &c. With all humanitie and fauour, to entertayne our welbeloued seruantes, we wyl pray our almyghtie God to graunte you long lyfe, & peace, which neuer shall haue end. Wrytten in London whiche is the cheefe citie of our kyngdome: in

the peere from the creation of the worlde  
5515. in the moneth of Iar, the four-  
seene day of the moneth, and  
seuenth peere of our  
reigne.

This letter was wrytten also in Greeke,  
and diuers other languages.

(.)

Other

Iar, I would  
reade Iar,  
that is in the  
Saraen lan-  
guage, mist of  
Turkish & E-  
gyptian, Febru-  
ary, interpreted  
by them the  
moneth to set  
shipp to the  
sea.

## The voyages of Persia, traueiled

by the merchauntes of London, of the com-  
pany and felowshyp of *Moscouia*. In  
the yeeres. 1561. 1567.  
1568.



I shall not heere be needefull to wryte any thyng of the way from hence to *Moscouia* by sea, vnto the porte of Saincte Nicolas, where our merchantes haue a house of their trafique, for as muche as the same is already well knowen. And therefore it shall suffice for the description of this voyage, to shewe the way from Saincte Nicolas in *Moscouia* vnto *Persia*, as our men traueyled by the regions of *Moscouia* vnto the *Caspian* sea, and by that sea into *Media* and *Persia*, vnto the court of the great Sophie Kyng of *Persia*, and many other realmes and kyngdomes subiecte vnto the same, as heereafter shall bee moze particularly declared, with suche breuitie as the tyme and matter now requireth. Forasmuch as many thynges myght bee wrytten touchyng this voyage, and the merchauntes trafique in these regions, whiche for many great considerations ought not to be publyshed or put in print: and therefore touchyng only those thynges, it shall suffice to the reader to vnderstande the description of the regions, with the maners and customes of the people of those countreys, after the maner of a Geographicall historie, partely to delight and content the desyre of suche as take pleasure in the knowledge of straunge thynges and countreys, whereby the mynde of man increaseth in wisdom and knowledge, both in humane affayres, and also of the marueylous and manyfolde workes of god & nature, that thereby God may be glorified and sanctified in all his workes, in the spirites of all good and vertuous men which delight in the same. And whereas in the description of this voyage, I may seeme to haue kepte no due order of wrytyng, I shal desire the reader to haue me excused, for that I coulde not orderly haue any information of them that came from *Persia*: but was fayne to geather certayne notes  
Et. i. only

## The vyage of the Moscouian merchantes

only by communication and conference with them at sundrye tymes, with fewe woordes as occasion serued. But now to enter into the voyage.

From the merchauntes house at the porte of Saint Nicolas in Moscouia, they traueyle by the ryuers of Duina and Sarchana, vntyll they come vnto the citie of Vologda. (where also the merchantes haue an other house) a thousande werstes or Rus myles, or myles of Russia, whiche may be about seuen hundred Englyshe myles. Then from Vologda ouerlande, to the citie of Yeraslaue, which lyeth on the ryuer Volga, a hundred and fourescore Rus myles. At this citie of Yeraslaue, the merchantes lande theyr goods for Persia, and buylded theyr shyppes there vppon the sayde ryuer, at a place named Vstwicki Zelesnoy, about a hundred myles from Yeraslaue. So traueplyng from thence downe the ryuer Volga, vntyll they come to Astracan, a forte of the Emperour of Moscouia, lying threescore myles from the Caspian sea. Vppon Volga lyeth a great towne of merchaundies, named Costrom, and beyonde that a strong Castell of bricke, named His Nouogorod, standyng vppon a hyll. And from thence, vppon an arme of the same ryuer, lyeth a great fortrese named Cazan, which the Moscouite woon from the Tartars, Nogais being their chiefe and principall holde: and therewith conquered the whole countrey of Cazan, or the Tartars Cazamites, conteynyng two thousande myles. From Cazan vpon the sayde ryuer, the Moscouite hath in his subiection the one syde of the ryuer, and the Tartars, called Crimes, haue the other syde. But they dare not passe ouer the ryuer, by reason that the Moscouite keepeth many Garisons on the ryuer, and in certayne Ilandes of the ryuer from place to place, as occasion serueth: So that the ryuer is kept quietly, notwithstanding the conflict that happened to Banister outward, by reason of the Turkes souldiers that would haue spoyled his shyppes: which neuerthelesse defended them selues manfully, and slue two hundred of the Turkes. For the Turke sent thither an arme of xl. thousande Turkes and Tartars, to recouer Astracan from the Moscouite: but they were enforced to breake vp theyr Campe for lacke of victualles and other necessities, especially because the wynter drew neare, and the Moscouite prepared a great army against them.

From

into Persia.

322

From Astracan, downe the sayde ryuer, to the Caspian sea, is the distance of threescore myles. From the enterance into the Caspian sea, in two or thre dayes saylyng with a good wynde, crosse ouer that sea from the North to the South, they come to the realme of Media, arryuing at a porte named Bilbil, enterpyng into a small ryuer that falleth into the Caspian sea, and passing from thence by lande with Camels, in thre dayes iourney, they come to a citie of Sharuan or Media, named Shamaki. And from thence in xviij. dayes iourney by Camelles, they come to the great and famous citie of Tauris, or Teueris, being the greatest citie of Persia, for trade of merchandies. This citie is esteemed almost twyse as byg as London, and for the most parte is buylded of rawe bricke, not burnt, but only dreyed and hardened in the sunne: the doores of the houses be very lowe and litle. The Sophie in tyme paste remayned chiefly in this citie: But after that the region about this citie was inuaded by the Turkes, he went further into the countrey, and buylded a towne named Casbin, which before xx. yeeres was but a village, where he now keepeth his court, being xiiij. dayes iourney from Shamaki, by horse, and xx. dayes by Camelles.

Media now  
called Shars  
nan.

Note, that neare vnto this syde of the Caspian sea, dwell the Tartars called Nogais and Shalcouis. Also certayne Arabians, and Christians named Armenians. The Caspian sea is otherwise called Mare de Baccan: and may seme so to be called, by reason of a towne by the sea syde, named Bacco.

Armenians.  
Christians.

Et. ii.

Cer-

A werst is the  
myle, and is  
three quarters  
of an Englyshe  
myle.

# The vyage of the Moscouian merchantes

Certayne extractes of the voyage of maister Antony Jenkinson into Persia, in the yeere. 1561.



**A** the yeere. 1561. maister Antonie Jenkinson was sent as Ambassadour into Persia, with the Queenes maiesties letters, in the Latine, Italian, and Hebrue tongue, to the great Sophie or kyng of Persia, to entreate of commodities of merchaundies whiche myght bee betweene her maiesties merchantes and them, bypon certayne priuileges and free passage to bee graunted vnto her merchauntes both by the Emperour of Moscouia and the Sophi of Persia, as hereafter shall appeare, where we will wyte of the sayde priuileges. Maister Jenkinson at his first commyng, founde some difficultie to obtayne the Emperours licence to goe into Persia: but at the length by friendship made, hee gaue him both licence to goe, and also gaue him letters commendatorie vnto the Sophie, and committed also to him certayne affayres of his to doe there. And after certayne banquettes, and honourable enterteynment, accompanied him with an Ambassadour of Persia, who had been long in his Courte. Therefore saylyng ouer the Caspian sea, they arriued on the West syde thereof. Not farre from thence is a towne named Darbent, where is a very strong Castell of stone made by Alexander Magnus, and a wall of the length of thirtiene dayes iourney, whiche he made when he keppe warres agaynst the Persians and Medians, that the inhabitauntes of that countrey then newly conquered, shoulde neyther lyghly flee, nor his enemyes invade them. This Darbent, is now vnder the dominion of the Sophie, and in the latitude of .41. degrees. From Darbent to Bilbec, or Bilbil, the pozte and harborowe where they discharge theyr goods, is halfe a dayes saylyng.

A marvellous long wall builded by great Alexander.

And

into Persia.

331

And from thence to Shavuan is ten dayes iourney: This towne standeth in a valley, & is in the countrey of Media: in the whiche towne also, remaineth the Soltan or gouernour of Media, vnder the Sophie.

In the meane tyme, the Kyng of Media, named Abdalica, cosen vnto the Sophie, came thither, and honourably enter-  
teyned maister Jenkinson and the Englyshe merchauntes which were with him, and made them a great banquet, causyng maister Jenkinson (who was then ryche appparelled in silke, veluet, and scarlet, as became an Ambassadour for the Queenes maiestie) to sit downe somewhat farre from him. The Kyng him selfe dyd sitte in a very ryche Pavillion wrought with silke and golde, of the length of sixtiene satham, or thereabout, placed on a hylles syde, haupng before him a goodly fountayne of fayre running water, wherof he and his nobilitie dronke. He was rychly appparelled with long garments of silke, and cloth of golde, brodered with pearle and pretious stones. Vpon his head, he had a Cappe with a sharpe ende of halfe a yerde long, standyng bypyght, of ryche cloth of golde, wrapped about with a piece of Indian silke of twentie yardes long, wrought with golde. On the lefte syde of his Tollepan (so is the cappe called) was a plume of feathers set in a troonke of golde, rychly inameled and set with pretious stones. At his eares, he wore earerynges, with pendants of golde and stones a handfull long, with two great Rubies of great value in the endes therof. All the ground within his Pavillion, was couered with Carpettes, and vnder him selfe was layed a square Carpet wrought with siluer and golde, and therevpon were layde two sutable Cussions. Thus the kyng and his noble men satte in his Pavillion with theyr legges acrosse, as doe Taylers: Yet commaunded stooles to be gyuen to our men, bycause they coulde not sitte so: then caused meate to be sette before them, and made them a banquet of a hundred dyshes of meate, and as many of frutes and conserues. After the banquet, he caused them to goe with him a huntynge and hauking, in the which they killed certayne beastes and Cranes. Maister Jenkinson founde so much fauour with this kyng, that at his departyng, he commended him to the Sophie with his letters, and also wrote in his fauour to his sonne,  
Et.iii. being

The magnificence of Abdalica kyng of Media.

Hauking and huntynge.

## The vyage of the Moscouian merchants

being then in the *Sophies* court. So that after his commyng thither, by his meanes, he came at the length to the presence and speache of the *Sophie*: whiche otherwyle he shoulde haue done very hardly, by reason of the *Turkes* Ambassadors which then were there, and resisted his assayes, with many persuacons to the *Sophie*, and oher of his nobilitie, agaynst the *Christians*, as mortall enemies both to the *Turkes* and *Persians*, and theyr religion. And whereas a whyle before, a perpetuall peace and amitie was concluded betweene the *Turke* and the *Sophie*, the Ambassadors woulde persuaue him that his friendship with the *Christians*, or contracte with them touchyng any affaires, and especially suche as myght be prejudiciall to the *Turke*, or any of his subiectes, myght engender newe suspicions and occasions of breach of the late concluded peace, with many suche other furnished accusations. Wherebypon the *Sophie* stayde, and prolonged the tyme, before he woulde admit maister *Jenkinson* to his speache. At the length when by the friendship and fauour of *Kyng Abdulaca* and his sonne, with other friends made in the court, the tyme was appoynted that maister *Jenkinson* shoulde be heard, there was one that came to him without the court gate, before he lyght from his horse on the ground, and gaue him a payre of shoes sent from the *Sophie*, suche as he him selfe was wonte to weare in the nyght when he ryseth to pray, willyng him to put them on his feete, for that it was not otherwyle lawfull for him being a *Gawar* or *Caffer* (that is a myf beleeuery) to treade vpon that holy ground. When hee came to his presence, he demaunded of him of what countrey of *Frankes* he was, meanyng by *Frankes* *Christians*: For they call all *Christians* *Frankes* (that is *Frenche* men) as we commonly call all *Mahumetans*, *Turkes*, although there bee many *Mahumetans* of other nations besyde *Turkes*. He answered, that he was a *Christian* of the best *Frankes* of the countrey of *Englande*: declaring further vnto him, the cause of his commyng thither, to be for the great commoditie of him and his subiectes by the way of merchandies, as myght further appeare by the letters directed vnto his maiestie from the *Queene* of *Englande* his *Princke*, and the *Emperour* of *Moscouia*. Muche more talke had he with maister *Jenkinson*, not here

The *Turkes* Ambassadors resist maister *Jenkinson*.

Great holinesse in shoes.

*Christians* called *Frankes*.

into *Persia*.

324

here to be written: but by reason of the *Turkes* Ambassadors, at this present, was no great thyng done heerein to the preferment of the merchantes assayes. Yet he commaunded that maister *Jenkinson* shoulde be honourably bled, and sent him certayne ryche apparell. At this tyme was also in the *Sophies* court the sonne of the *Kyng* of the *Georgians*, a *Christian* *Silmatike* as they are nowe called. The same tyme also, a sonne of the *Turkes* (who had before attempted some what agaynst his father, and fledde to the *Sophie*) was by him at the *Turkes* request deteyned in prison: And vpon the late conclusion of peace, the *Turke* required the *Sophie* to send him his head: which hee graunted, and sent it him by the sayd Ambassadors. This voyage of maister *Jenkinson*, was in the yeere.  
1561.

The *Turkes* sonne beheaded.



## The vyage of the Moscouian merchants

Here foloweth such informations as was gyuen mee by maister Geferie Ducate, principall Agent of the merchantes, for the last voyage into *Persia*, in the yeere of our Lord. 1568. beginning in the dominion of the Sophie, at the citie of *Shamaki* in *Media*, bycause the beginning of the voyage from *Moscouia* hytherto, is declared heere before.



*Shamaki* is the fayrest towne in all *Media*, and the chiefeest commoditie of that countrey is rawe silke, and the greatest plentie thereof, is at a towne thre dayes iourney from *Shamaki*, called *Arashe*: and within thre dayes iourney of *Arashe*, is a countrey named *Groyfine*, whose inhabitauntes are

Christians.  
Georgians.

Basell Nuttes.

Christians, & are thought to be they, which are otherwise called *Georgians*: there is also much silke to be solde. The chiefe towne of that countrey is called *Zeghani*, from whence is carryed peere-ly into *Persia*, an incredible quantitie of basell Nuttes, all of one sorte and goodnesse, and as good and thyn shaled as are our *Jylberdes*. Of these are carped peerely the quantitie of 4000. Camelles laden.

Of the name of the Sophie of *Persia*, and why he is called the *Shaugb*, and of other customes.



The Kyng of *Persia* (whom here we call the great *Sopbi*) is not there so called, but is called the *Shaugb*. It were there daungerous to call him by the name of *Sopbi*, bycause that *Sopbi* in the *Persian* tongue, is a begger: and it were as much as to call him, the great begger.

The

into *Persia*.

343

Helpeeth at a towne called *Casbin*, whiche is situat in a goodly *Casbin*, fertile valley, of thre or foure dayes iorney in length. The towne is but euill buylded, and for the most part all of byrcke, not hardened with fyre, but onely dyed at the Sunne, as is the most part of the buyldyng of all *Persia*. The kyng hath not come out of the compasse of his owne house in .xxiii. or .xxiiii. yerres, whereof the cause is not knowen, but as they saye, it is vppon a superstition of certayne prophesies, to whiche they are greatly addicted: he is nowe about fourescore yerres of age, and very lustie. And to keepe hym the more lustye, he hath foure wyues alwayes, and about thre hundred concubynes. And once in the yeere, he hath all the sayre maydens and wyues, that may bee founde a great way about, brought vnto hym, whom he diligently peruseth, feelyng them in all partes, takyng suche as he lyketh, and puttyng away some of them which he hath kept before. And with them that he putteth away, he gratifieth some suche as hath doone hym the best seruice. And if he chaunce to take any mans wyfe, her husbände is very glad thereof, and in recompence of her, oftentymes he geueth the husbände one of his olde stoe, whom he thankfully recepueth. If any straunger, beyng a Christian, shall come before hym, he must put on a newe payre of shoues made in that countrey, and from the place where he entereth, there is dygged as it were a causye all the way, vntyll he come to the place where he shall talke with the kyng, who standeth alwayes aboue in a gallerie when he talketh with any strangers: and when the stranger is departed, then is the causye cast downe, and the grounde made euen agayne.

The kynges  
Concubines.

How straun-  
gers are vsed,

(.)

Of



They religion is all one with the Turkes, sayng that they dyffer who was the ryght succellor of Mahumet. The Turkes saye that it was one Homer and his sonne Vsman. But the Persians saye, that it was one Mortus Ali, whiche they woulde proue in this maner. They say there was a counsaille called to decide the matter who shoulde be the succellour: and after they had called vppon Mahumet to reuele vnto them his wyll and pleasure therein, there came among them a litle lizarde, who declared that it was Mahumetes pleasure that Mortus Ali shoulde be his succellour. This Mortus Ali was a valiant man, and slewe Homer the Turkes prophet: He had a swoorde that he fought withall, with the whiche he conquered all his enemies, and kyled as many as he stroake. When Mortus Ali dyed, there came a holy prophet, who gaue them warnyng that shortly there woulde come a whyte Camell, vppon the which he charged them to lay the body and swoorde of Mortus Ali, and to suffer the Camell to carpe it whether he woulde. The whiche beyng perfourmed, the sayde whyte Camell carped the swoorde and body of Mortus Ali vnto the sea syde, and the Camell goyng a good way into the sea, was with the swoorde and bodye of Mortus Ali taken vp into heauen, for whose retorne they haue long looked for in Persia. And for this cause, the kyng alwayes keepeth a horse redde sadled for hym, and also of late kepte for hym one of his owne daughters to be his wyfe, but she dyed in the yeere of our Lorde .1573. And saye furthermore, that yf he come not shortly, they shalbe of our beleefe: much lyke the Jewes, lookyng for theyr Messias to come and reigne among

Haly,  
A goodly and  
well grounded  
religion.

mong them, lyke a worldly kyng for euer, and deliuer them from the captiuitie which they are nowe in among the Christians, Turkes, and Gentyles.

The Saugh, or Kyng of Persia, is nothyng in strength and power comparable vnto the Turke: for although he hath a great Dominion, yet is it nothyng to be compared with the Turkes: neyther hath he any great Ordinaunce of Gunnes, or Harkebuses. Notwithstandyng, his eldest sonne Ismael, about twentie and fyue yeeres past, fought a great battayle with the Turke, and slewe of his armye about an hundred thousande men, who after his retorne, was by his father cast into prysen, and there continueth vntyl this daye: for his father the Shaugh, had hym in suspition that he woulde haue put hym downe, and haue taken the regiment vppon hym selfe.

Theyr opinion of Christ, is that he was an holy man, and a great Prophet, but not lyke vnto Mahumet: sayng that Mahumet was the last Prophet, by whom all thynges were finished, and was therefore the greatest. To proue that Christ was not Goddes sonne, they saye that God had neuer wyfe, and therefore coulde haue no sonne or chyldren. They goe on pylgrymage from the furthest part of Persia, vnto Mecha in Arabia, and by the way they visite also the sepulchre of Christ at Ierusalem, whiche they nowe call Couche Kalye.

Theyr opinion  
of Christ.

The most part of Spices whiche cometh into Persia, is brought from the Island of Ormus, situate in the gulf of Persia, called Sinus Persicus, betweene the mayne lande of Persia and Arabia. &c. The Portugales touche at Ormus both in theyr voyage to East India, and homewarde agayne, and from thence byng all suche Spices as is occupied in Persia and the regions there about: for of Pepper they byng verie small quantitie, and that at a verie deare prys. The Turkes oftentimes byng Pepper from Mecha in Arabia, whiche they sell as good cheape as that which is brought from Ormus. Sylkes are brought from noo place, but are wrought all in theyr owne countrey. Ormus, is within two myles of the mayne lande of Persia, and the Portugales fetch the fresh water there, for the whiche they paye trybute to the Shaugh or kyng of Persia.

Within

## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

**Their money.** Within *Persia*, they haue neyther golde nor syluer mynes; yet haue they cōyned money, both of golde and syluer, and also other small moneys of Copper. There is brought into *Persia* an incredible summe of Duche Dolours, which for the most part is there employed in ratweylke.

**Their bookes and learnyng.** They haue few bookes, and lesse learnyng, and are for the most part very brutyshe in all kynde of good sciences, sauynge in some kynde of sylke workes, and in suche thynges as parteyne to the furniture of houses, in the which they are passyng good.

**Such was the lawe of the Macedonians for Treason.** Their lawes are, as is their religion, wicked and detestable. And yf any man offend the Prince, he punyssheth it extreamely, not only in the person that offendeth, but also in his chyldren, and in as many as are of his kynne. Theft and murder are often punished, yet none otherwys than pleaseeth hym that is ruler in the place where the offence is committed, and as the party offending is able to make frendes, or with money to redeeme his offence.

**Dissention for religion.** There is often tymes great mutenye among the people in great towne, whiche of *Mortus Ali* sonnes was greatest: Insomuche that sometymes in the towne two or thre thousand people are togeather by the eares for the same, as I haue seene in the towne of *Shamaky* and *Ardaruill*, and also in the great citie of *Teueris*, where I haue seene a man comming from feightyng, in a brauerie byngyng in his hande foure or fyue mens heades, carryng them by the heare of the head: for although they haue their heades most commonly twyse a weeke, yet leaue they a tuft of heare vpon the crowne, about two foote long. I haue enquired why they leaue that tuft of heare vpon their heades. They answer, that thereby they may easlyer be carryed vnto heauen, when they are dead.

**Shauing.** For their religion, they haue certayne priestes, who are apperelld lyke vnto other men. They vse euerye mornyng and afternoone, to go by to the toppes of their churches, and tell there a great tale of *Mahumet* and *Mortus Ali*: and other preaching haue they none. Their Lent is after Christmas, not in abstinence from flesh only, but from al meates & drynkes, vntill the day be of the skeye; but then they eate sometimes the whole night.

And

into *Persia*.

327

And although it be against their religion to drynke wyne, yet at nyght they wyl take great excelsse thereof, and bee dronken. Their lent begynneth at the newe Moone, and they do not enter into it vntill they haue seene the same: Nether yet doth their lent ende, vntill they haue seene the next new Moone, although the same through close weather shoulde not be seene in long tyme.

They haue among them certayne holy men, whom they call *Setes*, counted holy for that they or any of their auncestours haue been on pilgrimage at *Mecba* in *Arabia*, for whosoever goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of *Mahumet*, both he and all his posteritie, are euer after called *Setes*, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of them selues. And if a man contrarye one of these, he wyl saye that he is a fayncte, and therefore ought to be beloued: and that he cannot lye, although he lye neuer so shamefully. Thus a man may be to holy, and no pryde is greater then spirituall pryde, of a mynde puffed vp with his owne opinion of holynesse. These *Setes* do vse to haue their headdes all ouer, sayng on the sydes a litle about the temples, the whiche they leaue vnshauen, and vse to brynde the same as women do their heare, and weare it as long as it wyl growe.

Euery mornyng they vse to worshyppe God, *Mahumet*, and *Mortus Ali*, and in prayng turne them selues toward the South, because *Mecba* lyeth that way from them. When they be in trauaile on the way, many of them wyl (as soone as the sunne ryseth) lyght from their horses, turnyng them selues to the South, and wyl laye their gownes before them, with their swordes and beades, and so standyng by nyght, worshyp to the South: And many tymes in their prayers kneele downe and kylle their beades, or somewhat els that lyeth before them.

The men or women do neuer go to make water, but they vse to take with them a pottle with a spout, and after they haue made water, they flashe some water vpon their priuie partes, and thus do the women aswell as the men: and this is a matter of great religion among them, and in making of water, the men do coume downe as well as the women.

Abstinence from wyne, but not from drians kennes.

Their saintes and holy men.

Pilgrimage.

Their prayer and worshiping of God and Mahumet,

Washing and outward cleansing.

When

## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

Their swearing

When they earnestly affirme a matter, they wyl swear by God, *Mahumet*, or *Mortus Ali*, and sometymes by all at ones: as thus in theyr owne language, saying, *Olla Mahumet Ali*. But if he sweare by the *Shaughe* head, in saying *Shaugbam basshe*, you may then beleue hym if you wyl.

The kynges magnificence.

The *Shaughe* keepeth a great magnificence in his court: and although sometymes in a moneth or fyre weekes, none of his nobilitie or counsaile can see hym, yet go they dayly to the court, and tary there a certayne tyme, vntyll they haue knowen his pleasure whether he wyl commaund them any thyng or not. He is watched euery nyght with a thousand of his men, whiche are called his *Turkes*, who are they that he sleth to sende into the countreys about his greatestt affayres. When he sendeth any of them (if it be to the greatestt of any of his nobilitie) he wyl obeye them, although the messenger shoulde beate any of them to death.

Pursuantes.

The kynges companie with his wyues and concubines.

The *Shaughe* occupieth hym selfe alwayes two dayes in the weeke in his Bathestoue, and when he is disposed to go thither, he taketh with hym fyue or fyre of his concubines, moze or lesse, and one day they consume in washyng, rubbyng, and bathyng hym, and the other day in paryng his nayles, and other matters. The greatestt part of his lyfe, he spendeth amongst his wyues and concubines. He hath nowe reigned about fyftie and foure yeeres, and is therefore counted a very holy man, as they euer esteeme theyr kynges, if they haue reigned fyftie yeeres or moze: for they measure the fauoure of God by a mans prosperitie, or his displeasure by a mans misfortune or aduersitie. The great *Turke* hath this *Shaughe* in great reuerence, because he hath reigned kyng so long tyme.

A very Sar-  
danapalus.

The succession  
of the kyngs  
doine.

I haue sayde before that he hath foure wyues, and as many concubynes as hym lyfeth: and if he chaunce to haue any chyldren by any of his concubines, and be mynded that any of those chyldren shall inherite after hym, then when one of his wyues dyeth, the concubine whom he so fauoureth, he maketh one of his wyues, and the chyld whom he so loueth best, he ordayneth to be kyng after hym.

Marriage.

What I hearde of the maner of theyr mariages, for offending of

into Persia,

328

of honest consciences and chaste eares, I may not commit to wytyng: their fastyng I haue declared before. They vse Circumcision vnto chyldren of seuen yeeres of age, as doo the *Turkes*.

Circumcision.

Their houses (as I haue sayde) are for the most part made of Wycke, not burned, but only dyed in the Sunne: In theyr houses they haue but litle furniture of household stuffe, except it be theyr Carpets, and some Copper worke: for all theyr Kettles and Dishes wherein they eate, are of Copper. They eate on the ground, sitting on Carpets crosse legged as do taylers. There is no man so symple but he sytteth on a Carpet better or worse, and the whole house or roome wherein he sytteth, is wholly couered with Carpets. Their houses are all with flatte roofes, couered with earth: and in the sommer tyme, they lye vpon them all nyght.

Their houses &  
maner of eating.

They haue many bonde seruautes both men and women. Bond men and bond women is one of the best kinde of merchandises that any man may bypnyng. When they bye any maydes or young women, they vse to feele them in all partes, as with vs men do horses: when one hath bought a young woman, yf he lyke her, he wyl keepe her for his owne vse as long as hym lyfeth, and then selleth her to an other, who doth the like with her. So that one woman is sometymes solde in the space of foure or fyue yeeres, twelue, or twentie tymes. If a man keepe a bonde woman for his owne vse, and yf he fynde her to be false to hym, and geue her body to any other, he may kyll her yf he wyl.

Bond men &  
bond women.

Women  
bought & solde,  
and let to hire.

When a merchant or traualer cometh to any towne where he entendeth to tarry any tyme, he bypnyeth a woman, or sometymes two or thre during his abode there. And when he cometh to an other towne, he doth the lyke in the same also: for there they vse to put out theyr women to hyre, as wee doo here hackneye Horses.

There is a verie great ryuer whiche runneth through the playne of *Iauat*, whiche falleth into the *Caspian* sea, by a towne called *Backo*, neare vnto whiche towne is a strange thyng to behold. For there ishyeth out of the grounde a marueilous quantitie of Oyle, which Oyle they fetch from the vitermost boundes of al *Persia*: it serueth all the countrey to burne in theyr houses.

Abundance of  
Oyle issuing  
out of the  
ground.

This

## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

This Oyle is blacke, and is called *Neste*: they vse to cary it throughout all the countrey vpon Ryne and Asses, of which you shal oftentymes meete, with foure or fyue hundred in a company. There is also by the sayde towne of *Backo*, an other kinde of Oyle whiche is whyte and very pccious: and is supposed to be the same that here is called *Petroleum*. There is also not farre from *Shamak*, a thyng lyke vnto Tarre, and ishueth out of the grounde, whereof we haue made the prooffe, that in our shypps it serueth well in the steade of Tarre.

*Oleum Petro-  
leum.*

*Two sortes of  
Ryne.*

In *Persia* are Ryne of two sortes, the one lyke vnto ours in these partes, the other are marueylous euill fauoured, with great bones, and very leane, and but little beare vppon them: theyr milk is walowith swete: they are like vnto them which are spoken of in the scripture, which in the dreame of *Pharao* signified the seuen deare peeres: for a leaner or more euill fauoured beast, can no man see.

In the countrey of *Sheruan* (sometyme called *Media*) if you chaunce to lye in the fieldes neare vnto any villiage, as soone as the twplyght begynneth, you shall haue about you two or three hundred *Forces*, whiche make a marueylous wawelyng or howlyng: and yf you looke not well to your victuales, it shall scape them hardly but they wyl haue part with you.

*Forces in great  
plentie.*

The *Caspian* sea, doth neyther ebbe nor flowe, except sometymes by rage of wynde it swelleth vpp very hygh: the water is very salt. Howbeit, the quantitie of water that falleth out of the great ryuer of *Volga*, maketh the water freshe at the least twentie leagues into the sea. The *Caspian* sea is marueylous full of fyshe, but no kynde of monstrous fyshe, as farre as I coulde vnderstande, yet hath it sundry sortes of fyshe whiche are not in these parties of the worlde.

The *Button* there is good, and the *Sheepe* great, ha-  
uyng verpe great rumpes with much fat  
vppon them. *Ryle* and *But-  
ton*, is theyr cheefe  
victuale.

(.)  
(.) (.)  
(.)

OF

into Persia.

329

## Of the Empire of the Persians, and of theyr originall.



The kyngdome or Empire of the Persians, *Abraham* as it was in auncient tyme most famous, *Orchus*. even so is it at these dayes, mightie & glori-  
ous, comprehendynge many great & large regions. For all the tracte of *Asia*, which is betwene the riuer of *Tigris*, the gulfes of *Persia*, and the *Indian* sea (sometyme called the sea *Indus*) and the ryuer *Iaxartes* (at this day called *Chefell*) even vnto the *Caspian* sea, is at this day vnder the dominion of the *Sophies* of *Persia*.

Of the originall of the *Sophies*, thus writeth *Calius Curio* in his *Saracenicall* historie. In the yere of our Lord. 1369. was a certayne Prince among the *Persians*, who possessed the towne of *Ardenelim*, his name was *Sophi*: & glorified him selfe to discende of the rase and progenie of *Alis Muamedis*, by *Musan Cazin* his *Menie*. He, after the death of *Cabyfa*, the *Soltan* of *Babilon*, and the contrary faction which the *Turkes* defended, suppressed also of the *Tartars*, began more boldly and freely to professe his opinion and sentence of theyr religion. And bycause that *Ocemus* the sonne of *Alis*, (from whom he glorified him selfe to descend) had twelue children, willynge to adde to them of his secte a certayne signe, whereby they myght be knowen from other, ordeyned that they that would embrace his secte and profession, should were on their heads a high cappe of purple vnder a vele, wherwith all the *Turkes* inuolue theyr heades, and in theyr language call it *Tulibante*, hauing in the middelt of it. xii. plumes or shaype toppes. After his death, succeeded his sonne *Guines*: who in all the East partes obteyned so great opinion of wisdom and holinesse, that most famous *Tamerlanes*, Emperour of the *Parthians* (who be-  
fore had taken *Bayazetes* kyng of the *Turkes*) made a iourney into *Persia*, to visite him as a most holy man, of whom *Guines* had so much fauour, that he obteyned of him the libertie of xxx. thousande Captiues which he brought with him, whom also *Guines* addicted to his faction: and his sonne *Seccaidar* used them in his  
warres.

*Tamerlanes.*  
*Tamurlanes.*  
*Tamurlanes.*  
or *Tamurth-*  
*lan.*

U. i.



## The vyage of the Moscouian merchanten

Georgians  
Chilians.

Contention for  
religion be-  
twene Turkes  
and Persians.

Persians.

Turkes.

warres. For with these, after the death of *Guines*, he made warre to certayne people of *Scythia*, named *Georgians*, his borderers, beyng *Christians*, & afflicted them very greivously. Thus much of the originall of the *Sophie of Persia*: they keepe continually warres with the *Turkes* for the religion of *Mahumet*. For the *Sophians* or *Persians*, folowe one maner of interpretation of *Mahumettes* religion, and the *Turkes* an other: the which interpretations neuerthelesse are so differing one from the other, that the one of them esteemeth the other for heretikes. The *Persians* are of liberall nature, of muche ciuilitie and curtesie, greatly esteeming artes and sciences: they acknowledge a certaine worthinesse or nobilitie among men, wherein they differ much from the *Turkes*, which make no difference betweene slaues and worthier men or Gentlemen.

Of the Region of Persia, and the maners of the Persians: Marcus Paulus Venetus, writeth thus. Cap. xix. Lib. I.

Anno. do. 1280.



**P**ersia is a great and large prouince, & was once noble and of great fame, but now de-  
battate and ouerrun by the *Tartars*, it is of  
lesse dignitie, & the ancient renoume there-  
of greatly diminished, and the name de-  
uided into the prouinces confine or adiacent  
vnto it. So that now the prouince of *Persia*  
(as it is diuided) conteyneth eight kingdomes: whereof the first  
is named *Chasum*, the seconde *Churdistam*, the third *Loc*, the fourth  
*Cielstam*, the fyft, *Instanich*, the sixte, *Zerazi*, the seuenth, *Socham*,  
and the eight, *Timochaim*, in the confines of *Persia*. There are  
very fayre and goodly horses of great price, insonmuch that some-  
tymes one is solde for .200. poundes of *Turon*. Merchants bring  
them to the cities of *Chisi* and *Curmosa*, situate on the sea side, and  
sell them into *India*. Also Asses be there very fayre and great, in-  
sonmuch that sometymes one is solde for .xxx. pounce weight of sil-  
uer. The people is of euill disposition, quarrellous, thecues, and  
murderers: and robbe and kyll merchanten by the way, except  
they goe in great companyes. Yet in the cities, they are of bet-  
ter

into Persia.

330

er maners, and of more humanitie: also very excellent artificers  
in woorkes of gold, silke, Embroderie, needle woork, and suche  
lyke. They haue aboundance of bombasine, wheate, barlye, myll,  
wyne also, and frutes, but in religion, they are *Mahumetans*.

Of the kyngdome of the Persians, Haithon  
in his booke de Tartaris, Cap. vii.  
writeth as foloweth.



**T**he kyngdome of the Persians, is diuided  
chiefly into two partes, whiche make one  
kyngdome, bicause they are both subiecte to  
the dominion of one kyng. The first parte of  
*Persia*, beginneth in the East, from the con-  
fines of the kyngdome of *Turquestan*, and is  
extended toward the West, to the great ry-  
uer of *Phison*, which is the chiefe among the foure floodes which  
run out of earthly *Paradys*. Towarde the North, it is extended  
to the *Caspian* sea, and towarde the South, vnto the desertes of  
*India*. The region is in maner all playne: in the middelt where-  
of, are two very great and riche cities, the one is named *Boctara*,  
and the other *Seonorgant*. The Persians haue a language proper  
to them selues: they vse merchandies and tyllage of the ground,  
and among them selues lyue in peace: In tyme past they were  
*Idolators*, and honoured fyre chiefly for God. But after that the  
secte of the *Mahumetans* occupied the dominion of those landes,  
they became vniuersally *Saracens*, beleeuing the deuill: the doc-  
trine of *Mahumet*. The other parte of *Persia*, beginneth from the  
riuier *Phison*, and is extended Westward vnto the confines of the  
kyngdomes of *Media*, and partely also of *Armenia* the greater.  
Toward the North, it is extended vnto the *Caspian* sea, on the  
South syde, it confineth with a certayne prouince of the kyngdom  
of *Media*, and in this prouince are two great cities, one named  
*Nesabor*, and the other *Sachen*, whiche in secte and maners, are  
lyke vnto the other.

*Phison* is  
thought to be  
*Ganges*.

*Saracens* (that  
is) *Mahumetans*.

Ab. ii.

Of

Of Persia, and of dyuers cities therof, & other notable thinges reade heereafter, the thirde booke of the voyage of *Lodowicus Martomannus*. Also, the first booke of the same voyage. Cap. 12. of Mahumet and his fellowes: where you may see the difference in religion betweene the Turkes and Persians, beyng both Mahumetans.

The name of the Sophie, Thomas Shaugh, and why he is so called.



**T**he Persians doe not call theyr kyng by the name of Sophie, but this name Sophie, is giuen him by other nations: for of his owne people, he is called *Thomas Sbaugh*, whiche is, Thomas the ruler, Soltan, or gouernour: for *Sbaugh*, is not the name of a kyng, but of an office. For a kyng in theyr language, is called *Pachet*, but no Prince is called by this name, before hee haue reigned by seuen discentes: but he that now reygneeth, is but only of spue discentes, and is therefore called only *Sbaugh*, which is a name of office.

He hath foure wyues and .xii. sonnes, and hath kepte one of his sonnes in prison many yeeres, for a great ouerthrowe whiche he gaue the Turke in the warres, although he tooke the same for acceptall seruice, and a noble exploit. Yet forasmuch as by that acte, he obteyned great renoume of a valiant and warlike man, he began him selfe to haue him in suspicion, least the glorie of that enterpryse myght encourage him to attempt somewhat agaynst his father, as oftentimes the Turkes sonnes haue rebelled agaynst theyr fathers yet luyng, and displaced them of their dignitie.

Of

Of the kyngdome of Ormus, confine to Persia, and of the trafique betweene them. Also of the citie and Ilande of Ormus or Armulhum.



**O**rmus is a great kyngdome, and hath a peculiar kyng, tributorie to the kyng of *Portugale*. This kyngdome concepneth all the sea coastes of Arabia, in the gulfe of Persia, from the mouth of the riuer of *Euphrates*, vntill the Cape of *Razalguati*, and also parte of the kyngdome of Persia, whiche is adiacent vnto the streight of *Bazora*, called *Fretum Bazora*, and in maner all the Ilandes of the gulfe of Persia, called *Sinus Persicus*. The Metropolis or chiefe citie of the kyngdome of Ormus, is the citie of Ormus, situate in an Iland named *Geru*, being one of the famous martres of these partes of the world. The Iland is within the gulf of Persia, not far within the streight of *Bazora*. This streight of *Bazora*, other haue named the streight of Ormus, being betweene Arabia *Felix*, and the region of Persia. The region of Ormus is well peopled, & hath many goodly places & cities. The gulfe is not euery where nauigable, by reason of many shelues and lowe places. Within foure dayes sayling of Ormus, are the Ilandes of *Baharen*, where are found the fayrest orientall pearls of the world. Ormus vsyth trafique of merchandies with *Adem* & *Cambaia*, and with the kingdomes of *Decan* & *Goa*, & with the portes of *Narsinga* & *Malabar*. The chiefe merchandies brought from thence, are horses of Arabia & Persia, pearles, salt peter, brimstone, silke, *Tuttia*, Alumie, also Alumie of *Alexandria* or *Borace*, *Utriol*, or *Copporole*, salt in great quantitie, siuer, Sulke, Ambar, wheate, many dyed frutes, Ryle, & many other prouisions of vittayles, and other thinges to be eaten. For these, they retorne pepper, cloues, Cinamon, Ginger, and diuers other sorts of spices and drugges, which are disperfed into sundry regions of Persia and Arabia, and also into *Aden* where there is great plentie. But if they be deare in Ormus, it is not possible that they should be caried to *Cair*, to come into *Italie*. They retorne, is with Ryle, as much as they

*Abraham Ortelius.*

Cl.iii.

they

The vyage of the Moscouian merchants  
they can haue, white cloth, & Iron. Theyr hoxles are of maruep-  
lous great price in the kyngdomes of *Goa*, *Decan*, and *Narsinga*,  
and therefore peerey the merchantes of *Ormus* byng many thi-  
ther, and yet sometyme one hoxle is there at the price of vii. hun-  
dred of those peeces of golde, which they call *Saraffos*. The best  
are of *Arabia*, the seconde of *Persia*, and the woorst of *Cambaia*.

Of the Sophie and kyngdome of Persia,  
after the later writers.



**P**ersia is one of the greatest and most famous  
prouinces of the worlde. It toucheth not  
the sea, but at the gulf of *Ormus*. On the  
syde of *Cambaia*, it confineth with the people  
named *Motagues*, on the syde of *Arabia*, with  
the gulf of *Ormus*, on the syde of the firme  
lande, with the mountaynes of *Deli*, and

Babilon of  
Chaldea, and  
not of Egypt.

Tauris or  
Teneris.

Ismael, they  
pronounce  
Imael.

Mortus Ali.

on the side of *Carmania*, and in maner by the confines of *Babylon*,  
it extendeth towarde *India*: it hath many kingdomes and cities  
subiecte vnto it. The people of *Persia*, are called *Azemini*. It con-  
teyneth foure principall prouinces, which are these: *Coraconi*, *Gi-  
nali*, *Tauris*, *Xitarim*. In the which also are these foure most fa-  
mous cities: That is *Tauris*, *Siras*, *Samarcante*, *Coraconi*: They  
are valiant and warlike men, & of great estimation. They of *Sa-  
marcante*, haue in auncient tyme been Christians. *Tauris* and *Si-  
ras*, are cities as famous among them, as is with vs *Paris* in  
*France*: they are men of great ciuilitie and curtesie. The wo-  
men of *Siras*, are of commendable beautie and behauour, very  
neate and delicate, and thereof commeth a prouerbe among the  
*Mahumetans*, that *Mahumet* would neuer goe to *Siras*, least if  
he had tasted the pleasures of those women, he should neuer af-  
ter his death haue gone to *Paradyse*. The kyng of *Persia* is cal-  
led *Siech Ismael*, whom the Italians call *Gualizador*, or *Sophi*.  
His chiefe mansion place or court, is at *Tauris*, or *Teneris*, which  
is distant from *Ormus* fiftie dayes iourney with Camelles. He is  
called the great *Mahumetan* of the order of the red bonet (that is)  
of the secte of *Hali*, which our men that came late from *Persia*, call  
*Mortus Ali*, wherof we haue spoken moze before. The region of  
*Persia*

into Persia.

*Persia*, hath all sortes of domesticall or tame beastes, suche as are  
in our countreys. It hath furthermore, Lions, Onces, and Ti-  
gers, the people are muche giuen to pleasures and sportes, and  
are honourably apparelled, delighting greatly in perfumes and  
sweete sauours: they haue many wyues, and commit the keeping  
or charge of them to enuches or gelded men: who for that seruice,  
are oftentimes preferred to great promotion, yet are they very  
iellous of theyr wyues. Notwithstanding, both the *Persians*, and  
also their neighbours of *Ormus*, are detestable Sodomites. In  
tyme past many great and valiant personages, as *Cyrus*, *Darius*,  
*Assuerus*, and great *Alexander*, haue inuaded *Persia*. It is not ba-  
ren as some haue written, but hath aboundance of all sortes of  
victualles, and pleasures, and thinges necessarie for the lyfe of  
man.

Enuches or gels-  
ded men.

The trafique of Persia, with  
other countreys.



**I**n the region of *Persia*, are many sortes of  
merchandies, wherewith they vse great tra-  
fique in the countreys of *Armenia*, *Turchia*,  
and in the cite of *Cair* or *Alcayr*. From the  
lande of *Siras*, is brought great aboundance  
of silke, whereof is made an infinite quanti-  
tie of all sortes of silken cloathes, and fine  
chamo'ettes of diuers colours: also great aboundance of roche  
*Alume*, *Vitrioll*, *Alcoffare*. Likewise many hoxles, victualles,  
*Turques stones*, wax, hony, butter, &c. Also great peeces of tape-  
strie of diuers sortes & workes, clothes of sundry colours, beluets  
both high and lowe after theyr maner: Likewise cloth of golde  
of sundry sortes: *Pauilions*, and great aboundance of armure.  
From the other syde of the mountaynes by the way of *Siam*, are  
brought *Gulke*, *Aloes*, *Reubarbe*, *Lignum aloes*, *Camphora*, &c.  
All these thinges, and many other, are carped to *Ormus*: for the  
which, the returne is, great quantitie of *Pepper*, and other spices  
and drugges: for the *Persians* vse much spices with their meats,  
and especially *Pepper*.

Ab. iiii.

Of

Of the Gulfe of Persia, or  
Sinus Persicus.



The region and lande of *Persia*, is situate betwene two ryuers, whiche fall not into the Ocean sea, but into the gulfe of *Persia*: the which gulfe hath on euery syde many goodly countreys well inhabited. The gulfe conteyneth in largenesse, lx. myles, and is nauigable with great Barkes, and is sometimes troubled with great tempestes. There is taken great abundance of fishe, which being salted or dyed, is carryed into all partes of *Persia*. The gulfe is also very long, and conteyneth from *Ormus* to the ende, lx. dayes iourney with Camelles.

I Articles of the Priuileges whiche the Sophie of *Persia* graunted to the Englyshe merchantes.

These articles were sent vnto the company of merchants from *Mosko*, by maister Ienkinson, graunted in the names of these persons. Syr VVilliam Garret, Syr VVilliam Chester, gouernours. Syr Thomas Lodge, Maister Antonie Ienkinson, Maister Thomas Nicolls, and Arthur Edwardes, merchantes of London: as also in the names of the whole companie.

2 First, it is graunted that you shall paye no maner of customes or tolles any kynd of wayes, now nor in time comyng vnto his heires after him. And that all Englyshe merchantes now present, or hereafter, may passe and repasse into all places of his dominions, and other countreys adioyning to him, in the trade of merchaundies, to buye and sell all maner of commodities, with all maner of persons.

3 Item that in all places, where any of our merchantes shalbe chiefe gouernours, rulers, and Iustices, to take heede vnto the Englyshe merchantes, and be their ayde, and punish them that shall doe them any wrong or hurte.

4 Item that suche debtes as shalbe owyng by any maner of person, iustice to be done on the partie, and to see all Englyshe merchantes payde at the day.

5 Item

5 Item that no maner of person of what estate or degree they be of, so hardie to take any kynde of wares, or any gyftes, without the Englyshe merchantes good willes.

6 Item if by chaunce medley, any of the merchantes or seruantes (as God forbidd) shoulde kyll any of his subiectes, no partes of theyr goods to be touched or medled withal, neither no person but the offender, and being any of the merchantes, not to suffer without the princes knowledge & aduice.

7 Item that all such debtes as shalbe owyng, to be payde to any of the merchantes in the absence of the other, be the partie dead or alyue.

8 Item that no person returne any kynde of wares backe agayne, beyng once bought or solde.

9 Item that when God shall sende the merchantes goods to thoye, presently his people to helpe them alande with them.

The prosperous vyage of Arthur Edwardes into Persia, and of the fauoure that he found with the Sophy, and also what conference he had with that prynce.



When he came first to the Sophies presence, bynging his interpretour with hym, and standyng farre of, the Sophie (sittyng in a seate royall with a great number of his noble men about hym) badde him come neere, and that thyle, vntyl he came so neere him that he myght haue touched hym with his hand. Then the first demaund that he asked hym, was from what countrey he came: he answered, that he came from Englande. Then asked he of his noble men, who knew any such countrey. But when Edwards sawe that none of them had any intelligence of that name, he named it *Ingiltterra*, as the Italians call England. Then one of the noble men sayde *Londro*, meanyng therby London, which name is better knowen in far countreys out of Christendome, then is the name of Englande. When Edwards hadde hym name *Londro*, he sayd that that was the name of the chiefe citie of Englande, as was *Teneris*, of the chiefe citie of *Persia*. He asked hym many thynges more, as of the

*Londro.*  
*London.*

### The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

realme of Englande, marueplyng that it shoulde be an Island, ofso great rycheſſe and power, as Edwardes declared vnto hym, of the ryches and abundaunce of our merchaundies, as he further vnderſtode by our trafique in *Mosconia* and other countreys. He demaunded alſo many thynges of the Queenes maiestie, and of the customes and lawes of the realme: saying oftentimes in his owne language, *Bara colla* (that is to saye) wel said. He asked alſo many thinges of kynge Philip, and of his warres agaynst the Turke at *Malta*. Then demaunded of hym what was the chiefe cause of his resoꝛte into his realme. And beyng certified that it was foꝛ the trade of merchaundies, he asked what kynde of merchaundies he coulde bypnyng thither. Such (sayde he) as the *Venetian* merchauntes, which dwellyng in our countrey in the cite of *Londro*, sende to *Venes*, and from thence into *Turkie* by *Halepo* and *Tripoli* in *Sorya*, from whence, as by the seconde and thyrde handes, with great charges of many customes and other thynges thereunto parteyning, they are at the length brought into your countrey and cities of *Persia*. What merchaundies are those, sayd the *Sophie*: Edwardes answered, that they were great abundaunce of fine carleis, of brode clothes, of all sortes and coloures, as scarlettes, violettēs, and other of the fynest cloth of all the worlde. Also that the *Venetians* brought out of Englande, not onely such clothes redie made, but further more great plentie of fyne wool to myngle with their wools, of the which they coulde not otherwise make fyne cloth: Affirming that there went out of Englande yeerely that wayes, aboue two hundred thousande carleis, and as manye brode clothes, besyde fine wool and other merchaundies, besyde also the great abundaunce of like clothes, which were caried into *Spaine*, *Barbarie*, and diuers other countreys. The *Sophie* then asked hym by what meanes such merchaundies myght be brought into *Persia*. Ryght well Sir (sayde he) by the way of *Mosconia*, with more safetie and in much shorter tyme then the *Venetians* can bypnyng them, fyrst from Englande to *Venes*, and from thence into *Persia*, by the way of *Turkye*. And therefore if it shall please your maiestie to graunt vs free passage into al your dominions, with such priuileges as map apperteyne to the safegard of our liues,

The Venetians  
trafique in  
England.

English cloths,  
carles & fyne  
wool.

into Persia.

334

lyues, goodes, and merchandies, we wyl furnyſh your countreys with al such merchandies, & other commodities, in shorter tyme, and better cheape then you may haue the same at the *Turkes* handes. This talke and muche moze was between the *Sophie* and Edwardes foꝛ the space of two houres, all whiche thynges Ikyed hym so well, that shortly after he graunted to the sayde Arthur Edwardes two other priuileges, foꝛ the trade of merchandies into *Persia*, all wyrtten in Azure and golde letters, and deliuered vnto the lord keeper of the *Sophie* his great seale. The lord keeper was named *Cocbe Califaye*, who sayde that when the *Shaughe* (that is the kynge oꝛ pynce) dyd sytte to seale any letters, that priuilege shoulde be sealed and deliuered to *Laurence Chapman*. In this priuilege is one principal article foꝛ seruantes oꝛ merchantes: That yf the Agent do perceyue that vpon theyꝛ naughtie doynges, they woulde become *Buſoz* men, that then the Agent whersoener he shall fynde anye such seruant oꝛ seruantes, to take them, and put them in pryson: and no person to keepe them, oꝛ maynteyne them. This article was graunted in respect of a custome among the *Persians*, being *Mahumetanes*: whose maner is frendly to receyue and wel entertayne, both with giftes & lypnyng, all suche *Christians* as forsakynge theyꝛ religion, wyl become of the religion of the *Persians*. Inſomuch that befoꝛe this priuilege was graunted, there was great occasion of naughtie seruantes to deceyue and robbe theyꝛ maisters: that vnder the coloure of professyng that religion, they might liue among them in such safetie, that you might haue no law agaynst them, eyther to punyſh them, oꝛ to recouer your goodes at theyꝛ handes, oꝛ els where. Foꝛ befoꝛe the *Sophie* (whom they say to be a marueplous wyſe and gracious pynce) seemed to fauour our nation, and to graunt them such priuileges, the people abused them very much, and so hated them that they would not touche them, but reuiled them, calling them *Casars* & *Gawars*, which is, infydels, oꝛ misbelievers. But after they saw how greatly the pynce fauoured them, they had them afterward in great reuerence, and would kysse theyꝛ handes, and vse them very frendly. Foꝛ befoꝛe, they tooke it foꝛ no wꝛong to rob them, defraud them, beare false witnesse agaynst them, & such merchandies as they had bought oꝛ sold, make them take it againe, and chaunge

Buſoz men, be  
they that for-  
saie theyꝛ faith,  
and receyue the  
religion of  
Mahumet.



## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

chaunge it as often as them listeth. And yf any straunger by chaunce had kyled one of them, they woulde haue the lyfe of two for one slayne, and for the debtes of any straunger, woulde take the goodes of any other of the same nation, with many other such lyke abuses, in maner vnknownen to the prince, before the complayntes of our men made vnto hym for reformation of such abuses: which were the cause that no merchant strangers of contrary religion, durst come into his dominions with theyr commodities: which myght be greatly to the profite of hym and his subiectes.

## The Articles.

10 Item that the merchantes haue free libertie, as in theyr fyrst priuilege, to go vnto *Gylia*, and all other places of his dominions, now or hereafter when occasion shalbe geuen.

11 Item: yf by misfortune any of theyr ships should breake, or fall vpon any part of his dominions on the sea coast, his subiectes to help with al speede to saue the goodes, & to be deliuered to any of the sayd merchants that liueth: or otherwyle to be kept in safetie vntyl any of them come to demaund them.

12 Item yf any of the sayd merchants depart this lyfe in any citie or towne, or on the hygh way, his gouernours there to see theyr goodes safely kept, and to be deliuered to any other of them that shal demaund them.

13 Item the sayde merchants to take such camell men as they them selues wyl, beyng countrey people: and that no *Kysell* Baythe do let or hynder them. And the sayde owners of the camels, to be bounde to answere them such goodes as they shall receyue at theyr handes: and the camell men to stande to the losses of theyr camels or horses.

14 Item more, that the sayde carryars do demaunde no more of them, then theyr agreciment was to pay them.

15 Item

into Persia.

335

15 Item more, if they be at a pryce with any carryours, and geuen earnest, the Camell men to see they keepe theyr promise.

16 Item if any of the sayd merchantes be in feare to trauaile, to geue them one or more to go with them, and see them in safetie with theyr goods to the place they wyl go vnto.

17 Item in all places, to say, in all cities, townes, or villages on the hygh way, his subiectes to geue them honest rooume, and victualles for theyr mony.

18 Item the sayde merchantes may in any place where they shall thinke best, buyde or bye any house or houses to theyr owne vles: And no person to molest or trouble them, and to stande in any Carauan where they wyl, or shal thinke good.

The commodities whiche the merchantes may haue by this trade into Persia, are thought to be great, and may in tyme perhappes be greater then the Portugalles trade into the East Indies, forasmuch as by the way of Persia into Englande, the returne may be made euery yere once, whereas the Portugalles make the returne from *Calecut* but once in two yeres, by a long and daungerous byage all by sea: for whereas the citie and Islande of *Ormus*, lying in the goulfe of Persia, is the most famous mart towne of all East India, whither all the merchaundies of India are brought, the same may in shorter time, and more safely, be brought by land & ryuers through Persia, euen vnto the *Caspian* sea, and from thence by the countreys of *Russia* or *Moscouia* by ryuers, euen vnto the citie of *Yeraslaue*, and from thence by lande a hundred and fourescore myles to *Vologda*: and from thence agayne al by water, euen vnto England.

The merchaundies whiche be had out of Persia for the returne of wares, are lykely of all sortes and colours, both rawe and wrought: Also all maner of spices and drugges, Pearles and precious stones: likewise carpettes of dyuers sortes, with diuers other ryche merchaundies, whercof you may reade more here before in the Chapter entituled, Of the trafique of Persia with other countreys. It was twise me of them that came last

The commodities whiche Englishe merchants may haue by the trade into Persia.

*Kysell* Baythe are the gentles men that weare red cappes.

## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

last from *Persia*, that there is moze sylke brought into some one cite of *Persia*, then is of cloth brought into the cite of London. Also that one billage of *Armenia*, named *Gilgat*, doth carie peere-ly fyue hundred, and sometyme a thousande mules laden with sylke to *Halepo* in *Sorya* of *Turkye*, beyng foure dayes iorney of *Tripoli*, where the *Venerians* haue their continuall abiding, and send from thence sylkes, which they retorne for *English* carles, and other clothes, into al partes of *Christendome*.

The maner howe the *Christians* become *Busor* men, and forsake their religion.



I haue noted here before, that if any *Christian* wyll become a *Busor* man, that is, one that hath forsaken his fapth, and be a *Mahumetan* of their religion, they geue him many gites, and somtyme also a liuyng. The maner is, that when the deuill is entred into his hart to forsake his fapth, he resorteth to the *Soltan* or gouernoure of the towne, to whom he maketh protestation of his diuylishe purpose. The gouernoure appoynteth hym a horse, and one to ryde before hym on an other horse, bearyng a swoorde in his hande, and the *Busor* man bearyng an arowe in his hand, and rydeth in the cite, cursyng his father and mother: and if euer after he retorne to his owne religion, he is gilty of death, as is signified by the swoorde borne before hym. A young man, a seruant of one of our merchauntes, because he woulde not abyde the correction of his maister for his faultes, was myn- ded to forsake his fapth. But (as God woulde) he fell sodaynely sicke and dyed, before he gaue hym selfe to the deuill. If he had become a *Busor* man, he had greatly troubled the merchauntes, for if he woulde then haue sayd that halfe their goods had ben his, they woulde haue geuen credite vnto hym. For the auoyding of whiche inconuenience, it was graunted in the priuileges that no *Busor* man &c. as there appeareth.

In *Persia* in diuers places, oxen and kine beare the tentes and houlholde stuffe of the pooze men of the countrey, which haue nei-  
ther *Camelles* nor horses.

OF

## into *Persia*.

336

Of the tree whiche beareth *Bombasine* cotton, or *Gossampine*

In *Persia* is great abundance of *Bombasine* cotton, and very fyne, this groweth on a certayne litle tree or byer, not past the height of a mans waste, or litle moze: the tree hath a slender stalk, like vnto a byer, or to a carnation gyleflour, with very many byaunches, bearyng on euery byaunch a fruite, or rather a codde, growyng in round fourme, conteynyng in it the cotton: and when this budde or codde commeth to the bygnesse of a wallnut, it openeth and sheweth forth the cotton, which groweth still in bygnesse vntyll it be lyke a fleece of wooll as byg as a mans syst, and beginneth to be loose: and then they geather it as it were the ripe fruite. The seedes of these trees, are as byg as pealon, and are blacke, and somewhat flatte, and not rounde: they sowe them in plowed ground, where they growe in the fieldes in great abundance in many countreys in *Persia*, and diuers other regions.

The writing of the *Persians*.

Arthur Edwardes shewed me a letter of the *Sophie*, written in theyr letters backward, subsigned with the handes both of the *Sophie* & his secretarpe. The *Sophies* subscription, was only one word (his name I suppose of *Shangh*) wyrtten in golden letters vpon red paper. The whole letter was also wyrtten on the same peece of red paper, beyng long and narrow, about the length of a foote, and not past three inches brode. The priuate signet of the *Sophie*, was a rounde pynted marke, about the byggenesse of a Ryall, only pynted vpon the same paper, without any waxe or other seale: the letters seeme so myshapen and disordered, that a man woulde thynke it were somewhat scribled in maner at aduentures. Yet they say that almost euery letter with his pyicke or circumfere, signifieth a whole worde. Insomuch that in a peece of paper as bygge as a mans hand, theyr wyrtting doth contepne as much as doth ours almost in a sheete of paper.

The

## The viage to Guinea.

**C** The two viages made out of Englande into *Guinea* in *Affricke*, at the charges of certayne merchantes aduenturers of the cite of *London*, in the yere of our Lord-  
1553.

Ambition.

**B**eing desired by certayne of my freendes, to make some mention of these viages, that some memory thereof myght remaine to our posteritie, yf epyther iniquitie of tyme, consuming all thynges, or ignorance creeping in by barbarousnesse and contempt of knowledge, shoulde hereafter bury in oblivion so worthy attempts, so much the greater to be esteemed, as before neuer enterprysed by Englyshe men, or at the least so frequented, as at this present they are, and may be, to the great commoditie of our merchantes, yf the same be not hyndred by the ambition of such, as for the conquessing of fourtie or fyftie myles here & there, and erectyng of certayne fortreffes, or rather blockehoules among naked people, thynke them selues worthy to be lordes of halfe the worlde, enuyng that other shoulde enioy the commodities, which they them selues can not wholy possesse. And although suche as haue been at charges in the discoveryng and conquestyng of suche landes, ought by good reason to haue certayne priuileges, preheminences, and tributes for the same, yet (to speake vnder correction) it may seeme somewhat rigorous, and agaynst good reason and conscience, or rather against the charitie that ought to be among Christian men, that such as violently invade the dominions of other, shoulde not permit or ther friendly to vse the trade of merchandies, in places neerer, or seldome frequented of them, whereby they trade is not hyndred in such places, where they them selues haue at theyr owne election appointed the martes of theyr trafficke. But forasmuch as at this present, it is not my entent to accuse or defend, approue or improue, I wil cease to speake any further hereof, & procede to the description of the first viage, as bryefely and faithfully as I was aduertised of the same, by the information of such credible persons, as made diligent inquisition to know the truely hereof, as much as shalbe requisite, omitting to speake of many particular

## The first vyage to Guinea:

337

Other thinges, not greatly necessarie to bee knownen: which neuerthelesse, with also the exacte course of the nauigation, shall be more fully declared in the seconde vyage. And if hereinfa-  
tour or friendship shall perhappes cause some to thynke that some haue been sharply touched, let them laye a parte fauour and friendship, and gyue place to truely, that honest men may receyue paye for well doyng, and leude persons reproche, as the iust stipende of theyr euill desertes, whereby other may bee deterred to doe the lyke, and vertuous men encouraged to procede in honest attempts.

But that these vyages may be more playnely vnderstoode of all men, I haue thought good for this purpose, before I intreate hereof, to make a bryefe description of *Affrica*, beyng that great parte of the worlde, on whose West syde begynneth the coaste of *Guinea* at *Cabo Verde*, about the twelue degrees in latitude, on this syde the Equinoctiall line, and two degrees in longitude from the measurynge lyne, so runnyng from the North to the South, and by East in some places within .v. .iii. and .iii. degrees and a halfe within the Equinoctiall, and so forth in maner directly East and by North, for the space of xxxvi. degrees, or there about, in longitude from the West to the East, as shall more playnely appeare in the description of the seconde vyage.

The coast of  
Guinea.

### A bryefe description of Affrike.



**I**n *Affrica* the lesse are these kyngdomes: the kyngdome of *Tunes* & *Constantina*, which is at this day vnder *Tunes*, and also the region of *Bugia*, *Tripoli*, and *Ezzab*. This part of *Affrike* is very baren by reason of the great desertes, as the desertes of *Numidia* & *Bar-cha*. The principall portes of the kyngdome of *Tunes* are these: *Goletta*, *Bizerta*, *Potofarnia*, *Boua*, and *Stora*. The chiefe cities of *Tunes*, are *Constantina*, and *Boua*, with diuers other. Under this kyngdome are many Ilands, as *Zerbi*, *Lampadola*, *Pantalarea*, *Limoso*, *Beit*, *Gamelaro*, and *Malta*, where at this present is the great maister of the *Rodes*. Under the South of this kyngdome, are the great desertes of *Libia*. All the nations  
Fr.i.  
in  
of *Libia*.

Tunes.

Bugia.  
Tripoli.

Numidia.

Ilands of  
Tunes.  
Malta.

The desertes  
of Libia.

## The first vyage to Guinea.

In this *Africa* the lesse, are of the secte of Mahomet, & a rustycall people, lpyng scattered in villages. The best of this parte of *Afrike*, is *Barbaria*, lpyng on the coast of the sea *Mediterraneum*.

Barbarie.

Mauritania.

*Mauritania* (now called *Barbaria*) is diuided into two partes, as *Mauritania Tingitania*, and *Cesariensis*. *Mauritania Tingitania*, is now called the kyngdome of *Fes*, and the kyngdome of *Marrocco*. The principall citie of *Fes*, is called *Fessa*: and the chiefe citie of *Marrocco*, is named *Marrocco*.

The kyngdoms of Fes and Marrocco.

Tremisen.

*Mauritania Cesariensis*, is at this dape called the kyngdome of *Tremisen*, with also the citie called *Tremisen* or *Telensin*. This region is full of desartes, and reacheth to the sea *Mediterraneum*, to the citie of *Oram*, with the pozte of *Dallaquiber*. The kyngdome of *Fes* reacheth vnto the Ocean sea, from the West to the citie of *Argilla*: and the pozte of the sayde kyngdome is called *Salla*.

Oram.

Dallaquiber.

Salla.

The kyngdome of *Marrocco* is also extended aboue the Ocean sea, vnto the citie of *Azamor* and *AZafi*, which are aboue the Ocean sea towarde the West of the sayde kyngdome. In *Mauritania Tingitania* (that is to say, in the two kyngdomes of *Fes* and *Marrocco*) are, in the sea, the Ilandes of *Canarie*, called in olde tyme the fortunate Ilandes. Towarde the South of this region, is the kyngdome of *Guinea*, with *Senega*, *Iaiofo*, *Gambra*, and many other regions of the blacke *Booyes*, called *Ethiopiens* or *Negros*, all whiche are watered with the ryuer *Negro*, called in olde tyme *Niger*. In the sayde regions are no cities, but only certayne lowe cotages made of boughes of trees, plastered with chauke, and couered with strawe: In these regions are also very great desartes.

Azamoy.

The Ilandes of Canarie.

Guinea.

Ethiopiens.

Marrocco.

Fes.

Tremisen.

Guinea.

The kyngdome of *Marrocco* hath vnder it these seuen kyngdoms: *Hea*, *Sus*, *Guzula*, the territory of *Marrocco*, *Duchala*, *HaZchora*, and *Telde*. The kyngdome of *Fes* hath as many: as *Fes*, *Temesne*, *Azgar*, *Elabath*, *Erriji*, *Garet*, and *Elcauz*. The kyngdome of *Tremisen* hath these regions: *Tremisen*, *Tenez*, and *Elgazet*, all which are *Machometistes*. But all the regions of *Guinea* are pure *Gentyles* and *Idolatours*, without profession of any religion, or other knowledge of God, then by the lawe of nature.

Africa the great.

*Africa* the great, is one of the thre partes of the worlde, knowne.

## The first vyage to Guinea.

338

knowne in olde tyme, and seuered from *Asia*, on the East by the ryuer *Nilus*, on the West, from Europe by the pillars of *Hercules*. The hyther parte is now called *Barbarie*, and the people *Booyes*. The inner parte is called *Libia* and *Ethiopia*. *Afrike* the lesse, is in this wyse bounded: On the West it hath *Numidia*: On the East *Cyrenaica*: On the North, the sea called *Mediterraneum*. In this countrey was the noble citie of *Carthage*.

Afrike the lesse.

Carthage.

In the East side of *Afrike*, beneath the redde sea, dwelleth the great and myghtie Emperour and Christian kyng *Prestor John*, well knowen to the *Portugales* in theyr vyages to *Calicut*. His dominions reache very farre on euery syde: and hath vnder hym many other kynges both Chyistian and heathen that pay hym tribute. This mightie prince is called *Dauid Themperour* of *Ethiopia*. Some wyte, that the kyng of *Portugale* sendeth hym yerelely .viii. shyppes laden with marchaundies. His kyngdome confineth with the redde sea, and reacheth farre into *Afrike* toward *Egypte* and *Barbarie*. Southwarde it confineth with the sea towarde the cape de *Buona Speranza*: and on the other syde with the sea of sande, called *Mare de Sabione*, a very dangerous sea, lpyng betweene the great citie of *Alcayer*, or *Cairo* in *Egypt*, and the countrey of *Ethiopia*: In the whiche way are many vnhabitable desartes, continuing for the space of fye dapes iorney. And they affirme, that if the sayd Christian Emperour were not hyndered by those desartes (in the whiche is great lacke of victualles, and especially of water) he woulde or nowe haue inuaded the kyngdome of *Egypt*, and the citie of *Alcayer*. The cheefe citie of *Ethiopia*, where this great Emperour is resident, is called *Amacaiz*, being a faire citie, whose inhabitantes are of the colour of an *Olyue*. There are also many other cities, as the citie of *Saua* vpon the ryuer of *Nilus*, where *Themperour* is accustomed to remayne in the sommer season. There is lykewyse a great citie named *Barbaregaf*, and *Ascon*, from whence it is sayde that the Queene of *Saba* came to *Iherusalem* to heare the wysedome of *Salomon*. This citie is but litle, yet very fayre, and one of the chiefe cities in *Ethiopia*. In the sayde kyngdome is a prouince called *Manicongni*, whose kyng is a *Booye*, and tributarie to *Themperour* of *Ethiopia*. In this prouince are manie exceeding hygh mountaynes, vpon

Cape de Buona Speranza. The sea of sande. Alcair.

From whence the queene of Saba came.

Manicongni.

Vp

pon

## The first vyage to Guinea.

The earthly  
Paradise.  
The trees of  
the Sunne and  
Moone.

pon the which is sayde to be the earthly Paradise: and some say that there are the trees of the Sunne and Moone, whereof the antiquitie maketh mention: yet that none can passe thither, by reason of great desertes of a hundred dayes tourney. Also beyond these mountaynes, is the cape of *Bona Speranza*. And to haue sayde thus much of *Afrike* it may suffice.

## The first vyage to Guiena.



The Primrose.  
The Lion.  
The Moone.

Pintado.

Blasle.  
Guinea.

The flattering  
of fortune.

In the yeere of our Lord 1553. the .xii. day of August, sayled from *Portsmouth* two goodly shippes, the *Primrose* and the *Lion*, with a pynesse called the *Moone*, being all well furnished as wel with men of the lustiest sorte, to the number of seuen score, as also with ordinaunce and byttayles, requisite to such a viage: hatyng also two Captaynes, the one a stranger, called *Antoniades Pintado*, a *Portugale*, borne in a towne named the porte of *Portugale*, a wyse, discrete, and sober man, who for his cunning in saylpyng, beyng as well an experte pylot as politike Captayne, was sometyme in great fauour with the kynge of *Portugale*, and to whom the coastes of *Brasile* and *Guinea*, were committed to be kepte from the Frenchmen, to whom he was a terror on the sea in those partes, and was further more a Gentleman of the kynge his maiesties house. But as fortune in maner neuer fauoureth but flattereth, neuer promiseth but deceiueth, neuer rapseth but casteth downe agayne, and as great wealth and fauour hath alwayes companions emulation and enuie, he was after many aduersities and quarels made agaynst him, inforced to come into *Englande*: where in this golden vyage he was euil matched with an vnequal companion, and vnlyke matche of most sundrie qualities and condicions, with vertues fewe or none adourned. Thus departed these noble shippes vnder sayle on their vyage. But first Captayne *Wyndam*, puttyng forth of his shipp at *Portsmouth*, a kynseman of one of the head merchantes, and shewyng herein a muster of the tragicall partes he had conceyued in his brayne, and with suche small begynnynge now ryshed so monstrous a byrth, that more happie, yea and blessed was

## The first vyage to Guinea.

339

The Ilandes  
of *Madera*.

A galeon of the  
king of *Portugale*.

The Castell of  
*Mina*.

was that young man being lesse behynde, then if he had been taken with them, as some doe wishe he had done the lyke by the way. Thus sayled they on their vyage, vntyl they came to the Ilandes of *Madera*, where they tooke in certayne wyne for the store of their shippes, and payde for them as they agreed of the price. At these Ilandes they met with a great Galion of the kynge of *Portugale*, full of men and ordinaunce: yet such as could not haue persuaded if it had attempted to withstande or resist our shippes, for the which cause it was set forth, not only to let and interrupte these our shippes of their purposed viage, but all other that should attempte the lyke: yet chiefly to frustrate our vyage. For the kynge of *Portugale* was sinisterly informed that our shippes were arriued to his castell of *Mina* in these parties, whereas nothing lesse was ment.

After that our shippes departed from the Ilandes of *Madera* forwarde on their vyage, began this woorthie Captayne *Pintados* sorowe, as a man tormented with the company of a terrible Hydra, who hitherto flattered with him, and made him a fayre countenance and shewe of loue. Then dyd he take vpon him to commaund all alone, setting nought both by Captayne *Pintado*, with the reste of the merchaunte factours: sometymes with opprobrious woordes, and sometymes with threatnynges, most shamefully abusing them, taking from *Pintado* the seruite of the boyes & certayne mariners that were assigned him by the order and direction of the woorthiefull merchautes, and leauyng him as a common mariner, whiche is the greatest despite and greefe that can be to a *Portugale* or *Spanyarde*, to be diminishte their honour, which they esteeme aboue all riches. Thus saylpyng forwarde on their vyage, they came to the Ilandes of *Canarie*, continuing their course from thence vntill they arrived at the Ilande of *Saincte Nicolas*, where they byttayled them selues with freshe meate, of the fleshe of wyld Geates, whereof is great plentie in that Ilande, and in maner of nothing els. From hence folowpyng on their course, and tarrying heere and there at the deserte Ilandes in the way, because they would not come to tyme to the countrey of *Guinea* for the heate, and tarrying somewhat to long for what can be well mynistred in a common wealth, where inequality with tyrannie

The Ilandes  
of *Canarie*.  
The Ilande of  
*S. Nicolas*.

*Guinea*.



## The first vyage to Guinea.

The ryuer of  
Sesto.

Graynes.

The thirst of  
golde.

The Castell of  
Mina.

The quantitie  
of golde.

Benin.

Pepper.

Justice admits  
each no coun-  
saile.

nie will rule alone) they came at the length to the fyrst lande of the countrey of *Guinea*, where they fell with the great ryuer of *Sesto*, where they myght for theyr merchandies haue laden their shippes with the graynes of that countrey, whiche is a very hot fruite, and muche lyke vnto a pygge as it groweth on the tree. For as the pygges are full of small seedes, so is the sayde fruite full of graynes, which are lose within the codde, hauyng in the myddest thereof a hole on euery syde. This kynde of spyce is much vsed in colde countreys, and may there be solde for great advantage, for exchaunge of other wares. But our men by the perswasion or rather inforcement of this tragicall Captaine, not regardyng, and lettynge lyght by that commoditie, in comparison to the fine golde they thirsted, sayled an hundred leagues farther, vntill they came to the golden lande: where not attemptyng to come nere the Castell parteynyng to the kyng of *Portugale*, which was within the ryuer of *Mina*, made sale of theyr wares onely on this syde and beyond it, for the golde of that countrey, to the quantitie of an hundred and fyftie poundes weyght, there beyng in case that they myght haue dispatched all theyr wares for golde, if the vntame brayne of *Wyndam* had or could haue gyuen ear to the counsaile and experience of *Pintado*. For when that *Wyndam*, not satisfied with the golde whiche he had (and more might haue had if he had tarried about the *Mina*) commaundyng the sayde *Pintado* (for so he tooke vppon him) to leade the shippes to *Benin*, beyng vnder the Equinocciall lyne, and a hundred and fyftie leagues beyonde the *Mina*, where he looked to haue theyr shippes laden with pepper: and beyng counsayled of the sayde *Pintado*, consideryng the late tyme of the peere, for that tyme to goe no further, but to make sale of their wares suche as they had for golde, whereby they myght haue ben great gayners. But *Wyndam* not assentynge herevnto, fell into a sodayne rage, reuyllynge the sayde *Pintado*, callynge him *Jewe*, with other opprobrious wordes, sayynge, This horson *Jewe* hath promysed to byynge vs to suche places as are not, or as he can not byynge vs vnto: but if he doe not, I will cut of his eares, and nape them to the mast. *Pintado* gaue the foresayde counsaile to goe no further, for the safegarde of the men & theyr liues, whiche they shoulde put in daunger if they came to late, for the

## The first vyage to Guinea.

346

The scottish  
scorchynge heate.

Scorchynge  
heate.

Benin.

Francisco.  
Nicolas Lambert.

The kyng of  
Benin his  
counse.

Reuerence  
towards the  
kyng.

The commun-  
ication be-  
tweene the  
kyng of Benin  
and our men.

the rostia whiche is theyr wynter, not for colde but for smotheryng heate, with close and cloudey ayre, and stormyng weither, of suche putrifyng qualitie, that it rotted the coates of theyr backes: or els for commyng to soone for the scorchyng heate of the sunne, whiche caused them to lenger in the way. But of force, and not of wyll, brought he the shippes before the ryuer of *Benin*: where rydyng at an Anker, sent theyr pinnelle by into the riuier fyftie or threescore leagues, from whence certayne of the merchauntes with Captayne *Pintado*, *Francisco* a *Portugale*, *Nicolas Lambert* Gentelman, and other merchauntes, were conducted to the courte where the kyng remayned, ten leagues from the ryuer syde: whyther when they came, they were brought with a great company to the presence of the Kyng, who being a blacke *Dooze* (although not so blacke as the reste) sat in a great house hal, long and wyde, the walles made of earth, without windowes, the roofof thynne boordes, open in sundry places, lyke vnto louers, to let in the ayre.

And here to speake of the great reuerence they gyue to theyr kyng, beinge suche that if we would gyue as muche to our sauour Christ, we shoulde remoue from our heades many plagues which we dayly deserue for our contempte and impietie.

So it is therfore, that when his noble men are in his presence, they neuer looke him in the face, but sit courtynge, as wee vppon our knees, so they vppon theyr buttockes, with theyr elbowes vppon theyr knees, and theyr handes before theyr faces, not looking by vntill the Kyng commaunde them. And when they are commyng towards the Kyng, as farre as they doe see him, doe they shewe suche reuerence, lyeing on the grounde with theyr faces couered as before. Likewise when they departe from him, they turne not theyr backes towards him, but goe creeping backward with lyke reuerence.

And now to speake somewhat of the communication that was betweene the Kyng and our men, you shall fynd vnderstande that hee him selfe coulde speake the *Portugale* tongue, whiche he had learned of a chyld. Therefore after that he had commaunded our men to stande by, and demaunded of them the cause of theyr commyng into that countrey, they aunswared by *Pintado*, that they were merchauntes, traueyllynge in-

Fr. iiii.

to

Pepper.

The kynges  
gentleness to  
warde our  
men.

The disorder  
and death of  
our men.

to those parties for the commodities of his countrey, for exchange of wares whiche they had brought from theyr countreys, beyng such as should bee no lesse commodious for him and his people. The Kyng then hauyng of olde tyme in a certayne store house thirtie or fourtie kyntalles of pepper (euery kyntall beyng an hundred weyght) wplyng them to looke vppon the same, and agayne to byng him a sight of suche merchaundies as they had brought with them. And therevppon sent with the Captaine and the merchautes, certayne of his men to conducte them to the waters syde, with other to byng the ware from the pinnesse to the court. Who when they were returned and the wares seene, the kyng grewe to this ende with the merchautes, to proude in thirtie dayes the lading of all theyr shippes with pepper. And in case theyr merchaundies would not extende to the value of so much pepper, he promised to credite them to theyr next returne: and therevppon sent the countrey rounde about to gather pepper, causing the same to be brought to the court: So that within the space of thirtie dayes they had gathered fourescore tunne of pepper.

In the meane season, our men partly hauyng no rule of themselves, but eatyng without measure of the fruites of the countrey, and drynkyng the wyne of the Palme trees that droppeth in the nyght from the cutte branches of the same, and in suche extreme heate runnyng continually into the water, not vled before to suche sedayne and vehement alterations (then the which nothyng is more dangerous) were thereby brought into swellinges and agues: insomuche that the later tyme of the yere comming on, caused them to dye sometimes.iii. & sometimes.iiii. or v. in a day. Then *Windam* perceiuing the time of the .xxx. dayes to be expired, & his men dying so fast, sent to the court in poste to captaine *Pintado*, and the rest, to come away, and to tary no longer. But *Pintado*, with the rest, wrote backe to him againe, certifying him of the great quantitie of pepper they had alreedy gathered, and looked dayly for much more: Desiring him furthermore to remember the great praise and name they should wyne, if they came home prosperously, and what shame of the contrarie. With which answer *Windam* not satisfied, and many of their men dying dayly, willed and commaunded them againe either to come

come away furthwith, or els threatened to leaue them behynde. When *Pintado* hearde this answer, thynkyng to perswade hym with reason, tooke his way from the court towards the shippes, beyng conducted thither with men by the kynges commaundement.

In the meane season *Windam* all rageyng, brake vppon *Pintado*'s Cabin, brake open his chestes, spoyled such prouision of colde stilled waters and suckettes as he had prouided for his health, and lesse hym nothing, neither of his instrumentes to saile by, nor yet of his apparell: and in the meane tyme takyng sycke hym selfe, dyed also. Whose death *Pintado*, commyng abrode, lamented as muche as if he had ben the dearest frende he had in the worlde. But certayne of the maryners and other officers dyd spette in his face, some callyng hym *Jeze*, saying that he had brought them thither to kyll them: and some drawyng theyr swordes at hym, makyng a shewe to slay hym. Then he, perceyuyng that they would needes away, despyed them to tary, that he myght fetch the rest of the merchautes that were lesse at the court. But they would not graunt his request. Then despyed he them to geue hym the shyppe boate, with as muche of an olde sayle as myght serue for the same, promisyng them therewith to byng *Nicolas Lambert* and the rest into England: But al was in bayne. Then wrote he a letter to the court to the merchants, informyng them of all the matter, and promisyng them if God would lende hym lyfe to returne with al hast to fetch them. And thus was *Pintado* kept a boreshippe agaynst his wyll, thrust among the boyes of the shyppe, not vled lyke a man, nor yet like an honest boy, but glad to fynde fauour at the cookes hande. Then departed they, leauing one of theyr shippes behynd them, which they sonke for lacke of men to cary her. After this, within fyve or seuen dayes saylyng, dyed also *Pintado*, for very penury and thought that stroke hym to the hart: A man worthy to serue any prince, and most vbley used. And of seuen score men came home to *Wymouth* scarcely fourtie, and of them many dyed. And that no man shoulde suspect these wordes whiche I haue sayd in commendation of *Pintado*, to be spoken vppon fauour otherwyle then truth, I haue thought good to adde herunto the coppie of the letters which the kyng of Portugale and the

The death of  
*Windam*.  
*Pintado* euilly  
used of the ma-  
ryners.

This *Lambart* was a Lodowick borne, whose father had bene lord mayor of London, and this *Lambart* sometyme a knyght of the robes, one as he was brynaries, so he liued in the feare of God, and was the first of that order that forsoke the Pope, and came to Gods holy worde. The death of *Pintado*.

infant

## The first viage to Guinea.

infant his brother wrote vnto hym, to reconcytle hym, at suche tyme as vppon the kyng his maisters displeasure (and not for any other cryme or offence, as may appeare by the sayde letters) he was only for pouertie inforced to come into Englande, where he fyrst perswaded our merchauntes to attempt the sayde byages to Guinea. But as the kyng of Portugale to late repented hym that he had so punished *Pintado*, vppon malicious informations of suche as enuied the mans good fortune, euen so may it hereby appeare, that in some cases, euen Lions them selues, may either be hyndred by the contempt, or ayded by the helpe of the poore myse, accordyng vnto the fable of *Elope*.

The copie of Antoni Anes Pintado his letters patentes, wherby the king of Portugale made him knyght of his house, after al his troubles and imprisonment, which, by wrong information made to the king, he had susteined of long time, being at the last deliuered, his cause knowen and manifested to the kyng by a grey fryer the kynges confessor.



The kyng do geue you to vnderstande Iorde Frances *Dessosa*, one of my counsaile, and ouerfeer of my house, that in consideration of the good seruice which *Antonie Anes Pintado*, the sonne of *John Anes*, dwellyng in the towne called the porte, hath done vnto me, my wyl and pleasure is, to make him knight of mi house, allowing to him in pension seue hundred reis monethly, and euery day one alcapye of barly, as long as he keepeth a horse, and to be payde accordyng to the ordinaunce of my house. Wherbyndyng alwayes that he shal receyue but one mariage giste: And this also in such condition, that the tyme which is excepted in our ordinaunce, forbidding such men to marry for gettyng suche chyldren as myght succede them in this allowance, which is syxe yeeres after the makynge of this patent, shalbe fyrst expired before he do mary. I therfore commaund you to cause this to be entred in the booke called the *Matricula* of our housholde, vnder the title of knyghtes. And when it is so entred, let the clarke of y<sup>e</sup> *Matricula*, for the certaintie thereof, wyte on the backe

Seuen hundred  
reis are .v. s.  
Alcapye is halfe  
a bushell.

## The fyrst viage to Guinea.

342

backsyde of this *Aluala*, or patent, the number of the lease wherin this our graunt is entered. Which doone, let him returne this wyting vnto the said *Antonie Anes Pintado* for his warrant.

I *Diego Henriques* haue wytten this in *Almarin* the twenty and two day of September, in the yeece of our Lorde .1551. And this beneuolence the kyng gaue vnto *Antonie Anes Pintado* the twentie and fyue day of July this present yeece.

Rey.

The secretaries declaration written vnder the kynges graunt.



Our Maiestie hath vouchsafed, in respect & consideration of the good seruice of *Antonie Anes Pintado*, dwellyng in the port, and sonne of *John Anes*, to make hym knyght of your house, with ordinarie allowance, of seuen hundred Reys pension by the moneth, and one *Alcapye* of Barley by the day, as long as he kepeth a Horse: and to be payde accordyng to the ordinaunce of your house, with condition that he shall haue but one mariage gyst: and that not within the space of .vi. yeeres after the makynge of these letters patentes. The secretaries note. Entered in the booke of the *Matricula*. Fol. 683.

*Francisco de Siquera*.

The coppie of the letter of *Don Lewes* the infant, and brother to the kyng of Portugale: sent into Eng-land to *Antonie Anes Pintado*.



*Antonie Anes Pintado*, I the infant brother to the kyng, haue me hartely commended vnto you. *Peter Gonsalues* is gone to seeke you, desiring to bryng you home againe into your countrey. And for that purpose, hath with hym a safe conduct for you, graunted by the kyng, that thereby you maye freelye and without all feare come home. And although the weather be foule and stormy, yet sayle not to come: For in the tyme that his Maiestie hath geuen you, you maye

doe

## The first viage to Guinea.

do many thynges to your contentation and gratyfying the king, whereof I woulde be ryght glad: and to bypnyng the same to passe, wylly do all that lyeth in me for your profite. But forasmuche as *Peter Gonsalues* wyl make further declaration hereof vnto you, I say no moze at this present. Wrytten in *Luxburne* the eyghe day of December. Anno .M. D. LII.

## The infant *Don Lewes*.



Althese forsayde wrytynges I sawe vnder seale, in the house of my frende *Nicholas Lise*, with whom *Pintado* left them, at his vnfortunate departyng to *Guinea*. But notwithstanding all these frendly letters and sayre promises, *Pintado* durst not attempt to goe home, neyther to keepe company with the *Portugales* his countrey men, without the presence of other: forasmuch as he had secrete admonitions that they intended to slep hym, yf tyme and place myght haue serued theyr wicked entent.

## The second viage to Guinea.



As in the fyrst viage I haue declared rather the order of the historie, then the course of the nauigation, wherof at that tyme I could haue no perfect information: so in the description of this seconde viage, my cheefe intent hath been to shewe the course of the same, accordyng to the obseruation and ordinary custome of the maryners, and as I receyued it at the handes of an expert Pilot, beyng one of the cheefe in this viage, who also with his owne handes wrote a bryefe declaration of the same, as he founde and tryed al thynges, not by coniecture, but by the art of saylyng, and instrumentes partepnyng to the maryners facultie. Not therefore assumyng to my selfe the commendations due vnto other, neyther so bolde as in any part to change or otherwyle dispose the order of this viage, so well obserued by art

## The second vyage to Guinea.

343

arte and experyence, I haue thought good to set forth the same; in suche sort and phrase of speache as is commonly vbled among them, and as I receyued it of the sayd pilot, as I haue said. Take it therefore as foloweth.

In the peere of our lorde .1554. the .ii. daye of October, we departed the ryuer of *Temmes* with thre goodly shyppes, the one called the *Trinitie*, a ship of the burden of seuen score tun, the other called *Barthelmeu*, a shyppe of the burden of .lxxx. the thyrde was the *John Euangelist*, a shyp of seuen score tunne. With the sayde shyppes and two pyrmelles (whereof the one was drownded in the coast of *Englande*) we went forwarde on our vyage, and stayed at *Douer* .xiii. dayes. We stayed also at *Rye* thre or foure dayes. Moreouer last of all we touched at *Darthe-mouth*.

The fyrst day of *November* at .ix. of the clocke at nyght, departyng from the coaste of *Englande*, we sette of the stert, bearyng south west al that nyght in the sea, and the next day all day, and the next nyght after, vntill the thyrde day of the sayde moneth about noone, makynge our way good, byd runne .60. leagues.

Item from .xii. of the clocke the thyrde daye, tyll .xii. of the clocke the .iiii. day of the sayde moneth, makynge our way good south west, byd runne euery thre houres two leagues, which amounteth to .xvi. leagues the whole.

Item from .x.i. of the clocke the .iiii. day, to .xii. of the clocke the .v. day, runnyng south west in the sea, byd runne .xii. leagues.

Item runnyng from .xii. of the clocke the .v. day, vntill .xii. of the cloke the .vi. day, runnyng south east, byd runne .xviii. leagues.

And so from .xii. of the clocke the .vi. day, vntill .xii. of the clocke the .vii. day, runnyng south south west, byd runne euery houre .ii. leagues, which amount to .xlviii. leagues the whole.

Item from .xii. of the clocke the .vii. day, tyll .iii. of the clocke the .viii. day, south south west runnyng in the sea, byd runne .xxx. leagues.

Item from thre of the clocke the .viii. day, vntill .iii. of the clocke the .ix. day, runnyng south south west, byd runne .xxx. leagues.

Item from .iii. of the clocke the .ix. day, tyll .iii. of the clocke the

## The seconde viage to Guines.

the .x. daye, dyd southsoutheast in rummyng in the sea the summe of .xxiii. leagues.

Also from .iii. of the clocke the .x. day, vntyll .xii. of the clocke the .xi. daye, dyd runne southsouthwest the summe of .xii. leagues, and from .xii. of the clocke, tyll .vi. of the sayde daye, dyd runne .vi. leagues.

Running south and by west in the sea, from .vi. of the clocke the .xi. day, til .vi. of the clocke the .xii. day, dyd runne .xxvi. leagues.

From .vi. of the clocke at after noone the .xii. daye, tyll .vi. of the clocke the .xiii. daye at after noone, dyd runne .xiii. leagues. Item from .vi. of the clocke the .xiii. daye, tyll .vi. of the clocke the .xiiii. day at after noone, we were becalmed, that we coulde lye southwest with a sayle. And the .xv. daye in the mornyng, the wynd came to the East and Eastnortheast. The .xvii. daye in the mornyng, we had syght of the Ile of *Madera*, whiche doth ryle to hym that commeth in the northnortheast part vpryghte lande in the west part of it, and very hygh: and to the southsoutheast a lowe long lande, and a long poynt, with a saddle thorough the myddest of it, standeth in the .xxii. degrees: and in the west part, many springes of water runnyng downe from the mountayne, and many whyte fieldes lyke vnto corne fieldes, and some whyte houses to the southeast parte of it: and the toppe of the mountayne sheweth very ragged if you may see it, and in the northeast part there is a byght or bay as though it were a harborowe: Also in the sayd part, there is a rocke a litle distance from the shore, and ouer the sayde byght, you shall see a great gap in the mountayne.

The .xix. day at .xii. of the clocke, we had syght of the Ile of *Palme* and *Teneriffa* and the *Canaries*. The Ile of *Palme* riseth round, and lyeth southeast and northwest, and the northwest part is lowest. In the south, is a round hyl over the head land, and an other round hyl about that in the land. There is betwene the Southeast part of the Ile of *Madera* and the northwest part of the Ile of *Palme* .lvii. leagues. This Ile of *Palme* lyeth in the .xxix. degrees. And our course from *Madera* to the Ile of *Palme* was south, & south and by west, so that we had sight of *Teneriffa* & of the *Canaries*. The southeast part of the Ile of *Palme*, and the northnortheast of *Teneriffa*, lieth southeast and northwest, and

The Ile of  
*Madera*.

The Ile of  
*palme*.  
*Teneriffa*.  
The *Canaries*.

From *Madera*  
to the Ile of  
*Palme*.

## The second vyage to Guines.

344

and betwene them is twentie leagues. *Teneriffa* and the great *Canarie*, called *Grancanaria*, and the West part of *Fortisfuentura*, standeth in .xxvii. degrees and a halfe. *Gomera*, is a sayle Island and very ragged, and lyeth West Southwest of *Teneriffa*. And who so euer wyll come betwene them two Ilandes, must come South and by East, and in the South part of *Gomera* is a towne and a good rode in the sayde parte of the Ilande: and it standeth in twentie and seuen degrees and threerces. *Teneriffa* is an hygh land, & a great hygh pycke, lyke a sugar loafe: and by on the said picke is snowe throughout al the whole peere. And by reason of that pycke it may be knownen aboue al other Ilandes, and there we were becalmed the .xx. day of *November*, from fyre of the clocke in the mornyng, vntyll foure of the clocke at after noone.

*Grancanaria*.  
*Fortisfuentura*.  
The Island of  
*Gomera*.

*Teneriffa*.  
Snowe.

Betwene *Gomera*, and *Cape de las Barbas*.

The .xxii. day of *November*, under the Tropicke of *Cancer*, the Sunne goeth downe West and by South. Upon the coast of *Barbarie* .xxv. leagues by *North Cape blanke* at thre leagues of the mayne, there is .xb. fadome, and good shelly ground, & land among, and no streames, and two small Ilandes standyng in the .xxii. degrees & a terce.

The coast of  
*Barbarie*.  
*Cape blanke*.

From *Gomera* to *Cape de las Barbas* is an hundred leagues, and our course was South and by East. The sayde *Cape* standeth in .xxii. and a halfe: and all that coast is flatte .xvi. or .xvii. fadome deepe. *Uii. or .viii. leagues* of from the ryuer de *Oio* to *Cape de las Barbas*, there be many *Spanyarde*s and *Portugales* to trade for fshyng, duryng the moneth of *November*: and al that coast is very lowe landes. Also we went from *Cape de las Barbas* southsouthwest, and southsouthwest and by south, tyl we brought our selues in .xx. degrees and a halfe, reckonyng our selues .vii. leagues off: and that was the least sholes of *Cape blanke*.

The ryuer of de  
*Oio*.

Then we went South, vntill we brought our selues in thirtene degrees, reckonyng our selues twentie and fyue leagues off. And in thirtene degrees, we did reare the crosse, and we myght haue reared them sooner if we had looked for them. They are not syght a Crosse in the moneth of *November*, by reason of the nyghtes

The Crosse  
of *Croffe* *Barbes*.



## The seconde viage to Guinea.

myghtes are thort there. Neuerthelesse we had the syght of them the .xxix. day of the sayde moneth at nyght.

The fyrst of December our thyrteene degrees, we set our course South and by East, vntill the fourth day of December at twelue of the clocke the same day. Then we were in niene degrees and a terce, reckonyng our selues thyrtye leagues of the Sholes of the ryuer called *Rio Grande*, beyng West South west of them: the whiche Sholes be thyrtye leagues long.

The fourth of December; we began to set our course South east, we beyng in fyue degrees and a halfe.

The nienth day of December we set our course East South east: the fourteenth day of the sayde moneth, we set our course East, we beyng in fyue degrees and a halfe, reckonyng our selues thyrtye and fyue leagues from the coast of *Guinea*.

The .xix. of the sayde moneth, we set our course East and by North, reckoning our selues .xvii. leagues distant from *Cape Mensurado*, the sayde *Cape* beyng East North east of vs, and the ryuer of *Sesto* beyng East.

The .xxi. day of the sayde moneth, we fel with *Cape Mensurado* to the Southeast, about two leagues of. This *Cape* may be easely knowen, by reason the rysyng of it is like a Poppe head. Also toward the Southeast there are three trees, whereof the Eastermost tree is the hyghest, and the myddlemost is lyke a hie sticke, and the Southermost lyke vnto a Gibet: and vppon the mayne, are foure or fyue hygh hylles rysyng one after an other lyke rounde hoommockes or hyllockes. And the Southeast of the three trees, is three trees lyke a brandicwyle: and all the coast along is whyte sand. The sayde *Cape* standeth within a litle in fyue degrees.

The .xxii. of December, we came to the ryuer of *Sesto*, and remainned there vntill the .xxix. day of the sayde moneth. Here we thought it best to send before vs the pynnelle to the ryuer of *Dulce*, called *Rio Dulce*, that they myght haue the begynnyng of the market before the comyng of the John.

At the ryuer of *Sesto*, we had a Tunne of graynes. This ryuer standeth in .vi. degrees, lackyng a terce. From the ryuer of *Sesto* to *Rio Dulce*, is .xxv. leagues. *Rio Dulce* standeth in fyue degrees and a halfe. The ryuer of *Sesto* is easye to be knowen, by reason

## The second vyage to Guinea.

345

reason there is a ledge of rockes on the Southeast parte of the Rode. And at the entryng into the hauen, are fyue or sixe trees that beare no leaues. This is a good harborowe, but very narow at the entrance into the ryuer. There is also a rocke in the hauens mouth ryght as you enter. And all that coast betweene *Cape de Monte*, and *cape de las Palmas*, lyeth Southeast and by East, Northwest and by West, being three leagues of the shore. And you shall haue in some places rockes two leagues of: and that betweene the riuer of *Sesto* and *cape de las Palmas*.

Betweene the ryuer of *Sesto* & the ryuer *Dulce* is .xxv. leagues: and the high lande that is betweene them both, is called *Cakeado*, being eight leagues from the ryuer of *Sesto*. And to the South eastwarde of him, is a place called *Shawgro*, and an other called *Shyawe* or *Shawo*, where you may get freshe water. Of this *Shyawe*, lyeth a redge of rockes: and to the Southeastwarde, lyeth a hedlande called *Croke*. Betweene *Cakeado* and *Croke*, is .ix. or ten leagues. To the Southeastwarde of, is a harborowe called *saint Vincent*: Ryght ouer agaynst *saint Vincent*, is a rocke vnder the water, two leagues and a halfe of the shore. To the Southeastwarde of that rocke you shall see an Ilande about three or foure leagues of: this Ilande is not paste a league of the shore. To the East Southeast of the Ilande, is a rocke that lyeth about the water, and by that rocke goeth in the ryuer of *Dulce*, which you shall know by the sayde ryuer and rocke. The Northwest syde of the hauen, is flatte lande, and the Southeast syde thereof, is lyke an Ilande, and a bare platte without any trees, and so is it not in any other place.

In the Rode, you shall ryde in .xiii. or .xiiii. sadomes, good owes and lande, beyng the markes of the Rode to bypyng the Ilande and the Northeast lande togeather, and here we Ankered the last of December.

The thirde day of January, we came from the riuer of *Dulce*.

Note that *cape de las Palmas*, is a fayre high lande, but some lowe places thereof by the water syde looke lyke redde cliffes with whyte strakes lyke wayes, a cable length a peece, & this is to the East parte of the cape. This cape is the Southermost lande in all the coast of *Guinea*, and standeth in foure degrees and a terce.

W.i.

The

*Rio Grande.*

*Cape Mensurado.*  
The ryuer of *Sesto*.

The ryuer of *Sesto*.  
*Rio Dulce*.

*Cape de monte.*

*Cape de las Palmas.*

The land of *Cakeado*.

*Shawo*.

*Croke*.

*Saint Vincences* harborowe.

The riuer *Dulce*.

*Cape de las Palmas*.

The coast of *Guinea*.

The coast from *Cape de las palmas* to *Cape Trepoyntes*, of the tres Puntas, is saye and cleare without rocke or other daunger.

Twentie and fyue leagues from *Cape de las Palmas*, the lande is hygher then in any place, vntyl we come to *Cape Trepoyntes*. And about ten leagues before you come to *Cape Trepoyntes*, the land ysleth styll hygher and hygher, vntyl you come to *Cape Trepoyntes*. Also before you come to the sayde *Cape*, after other fyue leagues to the Northwest part of it, there is certayne broken grounde, with two great rockes, and within them in the byght of a bay, is a castel called *Arra*, pertainyng to the kynge of Portugale. You shal know it by the sayd rockes that lye of it: for there is none suche from *Cape de las Palmas* to *Cape Trepoyntes*. This coast lyeth East & by North, West & by South. From *Cape de las Palmas* to the sayd castel, is fourscore and fyteene leagues. And the coast lyeth from the sayd castel to the westernmost point of the *Trepoyntes*, Southeast and by South, Northwest and by North. Also the westernmost poyn of the *Trepoyntes* is a low land, lying halfe a myle out in the sea: and vpon the innermoste necke to the land ward, is a tuft of trees, & there we arriued the eleuenth day of January.

The twelfth day of January, we came to a towne called *Samma* or *Samua*, beyng .viii. leagues from *Cape Trepoyntes* toward East Northeast. Betweene *Cape Trepoyntes* and the towne of *Samua*, is a great ledge of rockes a great way out in the sea. We continued foure dayes at that towne: & the captayne therof would needs haue a pledge a shore. But when they receiued the pledge, they kept him still, & would trafficke no moze, but shot of theyr ordynance at vs. They haue two or thye peeces of ordynance and no moze. The .xvi. day of the sayde mooneth, we made reckonyng to come to a place called *Cape Corea*, where captayne *Don Ihon dwelleth*, whose men entertayned vs frendly. This *Cape Corea* is foure leagues Eastwarde of the castell of *Mina*, or ther wyse called *La mina* or *Castello de mina*, where we arriued the .xviii. day of the moneth. Here we made sayle of all our cloth, sauynge two or thye packes.

The .xxvi. day of the same moneth we weighed anker, and departed from thence to the *Trinitie*, whiche was .lii. leagues East.

The castell of Arra.

The towne of Samma.

The pledge was by John poys his newew.

Cape Corea.

The castell of mina pertainyng to the king of Portugale.

Eastwarde of vs, where she solde her wares. Then they of the *Trinitie* wylled vs to go Eastwarde of that .viii. or .ix. leagues, to sell part of theyr wares, in a place called *Perecow*, and an other place named *Perecow Grande*, beyng the eastermost place of both these, whiche you shal knowe by a great rounde hyll neere vnto it, named *Monte Rodondo*, lying westward from it, and by the water syde are many hygh palme trees. From hence vnto we set forth homewarde the .xiii. day of February, and plyed by alongest tyll we came within .vii. or .viii. leagues to *Cape Trepoyntes*. About .viii. of the clocke the .xv. day at afternoone, we vnto cast about to seawarde: and beware of the currantes, for they wyl deceiue you soze. Whosoener shal come from the coaste of *Mina* homewarde, let hym be sure to make his way good west, vntyl he reckon hym selfe as farre as *Cape de las Palmas*, where the currant setteth alwayes to the eastwarde. And within .xx. leagues eastwarde of *Cape de las Palmas*, is a ryuer called *De los Potos*, where you may haue freshe water and balasse enough, and plentie of Iuery or Elephantes teeth. This ryuer standeth in foure degrees, and almost two terces. And when you reckon your selfe as farre shotte as *Cape de las Palmas*, beyng in a degree, or a degree and a halfe, you may go west, & west by north, vntyl you come in thye degrees: and then you may go west northwest, and northwest and by west, vntyll you come in fyue degrees, and then northwest. And in the .vi. degrees, we met northerly wyndes, and great roospyng of tydes. And as we coulde iudge, the currantes went to the north northwest. Furthermoze betweene *Cape de Monte* and *Cape verde*, go great currantes whiche deceiue many men.

The .xxii. daye of Apryll, we were in .viii. degrees and two terces: and so we ranne to the northwest, hauynge the wynde at northeast and east northeast, and sometymes at east, vntyll we were at .xviii. degrees and a terce, whiche was on Daye daye. And so from .xviii. and two terces, we had the wynde at east and east northeast, and sometymes at east southe east: and then we reckened the *Ilandes* of *Cape Verde* easse southe east of vs, we iudgynge our selues to bee .xlviii. leagues of. And in .xx. and .xxi. degrees, we had the wynde moze easterly to the southwarde then before. And so we ran

Wy. ii.

to

Perecowe, Perecowe grande.

Monte rodondo.

The currantes from Mina homewarde.

Rio de los Potos, Iuerpe.

Cape de las Palmas.

Currantes.

## The second vyage to Guinea.

The Ile de  
Flores.

to the South-west & north north-west, and sometymes north & by west and north, untill we came into .xxxi. degrees, where we reckoned our selues a hundred and fourescore leagues south-west, and by south of the Ile de Flores or de los Flores, and there we met with the wynde at south southeast, and set our course northeast.

In .xxiii. degrees, we had the wynde at the South and south-west, and then we set our course north northeast, and so we ranne to .xl. degrees, and then we set our course northeast, the wynde being at the south-west, and hauyng the Ile de Flores East of vs, and .xlii. leagues of.

In .xli. degrees, we met with the wynde at Northeast, and so we ranne north-westwarde, then we met with the wynde at the west north-west, and at the west within .vi. leagues, runnyng toward the north-west, and then we cast about, and laye north-east, untill we came in .xlii. degrees, where we set our course East northeast, iudgyng the Ile of Coruo south and by west of vs, and .xxvi. leagues distant from vs.

A remembrance that the .xxi. day of May, we communed with John Kase, and he thought it best to goe northeast, and iudged him selfe .xxv. leagues Eastwarde to the Ile de Flores, and in .xxxi. degrees and a halfe.

Note that in the fourth day of September, under niene degrees, we lost the sight of the north starre.

Note also, that in the .xlv. degrees, the compasse is varied .vi. degrees to the West.

Item, in .xl. degrees, the compasse byd vary .xv. degrees in the whole.

Item, in .xxx. degrees and a halfe, the compasse is varied .v. degrees to the West.

Be it also in memorie, that two or three dayes before we came to cape Trepoyntes, the pynnelle went alongest the shoze, thinking to sell some of our wares, and so we came to Anker three or foure leagues west and by south of the cape Trepoyntes, where we left the Trinitie.

Then our pynnelle came aboord with all our men: the pynnelle also tooke in moze wares. They tolde me moreouer that they would goe to a place where the pynnelle was, and had receyued muche golde at the first vyage to these parties, and

The Ile of  
Coruo.

Where they  
lost the sight of  
the North  
starre.  
Howe the com-  
passe doeth  
varie.

The pynnelle.

## The second vyage to Guinea.

347

and tolde me furthermoze that it was a good place: but I fearing a brigantine that was then vpon the coast, dyd wey and follow them, & left the Trinitie about foure leagues of from vs, and there we rode agaynst that towne foure dayes: so that Hartine by his owne desire, and assent of some of the Commissioners that were in the pinnelle, went a shoze to the towne, and there John Berin went to trafique from vs, being thre myles of traficking at an other towne. The towne is called Samma or Samua, for Samma and Sammaterra, are the names of the two first townes, where we did traficke for golde, to the Northeast of cape Trepoyntes.

The towne  
of Samma.  
Golde.

Hether to continueth the course of the vyage, as it was described by the sayd Pilot. Now therfore I wil speake somewhat of the countrey and people, and of such thinges as are brought from thence.

They brought from thence at the last vyage, foure hundred pound weight and odde of gold, of .xxii. Carrattes and one graine in finenesse: also .xxvi. buttes of grapnes, and about two hundred and fytie Elephantes teeth of all quantities. Of these, I sawe and measured some of ix. spannes in length, as they were crooked. Some of them were as bygge as a mans thyghe about the knee, and weyed about foure score and tenne pounce weight a peece. They say that some one hath been seene of a hundred and .xxv. pounce weyght. Other there were which they call the teeth of calues, of one or two or thre peeres, whereof some were a foote and a halfe, some two foote, and some thre, or moze, accordyng to the age of the beast. These great teeth or tuskes, growe in the upper iawe downwarde, and not in the nether iawe vpwarde, wherein the paynters and arras woorkers are deceived. At this last vyage was brought from Guinea the head of an Elephante, of such huge bygnesse, that only the bones or crauewe thereof, besyde the nether iawe and great tuskes, weyghed about two hundred weyght, and was as muche as I coulde well lyfte from the ground: insonmuche that considering also heere with the weyght of two such great teethe, the nether iawes with the lesse teeth, the tongue, the great hangyng eares, the bygge and long snoute or troonke, with all the fleshe, byaynes, and skynne, with all other partes belongyng to the whole head, in my iudgement it could wey little lesse then

Golde foure  
hundred  
weight.  
Graynes.  
Elephantes  
teeth.

The head of an  
Elephant.

pp.iii.

fyue

fyue hundred weight. This head dyuers haue seene in the house of the woorthie merchant Mr. Andzewe Iudde, where also I saw it, and beheld it, not onely with my bodyly eyes, but much more with the eyes of my mynde and spirite, considered by the woorkes, the cunningg and wysedome of the woorkemaister: without which consideration, the sight of suche straunge and wonderfull thinges may rather seeme curiosities, then profitable contemplations.

The content-  
plations of  
Gode woorkes.

The description  
and properties  
of the Elephant

The Elephant (whiche some call an Oliphante) is the biggest of all foure footed beastes, his forelegges are longer then his hynder, he hath ankles in the lower parte of his hynder legges, and fyue toes on his feete vndiuided, his snoute or troonke is so long, and in suche forme, that it is to him in the steede of a hande: for hee neyther eateth nor drynketh but by byngyng his troonke to his mouth, therewith hee helpeth by his maister or keeper, therewith he ouerthoweth trees. Besyde his two great tuskes, he hath on euery syde of his mouth foure teethe, wherewith he eateth and gryndeth his meate: eyther of these teethe, are almost a spanne in length, as they growe along in the iawe, and are about two inches in heygth, and almost as much in thickness. The tuskes of the Male are greater then of the Female: his tongue is very litle, and so farre in his mouth, that it can not be seene: of all beastes they are most gentle and tractable, for by many sundry wayes they are taught, and doe vnderstande: insomuche that they learne to doe due honour to a Kyng, and are of quicke sense and sharpenesse of wyte. When the Male hath once seasoned the Female, he neuer after toucheth her. The Male Elephant lyueth two hundred yeeres, or at the least one hundred and twentie: the Female almost as long, but the floure of theyr age, is but .ix. yeeres, as some wyte. They can not suffer wynter or colde: they loue ryuers, and wil often goe into them vp to the snoute, wherewith they blow and snuffe, and playe in the water: but swymme they can not for the weygth of theyr bodies. Plinie and Solinie wyte, that they vse none adulterie. If they happen to meete with a man in wyldernesse beyng out of the way, gently they will goe before him, and byng him into the playne waye. Joynd in battayle, they haue no small respecte vnto them that be wounded: for they byng them that are hurte or weary into the middle

de of the army to be defended: they are made tame by drynking the iuice of barley. They haue continual war agaynst Dragons, which desire theyr blood, because it is very colde: and therfore the Dragon lyng awayte as the Elephant passeth by, wyndeth his taylor (being of exceeding length) about the hynder legges of the Elephant, and so steping him, thrusteth his head into his troonke and exhausteth his breath, or els byteth him in the eare, wherunto he can not reache with his troonke, and when the Elephant wareth faynte, he falleth downe on the Serpent, beyng now full of blood, and with the popple of his body breaketh him: so that his owne blood with the blood of the Elephant, runneth out of him myngeled together, which beyng colde, is congealed into that substance which the Apothecaries call *Sanguis Draconis*, (that is) Dragons blood, otherwyle called *Cinnabaris*, although there be an other kynde of *Cinnabaris*, commonly called cinoper or vermilion, which the painiers vse in certaine colours.

Debate be-  
twene the Ele-  
phant and the  
Dragon.

*Sanguis Dra-*  
*conis.*  
*Cinnabaris.*

They are also of thre kyndes, as of the marshes, the plaines, and the mountaynes, no lesse differyng in conditions. *Philostatus* writeth, that as much as the Elephant of *Libia* in bygnesse passeth the horse of *Nyse*, so muche doeth the Elephant of *India* exceede them of *Libia*: for of the Elephant of *India*, some haue been seene of the heygth of .ix. cubites: the other doe so greatly feare these, that they dare not abyde the sight of them. Of the Indian Elephant, only the Males haue tuskes, but of them of *Ethiopia* and *Libia*, both kyndes are tusked: they are of dyuers heygthes, as of .xii. .xiii. and .xiiii. doydantes, euery doydant benig a measure of niene ynches. Some wyte that an Elephant is bygger then thre wylde Dren or Buffes. They of *India* are blacke, or of the colour of a Housle, but they of *Ethiopia* or *Guinea*, are browne: the hyde or skynne of them all, is very harde, and without heare or bystels: theyr eares are two doydantes brode, and theyr eyes very litle. Our men sawe one drynkyng at a ryuer in *Guinea*, as they layled into the lande.

Three kyndes  
of Elephant.

Of other properties and conditions of the Elephant, as of theyr marueylous docilicie, of theyr fyght and vse in the warres, of theyr generation and chastite, when they were fyrste scene in the theaters and triumphes of the Romans, howe they are taken and tamed, and when they caste theyr tuskes,

By. liii.

with

## The second vyage to Guinea.

Woozkes of  
Iuery.

with the vse of the same in medicine, who so desireth to know, let him reade Plinie, in the viii. booke of his natural hystorie. He also wyteth in his xii. booke, that in olde tyme they made many goodly woozkes of Iuery or Elephants teeth: as tables, tressels, postes of houses, rayles, lattesses for wyndowes, Images of their goddes, and dyuers other thinges of Iuery, both coloured and uncoloured, a intermyxt with sundry kyndes of precious woods, as at this day are made certayne Chayres, Lutes, and Virgynalles. They had suche plentie thereof in olde tyme, that (as far as I remember) Iosephus wyteth, that one of the gates of Hierusalem was called *Porta Eburnea*, (that is) the Iuery gate. The whytenesse thereof was so much esteemed, that it was thought to represent the naturall faynnesse of mans skynne: insomuche that sych as went about to set forth (or rather corrupt) naturall beautie with colours and paynting, were reprooued by this prouerbe, *Ebur atramento candefacere*, that is, to make Iuery whyte with ynke. The Poettes also, describyng the fayne neckes of beautifull virgins, call them *Eburnea colla*, that is, Iuery neckes. And to haue sayde thus muche of Elephantes and Iuery, it may suffice.

The people of  
Africa.

Now therfore I wil speake somewhat of the people and theyr maners, and maner of lyuyng, with also an other brieue description of Africa. It is to vnderstande, that the people which now inhabite the regions of the coast of Guinea, and the myd partes of Africa, as *Libia* the inner, and *Nubia*, with diuers other great and large regions about the same, were in olde tyme called *Ethiopes* and *Nigrite*, which we now call *Boozes*, *Boozens*, or *Negros*, a people of beastly lyuyng, without a God, lawe, religion, or common wealt, and so scorched and vered with the heate of the sun, that in many places they curse it when it ryseth. Of the regions and people about the inner *Libia* (called *Libia Interior*) *Gemma Phrysius* wyteth thus.

Getulia.

*Libia Interior*, is very large and desolate, in the whiche are many horrible wyldernes and mountaynes, replenished with dyuers kyndes of wyld and monstrous beastes and Serpentes. Fyrst from *Mauritania* or *Barbarie* toward the South is *Getulia*, a rough and saluage region, whose inhabitauntes are wyld and wanderyng people. After these folowe the

## The second viage to Guinea.

349

people called *Melanogetuli* and *Pharusii*, whiche wander in the wyldernes, carpyng with them great gourdes of water. The *Ethiopes*.  
*Ethiophians*, called *Nigrite*, occupie a great part of *Aphrica*, and *Nigrite*.  
are extended to the West Ocean. Southwarde also they reach to the ryuer *Nigritis*, whose nature agreeth with the ryuer of *Nilus*, forasmuch as it is increased and diminished at the same tyme, and byngeth forth the lyke beastes as the Crocodile. The ryuer *Nigritis* of *Senega*.  
By reason whereof, I thynke this to be the same ryuer whiche the Portugales call *Senega*: For this ryuer is also of the same nature. It is furthermore marueylous and very strange that is sayde of this ryuer: And this is, that on the one syde thereof, inhabitauntes are of hyghe stature and blacke, and on the other syde, of browne or tawnye colour, and lowe stature, whiche thyng also our men confyrme to be true. There are also other people of *Libia* called *Garamantes*, whose women are common: for they contracte no matrimonie, neyther haue respecte to chastite. *Garamantes*.  
After these are the nations of the people called *Tyre*, *Sathiodaphnite*, *Odrangi*, *Mimaces*, *Lynxamate*, *Dolopes*, *Agangine*, *People of Libia*.  
*Leuce Ethiopes*, *Xilicei Ethiopes*, *Calcei Ethiopes*, and *Nubi*. These haue the same situation in *Ptolomie* that they nowe geue to the kyngdome of *Nubia*. Here are certayne Christians vnder the dominion of the great Emperour of *Ethiopia*, called *Prestor John*. *Prestor John*.  
From these toward the west, is a great nation of people called *Aphricerones*, whose region (as farre as may bee geathered by coniecture) is the same that is nowe called *Regnum Orguene*, consynng vppon the east parties of *Guinea*. *Regnum Orguene*.  
From hence Westwarde, and somewhat toward the North, are the kyngdomes of *Gambra* and *Budomel*, not farre from the ryuer of *Senega*. *Gambra*.  
And from hence toward the inlande regions, and along by the sea coast, are the regions of *Ginovia* or *Guinea*, which we commonly call *Gymee*. On the West syde of these regions toward the Ocean, is the cape or point called *Gabouerde*, or *Caput viride* (that is) the greene cape, to the whiche the Portugales fyrt directe theyr course when they sayle to *America* or the lande of *Brasile*. The Portugales naunges of the Cape of Verde.  
Then departyng from hence, they turne to the ryght hande toward the quarter of the wynde called *Garbino*, whiche is betwene the west and the south. But to speake somewhat more of *Ethiopia*, Although *Ethiopia*.  
there



## The second viage to Guinea.

there are many nations of people so named, yet is Ethiopia chiefly divided into two partes, whereof the one is called Ethiopia vnder Egypte, a great and ryche region. To this partepneth the Ilande of *Meroe*, imbraced rounde about with the streames of the ryuer *Nilus*. In this Ilande women reigned in olde tyme. Iosephus writeth, that it was somtyme called *Sabea*; and that the queene of *Saba* came from thence to Hierusalem, to heare the wyledome of Salomon. From hence towarde the East, reigneth the sayde Christian Emperour *Priester John*, whom some call *Papa Iohannes*, and other saye that he is called *Pean Iuan* (that is) great John, whose Empire reacheth farre beyonde *Nilus*, and is extended to the coastes of the redde sea and *Indian sea*. The myddle of the region is almost in the .66. degrees of longitude, and .xii. degrees of latitude. About this region inhabite the people called *Clodu*, *Risophagi*, *Babilonij*, *Axiunite*, *Molili*, and *Molibe*. After these is the region called *Trogilotica*, whose inhabitauntes dwell in caues and denmes: for these are theyr houses, and the flesh of serpents theyr meate, as writeth *Plinie*, and *Diodorus Siculus*. They haue no speache, but rather a grynnyng and chattering. There are also people without heades, called *Blemines*, hauyng theyr eyes and mouth in theyr breste. *Lykewyle Strucophagi*, and naked *Ganphasantes*: *Satyrs* also, which haue nothyng of men but onely shape. *Doreouer Oripei*, great hunters. *Mennones* also, and the region of *Smyrnophora*, which bringeth forth myrr. After these is the regio of *Azania*, in the which many *Elephantes* are founde. A great part of the other regions of *Afrika* that are beyond the Equinoc-tiall line, are now ascribed to the kyngdome of *Melinde*, whose inhabitauntes are accustomed to traffike with the nations of *A-rabie*, and theyr kyng is ioynded in frendshipp with the kyng of *Portugale*, and payeth tribute to *Priester John*.

The other *Ethiope*, called *Ethiopia Interior* (that is) the inner *Ethiope*, is not yet knowne for the greatnesse thereof, but onely by the sea coastes: yet is it described in this maner. First from the Equinoc-tiall towarde the South, is a great region of *Ethiopians*, which byngeth forth whyte *Elephantes*, *Ti-gers*, and the beastes called *Rhinocerontes*. Also a region that byngeth forth plentie of *Cinamome*, lying betwene the

The Ilande of  
*Meroe*.

The queene of  
*Saba*.

Priester John  
Emperour of  
*Ethiopia*.

People of the  
east tye of  
*Africa*.

*Ethiophagi*.

People with-  
out heades.

Myrr.  
*Azania*.

Regnum  
*Melinde*.

*Ethiopia In-  
terior*.

Whyte Ele-  
phants.

## The second viage to Guinea.

350

braunches of *Nilus*. Also the kyngdome of *Habech* or *Habasia*, a region of Christian men, lying both on this tye and beyonde *Nilus*. Here are also the *Ethiopians*, called *Ichthiophagi* (that is) suche as lyue only by fysh, & were sometymes subdued by the warres of great *Alexander*. Furthermore the *Ethiopians* cal- led *Rhappsi*, and *Anthropophagi*, that are accustomed to mans flesh, inhabite the regions neare vnto the mountaynes called *Montes Luna*, (that is) the mountaynes of the *Moone*. *Gaza- tia*, is vnder the Tropicke of *Cappicozne*. After this, foloweth the front of *Afrika*, the Cape of *Buena Speranza*, or *Caput Bone Spei*, (that is) the Cape of good hope, by the which they passe that sayle from *Spaine* to *Calicut*. But by what names the Capes and gulfes are called, forasmuche as the same are in euery globe and carde, it were here superfluous to rehearse them.

Some wyte that *Affrica* was so named by the *Grecians*, be- cause it is without colde. For the Greeke letter *alpha*, or *A*, signifieth priuation, boyde, or without: and *Phrice*, signifieth colde. For in deede although in the steade of wynter, they haue a cloudy and tempestuous season, yet is it not colde, but rather smoootheryng hotte, with also hotte shewes of rayne, and some- where suche scorchyng wyndes, that what by one meanes and other, they seeme at certayne tymes to lyue as it were in forna- ces, and in maner already halfe way in *Purgatorie* or hell. *Gem- ma Phrisus* wyrteth, that in certayne partes of *Affrica*, (as in *Atlas* the greater) the ayre in the nyght season is scene shynnyng with many strange fyres and flames rplyng in maner as hygge as the *Moone*: and that in the element are sometyme heard as it were the sounde of pypes, trumpettes, and drummes: Which noises may perhaps be caused by the vehement and sundry mo- tions of suche fyre exhalations in the ayre, as we see the lyke in many experiences wrought by fyre, ayre, & winde. The holow- nesse also, & diuers reflexions and breaking of the cloudes, may be great causes hereof, beside the vehement cold of the middle region of the ayre, wherby the said fyre exhalations, ascendyng thither, are sodenly strycken backe with great force: For euen common and dayly experience teacheth vs, by the whylling of a burning Torche, what noyse fyre maketh in the ayre, & much more where it stryeth when it is inclosed with ayre, as appeareth in gunnes,

and

*Habasia*.

*Ichthiophagi*.

*Montes Luna*.

*Gazatia*.

*Cape bone Spei*.

*Aphrica with-  
out cold*.

The wynter of  
*Africa*.

Flames of fyre  
& noise in the  
ayre.

The myddle  
region of the  
ayre is cold.

The styre of  
elementes.

## The seconde viage to Guinea.

and as the like is seene in only aire enclosed, as in Organ pipes, and such other instrumentes that go by winde. For wynde (as say the Philosophers) is none other then aire vehemently moued, as we see in a payre of bellows, and such other.

Some of our men of good credit that were in this last viage to Guinea, affirme earnestly that in the night season they felt a sensible heate to come from the beames of the Moone. The which thyng, although it be strange and insensible to vs that inhabite colde regions, yet doth it stand with good reason that it may so be, forasmuche as the nature of starres and planettes (as wyrteth Plinie) consisteth of fyre, and conteyneth in it a spirite of life, which can not be without heate.

And that the Moone geueth heate vpon the earth, the Prophet Dauid seemeth to confirme in his .Cxxi. Psalm. where speakyng of such men as are defended from euils by goddes protection, he sayeth thus: *Per diem Sol non exuret te, nec Luna per noctem.* That is to say, In the day the Sunne shall not burne thee, nor the Moone by nyght.

They say furthermore that in certayne places of the sea, they saw certayne streames of water, which they call spoutes, fallyng out of the ayre into the sea, and that some of these are as byg as the great pylers of Churches: Insomuch that sometymes they fall into shypes, and put them in great daunger of downyng. Some phantasie that these should be the Caractes of Heauen, whiche were all opened at Noes fludde. But I thynke them rather to be such fluxions and eruptions as Aristotle in his booke *de Mundo* saith, to chaunce in the sea. For speakyng of suche strange thynges as are seene often tymes in the sea, he wyrteth thus. Oftentymes also euen in the sea are seene euaporati-  
ons of fyre, and suche eruptions and breakyng forth of springs, that the mouthes of ryuers are opened, Whylepooles, and fluxions are caused of such other vehement motions, not only in the myddest of the sea, but also in creekes and streygthes. At certayne tymes also, a great quantitie of water is sodenly lyfted vp and carryed about with the Moone. &c. By whiche wordes of Aristotle it doth appeare that suche waters may bee lyfted vp in one place at one tyme, and sodenly fall downe in an other place at an other tyme. And hereunto perhappes parteyneth it

Wynde.

The heate of the Moone.

The nature of the starres.

Spoutes of water falling out of the aire.

Caractes of heauen.

Vehement motions in the sea.

## The second vyage to Guinea.

351

it that Rycharde Chaunceller tolde me that he hadde Sebastian Cabot repute, that (as farre as I remember) eyther about the coastes of Brasile or Rio de Plata, his shyppe or pinnesse was suddaynly lyfted from the sea, and cast vpon lande, I wotte not howe farre. The whiche thyng, and suche other lyke wonderfull and straunge woorkes of nature whyle I consyder, and call to remembraunce the narrownesse of mans vnderstandyng and knowledge, in comparyson of her myghtie power, I can but ceasse to marueyle and confesse with Plinie, that nothyng is to her impossible, the leaste parte of whose power is not yet knowen to men. Many thynges more our men sawe and consydered in this vyage, worthy to be noted, whereof I haue thought good to put some in memoire, that the reader may allwell take pleasure in the varietie of thynges, as knowledge of the historie. Among other thynges therfore touchyng the maners and nature of the people, this may seeme straunge, that they princes and noble men vse to pounce and rase theyr skynnes with pretie knottes in dyuers formes, as it were branched damaske, thynkyng that to be a decent ornament. And albeit they go in maner all naked, yet are many of them, and especially their women in maner laden with collars, brasettes, hoopes, and chaines, eyther of golde, copper, or Iuery. I my selfe haue one of theyr brasettes of Iuery, waging two pound and .bi. ounces of Troy weyght, whiche make .xxviii. ounces: this one of theyr women dyd weare vpon her arme. It is made of one whole peece of the byggest part of the tooth, turned and somewhat carued, with a hole in the myddest, wherein they put theyr handes to weare it on theyr arme. Some haue of euery arme one, and as many on theyr legges, wherewith some of them are so galdd, that although they are in maner made lame therby, yet wyl they by no meanes leaue them of. Some weare also on theyr legges great shackles of bygght copper, whiche they thynke to be no lesse comely. They weare also collars, brasettes, garlandes, and gyrdels, of certayne blew stone lyke beades. Lykewyle some of theyr women weare on theyr bare armes certayne forcelleues, made of the plates of beaten golde. On theyr fingers also they weare ringes, made of golden wyres, with a knotte or wreache, lyke vnto that which chyldren make in a ryng of a ryste. Among other thynges of

so straunge thyng.

The power of nature.

They rase theyr skynnes.

fyne icwelles.

A brasset.

Shackels.

Fyngers.

Dogs chaines  
of golde.

of gold that our men bought of them for exchange of their wares, were certayne dogges chaynes and collers.

They are very ware people in theyr bargaynyng, and wyl not lose one sparke of golde of any value. They vse weyghtes and measures, and are very circumspect in occupying the same. They that shall haue to do with them, must vse them gentelly: for they wyl not traffike or byng in any wares if they be euill vled. At the fyrst vyage that our men had into these parties, it so chaunced, that at theyr departure from the fyrst place where they byd traffike, one of them eyther stole a muske catte, or tooke her away by force, not mistrustyng that that shoulde haue hyndred theyr bargaynyng in an other place whyther they intended to go. But for all the hast they coulde make with full sayles, the same of theyr mysulage so preuented them, that the people of that place also, offended thereby, would byng in no wares: Inso muche that they were enforced eyther to restore the cat, or pay for her at theyr price, before they coulde traffike there.

A muske cat.

Their houses.

Theyr houses are made of foure postes or trees, and couered with bowes.

Their feeding

Theyr common feedyng is of rootes, and suche fyshes as they take, whereof they haue great plentie. There are also such sleeing fyshes as are seene in the sea of the West Indies. Our men salted of theyr fyshes, hoppyng to prouide store thereof: but they wolde take no salte, and must therefore be eaten forthwith as some saye. Howe be it, other affirme that if they be salted immediately after they be taken, they wyl last vncorrupted .x. or .xii. dayes. But this is more straunge, that part of such fleshy as they caried with them out of England, and putrified there, became sweete againe at their returne to the clime of temperate regions.

A strange  
thyng.

Their bread.

They vse also a strange makyng of bread, in this maner. They grynde betweene two stones with theyr handes as muche cozne as they thynke may suffice theyr familie, and when they haue thus brought it to floure, they put thereto a certayne quantitie of water, and make therof very thin dough, which they stick vpon some post of theyr houses, where it is baked by the heate of the Sun. So that when the master of the house or any of his family wyl eate thereof, they take it downe, and eate it.

They

They haue very sayne wheate, the eare whereof is two handes fulles in length, and as hygge as a great Bulrush, and almost foure inches about where it is hyggest. The stemme or straw, seemeth to be almost as hygge as the litle fynger of a mans hande, or litle lesse. The graynes of this wheate are as hygge as our peason, rounde also, and very whyte, and somewhat shynnyng, lyke pearles that haue lost theyr colour. Almost all the substance of them turneth into floure, and maketh litle branne or none. I told in one eare two hundred and threescore graynes. The eare is inclosed in three blades longer then it selfe, and of two ynches broade a peece. And by this fruitfulnessse the Sunne seemeth partly to recompence such greefes and molestations as they othertwyle receyue by the feruent heate thereof. It is doubtlesse a worthy contemplation to consider the contrary effectes of the Sunne: or rather the contrary passions of suche thynges as receyue the influence of his beames, eyther to theyr hurt or benefyte. Theyr drynke is eyther water, or the iuice that droppeth from the cut branches of the barren Date trees, called *Palmites*. For eyther they hang great gourdes at the sayde branches euery euening, and let them so hang al night, or els they set them on the ground vnder the trees, that the droppes may fall therein. They say that this kynde of drynke is in taste muche like vnto whey, but somewhat sweeter, and more pleasaunt. They cut the branches euery euening, because they are seared vp in the day by the heate of the Sunne. They haue also great Beanes as hygge as chestnuts, and very hard with a shel in the steade of a huske.

Theyr wheate.

The Sunne.

Theyr drynke.

Many thynges more myght be sayde of the maners of the people, and of the woonders and monstrous thynges that are engendred in *Africke*. But it shall suffice to haue sayde thus much of suche thynges as our men partly sawe, and partly brought with them.

And whereas before speakyng of the fruite of graynes, I described the same to haue holes by the syde (as in deede it is, as it is brought hither) yet was I afterward enfourmed, that those holes were made to put strynges or rwygges throughe the fruite, thereby to hang them vp to drye at the Sunne. They growe not past a foote and a halfe, or two foote from the grounde, and are as red as blood when they are gathered.

Graynes.

The

## The seconde viage to Guinea.

The graynes them selues, are called of the physitions, *Grana Paradisi*.

Shelles that cleaue to shypes.

Barnacles.

Bromas.

A secrete.

The death of our men.

Colde may be better abiden then heate.

At theyr commyng home, the keeles of theyr shippes were marueylously ouergrown with certayne shelles of two inches length and more, as thicke as they coulde stande, and of suche byggenesse that a man may put his thumme in the mouches of them. They certaynely affirme that in these there groweth a certayne slimy substance, whiche at the length shyping out of the shell and falling in the sea, becommeth those foules which we cal Barnacles. The lyke shelles haue been seene in shippes returnyng from *Iselände*, but these shels were not past halfe an inche in length. Of the other that came from *Guinea*, I saw the *Pyrmole* lying in the Docke, and in maner couered with the sayd shelles, which in my iudgement shoulde greatly hynder her saylyng. Theyr shippes were also in many places eaten with the wormes called *Bromas* or *Bissas*, whereof mention is made in the *Decades*. These creepe betwene the planks, whiche they eate through in many places.

Among other thynges that chaunced to them in this biage, this is worthy to be noted, that whereas they sayled thither in seuen weekes, they coulde returne in no lesse space then twentie weekes. The cause whereof they say to be this: That about the coast of *Cabo Verde*, the wind is euer at the East, by reason whereof they were enforced to sayle farre out of theyr course into the mayne Ocean, to fynde the wynde at the West to bying them home. There died of our men at this last biage about twentie and foure, whereof many died at theyr returne into the clyme of the colde regions, as betwene the *Ilandes* of *Soria* and *Englande*. They brought with them certayne blacke slaues, wherof some were tall and strong men, & coulde well agree with our meates and drynkes. The colde and moyst ayre doth somewhat offend them. Yet doubtelesse men that are borne in hotte regions, may better abyde cold, then men that are borne in colde regions may abyde heate, forasmuche as vehement heate resoluech the radicall moisture of mens bodies, as colde constraineth and preserueth the same.

This is also to be considered as a secrete woork of nature, that throughout all *Affricke* vnder the Equinoctiall line, and

## The second vyage to Guinea.

353

neare about the same, on both sydes, the regions are extreme hotte, and the people very blacke. Whereas contrarily such regions of the West Indies as are vnder the same lyne, are very temperate, and the people neyther blacke, nor with curle and shorte wooll on theyr heades, as haue they of *Affricke*, but of the colour of an *Olyue*, with long and blacke heare on their heades: the cause of whiche varietie is declared in dyuers places in the *Decades*.

It is also woorthie to be noted that some of them that were at this vyage tolde me: That is, that they ouerooke the course of the Sunne, so that they had it North from them at noone, the xiiii. day of Marche. And to haue sayde thus muche of these vyages, it may suffice.

### Of the Dooues of the Ilande of Madera.



*Adamastus* wyrteth, that before the *Portugals* came to this Ilande, it was ouergrown with trees, and inhabited, yet were there many beastes, and great plentie of Dooues, which were bitterly without feare of men, bycause they had neuer seene any men before, nor yet were accustomed to be put in feare: insomuche that they stode still whyle snares were put about theyr neckes with long roddes and poles: the whiche thyng he sayeth, he hath also seene in other *Ilandes*. There are many ryche men in this Ilande, and great aboundance of fleshe, bycause the whole Ilande is in maner one gardeyne.

33. i.

Of

## The second vyage to Guinea.

Of the Ilande of Saint Thomas, vnder  
the Equinoctiall line.



The chiefeſt occupation and liuing of the inhabitants of this Ilande, is the making of ſuger, which they ſell peereſly to the ſhippes that come for it out of Spaine and Portugale, laden with buttes of meale and flour, alſo wyne, oyle, cheeſe, lether, ſwoordes, cuppes of glaſſe, beades, certeyne ſcaruels of the fine white earth called *Porcellana*, of the whiche are made the earthen diſhes of the wooke of *Maiolica*. And if it were not that ſuche victualles and prouiſions were brought them out of Spaine and Portugale, the whyte merchantes which dwell in that Ilande (parteynyng to the dominion of the kyng of Portugale) ſhould not be able to lyue there, for ſo much as they are not accuſtomed to eate ſuch meates as doe the *Ethiopians* or *Negros*. And therefore the Portugales which inhabite this Ilande, haue certayne blacke ſlaues of *Guinea*, *Benin*, and *Manicongo*, whiche they ſet to tyll and labour the grounde, and make ſuger. Among theſe whyte inhabitants, there are many riche men, which haue 150. or 200. and ſome 300. blacke ſlaues of men and women, to tyll the grounde, and doe other laborious woozkes. This Ilande was diſcouered a hundred peeres ſince, by the nauigations of the Portugales, and was vnknewen to the olde writers. It lyeth in the great gulfe of *Affrike*, in the 30. degree of longitude from the Weſt to the Eaſt, & is in maner rounde. It is of largeneſſe from ſyde to ſyde, 17. Italian myles, (that is to ſay) one degree. The horizonall line of the Ilande paſſeth by the two poles, *Artike*, and *Antartike*, and hath euer the day equall with the nyght, without any ſenſible difference, whether the Sunne be in *Cancer* or in *Capricorne*. The ſtarre of the pole *Artike*, is there inuiſible: but the wardens are ſeene ſomewhat to moue about: & the ſtarres called the *Croſſe* are ſeene very hygh. Of this Ilande, with the other landes and Ilandes lying betweene Portugale and the ſame, a certeyne pplotte of Portugale hath written a goodly vyage to *Conte Rimondo*.

J. J. R. S.

*The Nauigation and vyages of*  
*Lewes Vertomannus*, Gentelman of the citie of  
Rome, to the regions of Arabia, Egypte, Perſia,  
Syria, Ethiopia, and Eaſt India, both within  
and without the ryuer of *Ganges*. &c. In the  
peere of our Lorde. 1503. Conteynyng  
many notable and ſtraunge thinges,  
both hystoricall and  
naturall.

*Translated out of Latine into*  
*Englyſhe*, by *Richarde*  
*Eden*.

In the peere of our Lorde. 1576.



334.



The Preface of the  
Authour.



Here haue ben many before me, who to know the miracles of the worlde, haue with diligent studie read dyuers Authours which haue wrytten of such thinges. But other giuing more credite to the lyuely voyce, haue been more desirous to know the same by relation of such as haue traueyled in those countreys, & seene such thinges whereof they make relation, for that in many bookes, gathered of vncertaine auctoritie, are myxt false thinges with true. Other there are so greatly desirous to know the trueth of these thinges, that they can in no wyse be satisfied, vntill by theyr owne experience they haue founde the trueth, by voyages and peregrinations into straunge countreys and people, to know theyr maners, fashions, and customes, with dyuers thinges there to be seene: wherein, the only readyng of bookes, could not satysfie their thirst of suche knowledge, but rather increased the same, in so much that they feared not with losse of goods and daunger of lyfe to attempte great vyages to dyuers countreys, with witness of theyr eyes to see that they so greatly desired to knowe. The whiche thyng among other chaunced vnto me also. For as often as in the bookes of hystories and Cosmographie, I read of such marueylous thinges whereof they make mention (especially of thinges in the East partes of the worlde) there was nothyng that coulde pacifie my vnquiet mynde, vntill I had with myne eyes seene the trueth thereof. I knowe that some there are indued with hygh knowledge, mountyng vnto the heauens, whiche will contempne these our wrytinges, as base and humble, bycause we doe not here, after their maner, with high and subtile inquisition intreate of the motions and dispositions of the starres, and gyue reason of theyr woorkyng on the earth, with their motions, retrogradations, directions, mutations, epicicles, reuolutions, inclinations, diuinations, reflexions, and

and suche other partepnyng to the science of Astrologie: which certepnely we doe not condempne, but greatly prayse. But measuring vs with our owne foote, we will leaue that heauie burden of heauen to the strong shoulders of Atlas and Hercules: and only creppyng vppon the earth, in our owne person beholde the situations of landes and regions, with the maners and customes of men, and variable fourmes, shapes, natures, and proprieties of beastes, frutes, and trees, especially suche as are among the *Arabians, Persians, Indians, and Ethiopians*. And whereas in the searchyng of these thinges, we haue (thanked be God) satisfied our desire, we thinke neuerthelesse that we haue done little, excepte we should communicate to other, such thinges as we haue seene and had experience of, that they lykwys by the readyng thereof, may take pleasure, for whose sakes we haue wrytten this long and dangerous discourse, of thinges which we haue seene in dyuers regions and sectes of men, desirynge nothyng more then that the trueth may be knowen to them that desyre the same.

But what incommodities and troubles chaunced vnto me in these viages, as hunger, thirst, colde, heate, warres, captiuitie, terrours, and dyuers other suche daungers, I will declare by the way in theyr due places.

The first Chapter, of the nauigation from  
Venice to Alexandria  
in Egypte.



If any man shall demaunde of me the cause of this my vyage, certeynely I can shewe no better reason then is the ardent desire of knowledge, which hath moued many other to see the worlde and miracles of God therein. And forasmuch as other knowne partes of the worlde, haue heretofore ben sufficient-ly traueyled of other, I was determyned to write and describe suche partes as here before hane not been sufficiently knowen: and therefore with the grace of God, and calling vppon his holy name to prosper our enterpryse, departyng from Venice with prosperous wyndes, in fewe dayes we arryued at the citie of Alexandria in Egypte: where the desyre we had to knowe thinges moze straunge and further of, would not permit vs to tarrie long. And therefore departyng from thence, and saylyng by the ryuer of Nilus, we came to the citie of new Babylon, commonly called *Cayrus* or *Alcayr*.

The same was  
also called  
Memphis in  
tyme past.

Of the citie named Babylon, or Alcayr,  
a citie of Nilus in Egypt. Cap. 2.



When we arryued there, I marueyled moze then I am able to say: yet when I approached so neare the citie that I myght wel see into it, it seemed to me much inferior to the reporte and fame that was thereof: for the greatnesse thereof, seemed nothyng agreeable to the bylde, and appeared no moze in circuite then the citie of Rome, although muche more peopled, and better inhabited. But the large fieldes of the suburbs haue deceyued many, beyng disperfed with in maner innumerable villages, whiche some haue thought to haue been parte

part of the citie, whiche is nothyng so. For those billages and disperfed houses, are two or thre myles from the citie, and round about it on euery syde. Neyther is it here needefull to spende muche tyme in declaring of theyr maners, or religion, forasmuch as it is well knowen, that all the inhabitantes of those regions are Mahumetans, and Mamalukes, whiche are suche Christians as haue forsaken theyr sayth, to serue the Mahumetans and Turkes: Although commonly they that serued the Soltan of Babylon in tyme past, before the Soltan was overcome by the Turke, were called *Mamalucki*, as they that serue the Turke, are called *Lenetzari*. But these Mamaluke Mahumetans, are subiecte to the Soltan of Syria.

Mamalukes,  
Mahumetans.

Of the cities of Berynto, Tripoli,  
and Antioch. Cap. 3.



The riches, fayrenesse, and magnificence of Babylon afore sayde, and the straunge souldiers Mamalukes, as things knowen, we will now pretermite. Therefore departyng from Babylon, and returnyng to Alexandria, where we agayne entered into our sea, we came to Berynto, a citie on the sea coast of Syria Phoenicia, Syria Phoenicia, where we spent many dayes. This is inhabited of Mahumetans, and plentiful of all thinges. The sea beatech on the walles of the towne: it is not compassed with walles, but on the West syde towarde the sea. Here founde we nothyng memorabile, but only an olde place ruinate, where they say that Sainet George deliuered the kynges daughter from a cruell Dragon, whiche he slue, and restored her to her father. Departyng from hence, we sayled to Tripoli. This is a citie of Syria, Eastwarde from Berynto two dayes saylyng. The inhabitantes are subiecte to the Lieutenant or gouernour of Syria, and are Mahumetans. The soyle is very fertile, and for the great trafique of merchandises, incredibly aboundeth with all thinges. Departyng from thence, we came to the citie Comagen of Syria, commonly called Alepo, and named of our men Antioch.

Sainet George  
and the Dragon.

Tripoli.

Alepo or  
Antioch.

It is a goodly cite, situate vnder the mount *Taurus*, and is subiecte to the Lieutenant or Soltan of Babilon. There be the scales or ladders (for so they call them) of the Turkes and Syrians, for it is neare the mount of *Olympus*. It is a famous marte towne of the *Azamians* and *Persians*. The *Azamians*, are people of *Mesopotamia*, neare vnto the *Persians*, & of the religion of *Pharisees*. From thence, is the iourney to the Turkes and Syrians, and especially of them that come from the part of *Mesopotamia*, named *Azamia*.

Of the cities of Aman and Menin. Cap. 4.



Departing from thence, we came to *Damasco*, in ten dayes iourney. But before you come there, in the myd way, is a cite named *Aman*, where is great aboundaunce of gossampine or cotton wooll, and all maner of pleasant fruites. Going a little from *Damasco*, the space of sixe myles, is a cite named *Menin*, situate on the declining of a mountayne. It is inhabited of Christians of the Grecke profession, who also obeye to the gouernour of *Damasco*. There are seene two fayre Temples, which (as the inhabitantes repoynt) were builded by *Helene*, the mother of the Emperour *Constantine*. There are all kyndes of fruites, and goodly Grapes, and Gardens watered with continuall springes. Departing from thence, we came to the cite of *Damasco*.

*Damasco.*

Sainct Helene  
the mother of  
the Emperour.

OF

Of the cite of Damasco.  
Chap. 5.



It is in maner incredible, and passeth all beleefe, to thinke howe fayre the cite of *Damasco* is, and how fertile is the soyle. And therefore allured by the marueilous beaurie of the cite, I remayned there many dayes, that learning theyr language, I myght knowe the maners of the people. The inhabitants are *Mahumetans* and *Mamalukes*, with also many Christians, *Christians* lyping after the maner of the Grekes. By the way, it shall *Grekes* not be from my purpose to speake of theyr *Hexarchatus*: the whiche (as we haue sayde) is subiect to the Lieutenant, viceroye, or gouernour of *Syria*, whiche some call *Sorya*. There is a very stronge fortresse or Castell, whiche a certayne *Ethruscan*, borne in the cite of *Florence*, buylded at his owne charges, while he was there y<sup>e</sup> chiefe *Hexarchatus* or gouernour, as appeareth by the flower of a *Lilie* there grauen in marble, being the armes of the cite of *Florence*. The cite is compassed with a deepe fosse or ditch, with foure goodly high towres. They passe the dyche with a hangyng hydye, whiche is lyfted vp or lette downe at theyr pleasure. There is all kynde of great artillerie and munition, with also a garde of fyftie *Mamalukes*, whiche dayly assyste the gouernour or captayne of the castell, and receyue theyr stipende of the gouernour or viceroye of *Syria*. Fortune seemed to geue the *Hexarchatus* *The Soltan of Syria*, or principate to the sayde *Florentine*, whiche we wyll declare as we haue hearde of th inhabitants. They saye that popson was once geuen to the Soltan of *Syria*: and when he sought for remedie, he chaunced to be healed by the sayde *Florentine*, whiche was one of the companye of the *Mamalukes*. After whiche good fortune, he grew dayely in fauoure with the sayde Prince, who for rewarde gaue hym that cite: where also

also the sayde Florentine buydded a Castell, and dyed : whom to this daye the Citifens honour for a sainte, for sayng the lyfe of theyr prince : after whose death, the gouernment returned to the Syrians . They saye furthermoze that the Soltan is well beloued of his lordes and princes, for that he easely graunteth them principates and gouernementes : yet with condition to paye peereley many thousandes of those peeces of gold which they call *Saraphos* . They that denye to paye the summe agreed of, are in daunger of imminent death . Of the chiefe noble men or gouernoures .x. or .xii. euer assiste the Prince . And when it pleaseth hym to extorte a certayne summe of golde of his noble men or merchautes (for they vse great tyrannye and oppression by the iniuries and theste of the *Mamalukes* agaynst the *Mahumetans*) the Prince gcueth two letters to the captaine of the Castell . In the one is contayned, that with an oration he inuite to the Castell suche as pleaseth hym . In the other is declared the mynde of the Prince, what he demaundeth of his subiectes . When the letters be read, withal expedition they accomplishe his commaundement, be it ryght or wrong, without respecte . This meanes the Prince inuented to extorte mony . Yet sometymes it commeth to passe, that the noble men are of suche strength, that they wyl not come when they are commaunded, knowyng that the tyrant wyl offer them violence. And therefore oftentymes when they knowe that the captayne of the Castell wyl call them, they flee into the dominions of the Turke . This haue we geathered as touchyng theyr maners, we haue also obserued, that the watchemen in the towres, do not geue warnyng to the garde with lyuely voyce, but with drummes, the one answeryng the other by course . But if any of the watchmen be so sleepe, that in the moment of an houre he aunswaie not to the sounde of the watche, he is immediately committed to prison for one whole yeere.

Of

Of suche thynges as are seene in the  
citic of *Damasco*. Cap. 6.



After that I haue declared the maners of the Princes of *Damasco*, it seemeth agreeable to speake of some suche thynges as I haue seene there. And therefore to speake fyrst of the excellencie and beaultie of the citie, it is certaynely marueylously wel peopled, and greatly frequented, and also marueylously ryche. It is of goodly buildyng, and exceedeth in abundance and fruitfulness of all thynges, and especiallye of all kynde of victuals, flesh, corne, and frutes, as freshe damelisme grapes all the whole yeere : also *Pomegranets*, *Oranges*, *Lymons*, and excellent *Dyue trees*. *Lykewyse* *Roses*, both white and red, the fayrest that euer I sawe : and all kyndes of sweete apples, yet pearces and peaches very vnfaury. The cause wherof, they say to be to much moysture . A goodly and cleare riuer runneth about the citie : & therfore in maner in euery house are seene fountaynes of curious worke embossed and grauen. Theyr houses outwardly are not very beautifull, but inwardly marueylously adourned with variable woookes of the stone called *Ophis*, or serpentine *Parble*. Within the towne are many temples or churches, which they call *Moscheas*. But that which is most beautifull of all other, is buydded after the maner of *Saint Peters church* in *Rome*, if you respect the greatnesse, exceptyng this, that in the myddle is no rooffe or couerture, but is all open : but about the rest of the temple, it is altogether baulted . There they obserue religiously the bodye of the holy *Prophet Zacharie* . The temple hath also foure great double gates of metal, very fayre, and many goodly fountaynes within it . There are yet seene the ruins of many decayed houses, which were once inhabited by the *Christians*. Those houses they call *Canonicas*, and are of wooke both carued and imbossed.

Theyr church.

The bodye of the Prophet Zacharias.

There

A strange manner to demaund a subside.

Lewes Vertomannus

There is also to be seene the place where (as they say) our saul-  
our Chyist spake to Sainct Paule these wordes, Pau'e, Paule,  
why doest thou persecute me. &c. This place is without the ci-  
tie about a myle.

There are buried the Christians that die in the citie. There  
is seene also the Tower in whiche Sainct Paule was commit-  
ted to pryson, and iopneth to the wall of the citie. But that place  
of the Tower where Paule was brought forth by the Angell,  
the *Mahumetans* do not attempt to close vp: Saying, that yf it  
be closed ouer nyght, they fynde it open agayne in the morning.  
I saw also there, those houses in the whiche (as they say) Cain  
slue his brother Abel. These are on the other part of the citie  
a myle of, in a certayne valley, yet on the syde of a hyll. But let  
vs nowe returne to the stranger Solgiers, which they call *Ma-  
maluchos*, and to speake somewhat howe licenciously they lyue  
in that citie.

Of the Mamelukes of Damasco, Cap. 7.



The *Mamelukes* therefore, are that kynde of  
men, which haue forsaken our fapth, and as  
slaves are bought by the gouernour of Syria.  
They are very actiue, & brought vp both in  
learnynge and warlike discipline, vntill they  
come to great perfection. As wel the litle  
as y great, without respect, receiue stipend  
of the gouernour: which for every moneth amounteth to fyve of  
those peeces of gold which they call *Saraphos*, besyde the meate  
and drynke of them selues and theyr seruantes, and also prouisi-  
on for theyr horses. And the more valiaunt they be, & of greater  
actiuitie, they are hyred for the greater wages. They walke not  
in the citie but by two or thre together, for it is counted dis-  
honour for any of them to walke without a companion. And if by  
the waye they chaunce to meete with two or thre women (for  
they lay wayte to tarry for them about suche houses whyther  
they know the women resorte) lycence is graunted them, as they  
by chaunce fyrst meete with them, to byng them into certayne  
tauerns, where they abuse them. When the *Mamelukes* attempt

to descouer theyr faces (for they go with theyr faces couered) they  
strive with them because they wyl not be known. But  
when the *Mamelukes* persyste wantonly to discouer them, they  
saye thus vnto them, Is it not enough for you that you haue  
abused our bodies as pleasest you, but that you wyl also discouer  
our faces? Then the *Mamelukes* suffer them to departe. But  
sometyme it chaunceth, that when they thynke to prostitute the  
daughter of some gentlemen or noble men, they committe the  
facte with theyr owne wyues: whiche thynge chaunced whylest  
I was there. The women beautifie and garnishe them selues  
as muche as any. They vse sylken apparell, and couer them  
with cloth of golampine, in maner as fyne as sylke. They weare  
white buskyns, and shooes of red or purple coloure. They  
garnyshe theyr heades with many iewelless and earynges, and  
weare rynges and brasletttes. They mary as often as  
them lysteth: for when they are weary of theyr fyrst maryage,  
they go to the chiefe preste of their religion (whom they call  
*Cady*) and make request to hym to be diuorced from theyr fyrste  
maryage. This diuorcement in theyr language is called *Tala-  
care*: whiche graunted by the hygh Priest or Bysshop, they be-  
gyn newe maryages. The lyke lybertie is also graunted to  
the husbannes. Some thynke that the *Mahumetans* haue fyue  
or fyve wyues togeather, which I haue not obserued: but  
as farre as I coulde perceiue they haue but two or thre.  
They eate openly, specially in the martes or fayres, and there  
dresse they all theyr meates. They eate horses, Cammelles,  
Busses, Gotes, and suche other beastes. They haue great a-  
bundance of freshe cheese. They that sell mylke, dyue about  
with them xl. or .l. Gotes, whiche they byng into the houses of  
them that wyl bye mylke, euen by into theyr chambers, al-  
though they be thre roffes hygh, and there mylke them, to haue  
it freshe and newe. These Gotes haue theyr eares a spanne  
long, many hoberes or pappes, and are very fruitefull: There  
is great abundance of muskeromes, for sometymes there are  
seene .xx. or .xxx. Cammelles laden with muskeromes, and yet  
in the space of thre dayes they are all solde. They are  
brought from the mountaynes of Armenia, and from Asia the  
lesse, whiche is now called *Turchia* or *Natolia*, or *Anatolia*.

The

The women of  
Damasco.

Change of  
husbannes and  
wyues.

The *Mahumetans*  
wyues.

Gotes mylke.

Muskeromes.  
Asia the lesse  
nowe named  
Natolia or  
Turchia.

The place of  
the conuersion  
of Sainct  
Paule.

The pryson of  
Sainct Paule.

The place wher  
Cain slue Abel.

The *Mama-  
lukes* wages.

Howe the *Ma-  
malukes* abuse  
women.



The *Mahumetans* vse long vestures and loose, both of sylke and cloth. The most part vse hose of gossampine cloth, and whyte shooes. When any of the *Mahumetans* by chaunce meeteth with any of the *Mamalukes*, although the *Mahumetan* be the woorthyer person, yet geueth he place and reuerence to the *Mamaluke*, who otherwyle woulde geue hym the Bastonado, and beate hym with a staffe. The *Christians* also keepe there many ware houses of merchaundies, where they haue dyuers sortes of sylkes and veluet: but the *Christians* are there euyl entreated of the *Mahumetans*.

Christians of  
Damasco.

The iorney from Damasco to Mecha, and of the maners of the Arabians. Chap. 8.



After that I haue largely spoken of Damasco, I wyl proceede to the rest of my vyage. Therfore in the yeere of our lorde. 1503, the eight daye of the moneth of Apryll, when I had hyred certayne Cammelles (which they call *Carauanas*) to go to Mecha, and beyng then ignozant of the customes and maners of them in whose compayne I shoulde go, I entred familiaritie and frendshyppe with a certayne captayne *Mamaluke*, of them that had forsaken our fayth, with whom beyng agreed of the price, he prepared me apparell lyke vnto that whiche the *Mamalukes* vse to weare, and geuyng me also a good horse, accompanied me with the other *Mamalukes*. This (as I haue sayde) I obtayned with great cost, and many gyftes whiche I gaue hym. Thus enterpyng to the iorney, after the space of thre dayes, we came to a certayne place named *Mezaris*, where we remayned thre dayes, that the merchautes which were in our company myght prouide thynges necessarie, as specially Camels, and dyuers other thynges. There is a certayne Prince whom they cal *Zambe*, of great power in the countrey of Arabia: he had thre brethren and foure chyldren. He noyseth fourtie thousand horses, ten thousand mares, & foure thousand Camels.

Carauana, a  
compayne of  
Cameles.

*Mamaluchi*  
renegadi.

*Mezaris*.

The prince  
*Zambe* in  
Arabia.

The

The countrey where he keepeth the hearbes of these beastes, is large, of two dayes iorney. This Prince *Zambe*, is of so great power, that he keepeth warre with the Soltan of Babylon, the gouernour of Damasco, and the prince of Ierusalem al at once. In the tyme of haruest and geatheryng offruites, he is geuen wholly to praye and robbing, and with great subtiltie deceyueth the *Arabians*: for when they thynke hym to be a myle or two off, he is with them sodenly betymes in the moynyng: and inuadyng theyr landes, carryeth away theyr frutes, Wheate, and Barlye, euen as he fyndeth it in the sackes: and so lyueth continually day and nyght with suche incursions. When his Hares be weered with continuall runnyng, he resteth a whyle: and to refreshe them, geueth them Camelles mylke to dlynke, to coole them after theyr great labour. Those Hares are of such maruepulous swyftnesse, that when I presently sawe them, they seemed rather to flee then to runne. Note also that these *Arabians* ryde on horses only couered with certayne clothes or matres, and weare none other vesture then only an inwarde coate, or peticoate: for weapon, they vse a certayne long Dart of Reedes, of the length of ten or twelue cubites, poynted with Iron (after the maner of Iauelyns) and frynged with sylke. When they attempt any incursions, they marche in suche order, that they seeme to go in troupes: they are of despicable and litle stature, and of coloure betweene yealowe and blacke, which some call *Oliuastro*. They haue the voyces of women, and the heare of theyr head long and blacke, and layde out at large. They are of greater multitude then a man woulde beleue, and are among them selues at continuall stryfe and warre. They inhabit the mountaynes, and haue certayne tymes appoynted to robberye: for this purpose they obserue especially the tyme, when they are certayne of the passage of the Pilgrims and other that iorney that way to Mecha. then lyke theenes they lye in the way and robbe them. When they make these theeuish inuasions, they byng with them theyr wyues, chyldren, families, and all the goodes they haue. Theyr houses they put vpon the Camelles, for other houses haue they none, but lyue onely in tentes and pauplyons as do our Souldiers.

The Prince of  
Ierusalem.

The Prince a  
theese.

Hares.

The Arabians  
lyue by robberye.

Houses borne  
on Camels  
backs.  
Tentes and pauplyons.

Suche

Suche tabernacles are made of blacke wooll, and that rough and sylthy. But to retorne to our viage. The eleuenth day of April, departed from *Mezaris* a company of Camels (which companie they call the *Carauana*) to the number of .xxxv. thousand, with fourtie thousand men. But we were no more then threescore persons, of whom the *Mamalukes* had taken the charge to gupde and garde vs, and the *Carauana* of our companie, whiche the *Mamalukes* diuided into three partes, as some in the fronte, other in the myddest of the army, and other in a wyng after the maner of a halfe Doone, inclosyng the whole armie: for in this order march the peregrines which iorney in these regions, as hereafter we wyll further declare. But you shall fyrst vnderstand that *Damasco* is from *Mecha* fourtie dayes and fourtie nyghtes iorney. Departyng therefore from *Mezaris*, we continued our iorney that day, vntyll the .xxii. houre of the day. Then our Captayne and guide *Agmirus*, after he had geuen the watch woorde and signe, commaunded that euerye man shoulde rest and remaine in the place where the signe shoulde be geuen them. Therefore as soone as they hearde the signe by the sound of a Trumpet, they stayed, and after they had vnburdened theyr Camels, spent there two houres to victual them selues and theyr beastes: then the Captayne geuyng a newe signe, chargyng theyr Camelles agayne, they departed speedily from thence. Euery Camell hath at one feedyng fyue Barly loaves, rawe and not baked, as bygge as a Pomegranate. Takyng Horses, they continued that iorney the daye and nyght folowynge, vntyll .xxii. houres of the day, and at that houre they obserue the order whiche we haue spoken of herebefore. Euery eyght daye they drawe water by dyggyng the grounde or lande: by the way neuerthelesse somewhere are founde Welles and Serternes. Also euery eyght daye, they rest theyr Camelles two dayes to recouer theyr strength. The Camelles are laden with incredible Burdens, and double charge: that is to meane, the burden of two great Pules. They drynke but once in thre dayes.

This for feare of the Arabians.

From Damasco to Mecha.

Perhaps with the sounde of a Horney Trumpet.

Water.

The Burden of the Camelles.

OF

Of the strength and valiantnesse of the Mamalukes. Cap.9.



When they tary and rest them at the waters aforesayde, they are euer enforced to conflict with a great multitude of the Arabians: but the battayle is for the most parte without bloodshed. For although we haue often tymes fought with them, yet was there onely one man slayne on our parte: for these Arabians are so weake and feeble, that threecore Mamalukes, haue often put to the worst fyfte thousande Arabians. For these feeble Arabians, whiche are called *Pagani*, are not in strength or force of armes to be compared to the Mamalukes, of whose actiuitie I haue seene great experience: among the whiche this is one. A certayne Mamaluke layde an Apple vppon the head of his seruant, & at the distance of about .xii. or .xiii. pases, stroke it of from his head. I sawe lykewys another, who ryding on a saddled horse with full course (for they vse saddles as we doe) tooke of the saddle from the horse styll runnyng: and for a space bearyng it on his head, put it agayne on the horse, styll continuing his full course.

The feeblenesse of the Arabians. Pagans.

The actiuitie of the Mamalukes.

Of the cities of Sodoma and Gomorra. Cap.10.



Assyng the iourney of twelue dayes, we came to the playne or valley of Sodoma and Gomorra, where we founde it to be true that is written in holy scripture: for there yet remaine the ruynes of the destroyed citie, as witnesse of Gods wrath. We may affyrme that there are thre cities, and eche of them situate on the declining of thre hylls: and the ruines doe appeare about the heyghe of thre or foure cubites. There is yet seene, I wotte neare what, lyke blood, or rather

Aaa.i.

lyke

lyke redde waxe myrte with earth. It is easie to beleue that those men were infected with most horrible vices, as testifieth the baren, dyre, filthie, and unholsome region, bitterly without water. Those people were once fedde with *Manna*: but when they abused the gyft of God, they were soze plagued. Departing twentie myles from these cities, about thirtie of our company perished for lacke of water, and dyuers other were overwhelmed with sande. Goyng somewhat further forwarde, we founde a litle mountayne, at the foote whereof we founde water, and therefore made our abode there. The day folowynge early in the mornynge, came vnto vs. xliiii. thousande Arabians, askyng money for the water which we had taken. We answered that we would paye nothyng, bycause it was gyuen vs by the goodnesse of God. Immediately we came to hand strokes. We geatherynge our selues togeather on the sayde mountayne, as in the safest place, vsed our Camelles in the steede of a bulwarke, and placed the merchautes in the myddest of the army (that is) in the myddest of the Camelles, whyle we fought manfully on euery syde. The battayle continued so long, that water fayled both vs and our enemies in the space of two dayes. The Arabians compassed about the mountayne, cryng and threatenyng that they would breake in among the Camelles: at the length to make an ende of the conflicte, our Captayne assembling the merchautes, commaunded a thousande and two hundred peeces of golde to be giuen to the Arabians: who when they had receyued the money, sayde that the summe of ten thousande peeces of golde should not satisfie them for the water which we had drawen. Whereby we perceyued that they began further to quarell with vs, and to demaunde some other thing then money. Wherevpon incontinent our Captayne gaue commaundement, that whosoever in all our companie were able to beare armes, should not mount vppon the Camelles, but should with all expedition prepare them selues to fyght. The day folowynge in the mornynge, sendyng the Camelles before, and inclosyng our army, beyng about thre hundred in number, we met with the enemies, and gaue the onfet. In this conflicte, we lost only a man and a woman, and had none other damage: we slue of the Arabians a thousande and fyue hundred.

Manna, turned in bitter  
plagues.

Lacke of water.

Water deere bought.  
So did Abraham with the  
Philistians.

So doeth the  
Turke his army.

Byed. Whereof you neede not marueyle, if you consyder that they are unarmed, and weare only a thynne looie vesture, and are besyde almost naked: theyr hoxles also beyng as euyl furnished, and without saddles, or other furniture.

Of a mountayne inhabited with Iewes,  
and of the cite of Medinathalhabi,  
where Mahumet was buried.

Cap. II.



In the space of eyght dayes, we came to a mountayne whiche conteyneth in circuite ten or twelue myles. This is inhabited with Iewes, to the number of fyue thousande, or thereabout. They are of very litle stature, as of the hepyght of fyue or sixe spannes, and some muche lesse. They haue small boyces lyke women, and of blacke colour, yet some blacker then other: They feede of none other meate then Goates fleshe. They are circumcised, and deny not them selues to bee Iewes. If by chaunce any Mahumetan come into their handes, they slay him alyue. At the foote of the mountayne, we founde a certayne hole, out of the whiche flowed aboundaunce of water. By fyndyng this oportunitie, we laded sixtiene thousand Camels: which thynge greatly offended the Iewes. They wandred in that mountayne, scattered lyke wyld Goates or Whickettes, yet durst they not come downe, partly for feare, and partly for hatred agaynst the Mahumetans. Beneath the mountayne, are scene seven or eyght thorne trees, very sayre, and in them we founde a paype of Turcle Doves, which seemed to vs in maner a miracle, hauing before made so long tourneyes, and sawe neyther beast nor foule. Then proceedyng two dayes tourney, we came to a certayne cite named *Medinathalhabi*: foure myles from the sayd cite, we founde a well. Where the *Carauana* (that is, the whole hearde of the Camelles) rested.

Iewes Digs  
met.

The cite of  
*Medinathal-  
habi*.

Aaa ii.

And

And remainning here one day, we washed our selues, and chaunged our shertes, the more freshely to enter into the cite: it is well peopled, and conteyneth about thre hundred houses, the walles are lyke bulwarkes of earth, and the houses both of stone and bricke. The soile about the cite, is utterly barren, except that about two myles from the cite, are seene about fyftie palme trees that beare Dates. There, by a certayne garden, runneth a course of water fallng into a lower playne, where also passingers are accustomed to water theyr Camelles. And heere oportunitie now serueth to confute the opinion of them whiche thynke that the Arke or Coombe of wicked Mahumet in *Mechas*, to hang in the ayre, not bozne by with any thyng. As touchyng which thyng, I am utterly of an other opinion, and as firme this neyther to be true, nor to haue any lykenesse of trueth, as I presently behelde these thynges, and sawe the place where Mahumet is buried, in the sayde cite of *Medinathalabi*: for we tarped there thre dayes, to come to the true knowledge of all these thynges. When wee were desirous to enter into theyr Temple (which they call *Meschita*, and all other churches by the same name) we coulde not be suffered to enter, without a companion, little or great. They takyng vs by the hande, brought vs to the place where they saye Mahumet is buried.

The Coombe  
or Sepulchre  
of Mahumet.

Mahumet  
was not buried  
in *Mecha*.

Of the Temple or Chapell, and  
Sepulchre of Mahumet, and  
of his felowes.

Cap. 12.



As Temple is baulted, and is a hundred pases in length, and fourescore in breadth: the entry into it, is by two gates: from the sydes, it is couered with thre baultes, it is bozne up with iiii. hundred columnes or pillars of white bricke, there are seene hanging lampes about the number of. 3. thousande.

From

From the other part of the Temple in the first place of the *Meschita*, is seene a Tower of the circuite of fyue pases, baulted on euery syde, and couered with a cloth of silke, and is bozne by with a grate of copper curiously wrought, and distant from it two pases: and of them that goe thither, is seene as it were through a lattesse. Towarde the lefte hande, is the way to the Tower, and when you come thither, you must enter by a narrower gate. On euery side of those gates or doores, are seene many bookes in maner of a Librarie, on the one syde. xx. and on the other syde xxv. These contayne the filthie traditions and lyfe of Mahumet and his felowes: within the sayde gate, is seene a Sepulchre (that is) a digged place, where they say Mahumet is buried and his felowes, which are these, *Nabi*, *Bubacar*, *Othomar*, *Aumar*, *Nomothet*, and *Fatoma*: But Mahumet was theyr chiefe Captayne, and an Arabian bozne. *Hali*, was sonne in lawe to Mahumet, for he tooke to wyfe his daughter *Fatoma*. *Bubacar*, is he who they say was exalted to the dignitie of a chiefe counsellor and great gouernour, although he came not to the hygh degree of an Apostlie or prophet, as dyd Mahumet. *Othomar* and *Aumar*, were chiefe Captaynes of the army of Mahumet. Euery of these haue their proper bookes of theyr factes and traditons. And hereof proceedeth the great dissention and discorde of religion and maners among this kynde of filthie men, whyle some confirme one doctrine, and some an other, by reason of theyr diuers sectes of patrons, Doctours, and saintes, as they call them. By this meanes, are they marueylously diuided among them selues, and lyke beastes kyll them selues, for such quarelles of dyuers opinions, and all false. This also is the chiefe cause of warre betwene the *Sophie* of *Persia* and the great *Turke*, beyng neuertheless both Mahumetans, and lyue in mortall hatred one agaynst the other, for the mayntenaunce of theyr sectes, Saintes, and Apostles, whyle euery of them thynketh theyr owne to be best.

Mahumets  
Librarie.

This *Hali*, euer  
men that haue  
been in *Persia*,  
call *Mortus*  
*Hali*, that is,  
Saint *Hali*.  
Discorde and  
sectes of religi  
on among the  
Mahumet  
tans, *Turkes*,  
and *Persians*.

Such come,  
such gaffe.  
Not only as  
mong *Turkes*  
and *Persians*,  
but

12 J. to *Sodra* e. mor  
12 J. to *Madina*:

Aaa. iii.

OF

*Yorret* at *vill* 49  
*m. l. 3* *Moxt* - 49

*to Madina* to *28*  
*12*  
*to Madina* - 1001 400

Of the Secte of Mahumet.  
Cap. 13.



**N**ow will we speake of the maners and sect of Mahumet. Understande therefore, that in the highest part of the Towre aforesayd, is an open rounde place. Now shall you vnderstande what craite they used to deceyue our Carauana. The first euening that we came thither to see the Sepulchre of Ma-

humet, our Captaine sent for the chiefe priest of the Temple to come to him: and when he came, declared vnto him that the only cause of his coming thither, was to visite the Sepulchre and bodie of Nahi, by which word, is signified the Prophet Mahumet: and that he vnderstande that the price to be admitted to the sight of these mysteries, should be foure thousande Saraphes of golde. Also that he had no parentes, neyther brothers, sisters, kinsfolkes, chyldren, or wyues, neyther that he came thither to buye merchandises, as spices, or Baccar, or Nardus, or any manner of precious Jewelles: but only for very zeale of religion and saluation of his soule, and was therefore greatly desirous to see the bodie of the Prophet. To whom the priest of the Temple (they call them Side) with countenance lyke one that were distraight, made answer in this maner, Darest thou with those eyes with the which thou hast committed so many horrible sinnes, desyre to see him by whose sight God hath created heauen and earth: To whom agayne our Captaine answered thus, My Lorde, you haue sayde truly: neuerthelesse I pray you that I may fynde so much fauour with you, that I may see the Prophet: whom when I haue seene, I will immediately thrust out myne eyes. The Side answered, O Prince, I will open all thynges vnto thee. So it is, that no man can denye but that our Prophet dyed heere, who if he would myght haue dyed at Mecca: But to shewe in him selfe a token of humilitie, and thereby to gyue vs example to fol-

lowe

Which is the  
fame of Ma-  
humet.  
A great price  
for his mar-  
chandises.

Suche people  
fiche with.

My lorde bi-  
shop of Mecca

It seemeth that  
they know not  
where he was  
buried.

lowe him, was willing rather heere then elsewhere to de-  
parte out of this worlde, and was incontinent of Angelles <sup>The deuyll he</sup>  
borne into heauen, and there receyued as equall with them. <sup>was.</sup>  
Then our Captayne sayde to him, Where is Iesus Christus  
the sonne of Marie: To whom the Side answered, At the  
feete of Mahumet. Then sayde our Captayne agayne: It <sup>Christ at the</sup>  
sufficeth, it sufficeth, I will knowe no more. After this, <sup>feete of Ma-</sup>  
our Captayne coming out of the Temple, and turning <sup>humet.</sup>  
him to vs, sayd, See (I pray you) for what goodly stuffe I would  
haue payde thre thousande Saraphes of golde: The same  
daye at euening, at almost thre a clocke of the nyght, ten or  
twelue of the Elders of the secte of Mahumet entered into  
our Carauana, whiche remayned not passe a stone cast from the  
gate of the cite. These ranne hyther and thither, crying lyke  
madde men, with these wordes, Mahumet the messenger and  
Apostle of God, shall ryse agayne. O Prophet, O God, Ma- <sup>Mahumet shall</sup>  
humet shall ryse agayne, haue mercy on vs God. Our Cap- <sup>risse with</sup>  
tayne and we all rayled with this crye, tooke weapon with all <sup>Inda.</sup>  
expedition, suspecting that the Arabians were come to robbe  
our Carauana: We asked what was the cause of that exclama-  
tion, and what they cryed: for they cryed as doe the Christi-  
ans, when sodenly any marueylous thyng chaunceth. The  
Elders answered, Sawe you not the lyghtnyng whiche shone <sup>Falls miracles</sup>  
out of the Sepulchre of the Prophet Mahumet. Our Cap- <sup>to confirme</sup>  
tayne answered, that he sawe nothyng, and we also beyng de- <sup>false religion,</sup>  
maunded, answered in lyke maner. Then sayde one of the olde  
men, Are you slaues: That is to say, bought men: mean-  
nyng thereby Hamalukes. Then sayde our Captayne, We are  
indeede Hamalukes. Then agayne the olde man sayde, You Neophiti,  
my Lordes, can not see heauenly thynges, as beyng Neophi-  
ti, (that is) newly come to the fayth, and not yet conuincid  
in our religion. To this our Captayne answered agayne, <sup>Sieneressan-</sup>  
O you madde and insensate beastes, I had thought to haue gy- <sup>des possibi.</sup>  
uen you thre thousande pecces of golde, but now, O you  
dogges, and progenie of dogges, I will gyue you nothyng.  
It is therefore to bee vnderstande, that none other Cypriag  
came out of the Sepulchre, then a certayne flame which the  
priests caused to come out of the open place of the Towre spoken  
of

Asa.iii.

of



of here befoze, whereby they would haue deceived vs. And ther-  
foze our Captaine commaunded that thereafter none of vs should  
enter into the Temple. Of this also we haue most true experi-  
ence, and most certaynely assure you, that there is neyther I-  
ron or Steele, or the *Magnes* stone that should so make the coombe  
of Mahumet to hange in the ayre, as some haue falsely imagi-  
ned: neyther is there any mountayne nearer then foure myles:  
we remayned here thre dapes to refrethe our company. To  
this cite, victualles and all kynde of corne is brought from *A-*  
*rabia Felix*, and Babylon or *Alcayr*, and also from *Ethiope*, by  
the redde sea, whiche is from this cite but foure dapes iour-  
ney.

The iourney to Mecha.  
Cap. 14.



After that we were satisfied, or rather wea-  
ryed, with the filthynesse and lothelomenesse  
of the trumperyes, deceites, trifles, and hy-  
pocrites of the religion of Mahumet, we  
determined to goe forward on our iourney:  
and that by guiding of a pilot, who myght  
directe our course with the mariners bore  
or compasse, with also the carde of the sea, euen as is used in  
saylyng on the sea. And thus bendyng our iourney to the West,  
we founde a very fayre well or fountayne, from the which flowed  
great aboundance of water. The inhabitantes aspyme that  
Saint Marke the Euangelist was the aucthour of this foun-  
tayne by a miracle of God, when that region was in maner bur-  
ned with incredible drynesse. Here we and our bestes were  
satisfied with drynke. I may not here omit to speake of the sea  
of sande, and of the daungers thereof. This was founde of vs  
befoze we came to the mountayne of the Jewes. In this sea of  
sand we trauelled the iourney of thre dapes and nightes: this is  
a great hode plaine, all couered with white sande, in maner as  
small as floure: If by euyl fortune it so chaunce that anye  
trauayle

The fable that  
Mahumet's  
Coombe hange  
geth in the  
ayre.

Journey on  
the lande by  
carde and com-  
passe as on the  
sea.

The fountaine  
of Saint  
Marke the  
Euangelist.

The sea of  
sande.  
More fabu-  
lous.

3.5

trauaille that way southward, if in the meane time the wind come  
to the north, they are ouerwhelmed with sande. And although  
they shoulde haue prosperous wynde, yet are they so inuolued  
with sande, that they scatter out of the way, and can scarcely see  
the one the other .x. pases of. And therefore thynhabitans tra-  
uaylyng this way, are inclosed in cages of woodde, borne with  
Camels, and lyue in them, so passyng the iorney guided by  
pilots with maryners compasse and card, euen as on the sea, as  
we haue sayde. In this iorney also many perishe for thirst,  
and many for drynkyng to muche, when they fynde suche good  
waters. In these sandes is founde *Momia*, whiche is the fleshe  
of such men as are drowned in these sandes, and there dyed by  
the heate of the Sunne: So that those bodyes are preserued from  
putrifaction by the drynesse of the sand: and therefore that drye  
fleshe is esteemed medicinable. Albeit there is an other kynde of  
more pretious *Momia*, which is y dryed and embalmed bodies of  
kyniges and princes, whiche of long tyme haue been preserued  
drye without corruption. When the wynde bloweth from the  
northeast, the sand riseth, & is driuen against a certayne moun-  
tayne which is an arme of the mount *Sinai*. There we found cer-  
tayne pylers artificially wrought, whiche they call *Ianuan*. On  
the leste hande of the sayde mountayne, in the toppe or rydge  
thereof, is a denne, and the entrie into it, is by an Iron gate.  
Some sayne that in that place *Mahumet* lyued in contempla-  
tion. Here we heard a certayne horrible noyse and crye: for pas-  
syng the sayde mountayne, we were in so great daunger, that  
we thought neuer to haue escaped. Departyng therefore from  
the fountayne, we continued our iorney for the space of .x. dapes:  
And twyle in the way fought with fiftie thousande *Arabians*,  
and so at the length came to the cite of *Mecha*, where al thinges  
were troubled by reason of the warres betweene two brethren,  
contendyng whiche of them shoulde possesse the kyngedome of  
*Mecha*.

Momia.

Momia of  
kyniges bodies  
embalmed.

Mont Sinai.

The den where  
Mahumet li-  
ued in contem-  
plation.

10.8

Mecha,  
The kingdome  
of Mecha.

Of

Of the fourme and situation of the citie of  
Mecha: and why the Mahumetans  
resort thither .Cap .15.

Mecha, whi-  
che Abraham  
Girelius call-  
eth Mecca.



**N**owe the tyme requireth to speake some-  
what of the famous citie of *Mecha*, or *Mec-  
ca*, what it is, howe it is situate, and by  
whom it is gouerned . The citie is very  
saye and well inhabited, and contayneth  
in rounde fourme fyre thousande houses, as  
well buylded as ours, and some that cost  
three or foure thousande peeces of golde: it hath no walles.  
About two furlongs from the citie is a mount, where the way is  
cutte out, whiche leadeth to a playne beneath. It is on euery  
syde fortified with mountains, in the stead of walles or bulwarks,  
and hath foure entrees. The gouernour is a *Soltan*, and one of  
the foure brethren of the progenie of *Mahumet*, and is subiect  
to the *Soltan* of *Babylon*, of whom we haue spoken before: His  
other three brethren be at continuall warre with hym. The  
xviii. daie of *Maye*, we entred into the citie by the north syde:  
then by a declynynge way, we came into a playne. On the  
south syde are two mountaynes, the one very neere the other, di-  
stant onely by a litle balley, which is the way that leadeth to the  
gate of *Mecha*. On the east syde, is an open place betweene two  
mountaynes, lyke vnto a valley, and is the way to the moun-  
tayne where they sacrifice to the Patriarkes *Abraham* & *Isaac*.  
This mountayne is from the citie about .x. or .xli. myles, and of  
the heygth of three stones cast: it is of stone as harde as mar-  
ble, yet no marble. In the toppe of the mountaine, is a Temple  
or *Meschita*, made after their fashion, and hath three wayes to  
enter into it. At the foote of the mountayne are two cisterns,  
whiche conserue waters without corruption: of these, the one is  
referred to minister water to the Camels of the *Carauana* of  
*Babylon* or *Alcayr*, and the other, for them of *Damasco*. It  
is rayne water, and is deriued far of.

The Soltan of  
Mecha.

Sacrifice to  
Abraham and  
Isaac.

But to returne to speake of the citie: for as touchyng the maner  
of sacrifice which they vse at the foote of the mountayne, wee  
wyl speake hereafter. Entrynge therefore into the citie,  
wee founde there the *Carauana* of *Memphis*, or *Babylon*, which  
preuented vs eght dayes, and came not the waye that wee  
came. This *Carauana* conteyned thirtie score and foure thou-  
sande Camelles, and a hundred *Mamalukes* to guyde them.  
And here ought you to consider, that by the opinion of all men,  
this citie is greatly cursed of God, as appeareth by the great  
barrennesse thereof, for it is destitute of all maner of frutes  
and coyne. It is scorched with drynesse for lacke of water, and  
therefore the water is there growen to such ppyce, that you  
can not for twelue pence buye as muche water as wyl lase  
for your thurst for one day. Nowe therefore I wyl declare  
what prouision they haue for victuals. The most part is brought  
them from the citie of *Babylon*, otherwylse named *Memphis*,  
*Cayrus*, or *Alcayr*, a citie of the ryuer of *Nilus* in *Egypt*, as  
we haue sayde before, and is brought by the red sea (called  
*Mare Erythreum*) from a certayne port named *Gida*, distant  
from *Mecha* fourtie myles. Therest of theyr prouisions, is  
brought from *Arabia Felix* (that is) the happye or blessed  
*Arabia*: so named for the fruitfulness thereof, in respect of the  
other two *Arabias*, called *Petrea* & *Deserta*, that is, stonye and  
desart. They haue also muche coyne from *Ethyopia*. Here  
we found a marueylous number of straungers and peregrynes,  
or *pilgrims*: Of the whiche, some came from *Syria*, some  
from *Persia*, and other from both the East *Indias*, (that is  
to say both *India* within the ryuer of *Ganges*, and also the other  
*India* without the same ryuer. I neuer sawe in anye place  
greater abundaunce and frequentation of people, forasmuche  
as I could perceyue by tarryng there the space of .xx. dayes.  
These people resort thither for diuers causes, as some for mer-  
chandies, some to obserue theyr bowe of *pilgrimage*, and  
other to haue pardon for theyr sinnes: as touchyng the whiche  
we wyl speake moze hereafter.

Mecha curs-  
sed of god.

Water very  
deare.

The ryuer  
Nilus.

The red sea.

Arabia  
Felix,

Many pil-  
grimes and  
straungers as  
to Mecca.

Why so many  
nations resort  
to Mecca.

Of the merchandies of Mecha,  
Cap. 16.



From India the greater, which is both with-  
in & without the ryuer of Ganges, they haue  
pearles, precious stones, and plentie of  
spices: and especially from that citie of  
the greater India, which is named *Bangela*  
*la*, they haue muche gossampyne cloth and  
sylke. They haue also spices from *Ethio-*  
*pia*: and therefore we must needes confesse that this citie is a  
famous mart of many ryche thynges, whereof there is great  
plentie.

Of the Pardons or Indulgences of  
Mecha. Cap. 17.



The temple of  
Mecha.

Et vs now returne to speake of the pardons  
of pilgrims, for the which so many strange  
nations resort thither. In the myddest of  
the citie, is a Temple, in fashyon lyke vnto  
the Collossus of Rome, the *Amphitheatrum*  
I meane, lyke vnto a stage, yet not of mar-  
ble or helwed stones, but of burnt bryckes:  
For this temple, lyke vnto an *Amphitheatrum*, hath fourescore and  
ten, or an hundred gates, and is vaulted. The entrance, is by a  
discent of twelue staires or degrees on euery part: in the church  
porche, are solde only iewels and precious stones. In the entrie  
the gylded walles shyne on euery syde with incomparable splen-  
dour. In the lower part of the temple (that is vnder the vaulted  
places) is seene a marueylous multitude of men: For there are  
fyue or syxe thousand men that sell none other thyng then sweete  
opmentes, and especially a certayne *oposiferous* and most  
swete powder, wherewith dead bodyes are embalmed. And  
from hence, all maner of sweete saouours are carried in maner  
into the countreys of all the *Mabumetans*. It passeth all beleefe  
to thynke of the exceedyng sweetenesse of these saouours, farre sur-  
mounting

the shoppes of the Apothecaries. The .xxiii. daye of Maye,  
the pardones began to be graunted in the Temple, and in  
what maner we wyll nowe declare. The Temple in the myd-  
dest is open, without any inclosyng, and in the myddest also ther-  
of, is a Turret, of the largnesse of syxe pases in circuitie, and in-  
uolued or hanged with cloth or tapestry of sylke, and passeth  
not the heyghe of a man. They enter into the turret by a gate of  
syluer, and is on euery syde besette with beselles full of balme.  
On the day of Pentecost, licence is graunted to al men to se these  
thynges. The inhabitantes assure, that balme or balsame,  
to be parte of the treasure of the *Soltan* that is Lorde of *Mecha*.  
At euery vaulte of the turret, is fastened a rounde circle of Iron,  
lyke to the ryng of a doore. The .xxiii. day of Maye, a great  
multitude of people beganne early in the moornyng before day,  
seuen tymes to walke about the Turret, kyssyng euery corner  
thereof, oftentimes feelyng and handdelyng them. From  
this Turret, about tenne or twelue pases, is an other Turret,  
like a Chappell buyded after our maner. This hath thre or  
foure entres: in the myddest thereof is a well of threelcore and  
tenne cubites deepe: the water of this Well is infected with  
salt Peter or salniter. Epyght men are thereunto appoynted to  
draue water for all the people: and when a multitude of peo-  
ple haue seuen tymes gone rounde about the fyrst Turret, they  
come to this well: and touchyng the mouth or bym the re-  
of, they saye thus, Be it in the honour of God, God pardon me,  
and forgeue me my synnes. When these wordes are sayde,  
they that draue the water, powre thre buckettes of water on  
the headdes of euery one of them that stand neere about the well,  
and washe them all wette from the heade to the foote, al-  
though they be apparelled with sylke. Then the dooryng fooles  
dreame that they are cleane from all they synnes, and that their  
synnes are forgeuen them. They saye furthermore, that the  
fyrst Turret, wherof we haue spoken, was the fyrst house that  
euer *Abraham* buyded: and therefore, whyle they are yet all  
wetted of the sayd washyng, they go to the mountayne, where (as  
we haue sayde before) they are accustomed to sacrifice to *Abra-*  
*ham*,

A Turret in  
the Temple of  
Mecha.

A gate of syluer.

Balsame or  
balme.

A chappell with  
a well in it, in  
the Temple.

A strange  
baptisme for  
remission of  
synnes.

Good meaning  
sufficeth not.

The house of  
Abraham.  
Sacrifice to  
Abraham.

ham. And remaining there two daies, they make the said sacrifice to Abraham at the foote of the mountayne.

The maner of Sacrificyng at Mecha. Cap. 18.



Of suchlike as for the most parte, noble spirits are delpted with nouelties of great and straunge thynges, therefore to satisfie their expectation, I wyl describe theyr maner of sacrificyng. Therefore, when they intend to sacrifice, some of them kyll three sheepe, some foure, and some tenne: So that the butcherie sometyme so floweth with blood, that in one sacrifice are slayne aboue three thousande sheepe. They are slayne at the rpyng of the Summe, and shortly after are distributed to the poore for Gods sake: for I sawe there a great and confounded multitude of poore people, as to the number of .xxx. thousande. These make many and long dythes in the feeldes, where they keepe fyre with Camels doong, and rost or seeth the fleshe that is geuen them, and eate it euen there. I beleue that these poore people come thither rather for hunger then for deuotion: which I thinke by this coniectur, that great abundance of cucumbers are brought thither from *Arabia Felix*, whiche they eate, casting away the parynges without their houses or tabernacles, where a multitude of the sayde poore people geather them euen out of the myre and sande, and eate them, and are so greedie of these parynges, that they fyght who may geather most. The daye folowing, their *Cadi* (which are in place with them as with vs the preachers of gods worde) ascended into a hygh mountayne, to preache to the people that remayned beneath: and preached to them in theyr language the space of an houre. The summe of his sermon was, that with teares they shoulde bewaple theyr sinnes, and beate their brestes, with sighes and lamentation. And the preacher hym selfe with loude voyce, spake these woordes, O Abraham beloued of god, O Isaac cholen of god, and his frend. O I hope to god for the people of *Nabi*. When these woordes were sayde, sodenly were heard lamenting voyces. When the sermon was done, a rumor was spredde that a great armye of Arabians, to the number of twentie thousande, were comyng.

Sacrifice of sheepe.

Religion for pouertie.

Cadi, a preacher.

A goodly sermon.

Soldiers trouble the word of God.

Which whiche newes, they that kept the *Caramanas* beyng greatly feared, with all speede, lyke madde men, fledde into the cite of *Mecha*, and we agayne hearyng newes of the *Arabians* appoche, fledde also into the cite. But whyle wee were in the mydwaye betweene the mountayne and *Mecha*, we came by a despicable wal, of the breadth of foure cubites: The people passyng by this wall, had couered the wape with stones, the cause whereof, they saye to be this: When Abraham was commaunded to sacrifice his sonne, he wylled his sonne Isaac to folowe hym to the place where he shoulde execute the commaundement of God. As Isaac went to folow his father, there appeared to hym in the way a Deuyl, in lykenesse of a fayre and freendly person, not farre from the sayde wall, and asked hym freendlye whyther he went. Isaac answered that he went to his father who tarryed for hym. To this the enemie of mankynde answered, that it was best for hym to tarrye, and yf that he went anye further, his father woulde sacrifice hym. But Isaac nothyng feareyng this aduertisement of the Deuyl, went forwarde, that his father on hym myght execute the commaundement of God: and with this answer (as they saye) the Deuyl departed. Yet as Isaac went forwarde, the Diuell appeared to hym agayne in the lykenesse of an other frendlye person, and forbade hym as before. Then Isaac takyng by a stone in that place, huride it at the Deuyl, and wounded hym in the forehead: In witness and remembrance whereof, the people passyng that wape, when they come neare the wall, are accustomed to cast stones agaynst it, and from thence go into the cite. As we went this way, the ayre was in maner darkened with a multitude of stocke Doues. They saye that these Doues, are of the progenie of the Dove that spake in the eare of *Malumet*, in lykenesse of the Holpe Ghost. These are seene euery where, as in the villages, houses, tauernes, and graniers of corne and ryle, and are so tame, that one can scharsely dyue them a way. Too take them or kyll them, is esteemed a thyng worthy death: and therefore a certayne penyon is geuen to nouryshe them in the Temple.

Where Abraham sacrificeth his sonne Isaac.

The Diuell appeared to Isaac.

Isaac wounded the Deuyl in the forehead.

Stocke doues of the progenie of the Dove whiche spake in Mahumets eare.

Of the Vnicorns of the temple of Mecha,  
whiche are not seene in any other  
place. Cap. 19.



Monoceros.

The Vnicor-  
nes.The Vnicorns  
horne.

**I**n the other part of the temple are parkes  
or places inclosed, where are seene two  
Unicorns, named of the Greekes *Monoceros*,  
and are there shewed to the people  
for a myracle, and not without good rea-  
son, for the seldomenesse and strange natu-  
re. The one of them, which is much hygh-  
er then the other, yet not muche vnlyke to a colte of thyrtye  
monethes of age, in the forehead groweth only one horne, in ma-  
ner ryght foorth, of the length of thre cubites. The other is  
much younger, of the age of one yeere, and lyke a young colte:  
the horne of this, is of the length of foure handfuls. This beast  
is of the coloure of a horse of weasel coloure, and hath the head  
lyke an Hart, but no long necke, a thynne mane hangyng only  
on the one syde: theyr legges are thyn and slender, lyke a fawne  
or hynde: the hooves of the fore feete are diuided in two, much like  
the feete of a Goat, the outwarde part of the hynder feete is very  
full of heare. This beast doubtlesse seemeth wyld and fierce,  
yet tempereth that fiercenesse with a certayne comelnesse. These  
Unicornes one gaue to the *Soltan* of *Mecha*, as a most pre-  
cious and rare gyfte. They were sent hym out of *Ethiope* by a  
kyng of that countrey, who desired by that present to gratifie the  
*Soltan* of *Mecha*.

Of diuers thynges which chaunced to me  
in *Mecha*: And of *Zida*, a port  
of *Mecha*. Cap. 20.



**I**t may seeme good here to make mention  
of certayne thynges, in the which is seene  
sharpenesse of witte in case of vrgent ne-  
cessitie, which hath no lawe, as sayeth the  
prouerbe: for I was gyuen to the poynt  
howe I myght priuely escape from *Me-  
cha*. Therefore whereas my Captayne  
gaue me charge to buy certayne thyngs, as I was in the market  
place,

place, a certayne *Samaluke* knewe me to be a Christian. And  
therefore in his owne language, spake vnto me these woordes,  
*Inte mename*: That is, whence arte thou? To whom I answe-  
red that I was a *Bahumetan*. But he sayde, Thou sayest not  
truely. I sayde agayne, By the head of *Bahumet*, I am a *Ba-  
humetan*. Then he sayde agayne, Come hoine to my house. I  
folowed him willingly. When we were there, he began to speake  
to me in the Italian tongue, and asked me agayne from whence  
I was, affyrmyng that he knewe me, and that I was no *Bahu-  
metan*: Also that he had been sometyne in *Genua* and *Venice*.  
And that his woordes myght be the better beleued, rehearsed  
many thynges which testified that he sayde trueth. When  
I vnderstoode this, I confessed freely that I was a *Romane*,  
but professed to the sayth of *Bahumet* in the cite of *Babylon*,  
and there made one of the *Samalukes*. Whereof he seemed  
greatly to reioyce, and therefore vnto me honourably. But be-  
cause my desyre was yet to goe further, I asked the *Bahume-  
tan* whether that cite of *Mecha* was so famous as all the world  
spake of it: and inquired of him where was the great aboun-  
daunce of pearles, precious stones, spices, and other rich mer-  
chandies that the byute went of to be in that cite. And all my  
talke was to the ende to grope the mynde of the *Bahumetan*,  
that I might know the cause why such thynges were not brought  
thither as in tyme paste. But to auoyde all suspicion, I durst  
here make no mention of the dominion which the Kyng of *Portu-  
gale* had in the most parte of that Ocean, and of the gulfes of  
the redde sea and *Persia*. Then he began with more attentye  
mynde, in order to declare vnto me the cause why that marte was  
not so greatly frequented as it had been before, and sayde the on-  
ly faulte therof in the kyng of *Portugale*. But when he had made  
mention of the Kyng, I began of purpose to detracte his fame,  
least the *Bahumetan* might thinke that I reioyced that the Chri-  
stians came thither for merchandies. When he percepued that  
I was of profession an enemy to the Christians, he had me yet  
in greater estimation, and proceeded to tell me many thynges  
more. When I was well instructed in all thynges, I spake vnto  
him friendly these woordes in the *Bahumets* language, *Mena-  
ha Menalhabi*: That is to say, I pray you assist mee. He asked  
me

Why *Mecha*  
is not so much  
frequented as  
in tyme paste.

The dominion  
of the Kyng of  
*Portugale* in  
the East partes

Hypocrisie.



me wherein. To helpe me (sayde I) howe I may secretly departe hence. Confirmyng by great othes, that I would goe to those Kinges that were most enemies to the Christians: Affirmyng furthermore, that I knewe certayne secretes greatly to be esteemed, whiche if they were knowne to the sayde kynges, I doubted not but that in shorte tyme I shoulde bee sent for from Mecha. Astonyshe at these woordes, he sayde unto mee, I pray you what arte or secrete doe you knowe? I answered, that I would geue place to no man in makyng of all maner of Gunnes and artillerie. Then sayde hee, Prayd he Bahumet who sent thee hyther, to do him and his Saintes good seruice: and willed me to remayne secretly in his house with his wyfe, and requyred me earnestly to obtayne leaue of our Captayne, that vnder his name he myght leade from Mecha fiftiene Camelles laden with spices, without paying any custome: for they ordinarily paye to the Soltan thirtie Saraphes of golde, for transportyng of such merchandies for the charge of so many Camelles. I put him in good hope of his request, although he would aske for a hundred, affirmyng that that myght easily be obteyned by the priuileges of the Hamalukes, and therefore desired him that I myght safely remayne in his house. Then sayyng doubtyng to obtayne his request, he greatly reioyced, and talkyng with me yet more freely, gaue me further instructions, and counsayled me to repayre to a certayne Kyng of the greater India, in the kyngdome and realme of Decham, whereof we will speake hereafter. Therfore the day before the Carauana departed from Mecha, he willed me to lye hyde in the most secreete parte of his house. The day folowyng, early in the mornyng, the trumpet of the Carauana gaue warning to all the Hamalukes to make readie their hoxses, to directe their iourney toward Syria, with proclamation of death to all that shoulde refuse so to doe. When I hearde the sounde of the Trumpet, and was aduertised of the streight commaundement, I was marueylously troubled in mynde, and with heauy countenance desired the Bahumetans wyfe not to bewaie me, and with earnest prayer committed my selfe to the mercie of God. On the Tuesday folowyng, our Carauana departed from Mecha, and I remayned in the Bahumetans house with his wyfe, but he folowed the Carauana.

Pr

Paying of custome to the Soltan.

The realme of Decham in India.

Yet before he departed, he gaue commaundement to his wyfe to bryng me to the Carauana, which shoulde departe from Zida the porte of Mecha, to goe into India. This porte is distant from Mecha, xl miles. Whylest I laye thus hyd in the Bahumetans house, I can not expresse how friendly his wyfe vsed me. This also furthered my good interteynement, that there was in the house a fayre young mayde, the Niese of the Bahumetan, who was greatly in loue with me. But at that tyme, in the myddest of those troubles and feare, the fyre of Venus was almost extinct in mee: and therefore with dilaunce of fayre woordes and promyses, I styll kepte my selfe in her fauour. Therefore the Friday folowyng, about noone tyme I departed, folowyng the Carauana of India. And about mydnyght, we came to a certayne village of the Arabians, and there remayned the rest of that nyght, and the nexte day tyll noone.

Affliction cometh lycher.

From hence we went forwarde on our iourney toward Zida, and came thither in the silence of the nyght. This citie hath no walles, yet fayre houses, somewhat after the buyldyng of Italie. There is great aboundaunce of all kynde of merchandies, by reason of resorte in maner of all nations thither, excepte Jewes and Christians, to whom it is not lawfull to come thither. As soone as I entered into the citie, I went to their Temple or Meschita, where I sawe a great multitude of poore people, as about the number of. xxv. thousande, attending a certayne Pilot who shoulde bryng them into their countrey. There I suffered muche trouble and affliction, beyng enforced to hyde my selfe among these poore folkes, saynyng my selfe very sicke, to the ende that none should be inquisytue what I was, whence I came, or whyther I would. The Lord of this citie is the Soltan of Babylon, brother to the Soltan of Mecha, who is his subiecte. The inhabitantes are Bahumetans. The soyle is vnfruitfull, and lacketh freshe water. The sea beatech agaynst the towne. There is neuerthelesse aboundance of all thinges: but brought thither from other places, as from Babylon of Nilus, Arabia Felix, and dyuers other places. The heate is here so great, that men are in maner dyed by therewith. And therefore there is euer a great number of sicke folkes. The citie conteyneth about fyue hundred houses.

Poore Pilgrims that came from Mecha.

Bbb. ii.

After

From Arabia  
to Persia.

After fyftene dayes were past, I couenaunted with a pilor, who was ready to departe from thence into *Persia*, and agreed of the price, to goe with him. There laye at Anker in the haven almost a hundred *Bygantines* and *Foisses*, with diuers boates and bar-kes of sundry sortes, both with *Ores* and without *Ores*. Therefore after three dayes, gpyng wynde to our sayles, we entred into the redde sea, otherwyse named *Mare Erythraum*.

The red sea.

Of the red sea, and why it can not be sayled  
in the nyght. Cap. 21.



It is well knowen to wyle men that this sea is not red, as some haue imagined, but is of the colour of other seas. We continu-  
ed therefore our vyage vntyll the goyng  
downe of the Sunne. For this sea, is navi-  
gable only in the day tyme: and therefore  
in the nightes, the maryners rest them, vn-  
till they come to the Ilande named *Chameran*, from whence  
they procede forwarde more safely. Why this sea can not be  
sayled in the nyght, they say the cause to be, that there are many  
dangerous landes, rockes, and shelues: and therefore that it is  
needefull of diligent and long prospecte, from the toppe Castell  
of the shyppe, to foresee the dangerous places.

The

The seconde booke, entreating of *Arabia Felix*,  
That is, the happie or blessed  
*Arabia*.

Of the citie of Gezan, and the fruitfulnessse  
thereof. Cap. I.



As muche as hitherto wee haue spoken  
somewhat of the maners of the people and  
cities of *Arabia Felix*, it may nowe seeme  
conuenient to finishe the reste of our vyage  
with such thinges as we haue seene in the  
sayde countrey of *Arabia*. Therefore after  
sixe dayes saylyng, we came to a citie na-  
med *Gezan*. It hath a commodious porte, and very sayre, where  
we found about fourtie and fyue *Bygantines* and *Foisses* of dy-  
uers regions. The citie is hard by the sea syde, and the Prince  
thereof, is a *Bahumetan*. The soile is fruitful, lyke vnto Ita-  
lie: It beareth *Pomegranates*, *Quinces*, *Peaches*, *Apples* of  
*Assyria*, *Pepons*, *Delons*, *Oranges*, *Gourdes*, and dyuers o-  
ther fruites: Also *Roses*, and sundry sortes of floures, the sayrest  
that euer I sawe: It seemeth an earthly *Paradyle*. The moste  
parte of the inhabitauntes go naked. In other thinges, they lyue  
after the maner of the *Bahumetans*. There is also great abun-  
dance of fleshe, wheate, barley, the grayne of whyte *Millet* or  
*Hirse* (whiche they call *Dora*) whereof they make very sweete  
bread.

Of certayne people named Ban-  
duin. Cap. 2.

Departing from the citie of *Gezan*, the space of .v. dayes,  
sayling towarde the leste hande, havyng euer the coast of  
the lande in sight, we came to the sight of certayne hou-  
ses, where about .xiii. of vs went alande, hoppyng to haue  
had some victuals of the inhabitans. But we lost our labour, for  
in the steede of victuals, they cast stones at vs with slinges. They  
were about a hundred that fought with our men for the space of  
Bbb.iii. an

an houre. Of them were slayne .xliiii. The rest were dyuen to flyght, they were naked, and had none other weapons then syn- ges. After they flyght, we brought away with vs certayne hens and Calues very good. Shortly after a great multitude of the inhabitauntes shewed them selues to the number of fyue or syxe hundred: but we departed with our praye, and returned to the shippes.

Of an Ilande of the red sea, named  
Camaran. Cap.3.

**T**he same day saylyng forwarde, we came to an Iland na- med *Camaran*, which conteyneth ten myles in circuite. In it is a towne of two hundred houses, the inhabitantes are *Dahumetans*: it hath aboundaunce of freshe water and fleshe, and the fayrest salte that euer I sawe. The porte is eight myles from the continent, it is subiecte to the Soltan of *Sima- nian* of *Arabia Felix*. After we had remayned here two dayes, we tooke our way towarde the mouth of the red sea in the space of two dayes saylyng: This sea may here be sayled both day and nyght. For (as we haue sayde before) from this Ilande vnto the porte of *Zida*, the red sea is not safely nauigable by nyght. When we came to the mouth of the sea, we seemed to be in ma- ner inclosed, for that the mouth of the sea is there very streyght, and no more then thre myles dier. Towarde the right hande, the continent lande is seene of the heyght of ten pases: the soile seemeth rude and not cultured. At the lefte hande of the sayde mouth, ryseth a very hygh hyll of stone. In the myddest of the mouth, is a litle Ilande inhabited, named *Bebmendo*, and is to- ward the lefte hande to them that sayle to *Zeila*: But they that goe to *Aden*, must keepe the way to the lefte hande. All this way, we had euer the lande in our sight, from *Bebmendo* to *Aden*, in the space of two dayes and a halfe.

Of

Of the citie of Aden, and of their maners  
and customes towarde straun-  
gers. Cap.4.

**I** Doe not remember that I haue seene any citie better forti- fied then this: It standeth on a soyle not much vnequall, it is walled on two sydes: The reste is inclosed with mountaynes, hauyng on them fyue fortresses. The citie conteyneth sixe thousande houses. They exercise of bying and sellpng, begyn- neth the seconde houre of the nyght, by reason of extream heate in the day tyme. A stone cast from the citie, is a mountayne, hauyng on it a fortrese. The shippes lye neare the foote of the mountayne: it is certaynely a very goodly citie, and the fay- rest of all the cities of *Arabia Felix*. To this, as to the chiefe marke, the merchauntes of *India*, *Ethiopia*, and *Persia*, haue re- course by sea, and they also that resorte to *Mecha*. As soone as our *Brigantines* came into the haue, immediately the custo- mers and searchers came aborde, demaundyng what we were, from whence we came, what merchaundies we brought, and howe many men were in euery *Brigantine*.

Byng aduertised of these thinges, immediately they tooke away our masse, sayles, and other tackelynges of our shyp- pes, that we should not departe without paying of custome. The day after our arryuyng there, the *Dahumetans* tooke mee, and put shackles on my legges, whiche came by occasi- on of a certayne *Idolatour* who cryed after mee, saying, O *Christian Dogge*, borne of *Dogges*. When the *Dahu-* metans hearde the name of a *Christian*, incontinent they layde handes on mee, and brought mee to the *Licutenant* of the Soltan of that place, who assemblyng his counsaile, asked their opinion if I should bee put to death as a spy of the *Christians*.

The Soltan him selfe was out of the citie, and therefore his *Licutenant*, who had yet neuer adjudged any man to death, thought it not good to gyue sentences agaynst mee, before the

Of the citie of  
Aden looke.  
Cap.13.

Byng and sel-  
png by nyght.

The *Archbour*  
taken and put  
in prison.

Dicade the  
Dooke wri-  
teth that *Chri-*  
stians are  
founde in all  
regions sauing  
in *Arabia* and  
*Egypt*, where  
they are most  
hated.

Wbb.iii.

Soltan

Soltan should be aduertised hereof . And therefore I escaped this present daunger, and remayned in custodie fiftie and fyue dayes, with an Iron of eightieng pounde weyght hangyng at my feete . The seconde day after I was taken, many Mahumetans in great rage resorted to him, whose office was to make inquisition of treason . These a few dayes before, by swymmyng hardy escaped the handes of the Portugales, with the losse of theyr shippes and Barkes, and therefore desired greatly to bee reuenged of the Christians: assymyng with outragious crye, that I was a spy of the Portugales. But God sayled not to assyst me . For the maister of the prison, perceyuing the outrage of the Mahumetans, and fearyng that they would offer me violence, made fast the gates of the prison . After that fyue and fiftie dayes were past, the Soltan commaunded that I should be brought before him: and so, set vpon a Camel with my shackles, I came in eight dayes iourney to the place where the Soltan laye, and was brought to his presence in a citie named Rhada: for there the Soltan had assembled an army of thirtie thousande men, to make warre agaynst the Soltan of the citie of Sana, whiche is thre dayes iourney from Rhada, and situate partly on the declining of a hyll, and partly in a playne, very fayre to be seene, well peopled, and haupng plentie of all thinges . When I came before the Soltan, he began to aske me what I was . I answered that I was a Roman, professed a Mamaluke in Babylon of Alcayr, and that of religious mynd to discharge my conscience of a vowe whiche I had made to see the bodie of Nabi the holy Prophet, I came to the citie of Medinathalabi, where they say he is buried: and that in all cities and countreys by the way, I hearde honourable repoyte of his greatnesse, wisdom, and singuler vertue, and therefore ceased not vntyll I entered his dominions, moste desirous to see his face, yeldyng thanks to God, and Nabi, that it was now my chaunce, to be presented before him: trustyng that the equitie of his wisdom, would thereby consyder that I was no spy of the Christians, but a true Mahumetan, and his seruant and slaue. Then sayde the Soltan, Saye, Leila illala Mahumet resullala: whiche wordes I coulde neuer well pronounce, eyther that it pleased not God, or that for feare and scruple

wordes  
of them that  
professe the res-  
toration of Ma-  
homet.

of

of conscience, I durst not . Therefore when hee sawe mee holde my peace, he committed me agayne to prison, commaund-  
yng that I shoulde be straightly looked vnto, where .xvi. men  
of the citie were appoynted, euery daye foure, to watche me by  
course. So that for the space of thre monethes, I had not y frust-  
ion of heauē, during which miserable time, me diet was euery day  
a lose of myllet, so litle that seuen of them woulde not haue satis-  
fied my hunger for one daye: But if I myght haue had my fyll  
of water, I woulde haue thought my selfe happie . Within  
thre dayes after the Soltan marched with his army of thyrtye  
thousande footemen (as we haue sayde) and thre thousande  
horsemen, to beseege the citie of Sana . These horsemen were  
boone of Christian parentes, and blacke like the Ethiopians,  
and whyle they were yet very young, were bought in the kyng-  
dome of Prestre John, named in Latine Presbyter Iohannes,  
or rather Preciosus Iohannes . These Christian Ethiopians,  
are also named Abbyssini . They are brought by in discipline  
of warre, as are the Mamalukes and Iemetzars of the Turkes.  
This Soltan hath them in great estimation, for they are the gard  
of his owne person, and therefore haue greater wages, and are  
in number fourescore thousande . They couer theyr bodie with a  
sundon, like vnto a cloke or cape, putting out onely one arme, and  
are besyde naked without any other apparell . In the warres  
they vse rounde targettes, made of bulles hydes, with certayne  
litle barres of Iron to strengthen them. These targets are payn-  
ted very fayre with sundrye colours, and very commodious to  
respyte dartes, and are in largenesse as muche as the mouth of a  
barell: the handle is made of woodde, as bygge as they may well  
holde in theyr handes, and made fast with nayles . They vse  
dartes, and shorthe brode swoordes . At other tymes, they vse also  
bestures of lymen cloth of sundry colours. Also of gossampine or  
Xylon, otherwyse also named bombaline . In the warres, euery  
man beareth with hym a spynge, which he casteth, fyr shaking it  
often about his head . When they come to .xl. or .l. yeeres of age,  
they make them hornes, by wreathyng y heare of their heds, so  
bearyng two hornes lyke young Gotes . When they procede to  
the warres, fyue thousande Camels folowe the army, all laden  
with ropes of bombaline.

Soldiers horse-  
men of Christi-  
an Ethiopians  
of the dominie  
of Prestre  
Iohannes.  
Abbyssini, vnder  
Prestre  
John.

A gard of foure  
score thousand  
blacke men.

Targettes.

Spynge.

Howe

How the women of Arabia, are greatly in loue with whyte men.  
Cap. 5.

**A**fter the army was departed, I was incontinent committed to prison, as I haue sayde. Harde by the prison was a long entrie in maner of a cloyster, where somtyme we were permitted to walke. We shall further vnderstande, that in the Soltans place remayned one of his thre wyues, with twelue young maydes to wayte vpon her, very fayre and comely, after theyr maner, and of coloure inclining to blacke. The fauoure that they bore me, helped me very much, for I with two other, being in the same prison, agreed that one of vs should counterfytte him selfe to be mad, that by this deuice, one of vs myght helpe an other. In fine, it was my lotte to take vpon me the mad mans part, and therefore stode me in hande to do suche follies as pertaine to madnesse. Also the opinion whiche they haue of mad folkes, made greatly for my purpose: for they take mad men to be holy, and therefore suffered me to run more at large, vntill the Eremites had geuen iudgement whether I weare holy, or ragyng mad, as appeareth hereafter. But the fyrst thre dayes in which I began to shew my madnesse, weried me so muche, that I was neuer so tyred with labour or greued with payne, for the boyes and rascall people somtyme to the number of .xl. or .l. hurled stones at me almost without ceassing, while in the meane time againe I paid some of them home with lyke wages. The boyes cryed euer after me, calling me mad man. And to shewe it the more, I carped alwayes stones with me in my shyrt, for other apparel had I none. The queene hearing of my follies, looked oftentimes out of the wyndowes to see me, more for a secreete loue she bore me, then for the pleasure she tooke in my follies, as afterwarde appeared.

Counterfet  
madnesse.

There

Therefore on a tyme, when some of them, muche madder then I, played the knaues with me in the syght of the queene (whose secreete fauour towardes me I somewhat perceyued) that my maddenesse myght seeme more manifest, I cast of my shyrt, and went to the place before the wyndowes, where the queene myght see me all naked: wherein I perceyued she tooke great pleasure. For she euer founde some occasion that I myght not goe out of her syght: and would sometymes, with all her damo-selles waytyng on her, spende almost the whole daye in beholding me: and in the meane season diuers tymes sent me secretye muche good meate by her maydens, and when she saw the boyes or other do me any hurt, she hadde me kyll them, and spare not, reuylng them also, and calling them dogges and beastes. In the pallace was nourished a great fatt sheepe: for there are some of such exceedyng bygnesse, that only the taylor wayeth .xi. or .xii. pounce weyght. Under the coloure of madnesse, I layd hand on this sheepe, saying, *Leila illala Mabumet resullala*: which wordes the Soltan before, when I was brought to his presence, wyllyd me to say, to proue whether I were a *Mabumetan* or a professed *Mamaluke*. But the beast answering nothyng, I asked hym if he were a *Mabumetan*, Jewe, or Christian. And wyllyng to make hym a *Mabumetan*, I rehearsed agayne the sayde wordes *Leila illala Mabumet resullala*, (that is to saye) there is one God, and *Mabumet* his chiefe Prophet: whiche are the wordes which they speake in professyng theyr fayth. But when the beast yet answered nothyng, I broke his legges with a staffe. The queene tooke great pleasure in these my madde follies, and commaunded the fleshe of the sheepe to be geuen me to eate: I neuer ate meate with more pleasure, or better appetite. Also thre dayes after, I lykewys kyllled an Asse that was wont to bring water into the pallace, because he refused to be a *Mabumetan*, and to say those wordes. The same tyme also I handeled a Jewe so cruell, that I had almost kyllled hym, one in the meane tyme calling me Christian dogge, dogge borne. With which words being very angry, I cast many stones at him: but he againe hurlyng at me, gaue me a stroke on the brest, and an other on the syde, which greued me very sore.

Sheepe with  
exceedyng great  
tappes.

A Sheepe  
made a *mabumetan*.

Hunger made  
heth appetite.

And



And because I coulde not folowe hym by reason of my shackles, I returned to the pyson, and stopped the doore with a heape of stones, and there lyued in great payne for the space of two daies without meate or drynke: And therefore the queene and other thought me to be dead, but the doore was opened by the queenes commaundement. Then these dogges derydyng me, gaue me stones in the steele of bread, and peeces of whyte marble, saying that it was suger: other gaue me clusters of Grapes full of sand. But partly that they should not suspect that I counterfeyted madnesse, I ate the Grapes as they gaue me them. When the byuite was spied that I lyued two daies & nyghtes without meate and drynke: some began to suspect that I was a holy man, and some that I was starke madde. And thus being diuided into diuers opinions, they consulted to send for certayne men, of whom they haue such opinion of holynesse, as we haue of Heremites: these dwell in the mountaynes, and leade a contemplatyue lyfe. When they came vnto me, to geue thyr iudgement what maner of man I was, certayne merchantes asked them yf I were a holy man, or a madde man. These were also of diuers opinions, some affyrmyng one thyng, and some another. Whyle they were yet debatynge this matter, for the space of an houre, I pyssed in my handes, and hurde it in theyr faces: whereby they agreed that I was no Sainct, but a mad man. The queene seying all this at the wyndowe, laughed well thereat among her maydens, and sayd thus to them, By the goodnesse of God, and by the head of Mahumet, this is a good man. The day folowynge, when in the mornynge I founde hym a sleepe that had so sore hurt me with stones, I tooke hym by the heare of the head with both handes, and with my knee so pounched hym on the stomacke, and battered his face, that I left hym all bloody, and half dead. Which thyng the queene seeing, cryed vnto me saying, kyll the beast, kyll the dogge: wherapon, he ran his way, and came no moze in syght. When the President of the citie heard that the queene fauoured me, & toke pleasure in my mad sport, thynkyng also that I was not mad, commaunded that I shoulde goe at lybertie within the pallace, only wearyng my shackles: Yet euery nyght was I put in an other pyson in the lower part of the pallace, and so remayned styl in the

Madnesse taken for holynesse.

Heremites. Mahumet's tans.

the court for the space of xx. dayes. In the meane tyme, the queene wylled me to go a huntynge with her, whiche I refused not, and at my returne, I fained me to be sicke for weerinesse. So continuynge for the space of eyght dayes, vnder the colour of sickenes, the queene often sent to me to know how I did. After this, syndynge oportunitie, I declared to the queene that I had made a vow to God and Mahumet to visite a certayne holy man in the citie of Aden, and desired her to geue me leaue to go thither. Whereunto she consented: and commaunded immediatly a Cammell and xxv. Sarraphes of golde to be despyered me. Therefore y day folowynge, I tooke my iorney, and in the space of eyght dayes, came to the citie of Aden: and shortly after my commynge, vlyted the man of whom was so great reporte of holynesse, and whom the people honoured for a saint. And this onely, because he had euer lyued in great pouertie, and without the company of women. And heare are scene many other such: But doubtlesse all suche lose theyr labour, beyng out of the fayth of Christ. When I had perfourmed my vow, I sayned that I had recouered health by myracle of that holy man, and certified the queene thereof, despyng that I myght tarye there a whyle, to visite lykewise certayne other men in that countrey, of whom was the lyke fame of holynesse: whiche excuse I deuised, because the flecte of India woulde not yet depart from thence for the space of a moneth. In the meane tyme I secretly agreed with a certayne captayne of that naute to goe with hym into India, and made hym many fayre promisses to rewarde hym largely. He answered, that he woulde not go into India before he had fyrst ben in Persia: wherunto I agreed.

A holy bowe.

A holy saint.

The flecte of India.

Of the cities of Lagi and Aiaz in Arabia Felix:  
And of the martes of Aiaz and the  
towne of Dante. Cap. 7.

**T**he daye folowynge, mounyng bypon a Cammell, and makynge a iorney of xxv. myles, I came to a certayne citie named Lagi, situate in a great playne, well peopled, hauyng abundaunce of Oliues, and fleshe, with also great plentie

plentie of coyne, after our maner : but no vines, and great scarcenesse of woodde . The inhabitauntes are vnciuile and rusticall people, of the nation of vagabunde and feeble Arabians , and therfore but pooze. Departing fro hence one daies iorney, I came to an other citie named *Aiaz*, situate vppon two hylles, with a great plaine betweene them, and hath in it a notable fountayne, & therfore diuers nations resort thither as to a famous marre. The inhabitauntes are Mahumetans, and yet greatly differing in opinion of theyr religion : insomuche that therfore they be at great enimitie one agaynst the other, and keepe sore warre. The cause whereof they saye to be this : That the people of the north mountayne, maynteyne the sayth and secte of Mahumet and his felowes, of whom we haue spoken before : but the other of the South mountayne aspyne, that sayth shoulde be geuen onely to Mahumet and *Haly*, sayng the other to be false prophetes . But let vs nowe retorne to the marre . Almost all maner of spices are brought hyther. The region byngeth forth sylke and bombastine : also diuers goodly frutes, and bynes. On the toppe of both the hylles, are very strong fortresses, two dayes iorney from thence is the citie of *Dante*, well fortified both by arte and nature, situate in the toppe of a very great mountaine.

Of Almacharan, a citie of Arabia Fælix, and of the fruitfulness thereof . Cap. 8.

**D**Epartying from *Dante*, we came to the citie of *Almacharan*, in two dayes iorney . This is situate on a very hygh mountayne, and declynyng, and difficulte to ascende, as of the heygth of seuen myles, and the way so narrow, that onely two men can passe togeather . In the toppe, is a playne of incredible largenesse, very fruitfull, with plentie of all thynges to the vse of man . And therfore I thynke it to be inexpugnable & inaccessible: hauyng also so great abundaunce of water, that one fountaine may suffice for a hundred thousand men. And therfore they saye that the *Soltan* here hydeth his treasure, because he was bozne in this citie.

Heare

Strife and hatred for religion and all worth nought.

Mortus Fali, as the Persians call hym.

Here also euer remayneth one of his wyues. The ayre is marueylous temperate and holsome, and the citie seconde to none in all respectes : the colour of the inhabitantes is rather enclynyng to whyte, then any other colour. And to speake that I haue seene, the *Soltan* referueth here as much golde, as wyll lade a hundred Camels.

As muche gold as wyll lade a hundred Camels.

Of Reame a citie of Arabia Fælix, and the temperatenesse thereof.

Cap. 9.

**T**his citie is distaunt two dayes iorney from *Almacharan*. The colour of the inhabitantes is enclynyng to blacke: they are great merchantes . The soyle is fruitfull of all thynges lauyng wood : it conteyneth in circuite two thousande houses : on the one syde is a mountayne hauyng on it a very strong fortreffe. Here I saw a certayne kinde of sheepe hauyng theyr tayles of fortie and foure pounde weyght, and are without hornes, and also so marueylous fat, that they can scarcely goe for fatnesse . There be lykewyle certayne grapes with our graynes, the sweetest that euer I ate, and al maner of suche frutes, as I haue spoken of before. It is of marueylous temperatenesse, as witnesseth the long lyfe of men, for I haue spoken with many of them that haue passed the age of a hundred and fyue and twentie peeres, & yet verie lusty and wel complexioned. They goe for the most part naked, wearyng only shyrts, or other loose and thynne apparrell, lyke Mantelles, puttynge out one Arme all bare. Almoste all the Arabians make them Hornes with weathying of theyr owne heare, and that they thynke very comely.

A sheepes taylor of .44. pounde weyght.

Grapes with our graynes.

Men of long lyfe in temperate ayre.

Of Sana a citie of Arabia Fælix.

Cap. 10.

**D**Epartying from thence three dayes iorney, I came to a citie named *Sana*, situate vppon a verie hygh mountayne, verie strong by Arte and Nature . The *Soltan* besyged this, with a great armie of fourescore

An armye of  
four score  
thousand men.  
Strong walles.  
Anthropophag-  
us.

Score thousande men for the space of thre monethes, but coulde neuer wyne it. Yet it was at the last rendered by composition. The walles are of eyghtene cubites heygth, and twentie in breadth, insomuch that eyght Camels in order may wel marche vpon them. The region is very fruitefull and muche lyke vnto ours, and hath plentie of water. A Soltan is Lorde of the citie: hee hath twelue sonnes, of the whiche one is named *Mabumet*, who by a certayne naturall tyrannye and madnesse, despyeth to eate mans fleeshe, and therfore secretly killeth many to eate them. He is of large and strong body, of foure cubites hygh, and of the coloure inclynng to ashes. The soyle beareth certayne spyes not farre from the citie. It conteyneth about foure thousand houses. The houses are of saye buyldyng, and geue no place to ours. The cite is so large, that it conteyneth within the walles, fieldes, gardens, and meadowes.

Of Taessa, Zibith, and Damar, great cities of Arabia Eelix. Cap. II.

Roses.  
Suger.

After thre dayes iorney, I came to a citie named *Taessa*, situate vpon a mountayne, and verpe saye to syght: it hath plentie of all delices, and especially of marueylous saye *Roses*, wherof they make *Rose water*. It is an auncient citie, and hath in it a Temple buylded after the fashy- on of the churche of *Sancta Maria Rotunda* in Rome. The hou- ses are very saye, and thewe yet the monumentes of antiquite: innumerable merchantes resort hyther for the trafficke of sum- dry merchandies. In apparrell they are lyke vnto other, and of darkythe ashe coloure of skynne, enclynng to blacke. Thre dayes iorney from thence, I came to an other citie named *Zi- bith*, very saye and good, distaunt from the redde sea onlye halfe a dayes iorney: there is great abundance of merchandies by reason of the nearenesse of the sea. It aboundeth with many goodly thynges, and especially with most white *Suger*, and sundrye kyndes of pleasant frutes. It is situate in a very large playne within two mountaynes: it lacketh walles, and is one of the cheefest martes for all sortes of spyes. The inhabitants are of the colour of them aforesayde. From hence in one dayes

iorney, I came to the citie of *Damar*: it is in a fruitefull soyle, and hath great exercise of merchandise. The inhabitants are *Mabu- metans*, in apparrell and colour lyke vnto the other.

Of the Soltan of the aforesayde cities, and why he is named *Sechamir*.

Cap. 12.

The Soltan of Arabia felix.  
A pitiful pagan.  
A great fami- lyr.

These cities whereof we haue spoken here a litle before, are subiect to a Soltan of *Arabia Felix*, named *Sechamir*. *Secha* (by interpretation) signifieth holy, and *Amir*, a Prince, named the holy Prince, because he abhorreth sheddyng of mans blood. At the tyme of my beyng there in pylson, he nourished syxteene thousand poore men, and cap- tures in pylson condemned to death, allowyng to euery of them dayly for theyr diet, syxe of theyr pence of the smallest valure, and at home in his pallace entertayneth as many blacke slaues.

Of Monkeys and Marmasettes, and other beastes, noysome to men. Cap. 13.

Of Aden reade the fourth cap.  
Monkeys and Lions.  
Danger of wilde beastes.

Departyng from hence, I returned to the citie of *Aden* in thre dayes iorney: in the midde waye, I founde an exceedyng hygh and large mountayne, where is great pentie of wylde beastes, and especially of Monkeys, whiche runne about the mountayne euery where. There are also many Lions, very noysome to men: and therefore it is not safe to iorney that way, but when a multitude of men goe togeather, at the least to the number of a hundred. I passed this way with a great companie, and yet were we in daunger of the Lions, and other wylde beastes which folowed vs: for we were sometimes constrayned to fyght with them with dartes, spyngs, and bowes, vsyng also the helpe of dogges, and yet escaped hardly. When I came to the citie, I sayned my selfe sicke: and in the day tyme lurked in the temple, and went forth only in the night to speake with the pilot of the shyp (of whom I haue made mention be- fore) and obteyned of hym a foist or barke to depart thence secretly.

Of certayne places of Ethiopia,  
Cap. 14.

**I**n the fyrst chapter here before, I haue made mention howe departing from the queene I went to the citie of *Aden*, where I couenaunted with a certayne pilot to goe with hym into *India*, and that he woulde not go thither before he had fyrst made a biage into *Persia*, and that at my fyrst beyng in the citie of *Aden*, he coulde not yet for the space of a moneth depart from thence: Durpng whiche tyme, I traueyled the regions and cityes, whereof I haue spoken, vnto this my returne to *Aden*. Nowe therfore accordyng to our agreement to trauaile diuers countreys and regions, committing our selues to the sea, we were by inconstant fortune and sundry tempestes, deterred from that biage: for whereas we were nowe syre dayes sailyng on our waye to *Persia*, a sodayne contrary tempeste droue vs out of our waye, and cast vs on the coast of *Ethiope*. Our barkes were laden with rubricke (that is, a certayne redde earth) which is vsed to dye cloth: for peerely from the citie of *Aden*, departe fyfteeen or twentie shypys laden with rubricke, which is brought out of *Arabia Felix*. Beyng therefore thus tossed with stormes, we were dnyen into a port, named *Zeila*: where we remayned fyue dayes to see the citie, and tarrye vntyll the sea were moze quiet.

Of the citie *Zeila* in *Ethiopia*, and  
the great fruitfulness therof:  
and of certayne straunge  
beastes seene there.

Cap. 15.

**I**n this citie, is great frequentation of merchandies, as in a most famous mart. There is marueylous abundance of gold and Iuerye, and an innumerable number of blacke slaues, solde for a small pryce: these are taken in warre by the *Mabumetan* Mozes, out of *Ethiopia*, of the kyngdome of *Presbyter*

Tempest.

The biage to  
*Persia*.  
*Ethiope*.  
Rubricke.

Gold.  
Iuerye.  
Blacke slaues.

**A**fter *Iohannes*, or *Preciosus Iohannes*, whiche some also call the kyng of *Iacobins* or *Abyssins*, beyng a Christian: and are carried away from thence into *Persia*, *Arabia Felix*, *Babylonia* of *Nilus* or *Alcair*, and *Mecha*. In this citie iustice and good lawes are obserued: the soyle beareth Wheate, and hath abundance of flesh, and diuers other commodious thynges. It hath also Dyle, not of *Olyues*, but of some other thyng, I knowe not what. There is also plentie of Hony and Mape: there are lykwys certayne sheepe, haupng theyr tayles of the weyght of fyreteene pounce, and exceedyng fatte, the head and necke are blacke, and all the rest whyte. There are also sheepe altogether whyte, haupng tayles of a cubite long, hangyng downe lyke a great cluster of grapes: and haue also great lappes of skynne hangyng from theyr thotes, as haue Bulles and Oxen, hangyng downe almost to the ground. There are also certayne Kyne with hornes lyke vnto Hartes hornes, these are wyld: and when they bee taken, are geuen to the Soltan of that citie as a kyngly present. I sawe there also certayne Kyne, haupng only one horne in the midst of the forehead, as hath the Unicorn, and about a spanne of length, but the horne bendeth backward: they are of byght shynyng red colour. But they that haue Hartes hornes, are enclinyng to blacke colour. Conye is there good cheepe. The citie hath an innumerable multitude of merchants: the walles are greatly decayed, and the haven rude and despicable. The kyng or Soltan of the citie is a *Mabumetan*, and enterpayneth in wages a great multitude of foote men and horsemen. They are greatly geuen to warres, and weare only one loose synglc vesture, as we haue sayde before of other. They are of darke ashye colour, enclinyng to blacke. In the warres, they are vnarmed: and are of the sect of *Mabumet*.

Presbyter Iohannes, kyng of Iacobins & Abyssins. Justice & good lawes.

Sheepe with great tayles.

Balcaria.

Kyne with Hartes hornes.

Kyne with only one horne.

Of *Barbara*, an Ilande of *Ethiope*.  
Cap. 16.

**A**fter that the tempestes were appeased, wee gaue wynde to our sayles, and in shorte tyme arriued at an Ilande named *Barbara*, the Prince whereof is a *Mabumetan*. The Ilande is not great,  
Ecc. ii. but

but fruitfull and well peopled: it hath abundance of flesh. The inhabitants are of colour enclynng to blacke. Al they ryches, is in hearde of cattayle. We remayned here but one day, and departyng from hence, sayled into Persia.

The thyrd booke entreateth of Persia:  
and of certayne townes and partes  
of Persia. Cap. 1.

Diubander-  
rumi,

The Soltan of  
Cambaia.

Goa,

Ginlfar.  
Meschet.

**W**hen we had sayled the space of twelue dayes, we arriued at a citie called *Diubanderrumi*, (that is to say) the holy porte of Turkes. It is but a litle way from the continent: when the sea ryseth with hye tydes, it is an Island enuironed with water, but at a lowe fludde, or decrease of the sea, one may go thither by land: it is subiect to the Soltan of *Cambaia*. The Gouvernour is named *Menacheas*: It is a marke of great merchandies. There dwell about it foure hundred merchants of Turky: it is well walled round about, and defended with all sorts of engins. They haue barkes and byngantines somewhat lesse then ours: we remained here two daies. Departyng from hence, we came to an other citie named *Goa*, in the space of thre dayes iorney: this also aboundeth with merchandies, and is a mart greatly frequented. The soyle is fruitfull, with plentie of all thynges necessary: the inhabitants are *Mahumetans*. Neare vnto this, are two other fayre cities and portes, named *Ginlfar* and *Meschet*.

Of the Island and citie of Ormus, or Ar-  
musium: and of an Island of Per-  
sia where pearles are found.  
Cap. 2.

Dimus.  
Pearles.

**P**roceedyng on our viage, we came to a citie named *Ormus*, verrey fayre. This is seconde to none in goodlye situation, and plentie of pearles: it is in an Islande dystant from the continent twelue myles: It hath great scarcenesse of freshe water and corne,  
from

From other regions, is brought thither all victualles that nouryshe the inhabitauntes. Thre dayes saylyng from thence, are gathered those muscles which bynyng forth the fayrest and byggest pearles: they are taken as I will nowe declare. There are certayne men that get theyr lyuing by fyshyng. These hauing small Boates, cast into the sea a great stone, fastened to a corde, and this on both sydes of the Boate, to make it as stedfast and immouable as a shyppe lying at an Anker. The Boate thus stayed as it were with weyght and balance, an other appoynted to that purpose, casteth into the sea a corde with a stone hangyng at it. In the myddest of the Boate an other hauing a sacke hangyng on his shoulder before and behynde, and a stone hangyng at his feete, hurleth him selfe into the sea, and swimmeth vnder the water euen vnto the bottome of the sea, for the deapth of fiftiene pases or moze, and there remayneth vntyll he haue gathered the pearle Muscles, which he putteth in his sacke, then he casteth away the stone that weyghed him downe, and cometh vp by the corde. There are seene sometyne almost thre hundred shyppes, and other kynde of vessels, which come thither from many places and countreys. The Soltan of the citie, is a *Mahumetan*. There are aboue foure hundred merchauntes and factours remaynyng here continually, for the trafike of merchandies whiche come from diuers other regions, as silke, pearles, precious stones, spices, and suche lyke. They lyue with Ryle for the moste parte, for they haue none other corne.

Fyshing for  
Pearles.

Diuers vnder  
the water.

Of the citie named Eri in Chorazani, a re-  
gion of Persia, and of the riches ther-  
of: Also of Reubarbarum. Cap. 3.

**D**epartyng from Ormus, I went into Persia: And after ten dayes iourney, I came to a certayne citie named *Eri*. The name of the region is *Chorazani*, by which signification we may also name it *Flaminia*. The Kyng of *Chorazani* the region, dwelleth in the citie: It is fruitfull and plentifull almost of all thynges. There is seene so great abundance  
Ccc.iii. of



Great abun-  
dauce of silke.Plentie of  
corne.  
Rubarbe of  
final price.

of sylke, that you may in one daye bye as muche as may suffice to lade thre thousande Cameles. Corne is there neuer deare, by reason of the great abundaunce. There is great plentie of Rubarbe, as I geather by this coniecture, that syxe ponde of Rubarbe, after our ponde of .xii. vnces to the ponde, are solde for one croune of golde. The citie conteyneth in circuite about seven thousande houses. They are of the secte of Mahumet. Departyng from hence twentie dayes iorney, I obserued that the continent region of firme lande, farre from the sea syde, is very well inhabited with many good townes and byllages.

Of the ryuer thought to be Euphrates.  
And of Castoreum, Cap. 4.

The rinen Eu-  
phrates.

Schira.

Precious stons  
The stone E-  
ranon. A Tur-  
quiss.

Balascan.

Castoreum.

The prose of  
true Castoreum.

In this iorney I came to a certayne great ryuer, whiche in the inhabitantes language euen at this daye is named *Eufra*, which I verily thynke to be *Euphrates*, consideryng also the large capacite thereof. Proceedyng therfore on my iorney by the ryuer towarde the left hande, I came in the space of thre dayes to an other citie, named *Schira*. This hath onely one prynce, and he a Persian Mahumetan, and subiecte to none other. Here are founde all sortes of precious stones, and especially the stone *Eranon*, whiche deliuereth men from wichecraftes, madnesse, and fearefulnesse, proceedyng of melancolie. It is the stone commonly called the *Turquesse*. They are brought in great abundaunce from a citie named *Balascan*, where is also great plentie of *Castoreum*, and sundry kyndes of coloures. And here I notifie vnto you, why there is founde litle true *Castoreum* among vs, because it is adulterate by the Persians before it come to our handes, for these people are greatly geuen to the counterfettyng of suche thynges, as I saw by experience before myne eyes: for willyng on a tyme to proue the odoriferous strength of pure *Castoreum*, I sawe certayne, that had experience hereof, do in this maner. They tooke the bladder of *Castoreum*, and foure of them one after an other, put it to their noses to smell.

The

The sauour of it was so strong, that it made theyr noses bleede: and by this prose, they knew it to be pure *Castoreum*, & not counterfect. I asked the Persian whether *Castoreum* (as other the lyke vngments or drugges) would sone loose his strength. He answered, that the strength of that sauour myght be preserued the space of ten yeeres, yf it were not counterfect. The Persians are very courteous and gentle people, lyberall and gracious one to an other, and sauorable to strangers: and this I speake as I haue founde and seene by experience. Durynge the tyme that I was there, I founde a certayne Persian merchant, who the yeere before knewe me in the citie of *Mecha*: he was bozne in the citie of *Eri* in *Corozaim*. As soone as he saw me, he spake to me in this maner, *Lodouicke*, what God or fortune hath sent thee into these countreyes? Art not thou he whom not long sence I knewe in *Mecha*? To whom I answered, I am certaynely the same, and am now come hyther for the great desire that I haue to see the world. Wapled he God, sayd he, that I haue nowe found a companion of my iorney, that is taken with the same desire that I haue: and therfore for the space of fyftee dayes we remayned togeather in a citie named *Squilar*. He exhorted me not to depart from hym, but that we should togeather, by his guydyng, trauallye the cheefe partes of the world. Enterynge therfore on our iorney, we came first to a place named *Saint Bragant*.

Comendation  
of the Persi-  
ans.

Squilar.

Saint Bragant.

Of the citie of Saint Bragant, bygger then  
Babylon. And of the kyng of Persia,  
named the Sophie. Cap. 5.

They saye that the citie of *Saint Bragant*, is bygger then *Babylon*: the kyng of the citie, is a *Mahumetan*. The merchantes saye that when it pleaseth hym, he assembleth an armie of threescore thousande horsemen. The people are of colour enclinyng to whytenesse, and berye warrelke men. This we saye only by enformation of other: for we coulde not safely passe anye further, by reason of the great warres which the *Sophie* then made agaynst those *Mahumetans*, which are of the sect and religion of *Babachar*, *Othomar*, & *Omar*. These

An armie of  
threescore  
thousand horse-  
men.War betwene  
the Sophie of  
Persia and the  
Turke, for their  
religion.

Ecc. iiii.

The Turkes  
holde of Mahumet  
and his  
felowes.

The Persians  
holde of Mahumet  
and Ali,  
or Mortus  
Ali.

A true friend in  
necessitie.

These were the felowes of Mahumet, as we haue wrytten before of Mahumet and his felowes. The Persians abhorre these as heretikes and false doctours, although they them selues also be Mahumetans of an other secte, whiche is of Mahumet and Ali, whose doctrine they embrace and esteeme for most perfect and true religion. Here therefore the sayde Persian, my good friende, and ioyfull companon of my iourney, sayde thus vnto mee, That thou mayest vnderstande (Lodouike) the vnsayned good will that I beare thee, and the desyre I haue that our friendship may be knyt with indissoluble bandes, and thereby to assure thee that I will not fayle thee in thy necessitie, I haue a Myse named Samis, whom I wil gyue thee to wyfe. Samis in theyr tongue, signifieth the Sunne (for thee deserued so to be called for her singuler beautie) and sayde furthermore, that he dyd not trauaile the worlde for lacke of any thyng, but only for his pleasure and desyre of knowledge. And therefore passyng no further, by reason of the warres (as we haue sayde) we returned to the citie of Eri, where he enterteined mee in his house honourably: and shewyng mee his Myse, instauntly desyred mee to take her to wyfe. But I, hauyng my mynde otherwyle destinate, would not seeme to contemne his so friendly a profer, but deferred it to a more conuenient tyme. Therefore departyng from thence, within eight dayes after, we returned to Ormus, and sayled from thence into India, arryuing there at a certayne porte named *Cheo*.

*Cheo*.

Here

Here foloweth the fourth booke, which entreateth of India, and of the cities and other notable thynges seene there.

Of the citie of Cambaia in India, most fruitfull in maner of all thynges. Cap. I.



**L**oasimuche as in the begynnyng of this woork we promised that we would declare all thynges briesely, we intende nowe heere to speake onely of thynges whiche may seeme most woorthye to be knowen. Enttryng therefore into India, we came to a certaine porte, which the great and famous ryuer Indus passeth by, and is not far from the citie of Cambaia. It is situate thre myles within the lande, towarde the South. The Brigantines or Fopstes can haue no accesse to it, excepte the fludde ryle hygher then commonly it is woont to do, which sometymes ouerfloweth the lande the space of foure myles. But heere the fluddes haue contrarpe courses of increasyng, for heere they increase in the wane of the Moone, but with vs in the full Moone. The citie is walled after our maner, and aboundeth with al necessarie thynges, especially with wheate, and al sorts of hole some and pleasaunt fruites. There are also certayne kyndes of spyes, the names whereof I knowe not. It hath also abundance of gossampine or bombastine cotton. Merchants byng from thence peerely so much bombastine and silke, that sometime they lade fourtie or fyftie shypes to cary into other countreys. In this region is also a mountayne where the Onyx stone, commonly called *Corneola*, is founde: and not farre from thence also another mountaine, where the Calcedony and Diamant are found.

The ryuer Indus.  
The citie of Cambaia.

Note the increase of ryuers contrarpe to ours.

xl. shippes lade with silke and bombastine.

The maners of the people of the citie of Cambaia: and of the Soltan thereof. Cap. 2.

**T**he Soltan of Cambaia, at my beyng there, was named *Masumut*, and had raygned fourtie yeeres, after he had expelled the

Pythagorici.

Good people.

They may  
see me the suc-  
cessours of  
Darius and  
Xerxes.The great  
pompe of the  
king of  
Cambaia.

Elephantes.

Monstrous  
great lippes.A strange his-  
torie of a kyng  
accustomed to  
eate popson.A venomous  
kyng.

the kyng of Gugerat. They thynke it not lawefull to kyl any lyping beaste to eate, or to eate fleshe. They are no Mahumetans, neyther Idolaters, and therefore I beleue that if they were baptised, they were not far from the way of saluation, for they obserue the exquisite rule of iustice, doyng no worse to other, then they woulde to be done to them. As touchyng theyr apparell, some of them go naked, and other couer onely theyr priuities. On theyr heades, they weare spillettes of purple colour. Theyr selues are of darke yelow colour, commonly called Leonell colour. This Soltan maynteyneth an army of xx. thousand horsemen. Every mornynge resort to his pallace, fyfte men, syttyng on Elephantes. Their office is, with all reuerence to salute the king or Soltan, the Elephantes also kneelyng downe. In the mornynge alsoone as the kyng waketh, is hearde a great noyse of Drumes, Tambours, Tymbrelles, Maytes, and also Trumpettes, with dyuers other muscalle instruments, in reioycyng that the kyng lyueth. The lyke do they whyle he is at dinner: and then also the men syttyng on the Elephantes, make hym the lyke reuerence as before. We wyl in due place speake of the wytte, customes, and docilitie of these beastes. The Soltan of this citie, hath his upper lyppe so grosse, that it is a monstrous thyng to beholde: Insomuche that sometyme he beareth it by with a fillet, as women do the heare of theyr heades: his bearde is whyte and long, euen vnto the nauell. He is so accustomed to popson from his infancie, that he dailie eateth some to keepe it in vse. And although he hym selfe feeles no hurte thereof by reason of custome, yet doth he thereby so impopson hym selfe, that he is popson to other: for when he is disposed to put any of his noble men to death, he causeth hym to be brought to his presence, and to stande naked before hym. Incontinente he eateth certayne frutes (whiche they call *Chofolos*) lyke vnto Nutmegges: and eateth also the leaues of certayne hearbes, whiche they call *Tambolos*, addyng also thereto the powder of beaten oyster shelles. And a whyle chawpyng al these together in his mouth, he spitteth it vpon hym whom he despyeth to kyl, who being sparkled therewith, dyeth, by force of the popson within the space of halfe an houre. He entertaineth about foure thousand concubines: for when soeuer he hath lync with any of them,

He

thee with whom he hath lync, dyeth the daye folowing, becomyng by hym impopsoned. And therefore when he changeth his thyng or other apparel, no man dare weare it: and for this cause he hath great change of apparel. My companion enquired diligently of the merchants by what meanes he was of so venomous nature: They answered, that the Soltan his father brought him so by of a childe with poison by litle and litle, with preseruatiues so accusomyng hym thereto. But let vs nowe returne to speake of the maners of the people: for the most part they weare but only one synge vesture, and are very warrellyke men: also greatly geuen to merchandies. The fruitfulness and plentifulnesse of the region can not be spoken. It is frequented almost of all nations. Therfore from this citie, and from an other (whereof we wyl speake hereafter) diuers and innumerable sortes of merchandies, are transported to almost all the regions of the worlde, and especially to the Turkes, Syrians, Arabians, Indians: also to diuers regions of Affricke and Ethiopia: principally exceeding abundance of sylke and Bombasyn, and therefore is this Soltan marueylous ryche. He keepeth in maner continual warre with the kyng of Ioga, whose realme is fyfteene dayes iorney from Cambaia, and reacheth very farre euery waye. This kyng mayntayneth an armie of xxx. thousand fyghtyng men: he and all his people are Idolatours. He lyueth in continual progresse, with a mightie trayne at the charges of the people: and continually carrieth about with hym foure thousand tentes and pavilions: also his wyfe, chyldren, concubines, & slaues, furthermore, foure or fyue of most couragious horses: like wyse mul kattes, moonkeys, Parrottes, Leopardes, & haukes. And in this order he walketh almost ouer all India. The kynges apparell, is a double gores skinne, one coueryng his brest, and the other his backe, with the hearysyde outward: he is of weasel colour, enclining to blackenesse, as are the most part of these Indians, beyng in maner scorched with heate of the Sunne. They weare al earerings, precious stones, and iewels of sundry sortes: some couer theyr body with a single, light, & thynne vesture, puttyng out one arme naked. The kyng and certayne of his noble men, paynt their faces with certayne swete gommes & spires: and some also other partes of their bodies. They are ledde with many bayne superstitions: for some professe neuer to lye on the

Helpe he get-  
terly no chyl-  
dren.Great fruitfulness  
& abundance of mer-  
chandies.Plentie of  
sylke.The kyng of  
Ioga an Idol-  
latour.Continuall  
progresse.Wyues and  
concubines.The colour of  
the Indians.

the grounde, some to lyue in continual silence, as though they were spechelesse, hauing two or thre appointed by signes to serue them meate and drynke.

Hornes.

They haue all hornes hangyng about theyr neckes: and therefore when they come to any citie, they blowe theyr hornes all at once, to make the inhabitantes afrayde, as do they that with vs keepe Crows or Rookes out of the corne. Then commyng to talke with the citizens, they demaund victuales, and what soeuer other thynges they stande in neede of. Whyle the kyng any tyme resteth a whyle in one place, almost all the whole armye gardyng his person about his pauplion, fyue or syxe hundred in the meane tyme raunge abroade together to geat what they can. They tarry not past thre dayes in one place, but are euer wanderyng after the maner of the vagabunde *Egyptians*, *Arabians*, & *Tartars*. The region is not fruiteful, but rough, with craggie mountaines. The houses of the citie are despicable: the citie is also without walles. This kyng is enemye to the *Soltan of Machamir*, & vexeth hym greatly with diuers incursions.

Wanderyng  
nations.  
Feede men.

Of the citie of Ceull, and the maner of the people. Cap. 3.

**D**epartyng from *Cambia*, in twelue dayes iorney I came to a citie named *Ceull*: the land that lieth betweene them both, is called *Guzerat*. The kyng of this citie, is an *Idolatour*: they are of darke yealow colour, or *Lion* tawnye: some were suche slender apparrell as they whom wee haue spoken of before: other are naked, coueryng onely theyr ppynties. They are prompt to the warres, and vse swordes, bowes, dartes, synges, and rounde targettes. They haue engines to beat downe walles, & to make great slaughter in an armie: the citie hath walles, and is distant from the sea but thre myles. A fayre ryuer runneth by the citie, by the whiche much merchandies is brought thither. The soyle beareth almost all maner of frutes, except *Vynes*, *Walnuttes*, and *Chestnuttes*. It hath also *Wheate*, *Barlie*, and other kyndes of corne. Here is made great plentie of *Bombasyn* cloth. They are such *Idolatours* as are they of *Calecut*, of whom we wyl speake hereafter: yet are there in the citie many merchants *Mahumetans*. They exercise iustice. The kyng entertayneth but a small armie.

There

Guzerat.

Idolatours.

There are many horses and kyne. Two dayes iorney from hence, is a citie named *Dabuly*, hauing a great ryuer runnyng by it. It hath walles after the maner of ours. The soyle is fruiteful, and the citie beautifull. There are innumerable merchants *Mahumetans*. The kyng is an *Idolater*, and hath an armye of .xxx. thousande men. They are in maners lyke vnto the other, and of the same colour.

Dabuly.

Idolaters.

Of Goga, an Ilande of India. Cap. 4.

**D**epartyng from hence, I came to the Ilande of *Goga*, not past a myle distant from the continent. This payeth peerele trybute to the kyng of *Dechan* a thousand peeces of golde, of the value of the *Saraphes* of *Babylon*, hauing on the one syde the Image of the dyuell, and on the other syde, certayne vnknewen caracters. Upon the sea coaste of one syde of this Ilande, is a towne buydded after the maners of ours. The gouernour is a certayne Captayne of soldi-ers named *Squain*: he hath in his regiment foure hundred *Mahamalukes*, and is also a *Mahamalu*ke hym selfe: and therefore when he synbeth any whyte men, he entertayneth them frendly, and geueth them xij. Saraphes of golde every moneth. But he fyrst maketh pfofe of their strength and valiantnesse by wrestlyng: and if they be not founde meete for the warres, he putteth them to handy craftes. This Captayne with onely his foure hundred *Mahamalukes*, greatly vexeth the kyng of *Narsinga*. Departyng from hence, in eyght dayes iorney by lande, I came to the citie of *Dechan*.

Tribute.

Coyn.

Mahamalukes.

white men.

Of Dechan, a very fayre citie of India. Cap. 5.

**T**he kyng or *Soltan* of *Dechan*, is a *Mahumetan*, of whom the foresayde captayne *Mahamalu*ke is entred in wages. This citie is beautifull in syght, and the soyle very fruitefull and plentifull in maner of all thynges necessarie.

The

The kyng is accompted a Hamaluke, and with hym .xxxv. thousande men of his dominion of horsemen and footemen. The citie is beautified with a marueplous fayre pallace, and the pallace adourned with many fayre roomes, for before you come to the kynges chamber, you must passe by .xlviij. other chambers, for the sollers of the chambers are so orderly disposed, that one chamber styll geueth entrie into an other, vntyll you come to the last. The citie is compassed with a wal, after the maner of the Christians. The houses are not vncomely. The kyng vseth incredible pompe, and regal magnificence. They that wayte vppon his person weare vppon theyr shooes or starpings Rubies and Diamondes, and such other pprecious stones. What ouches and iewelless they weare in theyr earynges and Condalyis, Carkenettes colours, let wittie men iudge, comparyng the feete to the moze noble partes of the bodie. Sixe miles from the citie is a mountayne where Diamondes are digged. It is compassed with a wall, and kept with a Garrison. The region hath plentie of all thynges. The people are Hamumetans. Theyr apparel for the most part is of sylke: or at the least the sherte or inmost vesture. They weare also thynne bul kymmes: and hose lyke gregascos or maryners slops. Theyr women, after the maner of the women of Damasco, haue theyr faces couered. The kyng keepeth in maner continual war with y king of Narsinga. The most part of his souldiers are strangers, enterpeyned for wages. They are white men: but the inhabitantes, of the coloure of the other Indians. The kyng is marueplous ryche, and liberall. He hath also a great nauie of shypys. He hateth the Christians as much as any other. Thus haupng traueled this part of the region, I toke my iorney towarde a citie named Bathacala, fyue dayes iorney from Dechan. The inhabitantes are Idolaters, except certayne Hamumetan merchaunts, which resozt thither for marchandise. It hath abundaunce of Ryse, Sugar, Spygges, Malnuttres, Wheate, Corne, and many other fruites and rootes vnknowen to vs. They haues Beeues, Kyne, Bulles, Sheepe, Goates, and dyuers other beastes, but no Horses, Mules, or Asses.

Of

A fayre palace.

Great pompe and magnificence.

Where Diamondes are founde.

Womens faces couered.

White men.

The kyng of Dechan, hateth the Christians.

The citie Bathacala.

Of certayne other goodly cities of India. Cap. 6.

Departing from hence, I tooke my iorney towarde a citie named Centacola, one dayes iorney from Bathacala. The prince of this citie is no lord of great riches. There is neuerthelesse abundaunce of fleshe, Ryse, and other suche fruites as growe in India: many Hamumetans resozt hither for merchaundies. The kyng is an Idolater, and of Lion tawny colour. They go starke naked, and weare nothyng on theyr heades. This prince is subiecte to the kyng of Barthacal. Departing from hence two dayes iorney, I came to an Islande named Onor, whose kyng is an Idolater, and serueth the deuyll, and is subiect to the kyng of Narsinga: He is very gentle and famillier, he maynteyneth eyght forystes, which make excursions and lyue by rouying and pyracie. He is in great frendshyppe with the kyng of Portugale. The inhabitantes couer their priuities with a lincdone, and are belyde all naked. The soyle beareth plentie of Ryse, as in other partes of India. There are in maner al kyndes of beastes, as wyld Bores, Harts, Molues, Lions, and sundry kyndes of birdes and foules vnlke vnto ours, Peccockes also and Parrottes. It hath innumerable Kyne of shypynng yelow colour: also sheepe exceedyng fatte. There is so great abundaunce of flowers and Roses, that they fayle not in wynter. There can not be a moze temperate ayre: and therfore they lyue muche longer then we do. Not far from this citie, is an other citie named Mangolor: from whence, about the number of .lx. shippes departe peereply laden with Ryse. The inhabitantes are partly Idolaters, and partly Hamumetans. Their maner of lyuing and apparell, is as we haue sayd before.

Of Canonor and Narsinga, great cities of India. Cap. 7.

Departing from hence, we directed our iorney toward the citie of Canonor, beyng a very goodly citie. Heere the kyng of Portugale hath a very strong towne. The kyng of the citie is an Idolater, and no great frend to the kyng of Portugale.

Centacola.

Idolaters, Barthacal.

The Islande of Onor.

A kyng a pirate. Naked men.

Ryse. Beastes.

Wyldes and foules.

Flowers all the yere longe.

Longe lyfe. Mangolor.

Ryse.

Afterwarde he became frende to the Portugales.

The



The citie hath a porte, whither are brought the horses of Persia: but the custome for horses is exceeding great. Departing from hence, and entering further into the lande, we came to the citie of *Narsinga*, where many *Bahumetan* merchautes do dwel. The soyle beareth neyther wheate, nor bynes, or fewe other frutes, except *Oranges* and *Gourdes*. They eate no breade: but lyue with ryle, fythe, and suche walnutties as the countrey beareth. In maners and Idolatrye, they are lyke unto them of *Calecut*, of whiche we wyll speake hereafter. There is founde plentie of spycies, as *Ginger*, *Pepper*, *Myrobalans*, *Cardanum*, *Cassia*, and dyuers suche other. Also many and dyuers kindes of frutes vnylike vnto ours, and muche sweeter. The region is in maner inaccessible for many denmes and ditches made by force. The kyng hath an army of fyfte thousande gentlemen, whiche they call *Heros*. In the warres they vse swoordes, rounde *Cargettes*, or *Buklers*, *Lances*, *Dartes*, *Bowes*, *Slynges*: and begyn nowe also to vse *Gunnies*. They go naked, coueryng onely their priuities, except when they go to the warres. They vse no horses, *Mules*, *Asses*, or those *Camels* whiche we commonly call *Dromedaries*. They vse onely *Elephantes*, yet not to fyght in the battayle. Great merchaundise is bled in the citie: for thither resorte from dyuers countres two hundred thyppees yere. Departing from the kyngdome of *Narsinga*, in xv. dayes toyney towarde the East, we came at the length to a citie named *Bisinagar*.

Of the fruiteful citie of *Bisinagar* in the kyngdome of *Narsinga*, Cap. 8.

The citie of *Bisinager* is vnder the dominion of the kyng of *Narsinga*, and subiect to hym. The citie is very large and well walled, situate on the syde of a hyll, and eyght myles in circuite. It is compassed with a triple wall, and is a famous mart of all sortes of ryche merchaundise. The soyle is marueylous fruitefull, and hath whatsoeuer pertayneth to delicates and pleasures. There is no lande more commodious for haukyng and huntynge, for it hath large playnes, and goodly woods: a man would saye it were an earthly *Paradyse*.  
The

The kyng and people are *Idolaters*. He is a Prince of great power, he hath an army of foure thousande horsemen. And yet is it to be noted, the price of a good horse there, to be no lesse then foure or fyue hundred of those peeces of golde whiche they call *Perdais*: And sometyme it so chaunceth that a horse is solde for eight hundred of those peeces of golde. The cause of which great price is, that they are brought out of other countreys: and that they haue no *Hares*, being forbydden by the commaundement of the kynges, streightly charging the portes to be kepte, least any *Hares* should be brought into the countrey. He hath also foure hundred *Elephantes* to serue in the warres: and likewise as many *Camelles*, of the kynde of those swyfte runnyng *Camelles* whiche be commonly called *Dromedarii*. And here me seemeth good oportunitie to say somewhat of the docilitie, agilitie, and wyse of *Elephantes*, as we haue promised.

Of the docilitie, agilitie, and wit of *Elephantes*. Cap. 9.

The *Elephant*, of all foure footed beastes, and nexte vnto man, is most wittie and docible, and not farre from humane sence, and surmounteth all other beastes in strength.

When the *Indians* bring them to the warres, they put great packesaddelles on their backs, suche as in *Italie* they vse for the great *Mules*. These packesaddelles, they gyde vnder theyr bellies with two chaynes of Iron. Vpon the saddelles, they place on euery syde a litle house, or if you will, rather call them *Turrettes*, or *Cagies*, made of wood: euery *Turret* conteyneth thre men. Betweene the two *Turrettes*, sitteth an *Indian* on the backe of the beast, and speaketh to him in his owne language, whiche the beast vnderstandeth and obeyeth: for it is certaine that no other beast appocheeth so neare to the vnderstanding of man. Seuen men therefore are thus placed vpon one *Elephant* when they goe to the wars, and all armed with coates of sence, *Targets*, *Bowes*, *Launces*, *Dartes*, and *Slynges*. Also the trunke or snoute of the *Elephant* (whiche of the Latines is called *Promuscis*, or *Proboscis*, and of some, the hande of the *Elephant*) is armed, and hath a sword fastened to it of the length of two cubites, very strong, and of a handfull in breadth. And thus  
Ddd.i. furnisher,

An army of foure thousande horsemen.

Horses of great price.

Foure hundred *Elephantes*.

*Dromedary Camelles*.

Howe the *Elephantes* are prepared to the warres.

Seuen men fyght vpon one *Elephant*.

Howe the *Elephant* is armed

*Narsinga*.

*Oranges*.

*Apple*.

*Spices*.

*Strange frutes*.

An army of fyfte thousand gentlemen. *Gunnies*.

*Dromedaries*. *Elephantes*.

*Triple wall*.

*Haukyng and huntynge*.

The Elephant  
vnderstandeth  
the voyce of  
his keeper.

The Elephant  
can not abyde  
fyr.

The strength  
of the Elephant

The Elephants  
haue ioyntes in  
their legges.

The hande of  
the Elephant.

The teeth of the  
Elephant is  
Iuery.

furnished, they proceede to the battayle. When it is requiſite to goe fozewarde, or backewarde, the gouernour ſittynge aboue, gyueth them an inſtruction with ſuch voyces as they are accuſtomed vnto: for ſometyme he ſayth thus to the beaſt, *Stryke here, ſtryke there, fozebeare here, goe fozewarde there, turne this way, and that way.* All which wordes he vnderſtandeth and obeyeth without ſpurre or byddell. But where it ſo chaunceth that by caſting of fyre, they are with feare dypuen to flyght, they can by no meanes be ſtayed. And therfore theſe people haue many ſubtile deuices howe they may feare them with fyre, which this beaſt, by the ſenſe of nature, feareth aboue all thinges, and therefore flyeth in maner at the ſight of fyre. And to ſpeake ſomewhat of theyr ſtrength, as I haue ſene by experience, I remember that when I was in the cite of *Canonor*, certayne *Dahumetans* dyue a ſhypp aland, turnyng the ſhypp, after the maner of the Chriſtians, with the foze ende towarde the lande, and laying vnder it three rowling beames. Then three Elephanes commodiouſly appli- ed, drawyng with great force, and bendyng downe theyr heades to the ground, brought the ſhypp to lande. But many haue thought that the Elephanes haue no ioyntes in theyr legges, and that therefore they could not bende theyr legges: which thyng doubt- leſſe is falſe, for they haue ioyntes as haue other beaſtes, but in the loweſt parte of theyr legges. The Females are more fierce then the Males, and much ſtronger to beare burdens. Sometime they are taken with furie or madneſſe, and teſtifie the ſame by diſ- ordinate runnyng here and there. One Elephant exceedeth the bygneſſe of three Buſſes, & not vnlyke of heare. They haue eyes lyke ſwyne, & the ſnout or trunk very long, wherewith they put meate and drinke into their mouth: and therefore may it well be called the hande of the Elephant. The mouth is vnder the throte, much lyke the mouth of a ſowe, and the trunk is holowe, and can therewith holde faſt ſtickes or ſtaues, and them rule as it were with a hande. I ſawe alſo the trunk of a tree ouerthrowen by an Elephant, which xxxiii. men attempting, could not doe. The two great teeth or tuſkes, are placed in the higheſt iawe. Each of their eares, are two handfuls byg, whether the beaſt be of the bygger or leſſe kinde. The feete are like vnto ſuch round thicke trenchers of wood as be commonly vſed. The foote containeth fyue hooves,

in

in roundneſſe like vnto great Oysters. The tayle is lyke to the tayle of a Buſſe, ſoure handfull long, and of thyn heare. The Fe- The bygneſſe  
males are alſo bigger then the Males, they are of ſundry bygneſſe of the Elephant  
for ſome are of .xiii. handfuls high, and other of .xiiii. handfuls, and ſome alſo haue been ſene of ſixtiene handfuls. They goe ſlowly, and walowing, and therfore ſome that haue not ben vſed to them, are moued to vomite euen as it were on the ſea. Yet is it a plea- ſure to ryde on the young Elephanes, becauſe they goe ſoftly like ambling Mules. When you mount on them, they ſtoope & bend their knees, that you may eaſily aſcende. They are neuer bydde- led, neyther vſe theyr keepers any halters to gouerne them.

Of the ingendering of Elephanes, and of  
the magnificence & riches of the king  
of *Narſinga*. Cap. 10.

When they ingender, they reſorte to the medowes or woods, for by a certayne naturall ſhamefaſtneſſe they doe it not but in ſecrete places: Although ſome Auc- The naturall  
thours haue written that Elephants engender back- ſhamefaſtneſſe  
ward. Some take it for a great preſent to giue the king the mem- of Elephanes  
ber or piſſell of an Elephant, whiche perhappes they doe for the  
exceedyng great price of Elephanes: For ſome are ſolde there The piſſell of  
for fyue hundred peeces of golde, and ſome (as they ſay) for two an Elephant.  
thouſande: which peraduenture, is not for theyr greatneſſes of  
bodie, but rather for certayne properties, wyl, & docilitie, where-  
in ſome farre exceede other: euen as among men. And I dare  
well ſay that I haue ſene ſome men much inferiour to Elephants  
in wyl and ſenſe. Therefore the kyng of *Narſinga*, in riches and  
dominion, farre exceedeth all kynges that euer I haue ſene or  
hearde of. The cite in ſituation and fayrenesse, repreſenteth the  
cite of *Milane*, except only that it is in a declining place, and leſſe  
equal. Other kingdomes which are ſubiect to this, lye round about  
it, as the kyngdome of *Auſonia* & *Venice* lye about *Milane*. Their  
A great tribute  
by the day.  
*Ex amini* (ſo are the prieſtes named) tolde me þ the king receiveth  
Ddd, ii. dayly

Idolaters.

30 riche cloke.

The magnificence of the kynge of Narsinga.

Copie of golde and silver.

Daunger of Apous.

The kynge of Narsinga, friend to the kynge of Portugale.

The cite of Trompata.

Daply of that cite for tribute or reuenue, the summe of twelue thousandes of those peeces of golde whiche they call *Pardios*. He maynteyneth an army of many thousandes of men, for he liueth in continuall warre with his borderers. He is an Idolatour, and honoureth the deuyll, euen as doth the kynge of *Calecut*. They that are of the rycheest sorte, vse a slender inwarde apparell or peticore, not very long, and bynde theyr heades with a phillet or byade bande, of sundry colours, after the maner of the *Mahumetans*. The common sorte, couer only theyr priuities, and are belyde all naked. The kynge weareth a Cappe of cloth of golde, of two handfulls long: when he goeth to warre, he weareth a vesture of bombasine, and thereon a cloke adourned with plates of gold, haupng the borderer garde besette with all sortes of precious stones and Jewelles. His horse with the furniture, is esteemed to bee worth as muche as one of our cities, by reason of innumerable Jewelles of great price. When he goeth a hunting, three other kynges beare him company, whose office is to be euer neare him, and guyde him. When he maketh any iourney, or rydeth abroad, he is accompanied with six thousand horsemen: And therefore it is manifeste that not only for these thynges whereof we haue spoken, but also for dyuers other of lyke magnificence, hee is one of the greatest Kynges in the worlde. He coyne money and peeces of golde named *Pardios*. Also other silver money of lesse value, whiche they call *Fano*, conteynyng the value of sixtiene of the smallest money of copper. Traueylers may here goe safely through all his dominions, if they can auoyde the daunger of the Lions. Of theyr dyet and order of lyuynge, I will speake more largely where occasion shall serue to wyte of *Calecut*. This kynge of *Narsinga*, is a great friende to the Christians, and is in great amitie with the kynge of *Portugale*: and belyde him, hee knoweth none other Christian Prince: and therefore the *Portugales* are here friendly and honourably vsed. When I had remayned in this cite many dayes, I returned to the cite of *Canonor*. And after I had remayned there three dayes, I entered further into the lande, and came to a cite named *Trompata*, about twelue myles from *Canonor*.

The

The inhabitantes are Idolatours. It is neare vnto the sea, and therefore there are seene many merchantes *Mahumetans*. They lyue moderately, & haue in maner none other ryches then nuttes of *India*, but there are very fayre trees to make shyppes. There are in the cite aboute sixtiene thousande *Mahumetans*, although the Kyng be an Idolatour. Departyng from hence, I came to the cite of *Pandara*: and from thence passyng by the cite of *Capagot*, I came at the length to the famous cite of *Calecut*. And to be bryefe, I haue here ouerpasse to speake largely of many other people and kyngdomes, as are these, *Chianul*, *Dabul*, *Bathecal*, *Onoue*, *Bangolor*, *Caunor*, *Cachin*, *Cacilon*, and *Calonne*, which I haue done, to the ende that I may entreat more largely of *Calecut*, as the chiefe, and as it were the head and metropolitane of all the cities of *India*. For it is certayne that the Kyng of *Calecut* in royall maiestie exceedeth all the kynges of the East, and is therefore in theyr language called *Samory*, that is to say, God on the earth.

Mahumetans.  
Pandara.  
Capagot.  
Calecut.

The kynge of  
Calecut, a God  
on the earth.

The fyfth booke of East India, and fyrst of the famous cite of *Calecut*. Cap. I.

**T**he cite of *Calecut*, is situate byp on the continent or firme lande, and the sea beatech vppon the houses of the cite. There is no porte: but on the South syde about a myle from the cite, is a ryuer which runneth into the Ocean sea by a narrow mouth. This runneth by many byaunches into the playne felde, and is of the inhabitantes by diuers trenches dispearled to water the grounde. It is not past the depth of three or foure foote of water. The course of it bendeth toward the cite, and runneth into it. The cite is not compassed with walles, but conteyneth in circuite sixe thousande houses, not adherent or toynnyng together after the maner of ours, but by a certayne space distant one from the other, eyther for feare of fyre, or by ignorance of the builders. It is a myle of length. The houses are despicable, as no hygher from the grounde then a man on horsebacke, and are for the most parte couered with boughes of trees, in the steede of tiles or other coueryng. The cause whereof they say to bee, that in digging the grounde fyue or sixe hand-

The cite of  
Calecut.

Houses diuis  
ed.

Very low  
houses.

full depth, water immediately issueth forth. And therefore they can laye no deeper foundations to beare the weyght of any greater buyldynges. The houses of merchandys, or warehouses, are solde for fyftiene or twentie peeces of golde. But the common houses, are of no greater price then two peeces of golde at the most, and some for lesse.

Of the kyng of Calcut, and of their  
Idolatrie. Cap. 2.

Idolatrie and  
seruing of the  
deuyl.  
One God.

Pseudoplatoni-  
ci.

The deuyl  
Prince of this  
worlde.

Deumo, quasi  
Daemon.  
The Chapell of  
the deuyl.

The deuyls  
chappe of mas-  
terie.  
Difference be-  
tweene the Pa-  
pes crowne and  
the deuylles.  
A well fauour-  
red Prince.

**T**he kyng of Calcut and his people, are giuen to Idolatrie and seruing of the deuyl: yet deny they not but that there is one great God, maker of heauen and earth, and fyrst and chiefe cause of all thinges: But they adde thereunto a fable, saying that God coulde take no pleasure of his principate or dominion, if hee him selfe shoulde take vpon him the gouernement of the worlde, and therefore that he gaue the vicarage of that gouernance to the deuyl, who (they say) was sent from heauen for that purpose, and to iudge the worlde, rendering vnto men well or euill, accordyng to theyr deservyng. This deuyl they name *Deumo*: But the great God him selfe, they call *Iamerani*. The kyng hath a Chapel in his Pallace, where he honoureth this *Deumo*: the Chapell is open on euery syde the breadth of a vaulte of two pases, and is no hygher from the grounde then three pases. The entraunce is by a doore of wood, garnished with carued wooke, conteynyng the dyuers monstrous fourmes and shapys of deuylles. In the myddest of the Chapell, is a seate of maiestie made of copper, with also a deuyl of copper sitting in it. This deuyl hath on his head a crowne, after the maner of the byshop of Rome, but this hath ouerplus foure hornes, his mouth gapping, with foure notable teeth, a deformed nose, louryng and grymme eyes, a threatenyng looke, crooked handes lyke a fleshe hooke, and feete not much vnylike the feete of a Cocke: A monster doubtlesse horrible and fearefull to beholde. In euery corner of the Chapell sit such deuylles of shining copper, as though they were of flaming fyre, deuouryng soules miserably. These soules are about the byg-

nelle

nesse of halfe a finger, and some litle bigger. He putteth one soule in his mouth with the ryght hande, and with the lesse hande taketh an other from beneath. Euery mornyng the priestes (whom they call *Bramini*) washe the Idoll with rose water, and perfume him with sweete sauours, and lying prostrate on the grounde, pray vnto him. They sacrifice vnto him once a weeke. Theyr maner of sacrifice is this, They haue a litle cubbarde lyke vnto an Altar, three handfules hygh, foure handfuls brode, and fyue handfuls long: this cubbard they strawe with all maner of floures and sweete pouders. Then haupyng a great Chafingdyshe, or the lyke vessel of siluer, full of burnyng coles, they put the blood of the Cocke thereon, and also cast thereon innumerable sweete sauours: In the meane tyme also with sensours in theyr handes, they goe rounde about the Altar, makyng perfume with frankensence, ringyng a litle siluer bell all the whyle of the sacrifice. They kyll the Cocke with a siluer knyfe, and the knyfe also being raped with blood, they put often in the fyre, that no parte of the blood be lost. Sometyne haupyng the knyfe in theyr hande, they make certayne straunge gestures, much lyke to those which the masters of fenle vse in giuyng or auoyding of strokes. They neuer ceasse puttynge to more coles and spices or perfumes, vntill all the blood of the Cocke be burnt. The priest that offereth the blood of the Cocke, hath his armes and fecte garnished with siluer plates and pendants, in such sorte, that whyle he moueth, they make a certayne noyse, much lyke vnto sonettes or Haukes belles. He hath on his brest a certayne bosse, conteynyng I knowe not what secrete figure, which may seeme to be the secrete caract or signe of some myserie. The sacrifice being finished, he taketh both his handes full of wheate, and goeth from the Alter backward lyke a Crucie, neuer mouyng his eyes from the Alter, vntill he come to a certayne tree: where openyng his handes, he casteth the wheate on the tree. Then holdyng his handes aboue his head, he returneth to the Alter, and taketh away all that is thereon.

The deuylles  
ordinary dyet  
and deuilie  
meate.

*Bramini*,  
*Brackmani*.

The maner of  
sacrifice to the  
deuyl.

*Gallus Escu-*  
*lapio*.

A goodly priest  
the deuylles  
Chaplen.  
A counterfete  
Aaron.

Offeryng of  
wheate.

## Of the maner which the kyng vseth at his meate, Cap. 3.

The deuyl is  
serued before  
the kyng.

Chaplens of  
honour.

I thinke the  
Priestes take  
parte with the  
Crowes.

Crowes esteem  
ed holy.

**T**he Kyng doeth not sit downe to his meate, before foure of the priestes offer it to the deuyl, in this maner. Lifting theyr handes aboue theyr heades, with also many other fantasticall gesticulationz, and murmuring voyces, they offer the meate to the deuyl, & spende long tyme in those ceremonies, to the end that the kyng shoulde eate no meat that is not first offered to the deuyl. They offer the meate in a tray of wood, and therein laye it vppon the brode leaues of a certayne tree. His meat is Ryse, and dyuers other thinges, as fruite, fleshe, and fysh. He sitteth on the grounde without cloth or Carpet. The priestes in the meane tyme stande rounde about hym, but approcheth no nearer then foure or fyue pases, obseruyng diligently the kinges wordes. When the kyng hath leste eating, the priestes carry away all that is leste, and in a certayne place thereto appointed, offer it to certayne Crowes, which they keepe for the same purpose: And therefore being vsed to be thus fedde, geather togather at a signe gyuen them, and eate vp the meate. These crowes are therefore of them esteemed holy: and therefore it is not lawfull for any man to take them, or hurte them.

## Of the Priestes of Calecut, called Bramini, Cap. 4.

The priestes  
euer  
prouide for  
them selues.

As goodly office  
for a bishop.

**T**hese Bramini, are in place with them, as are the chiefe priestes or byshoppes with vs. Therefore when the king shall marrie, he lyeth not with his wyfe before shee be deflowered by the Archbyshop, yet taketh he not this vppon him without rewarde: for the kyng gyueth him for his labour fiftie peeces of golde. Only the kyng of Calecut keepeth this custome.

Of

## Of the dyuers sortes of Idolaters in the citie of Calecut, Cap. 5.

**T**he chiefeest Idolaters, and of the greatest dignitie, are the Bramini. They of the seconde order, are named Naeri. And in the same place with them, as are with gentlemen, whose office is when they go abroad to beare swoordes, targettes, bowes, launces, and other weapons. The thyrde order consisteth of mecanike or handie craftes men. In the fourth place, are vitaylers, and suche as make prouision of fysh and fleshe. Next vnto these, are they that geather Pepper, Wyne, Malnuttres, and suche other fruites and spices. The last and basest sort, (named Neraui) are they that sowe and geather Ryse. These, as the inferiour tribe of men, are in such subiection to the Bramini and Naeri, that in payne of death they may approche no nearer vnto them then .i. pases. And therefore they lye lurking in certayne shadowes and darke places, and maryshes, lest they shoulde suddenly chaunce to meete with them. Wherefore when they come abroad, that they may be hearde a farre off, they crye with loude voice I wotte neare what, that they may be hearde of the sayde Bramini and Naeri, least being soddenly betrapped, they shoulde be put to death.

Priestes and  
Gentlemen.

Poorer men  
haue no soutes

## Of the apparell of the kyng, queene, and Inhabitantes of the citie of Calecut. And of their maner of feedyng, Cap. 6.

**T**he apparell of the kyng and queene, is litle or nothyng differing from the other Idolaters: among the whiche the Dahumetans (as strangers) are not to be accompted. They couer onely theyr priuie partes with bombasine cloth or sylke, and are belyde all naked, barefooted also, and beareheaded. But the Dahumetans weare single apparell, reachyng only vnto the navel. The women are apparelled euen as are the men, sauyng onely that they lette theyr heare growe very longe. The kyng and nobilitie of the citie, eate no fleshe, except they first aske counsaile of the Priestes.

They are not  
troubled with  
garderobes, or  
making them  
redye morning  
and evening.

But



But the common people may eate what fleshe they wyll, excepte the fleshe of Kyne. But they of the basest sorte, named Nira-mi and Poliar, may eate onely fyshes dyed at the Sunne.

Of theyr custome after the death of the kyng .Cap. 7.

**A**fter the death of the kyng, if he haue any male chyldren lyving, or byethzen, or brothers chyldren, they succede not in the kyngdome: For of auncient lawe and custome, the septrer pertaineth to the kynges sisters sonnes, of whiche if there be none, it cometh to the next of the blood: And this, for none other cause (as they saye) but that the priestes haue deflowred the queene. When the kyng goeth abrode or on huntynge, the priestes, be they neuer so young, keepe the queene at home, and remayne neere about her: For there is nothynge moze acceptable to the kyng, then that the priestes shoulde so keepe companye with the queene. And therefore the kyng may well thynke that the chyldren borne of her, are not to be numbred amongst his chyldren, and therefore taketh the chyldren of his sisters, to be neerest of his blood, and ryght inheritours to the crowne. When the kyng is dead, all his subiectes, by cutting theyr beardes and shauynge theyr headdes, testifie how greenously they take his death. Yet heerein they vse not all one fashon, for some cutte onely part of the heare of theyr chynne, and some parte of the heare of theyr head, and other all: and so euery man as he doth phantasie. Durynge the tyme that they celebrate the funerals of the kyng, they that lyue by fshynge, forbeare fshynge for the space of eyght dayes. And when any of the kynges wyues dye, they obserue the lyke ceremonies as for the death of the kyng. The kyng sometyme, by a certayne supersticion, absteyneth from venery, or the company of women, for the space of a yeere: and lykewyse forbeareth to eate certayne leaues, whiche they call Betolas, beyng the leaues of Assyrian apples: whiche they vse not onely for delicates, but also because theyr propertie is to moue men greatly to wanton lusses.

For

The kynges children succede not to inherite the kyngdome.

What paynes the priestes take for theyr luyng, and what seruice they do the kyng.

Waldordes.

Mourning for the death of the kyng.

Chastitie and abstinence.

Meates that moue to cherie.

For the same purpose also they eate a certayne fruite, named Cossolo, somewhat lyke vnto Dates.

Of theyr chaungynge of wyues, Cap. 8.

**T**he gentelmen & merchauntes, to shew great curtesie and frendshyp one to the other, vse somtime to chaunge wyues, and therein vse this maner of speache: My freende, we haue nowe of long tyme lyued togeather as faythfull frendes, and therefore for the laste accomplisment of our frendshyppe, if it so please thee, lette vs chaunge wyues. Content sayth the other, for I beare thee euen as good wyll. The wyues refuse not to agree to the condition herein also, to please theyr hus bandes. Then the one byngeth his wyfe to the other, saying: Woman, this man shall hereafter be thy hus bande. The other sayth the lyke to his wyfe also. Thus all partes beyng agreed, they depart with frendly embrasyng: But the chyldren remayne with the fyrst hus bande. These Idolatars haue also diuers other customes: For among some of them, one woman is maryed to seuen hus bandes, of the whiche euery of them hath his nyght by course appoynted to lye with her: And when she hath brought forth a chyld, he may geue it or father it to whiche of them she lysteth: Who may in no case refuse it.

Great frendshyppe.

The maner of feedynge of the common people, of the Idolatars, and of theyr Iustice. Cap. 8.

**L**ying along on the grounde they eate theyr meate out of a trape of copper: For spoones, they vse certayne leaues of trees. Theyr meate commonly, is Ryle, fysh, spices, and frutes, of the commoner sort. The labourynge men or ruder sorte, eate so fylthyly, that puttynge theyr soule handes in the pottle, they take out ryle by handfuls, and so thrust it in theyr mouthes. They vse this kynde of Iustice for homicide. Where any hath slayne a man, he is thus punyshed.

Diogenist.e.

The punishment of manes there.

They

Beatyng.

In straunge man-  
ner to demand  
debte.Death for  
debte.Outward clea-  
nesse.Bramins  
bookke.

They haue a kynde of galows made in maner of a double crosse, where whyle the murtherer is tyed fast, one thynsteth a stake through his bodye, where the poore wretche so hangeth vntyl he be dead: But they that wounde or hurt any man, redeeme the faulte for mony payde to the kyng. They that are in debte, are thus enforced to paye the same. The creditour fyrst demaundeth his monye: and if it be founde that the debitour breake promysse, then he to whom the mony is owyng, goeth to one of the kynges scriueners (whiche are sayde to be a hundred) and before hym makyng betwe prooffe of the debte, receiueth of hym a greene wand of a tree, with auctoritie to prosecute his debitour vntil he haue found hym, where when he hath arrested him, with these woordes (go no further before thou paye me) thysse rehearsed, he sayth furthermoze thus: I charge thee by the head of *Bramini*, and by the head of the kyng, not to sturre from this place before thou paye me. There is no Gyfte but eyther to paye incontinent, or there to loose his lyfe. But if he be found alone, and escape after the sayd woordes, he is euer after adjudged a rebell, and therefore shall it be lawefull for any man to kyll hym wherfoeuer he is founde, within the kynges dominions.

## Of the honoring of Idolles. Cap. 9.

**V**hen they praye to theyr Idolles, in the mornynge before the Sunne ryse, they resorte to the pooles or ryuers to washe them: And so at their comynge home to theyr houses (where they keepe theyr Idolles) they touch nothyng before they praye to the Idolles prostrate on the grounde secretly: while they praye, they make certayne deuplythe gestikulacions lyke mad men, so maruelously desourmyng theyr faces, eyes, and mouthes, that no man can beholde it without horroure: and thus contynue their prayer a quarter of an houre. When the tyme of eatyng approacheth, they may not tal to theyr vittayles, before some one of the gentlemen haue dyessed it, and set it in order. But this custome is obserued onely among the gentlemen, or noble men. The women haue none other charge or care, then to dyesse and beautifie

Clenly women.

themselues, for their husbendes be not to haue to do with them before they be curiously washed, and perfumed with sundrye sweete sauours. When the women go abrode, it is maruelous to beholde howe they are behanged with iewels and precious stones, on theyr eares, armes, and legges.

## Of theyr maner of warre. Cap. 10.

**T**hey haue in the citie certayne maisters of fence, that teach them how to vse the sward, the target, the launce, and suche other weapons. When the kyng proceedeth to the warres, he is furnished with an armie of a hundred thousande footemen, for of horsemen there is no vse, but onely Elephantes: For the kyng hym selfe rydeth on an Elephant. They that are next to the kyng, weare about theyr heades, syllettes or bandes of sylke, of crymysyn or scarlet colour. Theyr weapons are certayne crooked swoordes, targets, launces, and bowes. The kynges ensigne, is a certayne thyng made of bowes of trees, implicate round like the couering of a tub, bozne by on a reede. This is bozne so that y shadow therof may couer the king from the heate of the Sunne: and is in their tongue, called *Somler*. When both the armies approche within thre arrowe shoote, the kyng sendeth his *Bramins* into the tentes of his enimies, in maner of haroldes to chalenge a hundred of them to come forth (if they dare) to combat agaynst a hundred of his *Naeres*, which before we said to be his gentlemen and chiefe strength of his army: which message done, both sydes prepare them selues to the battayle, and in the midway, fyrst a hundred fyght with a hundred. The whiche if they shoulde fyght continually for the space of thre dayes, woulde neuer stpyke with the poynt, but with the edge of the sward, and for the most parte at the head, and scldome at the legges. But when syue or syre are slayne, incontinent the *Bramini* on both partes make an ende of the fyght: and by theyr commaundement the retreat is sounded on both partes. Then agayne the *Bramini* (whiche are the chiefe priestes, as we haue sayde) on both sydes, speake vnto the kynges, and aske them if they wyll any moze. And thus for the most parte make they an ende of the quarrell and battayle, without great slaughter of men.

Maisters of  
fence.The kynges  
army.Their wea-  
pons.  
The kynges  
ensigne.The priestes.  
are haroldes.  
to chalenge to  
cumbatte.A great batt-  
tyle and litle  
bloodshed.

The

Mainstrells.

Blacke teeth.

The dead gentelmen are burnt, but the poore men are buried.

Copied mony.

Merchauntes resorte to Calecut.

Mahumetans of Calecut.

Their Shippes.

The kyng sometymes rydeth on an Elephant, and sometymes also is borne by his noble men, named *Nacri*. When he proceedeth, there folowe hym a great multitude of mynstrells, making a great noyle, with Tymberels, Tamberets, and suche other instrumentes. The styppende of the *Nacri* is foure *Carlines* euery moneth in peace, and syxe in tyme of warre: these haue theyr teeth very blacke, by eatyng of a certayne hearbe, whiche they much vse. When any of these are slayne, their bodies are burned, with great pompe, and many superstitions, and also theyr ashes reserued: but the common sort are buried, in diuers manners, for some are buried in their houses, some in their gardens, and other in feeldes, medowes, or wooddes. They coyne mony here, as in y<sup>e</sup> citie of *Narsinga*. When I was there, there was in y<sup>e</sup> citie merchants of almost all partes of the East, and especially a great number of *Mahumetans*, and many also of the region of *Melacha*, and *Bangella*: other also of *Tarnassari*, *Pego*, and *Ciriomandel*: some lykewyse of the Ilandes of *Zeylan*, and *Sumatra*, whiche is *Taprobana*: other of *Cholon*, *Caisolon*, and *Bathecala*: and almost innumerable other, of nations whose names are better knownen to vs, as *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Syrians*, *Turkes*, and *Ethiopiens*, and also many of the kyngdome of *Narsinga*, strangers of so many nations, were in the citie of *Calecut* whyle I remayned there. Understand furthermore, that the Idolators vse not to sayl on the sea, but that is appoynted to the *Mahumetans*, as meeter men for that purpose. And there is in the citie of *Calecut* moze then fyftee thousande *Mahumetans*, whiche were borne in the same citie.

Of their Shippes, and maner of saylyng on the sea. Cap. II.

Theyr Shippes are made no lesse then may suffice for the burden of foure or fyue hundred Tonne, & all open without any couerture. In the ioyntes of their Shippes they put no Towe, but ioyne the planks so artificially, that they holde out water very well: yet do they pytche the ioyntes, and make them fast with nayles of Iron. They do not forbear Towe for lacke therof, for they haue great plentie of Pempe and Flaxe. They haue planks or boordes and postes of diuers sortes, for they haue as good wood and better then we. Theyr sayles

sayles are of Bombasine cloth, and doubled in the neather part, whereby they geather moze wynde, and swell therewith, lyke a bagge: and in this they passe vs, byyng but only syngle sayles. They vse ankers of marble, of the length of eyght spannes, and on euery syde twoo: these they hang in the sea by double ropes, and besyde these, haue none other ankers. They haue certayne appoynted tymes and seasons of saylyng: for some tymes serue best for one coast, and some other, for other coastes and viages. The changes and also contrarietie of tymes, is there greatly to be considered: for when with vs al thynges for heate are almost froched, then haue they large shewes, as in the monethes of May, Iune, and Iuly. Their Shippes are of diuers quantities, as with vs, and therfore also of diuers names. They haue one sort of vessels made of one whole pece of wood, like a trough, very long, sharpe, and narrow: in these they vse both sayles and ores, and are therfore swyfter then our Gallies or Fopstes. The *Portugals* vse these very much. The best of their Shippes are made in an Ilande named *Porcai*, not farre from *Calecut*.

Ankers of marble, on euery syde twoo.

Seasons of the yere, contrarie to ours.

Diuers fashions of shippes and other vessels.

Of the Court or Palace of the kyng of Calecut. Cap. 12.

The Palace of the kyng of *Calecut* conteyneth no lesse then a myle in circuite, the wall is not hygh, the buyldyng is sayde, with beames or postes wel ioynyng the frame, and curiously wrought and carued with the figures & shapen of deuyls on euery syde. Why the walles be no hygher, we haue declared before, where we haue spoken of the lowe buyldyng of the houses of the citie: the cause wherof (as we haue saide) is the vnstable grounde, so ful of water, that they can dygge no deapth to lay fundation to beare hygher buyldynges. But what pearles and precious stones the kyng weareth vpon hym, can not be expressed for the greatnesse of the thyng: for doubtlesse it exceedeth all estimation. Although at the tyme of my beyng there, he was not geuen to ioyfulnesse, but lyued in greefe of mynde, as wel for the warres which the kyng of *Portugale* made agaynst hym, as also that he was discaied with the frenche poxe, which had now entred into his throte: neuerthelesse, his eares, armes, handes, legges, and feete, were so beautifullly and rychly garnished with all sortes of iewels and precious stones, that it can not be spaken.

A goodly palace.

Images of the deuyls to garnish the kynges palace.

The ryche iewels which the kyng weareth.

The kyng of Portugales warres agaynst the kyng of Calecut. The frenche poxe among precious iewels.

Unestimable  
treasure.

ken. His treasure is esteemed so unmeasurable, that it can not be conteyned in two wonderful great cellars or warchouses. This treasure consisteth of precious stones, plates of golde, and also so much copned golde as may suffice to lade a hundred Hales, as they *Bramini* reporte, to whom it is best known. They saye also that this treasure was geathered and reserved by twelue kynges whiche were before hym, and that in his treasure is a coier of thre spannes in length, and two in breadyth, full of only precious stones, of price inestimable.

Of the spices of Calecut. Cap. 13.

Pepper.

The pepper  
tree.

Clusters of  
pepper.

Senger.

**P**epper is geathered in the feeldes about the subarbes, and also in certayne places within the cite. The stalke of pepper is very weake, and lyke vnto vines, which can not beare it selfe, without the helpe of a stake or proppes, and is muche lyke vnto an Iuie, and in lyke maner crepeth and embraceth suche trees as are neere vnto it. This tree (or rather bushe) is dispersed into sundry branches, of the length of two or thre spannes, and hath the leaues lyke vnto the leaues of an Assyrian apple, but that these are somewhat thpycker and fatter. On euery twigge hange syxe clusters, no bygger then Dates, and lyke vnto clusters of litle grapes, and of the coloure of vnripe grapes, but growe thpycker. They are geathered in the moneth of October, and Nouember, inclynnyng yet to greene colour, and are so layde on mattes, and set in the Sunne to drye, where in the space of thre dayes, they become blacke, as they are brought hyther. The fruitfulness of these, proceedeth onely of the symple goodnesse of the soyle, without helpe of lopping or pruning. This region beareth also Synger, whiche is doublelle a roote, and is sometyme dygged of the weight of .xii. vnces, it entrecth no deeper into the grounde then thre or foure handefuls. When they dygge it out, they leaue the knotte or ioynt of the roote in the pitte, and couer it agayne with earth, as a seede for more agaynst the nexte yeere. It is founde in an equall soyle, as are the *Pyrolanes*: yet is the earth where it groweth, of very redde coloure. The stalke, is muche lyke the stalke of a young peare tree.

Of

Of the fruites of Calecut. Cap. 14.

**I**f I should describe all the sortes of straunge fruites that are seene there, it would rather require a volume, then a bryefe rehearsal of them particularly: For they haue not only many greatly differing from ours in fourme, sauour, and tast, but also to those of the kynde of such as we haue, differ in maner no lesse. Whereby may the naturall philosopher consider howe those thinges which are all of one kynde, differ accordyng vnto the nature of the soile and diuers situation vnder the heauens. By which natural cause, & alteration, some fruites and seedes, by transplanting into a better soile, become more perfect in their kind, as bigger, fatter, sweeter, and more fruitfull: As also contrariwise, the contrary, by transplanting into a worse soile, or colder region: which diuersitie is seene, not only in plantes and hearbes, but also in beastes, and euen in man kynde. It is very strange to consider howe diuersly trees beare theyr fruites and seedes, as some in one parte of the tree, and some in an other. There is in *Calecut* a fruite which they name *Iaceros*: the body of the tree, is of the bignesse of a Peare tree: the fruite is of the length of two handfuls and a halfe, & as hygh as the thygh of a man. The fruite groweth out of the body of the tree vnder the branches, and some euen in the very myddest of the tree, and other yet lower also. The colour is greene, and in fourme, in maner lyke vnto a *Pyne* apple, but with lesse graines or knobbes: when it is ripe, it becommeth blacke. It is geathered in the moneth of December. It hath the taste of a *Pepon*, and the sauour somewhat like *Castoreum*. It seemeth in eatyng to gyue dyuers and sundry pleasant tastes: as sometyme the taste of a *Peache*, sometyme of a *Pomegranate*, and leaueth at the ende a taste so swete, that you would thynke it to be newe honny combes. Under the skynne, it is lyke vnto a *Peache*. And within the body containeth an other frut, not much vnlyke soft *Chestnottes*, and beyng roasted, hath the same taste, and is therefore certaynely one of the goodlyest fruites that I knowe. I wil here, to be bryefe, omit to speake muche of their *Nottes*, and *Walnottes*, *Almons*, *Pynes*, *Peaches*, *Quinces*, *Gourdes*, *Pelous*, and suche other fruites knowne to vs, and

See. i.

yet

Fruitess vnlyke  
ours.

A philosophical  
consideration  
of the difference  
of thinges of  
one kynde.

A great fruite  
growing out  
of the body  
of the tree.

Apple fruites in  
December.  
A fruite of sundry  
tastes.

One fruite  
within an other

A tree with be-  
ry byde leaues.

A very goodly  
fruite.

Two hundred  
fruites on eu-  
ery syppe.

A tree that ne-  
uer beareth  
fruit but once.

Fruitcs and  
floures geathe-  
red at all tymes  
of the yeere.

yet much more pleasaunt and sayrer then are ours. There is one fruite woorthie to be knowen, which they call *Apolanda*. The tree groweth to the height of a man, it beareth not past foure or five leaues hangyng by certayne syppes, euery leafe is able well to couer a man from rayne, and the heate of the sunne: In the myddest of the leafe, riseth a twyg or stalke, lyke the stalke of a beane, which byingeth out floures and also fruites of a handfull long, and of the bignesse of a mans arme: these fruites are geathered vnrype, bycause they become rype in keepyng. Euery syp beareth about two hundred fruites, a thyng certaynely wherein is greatly seene the fruitfulness of nature. They touche one another, and cluster togeather. They are of yelow colour, and haue a berry thyn codde, and are in eatyng delicate and holefome. There are three sortcs of this kynde of fruite, of the which one is of euill taste, and therefore not so much esteemed. It is yet more straunge, that this tree beareth fruite but once, yet when it dyeth, there ryse about the roote thereof fytie or threescore young syppes, whiche renue the lyfe of theyr parent, that he dye not without succession. The gardeners or graffers transplante these in other places, for within the space of one yeere they bring forth fruite. They are geathered in great abundance almost all the whole yeere, and are therefore very good cheape, and of small pryce, as twentie for a penny. The same soyle beareth lykewyse innumerable and most sayre and sweete floures all the yeere long, and especially Rholes, both white, redde, and yelow.

Of a most fruitfull tree of all the world. Cap. 15.

**T**here is also an other tree, most woorthie to be knowen, the which in fruitfulness, and sweetness of the fruit, passeth all the trees of the worlde. It beareth certayne fruites lyke vnto great Dates or Nuttes, & generally byingeth forth tenne commodities: For it beareth wood most apte to nourishe fyre, and Nuttes very pleasant to be eaten, also cordes or ropes which may well serue for saylers: Lykewyse very fyne cloth,

This tree in  
the west India,  
is called Coc-  
cus.

Ten commodi-  
ties of one  
tree.

cloth, which when it is coloured, sheweth lyke silke: The wood is the best that may be founde to make coles, it yeldeth also wine and odoriferous water: Furthermore also, oyle, and suger. The boughes of the tree, are commodious to couer houses in place of ryles or thetche: for by reason of the closenesse and fatnesse of the leaues, they keepe out the rayne very well. The fruite of this tree (as we haue sayde) is in forme lyke vnto great Dates or Nuttes. One tree beareth about two hundred of those fruites. Takyng away the first ryme, they put it in the fyre, where it burneth quickly and with great flame. The seconde fruite vnder the sayde first ryme, is muche lyke vnto bombasine or silke, and is lyke vnto flaxe when it is wrought. Of the floures, they make a certayne kynde of cloth, not vnylyke silke. The towne or refuse of the first flaxe, they spinne and make thereof a grosser cloth, and small ropes or cordes: & of the smallest, wreathed togeather, they make greater ropes, which may serue for shippes. That parte of the Nut which is vnder the third ryme, conteyneth also a substance apte to make coles. The last ryme, includeth the substance or cornell of the Nutte, very delicate to be eaten. This ryme or barke, is of the thiknesse of a mans litle finger. As the Nutte groweth in bignesse, so doeth also the water conteyned therein. So that the Nutte commyng to his full ripenesse and bygnesse, the water occupieth the inner parte: and sometyme is founde so much water in the Nutte, that you may take out of euery Nutte two or three cuppes of water, very sweete to be dronke, and as cleere as Rose water, of the which also being thickened by seethyng, is made very fatte oyle. The Nutte likewise it selfe, is of very pleasant taste. They suffer but one parte of the tree to bring forth fruite: For on the other parte or syde, they cutte and wounde the tree in diuers places euery morning and euenyng, and powre into the wounded places a certayne liquor, which draweth out of the tree a ioise, which falleth into vesselles placed to receyue it, and so receyue they euery day and nyght in euery vessel, a cuppe of most precious liquor, which sometymes also they seeth at the fyre, putting euer more vnto it, vntill it come to the strength of *Aqua vita*, and troubleth the brayne both in sauour and dymyng, as doeth most strong wyne. On an other braynche of the same tree, they geather lykewyse suger, but not very sweete.

Ce. ii.

The

*Nux Indica.*  
They are as big  
as a mans foot,  
and some byg-  
ger.

Very sweete  
and cleare wa-  
ter within a  
Nutte.

Oyle made of  
water.

Wayne of cutte  
branches of a  
tree.



A tree that beareth fruite continually all the whole yeere.

The tree beareth fruite continually: for there are seene on it both the olde and nye frutes of the season passe, & also greene frutes of the newe spring. It beareth not before the fifth yeere. These trees are founde in the space or distaunce of about two hundred myles. They are so greatly esteemed, that in the myddest of most cruellist warres, it is not lawfull for any man to hurt them, even in the landes of theyr enemies. They lyue but to the age of. xxv. yeeres. They prosper best in sandy groundes, and are set or planted as are Walnuttes. This region hath also other frutes wherof they make good oyle.

Gile.

Howe they sowe Ryse. Cap. 16.

Ploughing of the ground.

They tye the ground and plough it with Oxen as we doe when the tyme approacheth to sowe Ryse, they testifie the ioyfulness of that day with all sortes of instrumentes, singing & dauncing. And in the way of their good speed, that all thinges may prosper the better (as they belceue) they disguise ten men in apparell, to the similitude of the thre deuylls, and daunce about them with all the noyse of theyr instrumentes. And thus celebratyng the festiuall day, they pray the deuylls good grace to sende them plentie of Ryse.

A daunce of deuylls.

Solem suum oriri facit super bonos et malos. &c.

Howe theyr Phisitians visite sicke folkes. Cap. 17.

When any merchaunt of the Idolaters is sore greued with any disease, and in maner neare vnto death, then certaine of them, which they take for phisitians, called to visite the patient in this extremitie, come thither in the silence of the nyght, apparelled lyke the deuyll (as is aforesayde) caryng fyre stikes in theyr mouthes and handes. And there, with a madde crye and howlyng, and with the tangelyng of certayne instrumentes, maketh so horrible a noyse in the eares of the sicke man, that it were enough to make a whole man sicke. And this is all the remedie and comfort which their phisitians bring to their sicke men, whiche is none other, then in the article of death to present vnto them the similitude of him whom they (woyse then deuylls) honour for gods vicar: Etyher

The deuyll a phisitian.

Such a phisitian such phisicke

Etyher meanyng perhappes by this meanes, to call agayne the sicke man almost dead. When the inhabitantes haue so ingored them selues with to muche meate, that they be sicke in theyr stomake, they take the poudre of the rootes of ginger, and making it in fourme of a sirupe, with puttyng some liquoz vnto it, drinke it all by, and within thre dayes recouer theyr health.

A remedie for surseping.

Of theyr Exchaungers, bankers, and Brokers. Cap. 18.

Their exchaungers and bankers, haue weyghtes and balances so little, that the boze, with the weightes and all that perticneth therto, passeth not the weight of an ounce, and are made so tuste, that the weight of a heare will cast them. When they will trye true golde from false, or bale from fyne, they vse the touche stone, as we doe, but haue this moze then we: They haue a ball composed (I know not whereof) and lyke vnto ware, and when they haue first rubbed the golde on the touche, they rubbe likewise the touche on the sayd ball, where then the spottes of the golde remayne, and thereby they knowe a moze exacte prooffe of the finenesse or balenesse of the gold. When the sayde ball is full of gold, they melt it in the fyre, & geather the gold which it had imbibed. These exchaungers are but grosse witted men, and ignorant of the arte which they professe. In buying and selling of merchandies, they vse this maner. They haue a broker, whose helpe they vse in these affayres. Therefore when the merchautes come thither, then the broker, hauyng with him a bayle or scarfe, taketh the seller by the ryght hande, and couereth it with the baile. Then doth the merchant number on his fingers, from one vnto a hundred thousand, priuily & secretly, & then the seller also with lyke numbyng of his fingers and ioyntes, vntyll he come to the number of the price of his merchandies. Then the broker goeth agayne to the buyer, and coueryng his handes with the bayle in lyke maner, and numbyng of his fingers, certifieth him howe muche the seller demaundeth for his ware, then the buyer agayne, by feelyng and numbyng the brokers fingers, signifieth what he will gyue the seller for his merchandies. And

Fyne weightes and balances.

A strange experiment to know the fyne golde from bale.

Proxenetes. A superstitious maner of buying and selling.

See. iii.

thus

thus the broker goeth to and fro, shewyng both theyr meanyng with silence vntyll they be agreed. They sell theyr cloth by measure: but theyr spices and Jewelles by weyght.

Of the inhabitantes of Poliar and Hiraua, and how they nourysh their children. Cap.19.

**T**he women weane theyr children when they come to the age of thre monethes, and afterward nourysh them with Goates milke: and when in the morning they haue giuen them milke, they comble them in the sandes all foule & filthie, where they let them lye all the day, and are so scorched of the Sunne, that farre of they seeme like Busses Calues, I neuer sawe moze deformed or filthie creatures: at euenyng, theyr mothers gyue them milke agayne. By this kinde of wyld bringyng vp, they become men of marueylous dexteritie in swiftnesse of runnyng, and other thinges of great agilitie, as to walke vppon ropes, swymmyng, leapyng, vaultyng, and such lyke.

Of foure footed beastes, foules, and birdes of Calecut. Cap.20.

**T**here are many beastes and kyndes of birdes, as Lions, wilde Bores, Hartes, Hyndes, Busses, Wyne, Goates, and Elephantes: yet not all engendred there, but brought thither partly from other places. There are also parottes of sundry colours, as greene, purple, & other mixte colours. There is such multitude of them, that there are men appointed to keepe them from the Ryle in the fieldes, as we vse to keepe Crows from the cozne. They are marueylous cryyng and chattering, and of small price, as one solde for two penle, or halfe a soule. There are many other birdes much vnylike to ours, which euery morning and euenyng make so great a noyse & sweete singing, that nothing can be moze pleasant or delectable to heare, and therefore the inhabitantes lye in great pleasure, and in maner as it were in an earthly Paradyse, in continuall spring and flourishyng of floures, hearbes, & trees, all the yere long: besyde also the goodly and hollome temperatenesse of the ayre, being neither extreme

Little payne or  
cost for nour-  
ishyng of childyen.

Funambuli,

Dopingapes or  
Parottes.

A great noyse  
of birdes.

An earthly Pa-  
radyse.  
Continuall  
spring, and tem-  
perate ayre.

hotte nor colde, but in maner in temperature of continuall spring tyme. That region hath also Donkeys, which are there of small price. These are very hurtfull to husbandmen, and such as liue by tillage of the ground: for they clyme the trees of those goodly Indian Nuts & precious fruite, wherof we haue spoken here before, of the which they make wyne, which these beastes do spill, and cast downe the vesselles that are made faste there to receyue the sayde liquoz of wyne.

Of certayne Serpentes which are seene in Calecut. Cap. 21.

**T**here are certayne Serpentes, of such bignesse, that they are equal to swine, theyr heads are much greater then the heads of Bores: they are foure footed, and of the length of foure cubites, and are engendred in marishes. The inhabitantes say that they are without poison, and doe not otherwyle hurt, then by bytyng. There are furthermore thre kyndes of Serpentes: of the which, some are of so strong poison, that if they drawe neuer so litle blood, present death foloweth, whiche thing chaunced oftentimes whilest I was there. Of these kyndes of serpentes, some are of the bignesse of an Aspe, & many much bigger. Of these there are a very great number. The cause wherof (they say) is this: That the kyng of Calecut, of a certayne foolish superstition, maketh so great account of these Serpentes, that he causeth litle houses or cottages to be made for them, besceuyng that they haue vertue against ouer much raine & ouerflowing of riuers, and therefore if a man kill any of them, he is punished with death, as though he had killed a man: and the like punishment is also for him that killeth a cowe. They greatly esteeme these Serpentes, bicause (as they say) they came from heauen, and therefore they take them for heauenly spirites, which they affirme, for that only with touching, they bring present death. And this is the cause that there are many serpentes, being thus permitted by the commaundement of the king. These serpents know the Idolaters inhabitants from Dahumetans or other strangers, and will sooner venture vppon them. When I was there, I came into a house where eight men lay dead and greatly swolne, whiche the day before were killed by these serpents, yet doe they esteeme it for good lucke, when going abrode, they meete with any of them.

Donkeys doe  
much hurte.

Crocodiles  
without poison.

Thre kyndes  
of Serpentes.

Serpentes su-  
perstitiously  
kept and nour-  
ished.

Death for kyl-  
lyng a Serpent  
or a Cowe.

Because they  
goe naked.

Superstition.

See. liti,

Of

Of the lightes and Lampes which are  
seene in the Pallace of the kyng  
of Calcut. Cap. 22.

**I**n the kynges Courte or Pallace, are diuers mansions, and  
very many chambers, and therefore in the euening when it  
wareth darke, there are seene innumerable burning Lampes.  
In the hall of the pallace, are seene ten or twelue candellsticks  
of laton, very fayre, and of cunnyng workemanshpy, muche lyke  
vnto goodly fountaynes, and of the heyght of a man. In eche of  
them are dyuers bestelles, and in euery vessel three candels light,  
of two spannes length, and great plentie of oyle. In the first bes-  
sell, are many Lampes made of cordes of bombasine cotton. In  
the myddle part, is seene a narrower vessel, also full of lampes and  
lightes. In the lowest vessel also the like number of lightes. But  
in an other vessel in the toppes of all the candellsticke, are in maner  
innumerable lightes, mainteyned with oyle, and haue matches of  
bombasine cotton. At the angles or corners of these candellsticks,  
are the Images of deuils, whiche also holde the lightes that are  
in the kinges presence. When any of the kinges blood dyeth, hee  
sendeth for all the Bramini or priestes of his realme, & commaund  
them to mourne for the space of a yeere. At theyr commyng, hee  
banquetereth them thre dayes together, and at theyr departyng,  
giueth eche of them fyue peeces of golde.

Of the great multitude of Idolaters which resort to  
Calcut, for pardon of their sinnes. Cap. 23.

**N**ot farre from the citie of Calcut, is a certayne churche  
or Temple, compassed about with water, lyke an Island,  
bulded after an auncient fashon, hauing a double order  
of pillars, much lyke the Temple of saint Iohn De Fon-  
te in the citie of Rome. In the myddest of the Temple, is an Altar  
of stone, where the people sacrifice to Idolles. Betweene the pil-  
lars on hygh, is a Boate of the length of two pases, and full of  
oyle. Also rounde about the Temple, are many trees with an  
innumerable multitude of Lampes & lightes hanging on them.

Goodly candels  
sticks of laton.

Polixines et  
Polychni,

Innumerable  
lightes and  
Lampes.

The deuill ser-  
ueth in the  
kynges cham-  
ber.

Mourning the  
space of a yeere.

The Temple of  
sacrifice to  
Idolles.

Trees behan-  
ged with Lam-  
pes.

The temple also it selfe, is as ful of lightes. The .xxv. day of De-  
cember, resorteth thither an infinite multitude of people, from all  
partes, euen for the distance of .xx. dayes iorney, and especially  
of the priestes, to whom parteyneth the order of sacrificyng:  
But they do not sacrifice vnto theyr Idolles before they walke  
them selues in the water whiche is about the Temple. When  
the priestes assende to the place whereas is the boate fylled with  
oyle (as we haue said) they spyncke the people with the sayd oyle,  
but annoynte onely their heads: Who beyng so annoynted, may  
then proceede to the sacrifice. On the one syde of the altar, where  
they sacrifice, is seene a most horrible fourme of a deuyl, to whom  
the people, prostrate on the grounde, praye vnto, and then depart  
to theyr houses and countreys. By this meanes they beleue  
that all theyr synnes are quite forgeuen them, and therefore for  
the space of thre dayes, they lyue there in safegarde, as if it were  
in Sanctuarie: and for that tyme, is it not lawfull for any man  
to arrest or trouble an other for what so euer quarell. Certainly  
I neuer saw in any place a greater multitude of people assem-  
bled, except in the citie of Mecha.

Washing bes-  
foze sacrifice.

Holy oyle in  
the steade of ho-  
ly water.

Sacrifice to the  
deuill for for-  
geuenesse of  
synnes.

Sanctuary.  
Large is the  
war that lea-  
deth to perdis-  
tion. &c.

The fyxt booke containyng  
the voyage of India,

Of the Cities of Caicolon, and Colon, Cap. I.



**M**y faythfull companion Cociazenor the Per-  
sian (of whom I haue made mention here  
before) consydering that by the meanes of  
warres and imminent daungers, there  
was now no place for merchaundies, espe-  
cially for that the Portugales had made  
soe warres and great slaughter in the citie  
of Calcut, by occasion that the inhabitantes of the citie had con-  
spired with the Dahumetans for the murther of eight and fourtie  
Portugales (whiche was done at my beyng there) I thought it  
best in tyme to depart from thence. This facte so greatly moued  
the kyng of Portugale to reuenge, that he hath since that tyme  
kept hostile warres agaynst them, and greatly consumed them.

The kyng of  
Portugals  
warres in the  
citie of Calcut.

Caicolon.

Pepper.

Christians of  
the profession of  
saint Thomas.

Colon.  
An armie of .xx.  
thousande hoys  
men.

Pearles.

and defaced their cite. We therfore departing from thence by a  
very fayre ryuer, came to a cite named *Caicolon*, distaunte from  
the cite of *Calecut* fiftie leagues: the inhabitantes are idolaters.  
There is great aboundaunce of merchaundies, and great fre-  
quentation of merchautes: the soyle beareth plentie of the best  
kynde of pepper. The kyng of the cite is not very ryche. In ap-  
parel and maners, they differ litle from them of *Calecut*. Heere  
we founde certayne merchantes, Christians, named of the pro-  
fession of saint Thomas the Apostle. They obserue the fastyng  
of fourtie dayes, as we do, and beleue in the death and resurrec-  
tion of Christ, as we do, and therfore celebrate Easter after  
our maner, and obserue other solemnities of our religion, after  
the maner of the Greekes. They are commonly named by the  
names of John, James, Matthias, and Thomas. Departyng  
from thence, in the space of thre dayes iorney we came to an  
other cite, named *Colon*, about twentie myles distant from the  
aforesayde. The kyng is an idolater, and a prince of great pow-  
er, haupng euer an armie of twentie thousande hoysmen: there  
is a very fayre port. Neare to the sea syde the soyle beareth no  
corne, yet great aboundaunce of fruite and pepper, as in the cite  
of *Calecut*: but by reason of the warres we remayned no longer  
heere. Not farre from hence, we sawe men fythe for pearles, in  
maner as we haue sayde befoze of the cite and Islande of *Ormus*.

Of Cyromandel, a cite of India. Cap. 2.

Zeilon.  
Comerin.

**T**he cite of *Cyromandel* is by the sea syde, and distant from  
the cite of *Colon* seuen dayes saylyng. The cite is very  
large, but without walles: it is subiecte to the kyng of  
*Narsinga*, and is within the syght of the Island of *Zaylon*.  
After that you are past the poynt of *Comerin*, the soyle beareth  
plentie of Ryse. This cite is in the way to diuers great regions  
and cities: It is inhabited with innumerable *Bahumetan* mer-  
chantes, resortyng thither from many countreys. There are  
no spyes, but aboundaunce of fruite, as in *Calecut*.

I founde

I founde there certayne Christians, who asseyne that the bodye  
of saint Thomas the Apostle is there in a certayne place, about  
twelue myles from this cite, and also that there are certayne  
Christians whiche relygiouly obserue the holy body: and that  
the Christians are euyl bled, because of the warres whiche the  
kyng of Portugall hath made agaynst the people of these coun-  
treys. Also that the Christians are sometyme murdered secret-  
ly, lest it shoulde be knowen to the kyng of *Narsinga*, who is in  
amitie and frendshyppe with the kyng of Portugall, and  
greatly fauoureth the Christians. The cause whereof (as they  
saye) is also partly by reason of a certayne myracle, whiche was  
this. The Christians on a tyme had a great conflict with the  
*Bahumetans*, where one of the Christians beyng sore wounded  
on his arme, resorted incontinent to the sepulchre of saint Tho-  
mas, where makyng his prayers, & touchyng the holy place, his  
arme was immediatly healed. Whereupon (as they saye) the  
kyng of *Narsinga* euer after greatly fauoured the Christians.  
Here my companion solde muche of his wares. But by reason  
of the warres betweene the kynges of *Narsinga* and *Ternaseri*,  
we determined to depart from hence. And therfore saylyng o-  
uer a gulfe of .xx. leagues with great daunger, we arrived at an  
Island named *Zailon*, very large, as containing in circuite a thou-  
sande myles.

The bodie of  
Thomas the  
Apostle.

The kyng of  
Narsinga  
frende to the  
Portugalls.

A myracle as the  
sepulchre of  
Thomas.

Of the Islande of Zailon, and the precious  
stones founde there. Cap. 3

**I**n this Islande are foure kynges of great dominion, by reason  
of the largenesse of the Islande. But because of the warres a-  
mong them at my beyng there, I coulde not tarye long to  
haue particular knowledge of the region and maners of the  
people. There are in the Islande many Elephantes. There  
is also a very long mountayne, at the foote whereof, are founde  
many precious stones, named *Pirapi*, commonly called Rubines,  
or Rubies. The merchautes iewelers, come by them by this  
meanes.

Foure kynges  
in one Island.

Elephantes.  
Rubie stones.

Fyft

First, goyng to the kyng, they bye of hym a certayne measure of that grounde where suche stones are founde, of the largenesse of a cubite euery way. The price of this, is fyue peeces of gold: yet with suche condition, that in dyggynge the grounde, there is euer one present for the kyng, to the ende that if in dyggynge be founde any of those precious stones exceedyng the weyght of x. Caractes, the same to be reserued for the kyng. And the rest that are founde vnder that wayght, to apparteyne to the merchaunt. Not farre from the sayde mountayne, are founde diuers other sortes of precious stones, as Iasynthes, Saphires, Topales, and suche lyke. Harde by the mountayne, runneth a great ryuer. The soyle byngeth forth the sweetest frutes that euer I sawe, especially cloues, and apples of *Assiria*, of exceedyng sweetnesse, and all other, as in *Calecut*.

Precious  
stones.

Of the tree of Cinamome in the  
Iland of Zaylon. Cap. 4.

**T**he tree of Cinamome is not much vnlike a Baye tree, especially the leaues, it beareth berryes as both the Baye tree, but lesse, and whyte: It is doubtlesse therefore none other then the barke of a tree, and is geathered in this maner. Euery thyrde yeere they cutte the branches of the tree. Of this, is great plentie in the sayde Ilande. When it is fyrste geathered it is not yet so sweete, but a moneth after when it waxeth drye. A certayne Dahumetan merchaunt of the Ilande, tolde my companion, that there in the top of a hygh mountayne is a certayne denne, whither the inhabitantes of the countrey resort to praye, in memozye of our fyrst father Adam, who (they saye) after he had synned by breakyng the commaundement of God, lyued in that place in continuall penitence. Whiche thing they asseyne by this coniecture, that there is yet seene the print of the steppes of his feete, of the length of almost two spannes. The inhabitants are subiect to the kyng of *Narsinga*, and paye hym tribute. The region is of temperate ayre, although it be situate in maner vnder the Equinoctiall lyne. The people are of darke tawny colour. They appaill, are certayne single clokes

Howe Cinamome is geathered.

A denne where Adam lyued in penance.

Temperate regions vnder the Equinoctiall lyne.

clokes of bombasine cloth, whiche they weare, bearyng euer the ryght arme out all naked, as is the maner of all the Indians. They are no warrellyke men, neyther haue they the vse of Iron. Here my companion tolde to the kyng muche Saffran and Coralles.

Saffran and  
Corall.

Of Paleachet, a citie of India. Cap. 5.

**D**epartyng from the Ilande of Zailon, in three dayes saylyng we came to a citie named *Paleachet*, subiecte to the kyng of *Narsinga*. It is a famous marre of ryche merchaundies, and especially of iewels and precious stones, brought thither from *Zailon* and *Pego*. There is also great plentie of spices. There dwell in the citie many Dahumetan merchauntes, where we beyng receiued in one of theyr houses, tolde hym from whence we came, and what merchaundies we brought, as Saffran, and Coralles, whereof he was very glad. The citie hath great scarcenesse of coyne, but plentie of Ryle: and in other fruitfulnessse of the soyle and maner of the people, much lyke vnto *Calecut*. But because they were at dissention with the kyng of *Tarnassari*, and prepared warres agaynst hym, we departed from thence, and in .xiii. dayes saylyng, arryued at the citie of *Tarnassari*, a hundred myles distant.

Of Tarnassari, a citie of India. Cap. 6.

**T**his citie is not farre from the sea, and situate on a meetly equall grounde, well walled, hauyng also a famous porte, and a very fayre ryuer runnyng on the North syde of the citie. The kyng is an Idolatour, and a prince of great power. He keepeth continuall warre with the kyngs of *Narsinga* and *Bangella*. He byngeth to the feelde a hundred Elephanthes, of the fayrest and byggest that euer I sawe. He hath an armie of an hundred thousand pencionarie footmen, & as many horsemen. Theyr weapons are swoordes, rounde targettes, peltes, bowes, barres, and laucels of great and long reedes.

Elephants.

An armie of a hundred thousand footmen.

They



They are also armed with iackes made of bombasine cotton, wrought very harde, and closely couched. They houses are walled, and continent in order as ours are. The region byng-ethfooth wheate, bombasine, sylke, of sundye kindes of colours, Brasile, and sundye kyndes of frutes, muche lyke unto ours. Also apples of *Assiria*, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Gourdes, Cucumbers .&c.

Frutes.

Of the wylde and tame beastes of the  
citic of Tarnassary. Cap.7.

**T**his region byngethfooth many beastes both wylde and tame. The tame beastes, are Oxen, Kyne, Sheepe, Gotes, Hogges, Hartes, and Hyndes. The wylde beastes, are Lions, Molues, Cattes of the mountayne, and also Puskecattes. In the feeldes are many Peacocks, and those kynde of Eagles whiche we call Falcons. Hoppingays also of Parrottes, marueylous fayre, of the which some are white, and other of seuen colours. There is lykwysse great plentie of Hares, and Partriges, and diuers other sortes of great byrdes liuyng by prape, muche bygger then Eagles: for of the upper parte of their bekes, they make hafes for swoordes. The becke is of yelowe colour, distincte with crimline, very fayre and beautifull to be seene. But the byrde is blacke and purple, with certayne whyte feathers intermyxt. There are also the byggest Hennes and Cockes that euer I sawe: and therefore thynhabitants and Mahumetans which dwell there, take muche pleasure in Cockefyghe, and laye great wagers in that kynne of spote. I haue seene them fyghte for the space of fyve houres, and yet sometymes they kyll one another at the fyrst stroke. There are certayne Gotes farre exceedyng ours in byggenesse, and muche fayrer: these are so fruitefull, that at one byrth they byng forth foure young kyddes. There is so great abundaunce of beastes, that twelue weathers are sold for one peece of golde to the value of a crowne or pistolet. There are also certayne weathers or rammes with hornes lyke unto buckes hornes, and are muche bygger and fyrcer then ours.

Wylde beastes.

Peacocks.  
Falcons.  
Hoppingays.A great and  
fayre foule.Cocke fyght-  
ing.Fruitefull  
Gotes.Rammes with  
buckes hornes.

Their

They Buffles are not so fayre as ours. The region hath also a-bundaunce of fysh, very bygge and good, and of small pryce. These people cate all maner of beastes, excepte Kyne. They eate on the grounde without carpet or other cloth: yet haue they vessels of woodde artificially made. They dynke is water and sugar: they beddes are rayled from the grounde, after the maner of ours. They couche is of bombasine cotton, and the couerynges of sylke. They apparell, is a cloke or mantell of bombasine or sylke, with one arme out, all bare. But some of the merchauntes, weare inner vestures or shirtes of sylke or bombasine cloth. They go all barefooted, except the priestes, whiche weare on they heads certayne rayles or crestes of two spannes long, with a knotte on the crowne lyke unto an Acozne, and sparkled with golde. They delyght also in earringes: but weare neyther rynges nor bzalletes. The colour of the inhabitantes inclyneth to whyte, for the temperature of the climate or ayre, is colder then at *Calecut*. They maner of cyllage, and geatheryng of fruite, is lyke unto ours.

Of the maner which the kyng of Tarnassarie  
vseth, when he permitteth his wyfe to be  
desfloured of white men. Cap.8.

**T**his kyng vseth not to geue his wyfe to the priestes to be desfloured, as doth the kyng of *Calecut*, but committerh this facte to whyte men, as to the Christians or Mahumetans, for he wyll not suffer the Idolaters to do this. The inhabitantes lykwysse haue not to do carnally with they wyues, before some whyte man, of what so euer nation, haue syde the breakyng of them.

The maner of burnyng dead bodyes in the  
citic of Tarnassary. Cap.9.

**V**hen the kyng or any of the priestes or gentlemen dye, their bodies are burnt in a great fyre made of a pile of wood: then all the whyle they sacrifice unto the deuyll. Their ashes are referued in certayne pottes of the earth of *Samos*, and buryed in they houses. They

They sacrifice in þ shadows of trees as do they of *Calecut*. *Whilke* the bodies are burnyng, they cast in the fyre all maner of sweete sauours, as Aloes, Pyre, Frankelence, Storax, Sandals, Corall, and innumerable suche other sweete gummes, spices, and trees. These make the fyre muche greater, encreasynge the flame by reason of theyr gummositie: in the meane tyme also they neuer ceasse to make a great noyse with Trumpettes, Pipes, Drummes, Tambarells, and suche other instruments, not muche vnlke the ceremonies whiche in olde tyme were vsed among the gentiles in canonisynge theyr saines. Furthermore, buryng these funeralls, there are xv. or. xx. disguised lyke deupls, whiche continually walke rounde about the fyre, with many strange gesticulations, after the maner of reioycyng. The wyfe also of the burned kyng or priest, standeth by the fyre alone, without the compaigny of any other woman, lamentyng and beatyng her brest. These ceremonies are done the seconde watche of the nyght. Within fyfene daies after, the wyfe biddeth to a banquette all her hus bandes kynfolkes, and when they come at a daie appoynted, they go al to the place where her hus bande was burnt, and at the same houre of the nyght: then cometh forth the wyfe, garnished with all her iewells and best apparell, vsyng therein the helpe of all her kynfolkes. In the same place is made a pytte, no deeper then may serue to receiue the woman: This pytte, is sette about with reedes, and the reedes are couered with a cloth of sylke, that the pytte may not be seene. In the meane tyme also a fyre is made in the pye, with sundry sorts of sweet woods: the wyfe, after that her gesses haue well banqueted, eateth very muche of a certayne meate whiche they call *Betola*, whiche troubleth her mynde as though she were halfe madde or drunken. In the meane whyle, a great company of suche theyr musitions as we haue spoken of before, apparelled like deupls, with burnyng stikes in theyr mouthes, daunce first about the pytte, and then make sacrifice to the great deupl *Deumo*. The wyfe also in þ meane season runneth vp and dowe lyke a madde body, with countenaunces of dauncyng and reioycyng. Then turnyng her to them that are disguised lyke deupls, she commendeth her selfe to theyr deuoute prayers, desyryng

Canonisynge of saines.

The wyfe burneth her selfe after the death of her hus band.

Dauncyng deupls.

Sacrifice to the deupl.

desyryng them for her to make intercession to the great *Deumo*, that after this transitorie lyfe, it may please him to receyue her into the company of his Angelles. After the ceremonies are fynished, she taketh her leaue of all her kynfolkes, whiche stande rounde about her, and neare vnto the pitte, then with sodaine out- rage and a loude crye lifyng by her handes, she hurleth her selfe into the burnyng pit, which done, her kynfolkes, standing neare vnto the fyre, couer her with litle fagottes of sweete wood, buryng also thereon much pitche, that the bodie may the sooner be consumed: and except the wyfe shoulde doe this after the death of her hus bande, she shoulde euer after be esteemed an euill woman, be hated of all men, and in fine, in danger to be slayne both of her owne kynfolkes and her hus bandes, and therefore shee goeth to it the more willingly. The kyng him selfe is present at these pompes: whiche are not commonly vsed for all men, but only for the kynges, priestes, and noble men.

The hegh way to hell.

Great respecte of fame and honestie.

Of the iustice which the inhabitantes of Tarnassari obserue. Cap. 10.

If any kyll a man, he is adiudged to death, as in the cite of *Calecut*. Of giuyng and receyuyng, iustice is ministred, as prooffe may be made by wryting or witnesse. They wryte in parchment lyke vnto ours, and not in barks of trees as do they of *Calecut*. When they contende for any thyng, they resorte to the gouernour of the cite, to whom the kyng hath giuen full aucthoritie of iurisdiction: and if any merchaunt straunger dye there without chyldren, he may make no inheritour, but all his goods is due to the kyng: when the kyng is dead, his chyldren succede in the kyngdome. When the inhabitantes dye, theyr goods are equally diuided among theyr chyldren.

Wrytyng.

¶ f. i.

¶ lwe

Howe the Mahumetans are bur ied in the  
citie of Tarnassari. Cap. II.

**W**hen any of the Mahumetan merchanten dye, they  
are embaulmed with many spices and sweete gum-  
mes, and theyr bodies put in Coffins of wood: with  
chiefe regarde that theyr heades lye towarde the ci-  
tie of Mecha, which is from thence southwarde.

Mecha.

Of the dyuers sortes of theyr shippes or other  
vesselles. Cap. 12.

**T**hey haue Brigantines very shalowe, and with flatte bot-  
toms, which drawe but small depth of water. Some al-  
so vse Foisttes, haupng two or double forepartes, and two  
Passes, and are open without any couerture. There is  
an other kynde of shippes of burden: Of the which, some beare  
the burden of a thousande tunnes. In these they carry Botes and  
other smaller vesselles, to the citie of Melacha, when they goe for  
spices.

Of Bangella, a great and riche citie of India, and  
of the great power of the kyng. Cap. 13.

**I**t is now tyme to speake further of our viage, and of our pro-  
ceedyng therein. Therefore packyng vp our wares, and  
commityng vs to the sea, we came in twelue dayes saylyng  
to a citie named Bangella, distant from Tarnassari seven hun-  
dred myles. This citie in fruitfulnessse and plentifulnesse of all  
thinges, may in maner contende with any citie in the worlde.  
The kyngdome and dominion of this citie is exceedyng large.  
The kyng hath an army of two hundred thousande footemen  
and horsemen Mahumetans, and is of so great power, that he  
keepeyth soe warres with the kyng of Narsinga. The region  
is so plentifull in all thynges, that there lacketh nothyng that  
may serue to the necessarie uses or pleasures of men: for there  
are

The citie of  
Bangella.

An army of  
two hundred  
thousand men.

are in maner all sortes of beastes, good and hole some frutes, and  
plentie of corne: Spices also of all sortes. Lyke wyse of bomba-  
line and silke, so exceedyng great aboundance, that in these thin-  
ges, I thinke there is none other region comparable with this,  
and therefore here are very many riche merchanten. For euery  
peere departe from hence, fiftie shippes laden with clothe of  
bombaline and silke, into the cities and countreys of Turchia,  
Syria, Arabia, Persia, Ethiopia, and India. There are also many  
merchaunt straungers, whiche buye precious stones of the in-  
habitauntes.

Spices and  
silke.

Riche merchan-  
tes.

Precious  
stones.

Of certayne Christian merchanten, which  
exercise merchandies there,  
Cap. 14.

**H**ere we founde many Christian merchanten which were  
borne in the citie of Sarnau, as they tolde vs. They re-  
sorte thither, as to a great marte, with cloth of silke, and  
wood of Aloes, & Laser, which yeldeth the sweete gumme  
named Laserpitium, commonly called Belzoi, beyng a kynde of  
myrr. They buyng also Castoreum, and diuers other sweete sa-  
uours. The sayde Christians tolde vs also, that there be in that  
kyngdome, many Christian Princes, subiect to the great Cham,  
of the citie of Cathai. The apparell of these Christians, was  
Chamlet, loose and very full of pleytes, and lynyed with bomba-  
line cloth. On theyr heads they weare certayne coppen or sharpe  
pointed cappes, of two handfull hygh, of scarlet colour. They  
are white men. They acknowledge one God in Trinitie, & are  
baptised after our maner. They beleue the doctrine of the Apo-  
stles and Euangelistes. They wypte backward, after the ma-  
ner of the Armenians. They celebrate the birth and buriall of  
Christ, and obserue fastyng the fourtie dayes of Lent as we doe.  
They celebrate also certayne saintes dayes. They vse no shooes,  
but weare loose hofe of silke, garnished with dyuers Jewels. On  
theyr fingers they weare Ringes, with stones of incomparable  
splendour. At meate, they vse no table, but eate lying on the  
grounde, and feede of all sortes of fleshe.

Christians.

Lignum Aloes.

Laserpitium.

Belzoi.

Castoreum.

Christian Prin-  
ces under the

great Cham of

Cathay.

FFF.ii.

They

Christian Princes  
near the  
Turkes domi-  
nions.

Corall of great  
pyce.

Rubies.

Pego.

They affirmed also, that there are certayne Christian kynges (whiche they call *Rumi*) of great power, consynnyng or bordering on the dominions of the great Turke. When these Christians had seene the precious merchaundies of my companion, and specially a great braunche of Corall, they earnestly desired him, to goe with them to a certayne citie, where they promised him that by theyr procurement he shoulde sell his wares at great auantage, if he would buye Rubie stones, and that he might thereby easily geat aboute tenne thousande peeces of golde: Affirming that those kynde of stones were of muche greater value in Turkey. Whereunto my companion answered, that he woulde goe with them if they would departe in shorte space. We will (sayde they) departe euen to morow: for here is a ffoist whiche departeth hence to morowe, and taketh her viage to the citie of *Pego*, whither we desyre to hyng you. My companion consented the rather to his request, bicause he was aduertised that he shoulde fynde there certayne Persians, his countrey men. Therefore with this good companie departyng from the citie of *Bangella*, and saylyng ouer a great gulse lying on the South syde, wee came at the length to the citie of *Pego*, a thousande myles distant from *Bangella*.

Of *Pego*, a famous citie of India. Cap. 15.

Idolaters.

White men.

Christians.

The citie of *Pego*, is not farre from the sea, and is situate bypon the continent of syrie lande. A very fayre ryuer runneth by the citie, by the which merchaundies are caried to and fro. The kyng of the citie, is an Idolater. The inhabitauntes, in apparell, liuyng, and maners, are lyke vnto them of *Tarnassari*: but of whiter colour, as in a colder region, somewhat lyke vnto ours. The citie is walled, and the houses well buylded, and very fayre, of stone and lyme. The kyng hath a myghtie armie both of footemen and horsemen, and hath in his armie Pensionarie Christians, bozne euen in the same region.

They.

Theyr wages, is euery moneth sixe of those peeces of golde which they cal *Pardaios*, & is payde them out of the Kynges treasury. They haue abundance of corne and fleshy, as in *Calecut*. Here are but fewe Elephantes, yet other beastes and foules, as in *Calecut*. Here are also trees for buyldyng, and to make shyppes, the fayrest that euer I sawe: Also excedyng great Reedes, as byg as the bodie of a grosse man, or a tubbe. Here are likewise suit Cattes, or Huske Cattes, and of small pyce, as three for one peece of golde. There are fewe merchandyses in this citie, except precious stones, and specially Rubies: which neuerthelesse are brought thither from an other citie named *Capela*, beyng towarde the East thirtie dayes iourney, where are also founde precious stones named *Smaragdes* or *Emeraldes*. When we arryued at *Pego*, the kyng was absent fyue & twentie dayes iourney, in a place where he kepte warre agaynst the kyng of *Aua*. But shortly after, he returned with great triumphe for the victorie which he had agaynst his enemye.

Great Reedes.

Muske catter.

Precious stones  
and spices.  
*Capela*.

*Smaragdes* or  
*Emeraldes*.

Of the munificence, humilitie, and great  
richeffe of the Kyng of *Pego*. Cap. 16.

This kyng vseth not suche pompes and magnificence as doeth the kyng of *Calecut*: But is of suche humanitie and affabilitie, that a chyld may come to his presence and speake with him, being neuerthelesse very ryche. It is in maner incredible to speake of the ryche Jewelles, precious stones, pearles, and especially Rubies, which he weareth, surmounting in value any great citie. His fingers be full of Ringes, and his armes all full of braselettes of golde, all beset and moste gloriously shynyng with suche precious stones: His legges also and feete beyng garnyshe in lyke maner. His eares lyke wyse are so laded with suche Jewelles, that they hang downe halfe a handfull. The splendour or shynyng of these Jewelles is so great, that if one see the king in the darke night, he shineth in maner as it were the beames of the sunne. At good oportunitie the Christians an merchant spake to the kyng, and certified him that my companion had brought sundry merchaundies of great estimation.

Great riches of  
Jewelles and  
precious stones

A kyng shynyng  
with earthy  
starres.

Item.

The

The kyng sacri-  
fyceth to the  
deuyll.

Corall.

The kyng and  
the merchant  
contende of li-  
beralitie.

Commendati-  
on of the Per-  
sians.

A casket full  
of Rubies.

The kyng answered, that they shoulde come to him the day fo-  
lowyng, bycause that, that present day, he shoulde sacrifice to  
the deuyll. Therefore the nexte day he sent for vs, willing  
that my companion shoulde byng with him suche merchandies  
as he had. The which the kyng toke great pleasure to behold, and  
not without good cause: for among other thinges, there were two  
great branches of corall, of such bignesse and fayrenesse, as no  
man there had euer seene the lyke. The kyng astonished at these  
thinges, asked the Christians what men we were. They answered  
that we were Persians. Then sayde the kyng to his inter-  
pretour, Aske them if they will here make sale of theyr merchan-  
dies. To whom then my companion sayde thus, Most honorable  
Prince, all these are yours, take them, and ble them at your plea-  
sure. Then sayde the kyng agayne, These two peeres paste I  
haue kepte continuall warre with the kyng of *Aua*, and therefore  
my treasure of money is consumed: But if you will bargaine by  
the way of exchaunge, for precious stones, and especially Ru-  
bies, I will so deale with you, that it shall not repent you. Then  
sayde my companion to the Christians: I pray you gyue the  
kyng to vnderstande, that I desire none other thyng then the  
beneuolence of his highnesse, and therefore that I desire him  
to take of my merchandies what lyketh him best, and that  
without money, or permutacion of any other thing. When the  
kyng hearde this, he answered, that he had hearde by reporte  
that the Persians were very curtuious and liberall men, and that  
he neuer knewe so liberall a man as this was, and I wore by the  
head of the deuyll, that by this occasion he woulde proue which  
of them two shoulde be most liberall, and therefore calling vnto  
him a Page of his chamber, commaunded him to fetch a casket  
of precious stones. This casket was of the breadth of a spanne  
and a halfe, euery way square, and full of Rubies: haupng also  
within it sundry receptacles or boxes, where the stones were  
sorted in order. When he had opened the casket, he commaun-  
ded it to be set before the Persian, willing him to take of those  
precious stones as many as he woulde. But my companion the  
Persian, yet more moued to liberalitie by this the Kinges mu-  
nificence, spake to the kyng these wordes, O most honora-  
ble Prince, I perceyue your beneuolence to be suche toward  
me,

me, that I sweare by the holy head of Mahomet, and all the my-  
steries of his religion, wherunto I am professed, that I freely  
and gladly gyue vnto you all my merchandies: For I doe not  
trauayle about the worlde for gaynes of richesse, but rather of de-  
syre to see the worlde. In the which thereto, I neuer founde any  
thyng wherein I so greatly reioyced, as in the beneuolence and  
fauour which your maiestie hath shewed me. The kyng answered,  
Wylt thou yet contende with mee in liberalitie? And with  
those wordes, tooke out of the casket, (of euery bore some)  
as many Rubies as he coulde holde in his hande, & with this re-  
warde (whiche was two hundred Rubies) shewed his kyngly  
munificence and beneuolence toward the Persian, saying vnto  
him, Take these, I pray thee, for thou shalt not refuse them. He  
gaue also to eche of the Christians two Rubies, whiche were  
woorth a thousand crownes to be solde: but those which he gaue  
the Persian, were esteemed woorth a hundred thousand crownes. A Prince  
apite.  
This kyng therefore doubtlesse in munificence passeth all the  
kynges of the worlde, and in maner no lesse in richesse: for he re-  
cepueth yeerely of his subiectes two hundred thousand peeces of  
golde. This region byngeth forth all sortes of colours, and Colours.  
great plentie of bombasine and lilke: but these great riches, the  
kyng consumeth on his souldiers. Not long after, newes were  
brought that the kyng of *Aua* was commyng with a myghtie  
force, whom the kyng in maner with an innumerable army went  
to resist. Here also in certayne places we sawe women burned,  
after the maner of *Tarnassari*.

Of the citie of Melacha, and the great  
ryuer of Gaza. Cap. 17.

VVithin two dayes after, taking ship, we sailed westwarde  
toward the citie of *Melacha*, and arryued there in eigh-  
te dayes saylyng. Not farre from this citie, is a famous ryuer  
named *Gaza*, the largest that euer I sawe, concepyng  
ffft.iiii. xlv.



Arpner of. xxv.  
miles brode.  
The Ilande of  
Sumetra or  
Taprobana.

Chini or Chi-  
na.

Wopingapes.  
Sandalum.  
Cp.ii.

Spices and  
like.

Murly people.

Anarchia.

xxv. miles in breadth. On the other syde, is seene a very great Ilande, whiche they call *Sumetra*, and is of olde wyters named *Taprobana*. The inhabitauntes say that it conteyneth in circuite syue hundred miles. When wee came to the citie of *Melacha* (whiche some call *Melcha*), we were incontinent commaunded to come to the Soltan, being a *Dahumetan*, and subiecte to the great Soltan of *Chini*, and payeth him tribute. Of whiche tribute, they say the cause is, that moze then fourescore peeres past, that citie was buylded by the kyng of *Chini*, for none other cause, then only for the commoditie of the hauens, being doubtesse one of the sayrest in that Ocean, and therefore it is lykely that many shippes shoulde resorte thither for merchandies. The region is not euery where fruitefull, yet hath it sufficient of wheate and fleshe, and but litle wood. They haue plentie of foules, as in *Calecut*: but the *Wopingays* are much sayrer. There is also founde *Sandalum*, and *Tynne*. Lykewyse *Elephantes*, horses, sheepe, kyne, *Paralles*, *Bustles*, *Peacokes*, and many other beastes, and foules. They haue but fewe frutes, and therefore there is no merchandies to be solde but spices and like. The people are of blackyshe ashe colour. They apparell is like to the *Dahumetans* of the citie *Memphis*, oterwise named *Cayr*, *Alchayr*, or *Babylon* of *Nilus*. They haue very large foreheades, rounde eyes, and flatte noses. It is dangerous there to goe abrode in the night, the inhabitantes are so giuen to murder and robbery, for they kill one another lyke dogges, and therefore the merchantes remaine in their shippes all the nyght. The people are fierce, of euill condition, and burly, for they will obey to no gouernour, being altogether giuen to sedition and rebellion, and therefore say vnto theyr gouernours, that they will forsake the countrey, if they stryue to bynde them to order, whiche they say the moze boldly, bycause they are neare vnto the sea, and may easily departe into other places. For these causes, we spent no long tyme here: but hyrting a *Brigantine*, we sayled to the Ilande of *Sumatra*, where in fewe dayes sayling, we arryued at a citie of the Ilande named *Pyder*, distaunt about fourescore miles from the continent or firme lande.

Of

Nauigations,  
Of the Ilande of *Sumatra*, or  
*Taprobana*. Cap. 18.

404

**VV**E haue sayd here before that the Ilande of *Sumatra*, conteyneth in circuite syue hundred miles. The citie where we first arryued in the Ilande, is named *Pider*, haupng a very sayre port. I beleue verily this Ilande to be *Taprobana*, as also most autours do agree. It is gouerned by foure kynges, and all Idolaters, in fashions, apparell, and maner of lyuynge, not muche differng from the kyng of *Tarnassari*. The women burne them selues after the death of theyr hul bandes, as do they of whom we haue spoken before. They are of whityshe coloure, with large foreheades, rounde eyes, and of brassyll colour. They weare theyr heare long, and haue very brode and flatte noses, and are of despicable stature. Iustice is there well obserued. Their mony is of golde, syluer, and tynne. The golde coyne, hath on the one syde, the grauen head of a deuyll: and on the other syde, a wagon or charrette drawen with *Elephantes*. The syluer mony hath the lyke coyne: tenne of these, are valued for one of golde. But of the tynne coyne. xxv. make the value of one of golde. Here are seene moze *Elephantes*, bygger, and sayrer then in any other place that I haue been. This people hath no experience of warres, but are geuen altogether to gaynes and merchandies. They are hospitable, and enterpeyne strangers frendly.

The Ilande of  
Sumatra or  
Samottra.

Foure kynges  
in one Ilande.

Women burns  
them selues.

Iustice.  
Coynd mony  
of golde, syluer,  
and tynne.  
Elephantes.

Of an other kynde of Pepper. Also of sylke,  
and the precious gumme called *Laser-  
pitium*, or *Belzoe*. Cap. 19.

**I**n the sayde Ilande is a kynde of long Pepper in great abundance. Pepper in theyr language, is called *Molaga*, & is much longer & whiter then that which is brought hither: yet lighter & hotter: it is sold there not by weighe, but by measure as wheat with vs. It is there in so great abundaunce, that there is carped from hence peerelely twentie shippes laden with Pepper. This is carped to *Cathay*, and is there well solde, by reason of the col-  
nesse

Long Pepper.

Cathay or Ca-  
tai a colde re-  
gion.

nettes of the region. The tree that beareth this kynde of pepper, hath a greater body, and larger and fatter leaues, then the pepper tree of *Calecut*. This Ilande beareth also plentie of *Spike*, whiche for the most parte, is made after our maner. There is an other sorte, which the trees byng forth of them selues in the wooddes and feedes, without menage or dressing: but this is woorse then the other. Here also groweth the *Laser tree*, whiche byngeth forth the precious gumme named *Laserpitium* or *Belze*, as the inhabitantes and merchautes tolde vs: but because I haue not seene it, I wyll speake no moze of it.

## Of three sortes of the tree of Aloes, Cap. 20.

As much as varietie delighteth, and the wel disposed mind can neuer be satiate with contemplation of the marueylous and sundry woorkes of God in nature, therfore that the reader may take the moze pleasure, or at the least feele lesse tediousnesse in the reading of these thyngs, I haue thought good to wyte somewhat moze of suche thynges as I haue seene. You shall therefore vnderstande, that there is no great plentie of true Aloes or *Laserpitium* brought to vs, because it is brought hyther from the furthest partes of the worlde. Vnderstande further moze, that there are three kyndes or sortes of Aloes, greatly differing in goodnesse. The perfectest, they call *Calampat*, whiche the aforesayde Ilande byngeth not forth: But it is brought from the cite of *Sarnau*, not farre from the place where the sayde Aloes *Calampat* is engendred, as the Christian merchautes or companions tolde vs. There is an other kynde of Aloes, named *Luba* (or *Luba*) brought hyther by this ryuer, I knowe not from whence. The thyrde kynd, is named *Bochor*. The sayde Christian merchants tolde vs also, that none of the fyrst and best kynde of Aloes is brought vnto vs, because it cometh from the kyngdomes of *Cathay*, *Chini*, *Macym*, *Sarnau*, and *Grauy*, countreys muche rycher then ours, haupng muche greater abundance of golde, and kynges of greater power and rychesse then are ours: And also that the sayde kynges take great pleasure in such kynde of sweete sauoures, and vse them muche moze then our princes do:

Spike of the trees.

Laserpitium or Belze.

Little true Aloes or Laserpitium.

Sarnau.

Cathay, and other rich countreys.

do: So that by this meanes, the true kynde of Aloes is woorthen in the cite of *Sarnau*, tenne crownes the pounce weyght.

Howe the gummes of Aloes and *Laserpitium*, are proued. Cap. 21.

WE came by certayne experience to the knowledge of the two sweete gummes of Aloes and *Laserpitium*, as we were taught by the sayd Christian merchants our companions: For one of them had a certayne portion of them both, and had of that best sorte of Aloes, named *Calampat*, about the quantitie of two ounces: Of the which, my companion takyng a peece in his hande, and holdyng it fast and close for the space that one may thyrle saye the *Psalme* of *Miserere mei Deus*, the Aloes thereby beyng heat, at the openyng of his hande gaue a sauoure of incredible sweetenesse, and suche as I neuer felte of any other thyng. He tooke also of the common *Laserpitium* or *Belze*, the quantitie of a *Walnutte*, and agayne halfe a pounce of that whiche cometh from the cite of *Sarnau*, to compare the one to the other: And so puttynge them both in sundry chafyng dysches, with burnyng coles in a close chamber, that whiche was of the byggnesse of a *Walnutte*, in sweete sauour far exceeded the other which was halfe a pounce in weight, and woulde doubtesse so haue done though it had ben of two pounce weight. In this region is also founde *Lacca*, or *Lacca*, wherewith is made a thynnyng redde colour. It is the gumme of a tree, not muche vnlyke our *Walnutte* tree. There are also sundry kyndes of beastes, suche as we haue.

Aloes of very sweete sauour.

The prooue of Laserpitium.

Lacca, merchants ware.

Of diuers merchautes in the Ilande of Sumatra, or Taprobana. Cap. 22.

In the sayde cite of *Pyder*, in the Ilande of *Sumatra*, I sawe many curious woorkes, very artificially wrought, as fyne *Cosphies* or *baskets*, garnished with golde, solde for two crownes the peece: I sawe also there in one streete fyue hundred exchaungers

exchangers: there are so many bankers. Wher, as to a famous mart, resort innumerable merchantes. The inhabitantes weare Daniels of sylke, and syndone, made of Bombasine. The region hath plentie of wood, and trees, very commodious to make such shippes as they cal *Gunchos*, haupng three mastes, two fore partes, and also two sternes or gouernals on both sydes. When they sayle in the Ocean, and haue nowe geuen wynde to the sayles, yf afterwarde it shalbe needefull to haue more sayles, not changyng the fyrst, they go backward without turnyng the ship, and vsyng only one mast. They are most expert swymmers, and haue skyll to make fyre in an instant. Theyr houses are of stone, and very lowe. In the place of couerynges or tyles, they vse the skynnes or hydes of a sylhe, called *Tartaruca*, founde in that sea of India. I saw so hugious a hyde of this monster, that it waped a hundred & three poundes. I sawe there also great teeth of Elephantes, as one waping three hundred & thirtie ponde weighe. I ykewise Serpentes of incredible bygnelle, and muche bygger then in *Calecut*. Here our companions, the Chyistian merchants, for assayres they had to do other wayes, woulde haue taken their leaue of vs. Then my companion the Persian spake vnto them in this maner: Although (my frendes) I am not your countreyman (yet beyng all brethren, and the chyldren of Adam) I take God to witnesse that I loue you as yf you were myne owne brethren, begotten of the same parentes: and therfore, consyderyng how frendly we haue kept company togeather so long tyme, I assure you I can not, without great greefe of mynde, beare your departyng from vs. And although you woulde depart from me, wyll you nowe forsake this my companion, a man of your sayth and religion? Then sayde the Chyistians, Howe hath this man, beyng no Persian, receyued our sayth? Then sayde my companion, Cruelly he is now a Persian, and was once bought at Ierusalem. When the Chyistians hearde the holy name of Ierusalem, they lysted vp theyr handes to heauen, and prostratpng themselves on the grounde, kyssed it thysle: then rysyng, they asked him of what age I was, when I was brought from Ierusalem. Of the age of fyftee peeres sayde my companion. Then sayde they agayne, We may then remember his countrey. Then answered my companion, We dooch remember it in deede, and I haue

Shippes of a  
straunge fashi-  
on.

Swymmers.

Great hydes of  
sylhes.

Great teeth of  
Elephantcs.  
Great Ser-  
pentes.

The name of  
Ierusalem in  
reuerence.

haue taken great pleasure of suche thynges as he hath tolde me of his countrey. Then sayde the merchautes, Although of long time we haue desyred to returne to our countrey, beyng more then thre hundred myles hence, neuerthelesse at your request we wil beare you company to the place whither you desyre to go. Preparing therefore all thynges parteynyng to the voyage, we tooke shyping, and in .xv. dayes saylyng, came to an Ilande named *Bandan*.

Of the Ilande of Bandan, where Nuttemegs and Mace are founde. Cap. 23.

In this voyage to the Ilande of *Bandan* we founde about .xx. Ilandes, some inhabited, and some desarte. This Ilande is very saluage, barren, and very lowe, and conteyneth a hundred myles in circuite. It hath neyther kyng nor gouernour, but is inhabited with a rascall and beastly kynde of men, lypng without lawe, order, or gouernment. They haue lowe houses, or rather cotages of wood, rysyng but litle from the ground. Their apparell is onely a sherte. They go bareheaded and barefooted, with theyr heare hangyng downe, and haue brode and rounde foreheades. They are of coloure inclynyng to whyte, and of despicable stature. They are Idolaters, and woorse then are the inhabitantes of *Calecut*, called *Poliar*, and *Hyrana*. They are also of dull wytte and litle strength, and in kynde of lypng altogether beastly. The soyle beareth no frutes, excepte onely Nuttemegges: the bodye of the Nuttemegge tree, is lyke to the bodye of a Peachetree, and hath lyke branches and leaues, but the leaues are somewhat narrower. Before these Nuttes come to rypenesse, the Mace stoweth lyke vnto a redde rose: but when the Nutte waxeth ripe, the Mace closeth it selfe and embraeth the Nutte and shel, and are so geathered togeather without order or distribution, by scambllyng, catche that catche may, for yal things are there common. The tree yeeldeth fruite of his owne fruitefulnessse, without graftyng or cuttyng, or any other art. These Nuttes are solde by weyght, and .xxvi. ponde weyght, is solde for the value of thre soules (that is) halfe a Carline.

Anarchia.

Lawlesse people.

Idolaters.  
The Nuttemegge tree.  
Mace.

All thynges common.

Nuttemegges of small price.

The labour of nature.

Carline, of such money as is vsed in *Calecut*. This people hath none other order of iustice, then by the lawe of nature, and therefore they lyue without such contentions as proceede of thynne and myne. When we had been heere thre dayes, my companion asked the Christian merchantes, where was the region whiche brought forth Cloues? They answered, That Cloues were founde in an Ilande named *Monoch*, sixe dayes sayling from thence. Therefore proceeding on our voyage, we came thither in the space of seuen dayes.

These Ilandes of Spices, are called

*Moluccae*, and in them is seene the rare byrde named *Manucodiata*, or *paradisea*.

The Cloue tree.

Cloues dearer then Nutmegs.

Of the Ilande of *Monoch*, where Cloues growe. Cap. 24.

This Ilande is very narrowe, yet in length exceedeth the Ilande of *Bandan*. The inhabitauntes are much worse then they of *Bandan*: for, were it not only for mans shape, they should in maner differ nothyng from beastes. Their colour is whyter, and the region colder. This Ilande byngeth forth Cloues, as do also many other litle and desolate Ilandes lying about it. The body of this tree, is not muche vnlyke the Bore tree, and hath leaues lyke vnto the Cinamome tree, but rounder, and almost lyke the Bay leafe. When they were ripe, the inhabitauntes beate them downe with reedes, laying fyrst mattes vnder the trees. The ground is sandie, and the region so low vnder the Horizon, that the North starre can not be seene there. They sell Cloues for the double price that Nutmegs are solde, & sel them by measure: for they are viterly without knowledge of weyghtes.

Of the Iland of *Bornei*. Cap. 25.

As we were togeather talkyng of our voyages, the Christian merchantes spake vnto me in this maner. Our dearly beloued freende, forasmuch as by the grace of God, we are come thus farre in safetie, yf it please you, we wyl go see one of the sayrest Ilandes in the worlde, and very ryche, and suche as I beleue you neuer sawe: but we must fyrst go to another Iland named *Bornei*, for there shal we haue bygger vessels: for we must needes passe a deepe and rough sea. Then sayde my companion, Do as shal please you, for we are contented to go with

The Ilande of Spaua. *Bornei*.

with you. Therefore byng a greater Foyll, we directed our iorney to that Ilande both by daye and nyght, sayling alway southwarde: By the way we passed forth the tyme with pleasant talke. The merchaunt men asked me many thynges of the ceremonyes and solemnities of the Christian religion vsed among vs: And when I made mention of the *Veronica* (commonly called the Vernacle of the face of Christ) and of the heads of Peter and Paule the chiefest of the Apostles, and also of many other saintes, they aduertysed me secretly, that if I woulde go with them, I shoulde become a great man for the knowledge of suche great thynges. But beyng deterred by the greatnesse of the iorney, & fearyng that then I should neuer haue come home, I refused to go with them. At the length we came to the Iland of *Bornei*, distant from *Monoch* about two hundred myles, and is somewhat bygger, but muche lower beneath the Horizon or Equinoctiall. The inhabitantes are Idolaters, of sharpe wy, and maner of lyuynge not greatly to be discommended. Their colour inclyneth more to whytenesse. They weare not all one maner of apparell, for some weare shirtes of bombasine cloth, or other mantells of chamlet, and other also sharpe cappes of red coloure. They obserue iustice and good order. This Ilande yeeldeth yeerely great abundaunce of *Campbora*, which they sayd to be the gumme of a tree: but I dare not affyrme it, because I haue not seene it. Were my companion byrd a lyght hyppie or barke for a hundred peeces of golde.

Veronica or Vernacle.

The headdes of Peter and Paule.

The Ilande of *Bornei*. Idolaters.

*Campbora*.

Of the obseruations vsed in the navigation to the Iland of *Giaua*. Cap. 26.

After that we had made prouision of vittayles sufficient for the voyage, we directed our iorney to the Ilande of *Giaua*, and came thither in the space of fyue dayes, sayling euer towarde the south. Our Pilot vsed the maryners bore or compasse, with also the lode stone and sea carde, after the maner of ours. Therefore when my companion sawe that the Separations or north starres coulde not be seene there, he asked the Christians how they could sayle on that sea without theyr guide of the north starre: asked also, by what other star they were guided: The

The north star.

The starres about the pole Antartike.

The lode stone serueth in the south regions beyonde the Equinoctiall line.

Antipodes.

Idolaters.

The Image of the deuill.

Sylke of trees, Smaragdes, Golde, Copper.

Whyte men good people.

Spydes and fowles.

The Pilote answered, that the inhabitantes of these regions obserue principally fyue starres, and also one other starre, opposite or directlpe contrary to the Septentrions or North starres, whereby they governed their viages in these regions: and sayd, that he also vled the lode stone, because it euer mouerth to the North: and sayde furthermoze, that on the other syde of that Islande, is a certayne people, whiche in saylpyng obserue certayne starres, contrary to the Septentrions, for that the sayde people are *Antipodes* to them of *Europa Sarmatia*, and that they inhabite as colde a region and climat, and as neare vnto the pole Antartike, as is manifest by the shortnesse of the day, beyng but foure houres long in their wynter: of whiche talke we tooke great pleasure.

Of the Ilande of Gyaua, and the maners of the people. Cap. 27.

Therefore proceeding on our iourney fyue dayes saylpyng, we came to the sayde Islande, beyng very great & large, and haupyng in it many kyngdomes, and kynges, beyng all Idolaters, and of diuers maners of lpyng: for some of them honoꝝ Idolles, after the maner of *Calecut*: some also honoꝝ the Sonne, and some the Moone: other take Kyne for their Idolles: and some, the fyist thyng that they mete in the mornyng, take for the Idol of that day: other also honoꝝ the picture or similitude of the deuill. This Islande byngeth fourth sylke, whiche groweth of it selfe in the wooddes, and also the fayrest Smaragdes or Emeralides that are in the world: there is likewise plentie of Golde, and Copper. The soyle is fruitfull of Cozne, and all sortes of frutes, as in the citie of *Calecut*. There is great abundance of fleshe of all sortes, as with vs. The inhabitantes are saythfull, and true dealing people: they are of the same colour and stature that we bee, but haue larger foxheades, very great eyes, and of brassyll or redde colour, and flatte noses, wearyng theyr heare long. There is a great multitude of foules and birdes, but vnlke vnto ours, except Peacockes, Turtle dooue, and Crows. They greatly obserue iustice, and good order. For theyr apparel they vse mantels, or clokes, of Bombasine cloth, or sylke, or Chamlet, euer wearyng out one arme. They vse no coates of lence, or armure, because they haue no warres: but

but when they traueyle on the sea, they vse bowes, and impossoned arrowes made of Reedes. They vse also certayne long and holowe staues (whiche we call Trunkes) through the which after our maner, they blowe little arrowes, so infected with poison, that if they rayle neuer so little blood, death foloweth incontinent. They haue no Gunnes or other ingines. They eate all sortes of fleshe, fysh, and frutes: yet some feede of one kynde of meate, and other of other, as them listeth.

Of theyr cruell maners in selling their parentes to the Anthropophagi to be eaten. Cap. 28.

The inhabitantes of the sayd Islande (they I meane which feede of fleshe) when they see theyr parentes so feeble by age, that they serue for no vse, but are tedious both to them selues and other, they bypnyng them to the market or fayre, and sell them to the *Anthropophagi*, which vse to eate mans fleshe. They that buye them, kyll them out of hande & eate them. Likewise when any young person among them, falleth into any suche sickenesse, that by the iudgement of theyr wyse men he can not escape, to the ende that he should not vnprofitably lpynger in paynes, his byerthen and kynfolkes sell hym to the *Anthropophagi*. When my companion, beyng deterred with these cruell maners, shewed in countenance that he detested this horrible inhumanitie, a certayne merchaunt of the inhabitantes sayde thus vnto hym: O Persians, no sacrifice can redeeme your sinnes, in that you giue so fayre fleshe to the wooymes to be eaten. Therefore abhorryng these beastly maners, we returned to our shyppe, not intending any longer to tarry there.

Of the strange course of the sunne in the Iland of Gyaua. Cap. 29.

Wyle we remayned here, the Christian merchantes, euer desirous to shewe vs new and strange thinges, whiche we myght declare at our returne into our countreys, sayde thus vnto vs, My friendes, make repoyte in your countrey of a strange thyng whiche I will

Impossoned arrowes.

Trunkes.

Anthropophagi eate mans fleshe. In the West India, they are called Canibales.

A strange pittie.

Rather to butcher then wooymes.

Orgg.i.

now



nowe shewe you . Beholde (sayde they) the place of the Sunne in the South at hygh noone, and thereby consider howe farre this region is from your countrey . We then behelde the Sunne to runne toward the ryght hand: and agayne, to shewe or marke a sphere, about two handfuls brode, toward the lefte hand, which doublelesse seemed to vs very straunge . And this (as they saye) is euer seene in the moneth of Iuly . But I nowe scarcely beare this in mynd, for I there forgot euen the names of our monthes . But this is certayne, that in this region, the tymes and seasons of the peeres are lyke vnto ours, and of lyke temperature of heat and colde . Here my companion bought two sayre Emeraldes for a thousande peeces of golde, and also two gelded chyldren for two hundred peeces of golde : for heere are certayne merchantes that buy none other ware, then such gelded chyldren .

Emeraldes of  
great price.  
Gelded chyld  
dren.

Of our returne from the Ilande of  
Gyaua. Cap. 30.

**A**fter that we had remayned heere fyftiene dayes, wery of the maners of the inhabitantes, and of the coldnesse of the countrey that tyme of the peere, we determyned to proceede no further : for this cause also, that there remayned in maner none other region woorthie to be seene, and therefore hying a lyght shyp, we departed from thence, sayling Eastwarde for the space of fyftiene dayes, and came at the length to the citie of Melacha, where remayning thre dayes, we tooke our leaue of our companions the Chyistian merchautes, with friendly embrazing, and sorowfull myndes . Which departure (I take God to witnesse) grieved me so sore, that if I had been a single man without wyfe and chyldren, I would neuer haue forsaken suche friendly men . We therefore departed, and they remayned there, saying that they would shortly returne to the citie of Sana: and we taking a Foist, returned to the citie of Gyromandel . By the way, the gouernour of the shyp tolde vs, that about the Ilandes of Gyaua and Taprobana, there are aboue seuen thousande litle Ilandes . When we arryued at Melacha,

Sana.

Seuen thousande  
litle Ilandes.  
Melacha of  
Melacha.

my companion bought as muche spices, sweete sauours, and like, as cost him fyue thousande peeces of golde : But we came not to the citie of Gyromandel in lesse space then fyftiene dayes sayling . There we unladed our Foist, and after we had remayned there twentie dayes, hying an other Foist, we came at the length to the citie of Colon, where we founde xii. Chyistians, of the realme of Portugale . And fearyng that they would take me for some espion, I began to imagine howe I myght depart from thence : But seeing that they were so fewe in number, I chaunged my purpose, especially for that there were many merchaunt Dahumetans whiche knewe that I had been at Mecha, to see the bodie of Dahumet . But within the space of twelue dayes, we came to Calecut by the ryuer.

Colon.  
Portugales.

Agayne of the citie of Calecut after our  
turne thither. Cap. 31.

**A**fter so many long and daungerous peregrinations and viages, in the whiche we haue been partly satisfied of our desyre, and partly weeryed by many suche occasions of inconueniences as chaunce in the way (as they can well consider that haue been vsed to suche long iourneyes) we determyned to proceede no further, but to thynke only of our safe returne into our native countrey, and therefore I will bryefely declare what chaunced to me in the way : the rather that other men, taking example by my traueyles, may knowe the better howe to gouernethem selues in the lyke, if lyke ardent affection shal moue them to take suche viages in hande, as I am sure noble spirites of many valiant men will moue them thereto . Therefore enter yng into the citie of Calecut, we founde there two Chyistians, bozne in the citie of Milan, the one named Iohn Maria, and the other Peter Antonie . These were Jewellers, and came from Portugale with the kinges licence to buye precious stones . When I had founde these men, I reioyced more then I am able to expresse : for we went naked after the maner of the inhabitantes . At our fyrst meet yng, seeing them to bee whyte men,

Two Chyristi  
ans of Milan  
in Calecut.

Egg. ii.

I asked

I asked them if they were Christians. They sayde, yea. Then sayde I, that I was also a Christian, by the grace of God. Then takyng me by the hande, they brought me to theyr house, where for ioye of our meetyng, we could scarcely satisfie our selues with teares, embzasynges, and kysyng: for it seemed nowe to mee a straunge thyng to heare men speake myne owne language, or to speake it my selfe. Shortly after, I asked them if they were in fauour with the kyng of Calecut. We are (sayde they) in great fauour with him, and very famillier. Then againe I asked them what they were mynded to doe. We desyre (sayde they) to returne to our countrey, but we knowe not the meanes howe. Then sayde I, Returne the same way that you came. Naue (sayde they) that may not bee: for we are fledde from the Portugales, bycause we haue made many peeces of great ordinaunce, and other Gunnes for the Kyng of Calecut, and therefore we haue good cause to feare, and nowe especially, for that the nauie of Portugale will shortly be heere. I answered, that if I myght escape to the citie of Canonor, I doubted not but that I would geat theyr pardon of the gouernour of the Naue. There is small hope thereof (sayde they) we are so famous and well knowne to many other kynges in the way whiche fauour the Portugales, and lape wayte to take vs, for wee haue made more then foure hundred Gunnes, little and great, and therefore wee are out of all hope to escape that way. In whiche theyr talke, I perceyued howe fearefull a thyng is a gilty conscience, and called to remembraunce the sayyng of the Poet.

*Multa malè timeo, quia feci multa proteruè.* That is, I feare muche euill, bycause I haue done muche euill. For they had not only made many suche peeces of artillerie for the infidelles, to the great damage of Christians, and contempte of the holy name of Christ and his religion, but had also taught the Idolatours both the makyng and vse of them. And at my beyng there, I sawe them gyue a modell or mould to certayne Idolatours, whereby they myght make brasse peeces, of suche bygnesse, that one may receyue the charge of a hundred and fyue Tankardes (Cantaros) of powder.

The Christians haue made a rodde for their owne arte.

The Naue of Portugale.

A great peece of ordinaunce.

At

At the same tyme also, there was a Jewe, which had made a be-rry sayre Brigantine, and foure great peeces of artillerie of Iron. But god shortly after gaue him his due reward: for when he went to washe him in the ryuer, he was drowned. But to returne to our sayde Christians. God is my witnesse howe earnestly I perswaded them, neuer thereafter to make any more artillerie or Gunnes, to the great contempt and indignation of God, and detriment of our holy sayth. When I had sayde these woordes, the teares fell from the eyes of Peter Antonie. But Iohn Maria (who perhappes had not so great desire to returne to his countrey) said that it was all one to him, to dye there, or in the citie of Rome: and that God knewe what he had decreed of him. Within two dayes after, I returned to my companion, who marueyled where I had been, fearing lest I had ben eyther sicke, or departed. I tolde him that I was all nyght in the Temple, lest he should suspecte my great familiaritie with the Christians.

A Jewe that made Gunnes and shypes, was drowned.

Repentaunce.

Predestination.

Of the commyng of the Portugale shippes to the citie of Canonor. Cap. 32.

**V**Vhye I remayned here in the lodging of my companion, there came to him two Persian merchants from the citie of Canonor, sayyng that they had som euill newes to tell him: wherwith seemyng to be somewhat troubled, he asked what was the matter. There are come (sayde they) twelue shippes of Portugale, which we haue seene with our eyes. Then sayde he, What manner of men are those? They are (sayd the Persians) Christians, armed with harnessse of shining Iron, and haue builded an inexpugnable fortresse in the citie of Canonor. My companion hearyng those woordes, turned to me, and sayde, Lodouicke, what manner of men are the Portugales? To whom I answered, that they were a nation of mischeuous people, gyuen to none other thyng then piracie and robbing on the sea. He was not so sozie to heare this, as I was glad of theyr commyng.

A fortresse of the Portugales in the citie of Canonor.

Ggg.iii.

Howe

How I playde the Phisitian, and counterfect holinesse, left by my colour I should be taken for a spye for the Portugales, before I could come to their ships. Cap. 33.

Hypocrisie.

A Saint by  
hypocrisie.

A glister.

**A**fter the rumor was spred of the Portugales arryuyng, I began to thinke what was best to be done, and thought nothing more safe and easie among this people, then to geat some opinion of holinesse by hypocrisie, and therefore all the day tyme, I lurked in the Temple, stuyng without meate, as all the people thought: but in the nyght, I ate fleshe in the house of Peter Antonie, and Iohn Maria. And by this meanes, none had other opinion of me, but that I was a Saint, and therfore might after a fewe dayes goe abrode in the citie without suspicion: and to helpe the matter withall, it chaunced in the meane tyme, that a certaine rich Bahumetan of the citie of Calcut was very sicke, hauing his belly so bounde, that he could not ~~be~~ <sup>be</sup> ~~of~~ <sup>of</sup> nature. And bycause he was a friend to my companion, and his dispaire inuaid, he asked me if I had any skyll in phisicke? I sayde, that my father was a Phisitian, and that I had learned many things of him by experience. Then I pray you (sayd he) what you can to helpe this my friend. We went therfore together to the sicke man, whom my companion asked where he felt him selfe most greued. In my head (sayd he) and my stomake, hauing also my belly so sore bounde, that I can not goe to the stoole. Then my companion agayne in his presence, desired me to consider his infirmitie, and take vpon me to minister vnto him some medicine. My companion had tolde me before, that he was a great eater and drinker. Therefore, takyng him by the hande, and feelyng his pulse, I sayde that his stomacke and bowelles were full of choler, by reason of surfetyng, and therefore that it shoulde be good for him to take a glister. Then sayde the sicke man, Doe what you wil, I wil abyde your order. Then made I a glister of egges, salt, and suger, adding also butter and certayne hearbes, such as came first to my memorie vpon the sodayne, and in the space of a day and nyght, I gaue him syue glisters, but all in vayne: for belyde the paynes which he endured, he was rather woofse then better, insomuche that it repented me of myne enterpryse.

prise: But it was nowe best to set a good face on the matter, and attempte an other way, but the lasse errour was woofse then the first. Yet still putting him in good hope, I bled him thus. I made him lye grouelyng on his belly, & then tying cordes on his feete, I raysed vp the hynder partes of his body, so that he rested only vpon his brest and handes, and as he laye, ministred a glyster vnto him, and let him so hang for the space of halfe an houre. My companion beholding this straunge kynde of practyse, sayde vnto me, Lodouike, is this the maner of mynistring to sicke folkes in your countrey? It is, sayde I, yet neuer but in case of extremitie. Then simplyng, he sayde, I beleue it will heale him one way or an other. In the meane tyme the miserable man cryed, saying in his language, It is enough, it is enough, for my soule now departeth. We comforted him, desirynge him to haue patience yet a whyle. In maner immediately after, his belly was loosed, and auoyded matter as if it had been out of a gutter. Then when wee had let downe his bodie, hee auoyded as muche as myght almost fyll a payle, and shortly after, the payne of his head and stomake, and also the feuer, ceased: whereof we were all very glad. And by this aduenturous cure, I began to bee in great credite among them, by the meanes also of my counterfect holinesse, and therefore whereas he would haue giuen me tenne pceces of golde, I would take but only two, and gaue them also incontinent to the poore. These sely soules beleued so much in my hypocrisie (which I shewed no lesse in countenance and grauitie, forbearynge also openly to eate fleshe) that well was he that myght haue me in his house, or kysse my handes and feete. The repozte also of my companion, affirmynge that he mette with me first at Mecha, where I was to see the bodie of the holy Prophet Bahumet, encreased greatly (and specially among the Bahumetans) the opinion they had conceiued of my holinesse. But in the meane tyme, secretly in the darke nyght, I resorted priuily to the aforesayde Christians, by whom beyng aduertised that twelue of the Portugale shippes were nowe arryued at Canonor, I considered that nowe would be good oportunitie to escape: And therefore remaynyng there yet seuen dayes, I learned all that I coulde of

A strange mistery of a glister.

More good happe then cunnynge.

Sely soules.

Egg.iii.

the

the preparations which the kyng of *Calecut* and his people made against the *Portugales*, both touching his army, artillerie, and other thinges parteynyng to the warres. But before I come to speake of my maner of departing, it wil here not be from the purpose, to declare howe the *Mahumetans* call the people to theyr churches, and of theyr maner of praying.

Howe the Mahumetan priestes call the people to theyr Churches, Cap. 34.

**T**hey priestes and other ministers of the Temple (of the which there is a great number) obserue this maner to call the people to the church. Certayne of these ascende to the highest Tower of the Temple, where first blowing three or foure brassen Trumpets, in the steepe of belles, they crye to the people with a loude voyce, to resorte to the Temple to prayers. Then stopping one eare with their finger, they say in theyr owne language these woordes: *Alla u ecubar*. That is to say, God is great. And againe, God is great: Come to the Temple of the great God, Come to pray to the great God: God is great, God is great, God was, God is, *Mahumet* the messenger of God shal ryle. They invited me also to the Temple, and desired me to pray to God for the *Mahumetans*, whiche I dyd outwardly, but of much other meanyng then they dyd.

Of the maner of praying among the Mahumetans, Cap. 35.

**T**hey haue certayne dayly and vsuall prayers, as we haue, in the which they call God their father, and vouchsafe to name the virgin *Marie*, full of grace. They pray not before they haue ben washed. Then standing in order, after the priest hath prayed, they pray also in their own language. Here to my companion, I sayned my selfe like, & founde diuers other occasions to depart from thence, and to go to *Canonor*. Well sayd he, It shall not be long ere I come thither to you, & in the meane tyme, with my letters I will commend you there to a friend and countrey man of myne, a riche merchant, who for my sake shall giue you good intertaynement.

What

What subtiltie I vsed to depart from *Calecut*, to go to the *Portugales*. Cap. 36.

**T**he daye before I departed from thence, I made the sayd Christians priue of my intente. In the meane tyme my companion ioynd me in company with two other *Persian* merchauntes, whiche were mynded also to go to *Canonor*: for there was in the cite of *Calecut* many merchauntes of *Persia*, *Syria*, and *Turchia*. Therefore the fyrst day of December, I, with the other two *Persians*, hyrnyng a lyght shyppe, gaue wynde to our sayles to proceede on our voyage. But see what chaunced suddenly, we had scarcely sayled as farre as a man may shoote an arrowe, but foure of the inhabitantes of the order of them whiche they call *Naeros* (of whom we haue spoken before) cryed to the gouernour of the shyp to drawe neare the lande in the kynges name. When they vnderstode who we were, they asked why they caryed me away without makynge the kyng priue thereto: When sayde the *Persians*, This *Mahumetan* that is heere with vs, is a holy man, and goeth in our company to the cite of *Canonor*. They aunswared, that they knewe me to be a man that had wrought myracles. Neuertheless, that because I could speake the language of the *Portugalles*, it was to be suspected least I should bewrape theyr secretes to them, and tell them of the nauie and armye whiche the kyng prepared agaynst the *Portugales*, and therefore commaunded the gouernour of the shyppe to cary vs no further. We obeyed theyr commaundement, and lest vs on the shoze. Then sayde one of the *Persians*, Let vs returne to *Calecut*. To whom I aunswared, Take heede what you do, for so shall you be in danger to loose all your sylkes if it be knownen that you haue payde no custome to the kyng. Then sayde the other *Persian*, What then (by your aduise) is it best for vs to do? I aunswared, that it was best for vs to go some what further by the shoze, vntyl we myght fynde some barker: whereunto they agreed. Therefore we, and our slaues laden with our sardells, went so .xii. myles along by the shoze. But what feare I was in, in the meane season, I commytte to wyse men to iudge. But as God would,

we

Trumpettes in the steepe of belles.

Not all that say, Lord, Lord, &c. Some of them say that he is vyle.

God the father. The virgin Marie.

Merchauntes of *Calecut*.

*Naeros* are gentlemen of the kynges garde.

we founde there a poore fsher man with a boate, with whom we agreed to hyng vs to Canonor, where we arryued late in the euenyng. Incontinent we went to the merchaunt Persian, to whom I had letters of commendation from my companyon. The tenour of the letters was, that he shoulde receyue me into his house, and enterteyne me frendly, vntil his comyng: Also that whatfoeuer frendeshyp he shewed vnto me, he woulde ascribe it to be done vnto hym selfe: Furthermore, that I was a holy man, and ioyned with hym in neere amitie and frendeshyp. When the merchaunt had redde the letters, he layde his hand on his head, and sayde vnto me, By this head you are welcome to me, and shall be here in safetie, and caused a good supper to be prepared for vs. After supper, the Persians sayde vnto me, Lette vs go walke to the sea syde. I agreed: and in short tyme we came to the place where the Portugales shyppe laye at anker. I am not able to expresse the secreete ioye whiche I felte in my selfe at the syght of these shyppes. In the way, I marked well the place where the Portugales had buylded their ffortresse, determining to come thither the nexte daye.

Howe I fledde to the Portugales from  
the citie of Canonor. Cap. 37.

**T**he daie folowing, when I sawe best oportunitie, I went  
towards the fortresse of the Portugales: and by the way,  
meetyng with two Portugales, in the Spanyshe tongue  
I asked them where was the fortresse of the Portugales.  
Then sayde they to me, Art thou a Christian? I am (sayde I)  
by the grace of God. Then sayde they agayne, From whence  
comdest thou? From the citie of Calcut sayde I. Then come  
with vs (sayde they) for we wyl bying thee to the gouernour.  
This gouernour was one maister *Laurentius*, sonne to the Vice-  
rope. So I went with them to the fortresse, whiche is not past  
foure furlonges from the citie. At the tyme of our commyng, the  
gouernour had not yet dined. When I came to his presence, I fel  
downe on my knees, and prayed hym with al humilitie for Chri-  
stes sake, to whom I was consecrated by baptisme, to haue com-  
passion vpon me, and to deliuer me from the hands of those infi-  
bell dogges. When it was nowe noyed in the citie that I was  
escaped

**The Gomers**  
noure of Boys  
rugales for  
treffe.

escaped to the Christians, there beganne a sturre and mutinie, in  
maner of a tumulte. Whiche when the gouernour vnderstoode,  
commaunded at his Captaines, souldiers, & other officers, to place  
their artilerie, & order all thynges in redynesse, least the peere,  
sudden rage shoulde attempte any thing agaynst the fort, and  
all thynges were pacified in shorthe tyme. Thenkes of Cale-  
cuttakyng me by the hande, brought me into the citie: I in four-  
there demaunded of me, what the kynge, haupng diligently  
out imagined or deuised to do agayns. When the gouernour  
med hym of all thynges, as farre as he secretes, he appoynted a  
searched to vnderstand all theyr secretes, who was then in the citie of  
was thus by me aduerted: Ciceroye, who was then in the citie of  
galley to byng me, the gallie, was named Iohannes Seranus.  
Cucin. The Cape saw me, he receiued me very fauourably. I  
When the also of all thynges: Saying furthermore vnto hym, That  
certify myght by his fauoure obteyne pardon and assurance for  
the. I layde two Italians, Peter Antonie and Iohn Maria, which be-  
they made mercurie for the infidel princes, I woulde procure  
that they shoulde returne to the Christians, and do them ryght  
good seruice, and that I was well assured, that they dyd that by  
constraint: Also that they desyred none other thing then safe conduct  
and mony for theyr charges. He was glad of this, and graunted  
my request. Whereuppon within thre dayes after, he sent me  
with letters to his soueraine, the gouernour in the citie of Canonor,  
with commaundement to deliuer me as muche mony as shoulde  
suffice for the charges of the Christian exploitours or espions  
of the citie of Calcutt. I went therefore incontinent to Canonor,  
where I agreed with one of the idolatours (who for pouertie had  
gaged his wife & childen) to cary letters to Calcutt to Iohn Ma-  
ria and Peter Antonie. The content of which letters was, that the  
Ciceroye had graunted them pardon and safe conducte, and al-  
so mony for theyr charges: Aduertisyng them to make none pri-  
uie of this thyng, and especially to beware least it shoulde be  
knownen to theyr slaues or concubines (For eche of them had a  
concubine, a child, & a slaue) Furthermore to leaue all theyr goods  
behynnd them, except thynges of great pryce, as mony & ieweltes:

The Viceroy  
of the king of  
Portugall in  
India.

Concubines  
and slaves.

**F 02**



For they had a very fayre Diamond of the weyght of .xxii. car-  
 rages, esteemed to be woorth .xxv. thousande crownes. They  
 had also a pearle of the weyght of .xxiii. carates. Furthermore,  
 a thousande rubies: of the whiche, some were of the weyght  
 of .xx. carate, and some of one and a halfe. They had also .lxxiii.  
 what garnished with many iewelless: lyke wyse in redye  
 to haue taken and syue hundred peeces of golde. But see  
 not contentynge much couetousnesse. Whyle they thought  
 would needes also all, and they lyues therewith: For  
 uertisement we had geuen with the aforesayde ryches, they  
 two Muskerattes, and two of them (notwithstandyng the ad-  
 stones are polished. All whiche they had wherewith precious  
 of they death: For whereas so many they had the onely cause  
 crectly conueyed, one of they slaves certayne not be se-  
 Calcut heereof, who at the first would scarcely bekyng of  
 the good opinion he had conceyued of them: Yet sent four for  
 his garde (of them whiche are called Naery) to knowe if  
 true. But the slave, perceyving that the kyng would deale fa-  
 vourably with them, went to the hygh priest or Bishop of the  
 sayth of the Mahumetans (whom they call Cady) and tolde hym  
 all that before he had tolde the kyng of Calcut: Addyng more-  
 over, that the sayde Christians had disclosed they secretes to the  
 Portugales. When the Bishop vnderstode these thynges, he  
 called a counsaile of all the Mahumetan merchautes, wyllyng  
 them, of the common treasure, to geue a hundred peeces of  
 golde to the kyng of Giogbi (who was then at Calcut) and to  
 speake to hym in this maner. It is not vnknownen to you (most  
 noble prince) howe a fewe peeres past, when your maiestie came  
 hither, we receiued you with more honorable enterteynement then  
 we are nowe able to do: The cause whereof, is no lacke of good  
 wyl or knowledge of our deuettie towarde your hyghnesse, but  
 rather the great and manyfolde iniuries and oppressions whiche  
 we haue susteyned, and do dayely susteyne by our mortal enemies  
 the Christians, whereof we haue, at this present, example of two  
 Christian traytors of this citie, whiche haue disclosed to the  
 Portugales al our secretes, and therefore we make most humble  
 petition

petition vnto you to take of vs a hundred peeces of golde, to com-  
 maund them to be slayne. When the kyng of Giogbi hearde these  
 wordes, he consented to they petition, and forthwith appoynted  
 two hundred men to commyt the murder: And that they might  
 be the lesse suspected of the Christians, meanyng suddenly to  
 kyll them in they house, came by tenne and tenne as though  
 they came to demaunde they accustomed rewarde. But when  
 the Christians sawe so great a company assembled about they  
 house, they suspected that they sought somewhat elles then they  
 rewarde or offeryng, and therefore incontinent takyng they  
 weapons, they fought so manfully at the wyndowes and doores  
 of they house, that they slue syxe men and woounded fourtie. But  
 at the length, some of the Giogbi, shot at them certaine iron arrowes  
 out of crosse bowes, with the whiche they were both slayne, the  
 one beyng sore wounded in the head, & the other in the bodie. As  
 soone as they sawe them fall downe, they cutte they thotes: and  
 takyng the hotte blood in the palmes of they handes, drunke it  
 vp, with contumelious wordes agaynst the Christians. After  
 this murder, the concubine of Iohn Maria came to Canonor, with  
 her young sonne, whom I bought of her for eyght peeces of  
 golde: and causyng hym to be baptyzed, named hym Laurence,  
 because it was saint Laurence daye: But within a peere after,  
 he dyed of the frenche poxe, whiche discafe had then disperled al  
 most throughe all the wynde. For I haue seene many infected  
 with it foure hundred myles beyonde Calcut. They call it Pua.  
 And they affyrme that this discafe was neuer seene there past  
 xvii. peeres before. It is there more greuous and outrageous  
 then with vs.

Of the Naue of the citie of Calcut, and of the memora-  
 ble conflict betweene the Christians and Mahumetans. In  
 the whiche the Portugales with incredible valiantnesse  
 gaue theyr enemies the ouerthrowe. And howe the  
 kyng of Canonor reioyced at their vic-  
 torie. Cap. 38.

In the peere of our Lorde .1506. the fourth daye of March,  
 wordes was brought vs of the death of the sayde Christians.  
 The same daye, from the cities of Calcut, Pauan, Capagot, Pan-  
 daram, & Trompatam, departed a great naue of two hundred and  
 eyght

The death of  
 Iohn Maria  
 and Peter An-  
 tonpe.

The frenche  
 poxe.

The naue of  
 the kyng of Can-  
 nor agaynst  
 the Portugales.

Beware of co-  
 uetousnesse.

The Bishop of  
 the Mahumetans.

The Mahumetans conspi-  
 re the death of  
 the Christians.

An Oration.

The Mahu-  
metan soldiers.

eight shippes, of the whiche fourescore and foure were great shippes, or shippes of burden, and the rest were dyuen with Dyes, after the maner of Foystes, whiche they call *Parao*. The Nauie was manned with in maner innumerable Mahumetans, shewyng them selues very braue in apparel of purple sylke and Bombasine, with also theyr hygh and sharpe cappes, after theyr maner, of the same colour, lynced with sylke: wearyng also on theyr armes many braccettes, and on theyr handes hadde gloues, embroidered & garnyshe with diuers kyndes of woorkes: for weapons, they had Turky bowes, swoordes, lances, pelses, and all sortes of gunnes, after our maner. When we sawe theyr Nauie procedyng in order, and well instructed, it seemed farre off lyke a wood, the masses presentyng the similitude of trees: Whiche thyng seemed so kille to deterre vs, that we were in sure beleefe, that our God and Christe woulde geue vs the victorie agaynst the blasphemers of his holy name, the Idolatours and Sarafens, old enemies of our religion. And therfore the valiant knight and gouernour, the sonne of the honorable lord *Don Francisco Dalmeda*, viceroy of India, who had there the supream gouernement of twelue shippes, with the assistance of the Admirall of the Nauie, when he sawe the great force of the enemye, myndfull of his accustomed vertue, with sounde of trumpet assembled all the souldiers, and spake to them in this maner. My deare frendes, and brethren in one God, and one fayth of Iesus Christe, now is the tyme come when you ought to remember, that as Iesus Christe spared not, neyther feared to gyue his precious body to death for our sakes: euen so, except we wyl shewe our selues most unkynde, and unworthy so great grace of God, it shalbe our duties to spende our liues in the defence of his glorie, and our holy fayth, assuring our selues of the victorie against these dogges, hateful to God, & progenie of the deuyl. Now therfore fyghtyng in his name, & vnder the banner of his holy crosse, shew your selues manfull & valiant: for now is in you the power to geat eternal fame, in mainteyning the quarel of our sauour. Therefore with me, lystyng by your hartes to God, & your armes with force & courage, let vs gyue the onset on these dogs. When the gouernour had sayd these wordes, the priest went vpp to the hyghest part of the ship, & holdyng in his hand y picture of

The oration of  
the gouernour  
to the Christian  
soldiers.

Christe

Christe nayled on the crosse, shewed it vnto the souldiers, exhortyng them to remember the commaundementes of God, and the holy fayth and baptisme whereby they were consecrated to God, puttynge no doubt in the forgiuenesse of theyr synnes, dyng in so godly a quarell: and then blessing them, with inuocation of the name of God, he pronounced the sentence of absolution and forgiuenesse of theyr synnes. The exhortation of the priest, so moued the hartes of all men, that the teares ranne from our eyes for ioy & great desire we had to die in y quarel. In the meane tyme the nauie of the Mahumetans made sayle towarde vs. The same daye our Admirall with two Foystes made towarde them, & passyng betweene two of theyr greatest shypes, discharged his ordinance on both sydes: whiche the Admirall byd, to proue the strength of those shippes, whiche they chiefly esteeme, and trust most vnto: But this daye was nothyng done woorth y memorie. The day folowynge, the Mahumetans with full sayles drewe neare the cite of *Canonor*, and sent vs woorde by a messenger, that if we woulde permytte them to go whither they woulde, they woulde not haue to do with vs. Our Admirall answered, that the Christians coulde not so forgette the periurie of the Mahumetans, in violatyng theyr fayth and promyse made by common consent, when they woulde not suffer the Christians to passe that way, but contrary to theyr fayth and promyse sue. xlii. Christians, and robbed them of foure thousande pecces of golde: and therefore hadde them passe further if they durst, and they shoulde well knowe of what reputation and spirite the Christians are. Then sayde the Mahumetans, Mahumet wyl defende vs, and confounde the Christians: and with those woordes, assaulted vs all at once with incredible furie, thynkyng to haue passed through, haunyng no further to sayle then .x. myles from the shore. But our Admirall of purpose suffered the enemies to come nearer vntyl they were ryght oueragaynst y cite of *Canonor*, meynyng there to set on them with all his force, that the kyng of *Canonor* beholdyng the conflicte, myght be witnesse of the valiantnesse of the Christians. Then when the trumpetter of the Admirals ship sounded the battayle, and gaue the signe, incontinent he assaulted two of theyr greatest shippes.

The nauie of  
the Mahumetans.

The Admirall  
of the Chris-  
tians.

The quarel and  
occasion of the  
warre.

The Mahu-  
metans geue  
the onset.

Here

The valiant-  
nesse of the Ad-  
mirall.

A great laugh-  
ter of the Ma-  
hometans.

The valiant-  
nesse of John  
Seranus.

Fewer Chri-  
stians slayne.

The valiant-  
nesse of Simon  
Martin.

Decre I am not able to expresse the exceeding noyse of theyr  
Drummes, Trumpets, Tambarels, and other such innumera-  
ble, which they vse in this case. The Admirall hym selfe, in ma-  
ner contemnyng all theyr meane shippes, passed through theyr  
naute, and inuaded one of theyr greatest shippes, casting thereon  
chaynes and graspsles, to fyght with them at hande strokes: but  
they cast of the chaynes thysle, yet the fourth tyme the chaynes  
tooke such holde, that the Christians entred into the ship, where  
they made such hauocke and slaughter, that all the Mahometans  
of that shippe (which were fife hundred in number) were slayne,  
insomuche that there was not one left alpye to tell newes. The  
Admirall encouraged by this victorie, inuaded another of theyr  
great shippes, whiche had chayned it selfe with a Foyst of the  
Christians, where was also a great conflict, in the whiche were  
slayne aboue fyue hundred Mahometans, and theyr ship sunke.  
The Mahometans discouraged by this defeate, assaulted our  
twelue Foystes with al theyr force, and carped them away. But  
heere the manhood and valiantnesse of John Seranus, the captaine  
of the Galley, shewed it selfe, who only with one Gally made  
suche a slaughter among the Mahometans, that it may seeme  
incredible: for he so fiercely inuaded them that had carped away  
the Foystes, that he recovered them all, & sunke two other of the  
Mahometan shippes. In these warres, God of his grace so  
prospered the Christians, that few of them were slayne, but ma-  
ny wounded. The conflict continued from mornynge, vntyl the  
darkenesse of the nyght made an ende of the battayle. I may not  
heere forget to speake of the marueylous aduenture and God-  
ly zeale of Simon Martin, captayne of one of our shippes: For  
it so chaunced, that the Brigantine in the which I was, depar-  
tyng somewhat from our naute, gaue occasion to our enemies to  
pursue vs, for incontinent foure of the Mahometan shippes as-  
sayled vs, and put vs to much trouble, insomuch that .xv. Ma-  
hometans had nowe entred into our Brigantine, and we were  
constrayned to flee to the Houpe, as to the safest place: But the  
valiant captayne Simon Martin, seying the daunger that we were  
in, and that the Mahometans were entred into our Brigantine,  
leapt into it fiercely, and calling vpon the name of Iesus Christ,  
fought so valiantly, that he slue fyve of the Mahometans: wher-  
by

by we, beyng encouraged, assisted hym in such sort, that the Ma-  
hometans cast them selues into the sea, where some were drown-  
ed, & som escaped by swimming. Therfore when the Mahome-  
tans knewe y the Christians had the victorie, they sent .iiii. other  
Foystes to helpe the first. But when the captayne of our Brigan-  
tine sawe this, he tooke certayne emptye Tubbes, in the whiche  
gunne powder had ben kepte before, and stoppyng them with  
flaxe, placed them in such sort, that they seemed far of, like peeces  
of great artillerie: then laying a little gun powder by the flaxe,  
and holding a fyre sticke in his hand, as though he would put fire  
to the Gunne, the Mahometans thinking that it had ben a gunne  
in deede, were thereby put in such feare, that they departed. The  
Admirall yet further pursuing the enemyes, gaue them an other  
great ouerthrow, and tooke seuen of theyr Foistes, laden with all  
sortes of merchandies, and soonke tenne other with the shotte of  
great artillerie, of the whiche one was laden with Elephanes.  
Therfore when the Mahometans sawe the sea now almost coue-  
red with the bodie of their slaine men, and their chiefe shippes  
some taken, some soonke, & some spoiled, were out of all hope to  
recouer, & therfore saued them selues by fleeing. But the Christi-  
ans, seeing yet hope of further victorie, and the Mahometans so  
discouraged, thought it not best to leaue them so, but rather by-  
pon such prosperous successe, to take the oportunitie, and bitterly  
to destroy them: & therfore the Admirall, seeing his men ioyfull of  
the victorie, and desirous to pursue the enemye, folowed the Ma-  
hometans, and gaue them a newe battayle, whiche lasted all day  
and all nyght, whilst the Christians in the nyght tyme slue  
them euen in theyr fleeing, & soonke almost all their shippes. In  
the meane tyme certayne of our Foistes sawe a shyppe of bur-  
den of the enemye, wanderyng out of the way, and made sayle  
thither with all hast. But the enemies in short space seeing them  
selues ouermatched, hurled all their cariages into the sea, and tru-  
sting to swimming (wherein they are most experte) caste them  
selues after. But our men folowed them euen to the shore, with  
launces, crof bowes, & stones, so killing them as they swamme,  
that the sea was coloured and polluted with their blood. Yet by  
swimming many escaped, by estimation about the number of two  
hundred, for they are in youth so brought vp in swimming, that  
Wh. i. they

A Stratageme.

Tenne Ma-  
hometan shippes  
soonke with the  
shot of great ar-  
tillerie.

The Christians  
had the victorie

An other great  
conflicte.

The Maho-  
metans slayne  
in swimming.

The Maho-  
metans experte  
in swimming.

they swamme in the sea almost twentie myles, oftentimes  
 dyng vnder the water, and remaynyng there so long, that they  
 deceyued our syght: for sometymes we thought that they were  
 soonke, and sometyme agayne seeyng them flete on the wa-  
 ter, it so troubled our sense, that we thought we had scene some  
 phantasie or vision: but they were in maner all destroyed by  
 one mischaunce or an other, and especially a great number in the  
 great shippes which were soonke by shoe of the great artillerie.  
 The day folowynge, the Admirall sent certayne Brigantines and  
 Gallies to the shore, to number the dead bodies, whiche the sea  
 had caste vp: they were founde to be about thre thousande, be-  
 syde them also which the sea had deuoured. The kyng of Canonor,  
 beholdynge all these thynges, was greatly in loue with the Chri-  
 stians, and commended their valiauntnesse and vertue, and not  
 vnwoorthily: For to speake that I haue scene, I haue ben in ma-  
 ny soze warres, yet neuer sawe I more valiant men, then the Por-  
 tugales here shewed them selues to be.

But when we thought that we had nowe made an ende of  
 these Tragidies, we had in maner a woofle to begyn: For it so  
 chaunced, that in fewe dayes after, the kyng of Canonor, who  
 fauoured vs, dyed: In whose place succeeded an other mor-  
 tall enemye to the Christians, and friende to the kyng of Cale-  
 cut, by whose helpe and rycheffe, hee was aduanced to the  
 kyngdome of Canonor. He therefore assembled his power to  
 make newe warre agaynst the Christians, with great expediti-  
 on and haste, bycause he supposed that a great parte of theyr mu-  
 nitions was nowe wasted, and they also soze weeryed, and for the  
 most parte wounded. And to further his attempte, the kyng of  
 Calcut sent him xiiii. peeces of great artillerie. This warre  
 beganne the seventh day of Aprill, and continued vntill the xx.  
 of August, before all thinges were pacified. It were heere  
 to long to declare howe in these warres also the Christians be-  
 haued them selues manfully agaynst the Mahumetans, which  
 neuer encountered with them fewer then fyue or sixe and twen-  
 tie thousande in number, haupng also with them a hundred and  
 fourtie peeces of artillerie, and were armed after the maner of  
 the inhabitants of Calcut: but the Christians with har-  
 nelle

The kyng of  
 Canonor.

The valiant-  
 nesse of the  
 Portugales.

The death of  
 the kyng of Ca-  
 nonor.

A newe expedi-  
 tion agaynst the  
 Christians.

Long warres.

Great oddes.  
 The Mahu-  
 metans artil-  
 lerie.

nelle after our maner.

These Infidelles ble this order in theyr warres. They di-  
 uide theyr army into many wynges, euery wyng conteynyng  
 the number of two or thre thousande men, and only one wyng  
 proceedeth to the battayle, the reste attendynge what ende or  
 successe they haue, before they attempt any further. But whi-  
 lest these wynges are nowe marchynge to ioyn in battayle, it  
 passeth all imagination to thynke, with howe great a noyse of  
 innumeraill muscull instrumentes, after theyr maner, they fill  
 the eares of all the army, to encourage them to syght, while  
 in the meane season also, a great number runneth before the  
 army with marueylous flames of artificiall fyres: and in fine,  
 gyue the onsette with suche outrageous furie and outcry, that  
 two thousande of them were able to feare tenne thousande that  
 had no experience of these thynges. But see the goodnesse of  
 God, who neuer forsaketh them that beleue faythfully in his  
 holy religion. Euen nowe in the extremitie of these troubles,  
 our men beyng in maner ouercharged with the multitude of  
 theyr enemyes, and long warres, sodayne newes was brought  
 that a newe nauie of Portugales was arryued at Canonor by the  
 conducte of the valiant knyght Don Tristandè Cugna: Whom  
 we immediately aduertysed with howe greuous warres wee  
 were oppressed. Who incontinent sent vs, in certayne Barkes,  
 thre hundred valiaunt Souldiours, well armed with harnesse,  
 after the maner of the Christians. When wee sawe these,  
 we recovered our spirites, in suche sorte, that if our Admirall  
 woulde haue permitted, we woulde haue burnt the citie of  
 Canonor. But when the Mahumetans understoode the newe  
 succours that we had, all discouraged in mynde, they sought all  
 meanes to make peace with the Christians, and assygned  
 one named Mamalmaricar, a man of great ryches and wyle-  
 dome among them, to bee intermediatour, and to make the  
 conditions of peace. Hee therefore vnder safe conducte, came  
 to vs to common of the matter. He told him, that we coulde  
 make no peace without the consent of the Viceroye, who  
 was then in the citie of Cucin. The Admirall thought  
 it beste not to contempne the conditions of peace, for

The order of  
 the Mahumet-  
 ans Campe.

Instrumentes.

Outragious  
 out crye.

The arryuyng  
 of a newe Na-  
 uie of Portuga-  
 les.

The Mahu-  
 metans seeke to  
 make peace  
 with the Chris-  
 tians.

Phh.ii.

that

The peace con-  
cluded.

A pleasant  
fable.

Saint Christo-  
pher, the Chris-  
tian Giant.

The enemies  
confesse that  
God gaue the  
victorie.

Simple and ig-  
norant people.

Mossis multa,  
sed operarii  
pauci. &c.

The Masse.

for that durynge the tyme of the warres, they coude not sende theyr shippes laden with merchaundies into *Portugale*, and therefore by the consens of the *Viceroye*, the peace was concluded.

But nowe, to myngle some delight with these sorowes, you shal heare a pleasant fable woorthie to be put in memorie. Therefore all thinges beyng pacified, as I walked in the citie of *Canon*, I met with certayne merchantes *Idolatours*, with whom I was acquainted before the warres, who in theyr language sayde thus vnto me, Are you our friende? Yea sayde I. Then we pray you in the way of friendship, shewe vs that *Christian* which is muche hygher and stronger then any other of the *Christians*, and kyllled in maner euery day about twentie of the *Dahumetans*, and resisted the dartes of fiftie *Nacros* (these are of the garde) and escaped without hurte? I answered, that that *Christian* was not nowe in the citie, but was gone to *Cucin* to the *Viceroye*. But when I better considered the matter, I sayde thus vnto them, Are you my friendes? Yea, we are, sayde they. Then sayde I, That souldier that fought so valiauntly in the battaile, was no *Portugale*. Then sayde they: Of what countrey was he then? I answered agayne, that he was the God of the *Portugales*, and the great God of all the world. Then sayde they, Verily you speake the tructh. For we heard the *Dahumetans* say, that it was not the *Portugales*, but the *Portugales* God, that gaue them the ouerthrowe, and therefore we thynke your God to bee better then theyrs, although we know him not: And by this meanes it was hurted ouer all the countrey, that the *Dahumetans* were overcome rather by the assistance of God, then by the strength of men. For these people are very simple and ignorant, and astonysed in maner at euery thyng. For some when they sawe one of our company hauing a little bell in his hande, and hearde the noyse of the bell when he moued his hand, and no noyse when he set it downe, they tooke it for a myracle, saying one to an other: doubtlesse theyr God is the greatest God, for when they touche the bell, it speaketh, and when they teuche it not, it sayeth nothyng. They tooke pleasure and admiration to beholde the solemnities of the Masse.

And

And when the priest lysted by the holy bread or host, I sayde vnto them, beholde here the God of the *Portugales*, and of all the worlde. Then sayde they, You say truly: but we can not perceyue it. This haue I sayde, that you may hereby knowe what simple and ignorant people these are: yet are they very great inchaunters, and can inchaunte Serpentes, whose poyson is so strong, that they kyll only with touchyng. They are also of incredible agilitie, and therefore excell in vaultyng, leapyng, runnyng, swymmyng, tumblyng, walkyng on ropes, and such other exercises of lyghnesse and agilitie.

No more can  
wyser men then  
they.

Inchaunters,  
and of great  
agilitie.

The seuenth booke, entreating of the viage or Nauigation of *Ethiopia*. Cap. 1.

They that will take vppon them to wyte any hystorie, had neede to heare well in memorie what they haue promysed and taken in hande, lest for theyr paynes and well meynyng, they be rewarde with shame and rebuke, and therefore whereas in the begynnyng of this booke, I promysed to wyte of the Nauigation of *Ethiopia*, I will with the description of this biage, make an ende of my long traueyle, and speake of such thinges as I sawe there by the way, in my returne from *India* into my long desired countrey, in the company of the *Portugales*.

Of diuers and many Ilandes of  
*Ethiopia*. Cap. 2.

Therefore the seuenth day of December, we directed our iourney toward *Ethiopia*, trauesing first the great gulfe, and saylyng foure hundred myles, came to an Ilande named *Monzambrich*, vnder the dominion of the kyng of *Portugale*. But before we arryued there, we sawe by the way many towneys pertainyng to the *Portugales*, and also many strong fortresses in the kyngdomes of *Melinda* and *Mombaza*. The kyng of *Portugale*, hath also certayne fortresses in *Monzambrich* and *Zaphala*.

The Ilande of  
*Monzamb-  
rich*.

*Melinda*.  
The kyng of  
*Portugales* do  
mition in  
*Ethiopia*.

Phh.iii.

But



The conquestes  
of Tristan de  
Cugna.

Sacutara.

Cumeris.

Pende.

But if I should here speake of the memorabile factes of the val-  
ant knyght *Tristan de Cugna*, at his returne from India, I should  
take in hande a thyng farre aboue my reache: beyng suche, as de-  
serue rather the commendacions of *Homere* & *Virgil*, for he inua-  
ded and subdued the great cities of *Gogia*, *Pati*, and *Craua*, with al-  
so the goodly Ilande of *Sacutara*, where the kyng of *Portugale*  
hath erected certayne fortresses, and omit also to speake of ma-  
ny other Ilandes whiche we sawe in the way: as the Ilande of  
*Cumeris*, and six other which beare plentie of ginger, sugar, & dy-  
uers other goodly frutes, and abundance of fleshe: also the most  
fruitfull Ilande of *Pende*, likewise subiect to the kyng of *Portugale*.

Of the Ilande of *Monzambrich*, and the inha-  
bitantes thereof. Cap. 3.

Zaphala.

Solde.

Blacke Mahu-  
metans.

Troglodite,  
Ethiopes.

Heardes of  
Elephantes.

Elephantes are  
as rapde of fyre.

This Ilande (as we haue sayde) is subiecte to the kyng of  
*Portugale*, as is also *Zaphala*. From the Ilande of *Mon-  
zambrich*, is brought much golde and oyle, but is brought  
thither from the firme lande. The Ilande is not byg,  
and is inhabited with blacke *Mahumetans*, lyving in maner in  
necessitie of all thinges, yet hath it a commodious porte.  
They haue no corne but that is brought from the continent,  
where also we went alande to see the countrey, where we sawe  
nothyng but a vagabunde and rascall kynde of blacke men, coue-  
ryng only theyr priuities with leaues of trees, and are besyde  
naked, and the women in lyke maner. Theyr lippes are two  
fingers thicke, theyr foreheades very large, theyr teeth great,  
and as white as snow. They are fearefull at the sight of euery  
thyng, and especially when they see armed men. Therefore see-  
ing theyr fearefulness, & knowing them to be without weapons  
that can doe any great hurte, only sixe of vs well armed, bearing  
also with vs *Hargabuses*, and haupng in our companie a blacke  
slawe that somewhat knewe the countrey, we began to enter fur-  
ther into the lande: and when we had gone forwarde one dayes  
iourney, we founde many heardes of Elephantes. Here the  
slawe that was our gypde, gaue vs counsaile to take fyrebrandes  
in our handes, bycause these beastes feare fyre aboue all thinges.

But

But we once chaunced to fynde thre female Elephantes, which  
had very lately brought forth theyr Calues, and therefore feared  
not the fyre: but without all feare, folowed vs so farre, that we  
were fayne to flee to a mountayne to saue vs from the beastes.  
When we had entred about tenne myles into the land, we found  
a certayne denne on the syde of a mountayne, where some of the  
blacke inhabitauntes lurked. These spake so confoundedly and  
chatteringly lyke Apes, that I am not able to expresse theyr ma-  
ner of speche: Yet to goe the nearest thereto that I can, theyr  
speech is lykest to the euill fauored voyce which the Muleters of  
*Sicilia* vse when they dyue theyr Mules: and suche maner of  
blabbering vse these people in theyr speache. Where the Pilot  
of the shyppe asked vs if wee woulde buye any kyne, saying,  
that here we should haue them good cheape. But we, thinking  
that eyther he had mocked vs, or that agreeing with the inha-  
bitauntes (whom he knewe before) he woulde haue deceyued vs  
of our money and wares, sayde that we had no money. Then  
sayde he vnto vs, These people desire nothyng lesse then mo-  
ney, haupng muche more plentie of golde then we haue, which  
is founde not farre hence. Then sayde we to him, What desyre  
they then? They loue (sayde he) despicable thynges, and of  
small value: as pynnes, knyues, syfers, looking Glasses,  
Haukes belles, bagges, or boxes, to keepe theyr golde in, cop-  
per Ryngeles, iangelinges to hang at theyr Tymberelles, bosses,  
laces, broches, copper chaynes, carkenettes, braselettes, and  
suche other tryffles to trymme theyr wyues and chyldren. We  
answared, that we were content to gyue them suche wares for  
theyr kyne, if they woulde byng them to the nexte moun-  
tayne. Then sayde our Pilot agayne, They will byng  
them with vs to the mountayne: but no further in any conditi-  
on: Therefore speake what you will gyue. Then one of our  
companions sayde, that he had a bosse of grauen copper, and  
also a little bell. But I, bycause I had no suche merchaundies,  
yet beyng desirous to eate fleshe, sayde that I woulde sell one of  
my shertes for kyne. Then sayde the Pilot, Let mee alone  
with the matter. Then calling vnto him fyue or sixe of the  
Inhabitauntes, he shewed them our goodly Jewelles, and de-  
maunded for them thre hundred kyne.

Whh.iiii.

But

An Appre-  
language.

Apch mercha-  
ndies for golde.

Kyne very  
good cheape.

Troglodites.

Cabo de Buena  
Speranza.  
The Ilande of  
Sainte Laurence  
or  
Madagascar.

The kynge of  
Portugale.

The Christian  
religion spread  
very in India.

But the inhabitantes, not muche differng from beastes, made signes that they would gyue only sustienc. In syne, we agreed, yet suspectng some deceite, neuertheless they kept theyr promise, and sent vs sustienc kyne by two of theyr companions. We were scarcely departed, but we hearde a noyse and tumulte in theyr denness, and were partly astrapde lest these Troglodites woulde folowe vs, and therefore leauyng our kyne, we tooke vs to our weapons. But they made signes vnto vs to feare nothyng. Then our pilot tolde vs, that their tumulte was only which of them should haue the bolle of copper. Then recouering our kyne, we droue them forwarde to the toppe of the mountaine, and there dismissed the two blacke slaues that came with them. Whyle wee were thus delyuyng our kyne by the syde of a little wood, we met agayne with the Elephantes, whereof beyng in great feare, we forsooke our kyne, and trusted to our feete. Therefore departyng from hence, we returned to the Ilande, where makyng prouision for our vyage, we sayled towarde the Cape, called *Caput Bone Spei*, passyng the Ilande of Sainte Laurence (otherwyle named *Madagascar*) beyng fourescore leagues distant from the nearest continenc or firme land. I suppose that in shorte tyme the kyng of Portugale will be Lord of this Ilande: For hauyng nowe burned and destroyed many villages and townes of the Ilande, his name is fearefull among them. And as farre as I can coniecture by my peregrinations of the worlde (especially of *India* and *Ethiopia*) I thynke that the kyng of Portugale, if hee continue as he hath begunne, is lyke to bee the rycheest kyng in the worlde, and doubtlesse not vnwoorthily for the dignitie and godly zeale of so noble a pryncce, as by whose meanes the Christian faith is daily greatly increased. For it is certayne that in *India*, and especially in the citie of *Cucin*, where the *Viceroy* remayneth, euery holy day, tenne or twelue Idolaters or *Dahumetans* are professed to our religion, whereby we may conceyue good hope, that in tyme our faith shall there bee greatly enlarged by the grace of God, who hath there gyuen suche supernaturall victories to the Christians, and therefore all professers of Christes holy name, ought to pray to almyghtie God to assyst hym in so godly an enterpryse.

Of

Of the Cape called *Caput Bone Spei*.  
That is, the Cape of good  
hope. Cap. 4.

Departyng from the Cape named *Caput Bone Spei*, wher we had nowe sayled aboute two hundred myles, there rose suddenly a tempest with contrarye wynde. The cause whereof was, that we had on the lefte hande the Ilande of Sainte Laurence, and many other litle Ilandes, from whence bloweth for the most part a great gale of wynde. And therefore for the space of seuen dayes, beyng here dangerously tossed to and fro by the rages of the sea and wynde, at the length we escaped, by the grace of God. But proceedyng about two hundred leagues, a newe tempest rysyng so scattered our shippes in the space of fyre dayes, that we mette not togeather agayne vntyll we arryued at *Luxburne* in *Portugale*. I was in the shyppe of *Barthelmewe*, a *Florentine*, citizen of *Luxburne*. The shyppe was named *Saint Vincent*, a vessell of exceeding capacite, & laden with seuen thousande tonnes of all sortes of spyes. In the way, we passed also by an other Iland, named the Iland of *Saint Helen*, where we sawe certayne sythes of suche enoyne and monstrous byggenesse, that one of them was as bygge as a great house. When they ryle aboute the water, they yane or gape so wyde, that ypper sawe couereth al the forehead, as it were a souldier in shynnyng harnesse. Agayne when they swimme on the bymyne of the water, the forehead is seene the breadth of thre great paces. And when they swimme in the sea, they so trouble the water, and come so neare the shypps, that we were fayne to discharge al our artillarge to dreyne them away. Shortly after we founde an Ilande, named the Ilande of *Ascencion*, where we sawe many sowes, about the byggenesse of our Duckes, so symple, without suspicion or feare, that we tooke them with our handes: but shortly after they were taken, they shewed an incredible fiercenesse. I thynke verily that they neuer sawe any man before, they so behelde vs before they were

Tempest.

An exceeding  
great shyppe  
and great rych-  
es of spyes.

Great Whale  
spyes.

The Ilande of  
Ascencion.

were taken, and were as shyll as if they had ben astonysed: For in that Ilande we sawe no luyng creature, save onely innumerable fyshes, and the sayd byrdes. After we had passed this Ilande many dayes sayling, as though we were nowe come to our owne worlde, the North starre, and guardions of our maryners, appeared unto vs. And here oportunitie seruethe well, to confute the opinion of them that thynke that men maye not sayle in regions subiect to the pole Antartike or south pole, by the guide of the north starre. For it is certayne, that the Portugales sayle by the guyde of the north starres, although they be utterly out of syght by the eleuation of the pole Antartike. Yet do they sometymes refrethe the vertue of the needle, with the stone whiche euer naturally respecteth the north pole. A fewe dayes after, we arryued at the sayre region, where are scene many Ilandes, named the Ilandes of *Astures*, so named for the multitude of those Egles whiche we commonly call *Astures*. These Ilandes are diuersely named: for some are named *Pici*, *Martij*, some, *De Coruo*: also *De Floribus*, *Sancti Georgij*, *Gratiosa*, and *Feial*. Departyng from hence, we came to the Ilande of *Tertiera*, where we remayned two dayes. All these Ilandes are maruepulous fruitefull, and haue plentie of all thynges necessary for mans lyfe. Departyng from hence, in seven dayes sayling, we came to y goodly cite of *Luxburne*, or *Phisbona* in Portugale. At my comyng thither, I was brought to the kynges presence, whose handes kissing with most humble reuerence, I thanked his maiestie for the great fauour I had found at the hands of his subiectes and officers in *India*. He entertayned me most gracioufly in his court, untill I had informented hym of all thynges whiche I had obserued in my boyage to *India*. A fewe dayes after, I shewed his hyghnesse the letters patentes whereby his Lieutenant the *Viceroye* of *India*, gaue me the order of knyghthod, despyng his maiestie to confyrme the same by his great seale: which my petition, he immediately graunted. And thus departing from thence with the kynges pasporte and safe conduct, at the length after these my long and great trauayles and dangers, I came to my long desyred and natie countrey, the cite of *Rome*, by the grace of God, to whom be all honour and glory.

FINIS.

Sayling by the north starre in regions beneath the Equinoctiall lyne.

Of the hygher East India, called India Tercera, or Treciera.



In this *India*, whiche the portugales call *Tercera*, are very great kyngdomes: as the kyngdomes of *Beugala*, *Pegu*, *Berma*, *Eran-cangui*, *Dausian*, *Capelam*, and the great kyngdome of *Malacha*, called of the olde wyrters *Aurea Chersonesus*, whose chiefe cite is also called *Malacha*, and was in olde tyme named *Tachola*. Under this kyngdome are infinite Ilandes called *Maluche*, whereof the principall are these. *Iana* the greater, *Iana* the lesse, *Polagua*, *Mendana*, *Cuba*, *Cailon*, *Huban*, *Bur*, *Tenado*, *Anbon*, and *Gilolo*, with infinite other. On the South west part from *Malacha*, is the great Ilande of *Samotra*, called in olde tyme *Taprobana*, in the whiche are the kyngdomes of *Pedir*, *Biraen*, *Pazer*, *Ardagni*, and *Ham*. This Iland, & al the other called *Maluche*, bring forth great quantitie of Cloues, Cinamome, Nutternegges, *Paces*, and all other kyndes of spyes, except *Pepper*, whiche groweth in the province of *Calecut*, and the Ilande of *Ceilam*. All these sortes of spices are carped to *Malacha* to be solde. But the greatest part of them is carped to *Cathay* and *China*: and from thence to the North partes of *Tartarie*. This kyngdome of *China*, is very great, and was in olde tyme called *Sina*. Here is founde great plentie of precious stones. The people are very subtile and ryche. They are al apparelled eyther in sylke or cloth, or vestures of other woorkemanshyppe, and are of good ciuilitie. They do not gladly permit the Portugales or other straungers to trafficke in theyr kyngdome: whose most famous place vpon the sea syde, is named *Cantan*, and the sea *Machiam*, called of the olde wyrters, the sea of *Sina*.

Malacha.

Tachola. The Ilandes of Malucha.

The Ilande of Samotra.

Spices.

Calecut. Ceilam. Cathay. China.

Precious stones. Sylke.

Cantan.

Of

Of the prices of precious stones and Spices, with theyr weightes and measures, as they are accustomed to be solde both of the Moores and the gentyles:  
And of the places where they growe.

**F**oasmuche as in dyuers places of this hystorie, mention is made of precious stones, I haue thought good to declare somewhat aswell of theyr prices, as of the places of theyr generation, that we may not vttterly be ignorant of the thynges whiche we so greatly esteeme, and buie so deare.

## Of the Rubie.

**T**he Rubies growe in India, and are founde for the most parte in a ryuer named *Pegu*. These are of the best kynde and finest, which they of the lande of *Malabor* cal *Nunpu-clo*, and are well solde, if they be fayre and cleane without spottes. The Indians, to knowe theyr finenesse, put them vpon theyr tongues, comptyng that to be best that is couldest and most harde. And to see theyr finenesse: they take them vp with a peece of ware by the sharpest poynt, and looking agaynst the lyght, espye in them euery small spot or flake. They are also founde in certayne deepe fosses or pittes, whiche are made in mountaynes that are beyonde the sayde ryuer. They are scoured and made cleane in the countrey of *Pegu*: yet can they not square and polyshe them, but for this purpose sende them to diuers other countreys, & especially to *Palcacate*, *Narsinga*, *Calecut*, and the region of *Malabor*, where are many cunnyng *Lapidaries*.

And to geue you intelligence of the value of these stones, ye shall vnderstande that this woorde *Fanan*, signifieth a weyght, somewhat more then two of our Carattes: and .xi. *Fanans* and a quarter, is one *Mitigal*: and .vi. *Mitigals* and a halfe, make one vnce. This *Fanan*, is also a kynde of mony whiche is in value one ryall of syluer, and therfore after this accompte I say that.

Eyght fine Rubies of the weyght of one *Fanan* (which are in all, about two carattes) are in value.

Four Rubies that wey one *Fanan*, are worth.

Two that wey one *Fanan*.

*Fanan*. x. which is one  
croune of  
*Fanan*. xx. golde.  
*Fanan*. xl.  
One

One caratte is  
iii. graynes.

## The prices of precious stones

One that wepeth thre quarters of one Fanan.	Fanan. 30.
One that wepeth one Fanan.	Fanan. 50.
One that wepeth one Fanan and a quarter.	Fanan. 65.
One that wepeth one Fanan and a halfe.	Fanan. 100.
One that wepeth one Fanan and thre quarters.	Fanan. 150.
One that wepeth two Fanans.	Fanan. 200.
One that wepeth two Fanans and a quarter.	Fanan. 250.
One that wepeth two Fanans and a halfe.	Fanan. 300.
One that wepeth two Fanans and thre quarters.	Fanan. 350.
Of thre Fanans.	Fanan. 400.
Of thre and a quarter.	Fanan. 500.
Of thre and a halfe.	Fanan. 550.
Of thre and thre quarters.	Fanan. 600.
Of thre and thre quarters and a halfe.	Fanan. 630.
Of foure Fanans.	Fanan. 660.
Of foure and a quarter.	Fanan. 700.
Of foure and a halfe.	Fanan. 800.
Of fyue Fanans.	Fanan. 1000.
Of fyue and a halfe.	Fanan. 1200.
Of sixe Fanans, which are about twelue Carats.	Fanan. 1500.

which make a hundred and fytie crownes of golde. And these are commonly the prices of perfect Rubies. But suche as are not perfect, and haue any spottes in them, or are not of good colour, are of lesse price, accordyng to the arbitrement and estimation of the buyer.

Of the Rubies which growe in the Iland of Zeilam.  
**I**n the Ilande of Zeilam, beyng in the seconde India, are founde many Rubies, whiche the Indians name *Manecas*, the greatest part wherof do not arryue to the perfection of the other aforesayde in colour, because they are redde, as though they were washed, and of fleshy colour, yet are they very colde and harde. The perfectest of them are greatly esteemed among the people of the Ilande, and are reserved onely for the kyng hym selfe, yf they be of any great quantitie. When his Jewellers fynde any bygge peece of this Rocke of the best kynde, they put it in fyre for the space of certayne houres: whiche yf it come out of the fyre vncorrupte, it becommeth of

## and Spices.

424

of the colour of a burnyng cole, and was therefore called of the Greekes, *Anthrax*, whiche signifyeth a burnyng cole. The same that the greekes call *Anthrax*, the Latines call *Carbunculus*. These they greatly esteeme. When the kyng of *Narsinga* can get any of them, he causeth a fyne hole to be boored in the vndermost part of them, to the myddest, and suffereth none of them to passe out of his realme, especially if they haue ben tryed by the sayde prooffe. These are of greater value then the other of *Pegu*, if they be in theyr naturall perfection and cleanness.

Of these, one that wayeth a Carratte (whiche is halfe a Fanan) is woorth in *Calcut*.

One of two Carattes.

Of thre Carattes.

Of thre Carattes and a halfe.

Of foure Carattes.

Of foure Carattes and a halfe.

Of fyue Carattes.

Of fyue Carattes and a halfe.

Of sixe Carattes.

Of sixe Carattes and a halfe.

Of seuen Carattes.

Of seuen Carattes and a halfe.

One of .viii. Carattes, that hath ben well prooued in the fyre, is woorth

Of .viii. Carattes and a halfe.

One suche of tenne Carattes.

One of .x. Carattes and a halfe.

Of .xii. Carattes.

Of .xiii. Carattes.

Of .xvi. Carattes.

Which are .iii. crownes of golde.

Fanan. 30

Fanan. 65

Fanan. 150

Fanan. 200

Fanan. 300

Fanan. 350

Fanan. 400

Fanan. 450

Fanan. 530

Fanan. 560

Fanan. 630

Fanan. 660

Fanan. 800

Fanan. 900

Fanan. 1300

Fanan. 1600

Fanan. 2000

Fanan. 3000

Fanan. 6000

Of the kynd of Rubies.  
called Spinelle.

**T**here is also founde an other kynde of Rubies, which we call *Spinelle*, and the Indians, *Caropus*. They growe in the selfe same countrey of *Pegu* where as are the fyne Rubies, & are found in the mountaines in the bypper crust



## and Spices.

or floure of the earth. These are not so fine, nor of so good colour as are the true Rubies, but haue somewhat the colour of a Gragate, which we commonly call a Garnet: yet of these, such as are perfect in theyr colour, are of value halfe lesse then true Rubies.

Of the Rubies called Balaffi.

**B**alaffi are of the kyndes of Rubies, but are not so hard: thei colour is somewhat lyke a Rose, and some are in maner whyte: they growe in *Balaffia*, whiche is a region within the firme lande, aboue *Pegu* and *Bengala*, and are broughe from thence by merchants of the *Boozes* to *Calecut*, where they are wrought and pulpyshed, and are solde of the same pryce that are *Spinel*.

Of the Diamondes of the old myne.

**T**hese Diamondes are founde in the first India, in a kyngdome of the *Boozes* named *Decan*, from whence they are brought to other regions. There are also founde other Diamondes, whiche are not so good, but somewhat whyte, and are called Diamondes of the newe myne, whiche is in the kyngdome of *Narsinga*. They of the olde myne are not pulpyshed in India, but in other places. There are made lyke wyse in India other false Diamondes, of Rubies, *Topases*, and whyte *Saphires*, whiche appeare to be fyne, and are also founde in the *Ilande of Zeilam*: these stones differ in none other, sayyng that they haue lost theyr natural colour. Of these, some are found that haue halfe the colour of Rubies, & other of *Saphires*, other also of the colour of a *Topase*, other haue al these colours myngled togeather. They boze a fine hole in these through the middes, whereby they appeare lyke the eyes of a Catte. Of the whyttest, they make many small Diamondes, whiche can not be knownen from the true, sayyng by touchyng, of such as are skylful in that practyse. They are solde by a poyle or wayght, whiche they call *Mangiar*, whiche weyerh two *Tarre*, and two thirdes, whiche amount to two thirdes, or thirde partes of one Carat: for foure *Tarres* wey one *Fanan*, which is about two Carattes. Epyght Diamondes that wey one *Mangiar*, whiche is two thirde partes of a Carat, are in value *Fanan*. xxx. whiche are three crownes of golde.

Sixe

## and Spices.

425

Sixe Diamondes that weigh one <i>Mangiar</i> .	<i>Fanan</i> .	40.
Foure that weigh one <i>Mangiar</i> .	<i>Fanan</i> .	60.
Two that weigh one <i>Mangiar</i> .	<i>Fanan</i> .	80.
One that weygheth one <i>Mangiar</i> .	<i>Fanan</i> .	100.
One of one <i>Mangiar</i> and a quarter.	<i>Fanan</i> .	165.
One of one <i>Mangiar</i> and a halfe.	<i>Fanan</i> .	180.
Of one <i>Mangiar</i> and thre quarters.	<i>Fanan</i> .	220.
Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s.	<i>Fanan</i> .	320.
Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s and a quarter.	<i>Fanan</i> .	360.
Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s and a halfe.	<i>Fanan</i> .	380.
Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s & thre quarters full perfect.	<i>Fanan</i> .	420.
Of thre <i>Mangiar</i> s of lyke perfection.	<i>Fanan</i> .	450.
Of thre <i>Mangiar</i> s and a halfe.	<i>Fanan</i> .	480.
Of foure <i>Mangiar</i> s.	<i>Fanan</i> .	550.
Of fyue <i>Mangiar</i> s.	<i>Fanan</i> .	750.
Of sixe <i>Mangiar</i> s.	<i>Fanan</i> .	800.
Of seuen <i>Mangiar</i> s.	<i>Fanan</i> .	1200.
Of eight <i>Mangiar</i> s.	<i>Fanan</i> .	1400.
And thus they procede, increasyng the pryce, as they increase in weyght.		

## Of Saphires.

**I**n the *Ilande of Zeilam*, are founde the beste and moste true *Saphires*, being very hard and fine, and of the colour of *Azure*. They are of pryce as foloweth.

One that weigheth one Caratte, is of value.	<i>Fanan</i> .	2.
which are about two <i>Marcells</i> of siluer.		
One of the weyght of two Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	5.
Of thre Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	10.
Of foure Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	15.
Of fyue Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	18.
Of sixe Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	28.
Of seuen Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	35.
Of eight Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	50.
Of nine Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	60.
Of tenne Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	65.
Of eleuen Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	70.
Of twelue Carattes.	<i>Fanan</i> .	75.
Of xiii. Carattes in all perfection of colour.	<i>Fanan</i> .	115.
		Of

iii. l.

*A Marcell, is a silver copie of Venice, of xi. unces. iii. d. with 12. d. wherof. x. make an ounce.*

Of .xliii. Carattes. Fanan. 160.  
 Of .xv. Carattes. Fanan. 180.  
 Of .xvi. Carattes. Fanan. 200.  
 Of .xviii. Carattes. Fanan. 250.  
 One that weigheth a *Mitigall*, which is .xi. Fanans and a quarter, that is about .xxiii. Carattes. Fanan. 350.  
 Lyketwyle in the Ilande of *Zeilam*, is founde another sorte of *Saphires*, which they call *Quinigelinam*. These are not so strong, of darker colour, and of much lesse value then are the other of the best kynd, wherof one is woorth thirtene of these of equal pople. Also in the kyngdome of *Narsinga*, in a mountayne about *Bacenor* and *Mangalor*, is found another sorte of *Saphires*, more tender and of woosle colour, which they call *Cinganolam*. These are somewhat whyte, and of small value: So that the most perfecte of this kynde, weighing .xx. Carattes, is not woorth one *Ducate*. They colour is inclynnyng somewhat to yelow. There is lyketwyle founde another kynde of *Saphires*, bypon the sea coastes of the kyngdome of *Calecut*, in a place named *Capucar*. These the Indians call *Carahatonilam*. They are of a darke Azure colour, not shynnyng but in the cleare ayre. They are also tender & byckle, and of small estimation among the Indians. They seme on the one syde lyke glasse.

Of Topasies.

The naturall *Topasies* growe in the Iland of *Zeilam*, and are named of the Indians *Purceragua*. It is a harde and fine stone, and of equall estimation with the *Rubie* & the *Saphire*, bycause all these thre are of one kynde. The perfecte colour of this, is yelow, lyke unto fine beaten gold, and if it be perfecte and cleane, whether it be great or litle, it is woorth in *Calecut* as much fine gold as it weigheth. But if it be not perfect, it is woorth the weight of golde the *Fanan*, which is lesse by the halfe. And if it be in maner whyte, it is woorth much lesse. And of these, are small *Diamundes* counterfete.

Of Turquestes.

*Turquestes* are founde in *Exer*, a place of *Siech Ismaell*. They Pine is a drye earth, that is founde bypon a blacke stone.

stone, which the *Moores* take of in small peeces, and carry them to the Ilande of *Ormuz*, from whence they are brought to diuers partes of the worlde by sea and by lande. The Indians call them *Perose*. They are soft stones, of small weight, and not much colde: & to know that they are good & true, in the day they shal appeare of the very colour of the *Turqueste*, and in the nyght, by the light, they shal appeare greene. They that are not so perfecte, doe not so chaunge they colour to the sight. If these stones be cleane and of fine colour, they haue vnderneath, in the bottome, a blacke stone, bypon the which they growe. And if any litle bayne ryle bypon the sayde stone, it shal be the better. And to know moze certainly that they are true *Turquestes*, they put on the toppes of them, a litle quicke lime, tempered with water, after the maner of an oymntment. So that if the quicke lime appeare coloured, they are iudged perfect, and are of value as foloweth.

One that weigheth one Caratte, is woorth in *Malabar*, Fanan. 15  
 One of two Carattes. Fanan. 40.  
 Of foure Carattes. Fanan. 90.  
 Of sixe Carattes. Fanan. 150.  
 Of eight Carattes. Fanan. 200.  
 Of ten Carattes. Fanan. 300.  
 Of twelue Carattes. Fanan. 450.  
 Of fourtiene Carattes. Fanan. 550.  
 Of greater then these they make none accompte, bycause they are lyghter peeces and of greater circuite. These of the byggest sorte the *Moores* carrie into the kyngdome of *Guzerath*.

Of Iacintes.

*Iacintes* growe in the Ilande of *Zeilam*. They are tender stones, and yelow. They are best that are of deepest colour. The greatest parte of these, haue in them certayne pimples or burbils, which dimynyshe they fayrenesse. And they that are in they perfection cleane from this deformitie, are neuertheless of small value: For in *Calecut* where they are polished, they that weygh one *Fanan*, are woorth no more then halfe a *Fanan*. And they of .xviii. Fanans, are not woorth .xvi. Fanans.

## The prices of precious stones

There are also found other stones lyke vnto cattes eyes, as *Chrysolytes*, & *Ametystes*, which they do not much esteeme, because they are of small value, as also the stones called *Giagonze*.

### Of Smaragdes or Emeraldes.

**S**maragdes growe in the countrey of Babylon, where the Indians cal the sea *Dieguan*. They grow also in other parts of India. They are stones of fayre greene colour, and are light and tender. Of these stones, many are counterfeite. But looking on them curiously toward the lyght, the counterfeites shewe certayne burbuls, as doeth glasse: but in the true, there is no suche seene, but rather there appeareth to the eye, a certayne verdour, shynnyng lyke the beames of the Sunne: and being rubbed vpon the touche stone, they leaue the colour of copper. And the Smaragde of this forte, is the best and most true, and is in value in *Calecut*, as muche as a *Diamunde*, and somewhat moze: And this not by weyght, but by greatnesse, because the *Diamunde* quantitie for quantitie, is of greater weyght then the Smaragde. There is lykwys founde an other kynde of Smaragdes, which are greene stones, but not so muche esteemed. Nevertheless, the Indians reserue these to set them forth with other precious stones. They leaue not any greene colour vpon the touche.

Of dyuers kindes of Spices, where they growe, what they are woorth in *Calecut*, and whyther they are carried from thence.

### Of Pepper.



First in all the kyngdome of *Malabar* and *Calecut*, Pepper groweth, and is sold in *Calecut* by euery *CC*. *Babars*, fine, for *CCxxx*. *Fanans*, euery *Fanan* (as I haue sayde) being in value one ryall of plate of *Spayne*, which is as muche as one *Marcell* of silver in

## and Spices.

427

in *Venice*. *Babar*, weigheth foure *Cantares* of the olde weyght of *Portugale*, by the which they sell all spices in *Lisbona*. *Cantare* is in *Venice*. *Cxxi*. pounde weyght, of the grosse pounde (being *xviii*. ounces) and of the subtile pounde. *Cxxviii*. So that the sayde. *712*. poundes of *Venice* subtile, will cost about. *xx*. frenche crownes of gold: which amount to about two *Marchetti* (which make one penny) the pounde. They paye also to the kyng of *Calecut* for custome. *xii*. *Fanans*, euery *Babar* by the lode. They that buye them, are accustomed to bying them to *Cambaia*, *Persia*, *Aden*, and *Mecha*, and from thence to *Alcayr* and *Alexandria*. Now they paye custome to the kyng of *Portugale* after the rate of *6562*. *Maruedies* the *Babar*, which are *193*. *Fanans*. *Maruedies* are *Spanyshe* coynes, wherof sixe goe to a penny. This do they, partly because there arriueth no moze so great diuersitie of merchautes to buye them, and partly by the agreement whiche the sayd kyng of *Portugale* made with those kynges, & the *Doozes*, and merchautes of the countrey of *Malabar*.

Much pepper groweth lykwys in the Ilande of *Sumatra*, neare vnto *Malaca*, which is fayrer and bigger then that of *Malabar*, but not so good and strong. This is brought from *Bengala* to *China*, and some part to *Mecha*, priuylie and by stealth, vnto the *Portugales*, whiche would not otherwys suffer them to passe. It is woorth in *Sumatra*, from. *liii*. *C*. vnto. *vii*. *C*. *Maruedies* the *Cantare* of *Portugale*, of the newe weight. And from the new to the olde weight in *Portugale*, the difference is two ounces in the pounde weight: For the olde pounde consisteth of. *xiiii*. ounces, and the newe pounde of *xvi*. ounces.

### Of Cloues.

**C**loues growe in the Ilandes of *Molucca*, from whence they are brought to *Malaca*, and then to *Calecut*, and the countrey of *Malabar*. They are woorth in *Calecut* euery *Babar* (which is. *712*. poundes, of the subtile pound of *Venice*) from. *500*. to. *600*. *Fanans* (which are about *xvi*. frenche crownes) whiche are in value about twelue *Marchetti* the pounde weyght, and being cleane from stalkes & huskes are in value. *700*. *Fanans*. To carry them from thence into

*liii*.

other

## The prices of precious Spices,

other regions, they paye for paspozte. xliii. Fanans the Babar, which is woorth in Malacca from x. to. xliii. Ducades, according to the rate and custome of the merchauntes.

### Of Cinamome,

**C**inamome of the beste sorte, groweth in the Ilande of Zeilam, and in the countrey of Malabar groweth the woost. That of the best kynde, is of small price in Zeilam. But in Calecut (if it be choise and freshe) it is woorth 300. Fanans the Babar, which are about syue Marchetti the ponde.

### Of Ginger, called Beledi,

**G**inger Beledi, groweth on euery side about Calecut, from sixe to nene myles, and is woorth the Babar. xl. Fanans, and sometymes fytie, which is lesse then one Marchetto the ponde. They bypnyng it from the mountaynes, and out of the countrey, to the citie, where they sell it by retaple to the Indian merchauntes, who geather it togeather in great quantitie, and keepe it to such tyme as the Doozes shippes arryue there, to whom they sell it, by the price of. xc. Fanans, to. Cr. which is lesse then two Marchetti the ponde, bycause the weight is greater.

### Of Ginger Mechino.

**G**inger Mechino groweth, begynnynge from the mountaine of Deli, vnto Canonor. It is small, and not so whyte nor so good as the other. It is woorth the Babar in Canonor, about. 60. Fanans, whiche is about one Marchetto the ponde. They paye for the Babar sixe Fanans in money for the custome. It is solde vncleaned or unpurged.

### Of greene Ginger in conserues.

**I**n Bengala is founde great plentie of Ginger Beledi, of the which they make muche Ginger in conserues with Sugar, and carrie it in stone pottes from Martabani, to bee solde in the countrey of Malabar, and is woorth the Farazuola (which is

## and Spices.

428

is. xlii. poundes and sixe unces) after the rate of. xliii. lb. oz. xli. Fanans.

That that is freshe and made in conserues, is woorth in Calecut, xrb. Fanans the farazuola, bycause Sugar is deare there.

Greene Ginger to put in conserues, is woorth in Calecut thre quarters of one Fanan the farazuola, which is about two poundes for one Marchetto.

Of the Apothecaries drugges, and of what price they are in Calecut and Malabar.

**L**acca of Martabani, if it be of the beste, is woorth the farazuola, which is. xlii. ponde weyght and sixe ounces of Portugale, after sixtiene ounces the pound (which is about fourtie pound weight of the subtile ponde of Venice) and is in value eightiene Fanans: which are eightiene Marcells of siluer. For one Fanan, is in value about one Marcell of siluer.

Lacca of the countrey, is woorth the farazuola. Fanan. 12

Boxace that is good and in great peeces, is woorth the farazuola. Fanan. 30 to. 40. & 50.

Camphire that is grosse in cakes, is woorth the farazuola. Fanan. 70. to. 80

Camphire to annoynt Idoles, \* \* \*  
Camphire for theyr chyldren to eate, is woorth the Mytigall. Fanan. 3.

Aguila is woorth the farazuola. Fanan. 300. to. 400.

Lignum aloe, blacke, heauy, and fine, is woorth. Fanan. 1000.

Dulke of the best, is woorth the ounce Fanan. 36.

Beniamin of the best, is woorth the farazuola. Fanan. 65.

Tamarindi being new, are woorth the faraz. Fanan. 4.

Calamus Aromaticus, the farazuola. Fanan. 12.

Endego to dye silke, true and good, the farazuola. Fanan. 30.

Spirre, the farazuola. Fanan. 18. to. 20.

Frankensense good and in graynes, is woorth the farazuola. Fanan. 15.

Frankensense in paste of the basest sorte, the faraz. Fanan. 3.

Ambracan or Amber grease that is good, is woorth the Metigall. Fanan. 2. to. 3.

Mirabolanes in conserue of sugar, the faraz. Fanan. 16. to. 25  
Jii. iiii. Cassia,

## The prices of precious stones

<i>Cassia</i> , freshe and good, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan one and a halfe.
Redde Sanders, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 5. to. 6.
Whyte Sanders and Citrine, whiche growe in the Ilande of Timor, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 40. to. 60.
Spikenarde, freshe and good, the <i>faraz</i> .	Fanan. 30. to. 40.
Muttemegges, whiche come from the Ilande of Bandan, where the Babar is woorth from. viii. to ten Fanans, (whiche importe vi. poundes weyght to the Marchetto) are woorth in Calecut, the <i>faraz</i> .	Fanan. 10. to. 12.
Pace which is brought from the Ilande of Bandan, where the Babar is woorth syftiene Fanans (which importe about one Marchetto, the pounce are woorth in Calecut, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 25. to. 30
Turbithes, are woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan, 13
Wooymescede of the best kynde, called <i>Semenzana</i> , is woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 18.
Zerumba, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 2.
Zedoaria, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 1.
Gumme Serapine, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 20.
Aloe Cicotrine, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 18.
Cardamome in graynes, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 20.
Reubarbe groweth abundantly in the countrey of Malabar, and that whiche cometh from China by Malacca, is woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan 40 to. 50.
Mirabolani Emblici, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 2.
Mirabolani Belrici, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan one & a halfe.
Mirabolani citrini & Chebuli, which are all of one sorte.	Fanan. 2.
Mirabolani Indi, which are of the same Citrine trees.	Fanan. 3.
Tutia, the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 30.
Cububes, which growe in the Ilande of Iaua or Giana, are there of small price, and solde by measure without weyght.	
Opium, which is brought from the citie of Aden where it is made, is woorth in Calecut the <i>faraz</i> .	Fanan. 280 to 320.
Opium of an other sorte, whiche is made in Cambaia, is woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .	Fanan. 200. to. 250.

Of

## and Spices.

429

Of the weyghtes of Portugale and India:  
And howe they agreee.

**T**he pounce of the olde weyght, conteyneth .xiiii. vneces.  
The pounce of the newe weyght conteyneth .xvi. vneces.  
Eight Cantares of the olde weyght, make .vii. of the newe.  
And euery newe Cantare, is of .C. .xxviii. poundes, after  
xvi. vneces to the pounce.  
Euery olde Cantare, conteyneth thre quarters and an halfe of  
the newe Cantare : And is of .C. .xxviii. poundes, after .xiii.  
vneces the pounce.  
One Farazuoles, is. xxii. poundes of .xiiii. vneces, and .vi. vneces  
more, with two syfte partes.  
Twentie Farazuoles, are one Babar.  
One Babar is .iiii. Cantares of the olde weyght of Portugale.  
All the Spices and drugges, and al suche other thynges as come  
from India, are solde in Portugale by the olde weyght and all  
the rest by the newe weyght.  
Herby maie we wel consider, that as we ought to reioyce and  
geue God thanks for the abundaunce of all these thynges, which  
he causeth the earth so plentifully to byng forth to our vse, so  
maie we lament the abuse of men, whose couetousnesse causeth  
great dearth and scarfenesse in the myddest of abundaunce : here-  
in no lesse offendyng the lawe of nature, then do such as by witch-  
crafte do entermingle popson with thynges created for the health  
of man, or by inchauntment corrupt the seedes in the groundes:  
yea rather, as the vnnaturall mother, who destroyeth the chyld  
whom she hath long nuryshed.

Of



## The vyages of the Spanyards

Of the voyage made by the Spany-  
ardes round about the world.



The voyage made by the Spanyardes  
rounde about the worlde, is one of the  
greatest and most marueylous thynges  
that haue ben knowen to our tyme. And  
although in many thynges we excel our  
ancient predecessours, in this especially  
we so far exceed al their inuentions, that  
y<sup>e</sup> like hath not heretofore ben knowen to

this day. This viage was written particularly by Don Peter Mar-  
tyr of Angleria, being one of y<sup>e</sup> counsaile of the Emperours Indies, to  
whom also was committed y<sup>e</sup> writing of the hystorie & examinati-  
on of al such as returned from thence into Spaine to y<sup>e</sup> cite of Si-  
uile, in the yere .1522. But sendyng it to Rome to be printed,  
in that miserable tyme when the cite was sacked, it was lost, and  
not founde vnto this daye, or any memorie remaynyng thereof,  
sayng such as some that read the same haue bozne in mynde.  
And among other notable thynges by hym wyrtten as touchyng  
that voyage, that is one, that the Spanyardes hauyng sayled  
about thre yeres and one moneth, and the most of them notyng  
the dayes, daye by daye (as is the maner of al them that sayle by  
the Ocean, they found when they were returned to Spaine, y<sup>e</sup> they  
had lost one daye: So that at they<sup>r</sup> arryual at the porte of Si-  
uile, beyng the seuenth daye of September, was by they<sup>r</sup> ac-  
compt but the fyrte daye. And whereas Don Peter Martyr de-  
clared y<sup>e</sup> strange effect of this thyng to a certayne excellent man,  
who for his singuler learnyng was greatly aduanced to honour  
in his common wealth, and made the Emperours ambassadour:  
this woorthy gentleman, who was also a great Philosopher & A-  
stronomer, answered, that it coude not otherwyle chaunce vnto  
them, hauyng sayled thre yeres continually, euer folowpyng  
the Sunne toward the West: and sayde furthermoze, that they  
of olde tyme obserued, that all suche as sayled behynd the Sunne  
toward the West, dyd greatly lengthen the daye. And albeit  
that the sayde booke of Peter Martyr is perished, yet hath not  
fortune

Don Peter  
Martyr.

Rome sacked.

one daye lost in  
thre yeres &  
one moneth.

rounde about the worlde.

430

fortune permitteth that the memorie of so woorthy and maruey-  
lous an enterpryse shoulde bitterly be extincte: forasmuche as a  
certayne noble gentelman of the cite of Vincenza in Italie, cal-  
led master Antonie Pigafetta (who beyng one of the companie  
of that voyage, and after his returne into Spaine in the shyppe  
Victoria, was made knyght of the Rhodes) wrote a particular  
and large booke thereof, whiche he gaue to the Emperours Ma-  
iestie, and sent a copie of the same into Fraunce, to the lady Re-  
gent, another vnto the French king, who committed it to an excel-  
lent philosopher, called master Iacobus Faber, hauing long studied  
in Italy, wyllyng hym to translate it into the French tongue.  
This booke therefore was printed fyrst in the French tongue,  
and then in the Italian, with also an epistle to the Cardinall of  
Salsapurga as touchyng the same voyage, written by Maximilian  
Transiluanie secretarie to the Emperours Maiestie, in the yere  
1522. And doubtlesse among all the cities of Italie, the cite  
of Vincenza may herein muche glozie, that besyde the auncient  
nobilitie, and many excellent and rare wyttes whiche it hath  
brought forth, aswell in learnyng as discipline of warre, it hath  
also had so woorthy and valiaunt a gentleman as was the sayde  
master Antonie Pigafetta, who hauyng compassed about the ball  
or globe of the worlde, hath lykewyle described that voyage par-  
ticularly. For the whiche his so noble and wonderfull an enter-  
pryse so happily atchined, if the same had ben done in the olde  
tyme, when the Emperours of the Grekes and Romans flouished,  
he shoulde doubtlesse haue ben rewarded with an Image of mar-  
ble or gold, erected in a place of honour, in perpetuall memorie,  
and for a singular example of his vertue to the posteritie. In  
fine, this may we boldly affyrme, that the antiquitie had neuer  
such knowledge of the worlde, whiche the Sunne compasseth a-  
bout in .xxiii. houres, as we haue at this present, by the industrie  
of men of this our age. But before I speake any thyng of the  
vyage, I haue thought it good fyrst to adde hereunto the Epistle  
of Maximilian Transiluanie, which he wrote to the Cardinall of  
Salsapurga, as a preface to his sayde booke.

It is now  
found with one  
master Harold,  
a prebend in  
Wyndesore.  
Antonie Pigafetta.

Iacobus Faber.

Maximilian  
Transiluanie.

The reward of  
noble enterpryse

The antiquitie  
had no such  
knowledge of  
the world as  
we haue.

The

The vyage rounde about the worlde.

The Epistle of Maximilian Transiluan, secretarie to the Emperours Maiestie: written to the ryght honorable and reuerende lorde, the lord Cardinal of Salepurg, of the marueylous and woonderfull nauigation made by the Spanyardes rounde about the worlde in the yeere of Christ .M.D.xix.



The Ilandes of Malacca.

Aurea Chersonesus.  
Malaccha.  
Spices.

In these dayes ( my most honozable and reuerend lord) returned one of those fine ships, whiche, the yeere before The Emperours beyng at Saragosa in Spaine, were at his maiesties commaundement sent to the newe worlde, heretofore vnknown unto vs, to seeke the Ilandes of spices. For albeit the Portugales byng vs great quantitie of Spices from that part of East India, whiche in olde tyme was called Aurea Chersonesus (where is now thought to be the great ryche citie of Malaccha) yet in East India growe none of those Spices, except Pepper. For other Spices, as Sinamome, Cloues, Nutmegs, and Gales (whiche is the huske that couereth the shell of the Nut) are brought from other farre countreys, and from Ilandes scarcely known by theyr names: from the whiche Ilandes they are brought in shippes or barkes made without any Iron tooles, and tyed togeather with cordes of Date trees, with rounde saples lykewyse made of the small twigges of the branches of Date trees weaved togeather. These barkes they call *Giurche*: with the whiche barkes and saples, they make theyr viage with only one wynde in the stearne, or contrarwyse. Neyther yet is it a thyng greatly to be marueiled at, that these Ilandes where the Spices growe, haue ben vnknown so many wyldes past unto our tyme, forasmuch as all suche thynges as vnto this daye haue ben wyrtten of old autours of the places where spices growe, are all fabulous and false: Insomuch that the countreys where they aspyme them to growe, are nowe certaynly founde to be further from the place where they growe in deede, then we are from them. For lettynge passe many other thynges that are wyrtten, I wyll speake more of this which Herodotus (otherwise a famous auctoure) affirmeth, that Sinamome is founde in the toppes

rounde about the world.

431

toppes of the nestes of certayne byrdes and foules that byng it from farre countreys, and especially the Phenix, the whiche I knowe no man that euer hath seene. But Plinie, who might more certaynly aspyme thynges by reason that before his tyme many thynges were known and discovered by the nauigations of great Alexander and other, sayth, that Sinamome groweth in that part of Ethiopia which the people inhabit called *Trogloditi*. Neuerthelesse it is now found that Sinamome groweth very far from all Ethiopia, & now much further from the *Trogloditi*, which dwel in caues vnder the ground. But to our men which are now returned from those partes and the Ilandes of spices, hauyng also good knowledge of Ethiopia, it was necessarie to passe far beyond Ethiopia before they come to these Ilands, and to compassse about the whole worlde, and many tymes vnder the greatest circumference of heauen. The which nauigations made by them, beyng the most marueylous thyng that euer was done by man vpon the earth sence the fyrst creation of the worlde, and neuer founde before, or known, or attempted by any other, I haue deliberated saythfully to wyte to your honozable lordeshippe, and to declare the whole successe thereof. As touchyng which matter, I haue with all diligence made inquisition to knowe the trueth, aswell by relation of the Captayne of that shyppe, as also by conference with euery of the maryners that returned with hym. All whiche, gaue the selfe same information both to The Emperours Maiestie, and diuers other: And this with such saythfulnesse and sinceritie, that not onely they are iudged of all men to haue declared the trueth in all thynges, but haue thereby also geuen vs certayne knowledge, that all that hath hitherto ben sayd or wyrtten of olde autours as touchyng these thynges, are false and fabulous. For who wyl beleue that men are founde with onely one legge. Or with suche feete whose shadowe couereth theyr bodies: Or men of a cubite heygth, and other suche lyke, beyng rather monsters then men: Of the whiche, neyther the Spanyardes, who in our tyme saylyng by the Ocean sea, haue discovered all the costes of the lande toward the West both vnder and aboue the Equinoctiall, nor the Portugales, who compassyng about all Asie, hath passed by all the East, and lykewyse discovered all those costes vnto the great gulf called *Sinas Magnus*, nor yet the Spanyardes

The Phenix.  
Plinie.

The nauigations of great Alexander.  
Ethiophe.  
Trogloditi.

The nauigation about the worlde.

The olde autours.

Monsters.  
The images of the Spanyardes and Portugales.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

Spanyardes in this theyr last navigation, in the which they compassed about the whole earth, dyd neuer in any of theyr viages wypte of such monsters: which doubtlesse they would not haue omitted, if they myght haue had certayne knowledge thereof. But nowe intending to speake of the whole worlde, I wyl not be long in my p̄face, but begyn my narracion as foloweth.

A brieue declaration of the viage or nauigation made about the worlde. Geathered out of a large booke written hereof by master Antoni Pigafetta Vincentine, knyght of the Rhodes, and one of the companie of that vyage in the which Ferdinando Magalhães a Portugale (whom some call Magellanus) was generall captayne of the nauie.



Sebastian Munster.

The Ilandes of Molucca.

Although Sebastian Munster in his vniuersall Cosmographie in the fyfth booke of the landes of the greater Asia (which I translated into Englyshe about .24. peeres sence) hath wyrtten of the vpage of Magellanus, declaring therein how the Spanyardes by the West, and the Portugales by the East, sayling to the Ilandes of Molucca, compassed the whole globe of the worlde betweene them, yet haue I herre thought it good to make a brecfe repetition of this vpage, adding hereunto dyuers notable thynges which were not touched of Munster, as I haue geathered them out of the bookes of Antoni Pigafetta, and Transiluanus, wyrttyng of the same vpage. For albeit in deede it was a strange and woonderfull thyng that the Spanyardes and Portugales compassed the whole circumference of the worlde betweene them, yet is it moze marueylous, that the same was done with one ship, & one companie of men, as did the Spanyardes in this biage, who keeping their continual course by the west, returned into Spaine by the east: a thing doubtlesse so much moze circumferential and strange, then if they had returned from the halfe circumference by the same way they went, in how much they were ignorant in the vpage neuer attempted before, helpe the

## rounde about the world.

431

the thousande daungers and perilles whiche they were daylye lyke to fall into, as well by wandryng in vnknown coastes, as also by falling into the handes of the Portugales, by whose dominions in the East they shoulde needes passe of necessitie, not trusting to their gentlenesse for the controuersie whiche had been long betweene them for the Ilandes of Molucca. I wyl therefore (as I haue sayde) make a brieue rehearsal of this biage, from the begynnyng to the endyng, omitting neuerthelesse many notable thynges, whiche are moze largely described in the bookes of Maximilianus Transiluanus, and Antonius Pigafetta.

Controuersie betweene the Spanyardes and Portugales.

The tenth day of August, in the yee of our Lord 1519, Ferdinando Magalhães departed from the port of Siuile in Spayne, with a nauie of fyue shippes, and 237. men, wel furnished with all thynges necessary. And sayling first downe by the ryuer of Guadalchiber, which runneth from the sayd port into the sea, they came first to a place named Giouan Vulpharaz, where are many villages of the Doozes: and from thence, arryued at a castle of the duke of Medina Sidonia, where is the port from whiche they enter into the sea, & to the cape saint Vincent, beyng distant from the Equinoctial. 37. degrees, and from the sayd port 10. leagues, and is from thence to Siuile betweene 17. and 20. leagues. Heere they remayned certayne dayes, to make newe prouision of such thinges as they lacked. Departyng from hence the 20. day of September, they arryued the 26. day of the same moneth at one of the Ilandes of Canarie, called Tenerife, beyng 25. degrees about the Equinoctial. In one of these Ilandes is none other water but that is continually engendred of a cloude, which appeareth dayly at noone tyme, as though it descended from heauen, and compasseth about a certayne great tree, from whose branches distilleth great aboundaunce of water, and falleth in streames from the roote of the same, into certayne trenches and cisternes, made and placed to receyue it. This water serueth sufficiently all the inhabitauntes and cattayle of the Iland. The Ipe thyng is also seene in the Ilande of saint Thomas, lying directly vnder the Equinoctial line.

Ferdinando Magalhães.

The Cape of saint Vincent.

The Ilandes of Canarie.

Water engendred of a cloude.

The Iland of saint Thomas.

The thirde day of October, about mydnyght, the captayne commaunded them to lycht fyrebrandes, and to hoyle vp theyr sayles, directyng theyr course towarde the South, sayling betweene

Capo Verde.

Guinea in  
Ethiophe.

Fishes and  
monsters of the  
sea.  
The fyre of S.  
Helene and S.  
Nicolas.  
A tempest.

The natural  
cause of suche  
fyres as fall in  
the shippes.

Cardanus.

Two kyndes of  
fyres engendred  
of exhalations.

True fyre and  
false fyre.

sayleng betwene Capo Verde of Affrike, and the Ilandes lyng  
about the same, beyng from the Equinoctial fourteene degrees &  
a halfe. They sayled thus many dayes in the syght of the coast of  
Guinea of Ethiophe, where is the mountayne called Serra Liona, be-  
ing epyght degrees aboute the Equinoctial. In this coast they had  
no maner of contrary wynde, but a great calme, and sayre wea-  
ther, for the space of threescore and ten dayes, in the whiche they  
came vnder the Equinoctial line. In this viage they sawe many  
strange Fishes, & monsters of the Sea, belyde another strange  
thyng whiche appeared vnto them: For there appeared in their  
shippes certayne flames of fyre, burnyng very cleare, whiche  
they cal saint Helen, & saint Nicholas: these appeared as though  
they had been vpon the mast of the shippes, in suche clearenelle,  
that they tooke away theyr syght for the space of a quarter of an  
houre, by reason wherof they so wandred out of theyr course, and  
were disperled in sunder, that they in maner dyspayred to meete  
agayne: but (as God would) the sea and tempest beyng quieted,  
they came safely to their determined course. And before I speake  
any further of the viage, I haue heere thought good to say some-  
what of these strange fyres, whiche some ignorant folke thynke  
to be spirites, or suche other phantasies, wheras they are but na-  
turall thynges, proceeding of naturall causes, and engendred of  
certayne exhalations. Of these therfore, the great Philosopher  
of our tyme Hieronimus Cardanus, in his second booke De Subtili-  
tate, wyrteth in this maner. There are two maner of fyres en-  
gendred of exhalations, wherof the one is hurtful, the other with-  
out hurt. That which is hurtfull, is fyre in deede, engendred of  
malicious and venemous vapours, whiche in successe of tyme  
take fyre, as apt matters to be kyndled. The other kynde is no  
true fyre, but lyke the matter that is in such olde putri-  
fied wood, as geueth the shynnyng of fyre, without the substance  
or qualitie therof. Of the kynde of true fyre, is the Fyreball or  
Starre, commonly called saint Helen, which is sometyme seene  
about the mastes of shippes, beyng of such fyerie nature, that it  
sometyme melteth byalen vessels, and is a token of drownyng,  
forasmuch as this chaunceth only in great tempestes: for the va-  
pour or exhalation wherof this fyre is engendred, can not be dy-  
uen togeather or compact in fourme of fyre, but of a grosse va-  
pour,

pour, and by a great power of wynde, and is therfore a token of  
imminent perill: As on the contrary parte, the lyke fyres called  
in olde tyme Castor and Pollux, and now named the two lightes  
of Saint Peter and Saint Nicolas, which for the most parte  
fall on the cables of the shippes, leapyng from one to an other,  
with a certayne flutteryng noyse lyke byrdes, are a token of se-  
curitie, and of the tempest ouerpasse: For they are but vapours  
cleauyng to the cables, which in successe of tyme, the fyre passing  
from one to an other, appeare in the similitude of a lyght candel.  
They are a token of securitie, bycause they are litle, not slowe or  
grosse, wherby they myght haue ioyned altogether in one, and  
been thereby moze malicious, and lasted longer, whereas beyng  
many and but litle, they are the sooner consumed. Pytherto  
Cardanus. But let vs now returne to the vyage.

When they had sayled paste the Equinoctial lyne, they losse  
the sight of the North starre, and sayled by the south west, vntyll  
they came to a lande named the lande of Bressil, whiche some call  
Brasil, beyng .xxii. degrees and a halfe towarde the south pole  
or pole Antartike. This lande is continuate and one firme lande  
with the cape of saint Augustine, whiche is .viii. degrees from  
the Equinoctial. In this lande they were refreshed with many  
good frutes of innumerable kyndes, and founde here also very  
good sugar canes, and diuers kindes of beasts and other thinges,  
which I omit for breuitie. They entered into this hauen on saint  
Lucies day: where the Sunne being theyr Zenith (that is, the  
poynte of heauen directly ouer theyr heades) they felte greater  
heate that day, then when they were vnder the Equinoctial lyne.  
This lande of Brasile is very large and great, and bygger then  
all Spayne, Portugale, Fraunce, and Italie, and is most abun-  
daunt in all thinges. The people of this countrey pray to no ma-  
ner of thyng: but lyue by the instincte of nature, and to the age  
of C.xx. and C.xl. yeres. Both the men and women goe naked,  
and dwell in certayne long houses. They are very docible, and  
soone assured to the Chyristian sayth.

Thirtiene dayes after that they arryued at the sayde porte,  
they departed from this lande, and sayled to the xxxiii. degree  
and a halfe towarde the pole Antartike, where they founde a  
great ryuer of freshe water, and certayne Caniballes. Of these

Rkk.i.

they

Castor and  
Pollux.  
The lightes of  
Saint Peter  
and Saint  
Nicolas.

They lost the  
sight of the  
North starre.  
The lande of  
Brasil.  
The South  
pole.

Sugar.

The greatnesse  
of the lande of  
Brasil.

Caniballes.

Giantes.

Insula gem-  
marum.

Cap. S. Marie.

The pole An-  
tartike.  
Geese.  
Sea woolues.

The xlii. de-  
gree of the  
South pole.

Giantes.

The bygnesse  
of the Giantes.

they sawe one out of the hyppes, of stature as byg as a Giant, hauing a voice like a Bull. Our men pursued them, but they were so swifte of foote that they coulde not ouertake them. About the mouth of this riuer, are seuen Ilandes, in the byggest whereof they founde certayne pprecious stones, and called it the cape of saint Marie. The Spanyardes thought that by this ryuer they myght haue passed into the South sea, but they were deceyued in theyr opinion: For there was none other passage then by the riuer, which is .xvii. leagues large in the mouth. Thus folowing this coaste by the tracte of the lande towarde the pole Antartike, they came to a place where were two Ilandes replenished with Geese and Woolues of the sea, which some thinke to be those fyshes that we call Pikes. These were in such number, that in an houre all the fyue hyppes might haue ben laden with Geese, being all of blacke colour, and such as can not flee. They liue of fish, and are so fatte, that they could scarcely slay them. They haue no feathers, but a certayne downe, and theyr bylles lyke Rauens bylles. These Woolues of the sea are of dyuers colours, and of the bygnesse of Calues, with theyr heades of golden colour. Here were they in great danger by tempest: But as soone as the thre fyrers, called saint Helen, saint Nicolas, and saint Clare, appeared vpon the cables of the hyppes, sodaynly the tempeste and furie of the wyndes ceased. Departyng from hence, they sayled to the. 49. degree and a halfe vnder the pole Antartike: where beyng wyntered, they were inforced to remayne there for the space of two monethes, all which tyme they sawe no man, excepte that one day by chaunce they espyed a man of the stature of a Giant, who came to the hauen daunsiag and singyng, and shortly after seemed to cast dust ouer his head. The Captayne sent one of his men to the shore with the hyppes Boate, who made the lyke signe of peace. The which thyng the Giant seeing, was out of feare, and came with the Captaynes seruante to his presence into a litle Ilande. When he sawe the Captayne with certayne of his company about him, he was greatly amased, and made signes, holdyng vp his hande to heauen, signifying thereby that our men came from thence. This Giant was so byg, that the head of one of our men of a meane stature, came but to his waffe. He was of good corporature, & well made.

made in all partes of his bodie, with a large visage painted with diuers colours, but for the most parte yelow. Vpon his cheekes were paynted two hartes, and red circles about his eyes. The heare of his head was coloured whyte, and his apparell was the skynne of a beast sowde together. This beast as (seemed vnto vs) had a large head, and great eares lyke vnto a Hule, with the body of a Camell, and tayle of a horse. The feete of the Giant were foulded in the sayde skynne, after the maner of shoes. He had in his hande a bygge and shorte bowe, the stryng whereof was made of a sinewe of that beaste. He had also a bundell of long arrows made of Reedes, feathered after the maner of ours, tpyte with sharpe stones in the steade of Iron heades. The Captayne called him to eate and drynke, & gaue him many thinges, and among other a great lookyng glasse: In the which as soone as he sawe his owne lykenesse, was sodaynly afrayde, and started backe with suche violence, that hee ouerthrowe two that stood nearest about him. When the Captayne had thus gyuen him certayne Haukes belles, and other great belles, with also a lookyng glasse, a combe, and a payre of beades of glasse, he sent him to lande with foure of his owne men well armed. Shortly after, they sawe an other Giant of somewhat greater stature, with his bowe and arrowes in his hande. As hee dyewe neare vnto our men, he layde his hande on his head, and poynted vp towarde heauen, and our men dyd the lyke. The Captayne sent his hyppes Boate to bryng him to a litle Ilande beyng in the Hauen. This Giant was very tractable and pleasaunte. He soong and daunsed, and in his daunsing lefte the print of his feete on the grounde. He remayned long with our men, who named him Iohan. He coulde well speake and playnely pronounce these woordes, Iesus, Aue Maria, Iohannes, even as we doe, but with a bygger voyce. The Captayne gaue him a shert of linnen cloth, & a coate of white woollen cloth: also a cappe, a combe, a looking glasse, with diuers sych other thinges, and so sent him to his company. The day folowing, he resorted agayne to the hyppes, and brought with him one of those great beastes, which he gaue the Captayne. But after that day, they neuer saw him more, supposing him to be slayne of his owne company, for the conuersation he had with our men.

An other  
Giant.



## The viages of the Spaniardes

Four other  
Giantes.

Two Giantes  
are taken by  
a pollicie.

The deuill  
Setebos.

Deuils ap-  
peare to the Gi-  
antes when  
they dye.

Patagoni.

After other .xv. dayes were past, there came foure other Giantes without any weapons, but had byd they bowes and arrowes in certaine bushes. The Captaine retayned two of these, which were yongest and beste made. He tooke them by a deceite, in this manner, that giuing them knyues, sheares, looking glasses, belles, beades of Crystall, & suche other trifles, he so filled theyr handes that they coude holde no more: then caused two payre of shackels of Iron to be put on theyr legges, making signes that he would also giue them those chaynes: which they lyked very wel, bycause they were made of bright and shining metall. And wheras they could not carry them bycause theyr handes were full, the other Giantes would haue carped them: but the captaine would not suffer them. When they felte the shackels faste about theyr legges, they began to doubt: but the Captayne dyd put them in comfort, and had them stande still. In fine, when they sawe howe they were deceiued, they roared lyke bulles, & cryed vppon theyr great deuill Setebos, to helpe them. Being thus taken, they were immediately seporate and put in sundry shippes. They could neuer bynde the handes of the other two, yet was one of them with much difficultie ouerthrowen by ix. of our men, & his hands bound: but he sodeinly loosed him selfe and fled, as did also the other that came with them. In their fleeing, they shot of their arrowes and slue one of our men. They say that when any of them dye, there appeare x. or .xii. deuils, leaping and daunsing about the bodie of the dead, and seeme to haue their bodie paynted with diuers colours, and that among other, there is one scene bigger then the residue, who maketh great mirth & reioysing. This great deuill they call Setebos, and call the lesse Chelensé. One of these Giantes which they tooke, declared by signes that he had scene deuylles with two hornes aboue their heades, with long heare downe to theyr feete: and that they caste forth fyre at theyr throates both before and behynde. The Captayne named these people Patagoni. The most parte of them weare the skynnes of such beastes whereof I haue spoken before: and haue no houses of continuance, but make certayne cotages, which they couer with the sayd skynnes, and carry them from place to place. They lyue of raw fleshe, and a certayne sweete roote, which they call Capar. One of these whiche they had in theyr shippes, dyd eat at one meale

## rounde about the worlde.

435

meale a baskette of Byfket, and dronke a bowle of water at a draught.

They remayned fyue monethes in this porte of Saint Julian, where certayne of the vnder captaynes conspiryng the death of theyr Generall, were hanged and quartered: among whom the Treasurer Luigo of Mendoza was one. Certayne of the other conspiratours, he lefte in the sayde lande of Patagoni.

Departing from hence, to the .52. degree toward the pole Antartike, lackyng a thirde parte, they founde a ryuer of freshe water and good fysh. Theyr shippes were here in great daunger. They remayned two monethes in this porte, where they made newe prouision of freshe water, fuell, and fysh. Here the Captayne caused all his men to bee confessed. Approching to the .52. degrees, they found the straight now called the straight of Magellanus, beyng in some place a hundred and ten leagues in length, and in breadth somewhere very large, and in other places little more then halfe a league in breadth. On both the sides of this straight, are great and hygh mountaynes couered with snowe, beyonde the which, is the enterance into the sea of Sur. This enterance the Captayne named Mare Pacificum. Heere one of the shippes stole away prouillie, and returned into Spaine: In this was one of the Giantes, who dyed as soone as he felte the beate that is about the Equinoctiall lyne. When the Captaine Magalanes was past the straight, and sawe the way open to the other mayne sea, he was so glad thereof, that for tope the teares fell from his eyes, and named the poynt of the lande from whence he first sawe that sea, Capo Desiderato. Supposing that the shyppe which stole away had been lost, they erected a crosse vpon the top of a hygh hil, to directe their course in the straight, if it were theyr chaunce to come that way. They founde that in this straight in the moneth of October, the nyght was not past foure houres long. They founde in this straight at euery three myles, a safe haven, and excellent water to drynke: wood also, and fysh, and great plentie of good hearbes. They thinke that there is not a fairer straight in the worlde. Here also they sawe certaine fleeing fyshes. The other Giant which remayned with them in the shyppe, named breade Capar: water, Oli, redde cloth, Cherecai, red colour, Cheiche, blacke colour, Amel: And spoke all his wordes

The Giantes  
feeding.

Then conspire  
against the  
Captayne.

Confession.

The straight of  
Magellanus.

The South  
sea.  
Mare pacifi-  
cum.

The Giants dy-  
ed for heate.

Capo Deside-  
rato.

Short nightes  
in the moneth  
of October.

Fleeing fyshes.  
The Giantes  
language.

Rkk.iii.

in

## The viages of the Spanyardes

in the throte. On a tyme, as one made a crosse befoze him, and kysed it, shewyng it vnto him, he sodaynely cryed *Setebos*, and declared by signes, that if they made any more crosses, *Setebos* would enter into his bodie, and make him byll. But when in fine he sawe no hurte come therof, he tooke the crosse, and imbrased and kysed it oftentymes, desirypg that he myght be a Christian befoze his death: He was therfore baptyled, and named *Paule*. Departyng out of this straight into the sea called *Mare Pacificum*, the xxviii. day of Nouember, in the peere. 1520. they sayled three monethes and twentie dayes befoze they sawe any land, and hauyng in this tyme consumed all theyr Bycket and other victualles, they fell into suche necessitie, that they were inforced to eate the powder that remayned thereof, beyng nowe full of woozmes, and synkypg lyke pylle by reason of the salte water. Theyr frethe water was also putrified and become yelowc. Theyr dyd eate skynnes and peeces of leather, whiche were foulded about certayne great ropes of the shypes: but these skynnes beyng made very harde by reason of the Sunne, rayne, and wynde, they hung them by a corde in the sea, for the space of foure or fve dayes, to mollifie them, and sodde them, and ate them. By reason of this fampyne and vncleane feedyng, some of their gummes grewe so ouer theyr teethe, that they dyed miserably for hunger. And by this occasion dyed menetiene men, and also the Giaunt, with an Indian of the lande of *Brasile*, otherwyle called *Terra de papagalli*, that is, the lande of *popingayes*. Beside these that dyed. xxv. or xxx. were so sicke, that they were not able to doe any seruice with theyr handes or armes for feeblenesse: So that there was in maner none without some disease. In these three monethes and xx. dayes, they sayled foure thousande leagues in one gulfe, by the sayde sea called *Pacificum*, (that is) peaceable, which may well be so called, forasmuch as in all this tyme, hauyng no sight of any lande, they had no misfortune of wynde or any other tempest. During this tyme also, they discovered only two little Ilandes uninhabited, where they sawe nothing but birdes & trees, and therfore named them infortunate Ilandes, being one from the other about two hundred leagues distant. The first of these Ilandes is from the Equinocall toward the pole *Antartike* xv. degrees, and the other fve. Their sayling was in such sorte, that they

The Giant is baptised.

Three monethes saylon with out the sight of lande. Extreme fampyne.

Diseases of fampyne.

Infortunate Ilandes.

## rounde about the worlde.

439

they sayled dayly betweene lxx. to lxx. leagues. So that in fine, if God of his mercy had not gyuen them good weather, it was necessary that in this so great a sea, they should all haue dyed for hunger. Which neuerthelesse they escaped so hardly, that it may be doubted whether euer the lyke viage may be attempted with so good successe. They considered in this Nauigation that the pole *Antartike*, hath no notable starre, after the sorte of the pole *Artike*. But they sawe many starres geathered together, which are lyke two cloudes, one separate a little from an other, & somewhat darke in the myddest. Betweene these, are two starres, not very byg, nor much shynyng, which moue a little: and these two are the pole *Antartike*. The needell of their compasse varied somewhat, and turned euer toward the pole *Artike*, neuerthelesse, had no suche force, as when it is in these partes of the pole *Artike*: Insomuch that it was necessarie to helpe the needell with the lode stone (commonly called the *Adamant*) befoze they coulde sayle therewith, bycause it moued not, as it doeth when it is in these our partes. When they were in the myddest of the gulfe, they sawe a crosse of fyue cleare starres, directly toward the Weste, and of equall distance the one from the other.

What they sayled dayly.

The starres about the South pole.

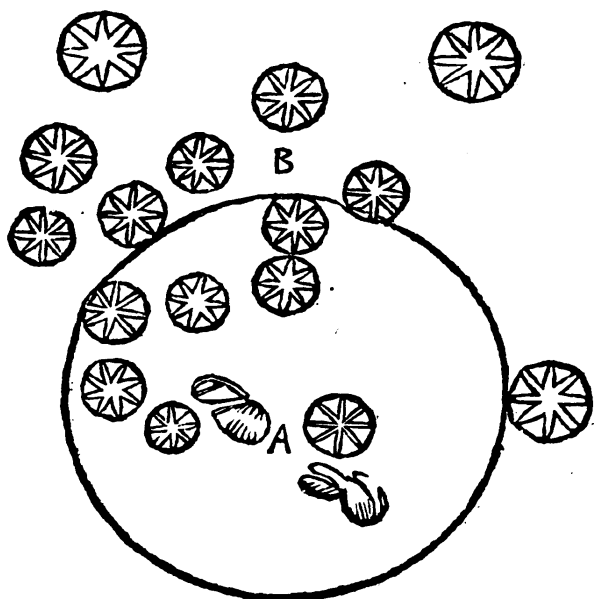
The needell of the compasse.

The lode stone.

Rkk.iii.

The

The viages of the Spanyardes  
The order of the starres about the pole Antartike, some haue figured  
in this maner.



A. The pole Antartike. B. The Crosse.

The Equinoctiall line.

The Islands of Cipangu and Sumbit.

In these dayes they sayled betweene the West and South, so farre that they approached to the Equinoctiall lyne, and were in longitude from the place from whence they first departed, a hundred and twentie degrees. In this course they sayled by two Ilandes of exceedyng heyghe, whereof the one named *Cipangu*, is twentie degrees from the pole *Antartike*: and the other named *Sumbit*, fyftiene degrees. When they were past the Equinoctiall line, they sayled betweene the West & Southwest, at the quarter of the West, towarde the Southwest more then a C leagues, changing their sayles to the quarter of the Southwest, vntyll they came to the thirtiene degrees about the Equinoctiall towarde the pole *Antike*, intending as much as were possible, to appoche

rounde about the worlde.

437

approch to the Cape called of the olde writers *Cattigara*: the whiche is not founde as the olde Cosmographers haue discribed it, but is towarde the north about .xii. degrees, as they afterward vnderstoode.

When they had thus sayled .lxx. leagues of this voyage in the .xii. degree about the Equinoctiall, and .C. xlii. degrees of longitude (as I haue sayde) the fyrst daye of March they discovered a litle Ilande towarde the north-west, and two other towarde the south-west: but the one was hygher and bygger then the other. In the byggest of these, the generall captayne woulde haue rested hym selfe a whyle, but he coulde not, by reason the people of these Ilandes resorted continually to the shypes with theyr Canoas, and stole nowe one thyng & nowe an other, in suche sorte that our men coulde take no rest: and therefore demaunded of the captayne that they myght stryke theyr sayles to byng the shypes to lande. But the captayne beyng prouoked to anger, went aland with fourtie armed men, and burnt about fyftie of theyr houses, with many of theyr Canoas, and slue also about seuen men, and recovered a shyppe boate whiche the Barbarians had stolne, and so departed, folowynge his voyage. The Captayne named these Ilandes *Insula Latronum*, that is, the Ilandes of theeuers. *Insula Latronum.* When our men had so wounded some of them with arrowes, that they were stryken through both sydes, they pulled forth the arrowes, not ceassynge to maruayle at them, tyll they fell downe dead: And yet coulde not the other so depart, but styll folowed y ships with more then two hundred of their boates, appoching as nere to the shypes as they coulde, and proferryng our men certayne fishes. As the shyps passed with ful sayle in the myddest of theyr boates, they sawe in some of them certayne women, lamentynge and tearyng theyr heare, whiche our men thought they dyd for the death of theyr hus bandes. As farre as they coulde perceyue, these people lyue at theyr owne lybertie, without any ruler or gouernour. They go naked, and haue blacke beards and blacke heare on theyr heades, whiche they weare long downe to their wastes. They are of the same stature that we are, and well made, of colour like vnto an Olive. Their women are wel favoured, with blacke & thicke heare on theyr heades, reachyng to the grounde. The men colour theyr teeth redde and blacke, which they

Theyr's with long beare.

they esteeme a comely thyng. They annoynt theyr bodyes and heare with theyr oyle of *Cocus*. Theyr boates are some all blacke, some white, and some redde, and haue sayles made of the brode leaues of Date trees, sowed together. In the steade of a rudder, they vse a certayne brode boorde, with a staffe in the top, and may when they wyll, make the sterne the fore castell, or the fore castell the sterne. They sayle so swyftely, that they seeme a farre of, lyke Delphyns swymmyng aboue the water.

The Ilande of  
Zamall.

The tenth daye of Marche, in the yeeere .1521. they wente alande vppon a litle Ilande named *Zamall*. xxx. leagues distant from the Ilande of theeues. Because this Ilande was not inhabited, they rested here a while, where the captayne caused a pavilion to be pitched for the sycke & crased men, and a hogge to be kylled.

Wyne of Date  
trees.

The marvellous  
fruite *Cocus*.

The .xviii. daye of Marche, they sawe a boate with nyne men commyng towarde them, shewyng them selues ioyfull and reioysyng of theyr commyng. They brought many presentes with them, and seemed to be people of muche humanitie. They gaue the Captayne a great fysh, and a great vessell of the wyne of those Date trees whiche beare the fruite *Cocus*. They made also signes, that within the space of foure dayes, they woulde byyng *Ryle*, and dyuers foules and beastes, as they dyd in deede. This *Cocus* is a fruite of certayne Date trees, whereof they make bread, wyne, oyle, and vineger. They make wyne in this manner. They cutte a bygge branche of the tree, and hange thereat a reede as bygge as a mans legge, into the whiche droppeth a sweete licoure from the tree, like vnto whyte wyne, somewhat tart, and let the reede continue there from moynyng tyl euenyng, and from euenyng to moynyng. The fruite of this tree called *Cocus*, is as bygge as the head of a man, or more. The fyrst rynde of this, is greene, and of the thynkenesse of two fyngers, hauyng in it certayne threedes whereof they make cordes, with the whiche they tye theyr boates. Under this rynde, there is a thynke shell, which they burne and make powder therof, and vse it as a remedy for certayne diseales. Under this shell, is a white substance lyke the carnel of a Nut, being a synger in thynkenesse, which they eate with fleshe and fysh, as we do bread. It hath the taste of an Almonde, and is vled in the steade of bread, when it is dyed.

In

In the myddest of this carnell, is a cleare and sweete water, beyng very hollome and cordiale. This water sometyme con- tealeth and lyeth within the shell lyke an egge. When they in- tende to make oyle hereof, they lase it to putrifie in water, and boyle it vntyll it be lyke oyle or liquide butter. When they in- tende to make vineger, they suffer onely the water to putrifie, and then set it to the Sunne, where it becommeth vineger, lyke vnto that which is made of whyte wyne. And when they mingle the carnell with the water whiche is in the myddest of the fruite, and strayne it thzough a cloth, they make a mylke thereof, lyke vnto Goates mylke. These Date trees are lyke vnto them that beare Dates, but are not so full of knottes. With the iuice of two of these Date trees, a whole familie of tenne persons may be mentayned with wyne, vsyng one .viii. dayes, and the other, other .viii. dayes: for they shoulde els be dyed and wythered. These trees continue for the space of a hundred yeeeres. This Ilande where they founde this humane and gentle people, is called *Zuluan*, and is not very bygge. About this Ilande they founde many other Ilandes, and therefore named this sea *Archipelago di San Lazaro*, that is, the great sea of saint Lazarus, be- yng tenne degrees aboue the Equinoctiall towarde our pole, and Cxvi. from the place from whence they departed. The people of this Ilande are *Caphranita* (that is Gentiles). They go naked, sayng that they couer theyr priuie partes with a cloth made of the rynde of a certaine tree. The chiefe men, haue about theyr heades a sylken cloth of needle woork. They are grosse and brode set, and of the coloure of an Olyue. They annoynt theyr bodyes with the oyle of *Cocus*, to defende them agaynst the heate of the Sunne, and drynesse of the wynde. The .xxv. daye of Marche, they departed from hence, and directed theyr course betweene the West and south west, and sayled betweene foure Ilandes, named *Cenalo*, *Huinangban*, *Hibussan*, and *Abarien*. &c.

The Iland of  
Zuluan.

The sea called  
Archipelago di  
San Lazaro.

Gentiles.

Foure Ilandes.

The .xxviii. daye of Marche, they came to the Ilande of *Butuan*, where they were honozably entertayned of the Kyng and the Prynce his sounne, who gaue them muche golde and spices. The Captayne gaue the Kyng a vesture of red cloth, and an other of yelow, made after the Turkysh fashion, and also a redde cappe: and gaue lyke wyse to other that came with

The Iland of  
Butuan.

with hym certayne knyues, glasses, and beades of Crystall. After that the Captayne had shewed the Kyng the secretes of his shipp, and suche merchaundies as he had therein, he caused a peece of ordinaunce sodenly to be shotte of, whereat the kyng was greatly amased, but the Captayne comforted hym. Then the Captayne commaunded one of his men to be armed from the head to the foote, and caused thre other to stryke hym with theyr swoordes, whereat the kyng marueyled greatly, and sayde to thinterpretour (who was a slaue boine in Malacha) that one of those armed men was able to encounter with a hundred of his men. But he marueyled much more, when the Captayne tolde hym by thinterpretoure, howe he founde the straght by the compasse and lode stone, and howe many dayes they were without syght of any lande. Then as kyng lycence to depart, the Captaine sent two of his men with hym, of y<sup>e</sup> which *Antonie Pigafetta* was one. When the kyng sawe *Antonie Pigafetta* wyte the names of many thynges, and afterwarde rehearsed them againe, he marueyled yet more, makyng sygnes that such men descended from heauen. The kyng brought them fyrst to his pallace, where he interteyned them honozably, and gaue them many gyftes, as byd also the Prince in his pallace, beyng in an other Ilande named *Caleghan*.

The Ilande of  
Caleghan.

Plenty of gold.

The kyng of  
Buhuan.

As they lyfted a certeyne myne of earth in the kynges Iland, they founde peeces of golde, some as bygge as Nuttes, and other as bygge as Egges. All the kynges vesselles were of gold, and his house well furnyshed. In al the whole nation there was no man of comelyer personage then the kyng: he had his heare long downe to his shulders, and very blacke, with a baile of sylke rouled about his head, and two great rynges of golde hangyng at his eares. He had about his myddle, a cloth wrought of coten and sylke, impaled with golde, and reachyng downe to his knees. On his one syde, he had a long daggar with a haffe of gold, and the sheathe of a fayre kynde of carued woodde. He had on euery finger thre rynges of golde, and had his bodie annoynted with oyle of storax and Benjamin. The natural coloure of his face was lyke vnto the coloure of an Oliue: and all his body besyde paynted with diuers colours. The kynges name was *Raia Colambu*, and the prince was called *Raia Siagu*.

The

The last day of Marche, neare vnto Easter, the Captayne caused his priest to say Masse, and sent to the kyng by the interpreter, that his comyng a land at that tyme was not to dyne with hym, but only to heare Masse. The Captayne came aland, with fiftie of his men, in theyr best apparel, without weapons or harnesse, and all the residue well armed. Before the boates came to lande, he caused fye peeces of ordinaunce to be shot of, in token of peace, and so came alande, where the two kynges imbrased hym, and accompanied hym to the place appoynted for Masse to be sayde, not farre from the sea syde. Somewhat before the begynnyng of Masse, the Captayne sprynkled the kynges with Damask water. When the priest was at myd Masse, at the offertorie, the kynges profered them selues to go to kysse the crosse with the Captayne, but offered nothyng. At the tyme of sacryng, when the priest lyfted vp the body of Christe, and the Christians kneeled downe and helde vp theyr handes ioyned togeather, the kynges byd the lyke also, with great reuerence. In the meane tyme, whyle certayne of the Christians were at the Communion, a handgunne was shot of, to signifye vnto them that were in the shippes to discharge al theyr ordinaunce. When Masse was finished, the Captayne caused certayne of his men to put on their harnesse, and to make a cumbat with theyr naked swoordes, whereat the kynges tooke great pleasure. This doone, the Captayne caused a crosse to be brought forth, with nayles, and a crowne of thornes, geuyng commaundement to all his men to gyue reuerence therevnto, and signyfying to the kynges, by the interpreter, that that banner was gyuen hym by the Emperour his lorde and maister, with commaundement to leaue the same in all places where he came, to the great commoditie and profyte of al such as woulde reuerently receyue it, as an assured token of friendship, and that he woulde therfore leaue it there, as wel to accomplishe his lordes commaundement, as also that yf at any tyme any ships of Christians shoulde chaunce to come that way, myght by seying that crosse, perceyue that our men had been wel interteyned there, and woulde therfore not only absteyne from doing them any hurt or displeasure, but also helpe to ayde them against their enemies: and that therefore it shoulde be requisite to erect that crosse vpon the toppe of the hyghest mountayne that myght

A combatte.



## The viages of the Spanyardes

might be seene from the sea on every syde, also to pray unto it reuerently: and that in so doynge, they should not be hurt with thunder, lightning, and tempestes. When the kynge heard these wordes, they gaue the captaine great thanks, promysynge gladly to obsetue and fulfill al such thynges as he required. Then the Captaine demaunded, whether they were Moores or Gentiles: They answered, that they had none other kinde of religion, but that lyfeyng vp theyr handes layned togeather, and theyr faces toward heauen, they called vpon theyr God *Abba*. Which answer was lykely the Captayne very well, because the Gentiles are soone perswaded to our sayth then the Moores.

Moores and Gentiles.

Mani Islands.

The Island of Madiana.

Battes as byg as Eagles.

Fowles with baynes.

Egges hatched in lande.

The Islande of Zubut.

Departynge from hence, they came to the Islandes of *Zeilon*, *Zubut*, *Messana*, and *Calagban*, by the conduct of certayne pilots of the sayde kynge. Of these, *Zubut* is the best, and hath the trade of best trafique. In the Islande of *Messana* they founde Dogges, Cattes, Hogges, Penues, Goates, Ryse, Gynger, Cocus, Wyll, Pantike, Baris, Pygges, Oranges, Waxe, and Golde, in great quantitie. This Islande is aboue the Equinoctial toward our pole niene degrees, & two thirde partes, and 162. degrees from the place from whence they departed. They remayned in this Islande for the space of eyght dayes, and then directed their viage toward the Northwest, and passed betweene these fyue Islandes, *Zeilon*, *Bobol*, *Canghu*, *Barbai*, and *Catighan*.

In this Island of *Catighan* are certayne great Battes, as bygge as Eagles, of the whiche they tooke one: they are good to be eaten, and of taste much lyke a Venne. There are also Stocke Doves, Turtle Doves, Hopingays, & certayne fowles as big as Venues: these fowles haue litle hornes, & lay great egges, whiche they couer a cubit deapth in the sand, by the heate wherof, & vertue of the Sonne, they are hatched, & the young birdes crepe out of the sand by themselves. From the Island of *Messana* to *Catighan*, are 20. leagues saylyng toward the West. And because the kynge of *Messana* coude not folowe the shippes, they tarped for him about the Islandes of *Polo*, *Ticobon*, and *Fozon*, where the Captayne toke hym into his shippe, with certayne of his principall men, and so folowed theyr viage toward the Islande of *Zubut*, which is about fyfte leagues distant from *Catighan*.

The seventh day of Apryll, about noone, they entred into the port

## founde about the world.

440

port of *Zubut*: And passing by many villages and habitations in trees, they came to the cite, where the Captayne gaue commaundement to the maryners to stryke theyr sayles, and to set them selues in order in maner of battayle rase, causynge all the ordinaunce to be hotte of, wherewith all the people were put in great feare. After this, the Captayne sent an ambassadour with thinterpretoure to the kynge of *Zubut*.

When they appoched neere to the cite, they found the kynge with a great company of men soze astonied at the noyse of the gunnes. But thinterpretour aduertised them, that it was the custome of our men, in all suche places where they come, to discharge theyr ordinaunce in token of frendshyppe, and to honour the lord of the cite. With which wordes the kynge and his company were well quieted. After this, the interpretour declared that his master was the Captayne of the shippes of the greatest Prince in the worlde, and that they went to discover the Islandes of *Molacca*: And further, that hearyng of his good name and fame by the report of the kynge of *Messana*, they determyned to visite him, & to haue vittailles for exchange of their merchaundies. The kynge answered, that he was wel content therewith, and that they were hartly welcome: Neuerthelesse, that it was a custom in that place, that al such shypes as entered into that hauen, should pay tribute: And that there were not many dayes past, sence a shyp laden with golde and slaues dyd so paye. In token whereof, he caused to come before hym certayne merchautes of that company which yet remayned with hym. To this thinterpretour answered, that forasmuche as his lord was the Captayne of so myghtie a Prince, he neuer payde tribute to any kynge in the worlde, and would not now begyn: Wyllyng hym to take this for a resolute answere, that if he would accepte the peace that was profered him, he should enioy it, and if he rather despyred warre, he should haue his handes ful. When thinterpretour had sayde these wordes, one of the sayde merchautes (who was a Moore) spake to the kynge in this maner *Catacaia Chita*: that is, Take heede sy: For these men are they that haue conquered *Calecut*, *Malacca*, and all the greater India, and are of suche power, that if you intreate them otherwyse then wel, you may to late knowe what they are able to do, more then they haue done.

A shyppe laden with gold and slaues.

Calecut. Malacca.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

at Calcut and Malaca. When thinterpretour hearde these woordes, he sayde, that the kyng his Lozde was of much greater puissance and moze dominions, and lozde of moze shippes then was the kyng of Portugale: Declaryng further that he was kyng of Spayne, and Emperour of all Christendome. Addyng hereunto, that if he woulde not be his frende, he woulde hereafter sende thither suche a power of armed men as shoulde destroy his countrey. The Dooze conferred al these woordes with the king, who sayde that he woulde further deliberate with his counsaile, and geue them a full aunswere the dape folowyng. In the meane tyme he sent them certayne byttayles and wyne. When all these thynges were declared to the kyng of Messana, who was the chiefest thereabout next vnto him, and lord of many Ilandes, he went a lande and repayed to the kyng of Zubat, and declared vnto hym the great humanitie and curtesie of the generall Captayne. Shortly after, the Captayne sente certayne of his men with thinterpretour to the kyng of Zubat, to knowe his pleasure, and what aunswere he woulde make them. As they went towarde the courte, they met the kyng commyng in the streete, accompanied with many of his chiefe men. He caused our men to syt downe by hym, and demaunded of them if there were any moze then one Captayne, in theyr companie: and whether it were theyr request that he shoulde paye tribute to Themperour. They aunswared, that they desyred none other thyng, but that they myght exercise merchaundies with them, and to barter ware for ware. The kyng made aunswere, that he was well content therewith: wyllyng the Captayne, in token of frendshipp, to sende hym a litle blood of his ryght arme, assymyng that he woulde do the lyke. &c.

Sheddynge of blood is a token of frendshipp.

The kyng of zus but is baptised.

After this, the kyng of Messana, with the kyng of zubat his newie (who was the prince) and certayne other of his gentelmen, came to the shippes, and brought the Captayne many goodly presentes. They entred into great amitie, and had large communication of many thynges. The Captayne perswaded them to the Christian fayth: whiche they gladly embrased, and tooke such pleasure in hearyng the articles of our beliefe, that the teares fell from theyr eyes for ioye. They were baptised, and shortly after all the people of the Ilande. They esteeme nothing moze precious then drynkyng glasses of Venice woozke.

When

## rounde about the worlde.

441

When they came to the citie, they founde the kyng in his Pallace sitting vppon a floore or storie made of the leaues of Date trees, wrought after a curious deuise, lyke a certayne kynde of mattes. He had vppon his body none other apparell but only a cloth of Bombasine cotton, hangyng before his priue partes. On his head, he had a vayle of needle worke, and about his necke a chayne of great pryce. At his eares, hung two Rynge of gold, wherein were inclosed many precious stones. He was but of small stature, but somewhat grosse, and had the residue of his body paynted with dyuers colours, whereof some were lyke vnto stampyng fyre. Before him, he had two vesselles made of the fine earth called Porcellana, with loddyn egges. Also foure vesselles of Porcellana full of wyne made of Date trees, and couered with many odoriferous hearbes. The Prince brought them to his house, where he had foure daughters, very wel fauoured and whyte, lyke ours. Hee caused them to daunce all naked, and therewith to sing, and playe on certayne Tymbyelles made of metall. At this tyme it so chaunced, that one of the Spanyardes dyed in one of the shippes, and when certayne of theyr company desired the kyng to gyue them leaue to burie him on the land: he answered, that forasmuche as he and all his, were at the commaundement of theyr kyng and maister, howe muche more ought the grounde so to bee? They greatly marueyled at the ceremonies parteynyng to the maner of our funeralles, and honoured the crosses whiche were set at both the endes the graue. They lyue with iustice, and vse weightes and measures. Their houses are made of Tymber and sawne boordes, and are so builded aboue the grounde vppon proppes and pylles, that they ascende to the same by certayne steyers. Under theyr houses, they keepe theyr Dogges and Hennes.

The kyng of Zubat his apparell.

Well fauoured women.

When they came to barterynge, they gaue golde, Rysse, Dogges, Hennes, and dyuers other thynges for some of our trybles of small value. They gaue tenne Pesos of golde for sixtiene poundes weyght of Iron. One Pesus is in value a ducate and a halfe. The Sunday folowyng, the kyng was baptised with great solemnitie: at which tyme, the Captayne admonished him before, not to be astrayde at the shootyng of of the ordinance, bycause it was theyr custome so to doe at such solemne feastes.

Barterynge. Pesus what it is.

Ill. i.

After

## The viages of the Spanyardes

They breake  
theyr Idolles  
and erecte the  
Crosse.

Some hundred  
men baptised.

The Queene  
of Zubut.

After this, the Captayne caused them to breake all theyr Idolles, and to set vp the crosse in diuers places, praying to the same both moynng and euening kneeling on theyr knees, and holding by theyr handes ioyned together. The kyng in his baptisme was named Charles, after the Emperours name, and the Prince, *Ferdinando*, after the name of his maiesties brother. The kyng of *Messana* was named John, & the Pooze Christopher. To all other they gaue suche names as are commonly vsed in Christendome. And thus before masse was begonne, were some hundred men baptised. When masse was synished, the Captayne inuited the Kyng to dyne with him in his shyppe, and at his commynge, caused the ordinaunce to be discharged. The Queene was also baptised, with fourtie of her gentlewomen, and her daughter the princes wyfe. The Queene was very young and fayre, hauing her bodie couered with a whyte cloth. Her shypes were redde, and she had on her head a Hatte, on the toppe wherof was a triple crowne, much lyke the Popes: this crowne and the Hat, were made of the leaues of Date trees. Within the space of eyght dayes, the inhabitantes of the Ilande were baptised, excepte one village of Idolatours, who would not herein obey the kynges commaundement. Wherevpon the Captayne sent certayne of his men thither, who burnt the towne, and erected a crosse in that place, bycause the people of the village were Gentyles (that is) Idolaters. But if they had been Poozes (that is, *Machumetistes*) they would haue erected a pyller of stone, bycause the Poozes are more stubberne and harder to be conuerted than are the gentiles. When the Queene came to the place where she should heare masse, shee came forth with great pompe and solemnitie, hauing going before her three young damosels, and three men with their Cappes in their hands, whom she folowed apparelled in whyte and blacke, with a great bayle of silke vpon her head, fringed about with golde, which couered her hatte, and hung downe to her shoulders: She had also a great traine of women folowynge her, beynge all barefooted and naked, excepte that vpon theyr heades and priue partes they wore certayne bayles of silke, and had theyr heare spreade.

Before the kyng of *Zubut* was baptised, he was named *Raisa Humabuon*. When the Captayne demaunded of him why all the

## rounde about the worlde.

442

the Idolles in the Ilande were not burnt accordyng to his promise, he answered, that they esteemed them no more as goddes, but only made sacrifice to them for the Princes brother, who was very sicke, and as noble and witty a man as was in the Ilande. The Captayne answered, that if he would burne all his Idolles, and beleue faythfully in Christ, and be baptised, he should bee immediately restored to health, and that he would els giue them leaue to stryke off his head. By these wordes and persuations of the Captayne, he conceyued suche hope of health, that after he was baptised hee felte no more greefe of his disease. And this was a manifeste miracle wrought in our tyme, whereby diuers Infidelles were conuerted to our fayth, and theyr Idolles destroyed, and also theyr Altars ouerthrowen on the which they were accustomed to eate the sacrificed fleshe. The people of the Ilande paye the kyng a portion of victualles for theyr tribute by all theyr cities and byllages.

A miracle.

Not farre from this Ilande of *Zubut*, is the Ilande of *Mathan*, whose inhabitantes vse marueylous ceremonies in theyr sacrifices to the sonne, and burying the dead. They weare ringes of golde about their priue members. The Iland is gouerned by two Princes, whereof the one is named *Zula*, and the other *Cilapulapu*. And whereas this *Cilapulapu* refused to paye tribute to the kyng of Spayne, the Captayne went agaynst him in his owne person with 60. of his men, armed with coates of mayle and Helmes. *Cilapulapu* diuided his army into three battayles, hauing in euery battayle two thousand & fystie men, with armed bowes, arrowes, darters, and Iauelins hardened at the pointes with fyre. This continued long and sharpe. But the Captayne being a baltiaunt man, and preasing him selfe in the brunte of the battaile, was sore wounded and slaine, forasmuche as the most of the Barbarians directed all their force agaynst him. Besyde the Captayne, were slayne of our men about viii. or ix. Of the Barbarians, were .xii. slayne, & many sore wounded. After the death of the Captayne, they chose two other in his place, of the which one was *Odoardo Barbeta* a Portugale, and the other *Iohn Scirano*, who was shortly after betrayde by the interpretour, and taken prisoner with diuers other.

The Captayne  
Pageitanus  
is slayne.

Certaine dayes before the captaines death, they had knowledge  
LII.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

The Ilande of  
Bohol.  
They burnt  
one of the  
shippes.

Blacke men.

The Ilande of  
Chippit.

The Ilande of  
Caghayan.

The Ilande of  
Pulaoan.

The Ilande of  
Burnei or  
Bohis.

A great citie.

Elephantes.

of the Ilandes of *Molucca*, whiche they chiefly sought. Departing therefore from the Ilande of *Mathan*, they sayled farre, and came to the Cape of an other Ilande named *Bohol*. In the myddest of this mayne sea (whiche they named *Archipelagus*) they consulted to burne the shyppe named *Conception*, bycause they were nowe fewe in number, and to furnyshe the other two shippes with the artilerie thereof. Thus directyng theyr course toward Southwest, they came to an other Ilande named *Panuloghon*, where they founde blacke men, lyke vnto the *Sarasing*. Shortly after, they arryued at an other great Ilande, whose kyng, named *Rais Calauar*, intreated them very friendly in all thynges, as dyd the kyng of *Massana*. This Ilande is ryche in golde, and hath plentie of *Rysse*, *Gynger*, *Hogges*, *Goates*, *Hennes*, and dyuers other thynges: It is named *Chippit*, and is viii. degrees aboute the Equinoctiall lyne toward our pole, and in longitude from the place from whence they first departed. 170. degrees, and about. 50. leagues from *Zubut*.

Departing from hence, they came to an other Ilande, named *Caghayan*, beyng. 40. leagues from *Chippit*, as they sayled betwene the Weste and Southwest. This Ilande is very great, and in maner inhabited. The people are *Doozes*, and were banished out of the Ilande of *Burnei*, which some call *Porne*.

From this Ilande about. xxv. leagues betwene the Weste and Northweste, they founde a marueylous fruitfull Ilande named *Pulaoan*, beyng toward our pole aboute the Equinoctiall niene degrees and a thirde parte, and. C. lxxix. degrees and a thirde parte in longitude from the place of their departyng.

From this Ilande. x. leagues towarde the Southwest, they sawe an other Ilande, whiche seemed to them sometymes to mount as they sayled by the coastes thereof. As they were entering into the port, there arose a boystuous & dark tempest, which ceased as soone as the fyres of the three saintes (whereof we haue spoken before) appeared vpon the cables. From the beginning of this Iland to the porte, are fyue leagues. This Ilande is great and ryche, and the chiefe citie thereof conteyneth. xxv. thousande houses. The Kyng. enterpnyed our men very friendly, and sent them, besyde many other presentes, two Elephantes, trapped with lyeke, to bryng them to his Palace that broughte the

## rounde about the worlde.

443

the presentes which the Captaynes sent him. He hath a mag<sup>n</sup>ificall Courte, and a great garde, also a multitude of concubynes. He is a *Dooze*, and is named *Rais Siripada*. He is a kyng of great power, and hath vnder him many other kynges, Ilands, and cities. This Ilande of *Burnei*, is aboute the Equinoctiall toward our pole, fyue degrees and a quarter, and in longitude from the place of theyr departyng. C. lxxvi. degrees, and two thirde partes.

Departing from *Burnei*, they came to an Ilande called *Cimbulon*, beyng. viii. degrees aboute the Equinoctiall lyne. Here they remayned. xl. dayes, to calke theyr shippes, and furnyshe them with freshe water and fuell, which was to them great payne and trauayle, bycause they were in maner all bare footed, their shooes (and in maner their other apparel) being worne, by reason of the long vpage. In the woods of this Iland, they found a tree, whose leaues as soone as they fall on the ground, doe sturte and remoue from place to place, as though they were alyue: they are muche lyke the leaues of a *Dulbery* tree, and haue on euery syde as it were two short & blunt feete. When they are cut or broken, there is no blood seene come forth of them: Yet when any of them are touched, they todaynly moue and starte away. *Antoni Pigafetta* kept one of them in a platter for the space of. viii. dayes, and euert when he touched it, it ranne rounde about the platter. He supposeth that they lyue only by ayre.

Departing from hence, they directed theyr course by the West quarter towarde the Southeast, to fynde the Ilandes of *Molucca*, and sayled not farre from certayne mountaynes, where they founde the sea full of great weedes and hearbes.

From hence, they came to the Ilandes of *Zolo* and *Taghima*, in the which are founde pearles of exceedyng bygnesse.

Folowynge theyr course towarde the Northeast, they came to a great citie named *Mangdando*, lying aboute the Ilandes of *Butbuan* and *Calaghan*, where they tooke a Canoa of certayne of the inhabitantes: by whom beyng infourmed of the Ilandes of *Molucca*, they lefte theyr course towarde the Northeast, and folowed the Southeast, neare vnto a Cape of the Ilande of *Butbuan*: they were aduertised for certentie, that on the bankes of a certayne ryuer, there dwelt men ouergrowen with beare, and

LI.iii.

The Ilande of  
Cimbulon.

Leaues of trees  
which seeme  
to lyue.

A sea full of  
weedes.

Pearles.

Men ouer-  
grown with  
of beare.

of hygh stature.

Following still they course by the Southeast, and passing by many small Ilandes, they came to the Ilandes of *Molucca*, the sixte day of November, and the xxvii. moneth after their departure out of Spayne. Being therefore topyfull, and giving thanks vnto God, they discharged all they ordinance. In the coaste of all these Ilandes, euen vnto the Ilandes of *Molucca*, soundyng with they plummet, they founde the deapth of the sea to be no lesse then a hundred and two yardes, which is contrary to the saying of the Portugales, who affirme that no shyppe can passe that way without great daunger, by reason of the shallownesse and rockes or shelues, and for the darkenelle which the cloudes cause in the heauen. All which things they sayned, to the intent that none other should haue knowledge of they viages.

The eyght day of November, in the yere 1521. before the rising of the Sunne, they entered into the porte of the Ilande of *Tidore*, being one of the chiefe Ilandes of *Molucca*, where they were honorably interteyned of the kyng, who declared that he had long before seene a signe in heauen, that certayne shippes shoulde come from a farre countrey to the Ilandes of *Molucca*: And that whereas for the better certificate thereof, he considered the stations of the Moone, he sawe therein the comyng of our shippes, and that we were the men whom he seemed to see in the same. Wherevpon he profered him selfe to enter into league of friendship with the kyng of Spayne, and to accepte our men as his bretheren and chyldren, wyllyng them to come alande as into they owne houses: Also, that for they comyng, that Ilande shoulde no more bee called *Tidore*, but *Casile*, for the great loue whiche he bore to they Kyng, whom he reputed as his Loyde and maister. This Kyng is a *Moore*, and is named: *Raja Sultan, Mauzor*.

The Ilandes of *Molucca*, are fyue in number, and are thus named, *Tarenate*, *Tidore*, *Mutir*, *Macchian*, and *Bacchian*. Of these, *Tarenate* is the cheefest.

Directly agaynst the Ilande of *Tidore*, there is an other great Ilande, named *Gilolo*, inhabited of *Moore*s and *Gentiles*. The *Moore*s haue two Kynges, of the whiche one hath sixe hundred chyldren, and the other sixe hundred and fyfte. The *Gentyles*

*Gentyles* keepe not so many women as do the *Moore*s, nor yet hve in suche superstitions. They pray to the first thyng that they meete in the mornyng when they goe forth of they houses, and honour that as they God for that day. The Kyng of the *Gentyles* is very ryche in golde. In the sayde Ilande of *Gilolo*, are *Reedes* as hygh as a mans legge, and full of cleare water hol- some to be drunke.

The. xii. day of November, the kyng of *Tidore* appoynted our men a warehouse in the citie, where they myght sell they merchaundies. They maner of exchaunge was in this sorte. For tenne yardes of good redde cloth, they had one *Babar* of Cloues, which amounteth to foure *Cantari* and six pound weight: And one *Cantar* is a hundred pounde weyght. For xv. yardes of cloth somewhat woofe then the other, they receyued in *Cambie*, one *Babar*. For xxxv. drynkyng cuppes of glasse, they had one *Babar*. For xvii. Cathys of quicke siluer, one *Babar*. They came dayly to the shippes with many of they Barkes full of Goates, Hennes, fygges of a spanne long, also the fruite called *Cocos*, with dyuers other kyndes of victualles, in suche quantitie that it was a marueylous thyng to beholde. They furnyshed also they shippes with freshe water, which is hotte as it issueth out of the spyng, but is very colde when it hath stode a whyle in an other place. It spyngeth from the mountaynes on the which the clouetrees growe. They sawe a cloude ryle in maner dayly, whiche compasseth about the sayde mountaynes.

The kyng of the Ilande of *Bacchian*, sent the kyng of Spayne two dead byrdes of straunge fourme. They were of the bygnelle of *Turtle Dooes*, with little heades and long bylles: also long and small legges, and no wynges, but in the steele thereof certayne long feathers of diuers colours, and tayles lyke *Turtle Dooes*: all the other feathers are of one colour, much lyke vnto talow, excepte those of the wynges: they flee not but when the wynde bloweth. These *Moore*s are of opinion that these byrdes come from the heauenly *Paradise*, and therefore call them *Manuccodiata*, that is, the byrdes of God.

When they were determyned to departe from the Ilandes of *Molucca*, certayne kynges of the Ilandes accompanied them

Al.iiii.

with

The Ilandes of Molucca.

The Portugales are reyned.

Tidore one of the Ilandes of Molucca.

A vision in the Planettes.

The fyue Ilandes of Molucca.

Tarenate.

The Ilande of Gilolo.

Moore and Gentiles.

Golde. Water in Reedes.

They maner of barter.

Water of a strange qualite.

Byrdes of a strange fourme.



## The viages of the Spanyardes

with theyr Canoas, and conducted them to an Ilande called *Mare*, where they refreshed theyr shippes with freshe water and fuel. The kynges sent the Emperours maiestie many presentes: and embrazing our men, departed with the teares in theyr eyes, and our men for theyr laste farewell, shot of all their ordynance. When in the Ilande of *Mare*, they perceyued that one of theyr shippes leaked and tooke water very soze, wherby they were inforced to tarrie there thre dayes: But seeing that they coulde fynde no remedie for the same, but in long tyme, they determined to leaue it, gyuyng order that if afterwarde it coulde bee repayred, they should returne into Spayne as well as they could.

In all the Ilandes of *Molucca* is founde Cloues, Ginger, bread of the roote of *Sagu*, Ryle, Goates, sheepe, Hennes, Figges, Almondes, sweete Pomegranates and lowre, Oranges, Lemondes, and hony, which is made of certayne flyes lesse then Antes: Also canes of suger, oyle of *Cocus*, Mellons, Gourdes, and a marueylous colde fruite whiche they name *Camulicai*, and dyuers other fruites. Furthermoze, whyte and red *Poppingayes*, and other of variable colours. It is not paste fiftie yeeres since the *Doozes* fyrst inhabited any of these Ilandes, whiche were before inhabited only with Gentiles.

The Ilande of *Tidore* is about the Equinoctiall line toward our pole about .27. minutes, and in longitude from the place from whence they departed .171. degrees, and from the *Archipelagus*, in the which is the Ilande of *Zamal*, whiche our men named the Ilande of theeues .ix. degrees and a halfe, and runneth to the quarter of South South west, and North North east. *Terenate*, is vnder the Equinoctiall lyne foure minutes, vnder the pole *Antartike*. *Mutir*, is directly vnder the Equinoctiall lyne. *Macchian* is .xv. minutes toward the pole *Antartike*, and *Bacchian* one degree. These Ilands are lyke iiii. sharpe mountaines, except *Macchian*, which is not sharpe. The biggest of all these, is *Bacchian*. Departing from the Ilande of *Mare*, and directyng theyr course toward the South west, with only .xlv. men in theyr shyppe, and .xiii. Indians, they passed by the Ilandes of *Chacoman*, *Lagoma*, *Sico*, *Gioghi*, *Casbi*, *Sulacho*, *Lumatola*, *Ten-tum*, *Bu-u*, *Ambon*, *Budia*, *Celaruri*, *Benaia*, *Ambalao*, *Bandon*, *Zorobua*, *Zolot*,

## rounde about the worlde.

445

*Zolot*, *Norenamor*, *Galian*, and *Mallua*, with dyuers other Ilands both great and small, of *Doozes*, Gentiles, and Canibales. Our men remayned .xv. dayes in the Ilande of *Mallua*, to repayre theyr shyppe in certayne places where it tooke water. All the feeldes of this Ilande is full of long and rounde Pepper, and is situate toward the pole *Antartike* vnder the Equinoctiall line .viii. degrees and a halfe, and is in the longitude of .169. degrees and .40. minutes.

The Pilot, whiche our men brought out of the Ilandes of *Molucca*, tolde them that not farre from thence was an Ilande named *Arucetto*, in the whiche are men and women not past a cubite in heygth, haupng eares of suche byggeneesse, that they lye vpon one, and couer them with the other. But our men would not saye thither, both because the wynde and course of the sea was agaynst them, and also for that they gaue no credite to his reporte. The .xxv. daye of Januarie in the yeere .1522. they departed from *Mallua*, and the day folowynge, arryued at a great Ilande named *Timor*, beinge syue leagues distant from *Mallua* betweene the south and south west. In this Ilande is found the wood of whyte Saunders and Gynger, and dyuers kyndes of fruites. Also sundry kyndes of beastes, and plentie of vitaille and golde. They of the Ilandes of *Giaua*, *Molucca*, and *Lozon*, resorte to this Iland for Saunders. The inhabitantes are gentyles. They saye that when they go to cutte the wood of Saunders, the deuyl appeareth to them in dyuers fourmes, and asketh them what they haue neede of: And that after this vision, many of them are long sicke. In al y Ilands of this *Archipelagus*, rayneth the disease of saint Job (whiche we call the frenche poxe) moze then in any other place in the worlde.

Farre from this Ilande betweene the west and north west, they came to an Ilande named *Eude*, in the whiche groweth great plentie of *Sinamome*. In this tracte are founde many Ilandes, lying in order as it were one directly behynde an other, euen vnto the Iland of the greater *Giaua*, named *Giaua maior*, and vnto the cape of *Malacha*, being in East India. *Giaua* the lesse, is as bygge as the Ilande of *Madera*, and is but halfe a league distant from *Giaua maior*. Here they were informed that aboute *Giaua maior* toward the north, is a great gulfe called the gulfe of *China*,

The Ilande of Mallua.

Pepper.

Little men with long eares.

The Ilande of Timor.

White Saunders and Gynger.

The deuyl appeareth.

Saint Job his disease.

Cinamome. The Ilandes of Giana. Malacca.

They leaue one of theyr shippes behinde them.

The Ilandes of Molucca.

Hony of flyes.

Poppingayes.

The Ilande of Tidore.

Terenate.

Mutir.

Macchian.

Bacchian.

Many Ilands

**The great gulf of China.** of China, in the whiche are trees of exceeding bygnesse, inhabited with foules of such greatnesse, that they carry great beastes in the ayre. The frutes of these trees are as bygg as Cucummers. The cape of Malacha, is one degree and a halfe about the Equinoctiall line toward the pole Arctike. On the east syde of this cape, runneth a very long coast, in the which are many regions & cities, wherof some are called by these names, Cingaporla, whiche is the cape. Also Pahan, Calantan, Patani, Braalin, Benu, Longon, and Odia, wherein is the citie in the whiche dwelleth the kyng of Sian named Zacabedera. The cities are buylded as ours are, and subiect to the kyng of Sian. After the realme of Sian, are the regions of Iamgoma, and Campaa, where Reubarbe groweth, of the whiche are diuers opinions, some supposyng it to be a roote, and other a putrified tree, affirming that if it were not putrified, it should not haue so great a saluour. They call it Calama. Next vnto this, is founde the great China, whose kyng is thought to be the greatest prince in the worlde, and is named Santoa Raia. Furthermore, all that is written hereafter of this kyng and these regions, they learned by thinformation of a Doore that was in the Island of Timor. He affirmed that the sayd kyng hath threescore and tenne crowned kynges vnder his empyre, and hath a port in the sea named Canthan, and two principall cities named Nauchin and Comulaha, where he remaineth hymselfe, and hath euer foure of his chiefe princes lying about his palace on every syde, toward the east, west, north, and south, geuyng diligent attendance what is done in euery of theyr quarters. All the princes of the greater India (called India Maior) and of that whereof I haue spoken before, are obedient to this kyng. And in token that they are true subiectes, they keepe in theyr palaces, which are in the myddest of theyr cities, the beast called Linx, beyng sayer then a Lion, and is the great kynges signet, whiche all such as intende to go to China, beare with them sealed in waxe, or on a peece of Iuerie, for theyr safe conduct, without the whiche they may not enter into the haven.

**The greater India.**

**The beast called Linx.**

When any of his kynges rebell or are disobedient, he causeth them to be slayen, and salted, and dyed at the Sunne, then to be stuffed with chaffe, and set vp on some hygh thynge in the myddest of the chiefe streete of the citie, where all the people may see

**The punish- ment of rebels.**

see it. He neuer suffereth his owne person to be openly seene to any man: But when his noble men of the court are desirous to see hym, he commeth downe from his palace into a ryche pavilion, accompanied with syxe of his principall concubines, apparelled with lyke vestures as he hym selfe is. All this way he is not seene, by reason of the pavilion. When he hath passed through the paupylon, he entereth into a Serpent, named Nagha, beyng the most marueylous and ryche woork of the worlde, and placed in the greatest court of the palace. When the kyng entereth into this with the women, to the intent that he may not be knowen among them, he causeth the sayde noble men only to looke in at a glasse whiche is in the breste of the Serpent, where they see the kyng among the women, but can not discern whiche is he. He ioyneth in marriage with his syster, that the blood of all be not mixt with any other. His palace is environed with seven large walles, the one beyng farre distant from the other, and hath in euery suche circuite tenne thousand men for the garrison of his palace, who haue theyr wayteing dayes appoynted them course by course, with freshe men in theyr places, and thus keepe theyr watche continually both day and nyght. In this palace are lxxx. haules, in the whiche is an infinite number of women that serue the kyng, hauyng euer light torches in theyr handes for the greater magnificence. He that would see all the palace, should spende a whole daye therein. Among other, there are foure principal haules, where sometimes the kyng geueth audience to his noble men. Of these, one is couered both aboue and beneath with metall, another all ouer with syluer, the thyrde with golde, and the fourth with pearles & precious stones. These people of China, are whyte men, apparelled as we are, and eate theyr meate on tables as we do. They haue the crosse in some estimation, but knowe not the cause whye. Beyond the coaste of China, are diuers other nations and people, as Chenchy, where Pearles and Sinamome are founde: also the people named Lickij, where reigneth the great kyng of Mien, hauyng vnder hym xxi. kynges, and is subiecte to the kyng of China. Here is also founde the great citie of Cashay, in the East, and diuers other nations in the sayde fyrrynde lande, of the which some are brutish and beastyall, whiche vse to kyll

**The kyng is not seene but at a glasse.**

**Nothing of strange workes man shew.**

**The kyng marrieth his syster. His palace.**

**A marueylous garde.**

**Women serue the kyng.**

**Foure marueylous haules.**

**The people of China.**

**The great kyng of Mien. Cashay.**

and

## The vyages of the Spanyards

and eateth they parentes when they be olde, thynkyng thereby that they shall reuiue in them: All these people are Gentyles.

The .xi. daye of February in the yere .1522. they departed from the Ilande of *Timos*, and were ingulged by chaunce in the great sea called *Lantchidol*, and tooke theyr course betweene the west and south west, leauyng the north coastes on theyr ryght hande, fearyng least if they shoulde sayle towarde the firme land, they myght be seene of the *Portugales*, who are of great power in *Malacha*: and therefore dyrected theyr course without the Ilande of *Sumatra*, called in olde tyme *Taprobana*, leauyng also on theyr ryght hand, vpon the fyne lande, the prouinces and regions of *Pegu*, *Bengala*, *Calecut*, *Canonor*, *Coa*, *Cambaia*, the gulfes of the Ilande of *Ormuz*, and all the coastes of the greater *India*. And moze safely to passe the cape of *Buona Speranza*, beyng aboute *Affrike*, they sayled about .xlii. degrees towarde the pole *Antartike*, & remayned seuen weekes about that cape, with many fetches compassyng the wynde with theyr sayles continually alofte, because they had a west and north west wynde in the proos of theyr shyppe, whiche woulde not suffer them to passe. The cape of *Buona Speranza*, is toward the pole *Antartike*, beneath the *Equinoctiall* line .34. degrees and a halfe, and .1600. leagues from the cape of *Malacha*, and is the greatest and most daungerous cape that is founde at this daye in all the worlde.

When they had by these perils ouerpasse this cape, certayne of them, as well for lacke of vyttayles, as also by reason of sicknesse, were mynded to sayle to a haven of the *Portugales* named *Monzambique*, aboute *Affrike*: But the other answered, that they woulde rather dye, then go to any other place then directly to *Spayne*. They folowed theyr course therefore, saylyng toward the South west, two monethes continually without touchyng at any port, in whiche tyme there dyed about .xvi. of theyr company, whom they cast into the sea. And surely if God of his infinite mercie had not preserved the residue in tyme, they had all dyed of famyn.

In fine, beyng inforced of necessity, and halfe of theyr company dead, they saylen to one of the Ilandes of *Capo verde*, called *Insula Sancti Iacobi*, that is, sainte James Ilande, parteynyng to the kyng of *Portugale*. Where, as soone as they arryued,

## rounde about the world.

447

they sent certayne a lande in the shyppe boate for vyttayles, declaring to the *Portugales* with all loue and fauour what necessity they were vyuen to, and what miseries and traualles they had susteyned, inourmyng them furthermoze of theyr marueylous voyage, and such thynges as they had seene in both the East and West *India*, with suche other gentle wordes, whereby they obteyned certayne measures of Ryle. But when after ward .xiii. of them returned for moze Ryle, they were deteyned: Whereupon the rest whiche remayned in the shyppe, fearyng the lyke chaunce, departed with full sayles, and the .vii. day of September with the helpe of God entred into the haven of *San Lucar* neere vnto *Siuille*, wherdischargyng all theyr ordinaunce for soy, they wente immediatly to the great churche in theyr shiertes, and barefooted, with a torche before them, to geue thankes to almyghty God, who had brought them safe to theyr owne country, and restored them to theyr wyues and chyldren. As touching the ende of this voyage, *Transiluanus* wyrteth somewhat moze largely, as foloweth.

The other shyppe whiche they left behynde them to be repaired, returned afterwarde by the *Archipelagus* afoze sayde, and by the great sea to the coastes of the fyne of the West *India*, and arryued at a region of the same beyng agaynst *Darien*, where the South sea of *Sur* is separate but by a litle space of lande from the west Ocean, in the which are the Ilandes of *Hispaniola* & *Cuba*, and other Ilandes of the *Spanyardes*. The other shyppe, whiche returned into *Spayne* by compassyng about the whole howle of the world by the coastes of East *India* and *Affrike*, departing from the Ilande of *Tidore*, and saylyng euer on this syde the *Equinoctial*, dyd not fynde the cape of *Cattigara*, being about *Asia*, and (by the description of *Ptolome*) reachyng many degrees beyond the *Equinoctiall*: But hauyng sayled many dayes by the mayne sea, they came to the cape of *Buona Speranza* and from thence to the Ilandes of *Capo verde*, where theyr shyppe, beyng soore broued by reason of the long voyage, leaked and tooke water, in suche sorte that the maryners, beyng nowe but fewe in number, and those also weake and feeble by reason of long sickness & hunger, were not able both to dreyne the pompe continually, and otherwyle gouerne the shyppe, and were therefore of necessity

The ingratitude of the *Portugales*.

The port of *San Lucar* neere vnto *Siuille*.

What became of the other shyppe. *Darien*.

The Cape of *Cattigara*.

The voyagers hardy perseverance.

The sea of *Lantchidol*.

*Malacha*.  
The Ilande of *Sumatra*.  
*Pegu*.  
*Bengala*.  
*Calecut*.  
*Canonor*.  
*Coa*.  
*Cambala*.  
*Ormus*.  
East *India*.  
Cap. de *Buona Speranza*.

The port of *Monzambique*.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

They be  
slaves for lacke  
of helpe.

Mariners  
woorthy in  
mortal fame.

cessitie enforced to go alande at the Ilande of saint James, to byē them certayne slaves to helpe them. But beyng destitute of mony, accordyng to the custome of the maryners, they profered them cloues for theyr slaves. The whiche thyng when it came to the eares of the Portugale that was Captayne of that Ilande, he cast .xiii. of them in prylon: Whereby the resydue that remayned in the shyppe (beyng nowe but .xviii. in number) were put in such feare, that they departed immediately without rescuing theyr felowes, & sailed continually both by day & by night by the coastes of Africke, & came in fine to Spaine y. vi. day of September in the yeere of our lorde .1522. and arryued at the port nere vnto Siuile the .xvi. moneth after they departed from the Ilande of Tidore. Mariners doublelesse more woorthy to be celebrate with eternall memory then they whiche in olde tyme were called *Argonauti*, that sayled with Jason to wyn the golden fleese in the region of *Cholchis* & the ryuer of *Phasis* in the great sea of *Pontus*. And the shyppe it selfe, more woorthy to be placed among the starres, then that olde *Argo*, whiche departyng out of *Grecia*, sayled to the ende of that great sea. For this our marueylous shyppe, takyng her voyage from the straighetes of *Gibelterra*, and saylyng by the great Ocean towarde the South and pole *Antarctike*, and turnyng from thence to the West, folowed that course so farre, that passyng vnder the great circumference of the worlde, she came into the East, and from thence agayne into the West, not by returnyng backward, but still sayling forwarde, so compassing about the ball of the worlde vnder the whole circumference of heauen, vntyll she were myraculously restored to her native region of Spayne, and house of Siuile.

Of

The debate and stryfe betweene the Spanyardes and Portugales, for the Diuision of the Indies, and the trade of Spices, and also for the Ilandes of Molucca, which some call Malucas. VVritten in the Spanishe tongue by Francisco Lopes de Gomara.



He Emperours maiestie was very glad that the *Malucas* and Ilandes of the Spycery were discovered, and that he myght passe vnto them through his owne countreys, without any preiudice or hurt to the Portugales: and because also that *Almanzor*, *Lusfu*, and *Coral*, whiche were the lordes of the Spycerie, shewed them selues to be his freendes, and became tributaries to hym. He also gaue certayne gyftes and rewarde to *John Sebastian* for his great paynes and good seruice; forasmuche as he craued a rewarde for the good newes that the Ilandes of the *Malucas*, and other Ilandes rycher and greater then they, were found to be in his part of those countreys which parteyned vnto hym, accordyng to the Popes Bull. And hereby it came to passe, that there was great contention and stryfe betweene the Spanyardes and the Portugales, about the Spycery, and the diuision of the Indies, by reason of the returne of *John Sebastian*, and the information whiche he gaue thereof: who also affirmed, that the Portugales had neuer any entraunce before that tyme into those Ilandes. Whereupon the counsaile for the Indies aduertised the Emperour to maynteyne his fleete for those partes, and to take the trade of Spices into his owne hande, forasmuche as it was his owne of duetie, aswell for that those Ilandes fell on his part, as also that he had nowe found passage and way through his West Indies into those regions: and finally, to consyder that he shoulde thereby obteyne and geat to hym selfe great reuenues, besyde the taryfing of his subiectes and realmes, and that with small cost and charge.

The Emperour, beyng thus aduertised of the trueth, tooke it for good counsaile, & commaunded all thynges hereto apperteynyng to be furnyshed accordyngly. In this meane tyme, when kyng *John* of Portugale had knowledge what the Emperour determined

John Sebastian

The trade of  
spices partes  
neth to the  
emperour.

John kyng of  
Portugale.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

determined to do, and the speedy haste his counsaile made for the perfourmaunce hereof, and of the commyng home of Iohn Sebastian of Cano, with thinfoimation he made, what of stoutnes of mynde, and what for grieve, was puffed up with anger, as were also the reste of the Portugales, stormyng as though they would haue plucked downe the skye with theyr handes, not a litle fearyng lest they should lose the trade of Spices, yf the Spanyardes should once put in theyr foote. Whereupon the kyng immediately made supplication to the Emperour, not to let forward any shippes, vntill it were determined to whether of them those Ilandes should belong: and that he would not so much endamage hym, as to cause hym to lose the trade of Spices, which was so cominodious and profitable to hym: and finally, to auoide the occasion of murder and bloodshed, whiche were lyke to ensue therof, yf the Spanyardes and Portugales shippes should meete togeather. The Emperour, although he knewe that at this was but to make delayes, and prolongyng of tyme, yet was he glad to haue it tryed by iustice, for the better iustificacion of his cause and ryght. In fine, both parties were agreed to appoynt learned men, Cosmographers and Pilottes, whiche should determine the controuersie betweene them: promisyng on both parties to abyde and stande to the sentence & determination made by those persons, appoynted and sworne to iudge indifferently.

The trade of  
Spices.

The controuersie  
is determined  
by Cosmogra-  
phers and  
Pilots.

## The Repartition and diuision of the Indies and newe world, betweene the Spaniardes and the Portugales.



The arbiters  
on the Emper-  
ours syde.

This matter concernyng the trade of Spices, and the new worlde of the Indies, by reason of the great ryches therof, was of great importaunce, and very difficult to be limited, and drawen forth by lines. By reason wherof, it was necessary and conuenient to seeke wyse and worshipfull men, experthe in Nauigations, in Cosmographie, and the Mathematicall sciences. The Emperour for his syde chose and named, for Judges of the possession, the Licentiate Acuna, one of the kynges counsaile, also the Licentiate Barrientos, of the counsaile of the orders,

the

## for the trade of Spices.

449

The Licentiate Petro Manuel, Auditor of the court of the Chauncerie in Valladolid. For Judges of the propertie, he chose Don Fernando Colono, the sonne of Christopher Colonus: Also Doctor Sancho Salaya, Peter Ruiz of Villegas, Fryer Thomas Duran, Simon of Alcazaua, and Iohn Sebastian of Cano. His advocate and Atturney, he made the licentiate Iohn Rodriguez of Piza: and for his fyscall Doctor Ribera, and his Secretarie, Bartholome Ruiz of Castaneda. He also appoynted that Sebastian Cabote, Steuen Gomes, Nunnio Gracia, Diego Riuro, beyng all experthe Pilottes, and cunnyng in makyng cardes for the sea, should be present, and byng forth theyr Globes and Mappes, with other instrumentes necessarie to declare the situation of the Ilandes of the Malucas, about the which was al the contention & strife. But order was taken, that they should shew theyr myndes on neyther syde, nor enter into the company of the other, but when they were called. All these, and dyuers other, went togeather to a towne called Badaioz: and as many Portugales came to Elbes, or rather more. For they brought with them two Fiscalles and two Advocates. The principall of them, was the licentiate Antonie de Assuedo, Diego Lopes of Sequeyra, the Clarke of the weyghtes and recetytes, who had before been gouernour in India. Also Peralonso of Melo, Clarke, Simon of Taura, with dyuers other, whose names I knowe not. Before they mette togeather, the one parte remaynyng at Badaioz, and the other in Elbes, there was muche adoe among them, before they could agree vppon the place where they should meete, and who should speake fyrst: For the Portugales doe greatly weygh such circumstances. At the laste, they concluded to meete togeather at Caya, a litle ryuer which diuideth Castile from Portugale, standyng in the mydd way betweene Badaioz and Elbes. And when they were assembled togeather one day at Badaioz, and an other day at Elbes, and saluted the one the other, both parties were sworne that they should proceede and speake accordyng to truth, iustice, and equitie. The Portugales refused Simon de Alcazaua, bycause he was a Portugale, and Fryer Thomas Duran, bycause he had sometyme ben Preacher to theyr Kyng: So that Simon was by consent put out of the company, in whose roome was placed maister Antonie of Alcaraz. Yet fell they not

Sebastian  
Cabote.

Instruments  
of Cosmogra-  
phie.  
The Ilandes  
of Maluca.

The Arbiters  
on the Portuga-  
les syde.

The place  
where they  
mette.

The order of  
theyr places.

¶ Ann. 1.

20



The Portugales.

Contention for drawing the lyne of the diuision.

Howe the Portugales were deceyued.

The Spany- ardes allega- tions.

Samatra.  
Malacha.  
China.  
Magallanes.

Buena Vista.

The Ilandes of Cabo Verde.

to reasonyng the matter, buttill the Fryer was put out. They were many dayes in beholdyng Globes, Mappes, and Cardes of the sea, and hearyng what myght be sayde, both sydes allea- gyng for the ryght whiche they pretended. But the Portugales standyng in wayne contention, sayde very angerly, The Ilandes of Maluca, wherebpyon they meetyng and reasonyng was at that present, fell on theyr parte, and was of theyr conquest: and that they both had been there, and had them in theyr possession before John Sebastian had cuer scene them: Lyke wyse that the lyne should be drawen from the Island of Bonauista, or the Islande called de la Sal, whiche are the most Easterly Ilandes from Ca- bouerde, and not from the Islande of Santanton, or saint Antonie, which lyeth toward the Weste, and are lxxx. leagues the one from the other. All this was no more but to contend, and the other of the Malucas, is vntrue: But they that haue a naugh- tie matter, must set it forth with woordes and brabbelyng. Here they founde howe greatly they were deceyued, in that they de- maunded that the lyne should be drawen three hundred threescore and tenne leagues more to the West, from the Ilandes of Ca- bouerde (as appeareth hereafter) and not one hundred, accordyng to the assignement of the Popes Bull. The Spany ardes on the contrary parte affyrmed, and made demonstration, that not only the Ilandes of Lurney, Gilolo, Zubut, and Tidore, with the other Ilandes of the Malucas: but as well Samatra, Malacha, and a great parte of China, should belong to the Castilians, and that those countreys fell on theyr syde, and on the parte of theyr con- quest: Also, that Magallanes and John Sebastian were the first Christian men that founde them, and obteyned them for the Em- perour, as the letters and presentes of Almanzor doe testifie. And although the Portugales had been there fyrst, yet went they thither after the donation of the Pope: neyther got they any ryght or title thereby. For although they shoulde drawe the lyne by Buena Vista, what inconuenience shoulde folow ther- of, such as well by the one way as the other, the Ilandes of the Malucas muste parteyne to the Castilians: yea and moreouer, the Ilandes of Cabouerde shoulde also parteyne to the Casti- lians, forsomuche as drawyng the lyne by Buena Vista, the I- landes of the Malucas doe remaine within the lyne on the Empe-

Emperours syde. They continued in these controuersies for the space of two monethes, without any resolution or end made. For the Portugales prolonged and put off the matter, sleepeing from the sentence with cauillations and colde reasons, to the ende that they myght dissolue that assembly without any conclusion or determination: for so it stode them vpon. The Castilians which were the Iudges of the propertie, drew a lyne in the great globe three hundred and 70. leagues from saint Antones Islande, sy- ting by Weste Cabo Verde, accordyng to the intreatie and deter- mination which was agreed vpon, betweene the Catholyke Emperours and the kynge of Portugale. These Iudges gaue sen- tence vpon this matter, callyng the contrary parte before them vpon the bydge of Caye, in the yeece, 1524. The Portugales could neyther disturbe or deferre the sentence, nor yet would they allowe it to be iust, and accordyng to ryght: Saying that there was not sufficient processe made, that they should passe to the gi- uing of sentence: and so departed, threatenynge to slepe the Ca- stilians, as many as they shoulde fynde in the Ilandes of the Ma- lucas: For they knewe ryght well that theyr countrey men the Portugales, had already taken the shyppe called the Trinitie, and had also taken the Castilians in Tidore. Then also departed our men, takyng theyr tourney to the Courte, gyuyng vp to the Em- perour all their wrytinges and declaration what they had done. And accordyng to this declaration must be signed and marked all Globes and Mappes whiche good Cosinographers & maisters doe make. The line also of the repartition and last diuision of the newe world of the Indies, ought to passe (little more or lesse) by the poyntes of Humos and Buen Abrigo, as I haue sayde in an o- ther place. And thus shall it appeare euidently, that the Ilandes of spices, and also the great Islande of Samotra, doe parteyne to Castile. But the lande of Brasile parteyneth to the kynge of Portu- gale, where the Cape of saint Augustine is, being viii. degrees beneath the Equinoctiall. This lande reacheth from the poynte of Humos to the poynte of Buen Abrigo, and is in length North and South, viii. hundred leagues: being also some way two hun- dred leagues East and West.

And heere after these serious matters, wee will rehearse A mery tale, one mery thyng, whiche was this. It so chaunced that as

Pyrrm.ii.

Frances

The Portugales cauil- lations.

The lyne of diuision.

The sentence.

The Portugales threaten death to the Castilians.

The line of the last diuision.

The great Is- lande of Sa- motra. The lande of Brasile, partey- neth to the Portugales.

*Erances de Melo, Diego Lopes of Sequeyra, and other of those Portugales of this assembly, walked by the ryuers syde of Guadiana, a litle bove, who stood keepyng his mothers clothes which hee had washed, demaunded of them whether they were those men that parted the worlde with the Emperour. And as they answered, yea: he tooke by his sherte and shewed them his bare arse, saying, Come and drawe your lyne heere through the myddest. Which saying was after ward in euery mans mouth, and laughed at in the towne of Badajos: yea euen among the Commissioners them selues, of whom some were angry, and some marueyled at the saying of the chyld.*

The cause and authoritie whereby they diuided the Indies.



*The Castilians and Portugales had long debated and reasoned about the golde myne of Guinea, which was found in the yeere of our Lorde. 1471. in the tyme of the raigne of Don Alonso kyng of Portugale, y<sup>e</sup> fyrst of that name. This was a matter of great importance: For the Negros or blacke Moores, for thinges of no value, gaue golde by whole handfulls, whiche was at that tyme when the sayde kyng of Portugale pretended title and clayme to the kingdome of Castile, in the ryght of his wife Queene Ioane (called the excellent) agaynst the Catholyke Princes Isabel, and Don Fernando, whose it was in dede. But that stryfe was ended as soone as Don Fernando had vanquished Don Alonso, at a place called Temulos, not farre from Toro, whiche place Don Fernando chose rather to make warre agaynst the Moores of Granada, then to buye and sell with the blacke Moores of Guinea. And thus the Portugales remayned with the conqueste of Affryke, from the streights forwarde: whiche beganne where the infante of Portugale Don Henrique (sonne to Kyng Iohn the bastarde, and maister of Auis) dyd begyn to enlarge it. When Pope Alexander the vi. (beyng a Valentinian bozne) had knowledge hereof, hee mynded to gyue the Indies to the kynges of Castile, without any preiudice to the Portugales, who had conquered the sea coastes of Affryke.*

These

*These Indies, the Pope gaue of his owne mynde without the motion of any other, with this burden & charge, that they should conuerthe the Idolatours to the fayth of Christ: and commaunded a lyne or meridian to bee drawen North and South, from one hundred leagues Westward, beyonde one of the Ilandes of Capo Verde towarde the Weste, bycause the Spanyarden should not meddle in Affrike, parteynyng to the conquest of the Portugales, to the auoydyng of all stryfe betweene them. Kyng Iohn of Portugale, the seconde of that name, was greatly offended when he red the Bull and donation of the pope, although his owne Ambassadors had made the selfe same request vnto his holinesse: He also founde him selfe agreed with the Catholyke princes Isabel and Fernando, that they had hoptened the course of the landes he had discouered, deptynyng him of the rycheffe which belonged to him, and therefore refused to stande to the Popes Bull in this case: desirynge the Catholyke princes Isabel and Fernando, to graunt him thre hundred leagues more to the West, belyde the one hundred which they had graunted before: and therewith sent his shippes to keepe the coastes of Affryke. The princes Catholyke were content to satisfie his mynd, and to lease him accordyng to theyr gentle nature, and for the aliance that was betweene them: And in fine, with the consent & agreement of the Pope, graunted two hundred & sixtie leagues more then the Bull made mention of, at Tordeyllas the seuenth day of June, in the yeere of our Lorde. 1494. And whereas our kynges thought that they should haue losse grounde in graunting so many leagues that way, they woun by that meanes the Ilandes of the Malucas, with many other ryche Ilandes. The kyng of Portugale also herein deceyued him selfe, or was deceyued of his, whom he put in trust, hauyng no certayne knowledge of the situation of the Ilandes of the ryche Spicery, in demaundyng that which the kyng dyd demaunde: For it had ben better for him to haue requested the thre hundred and sixtie leagues, rather Eastwarde from the Ilandes of Capo Verde, then towarde the Weste. And yet for all that, I doubt whether the Malucas shoud haue fallen within his conquest, accordyng to the ordinarie accounte and dimension which the Py-lottes and Cosmographers doe make. And after this maner they*

Diuided

The Pope maketh the diuision.

The kyng of Portugale refuseth to stande to the Popes Bull.

The agreement of the last diuision.

Wherein the Portugales were deceyued.

The gold mine of Guinea.

Alonso kyng of Portugale. Golde for thinges of small value.

Contention for the kingdome of Castile.

Warre agaynst the Moores of Granada. The conquests of the Portugales in Affrike

Pope Alexander.

## Contention for

divided the Indies betweene them by auctoritie of the Pope,  
for the auoyding of further stryfe and contention.

Howe and by what occasion the Emperour layde  
the Ilandes of Maluccas to pledge to the  
kyng of Portugale.



When the Kyng of Portugale Don Iuan the  
thyrd of that name, had knowledge that the  
Cosinographers and pylottes of Castile had  
drawen the lyne from the place before nam-  
med, and that he could not deny the trueth,  
fearyng also thereby to lose the trade of spi-  
ces, made suite & request to the Emperour,  
that he should not sende forth Louisa, nor Sebastian Cabote to the  
Malucas, and that the Castilians should not attempte the trade of  
spices, nor seeke suche cuytles and miseries as his Captaynes had  
shewed in those Ilandes to them that aduencured that viage with  
Magallanes: which thynge he greatly couered, although he payde  
all the charges of those two flectes, and made other great bar-  
gaynes. In the meane tyme, the Emperour maryed the Lady  
Isabel, sister to kyng John, and kyng John maryed the Lady  
Catharine, sister to the Emperour: whereby this matter waxed  
colde, although the kyng ceased not to speake hereof, euer mo-  
uyng the partition. The Emperour by the meanes of a certaine  
Biscaine that was with Magallanes in the gouernours shipp, had  
knowledge what the Portugales had done to the Castilians in the  
Ilande of Tidore, whereof he tooke great displeasure, & brought  
the sayde maryner face to face before the Ambassadors of Por-  
tugale, who denyed all that he sayd, one of them beyng the chiefe  
Captayne and gouernour of India, when the Portugales tooke  
the Castilians in Tidore, and robbed them of theyr Cloues & Ci-  
namome, and suche other thinges as they had in the shipp named  
the Trinitie. But as the kyng of Portugales trade was great,  
and our necessitie greater, in the meane tyme the Emperour (who  
was now goyng into Italie to be crowned in the yeere. 1529.)  
gaged the Malucas and the spicerie to the kyng of Portugale, for  
three hundred and fytie thousande Ducates, without any tyme  
determined,

Sebastian  
Cabote.

The Emper-  
our and the  
kyng of Portu-  
gale ioynd in  
alliance by mar-  
riage.

The Portu-  
gales robbe  
the Castilians.

The coronatis-  
on of the Em-  
perour.

The gaging of  
the Ilandes of  
Malucas.

## the trade of Spices.

452

Zamatra and  
Malaca.

determined, otherwise then the controuersie defined bypon the  
bydge of the ruuer of Caya: for the which thynge, kyng John pu-  
nyshed the licentiate Azuedo, because he payde the money with-  
out declaration of the tyme. The couenaunt of the pledge was  
blyndly made, and greatly agaynst the myndes of the Castilians,  
as men that well understoode the profite, commoditie, and ry-  
ches of that trade: Affyrmyng that the trade of spices myght  
haue been rented, for one yeere or for two, for five tymes as much  
as the kyng gaue for it. Peter Ruiz of Villegas, who was twice  
called to the bargayne, as once at Granada, and an other tyme  
at Madrid, sayde that it had ben muche better to haue pledged  
Estremadura or Serena, or other great landes and cities, rather  
then the Malucas, Zamatra, or Malaca, or other ryche landes and  
ruuers in the East, not yet well knowen: forasmuch as it may so  
chance, that either by continuance of tyme, or alliance, the pledge  
myght be forgotten, as though it perteyned to the ryght of Por-  
tugale. In fine, the Emperour considered not the Jewell that  
he pledged, nor the kyng what he receyued. The Emperour  
was oftentimes counsayled to release the pledge of those Ilandes,  
in consideration of all the aduantage he myght haue thereby in  
fewe yeeres. Furthermore, in the yeere. 1548. the procuratours  
of Cortes beyng in Valladolid, made petition to the Emperour,  
to surrender the spicerie to the kynedome of Castile for vi. yeeres,  
and that they woulde repaye to the kyng of Portugale his. 350.  
thousande crownes, and after those yeeres, restore the trade to the  
croune, that his maiestie myght inioye the same, as was agreed  
at the beginning. But the Emperour, being then in Flaunders,  
sent word to the counsaile, that they should not assent to Cortes  
his request, nor speake any more hereof. Whereat, some maruey-  
led, other were sorry, and all helde theyr peace.

Item. iiii.

Of

Exemplar Bullæ Seu Donationis, Autoritate cuius, Episcopus Romanus Alexander eius nominis sextus, concessit et donauit Castellæ regibus & suis succelloribus, regiones & Insulas noui orbis in Oceano occidentali Hispanorum navigationibus repertas.



Alexander Episcopus, seruus seruorū Dei, Charissimo in Christo filio Ferdinando Regi, et Charissima in Christo filia Elizabeth Regina Castellæ, Legionis, Aragonum, Siciliae, et Grana-  
tæ, illustribus, salutem et Apostolicam benedictionem.

Inter cætera Diuinæ maiestati beneplacita opera et cordis nostri desiderabilia, illud profecto potissimum existit ut fides catholica & Christiana religio nostris præsertim temporibus exaltetur ac ubilibet ampliatur ac dilatetur, animarumque salus procuretur, ac barbaræ nationes deprimantur et ad fidem ipsam reducantur. Vnde cum ad hanc sacram Petri sedem Diuina fauente clementia (meritis licet imparibus) euocati fueremus, cognoscentes vos tanquam veros catholicos reges et principes: quales semper fuisse nouimus, & a vobis præclare gesta, toti pens orbi notissima demonstrant, nedum id exoptare, sed omni conatu, studio, et diligentia, nullis laboribus, nullis impensis, nullisque parcendo periculis, etiam proprium sanguinem effundendo efficere, ac omnem animum vestrum, omnesque conatus ad hoc iam dudum dedicasse, quemadmodum recuperato regni Granatæ a tyrannis de Sarracenorum hodiernis temporibus per vos, cum tanta Diuini nominis gloria facta, testatur. Digne ducimur non immerito, et debemus illa vobis etiam sponte, ac fauorabiliter concedere per quæ huiusmodi sanctum ac laudabile ab immortalis deo acceptum propositum, indies feruentiori animo ad ipsius dei honorem et Imperij Christiani propagationem, prosequi valeatis. Sane accepimus quæ vos qui dudum animum proposueratis aliquas insulas et terras firmas remotas et incognitas, ac per alios hactenus non repertas, quærere et inuenire, ut illarum incolas et habitatores ad colendum redemptorem nostrum et fidem catholicam profitendum reduceretis, hactenus in expugnatione et recuperatione ipsius regni Granatæ plurimum occupati, huiusmodi sanctum et laudabile propositum vestrum ad optatum finem perducere

perducere nequiuistis: Sed tamen sicut Domino placuit, regno 453 predicto recuperato, volentes desiderium vestrum adimplere, dilectum filium Christophorum Cololum, virum utique dignum, et plurimum commendatum, ac tanto negotio aptum, cum nauigijs et hominibus ad similia instructis, non sine maximis laboribus, ac periculis, et expensis destinaistis ut terras firmas et insulas remotas et incognitas, huiusmodi per mare ubi hactenus nauigatum non fuerat, diligenter inquireret. Qui tandem (Diuino auxilio facta extrema diligentia in mari Oceano nauigantes) certas insulas remotissimas, et etiam terras firmas, quæ per alios hactenus reperte non fuerant, inuenerunt. In quibus plurimæ gentes pacifice viuentes, et (ut affirmitur) nudi incedentes, nec carnibus vescentes, inhabitant: Et ut præfati nuncij vestri possunt opinari, gentes ipsæ in Insulis, et terris prædictis habitantes, credunt vnum deum creatorem in Cælis esse, ac ad fidem catholicam amplexandum et bonis moribus imbuedum, satis apti videntur: Spesque habetur, quod si erudiretur, nomen saluatoris Domini nostri Iesu Christi in terris et insulis prædictis facile induceretur. Ac præfatus Christophorus in vna ex principalibus Insulis prædictis, iam vnam turrim satis munitam, in qua certos Christianos qui secum inerant in custodiam, et ut alias insulas ac terras firmas remotas et incognitas inquirerent posuit, construi et ædificari fecit. In quibus quidem Insulis et terris iam repertis, aurum, aromata, et aliæ quam plurimæ res præciosæ diuersi generis et diuersæ qualitatis reperiuntur. Vnde omnibus diligenter, et præsertim fidei catholice exaltatione et dilatione (prout decet Catholicos Reges et Principes) consideratis, more progenitorum vestrorum claræ memoriæ Regum, terras firmas et insulas prædictas, illarumque incolas et habitatores, vobis diuina fauente clementia subicere, et ad fidem Catholicam reducere proposuistis. Nos itaque huiusmodi vestrum sanctum et laudabile propositum plurimum in domino commendantes, ac cupientes ut illud ad debitum finem perducatur, et ipsum nomen saluatoris nostri in partibus illis inducatur, hortamur vos quamplurimum in domino, et per sacri lauacri susceptionem, qua mandatis Apostolicis obligati estis, et per viscera misericordie Domini nostri Iesu Christi attente requiribus, ut cum expeditionem huiusmodi omnino prosequi et assumere prona mente orthodoxæ fidei zelo intendatis, populos in huiusmodi Insulis et terris degentes, ad Christianam religionem suscipiendum inducere velitis.

velitis et debeatis, nec pericula nec labores vlllo vnquam tempore vos deterreant, firma spe fiduciaque conceptis, quod Deus omnipotens conatus vestros feliciter prosequetur. Et vt tanti negotij prouentiam Apostolicæ gratiæ largitate donati, liberius et audacius assumatis, motu proprio non ad vestram vel alterius, pro vobis super hoc nobis oblata petitionis instantiam, sed de nostra mera liberalitate, et ex certa scientia, ac de Apostolicæ potestatis plenitudine, omnes Insulas et terras firmas inuentas et inueniendas, detectas et detegendas versus Occidentem et Meridiem, fabricando et construendo vnā lineam a polo Arctico, scilicet Septentrione, ad polum Antarcticum, scilicet Meridiem, siue terræ firmæ et insulæ inuentæ, et inueniendæ sint, versus Indiā, aut versus aliam quamcumque partem, quæ linea distet a qualibet insularum, quæ vulgariter nuncupantur de los Azores, et Cabo verde centum leucis, versus Occidentem et Meridiem. Itaque omnes insulæ et terræ firmæ repertæ et reperiendæ, detectæ et detegendæ a præfata linea versus Occidentem et Meridiem, quæ per alium Regem aut Principem Christianum non fuerint actualiter possesse vsque ad diem natiuitatis Domini Nostri Iesu Christi proxime præteritum, a quo incipit annus præsens Millesimus Quadringentesimus Nonagesimus tertius, quando fuerunt per nuncios et capitaneos vestros inuentæ aliquæ prædictarum insularum, Autoritate omnipotentis Dei nobis in beato Petro concessa, ac vicariatus Iesu Christi, qua fungimur in terris, cum omnibus illarum dominijs, ciuitatibus, castris, locis, et villis, iuribusque et iurisdictionibus ac pertinentijs vniuersis vobis, heredibusque, et successoribus vestris (Castellæ et Legionis regibus) in perpetuum tenore præsentium donamus, concedimus, et assignamus: Vosque, et hæredes, ac successores prefatos illarum Dominos, cum plena, libera, et omnimoda potestate, autoritate, et iurisdictione, facimus, constituimus, et deputamus. Decernentes nibilo minus, per huiusmodi donationē, concessionē et assignationē nostrā, nullo Christiano Principi, qui actualiter prefatas insulas et terras firmas possederit vsque ad prædictum diem natiuitatis Domini nostri Iesu Christi inquisitum, sublatum intelligi posse, aut auferri debere.

Et insuper mandamus vobis in vertute sanctæ obedientiæ (vt sicut pollicemini et non dubitamus pro vestra maxima deuotione et regia magnanimitate vos esse facturos) ad terras firmas et insulas prædictas, viros probos et Deum timentes, doctos, peritos, et expertos ad instruendū incolas et habitatores prefatos in fide catholica, et bonis moribus

moribus inbuendum, destinare debeatis, omnē debitam diligentiam in præmissis adhibentes. A quibuscumque personis, cuiuscumque dignitatis, etiā imperialis et regalis status, gradus, ordinis vel conditionis, sub excommunicationis latæ sententiæ pœna quā eo ipso, si contra fecerint incurrant, districtius inhibemus ne ad insulas et terras firmas inuentas et inueniendas, detectas et detegendas versus Occidentem et Meridiem, fabricando et construendo lineam a polo Arctico ad polum Antarcticum, siue terræ firmæ et Insulæ inuentæ et inueniendæ sint versus Indiā aut versus aliam quamcumque partem, quæ linea distet a qualibet insularum, quæ vulgariter nuncupantur de los Azores, et Cabo verde centum leucis versus Occidentem et Meridiem vt præfertur, pro mercibus habendis, vell quavis alia causa accedere præsumat, absque vestra ac hæredum et successorum vestrorum prædictorum licentia speciali: Non obstantibus constitutionibus et ordinationibus Apostolicis, cæterisque quibuscumque, in illo in quo imperia et dominationes et bona cuncta procedunt: Confidentes quod dirigente Domino actus vestros, si huiusmodi sanctum ac laudabile propositum prosequamini, breui tempore cum felicitate et gloria totius populi Christiani, vestri labores et conatus exitum felicissimum consequentur. Verum quia difficile foret præfatas literas ad singula quæque loca in quibus expediens fuerit deferri, volumus ac motu et scientia similibus decernimus, quod illarum transsumptis manu publici notarij interrogati subscriptis, et sigillo alicuius personæ in ecclesiastica dignitate constitutæ, seu curiæ ecclesiastice munitis, ea prorsus fides in iudicio et extra ac alias vbilibet adhibeatur, quæ præsentibus adhiberetur si essent adhibita vel ostensa.

Nulli ergo omnino hominum liceat banc paginam nostræ commendationis, hortationis, requisitionis, donationis, concessionis, assignationis, constitutionis, deputationis, decreti, mandati, inhibitionis, et voluntatis, infringere, vel ei ausu temerario contraire. Si quis autem hoc attentare præsumperit, indignationem omnipotentis Dei, ac beatorum Petri et Pauli Apostolorum eius, se noverit incursum.

Datum Romæ apud sanctum Petrum, Anno incarnationis Dominicæ 1593 quarto nonas May, Pontificatus nostri, anno primo.



The copie of the Bull or donation, by thauthoritie wherof, Pope Alexander the syxt of that name, gaue and graunted to the kinges of Castyle & their successors, the Regions and Ilandes founde in the west Ocean sea, by the nauigations of the Spanyardes,



Alexander Bpshop, the seruauant of the seruantes of God, to our most deare beloued sonne in Christ kyng *Ferdinando*, and to our deare beloued daughter in Christ *Elizabeth* Queene of Castyle, *Legion*, *Aragon*, *Sicilie*, and *Granata*, most noble princes, gretynge, and Apostolical benediction. Among other woorkes acceptable to the diuine maiestie, and accordyng to our hartes desyre, this certaynely is the chiefe, that the Catholyke fayth and Christian religion, specially in this our tyme, may in all places be exalted, amplified, and enlarged, whereby the health of soules may be procured, and the Barbarous nations subdued and brought to the fayth. And therefore whereas by the fauour of Gods clemencie (although not without equall desertes) we are called to this holy seate of *Peter*, and understanding you to be true Catholyke princes, as we haue euer knowen you, and as your noble and woorthy factes haue declared in maner to the whole world, in that with all your studie, diligence, and industry, you haue spared no traуayles, charges, or perils, aduenturyng euen the shedyng of your owne blood, with applying your whole myndes and endeuours hereto, as your noble expeditions achyued in recouering the kyngdom of *Granata* from the tyrany of the *Sarracens* in these our dayes, do plainly declare your factes, with so great gloz of the diuine name. For the whiche, as we thynk you woorthy, so ought we of our owne free wyl fauorably to graunt you al thynges, whereby you may dayly with more feruent myndes, to the honour of God, and enlargyng the Christian Empire, prosecute your deuout and laudable purpose, most acceptable to the immortall God. We are credibly informed, that whereas of late you were determyned to seeke and fynde certayne Ilandes and fyrme landes, farre remote and vnknownen

(and not heretofore founde by any other) to the intent to bypnyng the inhabitantes of the same to honoꝝ our redeemer, & to profess the catholyke fayth, you haue hitherto been much occupied in the expugnation and recouerie of the kyngdome of *Granata*, by reason wherof you coulde not bypnyng your sayde laudable purpose to the ende despyed. Neuerthelesse, as it hath pleased almyghtie God, the foresayde kyngdome beyng recouered, wyllyng to accomplishe your sayde desyre, you haue, not without great labour, perils, & charges, appoynted our welbeloued sonne *Christopher Columbus* (a man certesse wel commended, as most woorthy and apt for so great a matter) well furnyshe with men and shippes, and other necessaries, to seeke (by the sea, where hitherto no man hath sayled) suche firme landes and Ilandes farre remote, and hitherto vnknownen, who (by Gods helpe) makynge diligenc searche in the Ocean sea, haue founde certayne remote Ilandes & firme landes, whiche were not heretofore found by any other: in the whiche (as is sayde) many nations inhabite, luyng peaceably, and goyng naked, not accustomed to eate fleshe: and as farre as your messengers can coniecture, the nations inhabytyng the foresayd landes and Ilandes, beleue that there is one God, creator in heauen, and secme apt to be brought to the imbrasyng of the catholyke fayth, and to be imbued with good maners: by reason wherof, we may hope that yf they be well instructed, they may easly be induced to receyue the name of our sauour *Iesus Christe*. We are further aduertised, that the forenamed *Christopher* hath now buylded and erected a fortresse, with good munition, in one of the foresayde principall Ilandes, in the whiche he hath placed a garryson of certayne of the Christian men that went wyth him, aswell to thintent to defende the same, as also to searche other Ilandes and firme landes farre remote, and yet vnknownen. We also vnderstande, that in these landes and Ilandes lately founde, is great plentie of Golde and Spices, with diuers and manye other precious thynges, of sundry kyndes and qualities. Therefore all thynges diligently consydered (especially the amplyfying and enlargyng of the catholyke fayth, as it behoueth catholyke princes, folowynge the examples of your noble progenitours of famous memorie) whereas you are determyned, by the fauour of almyghtie God, to subdue and bypnyng

byng to the catholyke fayth thynhabitanes of the aforesayde landes and Ilandes.

We greatly commendynge this your godly and laudable purpose in our Lorde, and desyrous to haue the same brought to a due ende, and the name of our saviour to be known in those partes, do exhort you in our Lorde, and by the receyving of your holy baptyse, wherby you are bound to Apostolical obedience, & earnestly require you by the bowels of mercie of our Lord Iesu Christ, that when you intende for the zeale of the Catholyke fayth to prosecute the sayde expedition, to reduce the people of the fozsayde landes and Ilandes to the Christian religion, you shall spare no labours at any tyme, or be deterred with any perils, conceyving fyrme hope and confidence, that the omnipotent God wyll geue good successe to your godly attemptes. And that beyng auctorysed by the privilege of the Apostolycall grace, you may the more freely and boldly take vppon you the enterpryse of so great a matter, we of our owne motion, and not eyther at your request, or at the instant petition of any other person, but of our owne mere liberalitie and certayne science, and by the fullnesse of Apostolycall power, do geue, graunt, and assigne to you, your heyyes and successours, all the fyrme landes and Ilandes found, or to be found, discovered, or to be discovered, toward y<sup>e</sup> west & south, drawing a lyne from the pole Arctik to y<sup>e</sup> pole Antartike (that is) from the North to the South: Contaynyng in this donacion, whatsoeuer fyrme landes or Ilandes are founde, or to be founde towarde India, or towarde any other part what so ever it be, beyng distant from, or without the fozsayde line, drawen a hundred leagues towarde the West and South from any of the Ilandes whiche are commonly called *De los Azores* and *Capo verde*. All the Ilandes therefore, and fyrme landes, founde and to be founde, discovered and to be discovered, from the sayde line towarde the West and South, such as haue not actually ben heretofore possessed by any other Christian kyng or pryncce, butyll the daye of the natiuite of our Lorde Iesu Christ laste passe, from the whiche begynneth this present yeere beyng the yeere of our Lorde .M. CCCC. lxxxiii. when so ever any such shalbe founde by your messengers and captaynes, we by the aucthoritie of almyghthy G D D, graunted vnto vs  
in

in saint Peter, and by the office whiche we beare on the earth in the steede of Iesu Christ, do for ever, by the tenor of these presentes, geue, graunt, assigne, vnto you, your heyyes, and successours (the kynges of Castyle and Legion) all those landes and Ilandes, with theyr dominions, Territories, cities, castels, towres, places, and villages, with all the ryght, and iurisdiction thereunto parteynyng: constitutyng, assignyng, and deputyng, you, your heyyes, and successours, the lordes thereof, with full and free power, aucthoritie, and iurisdiction: Decreeyng neuertheless by this our donacion, graunt, and assignation, that from no Christian Prince, which actually hath possessed the fozsayde Ilandes and fyrme landes, vnto the daye of the natiuite of our Lord before sayd, theyr ryght obteyned, to be understoode hereby to be taken away, or that it ought to be taken away. Furthermoze we commaunde you in the vertue of holy obedience (as you haue promysed, and as we doubt not you wyll do vppon mere deuotion and princely magnanimitie) to sende to the sayde fyrme landes and Ilandes, honest, vertuous, and learned men, suche as feare G D D, and are able to instruct thynhabitanes in the Catholyke fayth and good maners, applying all theyr possible diligence in the premysse. We furthermoze strenghtly inhibite all maner of persons, of what state, degree, order, or condition soeuer they be, although of Imperiall and regall dignitie, vnder the payne of the sentence of excommunicatiō, which they shal incurre if they do to the contrary, that they in no case presume, without speciall lycence of you, your heyyes, and successours, to trauaile for merchaundies, or for any other cause, to the sayde landes or Ilandes, founde, or to be founde, discovered, or to be discovered, towarde the West and South, drawing a lyne from the pole Arctike to the pole Antartike, whether the firme landes and Ilandes, founde and to be founde, be situate toward India, or toward any other part, beyng distant from the line drawen a hundred leagues toward the west, from any of the Ilands commonly called *De los Azores* and *Capo Verde*: Notwithstandyng constitutions, decrees, and Apostolycall ordinaunces whatsoeuer they are to the contrary. In hynt from whom Empryes, dominions, and all good thynges do proceede: Trustyng that almyghthy G D D, directyng your enterpryses

prices, if you folowe your Godly and laudable attemptes, your labours and trauayles herein, shall in shorthe tyme obtrayne a happy ende, with felicitie and glory of all Christian people. But forasmuche as it shoulde be a thyng of great difficultie these letters to be carped to all suche places as shoulde be expedient, we wyll, and of lyke motion and knowledge do decree, that whither so euer the same shal be sent, or wheresoeuer they shalbe receiued, with the subscription of a common notarie thereunto requyred, with the seale of any person constitute in ecclesiasticall dignitie, or suche as are authorysed by the Ecclesiasticall court, the same sayth and credite to be geuen thereunto in iudgement, or els where, as shoulde be exhibyted to these presentes.

It shal therefore be lawefull for no man to infrynge or rashly to contrary this letter of our commendation, exhortation, request, donation, graunt, assignation, constitution, deputacion, decree, commatundement, inhibition, and determination. And if any shall presume to attempte the same, he ought to know that he shal therby incurre the indignation of almyghy God, and his holy Apostles Peter and Paule.

Geuen at Rome at saint Peters: In the  
yeere of thincarnation of our lord  
M. CCCC. lxxxiii. The  
fourth day of the nones of  
Maye, the fyrst yeere  
of our seate.

(.)

(.)

An Abridgement of P. Martyr his 5. 6. 7. and 8. Decades,  
and particulerly of Ferd. Cortelius conquest  
of Mexico, by R. VV.



The fyrst foure Decades of P. Martyr, you haue already seene done into Englyshe by R. Eden, as also certayne parcelles of the foure last. P. Martyr made eight decades of the west Indish newes: in lesse labour these may be run ouer, speciall regarde being had vnto that Decade wherein the moze principall matter is exprest: I meane the fyrst, and that chiefly for the famous conquest of the citie Themistitan, in Mexico prouince, yea of all that great region we doe nowe vsually call newe Spaine. As for the sixte Decade, it conteyneth very little matter woorth the rehearsal, except it be certeine reportes of the Spaniards, how they found, where they traueyled in the West Indies, plough stiffe of gold: that the prince of Nicoragua with his family became christian: that certaine bearded Indians greatly feare suche men as haue bearded: that they vse to sacrifice lyue men vnto their Idolles, eyther taken in the warres, or fatted by at home bountefully for that purpose: that Nicoragua Here, for the greatnesse and vnknown length thereof, for the ebbes and fluddes and many Ilandes therin, myght woorthely be called a freshe water sea. This freshet hath ben thought to run into the Northwesterne streight, rather of ignorance (the course therof being not througely knowen) than that it so falleth out in deede, as P. Martyr wytteth. Finally in the 9. & 10. bookes of the sixt Decade, newes is sent to Rome of the controuersie betwixt the Spaniards & Portugales, concernyng the Moluccaes, handled moze effectually & in moze ample maner, by R. Eden. Fol. 448. than P. Martyr in this place penned it. Wherefore it were a needlesse woork and *actum agere* in deede to trouble the reader therewith any further, especially whereas in this volume, mention hath ben made therof, euen by P. Martyr him selfe, as you haue already seene.

The lyke opinion am I also of, touching the vii. & viii. decades, some parcels wherof the Authour doth repeate out of his former  
Ann. i. wye.

writings as Dec. 7. c. 2. the ruine of the *Mlandes Lucaies*, out of his fourth Dec. c. 3. Item out of the second Decade. c. 10. the nature of that spring in the *Mlande Boiuca*, otherwysse called *Agna-neo*, the water whereof who so drinketh, by reporte, of an old man becommeth young agayne, is in many woordes repeated by *P. Martyr*, Dec. 7. c. 7. the whole summe of whose seconde discourse thereof is expessed in the former place, by *R. Edens* addition of this clause (Whereappes with some dict) the which woordes are not in *P. Martyr* his text: to be shorthe, the two kindes of breade the Indians doe make of the rootes *Lucca*, and a kynd of graine called *Maiz*, sufficiently declared. Dec. 1. lib. 1. & Dec. 3. lib. 5. lib. 9. Dec. 3. be repeated againe, Dec. 8. c. 3. Other parcellles of these aforesayd Decades, wherein the subtilties of theyr *Magicians* and *Coniurers* *Peaces* or *Pages* are discribed, their *Tigres* crueltie, their sundry kindes of wylde beastes, foule, & *Serpents*, their diuers sortes of trees and fruites, partly may you reade of in the breuiarie of *Gonzal. Ferd. Oniedus* historic: as of the fountayne of pyrch, the stone pellets naturally made for Gunnes. Fol. 224. out of the 7. Decade. c. 7. and the *Glowoormes* out of the same c. 9. partly in *R. Eden* his notes of newe *Spayne*, *Peru*, *Rio de la Plata*, *Baccalos*, and *Florida*, set downe in this volume. Fol. 225. as particularly of the *Mutshelles* used in steede of money, taken out of *P. Mart*, Dec. 8. c. 4. Partly in *Thevetus* woorkes of the newe founde worlde, Englished long since, and finally in those bookes which sundry learned *Simplicistes* haue lately written principally to ayde the *Physicians* of our tyme.

Some other curiosities there be conteyned in *P. Martyr* his two last Decades, namely the *Lucaien* women, to be so sayre, that for theyr loue other countrey *Barbares* seeke to inhabtte those *Islandes*. Dec. 7. c. 1. The *Spanyarden* well vsed of the *Lucaiens*, contrary to all curtesie, to haue carried away many of those *Mlanders* into slavery and misery: Agayne certayne traueplers to haue ben seene there that had taples lyke fyre. Dec. 7. c. 2. Fonde fantasies of mens soules departed, Dec. 7. c. 3. wandring first North and than South about the worlde, afterwarde to growe young agayne in iolitie: Agayne, other to imagine that the departed soules rest in *Caues*, and to be that reflexion of the ayre the which we doe call *Echo*. Dec. 8. c. 9. The contention betwixte *Garains* and

and *Cortesijs*, for ambition, Dec. 7. c. 5. & Dec. 8. cap. 1. & 2. The great *Coymozantes* that deuoure fishe of fyue pounce weight at one morsel. Dec. 7. c. 9. The shamelesse daunces of naked women at theyr funeralles and obsequies. Dec. 7. c. 10. Theyr woorthyping of the crosse in *Saltier*. x. Or made thus, *x* vppon the newe boine babes to dyue away deuylls, as also in the nyght tyme if they feare any thynge, imagining with that signe the place to be purified. Dec. 8. c. 9. The *Chiribikes* follies in dauncing whole weekes togeather, theyr language full of difficulties for leauyng out some sillables in speech, theyr maner of marriage by chyping the bydes heare, Dec. 8. c. 8. The dead bodyes of gentlemen to be rosted, & so hanged vp to roose for buttry goddes, the bones of other that laye buried a whole yere to be taken vp againe at the .xii. monethes ende, and solempnely buried. Decade 8. c. 9. To conclude, How Captayne *Olitus*, whom *Cortesijs* feared not a litle, & therefore sent vnder the pretexte of honour as it were to discouer other landes, tooke head him selfe agaynst *Cortesijs*, and miserably was murdered in the end. Dec. 8. c. 6. & 10. These with some other the lyke thinges, may the curious reader finde in many woordes, set downe in the aforesayd. 7. and 8. Decades, spoken of all for the most parte before in *P. Martyr* his other doinges, or mentioned in *Oniedus* Summary, or by *R. Eden* briefly noted, or not greatly needfull to be set forth at large in English, except they were matters of greater weight. One speciall thing I obserued amongst other in reading ouer these 6. 7. and 8. Decades, to wyt, the *West Indians* not onely to be conquered by the *Spaniarden*, but also to be theyr slaues and bondmen: the cause why after the conquest made of them, the *Spanyarden* doe in continuall bondage and slavery keepe them vnder, is expressely brought forth by *Pe. Martyr*. Dec. 7. c. 4. in the *Spanyshe* counge, as it was read at the *Indische* counsaile boorde in *Spayne*, and may thus be Englished.

These be the Indians qualities, in respecte whereof they deserue no libertie.

**I**n the continent of fyne lande they eate mans fleshe: they be moze gyuen to *Sodomie* than any other nation of the worlde: there is no order of iustice among them, they goe naked, they haue neyther loue nor honestie, they bee fooles and furious, Am. ii. there

there is no truth in them, except it be for theyr owne profit: inconstant, without all discretion, very unkynde, & louers of nouelties: they delpyght to make them selues dronke with wynges made of diuers hearbes, frutes, and graine, as ale and liden, & to ouercome their braynes, as wel ocherwise with hearbs, as in making drinke thereof, or eating them. They are very brutish, and doe make it a prayse to wallowe in vyces. No obedience, no reuerence at all sheweth the young man to the olde, the childe to his father. Neither teaching nor chastning amendeth them: they be traitors, cruel, so full of reuenge that they neuer forgieue any offence, great enemyes vnto our religion. They be slothfull, cheeues, of iudgement very grosse and base, without all honestie and good order. Neither doe the men behaue them selues loyally with theyr wyues, nor the wyues with their hus bandes: they be superstitiously giuen to soothsaying, as fearful as Hares, filthes, eating lyse, spiders, & woozmes, whersoever they finde them: they haue no arte, nor good condition of men. Hauing learned any pointes of Christian religion, they are woont to say that to be good in Spayne, but in India nothing woorth, for that they desire not to alter their manners. They haue no beardes, for they peeke and plucke by the heare as faste as it groweth. They take no pietie on sicke folke, suche as bee very sicke, they gyue ouer to some one kynsman or neighbour of theyrs, or els carry them to the mountaynes to dye there, leauing with them some small portion of bread and water, and so goe theyr way. The elder they ware, the woozse they bee: vntill they be .xi. or .xii. peeres olde, some hope there is that they would prooue ciuil and vertuous, when they grow elder, they become brut beasts. In conclusion, I say that god neuer created so corrupte a people for vice and beastlinesse, without any mixture of goodnesse and ciuilitie: they are as blockish as Asses, making no account at all to kyll them selues.

In the fyft Decade is written by P. Martyr, or gathered rather by him out of Ferd. Cortesius relations, the conquest of that portion of the West Indische continent, that lyeth in the hot zone, neare the Tropike of Cancer, betwixte our Weste sea and Mar del Zur, the chiefe prouince wherein is Mexico. and the principall citie Themistitan. This region, after that it was conquered by Cortesius, begonne to be called *Noua Hispania*, newe Spayne, for the lykenesse thereof vnto the Spanysh kyngdome

none in nature of soyle, greatnesse, disposition of the ayre, & other such lyke thynges, as Cortesius him selfe writeth vnto Charles the fifth, humbly desirynge his maiestie to allowe of that name. Some later wyrters haue gyuen the particuler name of one thyre vnto the whole, calling it *Mexico*, and the generall name of that whole thyre to the head citie therein, calling *Themistitan* lykenwyle *Mexico*, howbeit in tructh *Themistitan* is the principall citie in *Mexico* prouince, *Mexico* the chiefe prouince in all newe Spaigne. Of this countrey, the commodities it doeth yelde, the nature of the inhabiteurs, partly you haue already seene in *Gon. Ferd. Onidus* historie. Fol. 221. and chiefly Fol. 225. The kyng of this countrey bare name *Montezuma*, or *Muteezuma*, as Cortesius that conquered him writeth, in P. Martyr his Decades printed in Spaigne. An. d. 1530. *Muteezuma*, in his 4. Decade, entituled *de insul. nuper inuentis* to. no. orb. p. 506. *Multoxumam*, as also in the last edition thereof at Cullen, ioyntly with the thre first decades, the which our Printer in the translation hereof, hath followed in the discourse of the West Indies Ilandes. Strange names are many tymes diuersly written, though in effecte they meane all one, *Henricus* say we, with the Frenchmen *Henry*, the *Almans Henweich*, the *Italians Arrigo*, the *Portugales Henrico*, as *Barros* speaking of king John the first his sonne, whom *Cadamus* called in his *Nauigation Huric*.

This kyng was so welthie, so mightie, his dominions so large, that the inhabiteurs knew no other prince in all the worlde, of him Cortesius had intelligence by *Montegius* and *Portucarrerius*, and from him certaine rich presentes for his maister Charles the Emperour, as in the aforesayd discourse of the west Indisch Ilands is hath ben sayde. Wherefore the 16. day of August, in the peere of our Lorde. 1520. *Ferdinandus Cortesius*, with 15. light horsemen, and fyue hundred footemen well appoynted, belides thre noble men of the citie *Cempoal*, named *Teuchius*, *Amexus*, & *Tamais*, and 13 hundred men of that countrey, to serue in steede of packe horses, for cariage, after the maner there, began to set forwarde from his Castle *Vera crux*, towardes *Themistitan* in *Mexico*, distant from thence Westwarde ia hundred leagues, or thereabout. *Cempoal* standeth from *Vera Crux*. 4. leagues, eche league in this countrey is 4. Italian miles. Foure dayes iourney from *Cempoal* Cortesius was entertained curtuously by the inhabiteurs of a good



*Tascaleca.*

by thye named *Sienchimalen*, as also by the citizens of *Texuacat*, after that he had passed with his army an exceeding hpyll, thicke clad with pfe & snow even in the moneth of August. The like enterpment was offered him & his companie as hee marched forward, until he came to the *Tascaletecan* lande, who are so great enemies unto the *Mexicans*, that liuyng anywhe their dominions, they had rather want their greatest necessaries, to wit sale, and cotton to cloath them, than become subiects in any wise to the Prince of *Mexico*. With these *Tascaletecan*s, *Cortesi* had three conflictcs passing through their countrey, & in the ende valiantly gaue them the ouerthrow. *Tascaleca* is a greater citie, more populous, and better serued than *Granata* in *Spain* was, at what time the *Moors* yeldd: their bread is made of *Maiz*, that is, *Indish* corne, a very good seat for hauking, hunting, & freshe water fishing, sea fish is scarce, for it standeth from the sea about 50. leagues: of pulle good store. This towne wals, & houses in number 20000. built of stone, high, & strong, in respect of the enemy euer at hand: they keepe markets and fayres. The people doth weare hole, and maketh good accompt of Jewels, pceious stones, of crestes, & bushes of feathers, to set them forth in the warres, they garnish euerie thing with gold: wood is brought to be sold to the market on mens shoulders: timber, boordes, bricke, lime, & stone, are vsuall merchandise. They *Carpenters*, *Masons*, & *Potters*, are very skilfull. There is no vessel wrought amongst vs more artificially than theys is *Medicinal* hearbes are solde openly. They vse baths, the nation politike, gouerned in maner of a common wealth. The whole circuit of this prouince is 90. leagues, full of townes, boroughes, and villages, hills and dales most fruitful, & well storied of good souldyers, in respect of their enemies rounde about them. About one league of this citie encamped *Cortesi*, & by his spials vnderstanding the citizens not to mistrust or feare any inualion, tooke the strongest part therof by night: in the morning came the best citizens to offer him all obedience. *Cortesi* than returning with the victorie & victuals to his campe, found it in a troublesome mutinie for the great distresses & pceious calamities they thought them selues to be in, so far off from their owne country, in the midst of their enemies. This mutinie appeased he with good woords, & comfortable reasons, persuading them their enemies to be weaker, the spreadyng abroade of the gospell to be now

*Churultecal.*

now in their hands, them selues to be *Spaniards*, who effectme not death to wynn glory: a most happy death that to be, where life is spent in the conquest of infidelles and barbares, & to lye by the sea side idly, that were to no purpose. Thus appeased he the rebellious myndes of his companyons, and after 20. dayes abode made in this prouince, he led them into an other shire for pastures and riuers the most commodious, for habitation best in all that countrey. The principall citie hath name *Churultecal*, as great, as faire, as *Tascaleca*, and so gouerned, until the king of *Mexico* oppressed it. Here was *Cortesi* receyued with songes, muscalle instruments, and trumpets, by the priestes and children of the citie after their maner, & wel feasted. The end of all this mirth was an vpprope of the inhabitants agaynst him, procured by the kyng of *Mexico*, as it was supposed, whereof *Cortesi* hauing secrete intelligence by a woman of *Cempoal* that folowed his Campe, summoned a parte with the beste citizens of *Churultecal*, at his owne lodging. Those citizens first laid he fast by the heles, & than speedly with his army, warned to be in a readinesse for that purpose, set vpon the deceptiue *Barbares* of a soden, before that they were thoroughly prouided, and gaue them the ouerthrow. The prince of *Mexico* acquitted him selfe of this vpprope, protesting by his Ambassadors to *Cortesi*, that his disloyall subiectes the *Churultecals* had bruted that conspiracie vnder his name to doe him iniury, whom they would not willingly obeye. He sent withall rich presentes, praying *Cortesi* to come to *Themistitan*, promising him that he should want nothyng there, notwithstanding the harde prouision thereof in so barren a place, altogether in the water. To conducte *Cortesi* thither, he sent also certayne Gentlemen for guydes, and other of his nobilitie to receyue him as he came neare. To speake of euery curtesie shewed him in this iourney, and to wyte of euery place he passed, and particularly to rehearse euery dayes iourney, euery hpyll, towne, ryuer, house, and gardepne, by the way, would breed ouermuche tediousnesse. In fewe, the Lordes of the countrey, as he went, used him well, especially in *Guaucingo* prouince, and *Chialcho* shyre, the one whereof was violently oppressed by the prince of *Mexico*, the other willingly subiect vnto him. In the cold mountaynes he wanted no wood, in the townes hee was prouided for, and his

*Ann. iiii.*

cont.

companions, who were of Cempoallens, Tascaltecans, Churultecans, & Gazucinges, in number 4000, of Spaniards not above 300. In this maner, Cortesius accompanied & folowed, came at the length into a vale, bearing name Colua. wherein be two meres, the one salt water of 60 leagues in circuit, the other a freshet. Partly on the land, partly in the salt meere standeth Iztapalapa a fayre towne, from whence to Themistitan, the royal seat of Mexico, there lyeth a way on a stone wall, two speares length broad, built up in the water by hand with infinite charges, the wall serueth also for a brydge, by this brydge sides stand thre fayre townes, Mescalcingo, Coluacan, & V Vichilabulco. The first is suppoled to haue 3000. houses, the second 6000. the third 4000. wel built, especially their Towers, & their Temples wherein they doe sacrifice. In these townes great aboundaunce of salt is made, that serueth all such as doe acknowledge the Prince of Mexico for their Lord. Other be denied it, as of the Tascaltecans it was sayde. This salte meere rysing doth flowe into the Freshet, & as it ebboth the Freshet falleth into the salt meere agayne. The freshe water may serue neuerthelesse for drinke, the salte water becommeth not freshe therewithall. The wall hath many draught brydges for warfare, and fluses for passage, where toll is payde vnto the kyng. Halfe one league before you come to Themistitan, where the lyke brydge or causey from the lande ioyneth with the aforesayde wal, standeth a strong Castle, double walled about, with two strong Towers, not possible to be conquered. To this place came a thousande Gentlemen Courtiers. forth of the cite to receyue Cortesius, all apparelled a lyke, saluting him one by one after theyr countrey maner, to wytte, touching the ground with theyr finger, and than kysyng it, in signe of reuerence. After all them came the kyng of Mexico Montezuma him selfe in the middle of the brydge, accompanied with two hundred of his nobles, orderly two and two, in better attyre then the other aforesayd, but all on their bare feete, though euery body in this countrey otherwile weareth shooes. The kyng as he went, leaned vpon the shoulders of two noble men, the one whereof was his brother: not that he needed any such helpe, but for that the kynges of Mexico are woont so to be honoured, as though they were holden by by the strength of theyr nobilitie.

These

These two noble men, Cortesius meeting with king Meteczuma, and lyghtyng of his horse to embrace hym, dyd forbyd hym to touche theyr kyng, as an vnlawful action in that countrey: the rest of the kynges company came orderly to salute Cortesius, after theyr maner. Cortesius presented the kyng with a chayne of Bugle, set with some Diamondes and Rubies, of no great value, but such as pleased the kyng, who rewarded hym agayne with two other chaynes of gold, wrought in maner of sea Crabbes, & Snails, & so returned into y<sup>e</sup> citie with Cortesius agayne, where he, lodgyng hym in the royal pallace, erected therein for hym a throne, and presented hym the seconde tyme with other riche gyftes, and prouision of all thynges necessary for hym and his trayne. All the brydge length, as he went with the kyng, stode on eche syde certayne great Temples, wherein were sacrificed slaues, and chyldren payed for tribute by kyng Meteczumae's vassalles. Neere vnto Cortesius throne kyng Meteczuma had his clothe of estate, where vnto the Spaniardes, before his nobles there assembled, he spake in this sort.

Noble and valiaunt men of armes in the felde, and mercifull Capitanes vnto such as do peeble them selues, you are welcome into this countrey. Of auncient tyme we haue hearde, and in our old Chronicles we do reade, that neyther I, nor any of this land, be auncient inhabitants hereof, but aliens and foreyners, brought hyther by a great prince, vnto whom we were al subiect. While this prince, leauyng vs heere, went home agayne to see his countrey, our forefathers married, had issue, buylded by houses, and erected certayne cities, so that at his returne we neyther woulde go backe agayne with hym, nor acknowledge him for our prince any more: Wherefore we haue been euer of opinion, that his posteritie woulde come to recouer this countrey, and make vs his subiectes agayne. Consyderyng then the place from whence you say that you do come, and that which you gyue vs to vnderstand of your great and myghtie lord and kyng that sent you hyther, we be thoroughly perswaded that he is our true Lord, so muche the more, for that, as you say, he hath long since knowen that we dwelt heere. Assure your selues therfore, that we wyl all peeble vnto you, and acknowledge you our lordes, in his name that sent you: in this wyl we not fayle, we wyl not deceyue you, all my

domine,

King Meteczuma his oration to the Spaniards.

dominions shall you rule, for all my subiectes shall obey, commaunde all that we haue, for you be now in your owne prouince and house. Be ye mery, and refreſhe your ſelues after your long trauaile and many laboures in the warres. I am not ignorant what hath happened vnto you all the way, I doubt not but that the *Campoales* and *Charultecans* haue ſaid euyl of me vnto you, but I pray you geue no credit vnto any mans wordes concernyng me, eſpecially vnto my enimies, ſome wherof hauing ben my ſubiectes, at your commyng are gone from me, and do repozt vntreuthes of me, to purchaſe therewith your fauour. I knowe that they beare you in hande, that my ſeate, the furniſure of my houſe, the very walles therof, are beaten golde. Furthermoze, that I am a God, that I ſayne my ſelfe a God, and ſuche lyke toyes: but you ſee all thynges here are made of lyme, ſtone, and earth. Do you not ſee that I am made of fleſhe and bone, mortall, and corruptible: you ſee they haue not ſayde the trueth. I haue in deede certayne plate lefte me by my forefathers, what ſoener I haue it ſhall be yours, diſpoſe thereof as you thinke good, I will nowe departe to other of my houſes where I am wont to lye, I will ſee that neyther you, nor your trayne wane any thyng: be ye of good cheate, be gladd, for you are in your owne countrey, you be in your owne houſes.

*Cortefius* auniweared in ſewe, and to the purpoſe, eſpecially concernyng that poynte, the kyng of Spayne to be that prince whom they looked for. After ſyre dayes ſpent there ioyfully, noyſe was brought to *Cortefius* of certayne murders and iniuries offered vnto the Spaniards in a towne of *Muteezumaes* dominions, and that by *Muteezuma* his conſent. This occaſion tooke he, thzoughly to bypnyng *Muteezuma* in ſubiectiō. And fyrſt he cauſed hym to keepe that houſe wherein *Cortefius* laye, then to ſende for the maſtactors, whom *Cortefius* openly executed, by whoſe confeſſion *Muteezuma* founde gyltie, was for a tyme ſet by the heeles, but deliuered agayne by and by, confeſſyng his faulte, and promyſyng all loyaltie and dewtie, choſe rather to remaine a tiew ſubiect in *Cortefius* palace, then to lye abroad at libertie like a kyng, as in effect he ſhewed, both in ſendyng abroad commiſſion to diſcouer the golde mynes thzoughout all his dominions at *Cortefius* motion, in geatheryng togeather great ſummes

ſummes of golde and treaſure to be preſented vnto the Spaniſhe kyng, in geuyng both counſayle, and the meanes howe to conquer crſtelie prince *Cacamozin*, *Muteezumaes* baſſall, reſuſyng all obedience vnto the Spaniards, finally in a publike aſſembly, exhortyng all his nobles to acknowledge the kyng of Spaine for theyr ſoueraigne Lorde, and to yeelde vnto hym that obedience and in his name, to *Cortefius* that duetie, whiche he hym ſelfe was wont to looke for at theyr handes. The proceſſe was wyitten by publike notaries, confirmed by the nobles, and a copie thereof deliuered vnto *Cortefius*. *Mexico* prouince, *Mexico*. enuyronned about with hygh and Alpyſhe mountaynes, ſtandeth in a playne countrey in circuit 70. leagues, about the greateſt part whereof are two Heres, the one of ſalt water, the other of freſhe. The two lakes go one into the other at a ſtreit, cauſed by litle hylles that runne amyd all the foreſayde playne. This ſtreit is paſſed by boate out of the one lake into the other, to all the townes ſtandyng on either ſyde of the aforeſayd lakes. Our Indyſhe wynters name the boates *Capoa*, the Indians call them *Aecaler*, troughes as it were, all of one peece. I haue trauerled in the lyke vpon the ryuer *Sone*, in the edge of France, neere hygh *Burgundie*. In the mydſt of the ſalte Here, two leagues euery way from the lande, ſtandeth that ryche and welthy cite *Temixtitan* or *Tibemixtitan*, no leſſe in quantitie then *Siulia*, or *Corduba* in Spayne. From the land, vnto it lye foure wayes, or walles built by out of the water two ſpyeres length brode, commodiouſly for ſuche as trauaile thither by lande, with ſundry draught bydges by the way, to cut of imaiſons if neede were. Of theſe foure wayes, one was that, where *Cortefius* met with kyng *Muteezuma*. In one of theſe walles or bydges, freſhe water is brought from the lande into the cite by two gutters, no leſſe in quantitie then hoggetheades: the one thereof ſerueth when y other is either ſtopped, or muſty. The ſtreets are ſtreight, many in number, built much after the maner of Venice, both to go by lande and by water. The bydges ouer the water in this cite be made of woodde, of ſuche breadth that tenne may paſſe ouer them togeather, ſo many in number, that it were a thyng almoſt infinite to reckon them.

The

The number of houses therein amounteth to .60. thousande. Amongest other one streate is very large, sumptuously buyte, and famous for all sortes of merchaundies, that prouince peebeth, wont to be solde there .60. thousande merchautes, as it is thought dayly haunt that streat. There are solde sundry sortes of mettales iewelless, frutes, foule, hearbes, and all other necessaries seruyng for meates, clothes, warfar, buydings, and pleasure. For euery speciall kynde of merchaundies, is appointed a speciall standyng by it selfe. They sell by tale and measure, the vse of weyghtes as yet they haue not. Theyr money is a kynde of Nutte shels, of the kynnell it selfe is made theyr dynke. The tree is planted vnder the bowes of some other for defence, vntill it be growen strong, hable to abyde the heate of the Sunne, then is the fensle tree cut downe, and that let to continue, many Lordes haue thereof great reuenues in that countrey. Steele and Iron they want, in steede whereof they vse to make theyr instrumentes of a kynde of harde stone, wherewith they woork golde, syluer, copper, brasse, excellently wet in what fourme or shape so euer they lyke. You can not shewe them any kynde of chynge, but they wyll draue it, and set it out most lyuely in metall, so cunnyng artificers they be. To the markets all thinges are brought, epyther by water in Canoes, or on slaues backs. There standeth a goodly palace in the market place for iudgement. There be resident alwayes .x. or .xii. graue senators, to see good order kept in that streate, to decide controuersies happenyng there, to puny the offenders. Other see what is to be solde in the market, and what measure is made. Many gorgeous temples be in this citie, many goodly towers buyte where noble men haue ben buryed, with gallant chappelles to theyr Idolles, many princely palaces, for that all the nobilitie of that countrey lyeth some parte of the peere in the citie, and the best citizens great ryche men. The good order and policie in so barbarous a nation, is wonderfull to beholde. Concernyng their abhominable Idolatry, Cortesius is worthy of great commendation, for the throwyng downe the Idoles where he came, beyng a stranger, though the princes of that prouince and Mettezuma also tooke it not well, principally in the palace, persuadyng them that it was not seemely for a kyng to worshyppe that whiche a

knaue

knaue or slaue of his had made. Euery noble man hath, besydes the palaces in the citie, his castle, souldiers, recepuers, & other officers in the countrey: and neere the court gallant houses for recreation, with pleasaunt gardens, orchardes, pondes, & other the lyke delights. The noble men and Gentlemen of this countrey, can not be fewe in number, whereas dayly the court is furnished with syue hundred young gentlemen, besydes the multitude of seruyng men that attende on them. And the fashion in this countrey is of all the nobilitie, to sende theyr sonnes for education sake vnto the Court, although many of them dwel an hundred and fytie, or two hundred leagues of. So large & so myghtie is the kyngdome of Mexico, & yet so well gouerned, the kyng so duetyfully obeyed of all his subiectes, aswel absent as present, eche shyre pceloyng and duely payyng vnto hym the commodities therof, according to theyr custome, that Cortesius thinketh no prince in the world to be more feared & reuerenced of his people. The kyng hath sundry goodly pallaces, and in them many ryche and costly ornamentes, of golde, of syluer, of feathers, so artificially wrought, that neyther any sort of needle worke, nor kynde of picture, may seeme to make the lyke shewe. Among the rest, thre special houses of recreation the kyng hath in his palace. In one of them are a number of monstrous and defourmed persons, dwarfs, crookebackes, syngyng men by nature, two headed monsters, and others, with theyr keepers. The second house is so large, that in it commodiously two kynges may be resident. The place is set forth with many Alabaster & Marble pyllers, ten goodly pondes therein, well stored with fysh, and foule, of all sortes that epyther do lyue in the water, or on the lande, with their keepers, and diuersities of meates for theyr diuers natures. In this place kept he also young chyldren, that had whyte heades, & were of fayre complexion, aswel boyes as gyrls. The thyrde house serued for Lions, Tygers, Wolues, Foxes, and other the lyke wyld beastes, eche sort in theyr seueral denues. The least of these thre houses is so well buyt, that the kyng at his pleasure may lodge therein, with all his court. The prince is thus serued. If syue hundred gentlemen at the least, with theyr folowers, gyue attendaunce at the court al the day long, though they come not alwayes in the kynges syght. These gentlemen syt downe

The Courtiers.

The kynges houses.

The seruice of the kyng.

to dymner when the kyng sytteth, and do fare as well as he, theſe folowers haue theſe reuerſion. The buttrey, cellar, pantry, and other offices neuer ſhut, come in who wyl, meate & dymke he can not want. The hall wherein the kyng dymeth, is matted vnder foote, his meate is brought by by .300. younge men penſioners, fleſhe, fyſhe, frutes, ſalates of all ſortes vppon chaſſyng dyſhes in the wynter to keepe the meates warme. Theſe waiters neuer come neere the boord, for the kyng ſytteth on a leather cuſhyng artificially wrought, at a table raylled about, within the pprecincte whereof ſtandeth his ſewer, to ſet hym downe thoſe meates he lyketh of beſt. At his ryght hande ſyre olde men ſyt downe, vnto whom the kyng hym ſelfe carueth. The kyng walkeſh before meate and after, he is ſerued in earthen dyſhes, his cuppes be of the ſame mettall: he ſhyteth hym ſelfe foure tymes a daye. Whatſoeuer he hath once vſed, be it apparell, naper, or any other kynde of houſholde ſuffe, it is neuer brought hym any more to vſe, but beſtowed by hym vpon his ſeruantes or frendes at conuenient tymes. For honour ſake eche one cometh into the palace barefoote, in moſt humble wyſe they come before the kyng, when they are called, bowyng downe theſe heads, theſe eyes to the ground. It were great preſumption to looke the kyng in the face when he talketh with any of them. A man would thynke they were all dombe in the preſence of the kyng, ſuche is theſe ſilence. No man dare turne his backe to the kyng, but departyng from hym eche one goeth backwarde. No man dare go out of his place when the kyng paſſeth by. At his goyng abrode he is followed with a great troupe of his nobles and gentlemen, and hath three rods borne before hym, one whereof he taketh in his owne hand when he cometh forth out of his lytter, wherein commonly he is carped abrode. In conſeſion no heathen prince hath ſo many ceremonies as this kyng of Mexico. Quietly in this cite from the .8. of September the peere of our lorde .1520. vntyll ſaie folowynge, remayned Cortesius with al honour, enioyng his pictoyre, and rulyng ſo myghty a kyngdome conquered by hym, with al proſperitie. When Velasque a Spanyarde, then Lieutenant of Cuba, that euer enuided at his good hap, ſent Naruaez a luſty younge captayne with eyghtene ſayle wel appointed to commaund Cortesius out of Mexico, and to geue ouer the rule of that

countray,

countray, which he him ſelfe had paynefully conquered vnto their pleaſure, by forged patents from the Spanyſhe kyng. Whiche amazed at the fyrſt was Cortesius with this tydinges, conſideryng that if he went agaynſt Naruaez, the Mexicanes not yet throughtly brought in ſubiectiō might in the meane time reuolte: againe if he ſtayed, Naruaez might put his conqueſt in iooperdy, violently forcing y cōuntray euerywhere as he came. The matter was thorowly knowne to the barbares of Themistitan. The kyng himſelfe had brought hym by his vaſſalles, paynted in a table, the ſhips, theſe number, artillarie, hoſemen and footemen landed. In the ende Cortesius reſolued hym ſelfe to go agaynſt Naruaez. Wherefore leauyng at Themistitan a Garrylon of Spaniards, the which he hyghly commended vnto Muteezuma, marched forward with .170 footemen, ſendyng other .80. that way before hym. Naruaez lykelwyſe came on agaynſt Cortesius, and had nowe taken Cempoal, and ſpyred by agaynſt hym thoſe citizens. Cortesius hauyng intelligence of Naruaez certayne beyng there in an hyghly towne garded with .800. ſouldiers, and .19. Canons ſet at the ſteyre foote, thynkyng neuertheleſſe nothyng at all of his comyng, ſet vppon Naruaez with .250. men, and there tooke hym on Wedneſday night, the reſt of his company yelded them ſelues. In the meane while the citizens of Themistitan reuolted agaynſt theſe prince and the Spanyſhe gouernement, as by a meſſenger diſpatched thither from Cempoal, to declare Cortesius good hap and Naruaes impryſonment, it was vnderſtoode. The caſtle of Themistitan belieged, in many places ſet a fyre and vndermynded, the Spanyſhe Garrylon to be in great leoparde, the ſhye boates they made, burnt, the meſſenger him ſelfe grievouſly wounded, Muteezuma the kyng onely to fauoure them, and hym nowe ſcarſely obeyed, the nobles to chooſe death rather then to obey ſuche geaſtes, that keepe theſe kyng lyke a warde, that diſpoſſeſſe them of their owne cite, that meynſayne therein theſe enemies the Tascalticans & Guazuingoes, euen before theſe face at theſe owne charges, to deſpight them, that demoure theſe vittaylles harde to come by in that cite ſo ſituated in the water, that iniurie them, that lay on tributes, that by hooke and by crooke make away from them whatſoeuer good there is to be had, that breake downe theſe Idolles, and ſuppreſſe theſe ancient rytes and ceremonies.

Cortesius



Cortezius therefore speedily with .70. horses and foure hundred footemen, and as much artillery as he could, returneth againe to Themistitan, whither he came about mydosommer daye. At Cortezius entrie into the citie agayne, the Spanyardes, thoroughly beaten by the Barbares with dartes and stones from hygh pine-apple trees, & an hygh tower that was neere, began to take hart, and to hope for good happe after they great troubles. The Barbares lykewyse vnderstandyng of Cortezius commyng, grew to be more cruel and fyre, with horrible cryes, shootyng of they arrowes, and throwyng an infinite number of dartes and stones, for the company of them was innumerable, that the ayre seemed darke and cloude therewith. Cortezius sent out a captaine with two hundred to rescue the Spanyardes in the palace. This captaine slue many of the Barbares, but the multitude was so great that he dyd litle good. Foure of his souldyers were slayne, he hym selfe, greivously wounded, had much a do to retyre agayne. Cortezius set vpon them at an other syde, litle harme dyd he them likewyse, for that as sone as the Barbares had spent they dartes and stones, eche one gat by into the turrette of his house to saue hym selfe. The fyght helde on fyrcely a good while. Cortezius was forced in the ende to retyre with some daunger, and losse of many of his soldiers. The whiche thyng when the Barbares had espied, they begane to geue a newe assalte on euery syde of the palace, to fyre the gates, and stoutely to continue batterye, fyghtyng euen vpon they felowes dead carcasses, and wyllyng with them rather to be slayne, then to lyue in bondage vnder the Spanyardes. Thus spent they in armes the whole daye, peeldyng a newe supply of men (the multitude was so great) foure tymes an houre, and rayshyng clamors all the nyght long to the Spanyardes great annoy, that then coulde take no rest after they paynesfull and daungerous conspycte the daye tyme, fewe in number, fyghtyng from moynyng to nyght without intermission, and .80. of theyr companye wounded. The next day the Barbares set vpon the Spanyardes agayne. Cortezius planteth .xiii. felde peeces, and furnyssheth his vanguard with harquebuziers and archers, but theyr enemies so litle esteemed death, that leyng at one shoot a dozen of theyr felowes to nye in peeces, all feare set a fyre, they supplied styll the voyde

boyde places. The day folowyng, the Spanyardes wanting victuals, issued out in open feeldes: they slue many Barbares, they ouerthrew the houses neare y pallace, they tooke certaine draught bridges, but at night they returned with their Generall and 50. of their company wounded, as hungry as they went forth. Wherefore they caused warlike engines to be made of boordes, in forme of a fouresquare house, going on wheelles, placing in ech one thereof 20. shot, whom many rascall souldiers folowed with pikeaxes and hatchets, to do harme that way in destroyng their buildings: but stones & dartes came so mightily & so thicke about the Spanyardes eares, that such as went thus forth, were faine to creepe home agayne out of their engines to nye in peeces: they that taried at home could not once looke out but they were damaged. King Muteezuma, desirous to dissuade his citizens from the assalt, shewyng him selfe vnto them out of the Pallace, had a blowe with a stone, whereof in thre dayes he dyed. This Prince was of a very good nature, wyse, and very patient, his body the Spanyardes lefte vnto the Mexicans to bury, for that they them selues had litle other leasure then to thinke how to saue their liues, rather than to bury the dead.

Muteezuma  
slayne.

The next day the nobles of the countrey came to a parle with Cortezius, at the same place where Muteezuma tooke his death wound. Cortezius exhorted them to peace, otherwise threatning the utter decay & ruine of that their so famous and noble a citie, with protestation of pietie on them whom once he had taken to be his friends, promysing pardon for that which was done, and settynge downe what befel vnto other nations that refused his friendship. The Mexicans making small accompte of his wordes, and wethered, that they tooke him for no friend, but for their enemy, that he should depart with all his trayne out of their countrey if he would haue peace, otherwise they would so long continue theyr siege, vntill by force they had dyuen him out, though for euery Spanyarde slayne, there dyed a thousande Mexicans, for his friendship they cared not, pardon they asked not, moost willingly they would all dye, so that they might deliuer their posteritie from the Spanysh tyranny.

Wherefore Cortezius, wayng with him selfe the great daunger that presently might ensue for want of victualles if he stayed, the

Mexicans continuing their assaile, for perill to be stopped at the draught bridges if he departed, so much the more for that these Barbares were not ignorant of. 70. thousand ducates heaped by together by him in that prouince: set vpon them the seconde tyme with the aforesayde engines, but all in vayne. So stoutly their enemyes defended them selues, and so fiercely they resisted the assaile giuen. Chiefly the Spaniards courage appeared in winnyng of a certayne Tower that alwayes commaunded them, nexte in the ruine of such houses as for the nearenes thereof byed them great incombance and perill. After many woundes receyued, and great slaughter done on both sides, the principal citizens, counterfectyng a conclusion of peace, prompled obedience vnto Cortesius, so that all deedes past myght be forgotten. Cortesius lykynge well thereof, at their request set free a priest he had of theirs in prison, to deale betwixt them, and thoroughly perswaded that no guile was ment, withdrew his company from skirmishing. But he was no sooner set downe to dynner, after his restlesse afflictions and continuall labours, but the Mexicans tooke the towne bridges, and boydded the trenches, which Cortesius for passage had caused to be filled up. Presently therefore he rushed out amongst them agayne with his horsemen, but the iourney went so hardly with the Spaniards, that Cortesius wounded in the head was scarcely able to retyre agayne, many of his company were slayne, such as escaped were not able to continue in the fildes any longer, wearped with blowes, woyned out with hunger. It remayned only, that now they eyther presently must perishe, or els depart out of the countrey. By nyght therefore Cortesius and his souldyers priuely thought to slyp away with Muteezumaies children, and certayne of the Mexican nobles captiues, charging the Spanishe kynge his officers with the fifth part of his treasure, and takynge the residue thereof with him. But the Barbares hauyng intelligence thereof, oppressed them in the way, tooke theyr goods, slue many of the Spaniards, and with them their captiues: if happely any escaped, they were such as marched in the midst, for both the vanguard and reerward were altogether discomfited and lost, to the number of. 150 Spaniards 42. horses. 2000. Tascaltecanes, and Guazuzings, that ayded them. Thus paynefully, with great daunger and no lesse grieve, Cortesius lefte Themistitan, pursued

by his enemyes that folowed him, nothyng helpen by the way as he repayred home, refreshyng his Campe with a dead horse, after syue dayes spent with the foode of parched corne, and that in small quantitie before he came to Tascalteca.

The Tascaltecanes curtiouly enterpeyned him and his, with whom he made his abode. 20. dayes, to refresh his wearped army: that done, he conquered other cities in that prouince, eyther enemyes vnto the Tascaltecanes, as Tepeaca, where he buylte for safetie of passage *Segura la Frontera*: or suche as for feare of the Mexicans had not yeilded them selues before, to wite, Guaccachilla, Izcuca, and other principall townes therabout. Finally, he sendeth for horsemen and shot out of the *Ilande Hispaniola*, wyth many Barbares fauour & assistance agaynst the Mexicans, maketh prouision of. 13. flye Boates, to annoy by water the citizens of Themistitan. Muteezumaes, Nepheu, Catamazinus, the new kynge of Mexico, fearyng on the other syde the Spaniards returne, and seeing many of his subiectes to fall from him, wavereth not in any wyse to set all thinges in a readinesse for warres, especially pykes, to annoy the horsemen, whom they most dreathed. Eightiene leagues from Tascalteca towardes Themistitan, standeth Tazuco, a goodly citie of the Mexicans. Cortesius fyrst of all tooke this citie, & caused his prouision for flye Boates wrought in Tascalteca to be brought thither. Such was the hatred of the Tascaltecanes and Guazuzings agaynst the Mexicans, that they carried the timber vpon theyr shoulders from Tascalteca to Tazuco, without any grudgynge, for the prouision aforesayde. From Tazuco Cortesius cut a passage into the saltc Mere of Mexico, to byrnyng his flye Boates to the siege of Themistitan: this trench, thre Englyshe myles long, and foure fathome deepe, was synghed by 8000. pyoners of that countrey in sytte dayes. This nauy annoyed very muche the citizens, in destroying theyr scullies and troughes, and stopping their passage from place to place, besydes the assaile giuen therewith to the towne it selfe. Cortesius army, euer as it came, destroyed all suche places by the way, that richer persecuted him fleeing away before, or presently might damage his returne.

The citie he belleged in thre places at once, after that hee had cutte of all the frethe water conductes, and taken the wayes

## The conquest

and byldges, and stopped all passage for any enemy of his into the towne: the number of his souldiers amounted vnto. 120000. for out of all the countrey about, the Barbares came with *Cortesi-  
sus*, some for libertie, some for friendship, some for hope of gaine. The siege lasted neuerthelesse ten weekes, in the ende whereof with continuall battry the citie defaced, and more than 100000. citizens woꝛne out partly in fight, and partly wasted with misery and hunger, *Cortesi-  
sus* tooke theyꝝ new kyng priuely walkyng in a secret corner of the lake, and subdued thꝛoughly with him the citie *I hemistitan*. 14. townes by the lake syde, & all the *Mexican* realme and prouince, vnto the Spanyshe crowne, in the iurisdiction whereof it doeth presently remayne. The spoyle of the citie, in value great, *Cortesi-  
sus* diuided amongst the Spanyshe souldyers, reseruyng the fyfth parte therof, and certayne fine feather wooꝛkes, the whiche he sent into *Europe*, to be presented vnto *Charles* the fyfth kyng of *Spayne*, and Emperour, than in *Germanie*.

Who lysteth to see this hystorie more at large, may reade *Cortesi-  
sus* Nauigations, and *Frauncis Lopez* wooꝛke thereof wrytten in the Spanyshe tongue, made not long since Italian by *Lucius Maurus*, and if I be not deceyued, nowe a doying into Englyshe. An abridgement thereof I promysed, or a commentary, as *Cesar* termeth suche kynde of wrytynges, to geue other men occasion to set forth at large those thynges by leaseure, which bꝛieflly are noted and signified in fewe vnto some, that willingly woulde not be altogether ignozant thereof, nor yet stande to long in any such discourses. To set downe particularly eche Spanyarde and Portugale his doynges in these new discovered landes, to drawe Geographically the places, to wryte all their battelles, victories, and conquestes, to describe the cities rased, the townes erected, to poynte out the Capitaynes personages, to shewe theyꝝ traueyles and good hap, it would requyre an other *Homere*, an other *Ibucydides*, an other *Linus* labour: it would requyre an other Emperour to set students a wooꝛke, as *Iustinian* dyd his lawe geatherers: the relations of the Indyshe traueylers are so many in number, theyꝝ reportes so diuers, the volumes wrytten therof so huge, and in so sundꝛy languages.

FINIS.

R.W.

R.VVilles Speciall aduises to be obserued in readyng  
ouer this woorke.

Fol. 6. *De Medea*. put out *De*.

Fol. 7. Of my Decades, reade of my fyfth Decade. For as the two fyfth bookes of the first Decade were by *P.M.* dedicated vnto *Ascanio Visconte*, than Cardinall and Vicechaunceller of Rome, so are the eight bookes folowing in the same Decade wrytten to the Cardinall of *Aragonia*. Fol. 54. Euery Decade hath ten bookes or Chapters, whereof it hath, according to the Greeke wooꝛd, that name.

Fol. 20 *A. and. O. &c.* His meanyng is, that this selfe same poynte is extreme West, in respect of one halfe of the woꝛlde, and extreme East in respecte of the other halfe, or hemisphere beneath vs.

Fol. 31. *Iuga de Canias*. Reade. *Iuego de Canas*.

Fol. 35. *Barramedabas*. Reade. *Barrameda*.

Fol. 39. To be part of the continent. This was then spoken for want of further knowledge, as in other wrytynges folowynge it will appeare.

Fol. 45. The gold whereof they are made is natieue. &c. This place shoulde be thus Englished. Their golde is lyke vnto that golde in *Germany*, wherof the *Florenes* are made. The nexte sentence likewise is not without some falte of the translator, for the latin goeth thus. *Alibi in eo tractu intra vaginam mentularem neruum reducunt, funiculoque præputium alligant.*

Fol. 47. *Gorgodes Meducias*. Reade. *Meduseas*.

Fol. 49. Being demaunded of me. This place shoulde you reade thus. Being demaunded of me afterwarde, were it not a sea separating two landes: they answered, the water there of to be fresh & sweete, & the further they went vp against the streame, it to be so much the more fresh & sweete, to be full of *Ilandes* and holesome fishe. They dare aduouche the breadth thereof to be more than. 30. leagues, and the ryuer very swiftly to fall into the sea, peeldyng vnto the fury of the fresh water.

Fol. 49. Beyond the citie of *Cathayo*. They supposed it according to theyꝝ skyll in vnknownen places.

Fol. 50. *Anima album*. Reade. *Animen*.

Item. You shall now therfore. This sentence is not in *P.M.* But  
Doo.iii. an

Themistitan  
conquered a-  
gayne.

## R. VV. Aduises.

an other of the same length, wherein he abaseth his own knowledge, in respect of *T. Lilius*, and auoucheth the fantastie following to be better than *Lucianus* tales, for that *Lucianus* penned his fables, but these foliyes to be truly such in deede.

Fol. 51. But nowe most noble Prince. Thye other vaine tales are here left out, of the beginning of the sea, and the original of woman kynde: all Greece could neuer haue imagined more vayne, more scornfull, more shamefull fables: and so are they lesse to such as lyst to reade them in that language wherein *P. Martyr* dyd wyte them, with the prayse of suche Barbarous ministers as doe prache them.

Fol. 57. The yeere of Christ. 1520. Reade. 1502.

Fol. 83. *Pezulana*. Reade. *Petrus Arias*.

Fol. 89. Or that in *Nogita*. Reade, or that in the blacke burnt Moores countrey, or kyngdome of *Melinde*.

Fol. 90. Water is turned into ayre. Reade, ayre is turned into water.

Fol. 98. The niene Boates of *Culchas*. Reade, or *Culchas*.

Fol. 153. *Colicutea*. Reade. *Calecut*, *Cockin*, *Comorin*.

Fol. 164. *Etesli*. Reade, *Etesie*.

Fol. 169. *Cemobal*. Reade, *Cempoal*.

Fol. 186. The generations of nations. Reade, of metalles.

Fol. 231. Eight. Reade, eighteth.

Item. 36. Reade, 63.

Fol. 232. The West Ocean. Reade, South Ocean, namely *Mar del zur*.

Fol. 234.  $\pi\epsilon\pi\iota$  in the margine, should haue place in the texte before  $\delta\iota\kappa\upsilon\mu\epsilon\nu\varsigma$ . Reade, the Greeke verbe  $\delta\upsilon\tau\omega\varsigma$  and  $\omega\kappa\epsilon\alpha\upsilon\omega\varsigma$ .

Fol. 252. P. 231. In the margine put it out.

Fol. 253. *Peruse*, these foure volumes, Read, the foure volumes.

Fol. 260. *Santianum*. Reade, *Santianum*.

Fol. 265. *Obo*, alias, *Obo* and *Obi*.

Fol. 268. *Fladimer*, al, *Volodimer*.

Item, *Smolue*, al, *Smolensko*.

Fol. 269. *Impreignable*. Reade, *inexpugnable*.

Fol. 270. *Nicene*. Reade, *Nice*. And of theyr sayth moze lykely hereafter. fol. 273 although fol. 302. the former opinion: on be

Fol. 274. *Prohibit*. Reade, *prohibited*.

(recited againe.

Fol. 283. *Volham*. Reade, *Volgha*.

Item

## R. VV. Aduises.

Item, *Diuidna*, al, *Duina*.

Item, *Vistinga*. Reade eche where, *Vstinga*.

Fol. 279. *Schondia*, for these countreys folowing see *Ortelius*. 45. table in his first edition, *de reg. Septentional*.

Fol. 280. *Sigismundus liberus*. Reade, *liber*, for he was Baron of *Harbestein* & the *Deutche* Barons are called frey heren, where of in latin also his title was witten, *Liber Baro ab Harbestein*, out of his woorkes is that discourse taken. Fol. 301.

Fol. 281. *Wardbus* Castle. 54. the one rowe of figures here signifieth the longitude, the other sheweth the *Latit. de*. The reader for his assurance herin, shall doe well to conferre all the figures so set, with the *Dappes*, lest he be deceived.

Fol. 294. By unknowen nations. Reade, motions.

Fol. 297. The yauer *Clesma*, al, *Desma*.

Item. *Marouians*. Reade. *Moranians*.

Fol. 298. This tongue is tyed further. Read agayne of the *Sclauon* tongue at large. Fol. 301.

Fol. 304. *Bengas*, Of theyr money, and also of all other nations copnes shall you haue a speciall discourse hereafter, if God sende vs lyfe.

Fol. 308. *Tumen*. It should seeme to be that *Tamen* spoken of before. Fol. 246.

Fol. 310. To *Artach*. Reade, in *Artachs*. (foye. Fol. 246.

Fol. 311. *Besermanni*. What they be. Reade, Fol. 335.

Fol. 312. As do the Christians, imagining so of vs, for that many Christians, to wyt, the meaner sorte, dwel commonly euer in one place.

Fol. 316. Seuen werstes, to wyt, seuen *Mosconian* myles, that is, spue *Englyshe* myles and somewhat moze.

Fol. 321. It shall suffice to the reader, put out, to.

Item. *Sachma*, al, *Sughaua*.

*Nishnouogrod*. Reade, *Nishnouogrod*.

*Tartars*, *Nogais*, pointe it thus. *Tartars* *Nogais*.

*Bilbil*, al, *Bilbek*.

*Casbin*. Reade, *Casmin*.

*Baccho*, al, *Backu*.

Fol. 323. *Scharum*, al, *Chirua*, and *Sernuan*.

*Tollepan*. Reade, *Toibante*.

Fol. 324. *Arash* al, *Exesjb*.

Fol. 326. Unto *Mecca* in *Arabia*, to honour *Mahumets* tombe, whereof

Do. iii.

- whereof you shall reade in *Lewes Vartomannus Nauigations*.  
 Item. *Ardaxuil*. Reade. *Ardouil*. Item. Fol. 320. for *Ardeuelim*.  
 Fol. 327. Dought to be beloued. Reade, beleued.  
 Fol. 329. *Tulibante*. Reade *Torbante*.  
 Fol. 329. The *Persians*. to wylt, the Gentlemen of *Persia*. Esteeming artes and sciences, for silkes and furnitures of houses.  
 Fol. 326. & 330.  
 Fol. 330. *Turquestan*, it lyeth Northeast from the *Caspian* sea.  
 Item. *Phison*, is thought to be *Ganges*. it should rather seeme to be some br aunche of *Tigris*.  
 Fol. 331. *Deli. al. Dalangar*.  
*Caraceni. al. Corassan*.  
 His chief mansioun place, it was so: but now it is not. Fol. 322.  
 Fol. 337. *Potofarina*, reade *Portofainra*.  
*Boua*, reade *Lona*.  
 Fol. 345. We made sayle. Reade, sale.  
 Fol. 354. inclinations, diuinatiōs. Read, diuinations or wandyrng.  
 Fol. 358. Stranger solgiers, reade Soldyers.  
 Fol. 375. In the meane tyme. This is the later ende of the sixte Chapter, the residue whereof the *Winter* hath for modestie leste out: And *Eden* him selfe hath in this translation also leste out many thinges to be seene in the latin coppe, eyther as superfluous, or vnseemely. I am not willyng to defraude *Vartomannus*, *Eden*, or the *Winter* of theyr due.  
 Fol. 382. *Condaliis*. I would reade *Sandaliis*, as it may seme in the letter folowing, meaning thereby a kynde of high shoe or busshyn.  
 Fol. 394. Rime. Reade, rine.  
 Fol. 429. It was lost and not founde vntill this day. It may be that *P. Martyr* dyd wyte the historie thereof at large, in *Pope Clement* the .7. his tyme, that happely was losse at the sacke of *Rome*: but his abridgement of the aforesayd viage shall you finde wrytten to *Pope Adrian* afterwarde in his fyft Decade, Cap. 7. Out of the which woorkes, togeather with the reportes of other traueylers that went the aforesayd vyage, this present *Wamster* hath been taken.  
 Fol. 429. A day lost in three peeres and one moneth. I doe not thinke but that in very deede these *Spanyarden* that sayled thus

- thus rounde about the world, folowynge continually the west, dyd lose on day in theyr iourney. In lyke maner I am of opinion, that if the *Portugales* folowed continually the *Easte* rounde about the world, they should fynde at theyr iourneys ende one day to many. I meane it thus.  
 Let two passengers depart from *Lisbona*, the one Westward, the other Eastward, rounde about the world, and both returne home agayne that day whiche we do call *Hydsummer* daye. I saye that day would be to the Easterne passengers the next day after *Hydsummer* daye, to the westerne traueylers but *Hydsummer* euen. My reason is, for that euery .xv. degrees of the great circle East or West, maketh difference one houre: wherefore Eastward after fyfteeene degrees, you shall begyn your daye one houre sooner: after fyfteeene degrees Westward, you shall ende your daye one houre later, then you dyd in that place whence you dyd set forth. The whole circle than of the world conteynyng precisely .360 degrees, that is, foure and twentie tymes .xv. proportionably to the .24. hours of the day, how can it be otherwise, but that these passengers traueylng styll eyther Westward rounde about the world, or Eastward, shoulde either mysse a daye at theyr iourneys ende or elles fynde one to many.  
 Fol. 430. The epistle of *Maximilian Transiluane*. This preface is to be founde in the tome of the nauigations wrytten in Latine. Fol. 524.  
 Fol. 436. The pole *Antartike* Of these starres, and the order therof about the *Antartike* pole, may you reade more at large in *Albericus Vesputius* nauigations. Cap. 119. to be seene in the volume of nauigations wrytten in Latine. Fol. 91.



## The Table.

<b>R</b> Deharde Willes Epistle dedicatorye to the Countes of Bedforde.	Fol. 1
The Preface for the whole worke.	Fol. 1
The fyrst discoueryng of the west Indies.	Fol. 2
What maner of man Christopher Columbus was.	Fol. 3
What labour Columbus tooke.	Fol. 4
Why they were called Indians.	Fol. 5
Of the colour of the Indians.	Fol. 6
Plato his testimony of the west Indies.	Fol. 30
Seneca his testimony thereof.	Fol. 8
J. Martyrs Epistle to Charles the Emperour.	Fol. 57
The fyrst Decade.	Fol. 94
The seconde Decade.	Fol. 155
The thyrde Decade.	Fol. 173
The 4. Decade otherwyle entituled of the west Indish Landes.	Fol. 185
A brieue rehearfall of the contentes of the aforesayde Decades.	Fol. 187
R. Cedens preface, Gonzalus Ferdinandus Quietus Epistle to Charles the 5. concernyng his historie of the west Indies.	Fol. 188
The ordinarie nauigation from Spayne to the West Indies.	Fol. 191
Of two notable thynges as touchyng the west Indies: and of the great ryches brought from thence into Spayne.	Fol. 193
Of the golde mines and maner of wooorkyng in them.	Fol. 195
The maner of fshyng for pearles.	Fol. 198
The familiaritie that the Indians haue with the deuyll.	Fol. 204
Of temperate and habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall line.	Fol. 207
Of dyuers particular thynges, as Moozmes Serpentes, beastes foules.	Fol. 209
Of trees, frutes, and plantes.	Fol. 211
Of Reedes or Canes.	Fol. 215
Of the venomouse apples wherewith the Canibales inuicome theyr arrowes.	Fol. 216
Of fshes and the maner of fshyng.	Fol. 217
Of the rysyng and fallyng of our Ocean sea and the South sea called Mar del sur.	Fol. 219
Of the stricte of lande betweene the north sea and Mar del sur.	Fol. 221
Howe thynges of one kynd differ by the nature of the place, and of the beastes called Tigers.	Fol. 224
Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the firme lande and of their women.	Fol. 225
Of the Landes Hispaniola and Cuba.	Fol. 226
Of the lande Cuba and other.	Fol. 227
Of the land of Baccalaos.	Fol. 228
Particularly of newe Spayne called Noua hispania or Mexico.	Fol. 230
Of Peru.	Fol. 237
Of the ryuer called Rio de la Plata that is the ryuer of syluer.	Fol. 237
Of the landes of Laborador and Baccalaos lyng west and north west from England, and beyng part of the fyne lande.	Fol. 238
The description of the lande Florida.	Fol. 240
For maister Cap. Furbyshys passage by the north west.	Fol. 237
Reportes of the prouince China.	Fol. 237

The fyrst part.

The second part

## The Table.

Of the Lande Giapan and other litle Isles in the east Ocean.	Fol. 251
Propius Fices letters touchyng Giapan.	Fol. 253
Of the Isles betwixte China and the Moluccaes.	Fol. 260
A discourse of dyuers voyages and wayes by the whiche Spices, precious stones, and golde were brought in olde tyme from India into Europe	Fol. 254
and other partes of the worlde also of the voyage to Cathayo and east India by the north sea, of the voyages lykewyle of Sebastian Cabote and particularly of Holcouia.	Fol. 271
A brieue description of Holcouia by Munster and Castaldus.	Fol. 275
A description of the north regions and howe they are habitable, contrary to the opinion of the olde wyters.	Fol. 187
Schondia. Fol. 279. Sweecia or Sweth land. Fol. 287. Bothnia. Fol. 187	
Groenland. Fol. 280. Gothia or Gothlande. Fol. 288	
Islande. Fol. 281. Finland with Emingia. Fol. 288	
Laponia. Fol. 282.	
Portway. Fol. 284.	
The difference of regions and causes of great cities.	Fol. 289
Paulus Jemius historie of the Holcouian ambassage.	Fol. 301
Other notable thynges concernyng Holcouia gathered out of Sigismunde Baron of Herbestein.	Fol. 308
A description of the regions and people lying north and east from Holcouia to the ryuer Petzora and the prouince of Iugra and by euen to Cathayo.	Fol. 309
Of the famous ryuer Tanais.	Fol. 311
The way out of Holcouia to Cathayo.	Fol. 315
Of the Tartars.	Fol. 318
The nauigation by the frostye sea.	Fol. 321
R. Edwards the .6. letters to the northeasterne printes by Sir Hugh wyloughbye, in latine and Englyshe.	Fol. 322
Our Englyshe merchautes voyage into Persia.	Fol. 324
Of maister Jenkensons voyage into Persia.	Fol. 330
Of the last vyage into Persia in the yeere of our lorde 1568.	Fol. 325
Of the kyng of Persia his name.	Fol. 329
Of the Persians religione and other their fashions.	Fol. 330
Of the Persian Empire and the originall thereof.	Fol. 331
Of Persia out of P. P. Aenetus.	Fol. 332
Of the Persian kyngdome out of Haythhon.	Fol. 332
Of Dmius kyngdome ioynyng vnto Persia.	Fol. 332
Of the Sophi or kyng of Persia accordyng to the late wyters.	Fol. 332
The traffique of Persia with other countreys.	Fol. 332
Of the Persian gulfe.	Fol. 332
The priuileages graunted by the Sophi to our merchautes.	Fol. 333
Arthur Edwardes vyage into Persia, with the continuance of the former priuileages.	Fol. 335
The commodities that Engglyshe merchautes may haue by the trade into Persia.	Fol. 335
The maner howe Chyistians become Muscovmen.	Fol. 336
Of the Bombasine or Cotton tree.	Fol. 336
The wytyng of the Persians.	Fol. 336

The third part.

Cye.

## The Table.

The fourth part.

Of two voyages made out of Englands into Guinea in Africke.	Fol. 336.
A briefe description of Africke.	Fol. 337.
The first voyage to Guinea.	Fol. 338.
Pintado his letters patentes made hym by the kyng of Portugale his maister for his returne.	Fol. 341.
The seconde voyage to Guinea, with a moze full description of Africa, Ethiopia, and the blacke Moors countrey.	Fol. 342.
The Doves of the Ilande Padera.	Fol. 353.
Of S. Thomas Ilande vnder the Equinoctiall line.	Fol. 353.
Lewes Vartomannus navigation into Arabia, Egypte, Persia, Syria, Ethiopia, and East India.	Fol. 354.
The contentes of the whiche voyages are these folowynge.	

The contentes of the .vii. booke of nauigations and voyages of Lodowicus Vartomannus to the regions of Arabia, Egypte, Persia, Siria, east India, and Ethiopia.

The contentes of the first booke.

The first Chapter is of the nauigation from Venice to Alexandria in Egypte.	Fol. 355.
Of the citie named Caprus, Alcar, Memphis, or Babylon in Egypte, vpon the ryuer of Nilus.	Cap. 2. Fol. 355.
Of the cities of Beryntho, Tripoli, and Antioch.	Cap. 3. Fol. 356.
Of the cities of Aman and Menin.	Cap. 4. Fol. 356.
Of the citie of Damasco.	Cap. 5. Fol. 357.
Of such thinges as are seene in the citie of Damasco.	Cap. 6. Fol. 358.
Of the Mamalukes of Damasco.	Cap. 7. Fol. 358.
The iorney from Damasco to Becha : And of the maners of the Arabians.	Cap. 8. Fol. 359.
Of the strength and valiantnesse of the Mamalukes.	Cap. 9. Fol. 361.
Of the cities of Sodoma and Gomorrha.	Cap. 10. Fol. 361.
Of a mountayne inhabited with Iewes : And of the citie named Medinat-halabi, where Mahomet was buried.	Cap. 11. Fol. 362.
Of the Temple or Chapell and Sepulchre of Mahomet and his followers.	Cap. 12. Fol. 362.
Of the Secte of Mahomet.	Cap. 13. Fol. 363.
The iorney to Becha.	Cap. 14. Fol. 364.
The fourme and situation of the citie of Becha : And why the Mahumetans resort thither.	Cap. 15. Fol. 365.
Of the Merchandies of Becha.	Cap. 16. Fol. 366.
The pardons and Indulgenfes of Becha.	Cap. 17. Fol. 366.
The maner of Sacrificynge in Becha.	Cap. 18. Fol. 367.
Of the Unicoines of the Temple of Becha, whiche are not seene in any other place.	Cap. 19. Fol. 368.
Of dyuers thynges whiche chaunced to the autour in Becha.	Cap. 20. Fol. 368.
Of the red sea, and why it can not be sayled in the nyght.	Cap. 21. Fol. 370.

## The Table.

The contentes of the seconde booke.

Of the citie Gezan in Arabia Foelyr. That is, the blessed or happy Arabia.	Cap. 1. Fol. 371.
Of certayne people named Banduin.	Cap. 2. Fol. 371.
Of an Ilande of the red sea named Camaran.	Cap. 3. Fol. 371.
Of the citie of Aden, and theyr maners and customes toward Straungers.	Cap. 4. Fol. 372.
Howe the women of Arabia are greatly in loue with white men.	Cap. 5. Fol. 373.
Of the liberalitie of the quene toward the autour.	Cap. 6. Fol. 375.
Of the cities of Lagi and Aiaz in Arabia Foelyr. And of the towne of Dante.	Cap. 7. Fol. 375.
Of Almacharan, a citie of Arabia Foelyr : And of the fruitfulnessse thereof.	Cap. 8. Fol. 375.
Of Krame, a citie of Arabia Foelyr : And the Temperatenesse thereof.	Cap. 9. Fol. 376.
Of Sana, a citie of Arabia Foelyr.	Cap. 10. Fol. 376.
Of Caesa, Zibith, and Damar : great cities of Arabia Foelyr.	Cap. 11. Fol. 376.
Of the Soltan of the foxlayde cities : And why he is named Sechamir.	Cap. 12. Fol. 377.
Of Monkeys and Parmasettes, and other beastes noysome to men.	Cap. 13. Fol. 377.
Of certayne places of Ethiopia.	Cap. 14. Fol. 377.
Of the citie of Zola in Ethiopia : And the great fruitfulnessse thereof : And of certayne straunge beastes seene there.	Cap. 15. Fol. 377.
Of Barbara, an Ilande of Ethiopia.	Cap. 16. Fol. 378.
Of Ethiopia, reade moze in the last nauigation in the ende of the booke.	

The contentes of the thyrde booke.

Of Persia, and of certayne townes and portes of Persia.	Cap. 1. Fol. 378.
Of the Ilande and citie of Dymus or Armusum : And of an Iland of Persia where pearles are founde.	Cap. 2. Fol. 378.
Of the citie named Cri, in Cozozani, a region of Persia, and of the ryches thereof : Also of Reubarbarum.	Cap. 3. Fol. 379.
Of a ryuer thought to be Euphrates : and of Castoreum.	Cap. 4. Fol. 379.
Of the citie of Saint Bragant, bigger then Babylon : And of the kyng of Persia, named the Sophi.	Cap. 5. Fol. 380.

The contentes of the fourth booke.

Of India, and of the cities, and notable thynges seene there : And first of the citie of Cambaia, most fruitfull.	Cap. 1. Fol. 381.
The maners of the people of Cambaia : And of the Soltan of that citie.	Cap. 2. Fol. 381.
Of the citie of Ceul, and the maners of the inhabitants.	Cap. 3. Fol. 382.
Of Goga an Ilande of India.	Cap. 4. Fol. 383.
Of Decham a very fayre citie of India.	Cap. 5. Fol. 383.
Of certayne other goodly cities of India.	Cap. 6. Fol. 384.
Of Canono, and Darlinga, great cities of India.	Cap. 7. Fol. 384.

## The Table.

Of the fruitefull citie of Bisnagar in the kyngdome of Marlinga.	Cap. 8. Fol. 384
Of the Docistie, agilitie and wytte of Elephantes.	Cap. 9. Fol. 385
Of the ingendyng of Elephantes: And of the magnificence and ryches of the kyng of Marlinga.	Cap. 10. Fol. 386
<i>The contentes of the fyfth booke.</i>	
Of the famous and ryche citie of Calecut	Cap. 1. Fol. 387
Of the kyng of Calecut: And of theyr Idolatrye.	Cap. 2. Fol. 387
Of the maner whiche the kyng vseth at his meare.	Cap. 3. Fol. 388
Of the Priettes of Calecut named Bramini.	Cap. 4. Fol. 388
Of the diuers sectes of Idolatours in the citie of Calecut	Cap. 5. Fol. 398
The apparell of the kyng, queene, and the inhabitantes of the citie of Calecut: And of theyr maner of feedyng.	Cap. 6. Fol. 389
Of theyr custome after the death of the kyng.	Cap. 7. Fol. 389
Of theyr changyng of wyues.	Cap. 8. Fol. 390
The maner of feedyng of the common people of the Idolaters: And of thei Justice.	Cap. 9. Fol. 390
Of their honouryng of Idoles.	Cap. 10. Fol. 390
Of their maner of warre.	Cap. 11. Fol. 391
Of theyr shippes and maner of saylyng on the sea.	Cap. 12. Fol. 391
The palace and courte of the kyng of Calecut.	Cap. 13. Fol. 392
The Spices of Calecut.	Cap. 14. Fol. 392
The foules and byrdes of Calecut.	Cap. 15. Fol. 393
Of a most fruitefull tree of all the world.	Cap. 16. Fol. 393
Howe they sowe Ryse.	Cap. 17. Fol. 394
Howe theyr phisitions visit the sicke folkes.	Cap. 18. Fol. 394
Of theyr exchaungers, bankers, and brokers.	Cap. 19. Fol. 395
Of the inhabitantes of Idolar and Hiraua.	Cap. 20. Fol. 395
Of foure foured beastes, foules, and byrdes of Calecut.	Cap. 21. Fol. 395
Of certayne Serpentes whiche are scene in Calecut.	Cap. 22. Fol. 396
Of the lyghtes and lampes whiche are scene in the palace of the kyng of Calecut.	Cap. 23. Fol. 396
The great multitude of Idolaters whiche resorte to Calecut for pardon of theyr synnes.	Cap. 24. Fol. 396
<i>The contentes of the sixth booke, of the Navigation of India.</i>	
Of the citie of Calicollon and Colon.	Cap. 1. Fol. 397
Of Cyromandel a citie of India.	Cap. 2. Fol. 397
Of the Ilande of Zailon, and the precious stones founde there.	Cap. 3. Fol. 398
Of the tree of Cinamome in the Ilande of Zailon.	Cap. 4. Fol. 398
Of Paleacher, a citie of India.	Cap. 5. Fol. 399
Of Carnasari, a Citie of India.	Cap. 6. Fol. 399
Of the wylde and rane beastes in the citie of Carnasari.	Cap. 7. Fol. 399
The maner whiche the kyng of Carnasari vseth when he permitteth his wyfe to be deflowred of whyte men.	Cap. 8. Fol. 400
The maner of burnyng dead bodie in the citie of Carnasari.	Cap. 9. Fol. 400
The Justice which the inhabitantes of Carnasari obserue.	Cap. 10. Fol. 401
Howe the Mahumetans are buryed in the citie of Carnasari.	Cap. 11. Fol. 401
The dyuers soys of their shippes or other vesselles of sailling.	Cap. 12. Fol. 401

## The Table.

Of Bangella, a great and ryche citie of India: And of the great power of the kyng of that citie.	Cap. 13. Fol. 401
Of certayne Christian merchautes which traffique there.	Cap. 14. Fol. 402
Of Pego a famous citie of India.	Cap. 15. Fol. 402
Of the magnificence, humanitie, and great ryches of the kyng of Pego.	Cap. 16. Fol. 403
Of the citie of Melacha, and the great ryuer of Giza.	Cap. 17. Fol. 404
Of the Ilande of Sumatra or Taprobana.	Cap. 18. Fol. 405
Of an other kynde of Pepper: Also of sylke, and the precious gumme called Lacerpitium or Belzoe.	Cap. 19. Fol. 405
Of three sortes of the tree of Aloes.	Cap. 20. Fol. 405
Howe the gummes of Aloes & Lacerpitium, are proued.	Cap. 21. Fol. 406
Of diuers merchautes in the Ilande of Sumatra or Taprobana.	Cap. 22. Fol. 406
Of the Iland of Bandan where Nutmegges & Male are founde.	Cap. 23. Fol. 407
Of the Ilande of Monoch, where Cloues growe.	Cap. 24. Fol. 407
Of the Ilande of Boznei.	Cap. 25. Fol. 407
Of certayne obseruations vied in the nauigation to the Ilande of Ciaua.	Cap. 26. Fol. 408
Of the Iland of Ciaua, & the maners of the people.	Cap. 27. Fol. 408
Of the cruell maners in sleying their parentes to the Anthropolophagi to be eaten.	Cap. 28. Fol. 409
Of the strange course of the Sunne in the Iland of Ciaua.	Cap. 29. Fol. 409
Of theyr returne from the Iland of Ciaua.	Cap. 30. Fol. 409
Agayne of the citie of Calecut after theyr returne thither.	Cap. 31. Fol. 410
Of the comyng of the kyng of Portugales thys to the citie of Canonoz.	Cap. 32. Fol. 411
Howe the autour playde the phisition, and counterfet holynes, lest he shoulde be taken for a spie of the Portugales.	Cap. 33. Fol. 411
Howe the Mahumetā priettes cal the people to their church.	Cap. 34. Fol. 412
The maner of prayng among the Mahumetans.	Cap. 35. Fol. 412
What subtiltie the autour vied to depart from Calecut, to go to the Portugales.	Cap. 36. Fol. 413
How he fled to the Portugales from the citie of Canonoz.	Cap. 37. Fol. 413
Of the naue of the citie of Calecut, and of the memorabile conflict betweene the Christians and Mahumetans: In the which the Portugales with incredible valiantnesse, gaue theyr enemies the ouerthrowe: And howe the kyng of Canonoz reioyced at the victorie.	Cap. 37. Fol. 415

## The contentes of the seuenth and last booke.

The voyage or nauigation of Ethiopia.	Cap. 1. Fol. 419
Of dyuers and many Ilandes of Ethiopia.	Cap. 2. Fol. 419
Of the Ilande of Bonzambich, & the inhabitantes therof.	Cap. 3. Fol. 419
Of the Cape, named Caput Bone Spei: That is, the Cape of good hope.	Cap. 4. Fol. 421
Of the hygher east India, called Terciera.	Fol. 422
Of the pyeces of precious stones and spyes, with theyr weyghtes and measures, as they are accustomed to be solde both of the Moors, & the Gentyles: and of the places where they growe.	Fol. 423.

## The Table

Of the Rubie.	Fol. 421
Of the Rubies whiche growe in the Ilande of Zellam.	Fol. 422
Of the kynde of Rubies called Spinnelle.	Fol. 424
Of the Rubies called Balasni.	Fol. 424
Of the Diamondes of the olde mine.	Fol. 424
Of Saphires.	Fol. 425
Of Topasses.	Fol. 425
Of Turqueses.	Fol. 425
Of Iacintes.	Fol. 426
Of Smaragdes or Emeralpes.	Fol. 426
Of dyuers kyndes of spices, where they growe, what they are wrooth in Calcut, and whyther they are carryed from thence. And first of Pepper.	Fol. 426
Of Cloues.	Fol. 427
Of Cinamome.	
Of Ginger called Beled.	
Of Ginger Pechino.	Fol. 427
Of Greene Ginger in conserues.	
Of the Apothecaries Dugges, and of what price they are in Calcut and Malabar.	Fol. 428
Of the weyghtes of Portugale and India, and how they agree.	Fol. 429
Of the vyage made by the Spanyardes rounde about the worlde.	Fol. 429
Marimilian Transiluanus letter thereof to the Cardinall of Salzburge.	Fol. 430
The debate and strife, betweene the Spanyardes and Portugales for the diuision of the Indies, and the trade of Spices, and the Moluccaes, out of Lopez de Gomara.	Fol. 448
The repartition and diuision of the Indies and newe worlde betweene the Spanyardes and the Portugales.	Fol. 448
The cause and auctoritie whereby they deuised the Indies.	Fol. 450
Howe and by what occasion the Emperour layed the Ilandes of Moluccaes to pledge to the kyng of Portugale.	Fol. 451
Pope Alexander the .6. his Bull touchyng the aforesayde partition of the Indies, Latine and Englyshe.	Fol. 452. & Fol. 454
An abridgement of .D. Martyr his .5. 6. 7. and .8. Decades, & particularly of F. C. conquest of Mexico by .R. III.	Fol. 457

FINIS.

Imprinted at London by Rychard  
Iugge. Anno. 1577.

Cum Priuilegio,  
(..)